

Making Everything Easier!™

Microsoft®

# Office 2013

ALL-IN-ONE

FOR

# DUMMIES®

**10 BOOKS  
IN 1**

- Common Office Tasks
- Word 2013
- Excel® 2013
- PowerPoint® 2013
- OneNote® 2013
- Outlook® 2013
- Access® 2013
- Working with Charts and Graphics
- Office 2013 — One Step Beyond
- File Sharing and Collaboration

Peter Weverka



# Get More and Do More at Dummies.com®



Start with **FREE** Cheat Sheets

Cheat Sheets include

- Checklists
- Charts
- Common Instructions
- And Other Good Stuff!

To access the Cheat Sheet created specifically for this book, go to  
[www.dummies.com/cheatsheet/office2013aio](http://www.dummies.com/cheatsheet/office2013aio)

## Get Smart at Dummies.com

Dummies.com makes your life easier with 1,000s of answers on everything from removing wallpaper to using the latest version of Windows.

Check out our

- Videos
- Illustrated Articles
- Step-by-Step Instructions

Plus, each month you can win valuable prizes by entering our Dummies.com sweepstakes. \*

Want a weekly dose of Dummies? Sign up for Newsletters on

- Digital Photography
- Microsoft Windows & Office
- Personal Finance & Investing
- Health & Wellness
- Computing, iPods & Cell Phones
- eBay
- Internet
- Food, Home & Garden

## Find out “HOW” at Dummies.com



\*Sweepstakes not currently available in all countries; visit Dummies.com for official rules.

**Office 2013**  
**ALL-IN-ONE**  
FOR  
**DUMMIES®**





**by Peter Weverka**



John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

## **Office 2013 All-in-One For Dummies®**

Published by

**John Wiley & Sons, Inc.**

111 River Street

Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774

[www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com)

Copyright © 2013 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, New Jersey

Published by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, New Jersey

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

**Trademarks:** Wiley, the Wiley logo, For Dummies, the Dummies Man logo, A Reference for the Rest of Us!, The Dummies Way, Dummies Daily, The Fun and Easy Way, Dummies.com, Making Everything Easier, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. Microsoft is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

**LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY: THE PUBLISHER AND THE AUTHOR MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS WORK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES OR PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS. THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR EVERY SITUATION. THIS WORK IS SOLD WITH THE UNDERSTANDING THAT THE PUBLISHER IS NOT ENGAGED IN RENDERING LEGAL, ACCOUNTING, OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL SERVICES. IF PROFESSIONAL ASSISTANCE IS REQUIRED, THE SERVICES OF A COMPETENT PROFESSIONAL PERSON SHOULD BE SOUGHT. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR THE AUTHOR SHALL BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING HEREFROM. THE FACT THAT AN ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE IS REFERRED TO IN THIS WORK AS A CITATION AND/OR A POTENTIAL SOURCE OF FURTHER INFORMATION DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER ENDORSES THE INFORMATION THE ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE MAY PROVIDE OR RECOMMENDATIONS IT MAY MAKE. FURTHER, READERS SHOULD BE AWARE THAT INTERNET WEBSITES LISTED IN THIS WORK MAY HAVE CHANGED OR DISAPPEARED BETWEEN WHEN THIS WORK WAS WRITTEN AND WHEN IT IS READ.**

For general information on our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

For technical support, please visit [www.wiley.com/techsupport](http://www.wiley.com/techsupport).

Wiley publishes in a variety of print and electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some material included with standard print versions of this book may not be included in e-books or in print-on-demand. If this book refers to media such as a CD or DVD that is not included in the version you purchased, you may download this material at <http://booksupport.wiley.com>. For more information about Wiley products, visit [www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com).

Library of Congress Control Number: 2012956418

ISBN: 978-1-118-51636-2 (pbk); ISBN 978-1-118-55025-0 (ebk); ISBN 978-1-118-55029-8 (ebk);  
ISBN 978-1-118-55024-3 (ebk)

Manufactured in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



## *About the Author*

**Peter Weverka** is the best-selling author of many *For Dummies* books, including *Office 2010 All-in-One For Dummies*, as well as 38 other computer books about various topics. Peter's humorous articles and stories — none related to computers, thankfully — have appeared in *Harper's*, *SPY*, and other magazines for grown-ups.



# **Dedication**

For Aiko Sofia and Henry Gabriel.

# **Author's Acknowledgments**

This book owes a lot to many hard-working people at the offices of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. in Indiana. For the umpteenth time, I want to express my gratitude to Steve Hayes for his encouragement and the opportunity to write another *For Dummies* book.

Susan Christophersen knows the editing craft as well as any editor I have ever worked with. It was a pleasure — once again — to work with her.

Technical Editor Michele Krazniak made sure that all the explanations in this book are indeed accurate, and I would like to thank her for her diligence and suggestions for improving this book. I would also like to thank BIM Proofreading & Indexing Services for writing the index.

If you turn this page you will see, on the flip side, the names of all the people who worked on this book. I am grateful to all of them.

Finally, I owe my family — Sofia, Henry, and Addie — a debt for tolerating my vampire-like working hours and eerie demeanor at daybreak.

## **Publisher's Acknowledgments**

We're proud of this book; please send us your comments at <http://dummies.custhelp.com>. For other comments, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

Some of the people who helped bring this book to market include the following:

### ***Acquisitions and Editorial***

**Project and Copy Editor:** Susan Christophersen

**Executive Editor:** Steve Hayes

**Technical Editor:** Michelle Krazniak

**Editorial Manager:** Jodi Jensen

**Editorial Assistant:** Annie Sullivan

**Sr. Editorial Assistant:** Cherie Case

**Cover Photo:** © iStockphoto.com / kzenon

### ***Composition Services***

**Project Coordinator:** Patrick Redmond

**Layout and Graphics:** Ana Carrillo,  
Jennifer Creasey, Joyce Haughey

**Proofreaders:** Jessica Kramer, Linda Seifert

**Indexer:** BIM Indexing & Proofreading Services

---

## **Publishing and Editorial for Technology Dummies**

**Richard Swadley**, Vice President and Executive Group Publisher

**Andy Cummings**, Vice President and Publisher

**Mary Bednarek**, Executive Acquisitions Director

**Mary C. Corder**, Editorial Director

## **Publishing for Consumer Dummies**

**Kathleen Nebenhaus**, Vice President and Executive Publisher

## **Composition Services**

**Debbie Stailey**, Director of Composition Services

# Contents at a Glance

---

<b><i>Introduction .....</i></b>	<b>1</b>
<b><i>Book I: Common Office Tasks.....</i></b>	<b>7</b>
Chapter 1: Office Nuts and Bolts.....	9
Chapter 2: Wrestling with the Text.....	29
Chapter 3: Speed Techniques Worth Knowing About .....	47
<b><i>Book II: Word 2013.....</i></b>	<b>55</b>
Chapter 1: Speed Techniques for Using Word.....	57
Chapter 2: Laying Out Text and Pages .....	75
Chapter 3: Word Styles .....	99
Chapter 4: Constructing the Perfect Table.....	115
Chapter 5: Taking Advantage of the Proofing Tools.....	139
Chapter 6: Desktop Publishing with Word .....	159
Chapter 7: Getting Word's Help with Office Chores .....	177
Chapter 8: Tools for Reports and Scholarly Papers.....	197
<b><i>Book III: Excel 2013.....</i></b>	<b>219</b>
Chapter 1: Up and Running with Excel.....	221
Chapter 2: Refining Your Worksheet.....	239
Chapter 3: Formulas and Functions for Crunching Numbers .....	253
Chapter 4: Making a Worksheet Easier to Read and Understand.....	275
Chapter 5: Advanced Techniques for Analyzing Data.....	293
<b><i>Book IV: PowerPoint 2013 .....</i></b>	<b>307</b>
Chapter 1: Getting Started in PowerPoint.....	309
Chapter 2: Fashioning a Look for Your Presentation .....	331
Chapter 3: Entering the Text .....	347
Chapter 4: Making Your Presentations Livelier .....	363
Chapter 5: Delivering a Presentation .....	379
<b><i>Book V: OneNote 2013 .....</i></b>	<b>401</b>
Chapter 1: Up and Running with OneNote.....	403
Chapter 2: Taking Notes.....	415
Chapter 3: Finding and Organizing Your Notes .....	431

<b>Book VI: Outlook 2013 .....</b>	<b>439</b>
Chapter 1: Outlook Basics .....	441
Chapter 2: Maintaining the Contacts Folder .....	455
Chapter 3: Handling Your E-Mail.....	465
Chapter 4: Managing Your Time and Schedule.....	489
Chapter 5: Tasks, Reminders, and Notes.....	497
<b>Book VII: Access 2013.....</b>	<b>505</b>
Chapter 1: Introducing Access .....	507
Chapter 2: Building Your Database Tables.....	521
Chapter 3: Entering the Data .....	549
Chapter 4: Sorting, Querying, and Filtering for Data.....	559
Chapter 5: Presenting Data in a Report.....	579
<b>Book VIII: Working with Charts and Graphics .....</b>	<b>583</b>
Chapter 1: Creating a Chart .....	585
Chapter 2: Making a SmartArt Diagram .....	603
Chapter 3: Handling Graphics, Photos, and Clip Art.....	623
Chapter 4: Drawing and Manipulating Lines, Shapes, and Other Objects.....	641
<b>Book IX: Office 2013: One Step Beyond .....</b>	<b>671</b>
Chapter 1: Customizing an Office Program .....	673
Chapter 2: Ways of Distributing Your Work.....	687
Chapter 3: Working with Publisher .....	697
<b>Book X: File Sharing and Collaborating .....</b>	<b>713</b>
Chapter 1: Preparing to Use the Office Web Apps.....	715
Chapter 2: Using the Office Web Apps .....	725
Chapter 3: Sharing and Collaborating .....	733
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>743</b>

# Table of Contents

---

<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>1</b>
What's in This Book, Anyway? .....	1
What Makes This Book Different .....	2
Easy-to-look-up information .....	3
A task-oriented approach .....	3
Meaningful screen shots .....	3
Foolish Assumptions .....	3
Conventions Used in This Book.....	4
Icons Used in This Book .....	4
 <b>Book 1: Common Office Tasks .....</b>	 <b>7</b>
 <b>Chapter 1: Office Nuts and Bolts .....</b>	 <b>9</b>
A Survey of Office Applications .....	9
Starting an Office Program .....	11
Starting an Office program in Windows 7 and Vista.....	11
Starting an Office program in Windows 8 .....	13
Finding Your Way Around the Office Interface.....	14
The File tab and Backstage.....	15
The Quick Access toolbar.....	15
The Ribbon and its tabs .....	15
Context-sensitive tabs .....	16
The anatomy of a tab.....	17
Live previewing .....	18
Mini-toolbars and shortcut menus .....	18
Office 2013 for keyboard lovers .....	19
Saving Your Files .....	20
Saving a file .....	20
Saving a file for the first time.....	20
Declaring where you like to save files.....	20
Saving AutoRecovery information .....	22
Navigating the Save As and Open Windows.....	23
Opening and Closing Files .....	25
Opening a file.....	25
Closing a file.....	26
Reading and Recording File Properties .....	26
Locking a File with a Password.....	27
Password-protecting a file .....	27
Removing a password from a file.....	28

<b>Chapter 2: Wrestling with the Text.....</b>	<b>.29</b>
Manipulating the Text .....	29
Selecting text .....	29
Moving and copying text.....	30
Taking advantage of the Clipboard task pane.....	31
Deleting text.....	32
Changing the Look of Text.....	32
Choosing fonts for text.....	33
Changing the font size of text.....	34
Applying font styles to text .....	35
Applying text effects to text .....	36
Underlining text .....	37
Changing the color of text .....	38
Quick Ways to Handle Case, or Capitalization.....	38
Entering Symbols and Foreign Characters.....	40
Creating Hyperlinks.....	41
Linking a hyperlink to a web page .....	41
Creating a hyperlink to another place in your file.....	43
Creating an e-mail hyperlink.....	44
Repairing and removing hyperlinks .....	45
<b>Chapter 3: Speed Techniques Worth Knowing About.....</b>	<b>.47</b>
Undoing and Repeating Commands .....	47
Undoing a mistake .....	47
Repeating an action — and quicker this time .....	48
Zooming In, Zooming Out .....	48
Viewing a File Through More Than One Window.....	50
Correcting Typos on the Fly.....	50
Entering Text Quickly with the AutoCorrect Command.....	52
<b>Book 11: Word 2013.....</b>	<b>.55</b>
<b>Chapter 1: Speed Techniques for Using Word .....</b>	<b>.57</b>
Introducing the Word Screen.....	57
Creating a New Document .....	59
Getting a Better Look at Your Documents .....	61
Viewing documents in different ways .....	61
Splitting the screen.....	64
Selecting Text in Speedy Ways .....	65
Moving Around Quickly in Documents .....	66
Keys for getting around quickly.....	66
Navigating from page to page or heading to heading .....	67
Going there fast with the Go To command.....	68
Bookmarks for hopping around.....	68
Inserting a Whole File into a Document.....	69

---

Entering Information Quickly in a Computerized Form.....	70
Creating a computerized form .....	71
Entering data in the form.....	73
<b>Chapter 2: Laying Out Text and Pages .....</b>	<b>75</b>
Paragraphs and Formatting.....	75
Inserting a Section Break for Formatting Purposes .....	76
Breaking a Line.....	78
Starting a New Page.....	78
Setting Up and Changing the Margins.....	79
Indenting Paragraphs and First Lines .....	81
Clicking an Indent button (for left-indents).....	81
“Eye-balling it” with the ruler .....	81
Indenting in the Paragraph dialog box.....	83
Numbering the Pages .....	83
Numbering with page numbers only .....	84
Including a page number in a header or footer .....	85
Changing page number formats.....	85
Putting Headers and Footers on Pages.....	86
Creating, editing, and removing headers and footers.....	87
Fine-tuning a header or footer.....	89
Adjusting the Space Between Lines .....	90
Adjusting the Space Between Paragraphs.....	91
Creating Numbered and Bulleted Lists.....	92
Simple numbered and bulleted lists.....	92
Constructing lists of your own.....	93
Managing a multilevel list .....	94
Working with Tabs .....	95
Hyphenating Text .....	96
Automatically and manually hyphenating a document .....	97
Unhyphenating and other hyphenation tasks.....	98
<b>Chapter 3: Word Styles .....</b>	<b>99</b>
All About Styles.....	99
Styles and templates .....	99
Types of styles .....	100
Applying Styles to Text and Paragraphs .....	101
Applying a style.....	101
Experimenting with style sets .....	103
Choosing which style names appear on the Style menus .....	104
Creating a New Style .....	105
Creating a style from a paragraph .....	106
Creating a style from the ground up .....	106
Modifying a Style .....	108
Creating and Managing Templates.....	109
Creating a new template .....	109
Opening a template so that you can modify it .....	113
Modifying, deleting, and renaming styles in templates .....	114

**Chapter 4: Constructing the Perfect Table. . . . .** **115**

Talking Table Jargon .....	115
Creating a Table.....	116
Entering the Text and Numbers.....	118
Selecting Different Parts of a Table.....	119
Laying Out Your Table.....	120
Changing the size of a table, columns, and rows.....	120
Adjusting column and row size.....	121
Inserting columns and rows .....	121
Deleting columns and rows .....	123
Moving columns and rows.....	123
Aligning Text in Columns and Rows.....	124
Merging and Splitting Cells.....	125
Repeating Header Rows on Subsequent Pages.....	126
Formatting Your Table.....	127
Designing a table with a table style .....	127
Calling attention to different rows and columns .....	129
Decorating your table with borders and colors .....	129
Using Math Formulas in Tables .....	132
Neat Table Tricks .....	133
Changing the direction of header row text.....	133
Wrapping text around a table .....	134
Using a picture as the table background .....	135
Drawing diagonal lines on tables .....	136
Drawing on a table .....	137

**Chapter 5: Taking Advantage of the Proofing Tools. . . . .** **139**

Correcting Your Spelling Errors .....	140
Correcting misspellings one at a time.....	140
Running a spell-check.....	141
Preventing text from being spell checked .....	143
Checking for Grammatical Errors in Word.....	143
Getting a Word Definition .....	144
Finding and Replacing Text.....	145
The basics: Finding stray words and phrases.....	145
Narrowing your search .....	146
Conducting a find-and-replace operation .....	152
Researching a Topic Inside Word.....	153
Finding the Right Word with the Thesaurus.....	155
Proofing Text Written in a Foreign Language .....	156
Telling Office which languages you will use.....	156
Marking text as foreign language text .....	157
Translating Foreign Language Text.....	157

**Chapter 6: Desktop Publishing with Word . . . . . 159**

Experimenting with Themes .....	159
Sprucing Up Your Pages .....	161
Decorating a page with a border .....	161
Putting a background color on pages .....	162
Getting Word's help with cover letters.....	162
Making Use of Charts, Diagrams, Shapes, Clip Art, and Photos .....	163
Working with the Drawing Canvas .....	164
Positioning and Wrapping Objects Relative to the Page and Text.....	165
Wrapping text around an object .....	166
Positioning an object on a page.....	167
Working with Text Boxes.....	169
Inserting a text box.....	170
Making text flow from text box to text box .....	170
Dropping In a Drop Cap .....	171
Watermarking for the Elegant Effect .....	171
Putting Newspaper-Style Columns in a Document.....	173
Doing the preliminary work.....	173
Running text into columns.....	173
Landscape Documents.....	174
Printing on Different Size Paper.....	175
Showing Online Video in a Document.....	176

**Chapter 7: Getting Word's Help with Office Chores. . . . . 177**

Highlighting Parts of a Document.....	177
Commenting on a Document.....	178
Entering a comment .....	178
Viewing and displaying comments .....	180
Caring for and feeding comments.....	180
Tracking Changes to Documents.....	181
Telling Word to start marking changes.....	182
Reading and reviewing a document with change marks .....	183
Marking changes when you forgot to turn on change marks.....	184
Accepting and rejecting changes to a document.....	186
Printing an Address on an Envelope.....	186
Printing a Single Address Label (or a Page of the Same Label).....	188
Churning Out Letters, Envelopes, and Labels for Mass Mailings.....	189
Preparing the source file.....	190
Merging the document with the source file.....	191
Printing form letters, envelopes, and labels.....	195

**Chapter 8: Tools for Reports and Scholarly Papers . . . . . 197**

Alphabetizing a List.....	197
Outlines for Organizing Your Work.....	198
Viewing the outline in different ways.....	199
Rearranging document sections in Outline view.....	199

Collapsing and Expanding Parts of a Document.....	200
Generating a Table of Contents .....	200
Creating a TOC .....	201
Updating and removing a TOC.....	202
Customizing a TOC .....	202
Changing the structure of a TOC .....	203
Indexing a Document .....	205
Marking index items in the document.....	206
Generating the index .....	207
Editing an index.....	209
Putting Cross-References in a Document .....	209
Putting Footnotes and Endnotes in Documents .....	211
Entering a footnote or endnote.....	212
Choosing the numbering scheme and position of notes .....	213
Deleting, moving, and editing notes .....	214
Compiling a Bibliography .....	214
Inserting a citation for your bibliography .....	215
Editing a citation.....	217
Changing how citations appear in text .....	217
Generating the bibliography .....	217
<b>Book III: Excel 2013.....</b>	<b>219</b>
<b>Chapter 1: Up and Running with Excel.....</b>	<b>221</b>
Creating a New Excel Workbook.....	221
Getting Acquainted with Excel.....	223
Rows, columns, and cell addresses .....	225
Workbooks and worksheets .....	225
Entering Data in a Worksheet .....	225
The basics of entering data .....	225
Entering text labels.....	227
Entering numeric values .....	227
Entering date and time values.....	228
Quickly Entering Lists and Serial Data with the AutoFill Command .....	231
Formatting Numbers, Dates, and Time Values .....	232
Conditional Formats for Calling Attention to Data.....	235
Establishing Data-Validation Rules .....	236
<b>Chapter 2: Refining Your Worksheet.....</b>	<b>239</b>
Editing Worksheet Data .....	239
Moving Around in a Worksheet .....	240
Getting a Better Look at the Worksheet .....	241
Freezing and splitting columns and rows .....	241
Hiding columns and rows .....	243
Comments for Documenting Your Worksheet.....	244
Selecting Cells in a Worksheet.....	246

Deleting, Copying, and Moving Data .....	247
Handling the Worksheets in a Workbook.....	247
Keeping Others from Tampering with Worksheets .....	249
Hiding a worksheet.....	250
Protecting a worksheet .....	250
<b>Chapter 3: Formulas and Functions for Crunching Numbers . . . . .</b>	<b>253</b>
How Formulas Work.....	253
Referring to cells in formulas .....	253
Referring to formula results in formulas.....	256
Operators in formulas .....	257
The Basics of Entering a Formula.....	258
Speed Techniques for Entering Formulas .....	259
Clicking cells to enter cell references .....	259
Entering a cell range.....	260
Naming cell ranges so that you can use them in formulas.....	261
Referring to cells in different worksheets.....	264
Copying Formulas from Cell to Cell.....	264
Detecting and Correcting Errors in Formulas.....	266
Correcting errors one at a time.....	266
Running the error checker.....	267
Tracing cell references.....	268
Working with Functions.....	269
Using arguments in functions.....	271
Entering a function in a formula .....	271
<b>Chapter 4: Making a Worksheet Easier to Read and Understand . . . . .</b>	<b>275</b>
Laying Out a Worksheet .....	275
Aligning numbers and text in columns and rows .....	276
Inserting and deleting rows and columns.....	278
Changing the size of columns and rows .....	279
Decorating a Worksheet with Borders and Colors.....	280
Cell styles for quickly formatting a worksheet .....	281
Formatting cells with table styles.....	283
Slapping borders on worksheet cells .....	284
Decorating worksheets with colors.....	285
Getting Ready to Print a Worksheet.....	285
Making a worksheet fit on a page .....	286
Making a worksheet more presentable.....	289
Repeating row and column headings on each page .....	290
<b>Chapter 5: Advanced Techniques for Analyzing Data . . . . .</b>	<b>293</b>
Seeing What the Sparklines Say.....	293
Managing Information in Lists .....	294
Sorting a list.....	295
Filtering a list.....	296
Forecasting with the Goal Seek Command.....	298

Performing What-If Analyses with Data Tables .....	299
Using a one-input table for analysis .....	299
Using a two-input table for analysis .....	301
Analyzing Data with Pivot Tables.....	303
Creating a PivotTable.....	303
Putting the finishing touches on a PivotTable.....	305

## **Book IV: PowerPoint 2013..... 307**

### **Chapter 1: Getting Started in PowerPoint ..... 309**

Getting Acquainted with PowerPoint.....	310
A Brief Geography Lesson .....	311
A Whirlwind Tour of PowerPoint .....	312
Creating a New Presentation.....	313
Advice for Building Persuasive Presentations.....	316
Creating New Slides for Your Presentation.....	318
Inserting a new slide.....	319
Speed techniques for inserting slides .....	319
Conjuring slides from Word document headings .....	321
Selecting a different layout for a slide.....	322
Getting a Better View of Your Work.....	323
Changing views .....	323
Looking at the different views .....	323
Hiding and Displaying the SlidesPane and Notes Pane .....	324
Selecting, Moving, and Deleting Slides .....	325
Selecting slides.....	325
Moving slides.....	325
Deleting slides .....	326
Putting Together a Photo Album .....	326
Creating your photo album .....	326
Putting on the final touches .....	328
Editing a photo album .....	329
Hidden Slides for All Contingencies .....	329
Hiding a slide .....	329
Showing a hidden slide during a presentation.....	330

### **Chapter 2: Fashioning a Look for Your Presentation .. . 331**

Looking at Themes and Slide Backgrounds .....	331
Choosing a Theme for Your Presentation .....	334
Creating Slide Backgrounds on Your Own .....	334
Using a solid (or transparent) color for the slide background....	335
Creating a gradient color blend for slide backgrounds .....	335
Placing a picture in the slide background .....	337
Using a photo of your own for a slide background .....	338
Using a texture for a slide background .....	340

Changing the Background of a Single or Handful of Slides .....	341
Choosing the Slide Size.....	342
Using Master Slides and Master Styles for a Consistent Design.....	342
Switching to Slide Master view .....	342
Understanding master slides and master styles.....	343
Editing a master slide.....	344
Changing a master slide layout .....	345
<b>Chapter 3: Entering the Text.....</b>	<b>347</b>
Entering Text.....	347
Choosing fonts for text.....	348
Changing the font size of text.....	349
Changing the look of text .....	349
Fun with Text Boxes and Text Box Shapes .....	350
Controlling How Text Fits in Text Frames and Text Boxes .....	352
Choosing how PowerPoint “AutoFits” text in text frames .....	353
Choosing how PowerPoint “AutoFits” text in text boxes .....	355
Positioning Text in Frames and Text Boxes.....	356
Handling Bulleted and Numbered Lists .....	357
Creating a standard bulleted or numbered list.....	357
Choosing a different bullet character, size, and color .....	358
Choosing a different list-numbering style, size, and color .....	359
Putting Footers (and Headers) on Slides.....	359
Some background on footers and headers.....	360
Putting a standard footer on all your slides .....	360
Creating a nonstandard footer .....	361
Removing a footer from a single slide.....	362
<b>Chapter 4: Making Your Presentations Livelier .....</b>	<b>363</b>
Suggestions for Enlivening Your Presentation .....	363
Presenting Information in a Table.....	364
Exploring Transitions and Animations .....	365
Showing transitions between slides .....	367
Animating parts of a slide.....	368
Making Audio Part of Your Presentation.....	370
Inserting an audio file on a slide .....	371
Telling PowerPoint when and how to play an audio file.....	372
Playing audio during a presentation .....	373
Playing Video on Slides.....	374
Inserting a video on a slide.....	374
Fine-tuning a video presentation .....	374
Experimenting with the look of the video.....	376
Recording a Voice Narration for Slides .....	377
<b>Chapter 5: Delivering a Presentation .....</b>	<b>379</b>
All about Notes .....	379
Rehearsing and Timing Your Presentation .....	380

Showing Your Presentation.....	381
Starting and ending a presentation .....	382
Going from slide to slide .....	383
Tricks for Making Presentations a Little Livelier .....	385
Wielding a pen or highlighter in a presentation .....	385
Blanking the screen .....	387
Zooming In .....	387
Delivering a Presentation When You Can't Be There in Person.....	388
Providing handouts for your audience .....	388
Creating a self-running, kiosk-style presentation .....	389
Creating a user-run presentation.....	391
Presenting a Presentation Online .....	393
Packaging your presentation on a CD .....	395
Creating a presentation video .....	398
<b>Book V: OneNote 2013.....</b>	<b>401</b>
<b>Chapter 1: Up and Running with OneNote .....</b>	<b>403</b>
Introducing OneNote.....	403
Finding Your Way Around the OneNote Screen .....	404
Notebook pane .....	405
Section (and section group) tabs .....	405
Page window.....	405
Page pane .....	405
Units for Organizing Notes .....	405
Creating a Notebook.....	407
Creating Sections and Section Groups.....	408
Creating a new section .....	408
Creating a section group.....	409
Creating Pages and Subpages .....	410
Creating a new page .....	410
Creating a new subpage .....	410
Renaming and Deleting Groups and Pages.....	411
Getting from Place to Place in OneNote .....	411
Changing Your View of OneNote .....	412
<b>Chapter 2: Taking Notes .....</b>	<b>415</b>
Entering a Typewritten Note.....	415
Notes: The Basics .....	415
Moving and resizing note containers .....	416
Formatting the Text in Notes .....	416
Selecting notes .....	417
Deleting notes.....	418
Getting more space for notes on a page .....	418

Drawing on the Page .....	418
Drawing with a pen or highlighter .....	419
Drawing a shape.....	420
Changing the size and appearance of drawings and shapes.....	421
Converting a Handwritten Note to Text .....	422
Writing a Math Expression in a Note .....	423
Taking a Screen-Clipping Note.....	424
Recording and Playing Audio Notes.....	425
Recording an audio note.....	426
Playing an audio note.....	426
Attaching, Copying, and Linking Files to Notes .....	427
Attaching an Office file to a note.....	427
Copying an Office file into OneNote .....	429
Linking a Word or PowerPoint file to OneNote.....	429
Copying a note into another Office program.....	430
<b>Chapter 3: Finding and Organizing Your Notes.....</b>	<b>431</b>
Finding a Stray Note .....	431
Searching by word or phrase .....	431
Searching by author .....	432
Tagging Notes for Follow Up .....	433
Tagging a note .....	434
Arranging tagged notes in the task pane .....	435
Creating and modifying tags.....	435
Color-Coding Notebooks, Sections, and Pages .....	437
Merging and Moving Sections, Pages, and Notes .....	437
<b>Book VI: Outlook 2013 .....</b>	<b>439</b>
<b>Chapter 1: Outlook Basics .....</b>	<b>441</b>
What Is Outlook, Anyway?.....	441
Navigating the Outlook Folders .....	442
Categorizing Items .....	443
Creating a category.....	444
Assigning items to categories .....	445
Arranging items by category in folders.....	445
Searching for Stray Folder Items .....	445
Conducting an instant search .....	446
Refining a search.....	447
Conducting an advanced search.....	448
Deleting E-Mail Messages, Contacts, Tasks, and Other Items .....	448
Finding and Backing Up Your Outlook File .....	449
Cleaning Out Your Folders .....	450
Archiving the old stuff.....	450
Running the Mailbox Cleanup command.....	453

<b>Chapter 2: Maintaining the Contacts Folder .....</b>	<b>455</b>
Maintaining a Happy and Healthy Contacts Folder.....	455
Entering a new contact in the Contacts folder.....	456
Changing a contact's information.....	458
Contact Groups for Sending Messages to Groups.....	459
Creating a contact group .....	460
Addressing e-mail to a contact group .....	461
Editing a contact group.....	461
Finding a Contact in the Contacts Folder .....	461
Printing the Contacts Folder .....	462
Different ways to print contact information.....	462
Changing the look of printed pages.....	463
<b>Chapter 3: Handling Your E-Mail.....</b>	<b>465</b>
Setting Up an E-Mail Account.....	465
Addressing and Sending E-Mail Messages.....	466
The basics: Sending an e-mail message .....	466
Addressing an e-mail message .....	468
Sending copies and blind copies of messages .....	470
Replying to and forwarding e-mail messages .....	470
Sending Files and Photos.....	471
Sending a file along with a message .....	472
Including a photo in an e-mail message.....	472
Being Advised When Someone Has Read Your E-Mail.....	473
Receiving E-Mail Messages .....	474
Getting your e-mail .....	474
Being notified that e-mail has arrived .....	475
Reading Your E-Mail in the Inbox Window.....	475
Handling Files That Were Sent to You .....	478
Saving a file you received .....	478
Opening a file you received .....	479
Techniques for Organizing E-Mail Messages .....	479
Flagging e-mail messages .....	481
Being reminded to take care of e-mail messages.....	481
Rules for earmarking messages as they arrive .....	483
All about E-Mail Folders.....	484
Moving e-mail messages to different folders.....	484
Creating a new folder for storing e-mail.....	485
Yes, You Can Prevent Junk Mail (Sort Of).....	485
Defining what constitutes junk e-mail .....	486
Preventative medicine for junk e-mail.....	486
<b>Chapter 4: Managing Your Time and Schedule .....</b>	<b>489</b>
Introducing the Calendar.....	489
The Different Kinds of Activities.....	490
Seeing Your Schedule.....	491
Going to a different day, week, or month .....	491
Rearranging the Calendar window .....	492

Scheduling Appointments and Events .....	492
Scheduling an activity: The basics .....	492
Scheduling a recurring appointment or event .....	494
Scheduling an event.....	494
Cancelling, Rescheduling, and Altering Activities.....	495
<b>Chapter 5: Tasks, Reminders, and Notes .....</b>	<b>497</b>
Tasks: Seeing What Needs to Get Done .....	497
Entering a task in the Tasks window.....	498
Examining tasks in the Tasks window.....	499
Handling and managing tasks.....	500
Reminders for Being Alerted to Activities and Tasks .....	500
Handling reminder messages .....	501
Scheduling a reminder message .....	501
Making reminders work your way .....	502
Making Notes to Yourself .....	502
<b>Book VII: Access 2013 .....</b>	<b>505</b>
<b>Chapter 1: Introducing Access.....</b>	<b>507</b>
What Is a Database, Anyway?.....	507
Tables, Queries, Forms, and Other Objects .....	509
Database tables for storing information.....	509
Forms for entering data .....	509
Queries for getting the data out.....	511
Reports for presenting and examining data .....	512
Macros and modules .....	513
Creating a Database File .....	513
Creating a blank database file .....	513
Getting the help of a template.....	514
Finding Your Way Around the Navigation Pane .....	514
Designing a Database .....	516
Deciding what information you need .....	516
Separating information into different database tables .....	517
Choosing fields for database tables .....	519
Deciding on a primary key field for each database table .....	519
Mapping the relationships between tables .....	520
<b>Chapter 2: Building Your Database Tables .....</b>	<b>521</b>
Creating a Database Table.....	521
Creating a database table from scratch.....	522
Creating a database table from a template.....	522
Importing a table from another database.....	523
Opening and Viewing Tables.....	525
Entering and Altering Table Fields .....	526
Creating a field .....	526
All about data types.....	528

Designating the primary key field .....	530
Moving, renaming, and deleting fields .....	531
Field Properties for Making Sure That Data Entries Are Accurate.....	532
A look at the Field Properties settings.....	532
Creating a lookup data-entry list .....	537
Indexing for Faster Sorts, Searches, and Queries.....	540
Indexing a field .....	540
Indexing based on more than one field.....	540
Establishing Relationships Between Database Tables .....	542
Types of relationships.....	543
Handling tables in the Relationships window.....	544
Forging relationships between tables .....	545
Editing table relationships.....	547
<b>Chapter 3: Entering the Data.....</b>	<b>549</b>
The Two Ways to Enter Data .....	549
Entering the Data in Datasheet View.....	550
Entering data .....	551
Two tricks for entering data quicker.....	552
Changing the appearance of the datasheet.....	553
Entering the Data in a Form .....	554
Creating a form.....	555
Entering the data.....	555
Finding a Missing Record .....	556
Finding and Replacing Data.....	557
<b>Chapter 4: Sorting, Querying, and Filtering for Data .....</b>	<b>559</b>
Sorting Records in a Database Table .....	559
Ascending vs. descending sorts.....	559
Sorting records.....	560
Filtering to Find Information .....	560
Different ways to filter a database table .....	561
“Unfiltering” a database table .....	562
Filtering by selection .....	562
Filtering for input .....	563
Filtering by form.....	564
Querying: The Basics .....	566
Creating a new query.....	566
Viewing queries in Datasheet and Design view.....	567
Finding your way around the Query Design window .....	568
Choosing which database tables to query .....	568
Choosing which fields to query .....	569
Sorting the query results .....	570
Choosing which fields appear in query results.....	570
Entering criteria for a query.....	571
At last — saving and running a query.....	573

Six Kinds of Queries .....	574
Select query.....	574
Top-value query.....	574
Summary query.....	574
Calculation query.....	575
Delete query .....	577
Update query.....	577
<b>Chapter 5: Presenting Data in a Report .....</b>	<b>579</b>
Creating a Report.....	579
Opening and Viewing Reports .....	581
Tweaking a Report.....	581
<b>Book VIII: Working with Charts and Graphics.....</b>	<b>583</b>
<b>Chapter 1: Creating a Chart.....</b>	<b>585</b>
The Basics: Creating a Chart.....	585
Choosing the Right Chart .....	587
Providing the Raw Data for Your Chart .....	588
Positioning Your Chart in a Workbook, Page, or Slide .....	590
Changing a Chart's Appearance .....	591
Changing the chart type.....	591
Changing the size and shape of a chart .....	593
Choosing a new look for your chart .....	593
Changing the layout of a chart.....	593
Handling the gridlines .....	595
Changing a chart element's color, font, or other particular .....	596
Saving a Chart as a Template So That You Can Use It Again .....	597
Saving a chart as a template.....	597
Creating a chart from a template.....	598
Chart Tricks for the Daring and Heroic .....	598
Decorating a chart with a picture.....	598
Annotating a chart .....	599
Displaying the raw data alongside the chart.....	600
Placing a trendline on a chart .....	600
Troubleshooting a Chart .....	601
<b>Chapter 2: Making a SmartArt Diagram.....</b>	<b>603</b>
The Basics: Creating SmartArt Diagrams .....	603
Choosing a diagram .....	604
Making the diagram your own.....	605
Creating the Initial Diagram .....	605
Creating a diagram.....	606
Swapping one diagram for another .....	607

Changing the Size and Position of a Diagram.....	607
Laying Out the Diagram Shapes.....	608
Selecting a diagram shape .....	608
Removing a shape from a diagram .....	608
Moving diagram shapes to different positions .....	608
Adding shapes to diagrams apart from hierarchy diagrams .....	609
Adding shapes to hierarchy diagrams .....	610
Adding shapes to Organization charts.....	611
Promoting and demoting shapes in hierarchy diagrams .....	613
Handling the Text on Diagram Shapes.....	614
Entering text on a diagram shape.....	614
Entering bulleted lists on diagram shapes .....	615
Changing a Diagram's Direction .....	615
Choosing a Look for Your Diagram .....	616
Changing the Appearance of Diagram Shapes .....	617
Changing the size of a diagram shape.....	617
Exchanging one shape for another .....	618
Changing a shape's color, fill, or outline.....	618
Changing fonts and font sizes on shapes.....	620
Creating a Diagram from Scratch .....	620

## **Chapter 3: Handling Graphics, Photos, and Clip Art . . . . . 623**

All about Picture File Formats .....	623
Bitmap and vector graphics .....	623
Resolution .....	625
Compression.....	626
Color depth.....	626
Choosing file formats for graphics .....	627
Inserting a Picture in an Office File .....	627
Inserting a picture of your own.....	628
Obtaining a picture online .....	629
Touching Up a Picture .....	631
Softening and sharpening pictures.....	631
Correcting a picture's brightness and contrast.....	632
Recoloring a picture .....	633
Choosing an artistic effect .....	634
Selecting a picture style.....	635
Cropping off part of a picture.....	636
Removing the background.....	637
Compressing Pictures to Save Disk Space .....	639

## **Chapter 4: Drawing and Manipulating Lines, Shapes, and Other Objects . . . . . 641**

The Basics: Drawing Lines, Arrows, and Shapes .....	642
Handling Lines, Arrows, and Connectors .....	643
Changing the length and position of a line or arrow.....	644
Changing the appearance of a line, arrow, or connector .....	644

Attaching and handling arrowheads on lines and connectors ....	645
Connecting shapes by using connectors .....	646
Handling Rectangles, Ovals, Stars, and Other Shapes .....	648
Drawing a shape.....	648
Changing a shape's symmetry .....	650
Using a shape as a text box .....	650
WordArt for Embellishing Letters and Words .....	651
Creating WordArt.....	652
Editing WordArt .....	652
Manipulating Lines, Shapes, Art, Text Boxes, and Other Objects.....	652
Selecting objects so that you can manipulate them.....	654
Hiding and displaying the rulers and grid .....	655
Changing an Object's Size and Shape .....	656
Changing an Object's Color, Outline Color, and Transparency .....	657
Filling an object with color, a picture, or a texture .....	658
Making a color transparent .....	660
Putting the outline around an object .....	661
Moving and Positioning Objects.....	662
Tricks for aligning and distributing objects .....	662
When objects overlap: Choosing which appears	
above the other .....	665
Rotating and flipping objects .....	667
Grouping objects to make working with them easier .....	668
 <b>Book IX: Office 2013: One Step Beyond.....</b>	<b>671</b>
 <b>Chapter 1: Customizing an Office Program .....</b>	<b>673</b>
Customizing the Ribbon .....	673
Displaying and selecting tab, group, and command names .....	675
Moving tabs and groups on the Ribbon.....	675
Adding, removing, and renaming tabs, groups, and commands ...	676
Creating new tabs and groups .....	677
Resetting your Ribbon customizations .....	678
Customizing the Quick Access Toolbar.....	679
Adding buttons to the Quick Access toolbar .....	679
Changing the order of buttons on the Quick Access toolbar.....	680
Removing buttons from the Quick Access toolbar .....	681
Placing the Quick Access toolbar above or below the Ribbon....	681
Customizing the Status Bar .....	682
Changing the Screen Background .....	682
Customizing Keyboard Shortcuts in Word.....	684
 <b>Chapter 2: Ways of Distributing Your Work .....</b>	<b>687</b>
Printing — the Old Standby .....	687
Distributing a File in PDF Format.....	688
About PDF files .....	689
Saving an Office file as a PDF.....	689

Sending Your File in an E-Mail Message.....	690
Saving an Office File as a Web Page .....	691
Choosing how to save the component parts.....	692
Turning a file into a web page .....	692
Opening a web page in your browser .....	693
Blogging from inside Word.....	693
Describing a blog account to Word.....	694
Posting an entry to your blog.....	695
Taking advantage of the Blog Post tab.....	696
<b>Chapter 3: Working with Publisher.....</b>	<b>697</b>
“A Print Shop in a Can” .....	697
Introducing Frames .....	698
Creating a Publication.....	699
Redesigning a Publication .....	700
Choosing a different template.....	701
Choosing a color scheme.....	701
Setting up your pages.....	701
Getting a Better View of Your Work .....	701
Zooming in and out.....	702
Viewing single pages and two-page spreads .....	703
Going from page to page .....	703
Entering Text on the Pages .....	703
Making Text Fit in Text Frames.....	704
Fitting overflow text in a single frame.....	705
Making text flow from frame to frame.....	706
Making Text Wrap around a Frame or Graphic .....	707
Replacing the Placeholder Pictures .....	707
Inserting, Removing, and Moving Pages .....	709
Master Pages for Handling Page Backgrounds .....	710
Switching to Master Page view.....	710
Changing the look of a master page .....	710
Applying (or unapplying) a master page to publication pages ...	710
Running the Design Checker .....	711
Commercially Printing a Publication .....	712
<b>Book X: File Sharing and Collaborating.....</b>	<b>713</b>
<b>Chapter 1: Preparing to Use the Office Web Apps .....</b>	<b>715</b>
Introducing the Office Web Apps .....	715
Storing and Sharing Files on the Internet .....	716
Office Web Apps: The Big Picture .....	717
Creating a Microsoft Account .....	718
Signing In and Out of Your Microsoft Account.....	718
Navigating in a Microsoft Account .....	719

Managing Your Folders .....	719
Creating a folder.....	720
Viewing and locating folders in the SkyDrive window .....	720
Going from folder to folder in SkyDrive .....	722
Deleting, moving, and renaming folders .....	723
<b>Chapter 2: Using the Office Web Apps .....</b>	<b>725</b>
Creating an Office File in SkyDrive .....	725
Uploading Office Files to a Folder on SkyDrive.....	726
Saving a File from Office 2013 to SkyDrive .....	727
Opening Office Files Stored on SkyDrive .....	729
Opening a file in an Office Web App .....	729
Opening a file in an Office 2013 application .....	729
Downloading Files from SkyDrive to Your Computer .....	731
Managing Your Files on SkyDrive.....	731
<b>Chapter 3: Sharing and Collaborating .....</b>	<b>733</b>
Sharing Files: The Big Picture .....	733
File access privileges.....	733
Links for sharing files .....	734
Sharing Your Files and Folders with Others .....	735
Seeing Files and Folders Others Shared with You.....	737
Investigating and Changing How Files and Folders Are Shared .....	737
Co-editing Shared Files on SkyDrive .....	739
Soliciting Information with a Survey Form.....	739
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>743</b>



# *Introduction*

---

**T**his book is for users of Microsoft Office 2013 who want to get to the heart of Office without wasting time. Don't look in this book to find out how the different applications in the Office suite work. Look in this book to find out how *you* can get *your* work done better and faster with these applications.

I show you everything you need to make the most of each of the Office applications. On the way, you have a laugh or two. No matter how much or how little skill you bring to the table, this book will make you a better, more proficient, more confident user of the Office 2013 applications.

## *What's in This Book, Anyway?*

This book, comprising ten mini-books, is your guide to making the most of the Office applications. It's jam-packed with how-to's, advice, shortcuts, and tips. Here's a bare outline of the ten mini-books of this book:

- ◆ **Book I: Common Office Tasks:** Looks into the many commands and features that are common to all or several of the Office programs. Master the material in Book I and you will be well on your way to mastering all the programs. Book I explains handling text, the proofing tools, and speed techniques that can make you more productive in most of the Office applications.
- ◆ **Book II: Word 2013:** Explains the numerous features in Office's word processor, including how to create documents from letters to reports. Use the techniques described here to construct tables, manage styles, turn Word into a desktop-publishing program, and quickly dispatch office tasks such as mass-mailings. You also discover how to get Word's help in writing indexes, bibliographies, and other items of interest to scholars and report writers.
- ◆ **Book III: Excel 2013:** Shows the many different ways to crunch the numbers with the bean counter in the Office suite. Along the way, you find out how to design worksheets that are easy to read and understand, use data-validation rules to cut down on entry mistakes, write meaningful formulas, and analyze your data with PivotTables and the goal analysis tools. You find out just how useful Excel can be for financial analyses, data tracking, and forecasting.

- ◆ **Book IV: PowerPoint 2013:** Demonstrates how to construct a meaningful presentation that makes the audience say “Wow!” Included in Book IV are instructions for making a presentation livelier and more original, both when you create your presentation and when you deliver it.
- ◆ **Book V: OneNote 2013:** Covers how to write, store, and organize notes in the Office 2013 note-taking application. You find out how to record video and audio notes, link notes to files and web pages, find stray notes, and make OneNote a way to organize your thoughts and ideas.
- ◆ **Book VI: Outlook 2013:** Shows you how to send and receive e-mail messages and files, as well as track tasks, maintain an address book, and keep a calendar with Outlook. If you’re one of those people who receive numerous e-mail messages each day, you will be delighted to discover all the ways to track and manage e-mail — and junk e-mail — in Outlook.
- ◆ **Book VII: Access 2013:** Describes how to create a relational database for storing information, as well as query the database for information and gather the data into meaningful reports. Don’t be frightened by the word “database.” You will be surprised to discover how useful Access can be in your work.
- ◆ **Book VIII: Working with Charts and Graphics:** Explains how to present information in charts and diagrams, and how to use photos and clip art in your Word documents, PowerPoint presentations, and Excel spreadsheets. You also discover how to create lines, shapes, and text boxes to illustrate your ideas.
- ◆ **Book IX: Office 2013: One Step Beyond:** For people who want to take full advantage of Office, Book IX delves into customizing the Office 2013 applications. It also looks into alternative ways to distribute your work — in a blog or a web page, for example. You find out how to create brochures, pamphlets, newsletters, and other publications with Microsoft Publisher 2013, the “print shop in a can.”
- ◆ **Book X: File Sharing and Collaborating:** Explores how to use the Office Web Apps, the online versions of the Office software, to share files with co-workers and collaborate online. You find out how to manage folders on SkyDrive, the Microsoft service for storing and sharing files.

## *What Makes This Book Different*

You are holding in your hands a computer book designed to make learning the Office 2013 applications as easy and comfortable as possible. Besides the fact that this book is easy to read, it’s different from other books about Office. Read on to see why.

## ***Easy-to-look-up information***

This book is a reference, which means that readers have to be able to find instructions quickly. To that end, I have taken great pains to make sure that the material in this book is well organized and easy to find. The descriptive headings help you find information quickly. The bulleted and numbered lists make following instructions simpler. The tables make options easier to understand and compare.

I want you to be able to look down the page and see a heading or list with the name of the topic that concerns you. I want you to be able to find instructions quickly. Compare the table of contents in this book to the book next to it on the bookstore shelf. The table of contents in this book is put together better and presents topics so that you can find them in a hurry.

## ***A task-oriented approach***

Most computer books describe what the software is, but this book explains how to complete tasks with the software. I assume that you came to this book because you want to know how to *do* something — print form letters, create a worksheet, or query a database. You came to the right place. This book describes how to get tasks done.

## ***Meaningful screen shots***

The screen shots in this book show only the part of the screen that illustrates what is being explained in the text. When instructions refer to one part of the screen, only that part of the screen is shown. I took great care to make sure that the screen shots in this book serve to help you understand the Office 2013 programs and how they work. Compare this book to the one next to it on the bookstore shelf. Do you see how clean the screenshots in this book are?

# ***Foolish Assumptions***

Please forgive me, but I made one or two foolish assumptions about you, the reader of this book. I assumed that:

- ◆ You own a copy of Office 2013, the latest edition of Office, and you have installed it on your computer.
- ◆ You use a Windows operating system. All people who have the Windows operating system installed on their computers are invited to read this book. It serves people who have Windows 8, Windows 7, and Windows Vista.
- ◆ You are kind to foreign tourists and small animals.

### Conventions Used in This Book

I want you to understand all the instructions in this book, and in that spirit, I've adopted a few conventions.

Where you see boldface letters or numbers in this book, it means to type the letters or numbers. For example, “Enter **25** in the Percentage text box” means to do exactly that: Enter the number 25.

Sometimes two tabs on the Ribbon have the same name. To distinguish tabs with the same name from one another, I sometimes include one tab’s “Tools” heading in parentheses if there could be confusion about which tab I’m referring to. In PowerPoint, for example, when you see the words “(Table Tools) Design tab,” I’m referring to the Design tab for creating tables, not the Design tab for changing a slide’s appearance. (Book I, Chapter 1 describes the Ribbon and the tabs in detail.)

To show you how to step through command sequences, I use the ↗ symbol. For example, on the Insert tab in Word, you can click the Page Number button and choose Top of Page↗Simple to number pages. The ↗ symbol just creates a shorthand method of saying “Choose Top of Page and then choose Simple.”

To give most commands, you can press combinations of keys. For example, pressing Ctrl+S saves the file you’re working on. In other words, you can hold down the Ctrl key and press the S key to save a file. Where you see Ctrl+, Alt+, or Shift+ and a key name or key names, press the keys simultaneously.



Yet another way to give a command is to click a button. When I tell you to click a button, you see a small illustration of the button in the margin of this book (unless the button is too large to fit in the margin). The button shown here is the Save button, the one you can click to save a file.

### Icons Used in This Book

To help you get the most out of this book, I’ve placed icons here and there. Here’s what the icons mean:



Next to the Tip icon, you can find shortcuts and tricks of the trade to make your visit to Officeland more enjoyable.



Where you see the Warning icon, tread softly and carefully. It means that you are about to do something that you may regret later.



When I explain a juicy little fact that bears remembering, I mark it with a Remember icon. When you see this icon, prick up your ears. You will discover something that you need to remember throughout your adventures with Word, Excel, PowerPoint, or the other Office application I am demystifying.

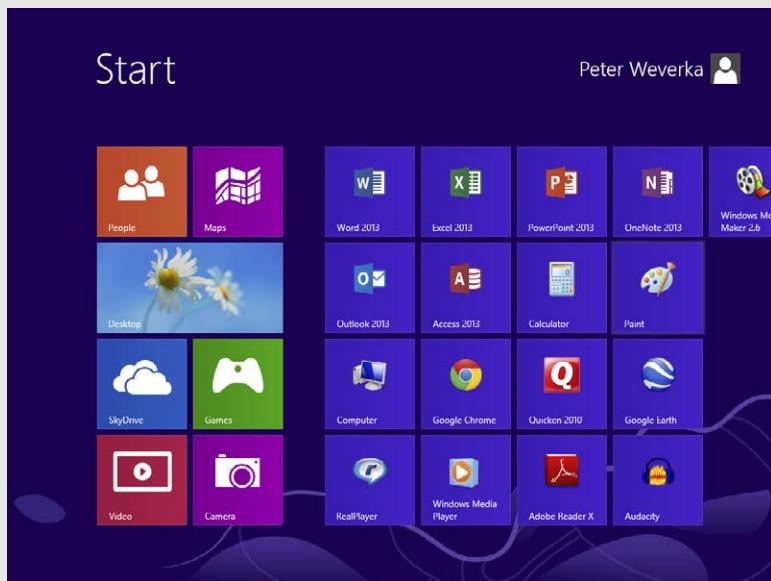


When I am forced to describe high-tech stuff, a Technical Stuff icon appears in the margin. You don't have to read what's beside the Technical Stuff icons if you don't want to, although these technical descriptions often help you understand how a software feature works.



# Book I

# Common Office Tasks



Visit [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com) for great Dummies content online.

# *Contents at a Glance*

<b>Chapter 1: Office Nuts and Bolts .....</b>	<b>9</b>
A Survey of Office Applications .....	9
Starting an Office Program .....	11
Find Your Way Around the Office Interface .....	14
Saving Your Files .....	20
Navigating the Save As and Open Windows.....	23
Opening and Closing Files .....	25
Reading and Recording File Properties .....	26
Locking a File with a Password.....	27
<b>Chapter 2: Wrestling with the Text.....</b>	<b>29</b>
Manipulating the Text.....	29
Changing the Look of Text.....	32
Quick Ways to Handle Case, or Capitalization.....	38
Entering Symbols and Foreign Characters.....	40
Creating Hyperlinks.....	41
<b>Chapter 3: Speed Techniques Worth Knowing About.....</b>	<b>47</b>
Undoing and Repeating Commands .....	47
Zooming In, Zooming Out .....	48
Viewing a File Through More Than One Window.....	50
Correcting Typos on the Fly.....	50
Entering Text Quickly with the AutoCorrect Command.....	52

# *Chapter 1: Office Nuts and Bolts*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Introducing the Office applications
- ✓ Running an Office application
- ✓ Exploring the Office interface
- ✓ Saving and auto-recovering your files
- ✓ Opening and closing an Office file
- ✓ Recording a file's document properties
- ✓ Clamping a password on a file

**C**hapter 1 is where you get your feet wet with Office 2013. Walk right to the shore and sink your toes in the water. Don't worry; I won't push you from behind.

In this chapter, you meet the Office applications and discover speed techniques for opening applications and files. I show you around the Ribbon, Quick Access toolbar, and other Office landmarks. I also show you how to open files, save files, and clamp a password on a file.

## *A Survey of Office Applications*

*Office 2013*, sometimes called the *Microsoft Office Suite*, is a collection of computer applications. Why is it called Office? I think because the people who invented it wanted to make software for completing tasks that need doing in a typical office. When you hear someone talk about “Office” or “Office software,” they’re talking about several different applications. Table 1-1 describes the Office applications.

**Table 1-1**

**Office Applications**

<i>Application</i>	<i>Description</i>
Word	A word processor for writing letters, reports, and so on. A Word file is called a <i>document</i> (see Book II).
Excel	A number cruncher for performing numerical analyses. An Excel file is called a <i>workbook</i> (see Book III).

*(continued)*

**Table 1-1 (continued)**

<i>Application</i>	<i>Description</i>
PowerPoint	A means of creating slide presentations to give in front of audiences. A PowerPoint file is called a <i>presentation</i> , or sometimes a <i>slide show</i> (see Book IV).
OneNote	A way to take notes and organize your ideas (see Book V).
Outlook	A personal information manager, scheduler, and e-mailer (see Book VI).
Access	A database management application (see Book VII).
Publisher	A means of creating desktop-publishing files — pamphlets, notices, newsletters, and the like (see Book IX, Chapter 3).

Table 1-2 describes the different Office 2013 editions. The Office Web Apps are free, abridged versions of Office software that were designed to help people collaborate online (Book X describes how to use them). Office 365 is a subscription service. For a monthly fee, subscribers to Office 365 can download and use Office software.

**Table 2-2** *Office 2013 Editions*

<i>Edition</i>	<i>Applications</i>
Office 2013 Professional	Word, Excel, PowerPoint, OneNote, Outlook, Access, Publisher
Office 365	Word, Excel, PowerPoint, OneNote, Outlook, Access, Publisher
Office 2013 Home & Business	Word, Excel, PowerPoint, OneNote, Outlook
Office 2013 Home & Student	Word, Excel, PowerPoint, OneNote
Office Web Apps	Word, Excel, PowerPoint, OneNote



If you're new to Office, don't be daunted by the prospect of having to study so many different applications. The applications have much in common, with the same commands showing up throughout. For example, the method of choosing fonts is the same in Word, Outlook, PowerPoint, Excel, Access, and Publisher. Master one Office program and you're well on your way to mastering the next.

## Starting an Office Program

Unless you start an Office program, you can't create a document, construct a worksheet, or make a database. Many have tried to undertake these tasks with mud and papier-mâché without starting a program first, but all have failed.

How you start an Office program depends on which version of the Windows operating system is on your computer. Read on.

### Starting an Office program in Windows 7 and Vista

Here are the various ways to start an Office program on computers that run Windows 7 and Windows Vista:

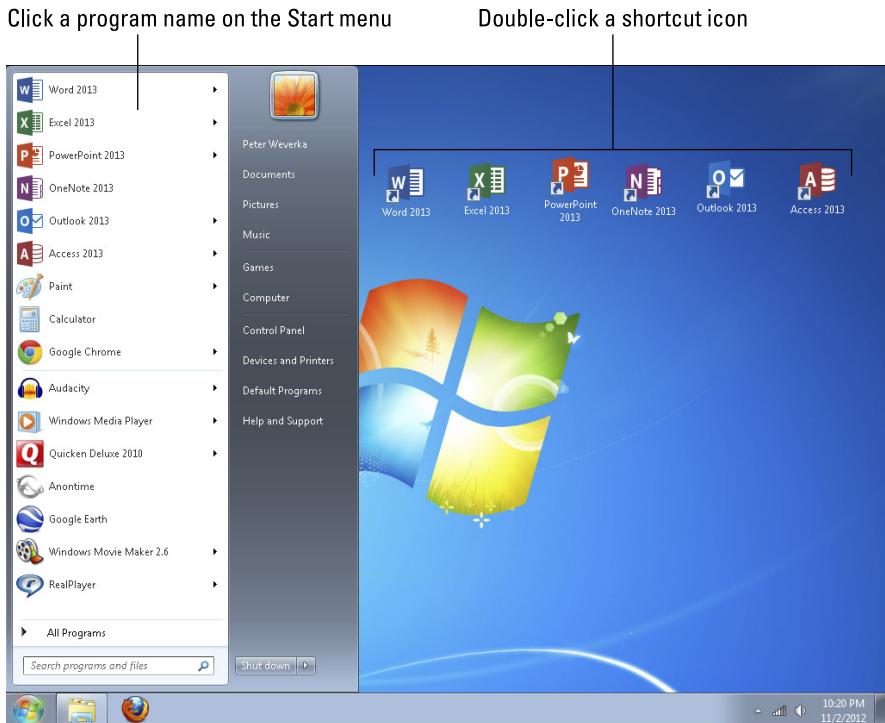
- ♦ **The old-fashioned way:** Click the Start button, choose All Programs→Microsoft Office 2013, and then choose the program's name on the submenu.
- ♦ **The Start menu:** Click the program's name on the Start menu, as shown in Figure 1-1. The *Start menu* is the menu you see when you click the Start button. By placing a program's name on the Start menu, you can open the program simply by clicking the Start button and then clicking the program's name. To place an Office program on the Start menu:
  1. **Click the Start button and choose All Programs→Microsoft Office 2013.**
  2. **Move the pointer over the program's name on the submenu, but don't click to select the program's name.**
  3. **Right-click the program's name and choose Pin to Start Menu on the shortcut menu that appears.**

To remove a program's name from the Start menu, right-click the name and choose Remove from This List.

- ♦ **Desktop shortcut icon:** Double-click the program's shortcut icon (see Figure 1-1). A *shortcut icon* is an icon you can double-click to do something in a hurry. By creating a shortcut icon on the Windows desktop, you can double-click the icon and immediately start an Office program. To place an Office shortcut icon on the desktop:

1. **Click the Start button and choose All Programs→Microsoft Office 2013.**

## 12 Starting an Office Program



**Figure 1-1:**  
Two of  
several  
ways to  
start an  
Office  
program in  
Windows  
7 and  
Windows  
Vista.

2. Move the pointer over the program's name on the submenu, but don't click the program's name.
3. Right-click the program's name and choose Send To→Desktop (Create Shortcut) on the shortcut menu that appears.

To remove a desktop shortcut icon from the Windows desktop, right-click it, choose Delete, and click Yes in the Delete Shortcut dialog box. Don't worry about deleting a program when you delete its shortcut icon. All you do when you choose Delete is remove the program's shortcut icon from the desktop and make your desktop a little less crowded.

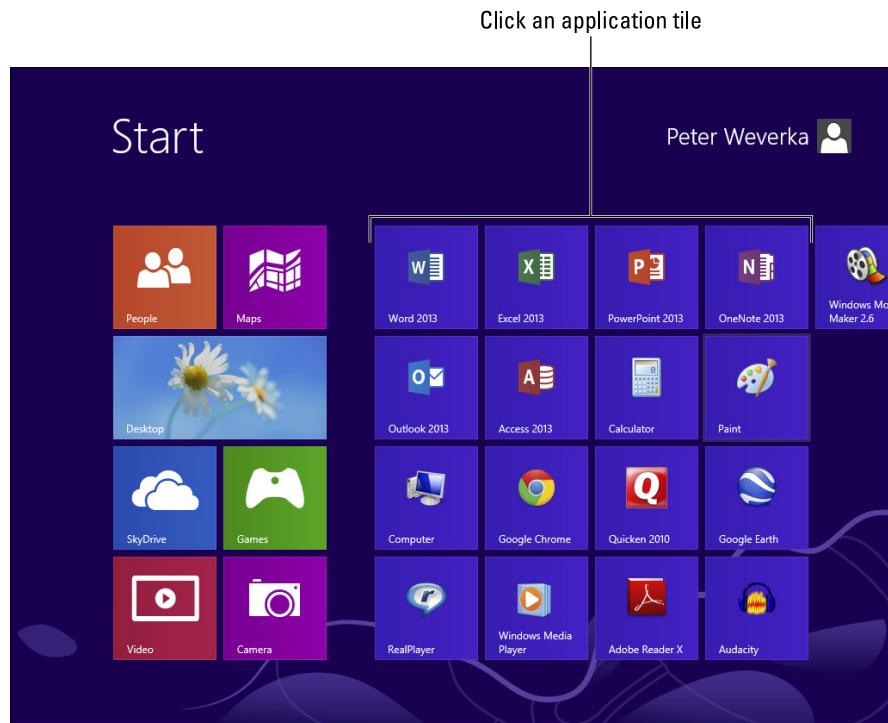
- ◆ **Taskbar (Windows 7 only):** Click the program's icon on the Taskbar. To place a program's icon on the Taskbar, right-click its name on the Start menu or All Programs menu and choose Pin to Taskbar. To remove a program's icon from the Taskbar, right-click it and choose Unpin This Program from Taskbar.

## Starting an Office program in Windows 8

Here are the various ways to start an Office program on computers that run Windows 8:

- ◆ **The conventional way:** Right-click a blank area on the screen and click All Apps (located in the lower-left corner of the screen). Then scroll to the Office application you want to open and click its name.
- ◆ **The Start menu:** Click the application's tile on the Start screen, as shown in Figure 1-2. To place an Office application tile on the Start screen:
  1. Right-click a blank area of the screen.
  2. Choose All Apps (located in the lower-right corner of the screen).
  3. Scroll to the Office application that needs a tile on the Start screen.
  4. Right-click the application's name.
  5. Click Pin to Start.

You can find this command at the bottom of the screen.



**Figure 1-2:**  
Starting  
an Office  
program in  
Windows 8.

- ◆ **Desktop shortcut icon:** Double-click the program's shortcut icon. To place an Office shortcut icon on the Windows 8 desktop:

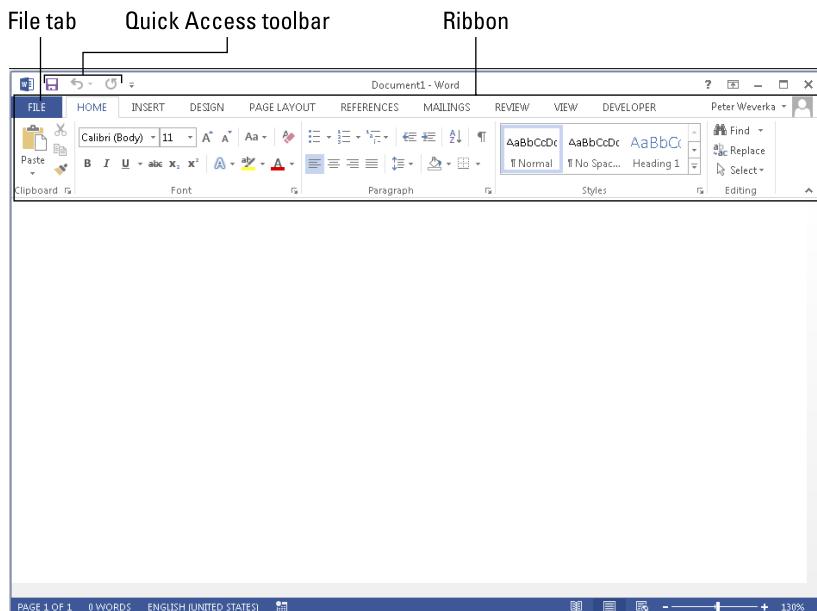
1. **In the Start window, right-click a blank area on the screen.**
2. **Click All Apps on the Windows toolbar.**
3. **In the Apps window, scroll to the right until you see the Office application tiles (Access 2013, Excel 2013, and so on).**
4. **Right-click the name of an Office 2013 program and choose Send To→Desktop (Create Shortcut) on the shortcut menu.**

To remove a desktop shortcut icon from the Windows desktop, right-click it, choose Delete, and click Yes in the Delete Shortcut dialog box.

## Finding Your Way Around the Office Interface

*Interface*, also called the *user interface*, is a computer term that describes how a software program presents itself to the people who use it (and you probably thought *interface* meant two people kissing). Figure 1-3 shows the Word interface. You will be glad to know that the interface of all the Office programs is pretty much the same.

These pages give you a quick tour of the Office interface and explain what the various parts of the interface are. Click along with me as I describe the interface and you'll know what's what by the time you finish reading these pages.



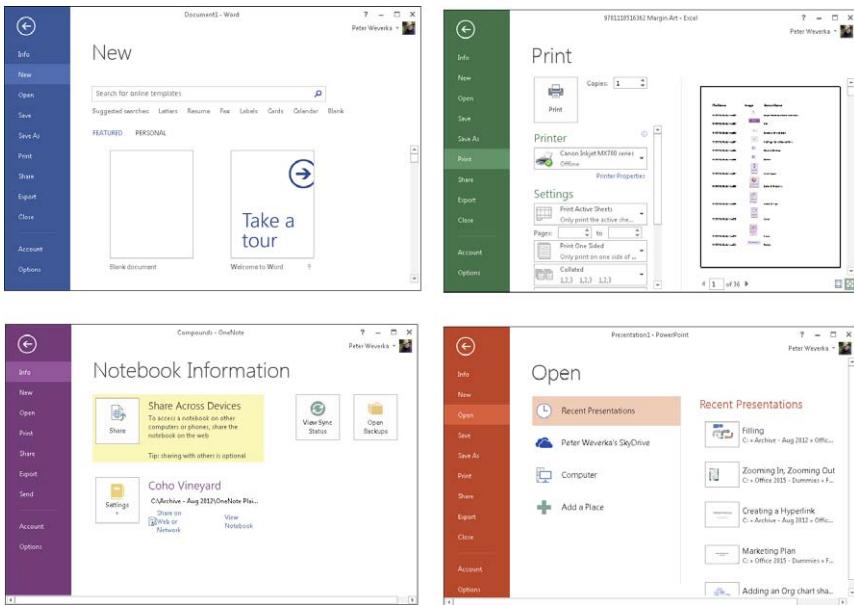
**Figure 1-3:**  
The File  
tab, Quick  
Access  
toolbar, and  
Ribbon.



## The File tab and Backstage

In the upper-left corner of the window is the *File tab* (see Figure 1-3). Clicking the File tab opens the Backstage (Microsoft's word, not mine). As shown in Figure 1-4, the *Backstage* offers commands for creating, opening, and saving files, as well as performing other file-management tasks. Notice the Options command on the Backstage. You can choose Options to open the Options dialog box and tell the application you are working in how you want it to work.

To leave the Backstage and return to the application window, click the Back button. This button is located in the upper-left corner of the Backstage.



**Figure 1-4:**  
The  
Backstage  
in  
(clockwise  
from upper  
left) Word,  
Excel,  
PowerPoint,  
and  
OneNote.

## The Quick Access toolbar

No matter where you travel in an Office program, you see the *Quick Access toolbar* in the upper-left corner of the screen (refer to Figure 1-3). This toolbar offers three necessary buttons: the all-important Save button, the trusty Undo button, and the convenient Repeat button. You can place more buttons on the Quick Access toolbar as well as move the toolbar lower in the window. I explain how to customize the Quick Access toolbar in Book IX, Chapter 1.

## The Ribbon and its tabs

Across the top of the screen is the *Ribbon*, an assortment of different *tabs* (see Figure 1-3); click a tab to view a different set of commands and undertake a task. For example, click the Home tab to format text; click the Insert tab to insert a table or chart. Each tab offers a different set of buttons, menus, and galleries.

## Collapsing and showing the Ribbon

To get more room to view items on-screen, consider collapsing the Ribbon. When the Ribbon is collapsed, only tab names on the Ribbon appear; the buttons and galleries are hidden from view.

Use these techniques to collapse the Ribbon:

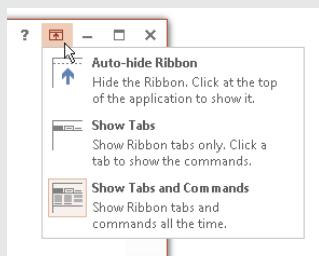
- ✓ Click the Collapse the Ribbon button (located to the right of the Ribbon).
- ✓ Press Ctrl+F1.
- ✓ Right-click a tab on the Ribbon and select Collapse the Ribbon on the shortcut menu.
- ✓ Double-click a tab on the Ribbon.
- ✓ Click the Ribbon Display options button and choose Show Tabs.

Use these techniques to show the Ribbon when it is collapsed:

- ✓ Click a tab to display the Ribbon and then click the Pin the Ribbon button.
- ✓ Press Ctrl+F1.

- ✓ Right-click a tab and deselect Collapse the Ribbon.
- ✓ Double-click a tab on the Ribbon.
- ✓ Click the Ribbon Display options button and choose Show Tabs and Commands.

Want to hide the Ribbon altogether? Click the Ribbon Display Options button and choose Auto-Hide Ribbon on the drop-down list. To see the Ribbon again, click the top of the application.



## Context-sensitive tabs

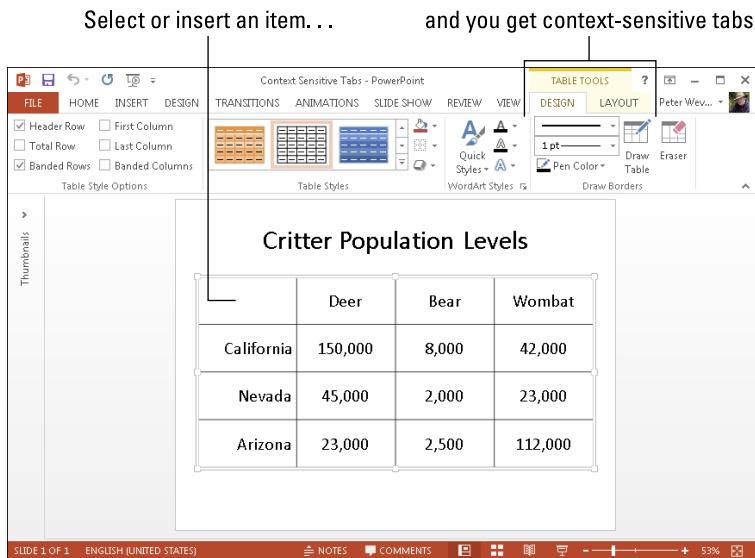
To keep the Ribbon from getting too crowded with tabs, Microsoft has arranged for some tabs to appear only in context — that is, they appear on the Ribbon after you insert or click something. These tabs are called *context-sensitive tabs*.

In Figure 1-5, for example, I inserted a table, and two additional tabs — the Design and the Layout tab — appear on the Ribbon under the heading “Table Tools.” These context-sensitive tabs offer commands for designing and laying out tables. The idea behind context-sensitive tabs is to direct you to the commands you need and exclude all other commands.



If you can't find a tab on the Ribbon, the tab is probably context-sensitive. You have to insert or select an item to make some tabs appear on the Ribbon. Context-sensitive tabs always appear on the right side of the Ribbon under a heading with the word *Tools* in its name.

**Figure 1-5:**  
After you insert or select an item, context-sensitive tabs appear on the Ribbon.



## The anatomy of a tab

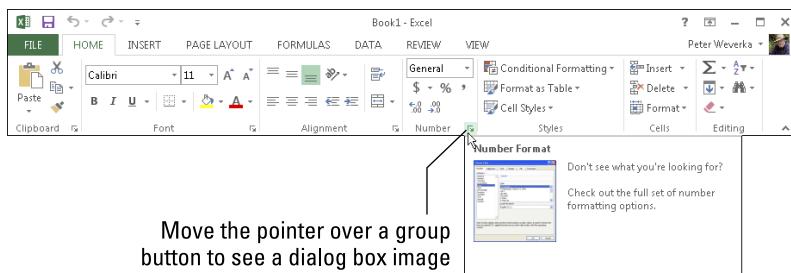
All tabs are different in terms of the commands they offer, but all are the same insofar as how they present commands. On every tab, commands are organized in groups. On every tab, you find group buttons, buttons, and galleries. Group buttons, buttons, galleries — what's up with that?

### Groups and group buttons

Commands on each tab are organized into *groups*. The names of these groups appear below the buttons and galleries on tabs. For example, the Home tab in Excel is organized into several groups, including the Clipboard, Font, Alignment, and Number group, as shown in Figure 1-6.

**Figure 1-6:**  
Each tab is organized into groups; some groups offer group buttons.

Move the pointer over a group button to see a dialog box image



Groups tell you what the buttons and galleries above their names are used for. On the Home tab in Excel, for example, the buttons in the Font group are for formatting text. Read group names to help find the command you need.

Many groups have a *group button* that you can click to open a dialog box or task pane (officially, Microsoft calls these little buttons *dialog box launchers*, but let's act like grownups, shall we?). Group buttons are found to the right of group names. Move the pointer over a group button to open a pop-up help box with a description of the dialog box or task pane that appears when the button is clicked (refer to Figure 1-6).

### ***Buttons and galleries***

Go to any tab and you find buttons of all shapes and sizes. What matters isn't a button's shape or size, but whether a down-pointing arrow appears on its face. Click a button *with* an arrow and you get a drop-down list with options you can choose.



You can find out what clicking a button does by moving the pointer over it, which makes a pop-up description of the button appear.

Built in to some tabs are galleries. A *gallery* presents you with visual options for changing an item. When you move the pointer over a gallery choice, the item on your page or slide — the table, chart, or diagram, for example — changes appearance. In galleries, you can preview different choices before you click to select the choice you want.

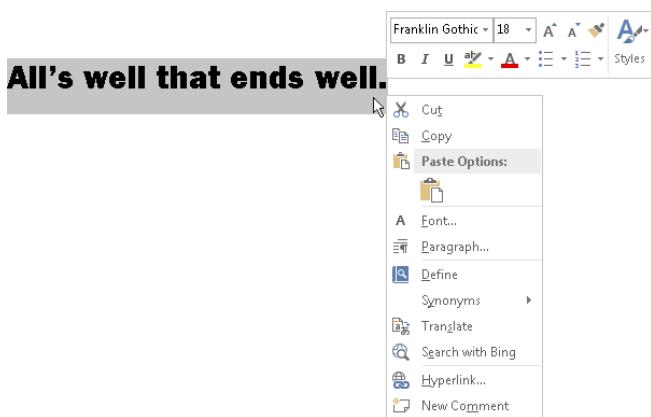
### ***Live previewing***

Thanks to *live previewing*, you can see the results of a menu or gallery choice before actually making the choice. Here's how live previewing works: Move the pointer over an option in a gallery or drop-down list and glance at your page or slide. You can see the results of selecting the option. For example, you see a different font or shape color. You can judge whether choosing the option is worthwhile without choosing the option first.

### ***Mini-toolbars and shortcut menus***

A *mini-toolbar* is a toolbar that appears on-screen to help you do a task, as shown in Figure 1-7. You can select an option from a drop-down list or click a button on the mini-toolbar to complete a task. Mini-toolbars are very convenient. They save you the trouble of going to a different tab to complete a task.

Similar to mini-toolbars are the shortcut menus you get when you right-click, as shown in Figure 1-7. *Right-click* means to click the right, not the left, mouse button. Right-click just about anywhere and you get a shortcut menu of some kind.



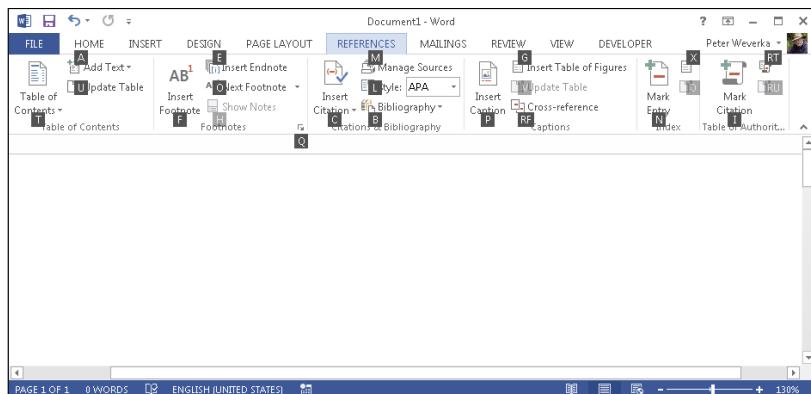
**Figure 1-7:**  
A mini-toolbar (top) and shortcut menu (bottom).

In Word, Excel, and PowerPoint, you see a mini-toolbar *and* a shortcut menu when you right-click text.

## Office 2013 for keyboard lovers

People who like to give commands by pressing keyboard shortcuts will be glad to know that Office offers Alt+key shortcuts. Press the Alt key and letters — they're called *KeyTips* — appear on tab names, as shown in Figure 1-8. After you press the Alt key, follow these instructions to make use of KeyTips:

- ◆ **Go to a tab:** Press a KeyTip on a tab to visit a tab.
- ◆ **Make KeyTips appear on menu items:** Press a KeyTip on a button or gallery to make KeyTips appear on menu items.



**Figure 1-8:**  
Press the Alt key to see KeyTips.

## Saving Your Files

Soon after you create a new file, be sure to save it. And save your file from time to time while you work on it as well. Until you save your work, it rests in the computer's electronic memory (RAM), a precarious location. If a power outage occurs or your computer stalls, you lose all the work you did since the last time you saved your file. Make it a habit to save files every ten minutes or so, or when you complete an important task.

These pages explain how to save a file, declare where you want to save files by default, and handle files that were saved automatically after a computer failure.

### Saving a file

To save a file:



FILE

- ◆ Click the Save button (you'll find it on the Quick Access toolbar).
- ◆ Press Ctrl+S.
- ◆ Go to the File tab and choose Save.

### Saving a file for the first time

The first time you save a presentation, the Save As dialog box opens. It invites you to give the file a name and choose a folder in which to store it. Enter a descriptive name in the File Name text box. To locate a folder for storing your presentation, see "Navigating the Save As and Open Windows," later in this chapter.

### Declaring where you like to save files

When you attempt to save a file for the first time in the Save As dialog box, Office shows you the contents of the Documents folder on the assumption that you keep most of your files in that folder. The Documents folder is the center of the universe as far as Office is concerned, but perhaps you keep the majority of your files in a different folder. How would you like to see it first in the Save As and Open dialog boxes?

To direct Office to the folder you like best and make it appear first in the Save As and Open dialog boxes, follow these steps:

FILE

1. In Word, Excel, PowerPoint, or Access, go to the File tab and choose Options.

You see the Options dialog box.

## Converting Office 97–2010 files to 2013

When you open a file made in an earlier version of Office, the program switches to *compatibility mode*. Features that weren't part of earlier versions of the program are shut down. You can tell when a file is in compatibility mode because the words *Compatibility Mode* appear in the title bar next to the file's name.

Follow these steps to convert a 97–2010 file for use in an Office 2013 program:

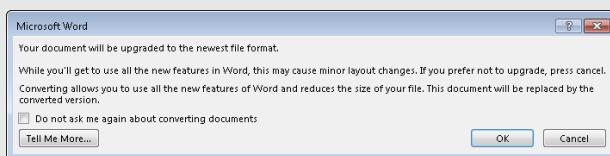
**1. Go to the File tab.**

**2. Choose Info.**

**3. Click the Convert button.**

A dialog box informs you what converting means. If you don't see the Convert option, your file has been converted already.

**4. Click OK.**



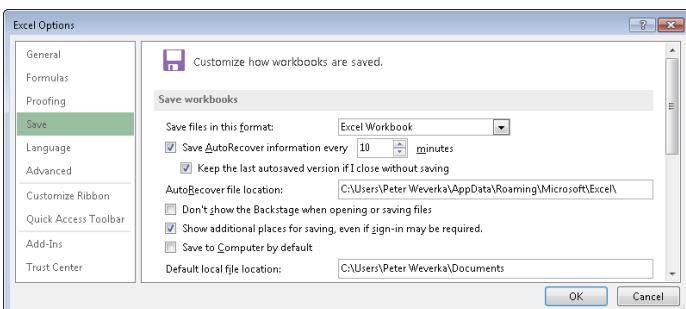
**2. In Word, Excel, and PowerPoint, select the Save category; in Access, select the General category.**

Figure 1-9 shows the topmost options in this category.

**3. In the Default File Location (or Default Database Folder) text box, enter the address of the folder where you prefer to keep your files.**

For example, if you're fond of keeping files in the My Stuff folder on the C drive of your computer, enter C:\My Stuff or click the Browse button (if it's available) and select the My Stuff folder in the Modify Location dialog box.

**4. Click OK.**



**Figure 1-9:**  
The Save  
options in  
the Options  
dialog box.

## When disaster strikes!

After your computer fails and you restart an Office program, you see the Document Recovery task pane with a list of files that were open when the failure occurred:

- ✓ *AutoSave* files are files that Office saves as part of its AutoRecovery procedure (see “Saving AutoRecovery information”).
- ✓ *Original* files are files that you save by clicking the Save button.

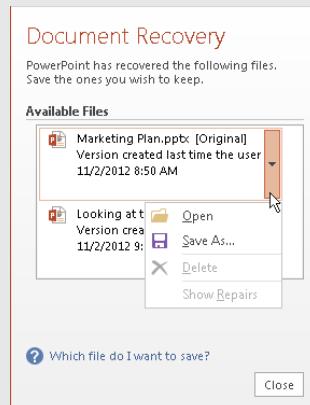
The Document Recovery task pane tells you when each file was saved. By studying the time listings, you can tell which version of a file — the AutoRecovery file or the file you saved — is most up to date.

Open the drop-down list for a file and select one of these options:

- ✓ **Open/View:** Opens the file so that you can examine and work on it. If you want to keep it, click the Save button.
- ✓ **Save As:** Opens the Save As dialog box so that you can save the file under a different

name. Choose this command to keep a copy of the recovered file on hand in case you need it.

- ✓ **Delete:** Deletes the AutoRecovery file.
- ✓ **Show Repairs:** Shows repairs made to the file.



## Saving AutoRecovery information

To ensure against data loss owing to computer and power failures, Office saves files on its own every ten minutes. These files are saved in an AutoRecovery file. After your computer fails, you can try to recover some of the work you lost by getting it from the AutoRecovery file (see the “When disaster strikes!” sidebar).

Office saves AutoRecovery files every ten minutes, but if you want the program to save the files more or less frequently, you can change the AutoRecovery setting. Auto-recovering taxes a computer’s memory. If your computer is sluggish, consider making AutoRecovery files at intervals longer than ten minutes; if your computer fails often and you’re worried about losing data, make AutoRecovery files more frequently.

Follow these steps to tell Office how often to save data in an AutoRecovery file:

**FILE**

- 1. On the File tab, choose Options.**  
The Options dialog box appears.
- 2. Select the Save category (refer to Figure 1-9).**
- 3. Enter a Minutes setting in the Save AutoRecover Information Every box.**
- 4. Click OK.**

## *Navigating the Save As and Open Windows*

The Open window and Save As window offer a bunch of different ways to locate a file you want to open or locate the folder where you want to save a file. Figure 1-10 shows the Open and Save As windows. To open these windows, click the File tab and choose Open or Save As.

Follow these steps to open a file or save a file for the first time (or save a file under a different name or in a different location):

**FILE**

- 1. Click the File tab.**
- 2. Choose Open or Save As.**

The Open or Save As window opens (refer to Figure 1-10).

On the Recent list, the Open window lists files you recently opened. You can open a file on this list by clicking its name. To list files you open frequently at the top of the Recent list, click the Pin This Item button. You see this button when you move the pointer over a filename on the list.

- 3. Select the location where you expect to find or want to save the file (select Computer, most likely).**

Select Computer to rummage in folders on your computer. You can also list network and SkyDrive locations in the Open and Save As windows. (I explain SkyDrive in Book X.)

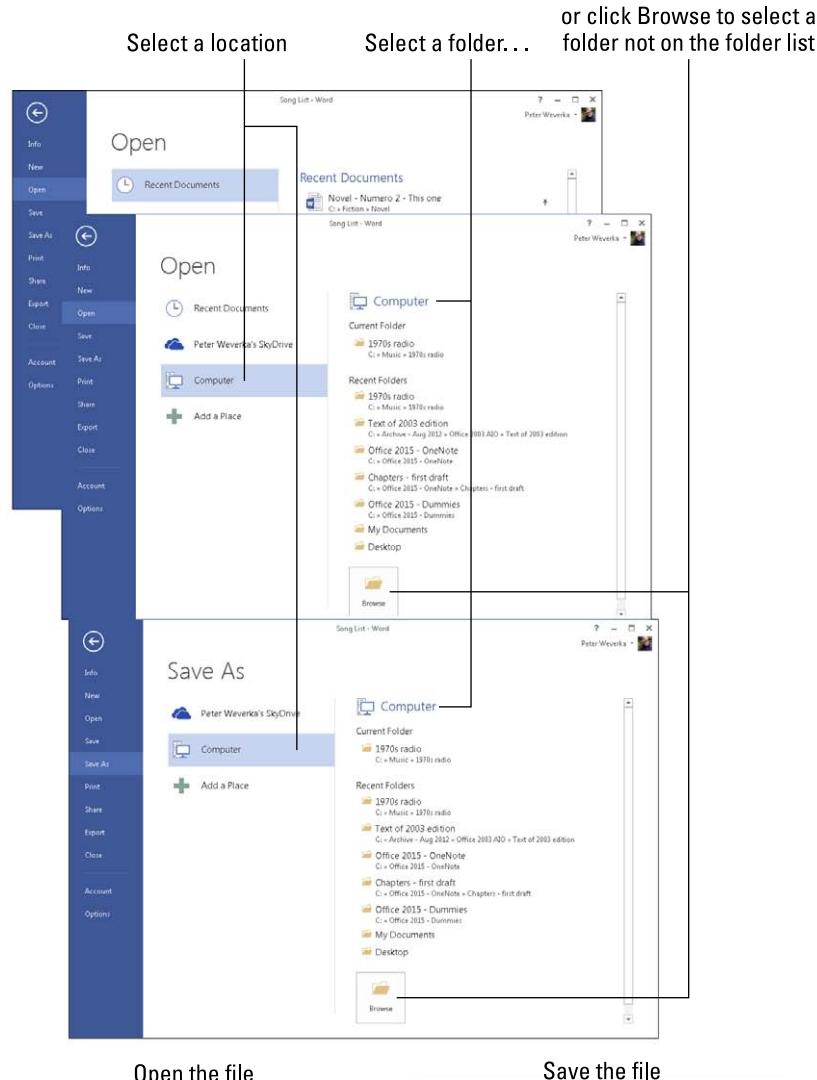
- 4. Select the folder where you expect to find or want to save the file.**

The window provides a couple of shortcuts for finding that folder:

- **Current Folder:** Click the name of the folder you most recently opened.
- **Recent Folders:** Click the name of a folder you opened recently.
- **Browse button:** Click the Browse button, and in the Open or Save As dialog box, locate and select a folder.

The Open or Save As dialog box appears.

## 24 Navigating the Save As and Open Windows



**Figure 1-10:**  
The Open window (top) and Save As window (bottom) work much the same way.

**5. Open or save the file.**

At last, the moment of truth:

- **Open the file:** Select the filename and click the Open button (or double-click the filename).
- **Save the file:** Enter a descriptive name for the file and click the Save button.

## *Opening and Closing Files*

To get to work on a file, you have to open it first. And, of course, you close a file when you're finished working on it and want to stop and smell the roses.

### *Opening a file*

Follow these steps to open a file:

FILE

**1. On the File tab, choose Open (or press Ctrl+O).**

You see the Open window. It lists files you recently opened (and files you pinned to the Recent list).

**2. If the name of the file you want to open is on the Recent list, click the name to open the file.**

If the name isn't on the list, go to Step 3.

**3. Click the location — Computer, SkyDrive, a network folder — where the file is located.**

Click Computer if the file is located on your computer. The Open window shows the following (see Figure 1-10):

- *Current Folder.* The folder where the file you opened most recently is stored.
- *Recent Folders.* Folders where files you opened recently are stored.

**4. Click the folder where the file you want to open is stored; if the folder isn't listed in the Open window, click the Browse button and select the folder in the Open dialog box.**

The Open dialog box appears.

**5. Select the file.****6. Click the Open button.**

Your file opens. You can also double-click a filename in the Open dialog box to open a file.



The fastest way to open a file is to locate it in Windows Explorer (Windows 7 and Windows Vista) or File Explorer (Windows 8) and double-click its name.

### Closing a file

Closing a file is certainly easier than opening one. To close a file, save your file and use one of these techniques:

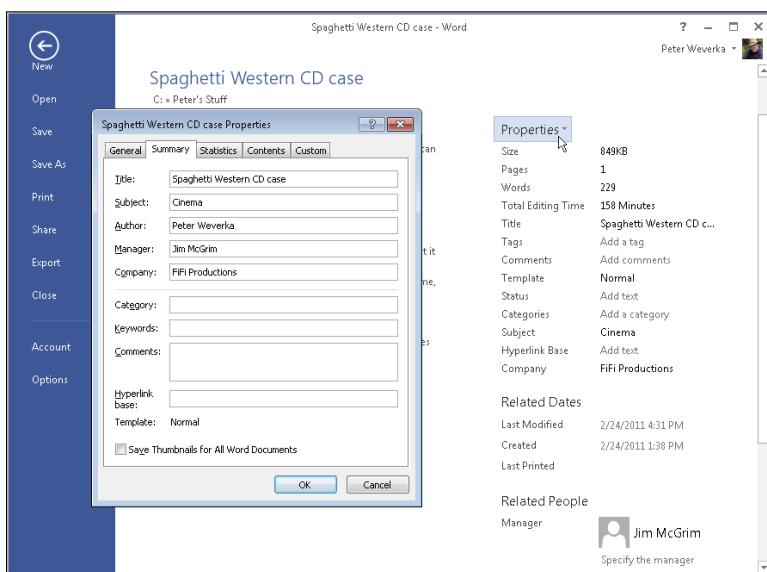
- ◆ On the File tab, choose Close. The program remains open although the file is closed.
- ◆ Click the Close button — the *X* in the upper-right corner of the window (or press Alt+F4).
- ◆ Click the program icon (in the upper-left corner of the screen) and choose Close.

### Reading and Recording File Properties

*Properties* are a means of describing a file. If you manage two dozen or more files, you owe it to yourself to record properties. You can use them later to identify files.

#### FILE

To read property descriptions, go to the File tab, choose Info, and examine the Info window. Property descriptions are found on the right side of the window, as shown in Figure 1-11.



**Figure 1-11:**  
View and  
enter  
properties  
in the Info  
window.

To record even more descriptions, click the Properties button and choose one of these commands on the drop-down list:

- ◆ **Show Document Panel:** The Document Properties panel appears so that you can enter more descriptions and comments.
- ◆ **Advanced Properties:** The Properties dialog box appears. Enter information about your file on the Summary and Custom tab.

You can read a file's properties without opening a file. In Windows Explorer, File Explorer, or the Open dialog box, right-click a file's name and choose Properties. You see the Properties dialog box. Go to the Details tab to see descriptions you entered.

## *Locking a File with a Password*

Perhaps you want to submit your file to others for critical review but you don't want any Tom, Dick, or Harry to look at your file. In that case, lock your file with a password and give out the password only to people whose opinions you trust. These pages explain how to password-protect a file, open a file that is locked with a password, and remove the password from a file.

### *Password-protecting a file*

Follow these steps to clamp a password on a file, such that others need a password to open and perhaps also edit it:

FILE

1. Go to the File tab and choose Info.
2. In the Info window, click the Protect Document (or Workbook or Presentation) button, and choose Encrypt with Password on the drop-down list.

The Encrypt dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 1-12.

**Figure 1-12:**  
Enter pass-  
words for  
the file in this  
dialog box.



**3. Enter a password in the Password text box and click OK.**

Others will need the password you enter to open the file. No ifs, ands, or buts. They have to enter the password.



Passwords are case-sensitive. In other words, you have to enter the correct combination of upper- and lowercase letters to successfully enter the password. If the password is *Valparaiso* (with an uppercase V), entering *valparaiso* (with a lowercase v) is deemed the wrong password and doesn't open the file.

**4. In the Confirm Password dialog box, enter the password again.**

Figure 1-12 shows the Confirm Password dialog box.

**5. Click OK.**

The Info window informs you that a password is required to open the file.

### ***Removing a password from a file***

Follow these steps to remove a password from a file:

FILE

- 1. Open the file that needs its password removed.**
- 2. Go to the File tab and choose Info to open the Information window.**
- 3. Click the Protect Document button, and choose Encrypt with Password.**

The Encrypt Document dialog box appears (refer to Figure 1-12).

- 4. Delete the password and click OK.**

# ***Chapter 2: Wrestling with the Text***

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ✓ Selecting, moving, copying, and deleting text
- ✓ Changing the appearance, size, and color of text
- ✓ Changing the case of letters
- ✓ Inserting foreign characters and symbols
- ✓ Hyperlinking to Web pages and other places in a file

To enter text, all you have to do is wiggle your fingers over the keyboard. Everybody knows that. But not everyone knows all the different ways to change the look and size of text in an Office 2013 file. In this chapter, I explain how to do that as well as how to move, copy, and delete text. You find out how to quickly change a letter's case and enter a symbol or foreign character. Finally, I show you how to link your files to the Internet by fashioning a hyperlink.

## ***Manipulating the Text***

This short but important part of Chapter 2 describes the many techniques for selecting, deleting, copying, and moving text. You find an inordinate number of tips on these pages because there are so many shortcuts for manipulating text. Master the many shortcuts and you cut down considerably on the time you spend editing text.

### ***Selecting text***

Before you can do anything to text — move it, boldface it, delete it, translate it — you have to select it. Here are speed techniques for selecting text:

<b><i>To Select</i></b>	<b><i>Do This</i></b>
A word	Double-click the word.
A few words	Drag over the words.
A paragraph	Triple-click inside the paragraph (in Word, PowerPoint, and Outlook messages).
A block of text	Click the start of the text, hold down the Shift key, and click the end of the text. In Word you can also click the start of the text, press F8, and click at the end of the text.
All text	Press Ctrl+A.

## A look at the Paste options



Text adopts the formatting of neighboring text when you move or copy it to a new location. Using the Paste options, however, you can decide for yourself what happens to text formatting when you move or copy text from one place to another. To avail yourself of the Paste options:

- ✓ On the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Paste button to see the Paste Options submenu.
- ✓ Right-click to see the Paste options on the shortcut menu.
- ✓ Click the Paste Options button to open the Paste Options submenu. This button appears after you paste text by clicking the Paste button or pressing Ctrl+V.

Choose a Paste option to determine what happens to text formatting when you move or copy text to a new location:



✓ **Keep Source Formatting:** The text keeps its original formatting. Choose this option to move or copy text formatting along with text to a different location.



✓ **Merge Formatting (Word only):** The text adopts the formatting of the text to where it is moved or copied.



✓ **Keep Text Only:** The text is stripped of all formatting.

You can decide for yourself what the default activity is when you paste within a document, between documents, and between programs. Go to the File tab and choose Options. In the Options dialog box, go to the Advanced category, and under Cut, Copy, and Paste, choose default options.



Word offers a special command for selecting text with similar formats throughout a document. You can use this command to make wholesale changes to text. Select an example of the text that needs changing, and on the Home tab, click the Select button and choose Select All Text with Similar Formatting (you may have to click the Editing button first). Then choose formatting commands to change all instances of the text that you selected.

## *Moving and copying text*

Office offers a number of different ways to move and copy text from place to place. Drum roll, please. . . . Select the text you want to move or copy and then use one of these techniques to move or copy it:

- ◆ **Dragging and dropping:** Move the mouse over the text and then click and drag the text to a new location. *Drag* means to hold down the mouse button while you move the pointer on-screen. If you want to copy rather than move the text, hold down the Ctrl key while you drag.

- ◆ **Dragging and dropping with the right mouse button:** Drag the text while holding down the right, not the left, mouse button. After you release the right mouse button, a shortcut menu appears with Move Here and Copy Here options. Choose an option to move or copy the text.
- ◆ **Using the Clipboard:** Move or copy the text to the Clipboard by clicking the Cut or Copy button, pressing Ctrl+X or Ctrl+C, or right-clicking and choosing Cut or Copy on the shortcut menu. The text is moved or copied to an electronic holding tank called the *Clipboard*. Paste the text by clicking the Paste button, pressing Ctrl+V, or right-clicking and choosing Paste. You can find the Paste, Cut, and Copy buttons on the Home tab.

## Taking advantage of the Clipboard task pane

The Windows Clipboard is a piece of work. After you copy or cut text with the Cut or Copy command, the text is placed on the Clipboard. The Clipboard holds the last 24 items that you cut or copied. You can open the Clipboard task pane and view the last 24 items you cut or copied to the Clipboard and cut or copy them anew, as shown in Figure 2-1.



**Figure 2-1:**  
The  
Clipboard  
task pane in  
action.

To open the Clipboard task pane, go to the Home tab and click the Clipboard group button (it's to the right of the word *Clipboard* in the upper-left corner of the screen). Icons next to the items tell you where they came from. To copy an item, click it or open its drop-down list and choose Paste. The Clipboard is available to all Office applications; it's especially useful for copying text and graphics from one Office application to another.



## ***Deleting text***

To delete text, select it and press the Delete key. By the way, you can kill two birds with one stone by selecting text and then starting to type. The letters you type immediately take the place of and delete the text you selected.

You can always click the Undo button (or press Ctrl+Z) if you regret deleting text. This button is located on the Quick Access toolbar.

## ***Changing the Look of Text***

What text looks like is determined by its font, the size of the letters, the color of the letters, and whether text effects or font styles such as italic or boldface are in the text. What text looks like really matters in Word and PowerPoint because files you create in those applications are meant to be read by all and sundry. Even in Excel, Access, and Outlook messages, however, font choices matter because the choices you make determine whether your work is easy to read and understand.

### **The Format Painter: A fast way to change the look of text**

When you're in a hurry to change the look of text and reformat paragraphs, consider using the Format Painter. This nifty tool works something like a paintbrush. You drag it over text to copy formats from place to place. Follow these instructions to use the Format Painter:

- 1. Click a place with text and paragraph formats that you want to copy elsewhere (or select the text).**
  
- 2. On the Home tab (or the Format Text tab in an Outlook message), click or double-click the Format Painter button (or press Ctrl+Shift+C).**



You can find the Format Painter button in the Clipboard group. Click the button to copy formats once; double-click to copy formats to more than one location. The pointer changes into a paintbrush.

- 3. Drag the pointer across text to which you want to copy the formats.**

You can go from place to place with the Format Painter.

- 4. Click the Format Painter button a second time or press Esc when you finish using the Format Painter.**

Press Esc or click the Format Painter button again to cease using the Format Painter if you used it to copy formats to more than one location.



At the opposite end of the spectrum from the Format Painter button is the Clear All Formatting button on the Home tab. You can select text and click this button to strip text of all its formats, whatever they may be.

A *font* is a collection of letters, numbers, and symbols in a particular typeface, including all italic and boldface variations of the letters, numbers, and symbols. Fonts have beautiful names and some of them are many centuries old. Most computers come with these fonts: Arial, Tahoma, Times New Roman, and Verdana. By default, Office often applies the Calibri font to text.

*Font styles* include boldface, italic, and underline. By convention, headings are boldface. Italic is used for emphasis and to mark foreign words in text. Office provides a number of text effects. *Text effects*, also known as *text attributes*, include strikethrough and superscript. Use text effects sparingly.

The following pages look at the different ways to change the font, font size, and color of text, as well as how to assign font styles and text effects to text.

## Choosing fonts for text

If you aren't happy with the fonts you choose, select the text that needs a font change and change fonts with one of these techniques:

- ◆ **Mini-toolbar:** Move the pointer over the selected text. You see the mini-toolbar. Move the pointer over this toolbar and choose a font in the Font drop-down list, as shown in Figure 2-2.

Please don't shoot the piano



**Figure 2-2:**  
Changing  
fonts by way  
of the mini-  
toolbar.

- ◆ **Shortcut menu:** Right-click the selected text and choose a new font on the shortcut menu.
- ◆ **Font drop-down list:** On the Home tab, open the Font drop-down list and choose a font.
- ◆ **Font dialog box:** On the Home tab, click the Font group button. You see the Font dialog box. Select a font and click OK.



Avoid using too many different fonts because a file with too many fonts looks like alphabet soup. The object is to choose a font that helps set the tone. An aggressive sales pitch calls for a strong, bold font; a technical presentation calls for a font that is clean and unobtrusive. Make sure that the fonts you select help communicate your message.

### **Changing the font size of text**

Font size is measured in *points*; a point is  $\frac{1}{72}$  of an inch. The golden rule of font sizes goes something like this: the larger the font size, the more important the text. This is why headings are larger than footnotes. Select your text and use one of these techniques to change the font size of the letters:

- ◆ **Mini-toolbar:** Move the pointer over the text, and when you see the mini-toolbar, move the pointer over the toolbar and choose a font size on the Font Size drop-down list (refer to Figure 2-2).
- ◆ **Font Size drop-down list:** On the Home tab, open the Font Size drop-down list and choose a font size. You can live-preview font sizes this way.
- ◆ **Font dialog box:** On the Home tab, click the Font group button, and in the Font dialog box, choose a font size and click OK.
- ◆ **Increase Font Size and Decrease Font Size buttons:** Click these buttons (or press **Ctrl+]** or **Ctrl+[**) to increase or decrease the point size by the next interval on the Font Size drop-down list. You can find the Increase Font Size and Decrease Font Size buttons on the Home tab and the mini-toolbar. Watch the Font Size list or your text and note how the text changes size. This is an excellent technique when you want to “eyeball it” and you don’t care to fool with the Font Size drop-down list or Font dialog box.



Click the Increase Font Size and Decrease Font Size buttons when you’re dealing with fonts of different sizes and you want to proportionally change the size of all the letters. Drag the pointer over the text to select it before clicking one of the buttons.



If the font size you want isn’t on the Font Size drop-down list, enter the size. For example, to change the font size to 13.5 points, type **13.5** in the Font Size box and press Enter.

## Installing and removing fonts on your computer

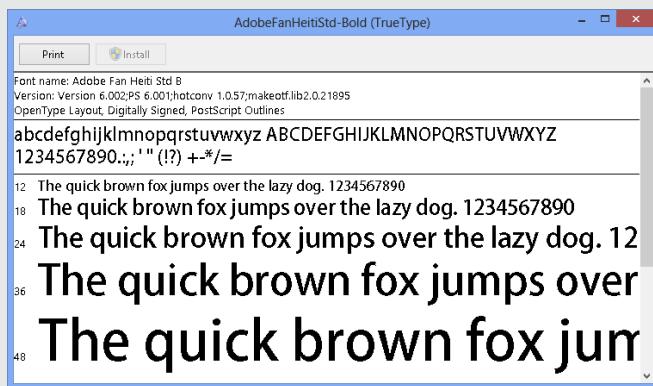
If Windows is installed on your computer, so are many different fonts. The names of these fonts appear on the Font drop-down list, Font dialog box, and mini-toolbar. Do you have enough fonts on your computer? Do you want to remove fonts to keep the Font drop-down list from being overcrowded?

Font files are kept in the C:\Windows\Fonts folder on your computer. You can double-click the Fonts icon in the Control Panel to open this folder. Here are instructions for handling fonts:

- ✓ **Installing new fonts:** Place the font file in the C:\Windows\Fonts folder.

✓ **Removing a font:** Move the font file out of the C:\Windows\Fonts folder. Store font files you don't want in another folder where you can resuscitate them if need be.

✓ **Examining fonts:** Double-click a font file to examine a font more closely. A window opens, and you see precisely what the font looks like. Do you know why "The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog" appears in this window? Because that sentence includes every letter in the alphabet.



## Applying font styles to text

There are four — count 'em, four — font styles: regular, bold, italic, and underline:

I

◆ **Regular:** This style is just Office's way of denoting an absence of any font style.

B

◆ **Italic:** Italic is used for emphasis, when introducing a new term, and to mark foreign words such as *violà*, *gung hay fat choy*, and *Qué magnifico!* You can also italicize titles to make them a little more elegant.

◆ **Bold:** Bold text calls attention to itself.



- ◆ **Underline:** Underlined text also calls attention to itself, but use underlining sparingly. Later in this chapter, “Underlining text” looks at all the ways to underline text.

Select text and use one of these techniques to apply a font style to it:

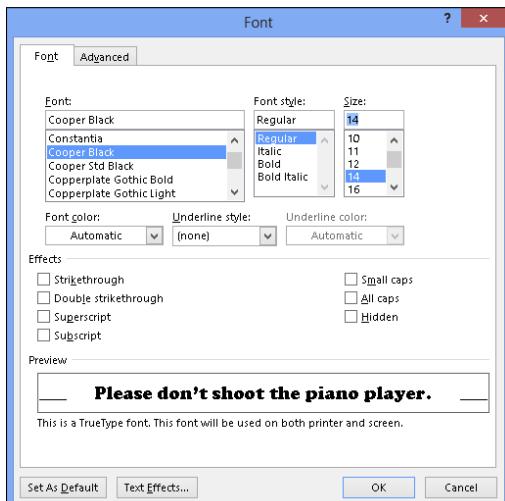
- ◆ **Home tab:** Click the Bold, Italic, or Underline button.
- ◆ **Keyboard:** Press Ctrl+B to boldface text, Ctrl+I to italicize it, or Ctrl+U to underline it.
- ◆ **Mini-toolbar:** The mini-toolbar offers the Bold, Italic, and Underline buttons.
- ◆ **Font dialog box:** Select a Font Style option in the Font dialog box. To open this dialog box, visit the Home tab and click the Font group button.

To remove a font style, click the Bold, Italic, or Underline button a second time. You can also select text and then click the Clear Formatting button on the Home tab (in Word, PowerPoint, and Publisher).

## Applying text effects to text

Text effects have various uses, some utilitarian and some strictly for yucks. Be careful with text effects. Use them sparingly and to good purpose. To apply a text effect, start on the Home tab (or the Format Text tab in Outlook messages) and do one of the following:

- ◆ Click a text effect button on the Home tab.
- ◆ Click the Font group button and choose a text effect in the bottom half of the Font dialog box, as shown in Figure 2-3.



**Figure 2-3:**  
Text effects  
in the Font  
dialog box  
(Word).

Here's a rundown of the different text effects (not all these effects are available in PowerPoint, Excel, Publisher, and Outlook):



- ◆ **Strikethrough and double strikethrough:** By convention, *strikethrough* is used to show where passages are struck from a contract or other important document. Double strikethrough, for all I know, is used to show where passages are struck out forcefully. Use these text effects to demonstrate ideas that you reject.



- ◆ **Subscript:** A *subscripted* letter is lowered in the text. In this chemical formula, the 2 is lowered to show that two atoms of hydrogen are needed along with one atom of oxygen to form a molecule of water: H<sub>2</sub>O. (Press Ctrl+=.)



- ◆ **Superscript:** A *superscripted* letter or number is one that is raised in the text. Superscript is used in mathematical and scientific formulas, in ordinal numbers (1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup>, 3<sup>rd</sup>), and to mark footnotes. In the theory of relativity, the 2 is superscripted: E = mc<sup>2</sup>. (Press Ctrl+Shift+plus sign.)

- ◆ **Small Caps:** A *small cap* is a small capital letter. You can find many creative uses for small caps. An all-small-cap title looks elegant. Be sure to type lowercase letters in order to create small caps. Type an uppercase letter, and Office refuses to turn it into a small cap. Not all fonts can produce small capital letters.

- ◆ **All Caps:** The All Caps text effect merely capitalizes all letters. Use it in styles to make sure that you enter text in all capital letters.

- ◆ **Equalize Character Height (PowerPoint only):** This effect makes all characters the same height and stretches the characters in text. You can use it to produce interesting effects in text box announcements.

## ***Underlining text***

You can choose among 17 ways to underline text, with styles ranging from Words Only to Wavy Line, and you can select a color for the underline in Word, PowerPoint, and Outlook. If you decide to underline titles, do it consistently. To underline text, select the text that you want to underline, go to the Home tab, and pick your poison:



- ◆ On the Home tab, click the Underline button. A single line runs under all the words you selected. In Word, you can open the drop-down list on the Underline button and choose from several ways to underline text.
- ◆ Click the Font group button to open the Font dialog box (refer to Figure 2-3) and then choose an underline style from the drop-down list. You can also choose an underline color from the Underline Color drop-down list (in Word, PowerPoint, and Outlook). The color you select applies to the underline, not to the words being underlined.

To remove an underline from text, select the text and then click the Underline button on the Home tab.

## Changing the color of text

Before you change the color of text, peer at your computer screen and examine the background theme or color you chose. Unless the color of the text is different from the theme or color, you can't read the text. Besides choosing a color that contributes to the overall tone, choose a color that is easy to read.

Select the text that needs touching up and use one of these techniques to change its color:



- ◆ On the mini-toolbar, open the drop-down list on the Font Color button and choose a color, as shown in Figure 2-4.



**Figure 2-4:**  
Choosing a  
font color  
on the mini-  
toolbar.

- ◆ On the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Font Color button and choose a color.
- ◆ On the Home tab, click the Font group button to open the Font dialog box, open the Font Color drop-down list, and choose a color.

The Font Color drop-down list offers theme colors and standard colors. You are well advised to choose a theme color. These colors are deemed *theme colors* because they jibe with the theme you choose for your file.

## Quick Ways to Handle Case, or Capitalization

*Case* refers to how letters are capitalized in words and sentences. Table 2-1 explains the different cases, and Figure 2-5 demonstrates why paying attention to case matters. In the figure, the PowerPoint slide titles are presented using different cases, and the titles are inconsistent with one another. In one slide, only the first letter in the title is capitalized (sentence case); in another slide, the first letter in each word is capitalized (capitalize each word); in another, none of the letters is capitalized (lowercase); and in another, all the letters are capitalized (uppercase). In your titles and headings, decide on a capitalization scheme and stick with it for consistency's sake.

**Table 2-1****Cases for Headings and Titles**

<i>Case</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Example Title</i>
Sentence case	The first letter in the first word is capitalized; all other words are lowercase unless they are proper names.	Man bites dog in January
Lowercase	All letters are lowercase unless they are proper names.	man bites dog in January
Uppercase	All letters are uppercase no matter what.	MAN BITES DOG IN JANUARY
Capitalize each word	The first letter in each word is capitalized.	Man Bites Dog In January

**Figure 2-5:**  
Capitalization schemes (clockwise from upper-left): sentence case; capitalize each word; uppercase; lowercase.

**Aa ▾**

To change case in Word and PowerPoint, all you have to do is select the text, go to the Home tab, click the Change Case button, and choose an option on the drop-down list:

- ◆ **Sentence case:** Renders the letters in sentence case.
- ◆ **lowercase:** Makes all the letters lowercase.
- ◆ **UPPERCASE:** Renders all the letters as capital letters.
- ◆ **Capitalize Each Word:** Capitalizes the first letter in each word. If you choose this option for a title or heading, go into the title and lowercase

the first letter of articles (*the, a, an*), coordinate conjunctions (*and, or, for, nor*), and prepositions unless they're the first or last word in the title.

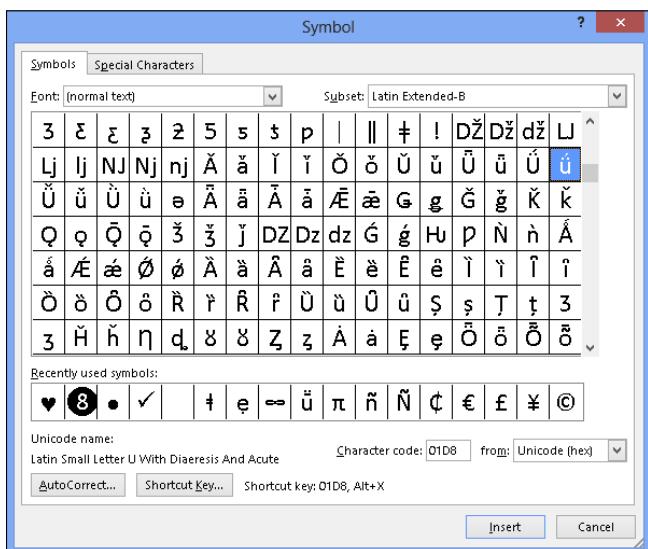
- ◆ **TOGGLE cASE:** Choose this option if you accidentally enter letters with the Caps Lock key pressed.



You can also change case by pressing Shift+F3. Pressing this key combination in Word and PowerPoint changes characters to uppercase, lowercase, each word capitalized, and back to uppercase again.

## Entering Symbols and Foreign Characters

Don't panic if you need to enter an umlaut, grave accent, or cedilla because you can do it by way of the Symbol dialog box, as shown in Figure 2-6. You can enter just about any symbol and foreign character by way of this dialog box. Click where you want to enter a symbol or foreign character and follow these steps to enter it:



**Figure 2-6:**  
To enter  
a symbol  
or foreign  
character,  
select it  
and click  
the Insert  
button.

1. On the Insert tab, click the Symbol button. (You may have to click the Symbols button first, depending on the size of your screen.)

In Word, Outlook, and Publisher, click More Symbols after you click the Symbol button if no symbol on the drop-down list does the job for you. You see the Symbol dialog box (refer to Figure 2-6).

2. If you're looking to insert a symbol, not a foreign character, choose Webdings or Wingdings 1, 2, or 3 in the Font drop-down list.

Webdings and the Wingdings fonts offer all kinds of weird and wacky symbols.

3. Select a symbol or foreign character.

You may have to scroll to find the one you want.

4. Click the Insert button to enter the symbol and then click Close to close the dialog box.



The Symbol dialog box lists the last several symbols or foreign characters you entered under Recently Used Symbols. See whether the symbol you need is listed there. It spares you the trouble of rummaging in the Symbol dialog box. In Word, Outlook, and Publisher, you see the last several symbols or foreign characters you entered on a drop-down list after you click the Symbol button.

## Creating Hyperlinks

A *hyperlink* is an electronic shortcut from one place to another. If you've spent any time on the Internet, you know what a hyperlink is. Clicking hyperlinks on the Internet takes you to different web pages or different places on the same web page. In the Office applications, you can use hyperlinks to connect readers to your favorite web pages or to a different page, slide, or file. You can fashion a link out of a word or phrase as well as any object — a clip-art image, text box, shape, or picture.

These pages explain how to insert a hyperlink to another place in your file as well as create links to web pages. You also discover how to enter an e-mail hyperlink that makes it easy for others to e-mail you. By the way, the Office applications create a hyperlink for you automatically when you type a word that begins with *www* and ends with *.com* or *.net*. The programs create an automatic e-mail hyperlink when you enter letters that include the at symbol (@) and end in *.com* or *.net*.

### Linking a hyperlink to a web page

It could well be that a web page on the Internet has all the information your readers need. In that case, you can link to the web page so that viewers can visit it in the course of viewing your file. When a viewer clicks the link, a web browser opens and the web page appears.

Follow these steps to hyperlink your file to a web page on the Internet:

- 1. Select the text or object that will form the hyperlink.**

For example, select a line of text or phrase if you want viewers to be able to click it to go to a web page.

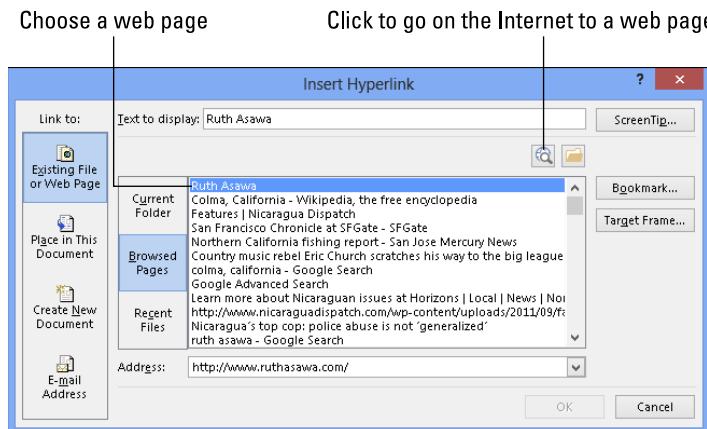
- 2. On the Insert tab, click the Hyperlink button (or press Ctrl+K).**

Depending on the size of your screen, you may have to click the Links button before you can get to the Hyperlink button. You see the Insert Hyperlink dialog box, as shown in Figure 2-7. You can also open this dialog box by right-clicking an object or text and choosing Hyperlink on the shortcut menu.

- 3. Under Link To, select Existing File or Web Page.**

- 4. In the Address text box, enter the address of the web page to which you want to link, as shown in Figure 2-7.**

**Figure 2-7:**  
Enter the  
web page  
target in the  
Address  
text box to  
create a  
hyperlink to  
a web page.



From easiest to hardest, here are techniques for entering web page addresses:

- *Click the Browse the Web button:* Your web browser opens after you click this button. Go to the web page you want to link to, copy the page's address in your web browser, and paste the address in the Address text box. (Figure 2-7 shows where the Browse the Web button is.)

- *Click Browsed Pages:* The dialog box lists web pages you recently visited after you click this button, as shown in Figure 2-7. Choose a web page.
  - *Type (or copy) a web page address into the Address text box:* Enter the address of the web page. You can right-click the text box and choose Paste to copy a web page address into the text box.
- 5. Click the ScreenTip button, enter a ScreenTip in the Set Hyperlink ScreenTip dialog box, and click OK.**
- Viewers can read the ScreenTip you enter when they move their pointers over the hyperlink.
- 6. Click OK in the Insert Hyperlink dialog box.**

I would test the hyperlink if I were you to make sure it takes viewers to the right web page. To test a hyperlink, Ctrl+click it or right-click it and choose Open Hyperlink on the shortcut menu.

## ***Creating a hyperlink to another place in your file***

Follow these steps to create a hyperlink to another place in your file:



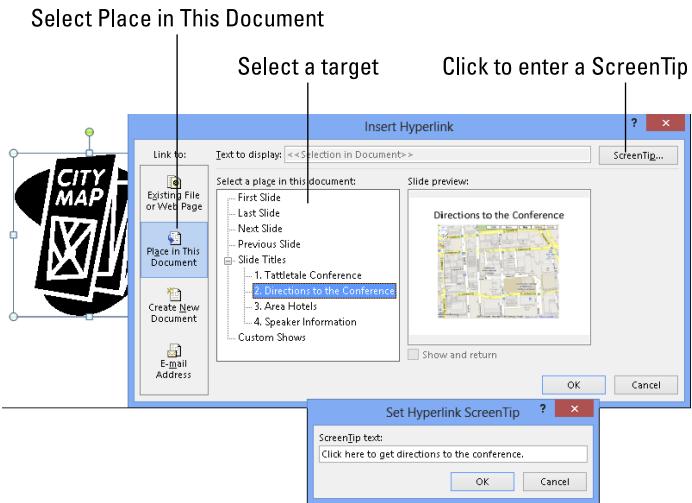
- 1. Select the text or object that will form the hyperlink.**
- 2. On the Insert tab, click the Hyperlink button (or press Ctrl+K).**

You see the Insert Hyperlink dialog box. (Depending on the size of your screen, you may have to click the Links button before you see the Hyperlink button.) Another way to open this dialog box is to right-click and choose Hyperlink in the shortcut menu.
- 3. Under Link To, select Place in This Document.**

What you see in the dialog box depends on which program you're working in:

  - *Word:* You see bookmarks and headings to which you've assigned a heading style.
  - *PowerPoint:* You see a list of slides in your presentation, as well as links to the first, last, next, and previous slide, as shown in Figure 2-8.
  - *Excel:* You see boxes for entering cell references and defined cell names.
- 4. Select the target of the hyperlink.**

**Figure 2-8:**  
You can  
also create  
a hyperlink  
to a different  
place in a  
file.



**5. Click the ScreenTip button.**

You see the Set Hyperlink ScreenTip dialog box, as shown in Figure 2-8.

**6. Enter a ScreenTip and click OK.**

When viewers move their pointers over the link, they see the words you enter. Enter a description of where the hyperlink takes you.

**7. Click OK in the Insert Hyperlink dialog box.**

To test your hyperlink, move the pointer over it. You should see the ScreenTip description you wrote. Ctrl+click the link to see if it takes you to the right place.

### *Creating an e-mail hyperlink*

An *e-mail hyperlink* is one that opens an e-mail program. These links are sometimes found on web pages so that anyone visiting a web page can conveniently send an e-mail message to the person who manages the web page. When you click an e-mail hyperlink, your default e-mail program opens. And if the person who set up the link was thorough about it, the e-mail message is already addressed and given a subject line.



Include an e-mail hyperlink in a file if you're distributing the file to others and you would like them to be able to comment on your work and send the comments to you.

Follow these steps to put an e-mail hyperlink in a file:



- 1. Select the words or object that will constitute the link.**
- 2. On the Insert tab, click the Hyperlink button (or press Ctrl+K).**  
The Insert Hyperlink dialog box appears.
- 3. Under Link To, click E-Mail Address.**  
Text boxes appear for entering an e-mail address and a subject message.
- 4. Enter your e-mail address and a subject for the messages that others will send you.**  
Office inserts the word *mailto:* before your e-mail address as you enter it.
- 5. Click OK.**  
Test the link by Ctrl+clicking it. Your default e-mail program opens. The e-mail message is already addressed and given a subject.

## ***Repairing and removing hyperlinks***

From time to time, check the hyperlinks in your file to make sure they still work. Clicking a hyperlink and having nothing happen is disappointing. Hyperlinks get broken when web pages and parts of files are deleted.

To repair or remove a hyperlink, right-click the link and choose Edit Hyperlink on the shortcut menu (or click in the link and then click the Hyperlink button on the Insert tab). You see the Edit Hyperlink dialog box. This dialog box looks and works just like the Insert Hyperlink dialog box. Sometimes you can repair a link simply by editing it in this dialog box.

- ◆ **Repairing a link:** Select a target in your file or a web page and click OK.
- ◆ **Removing a link:** Click the Remove Link button. You can also remove a hyperlink by right-clicking the link and choosing Remove Hyperlink on the shortcut menu.



# *Chapter 3: Speed Techniques Worth Knowing About*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Undoing mistakes and repeating actions
- ✓ Zooming to get a better view of your work
- ✓ Working with two different files at the same time
- ✓ Instructing Office to correct typos automatically
- ✓ Entering hard-to-type text with the AutoCorrect command

This brief chapter takes you on a whirlwind tour of shortcut commands that can save you time and effort no matter which Office application you're working in. This chapter is devoted to people who want to get it done quickly and get away from their computers. It explains the Undo and Repeat commands, zooming in and out, and opening more than one window on the same file. You also discover how to display windows in different ways, correct your typos automatically, and enter hard-to-type terminology with a simple flick of the wrist.

## *Undoing and Repeating Commands*

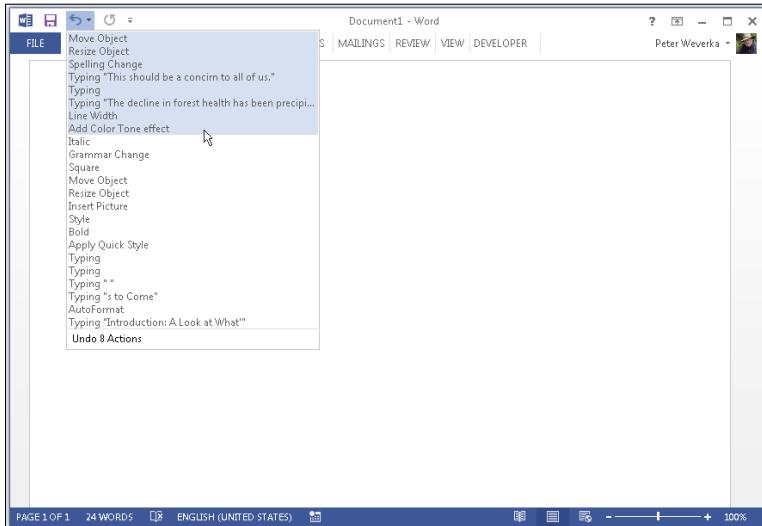
If I were to choose two commands for the Hall of Fame, they would be the Undo command and the Repeat command. One allows you to reverse actions you regret doing, and the other repeats a previous action without you having to choose the same commands all over again. Undo and Repeat are explained forthwith.

### *Undoing a mistake*

Fortunately for you, all is not lost if you make a big blunder because Office has a marvelous little tool called the Undo command. This command “remembers” your previous editorial and formatting changes. As long as you catch your error in time, you can undo your mistake.



Click the Undo button on the Quick Access toolbar (or press Ctrl+Z) to undo your most recent change. If you made your error and went on to do something else before you caught it, open the drop-down list on the Undo button. It lists your previous actions, as shown in Figure 3-1. Click the action you want to undo, or if it isn't on the list, scroll until you find the error and then click it.



**Figure 3-1:**  
Fixing a  
mistake with  
the Undo  
drop-down  
list.



Remember, however, that choosing an action far down the Undo list also reverses the actions before it on the list. For example, if you undo the 19th action on the list, you also undo the 18 more recent actions above it.

### ***Repeating an action — and quicker this time***



The Quick Access toolbar offers a button called Repeat that you can click to repeat your last action. This button can be a mighty, mighty timesaver. For example, if you just changed fonts in one heading and you want to change another heading in the same way, select the heading and click the Repeat button (or press F4 or Ctrl+Y). Move the pointer over the Repeat button to see, in a pop-up box, what clicking it does.

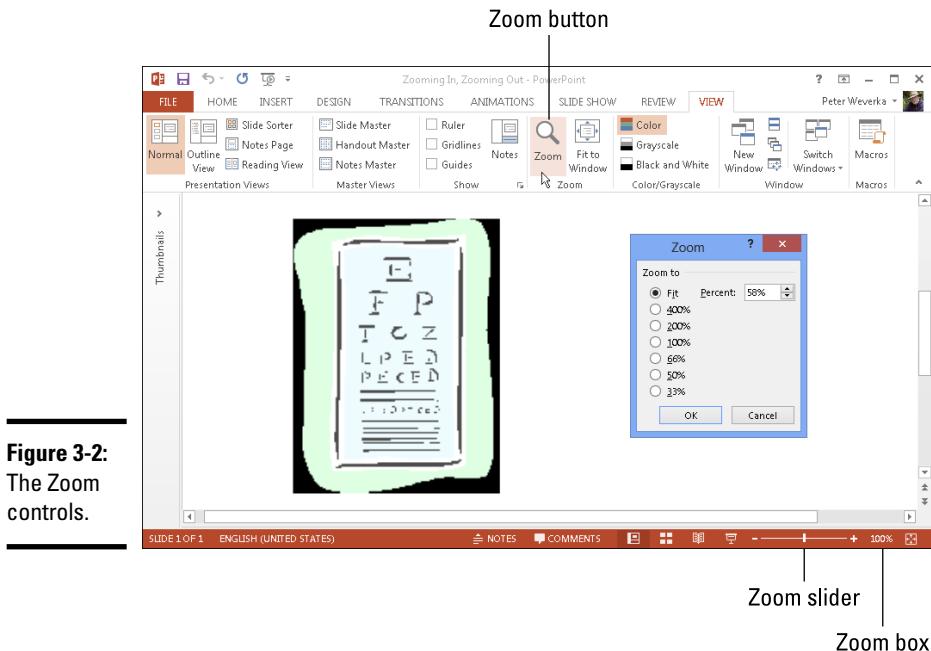
You can find many creative uses for the Repeat command if you use your imagination. For example, if you had to type “I will not talk in class” a hundred times as a punishment for talking in class, you could make excellent use of the Repeat command to fulfill your punishment. All you would have to do is write the sentence once and then click the Repeat button 99 times.

After you click the Undo button, the Repeat button changes names and becomes the Redo button. Click the Redo button to “redo” the command you “undid.” In other words, if you regret clicking the Undo button, you can turn back the clock by clicking Redo.

## ***Zooming In, Zooming Out***

Eyes weren’t meant to stare at the computer screen all day, which makes the Zoom controls all the more valuable. You can find these controls on the

View tab and in the lower-right corner of the window, as shown in Figure 3-2. Use them freely and often to enlarge or shrink what is on the screen and preserve your eyes for important things, such as gazing at the sunset.



**Figure 3-2:**  
The Zoom controls.

Meet the Zoom controls:



- ◆ **Zoom dialog box:** Click the Zoom button on the View tab or the Zoom box (the % listing) to display the Zoom dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-2. From there, you can select an option button or enter a Percent measurement.
- ◆ **Zoom button:** Click the Zoom In or Zoom Out button on the Zoom slider to zoom in or out in 10-percent increments.
- ◆ **Zoom slider:** Drag the *Zoom slider* left to shrink or right to enlarge what is on your screen.
- ◆ **Mouse wheel:** If your mouse has a wheel, you can hold down the Ctrl key and spin the wheel to quickly zoom in or out.



Each Office program offers its own special Zoom commands in the Zoom group on the View tab. In Word, for example, you can display one page or two pages; in Excel, you can click the Zoom to Selection button and enlarge a handful of cells. Make friends with the Zoom commands. They never let you down.

## Viewing a File Through More Than One Window

By way of the commands in the Window group in the View tab, you can be two places simultaneously, at least where Office is concerned. You can work on two files at once. You can place files side by side on the screen and do a number of other things to make your work a little easier.

On the View tab, Word, Excel, and PowerPoint offer these buttons in the Window group:



- ◆ **New Window:** Opens another window on your file so you can be two places at once in the same file. To go back and forth between windows, click a taskbar button or click the Switch Windows button and choose a window name on the drop-down list. Click a window's Close button when you finish looking at it.



- ◆ **Arrange All:** Arranges open windows side by side on-screen.



- ◆ **Switch Windows:** Opens a drop-down list with open windows so you can travel between windows.

You can also take advantage of these Window buttons in Word and Excel to compare files:



- ◆ **View Side by Side:** Displays files side by side so you can compare and contrast them.



- ◆ **Synchronous Scrolling:** Permits you to scroll two files at the same rate so you can proofread one against the other. To use this command, start by clicking the View Side by Side button. After you click the Synchronous Scrolling button, click the Reset Window Position button so both files are displayed at the same size on-screen.



- ◆ **Reset Window Position:** Makes files being shown side by side the same size on-screen to make them easier to compare.

## Correcting Typos on the Fly

The unseen hand of Office 2013 corrects some typos and misspellings automatically. For example, try typing **accomodate** with one *m* — Office corrects the misspelling and inserts the second *m* for you. Try typing **permminent** with an *i* instead of an *a* — the invisible hand of Office corrects the misspelling, and you get *permanent*. While you're at it, type a colon and a close parenthesis **:)** — you get a smiley face.

As good as the AutoCorrect feature is, you can make it even better. You can also add the typos and misspellings you often make to the list of words that are corrected automatically.

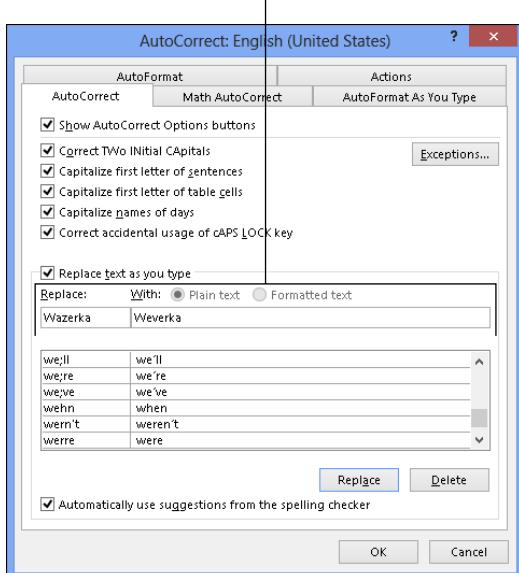
Office corrects common spelling errors and turns punctuation mark combinations into symbols as part of its AutoCorrect feature. To see which typos are corrected and which punctuation marks are turned into symbols, open the AutoCorrect dialog box by following these steps:

**FILE**

- 1. On the File tab, choose Options.**  
You see the Options dialog box.
- 2. Go to the Proofing category.**
- 3. Click the AutoCorrect Options button.**  
The AutoCorrect dialog box opens.
- 4. Go to the AutoCorrect tab.**

As shown in Figure 3-3, the AutoCorrect tab lists words that are corrected automatically. Scroll down the Replace list and have a look around. Go ahead. Make yourself at home.

Enter a typo and its replacement



**Figure 3-3:**  
As you type,  
words in  
the Replace  
column are  
replaced  
auto-  
matically  
with words  
in the With  
column.

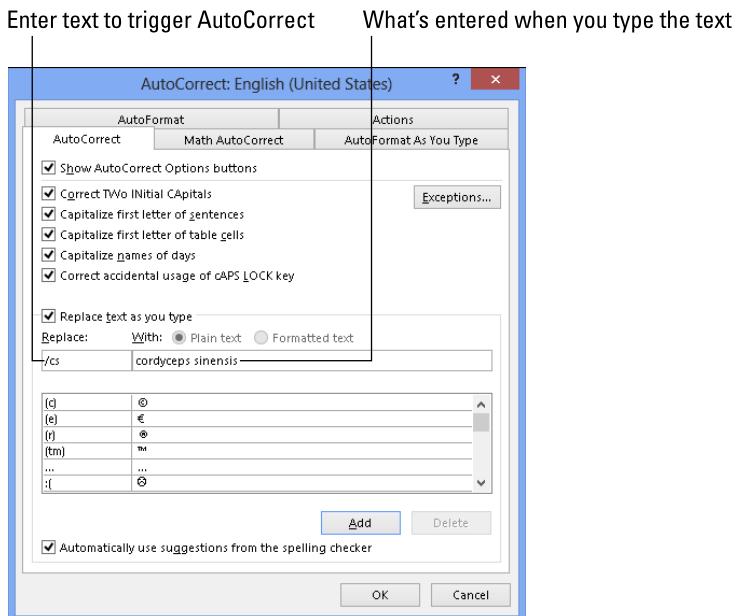
No doubt you make the same typing errors and spelling errors time and time again. To keep from making these errors, you can tell Office to correct them for you automatically. You do that by entering the misspelling and its corrected spelling in the AutoCorrect dialog box (see Figure 3-3):



You can also remove misspellings and typos from the list of words that are corrected automatically. To remove a word from the list of corrected words, select it in the AutoCorrect dialog box and click the Delete button.

## *Entering Text Quickly with the AutoCorrect Command*

The preceding part of this chapter explains how you can use the AutoCorrect command to help correct typing errors, but with a little cunning you can also use it to quickly enter hard-to-type jargon, scientific names, and the like. To open the AutoCorrect dialog box, click the File button, choose Options, go to the Proofing category in the Options dialog box, and then click the AutoCorrect Options button. Select the AutoCorrect tab in the AutoCorrect dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-4.



**Figure 3-4:**  
With a little  
cunning,  
you can use  
AutoCorrect  
to enter  
hard-to-type  
text.

In the Replace column in the AutoCorrect tab are hundreds of common typing errors and codes that Office corrects automatically. The program corrects the errors by entering text in the With column whenever you mistakenly type the letters in the Replace column. However, you can also use this dialog box for a secondary purpose to quickly enter text.

To make AutoCorrect work as a means of entering text, you tell Office to enter the text whenever you type three or four specific characters. In Figure 3-4, for example, Office is instructed to insert the words *cordyceps sinensis* (a mushroom genus) whenever I enter the characters /cs (and press the spacebar). Follow these steps to use AutoCorrect to enter text:

1. Open the AutoCorrect tab of the AutoCorrect dialog box (see Figure 3-4).
2. In the Replace text box, enter the three or four characters that will trigger the AutoCorrect mechanism and make it enter your text.



Don't enter a word, or characters that you might really type someday, in the Replace box. If you do, the AutoCorrect mechanism might kick in when you least expect it. Enter three or four characters that never appear together. And start all AutoCorrect entries with a slash (/). You might forget which characters trigger the AutoText entry or decide to delete your AutoCorrect entry someday. By starting it with a slash, you can find it easily in the AutoCorrect dialog box at the top of the Replace list.

3. In the With text box, enter the hard-to-type name or word(s) that will appear when you enter the Replace text.
4. Click the Add button.
5. Click OK.

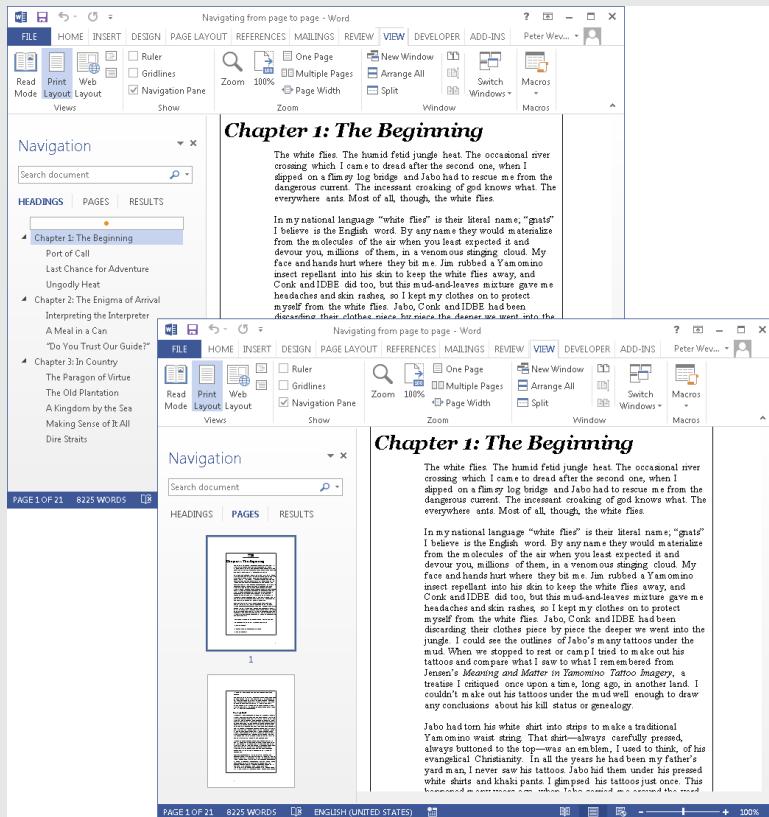
Test your AutoCorrect entry by typing the Replace text you entered in Step 2 (which, of course, includes the slash I recommended) and pressing the spacebar. (AutoCorrect doesn't do its work until you press the spacebar.)

To delete an AutoCorrect entry, open the AutoCorrect dialog box, select the entry, and click the Delete button.



# Book II

# Word 2013



Check out more Word features online at [www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio](http://www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio)

## *Contents at a Glance*

<b>Chapter 1: Speed Techniques for Using Word .....</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>Chapter 2: Laying Out Text and Pages .....</b>	<b>75</b>
<b>Chapter 3: Word Styles .....</b>	<b>99</b>
<b>Chapter 4: Constructing the Perfect Table.....</b>	<b>115</b>
<b>Chapter 5: Taking Advantage of the Proofing Tools .....</b>	<b>139</b>
<b>Chapter 6: Desktop Publishing with Word .....</b>	<b>159</b>
<b>Chapter 7: Getting Word's Help with Office Chores .....</b>	<b>177</b>
<b>Chapter 8: Tools for Reports and Scholarly Papers.....</b>	<b>197</b>

# *Chapter 1: Speed Techniques for Using Word*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Getting acquainted with the Word screen
- ✓ Creating a Word document
- ✓ Changing your view of a document
- ✓ Selecting text so that you can copy, move, or delete it
- ✓ Getting from place to place in long documents
- ✓ Pasting one Word document into another
- ✓ Creating data-entry forms

This chapter explains shortcuts and commands that can help you become a speedy user of Word 2013. Everything in this chapter was put here so that you can get off work earlier and take the slow, scenic route home. Starting here, you discover how to create and change your view of documents. You find out how to select text, get from place to place, and mark your place in long documents. You also explore how to insert one document into another and create data-entry forms to make entering information a little easier.

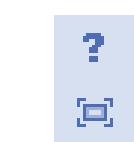
Book I, Chapter 2 explains the basics of entering and formatting text in Word 2013 and the other Office 2013 applications.

## *Introducing the Word Screen*

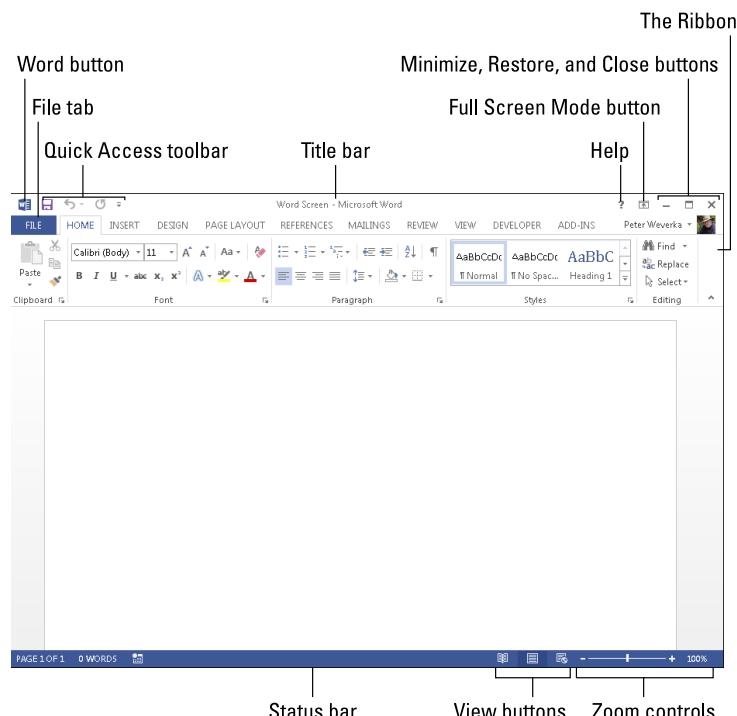
Seeing the Word screen for the first time is like trying to find your way through Tokyo's busy Ikebukuro subway station. It's intimidating. But when you start using Word, you quickly learn what everything is. To help you get going, Figure 1-1 shows you the different parts of the screen. Here are short-hand descriptions of these screen parts:



- ♦ **Word button:** In the upper-left corner of the screen, the Word button offers a menu for restoring, moving, sizing, minimizing, maximizing, and closing the Word window.
- ♦ **Quick Access toolbar:** This toolbar offers the Save, Undo, and Repeat buttons. Wherever you go in Word, you see the Quick Access toolbar. Book I, Chapter 1 explains the toolbar in detail; Book IX, Chapter 1 explains how to customize and move the Quick Access toolbar.



- ◆ **Title bar:** At the top of the screen, the title bar tells you the name of the document you're working on.
- ◆ **Help button:** Clicking this button (or pressing F1) opens the Help program.
- ◆ **Full Screen Mode button:** Clicking this button switches to Full Screen mode so that you can get a better look at your document. See “Viewing documents in different ways,” later in this chapter.
- ◆ **Minimize, Restore, Close buttons:** These three magic buttons make it very easy to shrink, enlarge, and close the window you are working in.
- ◆ **File tab:** Go to the File tab to do file-management tasks.
- ◆ **The Ribbon:** Select a tab on the Ribbon to undertake a new task. (Book I, Chapter 1 explains the Ribbon in detail, and Book IX, Chapter 1 explains how to customize the Ribbon.)
- ◆ **Status bar:** The status bar gives you basic information about where you are and what you're doing in a document. It tells you what page and what section you're in, and the total number of pages and words in your document. Book IX, Chapter 1 explains how to customize the status bar.
- ◆ **View buttons:** Click one of these buttons — Read Mode, Print Layout, or Web Layout — to change your view of a document.
- ◆ **Zoom controls:** Use these controls to zoom in and out on your work.



**Figure 1-1:**  
The Word  
screen.

## Creating a New Document

*Document* is just a fancy word for a letter, report, announcement, or proclamation that you create with Word. All documents are created using a special kind of file called a *template*. The template provides the formats — the fonts, styles, margin specifications, layouts and other stuff — that give a document its appearance.

When you create a document, you are asked to choose a template to establish what your document will look like. If your aim is to create an academic report, flyer, newsletter, calendar, résumé, or other sophisticated document, see if you can spare yourself the formatting work by choosing the appropriate template when you create your document. (Chapter 3 of this mini-book explains templates in detail and how to create your own templates.)

### FILE

To create a document, start by going to the File tab and choosing New. The New window shown in Figure 1-2 appears. In this window, choose a template and then click the Create button to create your document.

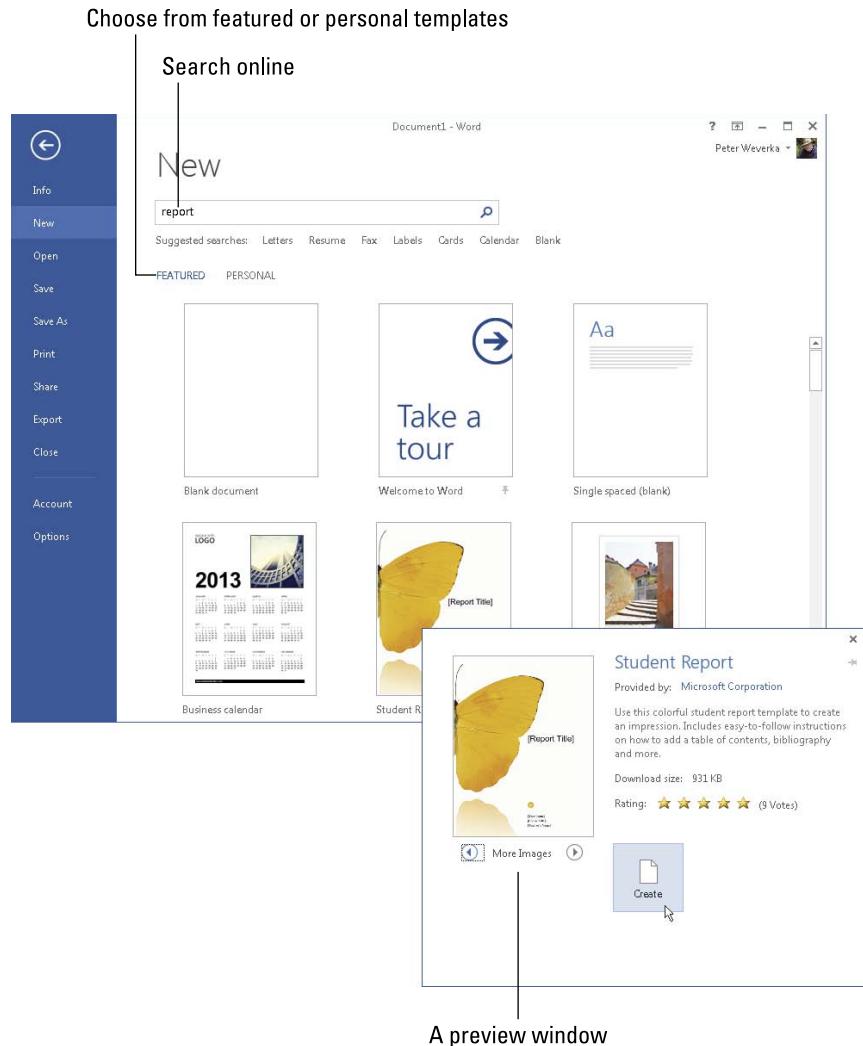
Use these techniques in the New window to choose a template and create a document:

- ◆ **Choose the blank document template:** Choose Blank Document to create a bare-bones document with few styles. Blank Document is the default template for creating documents. (By pressing Ctrl+N, you can create a new document without opening the New window.)
- ◆ **Search online for a template:** Enter a search term in the Search box and click the Start Searching button (or click a suggested search term). Templates appear in the New window. You can click a template to examine it closely in a preview window (refer to Figure 1-2). Click the Create button to create a document from the template.
- ◆ **Choose a featured template:** On the Featured tab, select a template to examine it in a preview window (refer to Figure 1-2). Click the Create button in the preview window to create a document from the template.
- ◆ **Choose a personal template:** On the Personal tab, click to select a template and create a document. A personal template is one that you created or copied to your computer or network.



To see the Personal tab in the New window and be able to select a personal template, you must tell Word where personal templates are stored on your computer or network. On the File tab, choose Options. In the Save category of the Options dialog box, go to the Default Personal Templates Location text box and enter the path to the folder where your personal templates are stored. In previous editions of Word (and Office), personal templates were stored in this folder:

C:\Users\Owner or Owner's Name\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Templates



**Figure 1-2:**  
To create a document, choose a template in the New window.



If your search for the perfect template takes you too far afield, you can click the Home button to return to the New window.

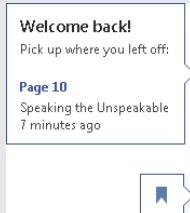
To find out which template was used to create a document, go to the File tab, choose Info, and in the Info window, click the Show All Properties link (it's located in the lower-right corner of the window). The Properties list appears. Among other things, it tells you the template with which the document was created.

Book I, Chapter 1 explains how to save documents after you create them, as well as how to open a document you want to work on.

## Resume reading

To help you pick up where you left off, the Resume Reading notice appears when you reopen a Word document. It tells you which page you read most recently, the heading on that page, and when you last viewed the page.

Click the Resume Reading notice (or the Resume Reading icon) to go to directly to the page you last read.



# Getting a Better Look at Your Documents

A computer screen can be kind of confining. There you are, staring at the darn thing for hours at a stretch. Do you wish the view were better? The Word screen can't be made to look like the Riviera, but you can examine documents in different ways and work in two places at one time in the same document. Better read on.

## *Viewing documents in different ways*

In word processing, you want to focus sometimes on the writing, sometimes on the layout, and sometimes on the organization of your work. To help you stay in focus, Word offers different ways of viewing a document. Figure 1-3 shows these views. These pages explain how to change views, the five different views, and why to select one over the other. (Be sure to visit Book I, Chapter 3 as well; it describes how to view a document through more than one window and how to open a second window in a document.)

### *Changing views*

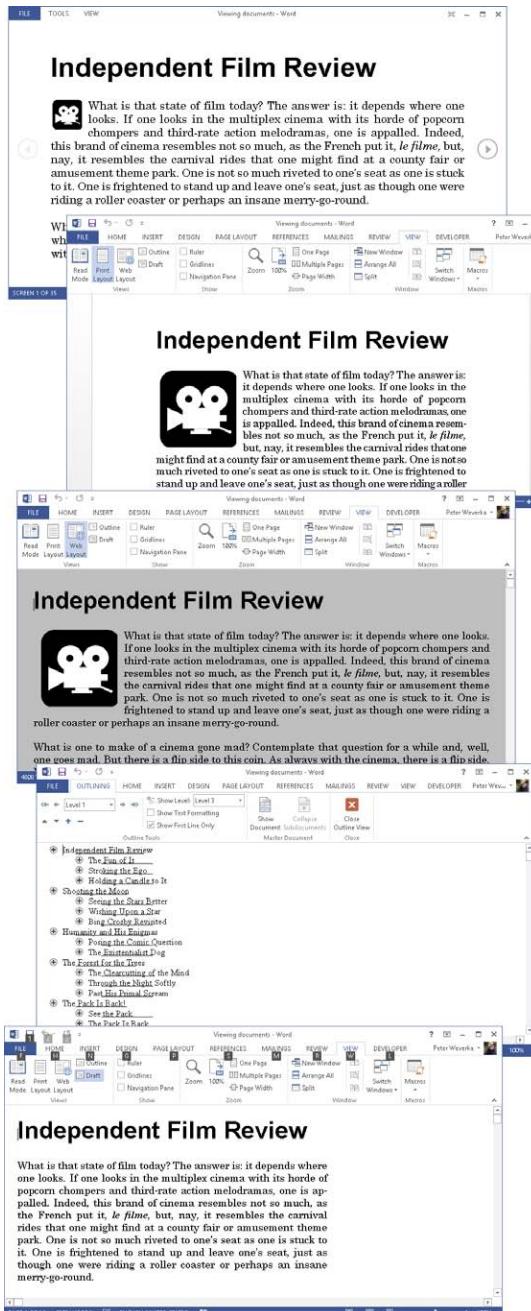
Use these techniques to change views:

- ◆ Click one of the three View buttons on the right side of the status bar.
- ◆ On the View tab, click one of the five buttons in the Views group.

### *Read mode*



Switch to Read mode to focus on the text itself and proofread your documents. You can't enter or edit text in Read mode. Everything is stripped away — the Ribbon, scroll bars, status bar, and all. All you see are the text and artwork in your documents. Read mode is designed for reading documents on tablet computers.



**Figure 1-3:**  
The different  
document  
views (top  
to bottom):  
Read Mode,  
Print Layout,  
Web Layout,  
Outline, and  
Draft.

### Print Layout view



Switch to Print Layout view to see the big picture. In this view, you can see what your document will look like when you print it. You can see graphics, headers, footers, and even page borders in Print Layout view. You can also see clearly where page breaks occur (where one page ends and the next begins). In Print Layout view, you can click the One Page, Multiple Pages, or Page Width button on the View tab to display more or fewer pages on your screen.

### Web Layout view

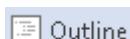


Switch to Web Layout view to see what your document would look like as a web page. Background colors appear (if you chose a theme or background color for your document). Text is wrapped to the window rather than around the artwork in the document. Book IX, Chapter 2 explains how to save an Office file, a Word document included, as a web page.

Book II  
Chapter 1

Speed Techniques  
for Using Word

### Outline view

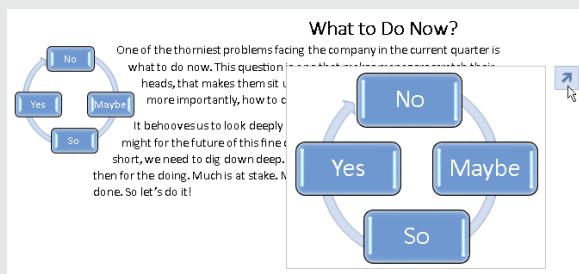


Switch to Outline view to see how your work is organized. In this view, you can see only the headings in a document. You can get a sense of how your document unfolds and easily move sections of text backward and forward in a document. In other words, you can reorganize a document in Outline view. Chapter 8 of this mini-book explains outlines in torturous detail.

## Read mode zooming

While you're in Read mode, you can double-click (or double-tap) a table, image, or chart to enlarge it on-screen and get a better look at it. Moreover, after the item gets enlarged, you can click the Zoom button (the arrow) to enlarge it several times more.

To shrink an item back to size, press Esc or click on-screen (don't click the item itself).



### Draft view

b<sup>d</sup>- Hyphenation ▾

Switch to Draft view when you're writing a document and you want to focus on the words. Clip-art images, shapes, and other distractions don't appear in this view, nor do page breaks (although you can clearly see section breaks). Draft view is best for writing first drafts.

### Splitting the screen

Besides opening a second window on a document (a subject of Book I, Chapter 3), you can be two places at one time in a Word document by splitting the screen. One reason you might do this: You're writing a long report and want the introduction to support the conclusion, and you also want the conclusion to fulfill all promises made by the introduction. That's difficult to do sometimes, but you can make it easier by splitting the screen so that you can be two places at one time as you write your introduction and conclusion.

*Splitting* a window means to divide it into north and south halves, as shown in Figure 1-4. In a split screen, two sets of scroll bars appear so that you can travel in one half of the screen without disturbing the other half. Follow these steps to split the screen:

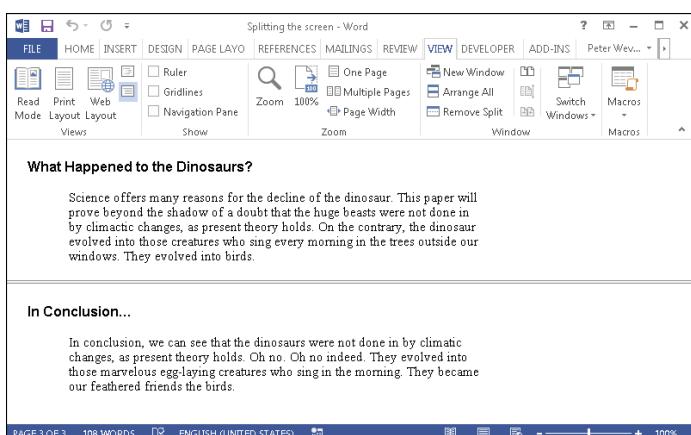


1. On the View tab, click the Split button.

A gray line appears on-screen.

2. Drag the gray line until the gray line is where you want the split to be.

You get two screens split down the middle. You can also split the screen by pressing Alt+Ctrl+S.



**Figure 1-4:**  
A split  
screen.

When you tire of this split-screen arrangement, click the Remove Split button on the View tab or drag the line to the top or bottom of the screen. You can also double-click the line that splits the screen in two.



In a split screen, you can choose a different view for the different halves. For example, click in the top half of the screen and choose Outline view to see your document in outline form, and click on the bottom half and choose Draft view to see the other half in Draft view. This way, for example, you can see the headings in a document while you write the introduction.

## Selecting Text in Speedy Ways

Book I, Chapter 2 explains how to enter text and change its appearance and size. After you enter text, you inevitably have to copy, move, or delete it, but you can't do those tasks until you select it first. Table 1-1 describes shortcuts for selecting text.

Book II  
Chapter 1

Speed Techniques  
for Using Word

**Table 1-1**

**Shortcuts for Selecting Text**

<i>To Select This</i>	<i>Do This</i>
A word	Double-click the word.
A line	Click in the left margin next to the line.
Some lines	Drag the mouse pointer over the lines or drag it down the left margin.
A sentence	Ctrl+click the sentence.
A paragraph	Double-click in the left margin next to the paragraph.
A mess of text	Click at the start of the text, hold down the Shift key, and click at the end of the text.
A gob of text	Put the cursor where you want to start selecting, press F8, and press an arrow key, drag the mouse, or click at the end of the selection.
Text with the same formats	On the Home tab, click the Select button and choose Select Text with Similar Formatting (you may have to click the Editing button first).
A document	Hold down the Ctrl key and click in the left margin; triple-click in the left margin; press Ctrl+A; or go to the Home tab, click the Select button, and choose Select All (you may have to click the Editing button first).

If a bunch of highlighted text is on-screen and you want it to go away but it won't (because you pressed F8), press the Esc key.



After you press F8, all the keyboard shortcuts for moving the cursor also work for selecting text. For example, press F8 and then press Ctrl+Home to select everything from the cursor to the top of the document. Later in this chapter, "Keys for getting around" describes keyboard shortcuts for getting from place to place.

## **Viewing the hidden format symbols**

Sometimes it pays to see the hidden format symbols when you're editing and laying out a document. The symbols show line breaks, tab spaces, paragraph breaks, and the space or spaces between words. To see the hidden format symbols, go to the Home tab and click the Show/Hide ¶ button (or press Ctrl+Shift+8). Click the button again to hide the symbols.

Here's what the hidden symbols look like on-screen.

<b>Symbol</b>	<b>How to Enter</b>
Line break („)	Press Shift+Enter
Optional hyphen (-)	Press Ctrl+hyphen
Paragraph (¶)	Press Enter
Space (·)	Press the spacebar
Tab (→)	Press Tab

## ***Moving Around Quickly in Documents***

Besides sliding the scroll bar, Word offers a handful of very speedy techniques for jumping around in documents: pressing shortcut keys, using the Go To command, and navigating with the Navigation pane. Read on to discover how to get there faster, faster, faster.

### ***Keys for getting around quickly***

One of the fastest ways to go from place to place is to press the keys and key combinations listed in Table 1-2.

**Table 1-2**

**Keys for Moving Around Documents**

<b>Key to Press</b>	<b>Where It Takes You</b>
PgUp	Up the length of one screen
PgDn	Down the length of one screen
Home	To the start of the line
End	To the end of the line
Ctrl+PgUp	To the previous page in the document
Ctrl+PgDn	To the next page in the document
Ctrl+Home	To the top of the document
Ctrl+End	To the bottom of the document



Here's a useful keystroke for getting from place to place: Shift+F5. Press it once to go to the location of your most recent edit. Press it two or three times to go back one or two edits before that. Pressing Shift+F5 is useful when you want to return to the place where you made an edit but can't quite remember where that place is.

## Navigating from page to page or heading to heading

In lengthy documents such as the one in Figure 1-5, the best way to get from place to place is to make use of the Navigation pane. Click a heading or a page in the Navigation pane and Word takes you there in the twinkling of an eye.

**Click Navigation pane**

**Click a heading**

**Click a page thumbnail**

**Navigation pane**

**Chapter 1: The Beginning**

The white flies. The humid field jungle heat. The occasional river crossing which I came to dread after the second one, when I slipped on a flimsy log bridge and Jabo had to rescue me from the dangerous current. The incessant croaking of god knows what. The everywhere ants. Most of all, though, the white flies.

In my national language "white flies" is their literal name, "gñats" I believe is the English word. By any name they would materialize from the molecules of the air when you least expected it and devoured millions of them, in a venomous stinging cloud. My face and hands hurt where they bit me. Jim rubbed a Yamomino insect repellent into his skin to keep the white flies away, and Conk and IDBE did too, but this mud-and-leaves mixture gave me headaches and skin rashes, so I kept my clothes on to protect myself from the white flies. Jabo, Conk and IDBE had been discarding their clothes nicely, but since the deeper we went into the jungle, I could see the outlines of Jabo's many tattoos under the mud. When we stopped to rest or camp I tried to make out his tattoos and compare what I saw to what I remembered from Jensen's *Meaning and Matter in Yamomino Tattoo Imagery*, a treatise I critiqued once upon a time, long ago, in another land. I couldn't make out his tattoos under the mud well enough to draw any conclusions about his kill status or genealogy.

Jabo had torn his white shirt into strips to make a traditional Yamomino wrist strap. That shirt—always carefully pressed, always buttoned to the top—was an emblem, I used to think, of his evangelical Christianity. In all the years he had been my father's yard man, I never saw his tattoos. Jabo had them under his pressed white shirts and khaki pants. I glimpsed his tattoos just once. This was the moment when I realized that I had been taken in around the world.

PAGE 1 OF 21 8225 WORDS

**Navigation**

**Chapter 1: The Beginning**

The white flies. The humid field jungle heat. The occasional river crossing which I came to dread after the second one, when I slipped on a flimsy log bridge and Jabo had to rescue me from the dangerous current. The incessant croaking of god knows what. The everywhere ants. Most of all, though, the white flies.

In my national language "white flies" is their literal name, "gñats" I believe is the English word. By any name they would materialize from the molecules of the air when you least expected it and devour millions of them, in a venomous stinging cloud. My face and hands hurt where they bit me. Jim rubbed a Yamomino insect repellent into his skin to keep the white flies away, and Conk and IDBE did too, but this mud-and-leaves mixture gave me headaches and skin rashes, so I kept my clothes on to protect myself from the white flies. Jabo, Conk and IDBE had been discarding their clothes piece by piece the deeper we went into the jungle. I could see the outlines of Jabo's many tattoos under the mud. When we stopped to rest or camp I tried to make out his tattoos and compare what I saw to what I remembered from Jensen's *Meaning and Matter in Yamomino Tattoo Imagery*, a treatise I critiqued once upon a time, long ago, in another land. I couldn't make out his tattoos under the mud well enough to draw any conclusions about his kill status or genealogy.

Jabo had torn his white shirt into strips to make a traditional Yamomino wrist strap. That shirt—always carefully pressed, always buttoned to the top—was an emblem, I used to think, of his evangelical Christianity. In all the years he had been my father's yard man, I never saw his tattoos. Jabo had them under his pressed white shirts and khaki pants. I glimpsed his tattoos just once. This was the moment when I realized that I had been taken in around the world.

PAGE 1 OF 21 8225 WORDS

**Figure 1-5:**  
In the  
Navigation  
pane, click  
a heading  
or page  
thumbnail  
to go from  
place to  
place.

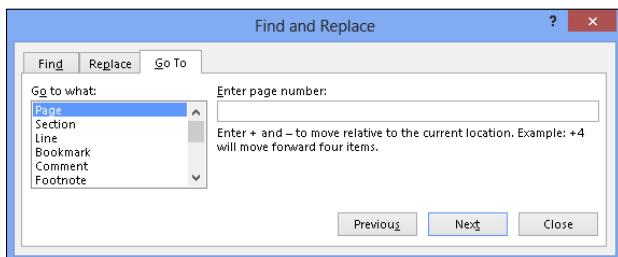
To display the Navigation pane, go to the View tab and click the Navigation Pane check box (you may have to click the Show button first). Then select a tab in the Navigation pane and go to it:

- ◆ **Going from heading to heading:** Select the Headings tab. Headings in your document appear (provided you assigned heading styles to headings). You can use the Navigation pane like a table of contents and click headings to get from place to place. Right-click a heading and choose a heading-level option on the shortcut menu to tell Word which headings to display. You can also right-click a heading and choose Expand All or Collapse All to see or hide lower-level headings.
- ◆ **Going from page to page:** Select the Pages tab. A thumbnail image of each page in the document appears. To quickly move from page to page, use the scroll bar in the Navigation pane or click a page thumbnail. Each thumbnail is numbered so that you always know which page you're viewing.

### *Going there fast with the Go To command*



Another fast way to go from place to place in a document is to use the Go To command. On the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Find button and choose Go To (you may have to click the Editing button first). You see the Go To tab of the Find and Replace dialog box, shown in Figure 1-6. You can also open this dialog box by pressing Ctrl+G or F5.



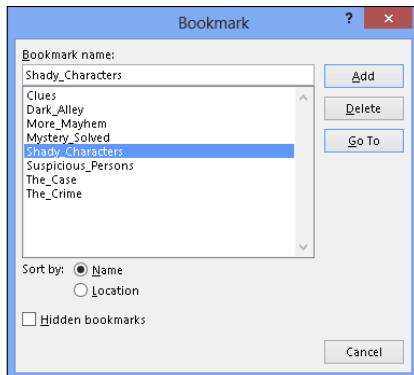
**Figure 1-6:**  
Using the  
Go To  
command.

The Go to What menu in this dialog box lists everything that can conceivably be numbered in a Word document, and other things, too. Click a menu item, enter a number, choose an item from the drop-down list, or click the Previous, Next, or Go To buttons to go elsewhere.

### *Bookmarks for hopping around*

Rather than press PgUp or PgDn or click the scroll bar to thrash around in a long document, you can use *bookmarks*. All you do is put a bookmark in an important spot in your document that you'll return to many times. To return to that spot, open the Bookmark dialog box and select a bookmark name, as

shown in Figure 1-7. True to the craft, the mystery writer whose bookmarks are shown in Figure 1-7 wrote the end of the story first and used bookmarks to jump back and forth between the beginning and end to make all the clues fit together.



**Figure 1-7:**  
The  
Bookmark  
dialog box.

Book II  
Chapter 1

Speed Techniques  
for Using Word

Follow these instructions to handle bookmarks:



- ◆ **Adding a bookmark:** Click where you want the bookmark to go, visit the Insert tab, and click the Bookmark button (you may have to click the Links button first, depending on the size of your screen). Then, in the Bookmark dialog box, type a descriptive name in the Bookmark Name box, and click the Add button. Bookmarks can't start with numbers or include blank spaces. You can also open the Bookmark dialog box by pressing Ctrl+Shift+F5.
- ◆ **Going to a bookmark:** On the Insert tab, click the Bookmark button (you may have to click the Links button first), double-click the bookmark in the Bookmark dialog box, and click the Close button.
- ◆ **Deleting a bookmark:** Select the bookmark in the Bookmark dialog box and click the Delete button.



Word uses bookmarks for many purposes. For example, bookmarks indicate where cross-references are located in a document.

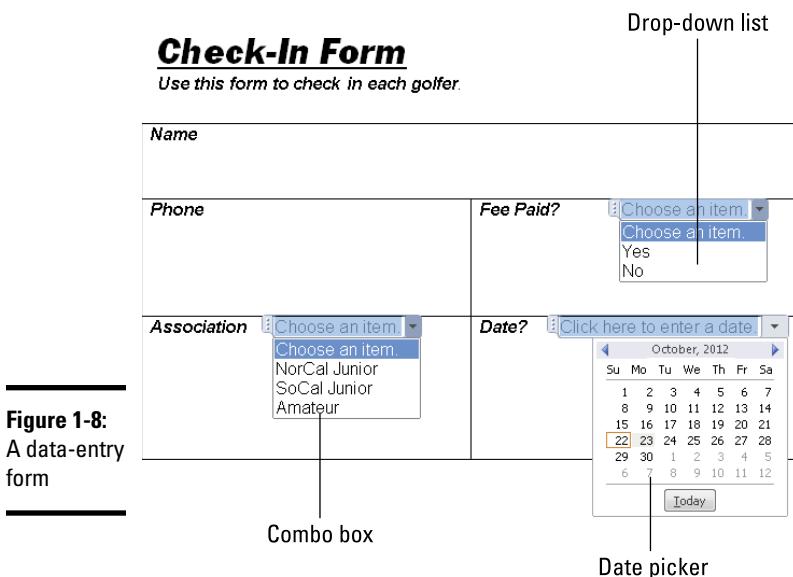
## Inserting a Whole File into a Document

One of the beautiful things about word processing is being able to recycle documents. Say that you wrote an essay on the Scissor-Tailed Flycatcher that would fit very nicely in a broader report on North American birds. You can insert the Scissor-Tailed Flycatcher document into your report document:

1. Place the cursor where you want to insert the document.
  -  2. On the Insert tab, open the drop-down list on the Object button and choose Text from File.
- You see the Insert File dialog box.
3. Find and select the file you want to insert.
  4. Click the Insert button.

## *Entering Information Quickly in a Computerized Form*

A *form* is a means of soliciting and recording information. You can use forms like the one shown in Figure 1-8 to enter data faster and to reduce data-entry errors. Instead of entering all the information by hand, you or a data-entry clerk can choose entries from combo boxes, drop-down lists, and date pickers. You save time because you don't have to enter all the information by hand, and the information you enter is more likely to be accurate because you choose it from prescribed lists instead of entering it yourself.



**Check-In Form**  
Use this form to check in each golfer.

Name		Drop-down list																																																		
Phone		Fee Paid?	<input type="button" value="Choose an item..."/> Choose an item. Yes No																																																	
Association	<input type="button" value="Choose an item..."/> Choose an item. NorCal Junior SoCal Junior Amateur	Date?	<input type="button" value="Click here to enter a date..."/> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: 150px; height: 150px; display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">           October, 2012  <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td>Su</td><td>Mo</td><td>Tu</td><td>We</td><td>Th</td><td>Fr</td><td>Sa</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td>4</td><td>5</td><td>6</td><td>7</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>9</td><td>10</td><td>11</td><td>12</td><td>13</td><td>14</td></tr> <tr><td>15</td><td>16</td><td>17</td><td>18</td><td>19</td><td>20</td><td>21</td></tr> <tr><td>22</td><td>23</td><td>24</td><td>25</td><td>26</td><td>27</td><td>28</td></tr> <tr><td>29</td><td>30</td><td>1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td>4</td><td>5</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>7</td><td>8</td><td>9</td><td>10</td><td>11</td><td>12</td></tr> </table> <input type="button" value="Today"/> </div>	Su	Mo	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Su	Mo	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa																																														
1	2	3	4	5	6	7																																														
8	9	10	11	12	13	14																																														
15	16	17	18	19	20	21																																														
22	23	24	25	26	27	28																																														
29	30	1	2	3	4	5																																														
6	7	8	9	10	11	12																																														

Combo box

Date picker

**Figure 1-8:**  
A data-entry form

To create a form like the one shown in Figure 1-8, start by creating a template for your form and putting *data-entry controls* — the combo boxes, drop-down lists, and date pickers — in the form. To fill out a form, you create a document from the form template and go to it. These pages explain how to create a form and use forms to record information.

## Creating a computerized form

The first step in creating a data-entry form is to create a template for holding the form. After that, you design the form itself by labeling the data fields and creating the data-entry controls. Better keep reading.



Before creating a template, tell Word where templates are stored on your computer. Go to the File tab, choose Options, and in the Save category of the Options dialog box, enter the path to the folder where you store templates in the Default Personal Templates Location text box. In previous editions of Word (and Office), personal templates were stored in this folder:

C:\Users\Owner or Owner's Name\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Templates

Book II  
Chapter 1

Speed Techniques  
for Using Word

### Creating a template to hold the form

Follow these steps to create a new template:

FILE

1. Press Ctrl+N to create a new document.
2. On the File tab, choose Save As.  
You see the Save As window.
3. Click the Browse button.  
The Save As dialog box opens.
4. Open the Save As Type menu and choose Word Template.
5. Enter a descriptive name for your template and click the Save button.

Word stores your template in the Default Personal Templates Location folder (see the Warning in the previous section of this chapter to find out how to tell Word where this folder is located on your computer). Chapter 3 of this mini-book explains templates in detail.

### Creating the form and data-entry controls

Your next task is to create the form and data-entry controls for your template. Enter labels on the form where you will enter information. The form in Figure 1-8, for example, has five labels: Name, Phone, Fee Paid?, Association, and Date. After you enter the labels, follow these steps to create the data-entry controls:

1. Display the Developer tab, if necessary.

If this tab isn't showing, go to the File tab, choose Options, and on the Customize Ribbon category of the Word Options dialog box, select the Developer check box and click OK. (Book IX, Chapter 1 explains in detail how to customize the Ribbon.)

- Click where you want to place a control, and then create the control by clicking a Controls button followed by the Properties button on the Developer tab.

Here are instructions for creating three types of controls:



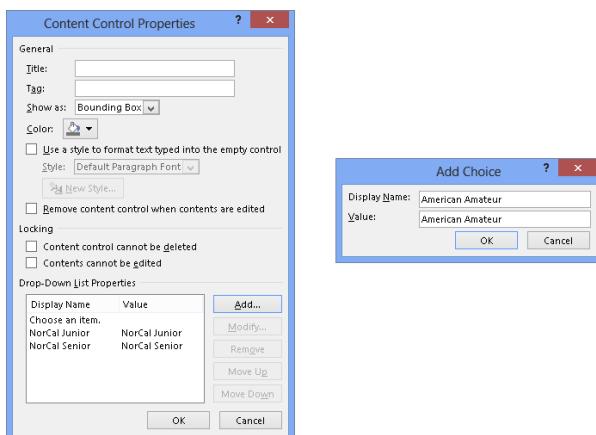
- Drop-down list:* A *drop-down list* is a menu that “drops” when you open it to reveal different option choices (refer to Figure 1-8). Click the Drop-Down List Content Control button and then the Properties button. You see the Content Control Properties dialog box, as shown in Figure 1-9. For each option you want to place on the drop-down list, click the Add button, and in the Add Choice dialog box, enter the option’s name in the Display Name text box and click OK, as shown in Figure 1-9.



- Combo box:* Like a drop-down list, a *combo box* “drops” to reveal choices. However, as well as choosing an option on the drop-down list, data-entry clerks can enter information in the box (refer to Figure 1-8). Click the Combo Box Content Control button and then the Properties button. In the Content Control Properties dialog box, enter option names the same way you enter them in a drop-down list, as shown in Figure 1-9.
- Date picker:* A *date picker* is a mini-calendar from which data-entry clerks can enter a date (refer to Figure 1-8). Click the Date Picker Content Control button and then the Properties button. In the Content Control Properties dialog box, choose a display format for dates and click OK.



**Figure 1-9:**  
Click the Add button to create options for a drop-down menu or combo box.



- Click the Save button to save your template.

Now you’re ready to use your newly made form to enter data.

## ***Entering data in the form***

Now that you have the template, you or someone else can enter data cleanly in easy-to-read forms:

**FILE**

- 1. On the File tab, choose New.**

You see the New window.

- 2. Click the Personal tab.**

This tab lists templates stored on your computer.

- 3. Double-click the name of the template you created for entering data in your form.**

The form appears.

- 4. Enter information in the input fields.**

Press the up or down arrow, or press Tab and Shift+Tab to move from field to field. You can also click input fields to move the cursor there.

- 5. When you're done, print the document or save it.**

**Book II  
Chapter 1**

**Speed Techniques  
for Using Word**



# *Chapter 2: Laying Out Text and Pages*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Entering a section break
- ✓ Starting a new line and page
- ✓ Changing the margins
- ✓ Indenting text
- ✓ Numbering pages and handling headers and footers
- ✓ Adjusting the space between lines and paragraphs
- ✓ Handling bulleted and numbered lists
- ✓ Hyphenating the text

**T**his chapter explains how to format text and pages. A well-laid-out document says a lot about how much time and thought was put into it. This chapter presents tips, tricks, and techniques for making pages look just right.

In this chapter, you learn what section breaks are and why they are so important to formatting. You discover how to establish the size of margins, indent text, number pages, construct headers and footers, determine how much space appears between lines of text, handle lists, and hyphenate text.

## *Paragraphs and Formatting*

Back in English class, your teacher taught you that a paragraph is a part of a longer composition that presents one idea or, in the case of dialogue, presents the words of one speaker. Your teacher was right, too, but for word-processing purposes, a paragraph is a lot less than that. In word processing, a paragraph is simply what you put on-screen before you press the Enter key.

For instance, a heading is a paragraph. If you press Enter on a blank line to go to the next line, the blank line is considered a paragraph. If you type **Dear John** at the top of a letter and press Enter, “Dear John” is a paragraph.



It's important to know this because paragraphs have a lot to do with formatting. If you click the Paragraph group button on the Home tab and monkey around with the paragraph formatting in the Paragraph dialog box, your changes affect everything in the paragraph where the cursor is located. To make format changes to a whole paragraph, all you have to do is place the cursor there. You don't have to select the paragraph. And if you want to make format changes to several paragraphs, all you have to do is select those paragraphs first.

## *Inserting a Section Break for Formatting Purposes*

When you want to change page numbering schemes, headers and footers, margin sizes, and page orientations in a document, you have to create a *section break* to start a new section. Word creates a new section for you when you create newspaper-style columns or change the size of margins.

Follow these steps to create a new section:

1. **Click where you want to insert a section break.**
2. **On the Page Layout tab, click the Breaks button.**  
You open a drop-down list.
3. **Under Section Breaks on the drop-down list, select a section break.**

Figure 2-1 shows what the different section breaks look like in Draft view. All four section break options create a new section, but they do so in different ways:

- ◆ **Next Page:** Inserts a page break as well as a section break so that the new section can start at the top of a new page (the next one). Select this option to start a new chapter, for example.
- ◆ **Continuous:** Inserts a section break in the middle of a page. Select this option if, for example, you want to introduce newspaper-style columns in the middle of a page.
- ◆ **Even Page:** Starts the new section on the next even page. This option is good for two-sided documents in which the headers on the left- and right-side pages are different.
- ◆ **Odd Page:** Starts the new section on the next odd page. You might choose this option if you have a book in which chapters start on odd pages. (By convention, that's where they start.)

**Figure 2-1:**  
Section  
breaks in  
Draft view.

.....Section Break (Next Page).....
.....Section Break (Continuous).....
.....Section Break (Even Page).....
.....Section Break (Odd Page).....



To delete a section break, make sure that you are in Draft view so that you can see section breaks, click the dotted line, and press the Delete key.

## Seeing what the formats are

Sometimes seeing how text was formatted merely by looking is difficult. However, by pressing Shift+F1, you can see precisely how text and paragraphs were formatted in the Reveal Formatting task pane. It describes how the text, paragraph, and section where the cursor is located are formatted.

While the Reveal Formatting task pane is open, you can take advantage of these amenities:



- ✓ **Compare one part of a document to another:** Click the Compare to Another Section check box and then click another part of your document. The Reveal Formatting task pane describes how the two parts differ. Knowing how parts of a document differ can be invaluable when you're creating and modifying styles.
- ✓ **Find out which style was assigned:** Click the Distinguish Style Source check box. The task pane lists the style you assigned to the part of your document where the cursor is located.
- ✓ **See the formatting marks:** Click the Show All Formatting Marks check box. You can see where paragraphs end, where line breaks are, and where tab spaces were entered. Clicking this check box has the same results as clicking the Show/Hide ¶ button on the Home tab.



In the same way that paragraph marks store formats for a paragraph, section breaks store formats for an entire section. When you delete a section break, you apply new formats, because the section is folded into the section that formerly followed it and the section you deleted adopts that next section's formats. Because it's easy to accidentally delete a section break and create havoc, I recommend working in Draft view when your document has many section breaks. In Draft view, you can tell where a section ends because Section Break and a double dotted line appear on-screen. The only way to tell where a section ends in Print Layout view is to click the Show/Hide ¶ button on the Home tab. (You can make section information appear on the status bar. Right-click the status bar and choose Section on the pop-up menu.)

## *Breaking a Line*

To break a line of text before it reaches the right margin without starting a new paragraph, press Shift+Enter. Figure 2-2 shows how you can press Shift+Enter to make lines break better. The paragraphs are identical, but I broke lines in the right-side paragraph to make the text easier to read. Line breaks are marked with the ¶ symbol. To erase line breaks, click the Show/Hide ¶ button to see these symbols and then backspace over them.

---

**Figure 2-2:**  
Break lines  
to make  
reading  
easier.

---

"A computer in every home and a chicken in every pot is our goal!" stated Rupert T. Verguenza, president and CEO of the New Technics Corporation International at the annual shareholder meeting yesterday.

"A computer in every home and a chicken in every pot is our goal!" stated Rupert T. Verguenza, president and CEO of the New Technics Corporation International at the annual shareholder meeting yesterday.

## *Starting a New Page*

Word gives you another page so that you can keep going when you fill up one page. But what if you're impatient and want to start a new page right away? Whatever you do, *don't* press Enter again and again until you fill up the page. Instead, create a *hard page break* by doing one of the following on the Insert tab:



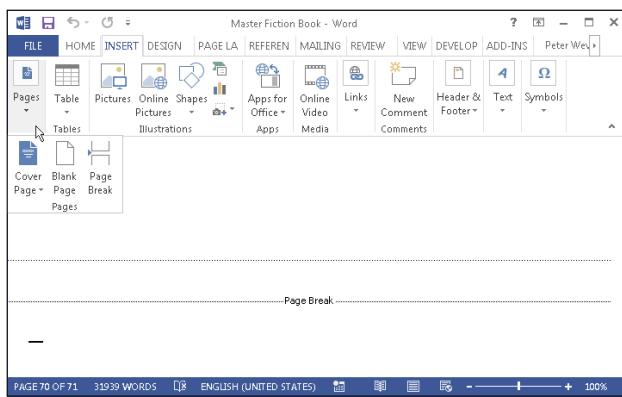
- ◆ Click the Page Break button (or press Ctrl+Enter). Word starts a new page at the cursor position. (You can also go to the Page Layout tab, click the Breaks button, and choose Page on the drop-down list.)
- ◆ Click the Blank Page button. Word enters two hard page breaks to create an empty, blank page at the cursor position.





Figure 2-3 shows, in Draft view, the difference between a soft page break and a hard page break. Word inserts a *soft page break* when the page is full and another page is needed; only you can create a hard page break. In Draft view, soft page breaks are marked with a dotted line; hard page breaks are marked with the words **Page Break** and a line. You can't tell where hard page breaks are in Print Layout view.

**Figure 2-3:**  
In Draft view, a soft page break (top) and hard page break (bottom).



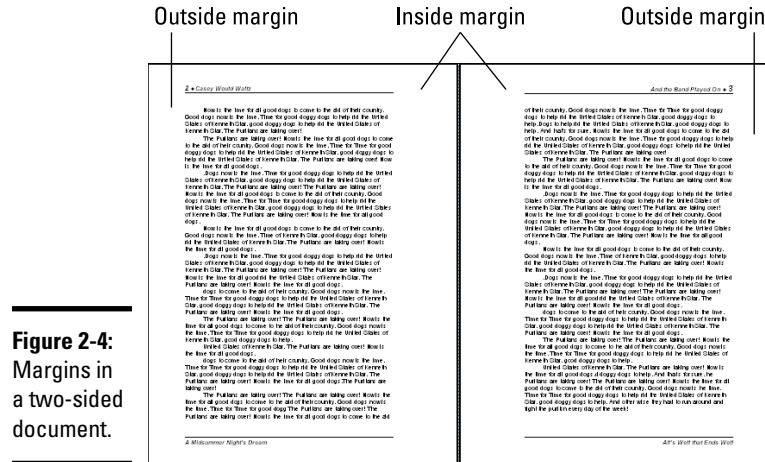
To delete a hard page break, switch to Draft view, double-click the words **Page Break**, and press the Delete key.

## Setting Up and Changing the Margins

*Margins* are the empty spaces along the left, right, top, and bottom of a page, as shown in Figure 2-4. Headers and footers fall, respectively, in the top and bottom margins. And you can put graphics, text boxes, and page numbers in the margins as well. Margins serve to frame the text and make it easier to read.



When you start a new document, give a moment's thought to the margins. Changing the size of margins after you have entered the text, clip art, graphics, and whatnot can be disastrous. Text is indented from the left and right margins. Pages break on the bottom margin. If you change margin settings, indents and page breaks change for good or ill throughout your document. By setting the margins carefully from the beginning, you can rest assured that text will land on the page where you want it to land.



**Figure 2-4:**  
Margins in  
a two-sided  
document.



Don't confuse margins with indents. Text is indented from the margin, not from the edge of the page. If you want to change how far text falls from the page edge, indent it. To change margin settings in the middle of a document, you have to create a new section.



To set up or change the margins, go to the Page Layout tab and click the Margins button. You see a drop-down list with margin settings. Either choose a setting or select Custom Margins to open the Margins tab of the Page Setup dialog box and choose among these commands for handling margins:

- ◆ **Changing the size of the margins:** Enter measurements in the Top, Bottom, Left, and Right boxes to tell Word how much blank space to put along the sides of the page.
- ◆ **Making room for the gutter:** The *gutter* is the part of the paper that the binding eats into when you bind a document. Enter a measurement in the Gutter box to increase the left or inside margin and make room for the binding. Notice on the pages of this book, for example, that the margin closest to the binding is wider than the outside margin. Choose Top on the Gutter Position menu if you intend to bind your document from the top, not the left, or inside, of the page. Some legal documents are bound this way.
- ◆ **Using mirror margins (inside and outside margins) in two-sided documents:** In a bound document in which text is printed on both sides of the pages, the terms left margin and right margin are meaningless. What matters instead is in the *inside margin*, the margin in the middle of the page spread next to the bindings, and the *outside margin*, the margin on the outside of the page spread that isn't affected by the bindings (refer to Figure 2-4). Choose Mirror Margins on the Multiple Pages drop-down list and adjust the margins accordingly if you intend to print on both sides of the paper.

- ◆ **Applying margin changes:** On the Apply To drop-down list, choose Whole Document to apply your margin settings to the entire document; This Section to apply them to a section; or This Point Forward to change margins in the rest of a document. When you choose This Point Forward, Word creates a new section.

If you're in a hurry to change margins, you can change them on the ruler. Display the ruler and drag the Left Margin, Right Margin, or Top Margin marker. You can find these markers by moving the pointer onto a ruler and looking for the two-headed arrow near a margin boundary. It appears, along with a pop-up label, when the pointer is over a margin marker.



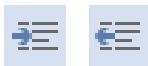
To get a good look at where margins are, go to the File tab and choose Options. In the Word Options dialog box, select the Advanced category, and click the Show Text Boundaries check box (you'll find it under "Show Document Content").

Book II  
Chapter 2

Laying Out Text  
and Pages

## Indenting Paragraphs and First Lines

An *indent* is the distance between a margin and the text, not the edge of the page and the text. Word offers a handful of ways to change the indentation of paragraphs. You can change the indentation of first lines as well as entire paragraphs. To start, select all or part of the paragraphs you want to re-indent (just click in a paragraph if you want to re-indent only one paragraph). Then click an Indent button, fiddle with the indentation marks on the ruler, or go to the Paragraph dialog box. All three techniques are described here.



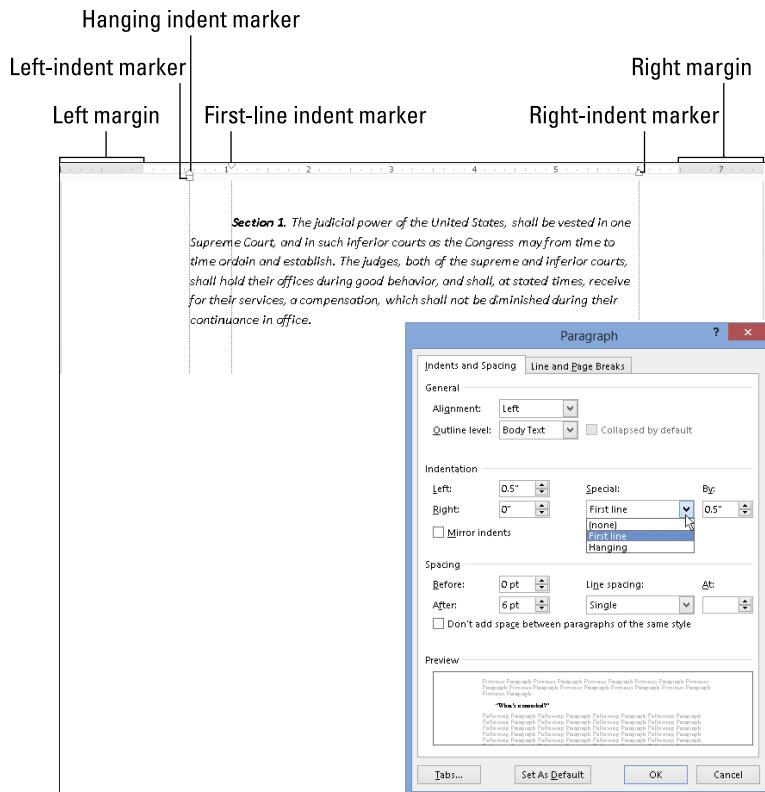
### Clicking an Indent button (for left-indents)

On the Home tab, click the Increase Indent or Decrease Indent button (or press Ctrl+M or Ctrl+Shift+M) to move a paragraph a half-inch farther away from or closer to the left margin. If you created tab stops, text is indented to the next or previous tab stop as well as to the next or previous half-inch. This is the fastest way to indent text, although you can't indent first lines or indent from the right margin this way.

### "Eye-balling it" with the ruler

You can also change indentations by using the ruler to "eyeball it." This technique requires some dexterity with the mouse, but it allows you to see precisely where paragraphs and the first lines of paragraphs are indented. If necessary, display the ruler by going to the View tab and clicking the Ruler check box. Then click in or select the paragraph or paragraphs that need indenting and use these techniques to re-indent them:

- ◆ **Indenting an entire paragraph from the left margin:** Drag the *left-indent marker* on the ruler to the right. Figure 2-5 shows where this marker is located. Dragging the left-indent marker moves the first-line indent marker as well.
- ◆ **Indenting the first line of a paragraph:** Drag the *first-line indent marker* to the right (refer to Figure 2-5). This marker determines how far the first line of the paragraph is indented.
- ◆ **Making a hanging indent:** Drag the *hanging indent marker* to the right of the first-line indent marker (refer to Figure 2-5). A *hanging indent* is one in which the first line of a paragraph appears to “hang” into the left margin because the second and subsequent lines are indented to the right of the start of the first line. Bulleted and numbered lists employ hanging indents.
- ◆ **Indenting an entire paragraph from the right margin:** Drag the *right-indent marker* to the left (refer to Figure 2-5).



**Figure 2-5:**  
Indenting  
with the  
ruler  
(top) and  
Paragraph  
dialog box  
(bottom).

Notice the shaded areas on the left and right side of the ruler. These areas represent the page margins.

### ***Indenting in the Paragraph dialog box***

Yet another way to indent a paragraph or first line is to visit the Paragraph dialog box, as shown in Figure 2-5. Click in or select the paragraph or paragraphs in question, go to the Home or Page Layout tab, and click the Paragraph group button. You see the Indents and Spacing tab of the Paragraph dialog box. Change the indentation settings. If you want to indent the first line or create a hanging indent, choose First Line or Hanging on the Special drop-down list and enter a measurement in the By box.

Book II  
Chapter 2

Laying Out Text  
and Pages

## ***Numbering the Pages***

How do you want to number the pages in your document? You can number them in sequence starting with the number 1, start numbering pages with a number other than 1, use Roman numerals or other number formats, and include chapter numbers in page numbers. What's more, you can number the pages differently in each section of your document as long as you divided your document into sections.

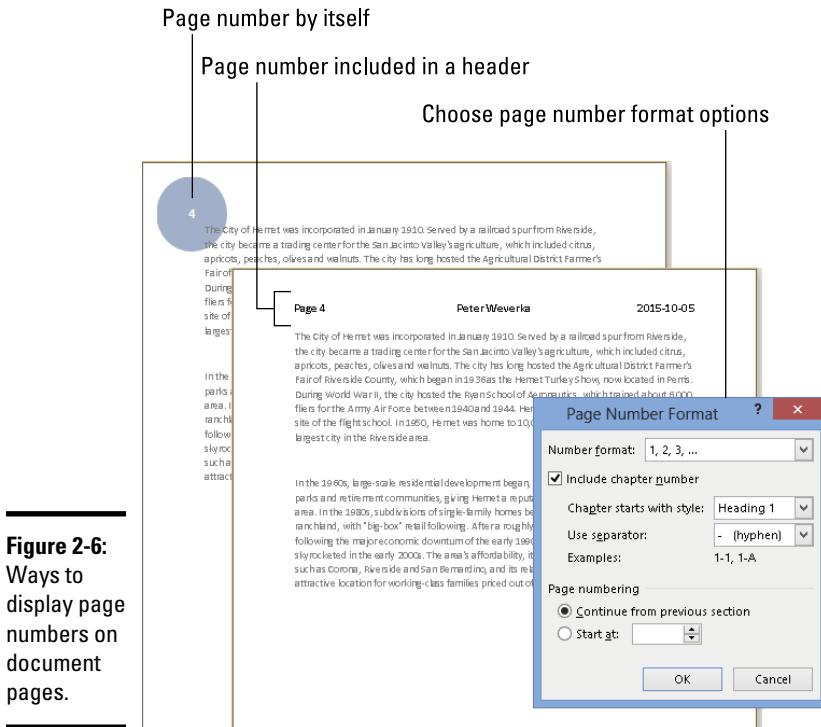
When it comes to numbering pages, you can proceed in two ways, as shown in Figure 2-6:

- ◆ Put a page number by itself on the pages of your document.
- ◆ Include the page number in the header or footer.

After you enter a page number, you can format it in different ways in the Page Number Format dialog box (refer to Figure 2-6) and (Header & Footer Tools) Design tab.



To handle page numbers (as well as headers and footers), you must be in Print Layout view. Click the Print Layout view button on the status bar or go to the View tab and click the Print Layout button.



**Figure 2-6:**  
Ways to  
display page  
numbers on  
document  
pages.

## Numbering with page numbers only

Follow these steps to insert a page number by itself in the header, footer, or margin of the pages:

1. On the Insert tab, click the Page Number button.
2. On the drop-down list, choose where on the page you want to put the page number (Top of Page, Bottom of Page, or Page Margins).
3. On the submenu that appears, choose a page number option.

The farther you scroll on the submenu, the fancier the page number formats are.

If you change your mind about the page number format you choose, switch to Print Layout view and double-click in the header or footer where the page number is displayed. The (Header & Footer Tools) Design tab opens. Click the Page Number button and make a different choice, or choose Remove Page Numbers.

## Including a page number in a header or footer

To put the page number part in a header or footer, double-click in the header or footer where you want the page number to appear (later in this chapter, “Putting Headers and Footers on Pages” explains headers and footers). Then follow these steps to insert the page number:

-  **On the (Header & Footer Tools) Design tab, click the Page Number button.**

- Choose Current Position.**

You see a submenu with page number choices.

- Scroll through the submenu and choose a page number format.**

The “Page X of Y” option is for listing the total number of pages in a document as well as the page number. For example, page 2 of a 10-page document is numbered “Page 2 of 10.”

## Changing page number formats

Change page number formats in the Page Number Format dialog box (refer to Figure 2-6). To display this dialog box, make sure you’re in Print Layout view and double-click your header or footer. Then use one of the following methods to change page number formats:

-  ♦ On the Insert tab, click the Page Number button and choose Format Page Numbers.
- ♦ On the (Header & Footer Tools) Design tab, click the Page Number button and choose Format Page Numbers.

In the Page Number Format dialog box, make your page numbers just so:

- ♦ **Choosing a different number format:** Open the Number Format drop-down list and choose a page-numbering format. You can use numbers, letters, or roman numerals.
- ♦ **Including chapter numbers in page numbers:** If your document generates chapter numbers automatically from headings assigned the same style (a subject not covered in this book), you can include the chapter number in the page number. Click the Include Chapter Number check box, choose a style, and choose a separator to go between the chapter number and page number.
- ♦ **Numbering each section separately:** Click the Start At option button (not the Continue from Previous Section button) to begin counting pages anew at each section in your document. Earlier in this chapter, “Inserting a Section Break for Formatting Purposes” explains sections.
- ♦ **Start numbering pages at a number other than 1:** Click the Start At option button and enter a number other than 1.

## Editing PDF files

PDF stands for *portable document file*. PDFs are designed to be read with the Adobe Reader program. Almost anywhere you go on the Internet, you stumble upon PDFs. The PDF format is a popular means of sharing and distributing files.

Starting with Word 2013, you can edit a PDF file in Word. Open the PDF as you would any

text file and start editing. In my experiments, most of the PDF formats carry over to Word. I had some trouble with tables and images, but I didn't have any serious trouble.

Book IX, Chapter 2 explains how to save a Word file as a PDF file.



To keep some pages in a document from being numbered, create a section for those pages, and then remove page numbers from the section. To paginate your document, Word skips the section you created and resumes numbering pages in the following section.

## Putting Headers and Footers on Pages

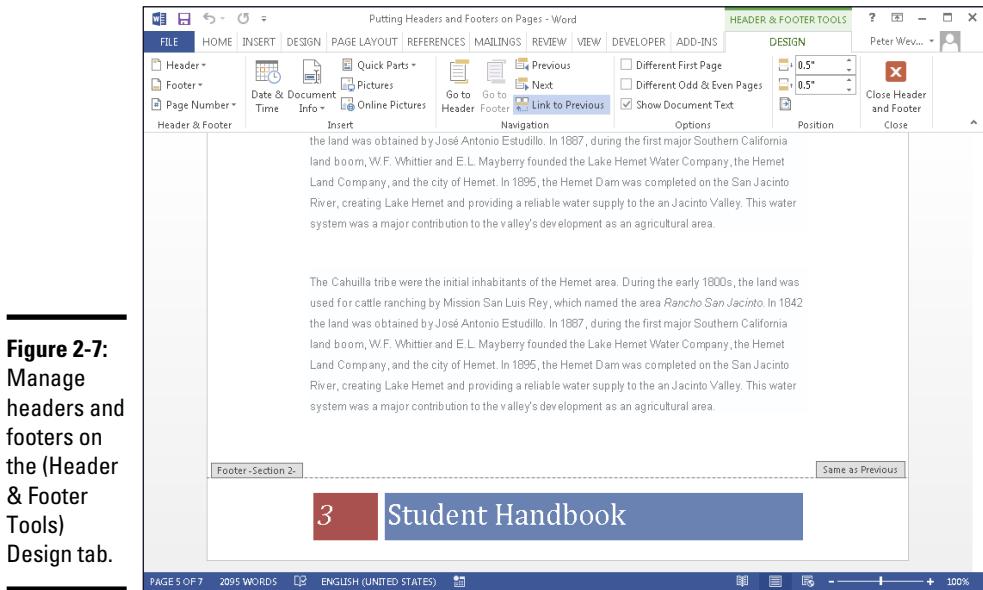
A *header* is a little description that appears along the top of a page so that the reader knows what's what. Usually, headers include the page number and a title, and often the author's name appears in the header as well. A *footer* is the same thing as a header except that it appears along the bottom of the page, as befits its name.

These pages explain everything a mere mortal needs to know about headers and footers. Meanwhile, here are the ground rules for managing them:



- ◆ **Switching to Print Layout view:** To enter, read, edit or delete headers and footers, you must be in Print Layout view. You can't see headers and footers in the other views.
- ◆ **Displaying the (Header & Footer Tools) Design tab:** As shown in Figure 2-7, you manage headers and footers by way of buttons on the (Header & Footer Tools) Design tab. To display this tab after you create a header or footer, switch to Print Layout view and double-click a header or footer.
- ◆ **Closing the (Header & Footer Tools) Design tab:** Click the Close Header and Footer button or double-click outside the header or footer.
- ◆ **Placing different headers and footers in the same document:** To change headers or footers in the middle of a document, you have to create a new section. See "Inserting a Section Break for Formatting Purposes" earlier in this chapter.





**Figure 2-7:**  
Manage  
headers and  
footers on  
the (Header  
& Footer  
Tools)  
Design tab.

**Book II**  
**Chapter 2**

**Laying Out Text  
and Pages**

## Creating, editing, and removing headers and footers

Follow these instructions to create, edit, and delete headers and footers:

- ◆ **Creating a header or footer:** On the Insert tab, click the Header or the Footer button, and choose a header or footer on the gallery. The gallery presents headers or footers with preformatted page numbers, dates, and places to enter a document title and author's name. Click More Headers (or Footers) from Office.com to download headers or footers from Microsoft. (Later in this chapter, “Fine-tuning a header or footer” explains how to insert the date and time and change headers and footers from section to section.)
- ◆ **Choosing a different header or footer:** Don’t like the header or footer you chose? If necessary, double-click your header or footer to display the (Header & Footer Tools) Design tab. Then click the Header or Footer button and choose a new header or footer from the gallery.
- ◆ **Editing a header or footer:** Double-click the header or footer. The cursor moves into the header or footer so that you can enter or format text. You can also click the Header or the Footer button and choose Edit Header or Edit Footer on the drop-down list.

- ◆ **Changing the appearance of a header or footer:** Click a shape or text box in a header or footer and visit the (Drawing Tools) Format tab to change the shape or text box's color, background, or size. (Book VIII, Chapter 4 describes the Office 2013 drawing tools.)
- ◆ **Removing a header or footer:** Click the Header or Footer button and choose Remove Header or Remove Footer on the drop-down list.

To switch back and forth between the header and footer, click the Go to Header or Go to Footer button on the (Header & Footer Tools) Design tab.



As you work away on your header and footer, you can call on most of the text-formatting commands on the Home tab. You can change the text's font and font size, click an alignment button, and paste text from the Clipboard. Tabs are set up in most headers and footers to make it possible to center, left-align, and right-align text. You can click the Insert Alignment Tab button on the (Header & Footer Tools) Design tab to insert a new tab.

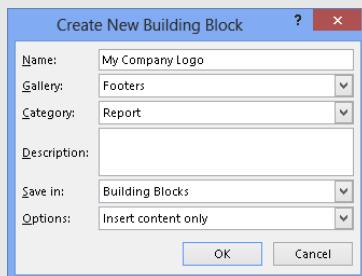
## Creating your own header or footer for the gallery

When you click the Header or the Footer button on the Insert tab, a gallery appears with headers or footers. You can create your own header or footer and place it on this gallery. For example, create a header or footer with your company logo. After you design and create your header or footer, follow these instructions to wrangle with it:

- ✓ **Placing a header or footer in the gallery:** Select your header or footer by dragging over it or by clicking in the margin to its left. On the (Header & Footer Tools) Design tab, click the Quick Parts button and choose Save Selection to Quick Part Gallery. You see the Create New Building Block dialog box. Enter a descriptive name for the header or footer, choose Footers or Headers on the Gallery drop-down list, and click OK.
- ✓ **Inserting a header or footer you created:** On the Insert tab, click the Header or Footer button and choose your header

or footer in the gallery. It is located in the Built-In or General category, depending on where you chose to put it.

- ✓ **Removing and editing headers or footers:** On the Insert tab, click the Quick Parts button and choose Building Blocks Organizer. The Building Blocks Organizer dialog box appears. Select your header or footer and click the Delete button to remove it from the gallery or the Edit Properties button to change its name, gallery assignment, or category assignment.



## Fine-tuning a header or footer

Here is advice for making a perfect header on the (Header & Footer Tools) Design tab:



Link to Previous



- ◆ **Inserting a page number:** See “Including a page number in a header or footer” and “Changing page number formats” earlier in this chapter.
- ◆ **Inserting the date and time:** Click the Date & Time button, choose a date format in the Date and Time dialog box, and click OK. Click the Update Automatically check box if you want the date to record when you print the document, not when you created your header or footer.
- ◆ **Changing headers and footers from section to section:** Use the Link to Previous button to determine whether headers and footers are different from section to section (you must divide a document into sections to have different headers and footers). Deselecting this button tells Word that you want your header or footer to be different from the header or footer in the previous section of the document; selecting this button (clicking it so it looks selected) tells Word that you want your header or footer to be the same as the header or footer in the previous section of your document. To make a different header or footer, deselect the Link to Previous button and enter a different header or footer.

When the header or footer is the same as that of the previous section, the Header or Footer box reads Same as Previous (refer to Figure 2-7); when the header or footer is different from that of the previous section, the words Same as Previous don’t appear. You can click the Previous or Next button to examine the header or footer in the previous or next section.

- ◆ **Different headers and footers for odd and even pages:** Click the Different Odd & Even Pages check box to create different headers and footers for odd and even pages. As “Setting Up and Changing the Margins” explains earlier in this chapter, documents in which text is printed on both sides of the page can have different headers and footers for the left and right side of the page spread. The Header or Footer box reads Odd or Even to tell you which side of the page spread you’re dealing with as you enter your header or footer.
- ◆ **Removing headers and footers from the first page:** Click the Different First Page check box to remove a header or footer from the first page of a document or section. Typically, the first page of letters and reports are not numbered.

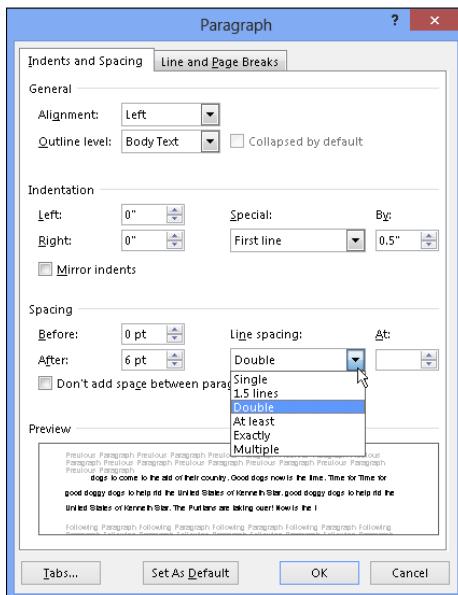
## *Adjusting the Space Between Lines*



To change the spacing between lines, select the lines whose spacing you want to change, or simply put the cursor in a paragraph if you're changing the line spacing throughout a paragraph (if you're just starting a document, you're ready to go). Then, on the Home tab, click the Line and Paragraph Spacing button and choose an option on the drop-down list.

To take advantage of more line-spacing options, open the Paragraph dialog box, as shown in Figure 2-8. Use either of these techniques to open the Paragraph dialog box:

- ◆ Go to the Home tab or Page Layout tab and click the Paragraph group button.
- ◆ On the Home tab, click the Line and Paragraph Spacing button and choose Line Spacing Options on the drop-down list.



**Figure 2-8:**  
In the  
Paragraph  
dialog box,  
choose  
Spacing  
options to  
decide the  
amount  
of space  
between  
paragraphs  
and lines.

Besides single-, 1.5-, and double-spacing, the Paragraph dialog box offers these Line Spacing options:

- ◆ **At Least:** Choose this one if you want Word to adjust for tall symbols or other unusual text. Word adjusts the lines but makes sure there is, at minimum, the number of points you enter in the At box between each line.

- ◆ **Exactly:** Choose this one and enter a number in the At box if you want a specific amount of space between lines.
- ◆ **Multiple:** Choose this one and put a number in the At box to get triple-spaced, quadruple-, quintuple-, or any other number of spaced lines.



To quickly single-space text, click the text or select it if you want to change more than one paragraph, and press Ctrl+1. To quickly double-space text, select the text and press Ctrl+2. Press Ctrl+5 to put one and a half lines between lines of text.



The Design tab offers a command called Paragraph Spacing for changing the overall look of paragraphs. Click the Paragraph Spacing button and choose an option on the drop-down list to make paragraphs and lines of text more compact, tight, open, or relaxed.

Book II  
Chapter 2

Laying Out Text  
and Pages

## Adjusting the Space Between Paragraphs

Rather than press Enter to put a blank line between paragraphs, you can open the Paragraph dialog box and enter a point-size measurement in the Before or After text box (see Figure 2-8). The Before and After measurements place a specific amount of space before and after paragraphs.



Truth be told, the Before and After options are for use with styles (a subject of the next chapter). When you create a style, you can tell Word to always follow a paragraph in a certain style with a paragraph in another style. For example, a paragraph in the Chapter Title style might always be followed by a paragraph in the Chapter Intro style. In cases like these, when you know that paragraphs assigned to one type of style will always follow paragraphs assigned to another style, you can confidently put space before and after paragraphs. But if you use the Before and After styles indiscriminately, you can end up with large blank spaces between paragraphs.

Go to the Home tab and use one of these techniques to adjust the amount of space between paragraphs:



- ◆ Click the Line and Paragraph Spacing button and choose Add Space Before Paragraph or Add Space after Paragraph on the drop-down list. These commands place 10 points of blank space before or after the paragraph that the cursor is in.
- ◆ Click the Paragraph group button to open the Paragraph dialog box (see Figure 2-8), and enter point-size measurements in the Before and After boxes (or choose Auto in these boxes to enter one blank line between paragraphs in whatever your Line-Spacing choice is). The Don't Add Space between Paragraphs of the Same Style check box tells Word to ignore Before and After measurements if the previous or next paragraph is assigned the same style as the paragraph that the cursor is in.

## *Creating Numbered and Bulleted Lists*

What is a word-processed document without a list or two? It's like an emperor with no clothes. Numbered lists are invaluable in manuals and books like this one that present a lot of step-by-step procedures. Use bulleted lists when you want to present alternatives to the reader. A *bullet* is a black, filled-in circle or other character. These pages explain numbered lists, bulleted lists, and multilevel lists.

### *Simple numbered and bulleted lists*



The fastest, cleanest, and most honest way to create a numbered or bulleted list is to enter the text without any concern for numbers or bullets. Just press Enter at the end of each step or bulleted entry. When you're done, select the list, go to the Home tab, and click the Numbering or Bullets button. You can also click the Numbering or Bullets button and start typing the list. Each time you press Enter, Word enters the next number or another bullet.

Meanwhile, here are some tricks for handling lists:



- ◆ **Ending a list:** Press the Enter key twice after typing the last entry in the list. You can also right-click the list, choose Bullets or Numbering, and choose None on the submenu.
- ◆ **Removing the numbers or bullets:** Select the list and click the Numbering or Bullets button.
- ◆ **Adjusting how far a list is indented:** Right-click anywhere in the list, choose Adjust List Indents, and enter a new measurement in the Text Indent box.
- ◆ **Resuming a numbered list:** Suppose that you want a numbered list to resume where a list you entered earlier ended. In other words, suppose that you left off writing a four-step list, put in a graphic or some paragraphs, and now you want to resume the list at Step 5. Click the Numbering button to start numbering again. The AutoCorrect Options button appears. Click it and choose Continue Numbering, or right-click and choose Continue Numbering on the shortcut menu.
- ◆ **Starting a new list:** Suppose that you want to start a brand-new list right away. Right-click the number Word entered and choose Restart at 1 on the shortcut menu.

## Automatic lists and what to do about them

Word creates automatic lists for you whether you like it or not. To see what I mean, type the number 1, type a period, and press the spacebar. Word immediately creates a numbered list. In the same manner, Word creates a bulleted list when you type an asterisk (\*) and press the spacebar.

Some people find this kind of behind-the-scenes skullduggery annoying. If you are one such person, do one of the following to keep Word from making lists automatically:

- ✓ Click the AutoCorrect Options button — it appears automatically — and choose Stop Automatically Creating Lists.
- ✓ On the File tab, choose Options, select the Proofing category in the Word Options dialog box, and click the AutoCorrect Options button. On the AutoFormat As You Type tab in the AutoCorrect dialog box, deselect the Automatic Numbered Lists and Automatic Bulleted Lists check boxes.

## Constructing lists of your own

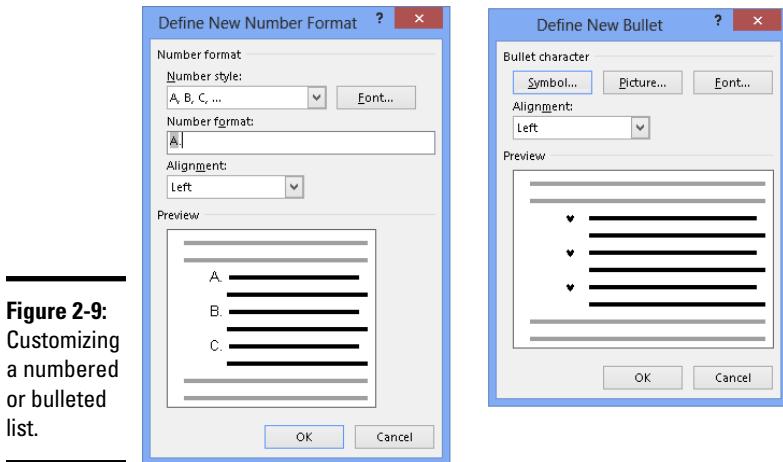
If you're an individualist and you want numbered and bulleted lists to work your way, follow these instructions for choosing unusual bullet characters and number formats:



- ◆ **Choosing a different numbering scheme:** On the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Numbering button and choose a numbering scheme. You can also choose Define New Number Format. As shown in Figure 2-9, you see the Define New Number Format dialog box, where you can choose a number format, choose a font for numbers, and toy with number alignments.



- ◆ **Choosing a different bullet character:** On the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Bullets button and choose a different bullet character on the drop-down list. You can also choose Define New Bullet to open the Define New Bullet dialog box, shown in Figure 2-9, and click the Symbol button to choose a bullet character in the Symbol dialog box (Book I, Chapter 2 describes symbols). The dialog box also offers opportunities for indenting bullets and the text that follows them in unusual ways.



**Figure 2-9:**  
Customizing  
a numbered  
or bulleted  
list.

## Managing a multilevel list

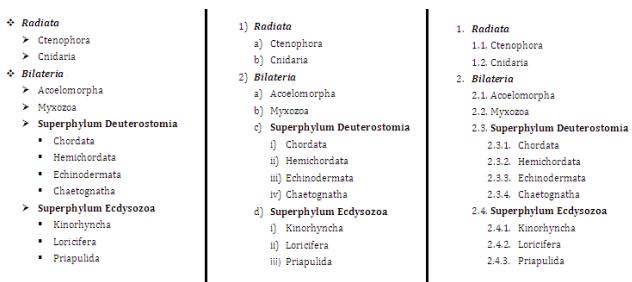
A *multilevel list*, also called a *nested list*, is a list with subordinate entries, as shown in Figure 2-10. To create a multilevel list, you declare what kind of list you want, and then, as you enter items for the list, you indent the items that you want to be subordinate. Follow these steps to create a multilevel list:



1. On the Home tab, click the Multilevel List button and choose what kind of list you want.
2. Enter the items for the list, pressing Enter as you complete each one.
3. Select a list item (or items) and click the Increase Indent button (or press Ctrl+M) to make the items subordinate in the list; click the Decrease Indent button (or press Ctrl+Shift+M) to raise their rank in the list.

Repeat Step 3 until the list is just so.

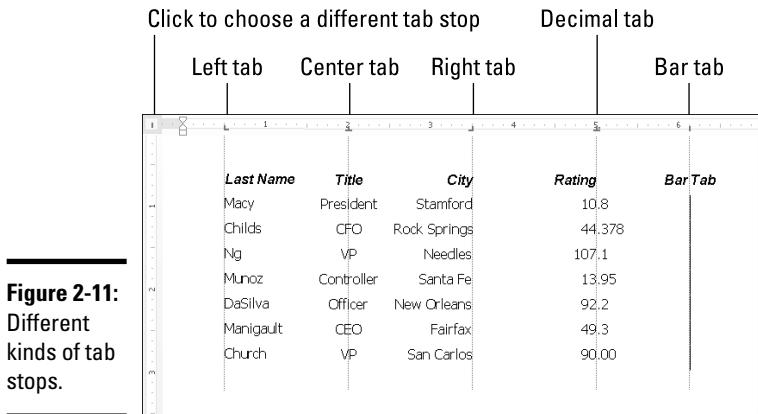
**Figure 2-10:**  
Examples  
of multilevel  
lists.



## Working with Tabs

Tabs are a throwback to the days of the typewriter, when it was necessary to make tab stops in order to align text. Except for making leaders and aligning text in headers and footers, everything you can do with tabs can also be done by creating a table — and it can be done far faster. All you have to do is align the text inside the table and then remove the table borders. (Chapter 4 of this mini-book explains tables.)

A *tab stop* is a point around which or against which text is formatted. As shown in Figure 2-11, Word offers five tab types for aligning text: Left, Center, Right, Decimal, and Bar (a bar tab stop merely draws a vertical line on the page). When you press the Tab key, you advance the text cursor by one tab stop. Tab stops are shown on the ruler; symbols on the ruler tell you what type of tab you're dealing with.



**Figure 2-11:**  
Different kinds of tab stops.

By default, tabs are left-aligned and are set at half-inch intervals. Display the ruler (click the Ruler check box on the View tab) and follow these steps to change tabs or change where tabs appear on the ruler:

1. Select the paragraphs that need different tab settings.
2. Click the Tab box on the left side of the ruler as many times as necessary to choose the kind of tab you want.  
Symbols on the tab box indicate which type of tab you're choosing.
3. Click on the ruler where you want the tab to go.

You can click as many times as you want and enter more than one kind of tab.

## All about tab leaders

In my opinion, the only reason to fool with tabs and tab stops is to create tab leaders like the ones shown here. A *leader* is a series of punctuation marks — periods in the illustration — that connect text across a page. Leaders are very elegant. For the figure, I used left-aligned tab stops for the characters' names and right-aligned tab stops for the players' names. I included leaders so that you can tell precisely who played whom.

### *THE PLAYERS*

Romeo.....	McGeorge Wright
Juliet.....	Gabriela Hernandez
Mercutio .....	Chris Suzuki
Lady Capulet.....	Mimi Hornstein

Follow these steps to create tab leaders:

1. Enter the text and, in each line, enter a tab space between the text on the left side and the text on the right side.
2. Select the text you entered.
3. On the Home tab, click the Paragraph group button, and in the Paragraph dialog box, click the Tabs button.
4. Enter a position for the first new tab in the Tab Stop Position box.
5. Under Leader in the dialog box, select the punctuation symbol you want for the leader.
6. Click OK, display the ruler, and drag tab markers to adjust the space between the text on the left and right.

You see the Tabs dialog box.

To move a tab stop, drag it to a new location on the ruler. Text that is aligned with the tab stop moves as well. To remove a tab stop, drag it off the ruler. When you remove a tab stop, text to which it was aligned is aligned to the next remaining tab stop on the ruler or to the next default tab stop if you didn't create any tab stops of your own.



Sometimes it's hard to tell where tabs were put in the text. To find out, click the Show/Hide ¶ button on the Home tab to see the formatting characters, including the arrows that show where the Tab key was pressed.

## *Hyphenating Text*

The first thing you should know about hyphenating words is that you may not need to do it. Text that hasn't been hyphenated is much easier to read, which is why the majority of text in this book, for example, isn't hyphenated. It has a *ragged right margin*, to borrow typesetter lingo. Hyphenate only when text is trapped in columns or in other narrow places, or when you want a very formal-looking document.



Do not insert a hyphen simply by pressing the hyphen key, because the hyphen will stay there even if the word moves to the middle of a line and doesn't need to be broken in half. Instead, when a big gap appears in the right margin and a word is crying out to be hyphenated, put the cursor where the hyphen needs to go and press Ctrl+hyphen. This way, you enter what is called a *discretionary hyphen*, and the hyphen appears only if the word breaks at the end of a line. (To remove a discretionary hyphen, press the Show/Hide ¶ button so that you can see it, and then backspace over it.)

## Automatically and manually hyphenating a document

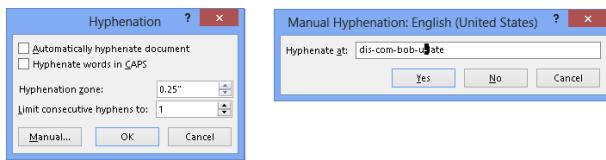
### b<sup>a</sup> Hyphenation ▾

Select text if you want to hyphenate part of a document, not all of it, and use one of these techniques to hyphenate words that break on the end of a line of text:

- ◆ **Automatic hyphenation:** On the Page Layout tab, click the Hyphenation button and choose Automatic on the drop-down list. Word hyphenates your document (or a portion of your document, if you selected it first).

You can tell Word how to hyphenate automatically by clicking the Hyphenation button and choosing Hyphenation Options. You see the Hyphenation dialog box shown in Figure 2-12. Deselect the Hyphenate Words in CAPS check box if you don't care to hyphenate words in uppercase. Words that fall in the hyphenation zone are hyphenated, so enlarging the hyphenation zone means a less ragged right margin but more ugly hyphens, and a small zone means fewer ugly hyphens but a more ragged right margin. You can limit how many hyphens appear consecutively by entering a number in the Limit Consecutive Hyphens To box.

**Figure 2-12:**  
Telling Word  
how to  
hyphenate  
(left) and  
deciding  
where a  
hyphen goes  
(right).



- ◆ **Manual hyphenation:** On the Page Layout tab, click the Hyphenation button and choose Manual on the drop-down list. Word displays a box with some hyphenation choices in it, as shown in Figure 2-12. The cursor blinks on the spot where Word suggests putting a hyphen. Click Yes or No to accept or reject Word's suggestion. Keep accepting or rejecting Word's suggestions until the text is hyphenated.

## ***Unhyphenating and other hyphenation tasks***

More hyphenation esoterica:

- ◆ **Unhyphenating:** To “unhyphenate” a document or text you hyphenated automatically, go to the Page Layout tab, click the Hyphenation button, and choose Hyphenation Options. In the Hyphenation dialog box (refer to Figure 2-12), deselect the Automatically Hyphenate Document check box and click OK.
- ◆ **Preventing text from being hyphenated:** Select the text and, on the Home tab, click the Paragraph group button. In the Paragraph dialog box, select the Line and Page Breaks tab, and select the Don’t Hyphenate check box. (If you can’t hyphenate a paragraph, it’s probably because this box was selected unintentionally.)

## **Em and en dashes**

Here is something about hyphens that editors and typesetters know, but the general public does not know: There is a difference between hyphens and dashes. Most people insert a hyphen where they ought to use an em dash or an en dash:

- ✓ An *em dash* looks like a hyphen but is wider — it’s as wide as the letter *m*. The previous sentence has an em dash in it. Did you notice?
- ✓ An *en dash* is the width of the letter *n*. Use en dashes to show inclusive numbers or time periods, like so: pp. 45–50; Aug.–Sept. 1998; Exodus 16:11–16:18. An en dash is a little bit longer than a hyphen.

To place an em or en dash in a document and impress your local typesetter or editor, not to mention your readers, use these techniques:

- ✓ **Em dash:** Press Ctrl+Alt+- (the minus sign key on the Numeric keypad).
- ✓ **En dash:** Press Ctrl+- (on the numeric keypad).

You can also enter an em or en dash by following these steps:

1. **Go to the Insert tab.**
2. **Click the Symbol button and choose More Symbols on the drop-down list.**  
The Symbol dialog box opens.
3. **Click the Special Characters tab.**
4. **Choose Em Dash or En Dash.**

# *Chapter 3: Word Styles*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Discovering how styles and templates work
- ✓ Applying a new style
- ✓ Creating your own styles
- ✓ Altering a style
- ✓ Creating a new template

**W**elcome to what may be the most important chapter of this book — the most important in Book II, anyway. Styles can save a ridiculous amount of time that you would otherwise spend formatting and wrestling with text. And many Word features rely on styles. You can't create a table of contents or use the Navigation pane unless each heading in your document has been assigned a heading style. Nor can you take advantage of Outline view and the commands for moving text around in that view. You can't cross-reference headings or number the headings in a document.

If you want to be stylish, at least where Word is concerned, you have to know about styles.

## *All About Styles*

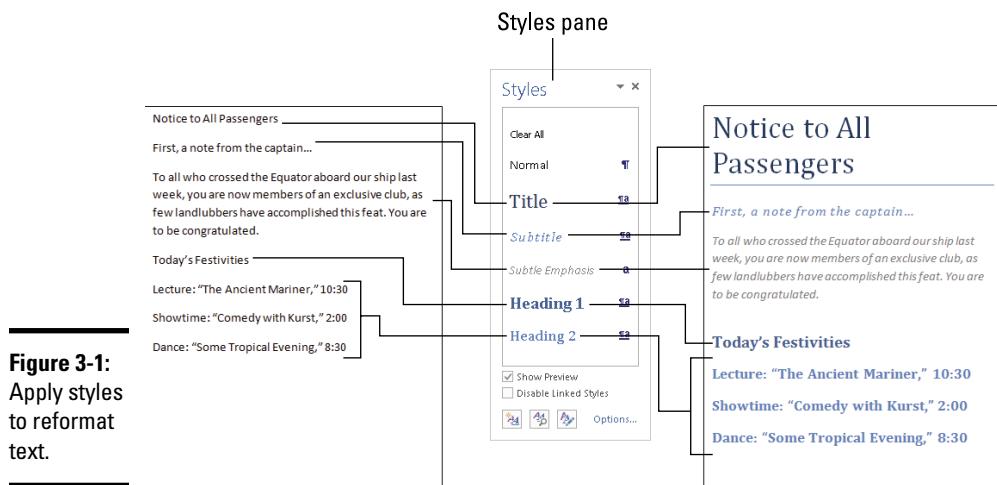
A *style* is a collection of formatting commands assembled under one name. When you apply a style, you give many formatting commands simultaneously, and you spare yourself the trouble of visiting numerous tabs and dialog boxes to format text. Styles save time and make documents look more professional. Headings assigned the same style — Heading1, for example — all look the same. When readers see that headings and paragraphs are consistent with one another across all the pages of a document, they get a warm, fuzzy feeling. They think the person who created the document really knew what he or she was doing.

### *Styles and templates*

Every document comes with built-in styles that it inherits from the template with which it was created. You can create your own styles to supplement styles from the template. For that matter, you can create a template, populate it with styles you design, and use your new template to create distinctive letters or reports for your company.



A simple document created with the Blank Document template — a document that you create by pressing Ctrl+N — has only a few styles, but a document that was created with a sophisticated template comes with many styles. The Oriel Report template, for example, comes with styles for formatting titles, subtitles, headings, and quotations. Figure 3-1 illustrates how choosing styles from a template changes text formatting. Notice how choosing style options in the Styles pane reformats the text.



**Figure 3-1:**  
Apply styles  
to reformat  
text.

## Types of styles

In the Styles pane (refer to Figure 3-1), the symbol next to each style name tells you what type of style you're dealing with. Word offers four style types:



◆ **Paragraph styles:** Determine the formatting of entire paragraphs. A paragraph style can include these settings: font, paragraph, tab, border, language, bullets, numbering and text effects. Paragraph styles are marked with the paragraph symbol (¶).



◆ **Character styles:** Apply to text, not to paragraphs. You select text before you apply a character style. Create a character style for text that is hard to lay out and for foreign-language text. A character style can include these settings: font, border, language, and text effects. When you apply a character style to text, the character-style settings override the paragraph-style settings. For example, if the paragraph style calls for 14-point Arial font but the character style calls for 12-point Times Roman font, the character style wins. Character styles are marked with the letter a.



- ◆ **Linked (paragraph and character):** Apply paragraph formats as well as text formats throughout a paragraph. These styles are marked with the paragraph symbol (¶) as well as the letter *a*.

## Applying Styles to Text and Paragraphs

Word offers several ways to apply a style, and you are invited to choose the one that works best for you. These pages explain how to apply a style and tell Word how to present style names in the various places where style names are presented for your enjoyment and pleasure.



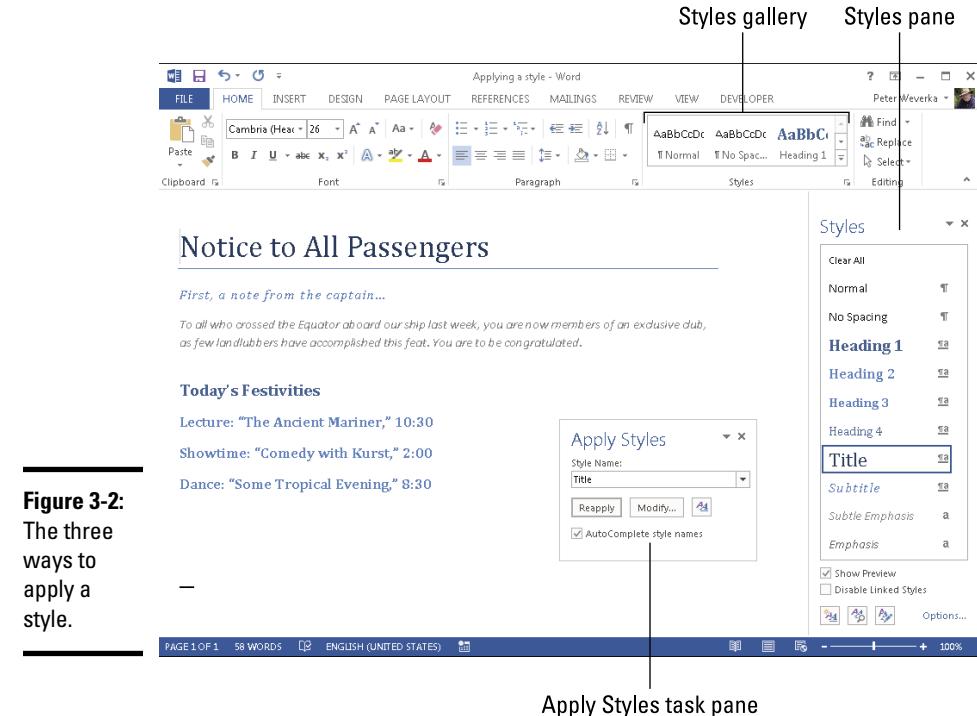
### Applying a style

The first step in applying a style is to select the part of your document that needs a style change:

- ◆ **A paragraph or paragraphs:** Because paragraph styles apply to all the text in a paragraph, you need only click in a paragraph before applying a style to make a style apply throughout the paragraph. To apply a style to several paragraphs, select all or part of them.
- ◆ **Text:** To apply a character style, select the letters whose formatting you want to change.

Next, apply the style with one of these techniques:

- ◆ **Styles gallery:** On the Home tab, choose a style in the Styles gallery (depending on the size of your screen, you may have to click the Styles button first). Figure 3-2 shows where the Styles gallery is located. The formatted letters above each style name in the gallery show you what your style choice will do to paragraphs or text. You can "live-preview" styles on the Styles gallery by moving the pointer over style names.
- ◆ **Styles pane:** On the Home tab, click the Styles group button to open the Styles pane, and select a style, as shown in Figure 3-2. Click the Show Preview check box at the bottom of the Styles pane to see formatted style names in the pane and get an idea of what the different styles are. You can drag the Styles pane to different locations on your screen. It remains on-screen after you leave the Home tab.
- ◆ **Apply Styles task pane:** Choose a style on the Apply Styles task pane, as shown in Figure 3-2. To display this task pane, go to the Home tab, open the Styles gallery, and choose Apply Styles (look for this option at the bottom of the gallery). You can drag the Apply Styles task pane to a corner of the screen. As does the Styles pane, the Apply Styles task pane remains on-screen after you leave the Home tab.



**Figure 3-2:**  
The three  
ways to  
apply a  
style.



To strip a paragraph or text of its style and give it the generic Normal style, select it and choose Clear Formatting in the Styles gallery or Clear All at the top of the Styles pane.

## Keyboard shortcuts for applying styles

A handful of keyboard shortcuts can be very handy when applying paragraph styles:

- ✓ Normal: Ctrl+Shift+N
- ✓ Heading 1: Ctrl+Alt+1
- ✓ Heading 2: Ctrl+Alt+2

✓ Heading 3: Ctrl+Alt+3

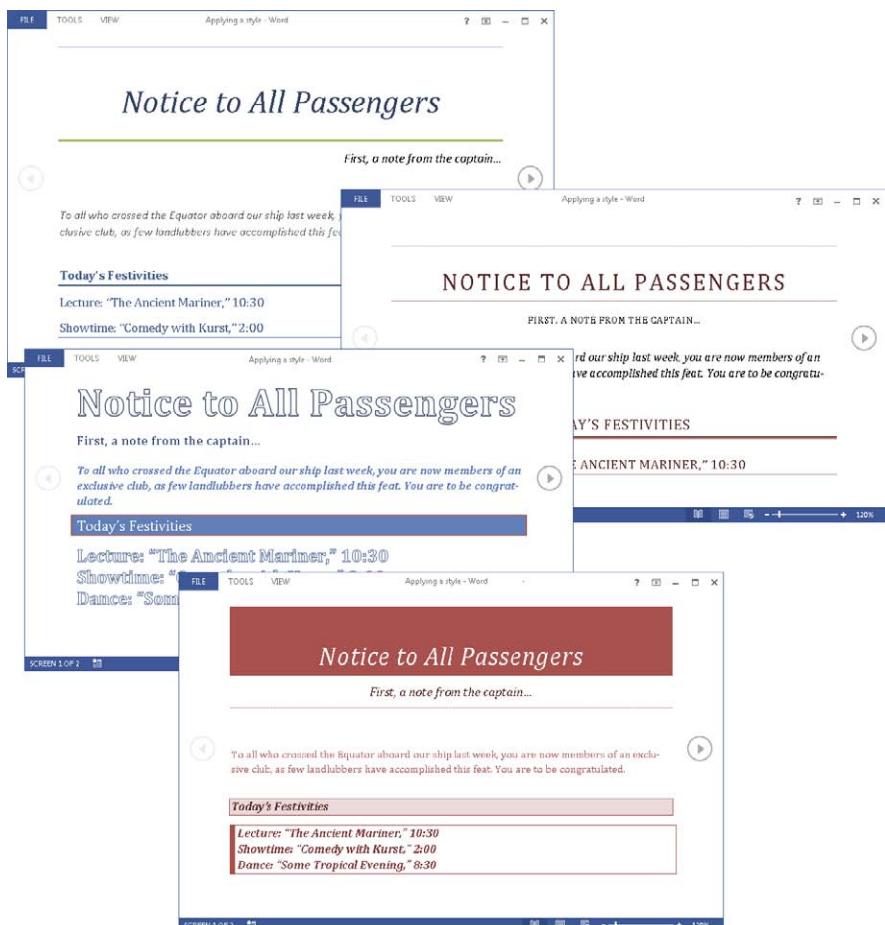
✓ Next higher heading: Alt+Shift+←

✓ Next lower heading: Alt+Shift+→

You can assign keyboard shortcuts to styles. Book IX, Chapter 1 explains how.

## Experimenting with style sets

A *style set* is a slight variation on the styles in the template you chose when you created your document. Figure 3-3 shows examples of style sets. Style sets include Classic, Elegant, Fancy, and Modern. Choosing a style set imposes a slightly different look on your document — you make it classier, more elegant, fancier, or more modern. All templates, even those you create yourself, offer style sets. Style sets are a convenient way to experiment with the overall look of a document.



**Figure 3-3:**  
Examples of  
style sets.

To experiment with style sets, go to the Design tab and choose an option in the Style Set gallery.

To return to the original styles in a template, open the Style Set gallery and choose Reset to the Default Style Set, the bottommost option in the gallery.

## **Choosing which style names appear on the Style menus**

One of the challenges of applying styles is finding the right style to apply in the Styles gallery, Styles pane, or Apply Styles task pane (refer to Figure 3-2). All three can become crowded with style names. To make finding and choosing styles names easier, you can decide for yourself which names appear on the three style menus.

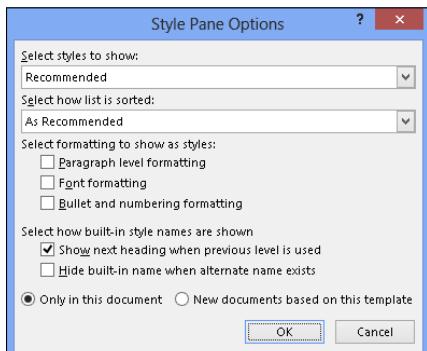
### **Styles gallery**

In the Styles gallery, remove a style name by right-clicking it and choosing Remove from Style gallery..

### **Styles pane and Apply styles task pane**

To decide for yourself which style names appear in the Styles pane and Apply Styles task pane, click the Styles group button on the Home tab, and in the Styles pane, click the Options link (you can find this link near the bottom of the pane). You see the Style Pane Options dialog box shown in Figure 3-4. Choose options to tell Word which style names appear in the Styles pane and Apply Styles task pane:

- ◆ **Select Styles to Show:** Choose All Styles to show all style names. The other options place a subset of names in the window and task pane. Recommended style names are those Microsoft thinks you need most often.



---

**Figure 3-4:**  
Deciding  
which  
names to  
put in the  
Styles pane  
and Apply  
Styles task  
pane.

---

- ◆ **Select How List Is Sorted:** Choose an option to describe how to list styles. Except for Based On, these options, I think, are self-explanatory. The Based On option lists styles in alphabetical order according to which style each style is based on (later in this chapter, “Creating a style from the ground up” explains how the based on setting is used in constructing styles).
- ◆ **Select Formatting to Show As Styles:** Choose options to declare which styles to list — those that pertain to paragraph level formatting, fonts, and bulleted and numbered lists.
- ◆ **Select How Built-In Style Names Are Shown:** Choose options to tell how to handle built-in styles, the obscure styles that Word applies on its own when you create tables of contents and other self-generating lists.
- ◆ **Apply to this document or to the template as well:** Click the Only in This Document option button to apply your choices only to the document you’re working on; click the New Documents Based on This Template option button to apply your choices to your document and to all future documents you create with the template you’re using.

## *Creating a New Style*

You can create a new style by creating it from a paragraph or building it from the ground up. To do a thorough job, build it from the ground up because styles you create this way can be made part of the template you are currently working in and can be copied to other templates (later in this chapter, “Creating and Managing Templates” explains templates).

Book II  
Chapter 3

Word Styles

### Determining which style is in use

How can you tell which style has been applied to a paragraph or text? Sometimes you need to know which style is in play before you decide whether applying a different style is necessary.

Click the paragraph or text and use these techniques to find out which style was applied to it:

- ✓ **Glance at the Styles gallery and Styles pane to see which style is selected.** The selected style is the one that was applied to your paragraph or text.
- ✓ **Click the Style Inspector button at the bottom of the Style pane.** The Style Inspector pane opens and lists the current style.

✓ **Press Shift+F1.** The Reveal Formatting task pane opens. It lists the style that was applied to the paragraph or text.

If you’re especially keen to know about styles in your document, you can make style names appear to the left of the text in Outline and Draft view. On the Find tab, choose Options. In the Word Options dialog box, go to the Advanced tab and enter .5 or another measurement in the Style Area Pane Width in Draft and Outline Views box (look for this box under “Display”). You can drag the border of the Style Area pane to enlarge or shrink it.

## ***Creating a style from a paragraph***

Follow these steps to create a new style from a paragraph:

- 1. Click in a paragraph whose formatting you want to turn into a style.**
- 2. On the Home tab, open the Styles gallery and choose Create a Style.**  
You see the Create New Style from Formatting dialog box.
- 3. Enter a name for your new style.**
- 4. Click OK.**

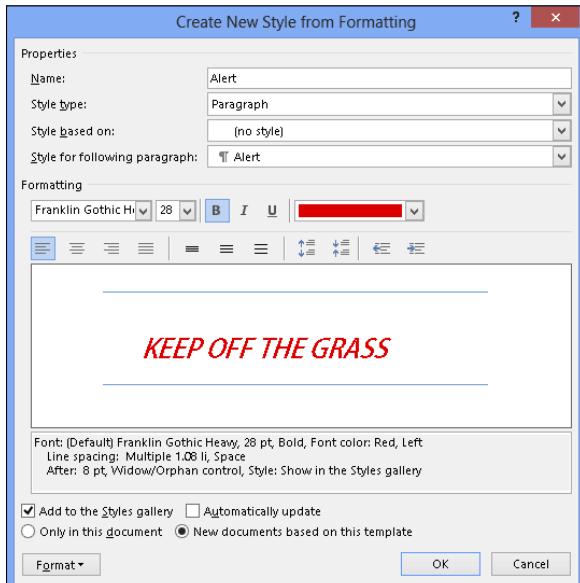


A style you create this way becomes a part of the document you're working on; it isn't made part of the template from which you created your document.

## ***Creating a style from the ground up***



To make a style available in documents you will create in the future, make it part of a template and build it from the ground up. In the Styles pane, click the New Style button (you can find it at the bottom of the pane). You see the Create New Style from Formatting dialog box shown in Figure 3-5. Fill in the dialog box and click OK.



**Figure 3-5:**  
Creating  
a brand-  
spanking-  
new style.

Here's a rundown of the options in the Create New Style from Formatting dialog box:



- ◆ **Name:** Enter a descriptive name for the style.
- ◆ **Style Type:** On the drop-down list, choose a style type ("Types of Styles," earlier in this chapter, describes the style types).
- ◆ **Style Based On:** If your new style is similar to a style that is already part of the template with which you created your document, choose the style to get a head start on creating the new one. Be warned, however, that if you or someone else changes the Based On style, your new style will inherit those changes and be altered as well.
- ◆ **Style for Following Paragraph:** Choose a style from the drop-down list if the style you're creating is always followed by an existing style. For example, a new style called Chapter Title might always be followed by a style called Chapter Intro Paragraph. For convenience, someone who applies the style you're creating and presses Enter automatically applies the style you choose here on the next line of the document. Applying a style automatically to the following paragraph saves you the trouble of having to apply the style yourself.
- ◆ **Formatting:** Choose options from the menus or click buttons to fashion or refine your style (you can also click the Format button to do this).
- ◆ **Add to Styles Gallery:** Select this check box to make the style's name appear in the Styles gallery, Styles pane, and Apply Styles task pane.
- ◆ **Automatically Update:** Normally, when you make a formatting change to a paragraph, the style assigned to the paragraph does not change at all, but the style does change if you check this box. Checking this box tells Word to alter the style itself each time you alter a paragraph to which you've assigned the style. With this box checked, all paragraphs in the document that were assigned the style are altered each time you change a single paragraph that was assigned the style.
- ◆ **Only in This Document/New Documents Based on This Template:** To make your style a part of the template from which you created your document as well as the document itself, click the New Documents Based on This Template option button. This way, new documents you create that are based on the template you are using can also make use of the new style.
- ◆ **Format:** This is the important one. Click the button and make a formatting choice. Word takes you to dialog boxes so that you can create or refine the style.

## *Modifying a Style*

What if you decide at the end of an 80-page document that all 35 introductory paragraphs to which you assigned the Intro Para style look funny? If you clicked the Automatically Update check box in the Create New Style from Formatting dialog box when you created the style, all you have to do is alter a paragraph to which you assigned the Intro Para style to alter all 35 introductory paragraphs. However, if you decided against updating styles automatically, you can still change the introductory paragraphs throughout your document.

Follow these steps to modify a style that isn't updated automatically:

1. Click in any paragraph, table, or list to which you've assigned the style; if you want to modify a character style, select the characters to which you've assigned the style.
2. In the Styles pane or Apply Styles task pane, make sure the name of the style you want to modify is selected.

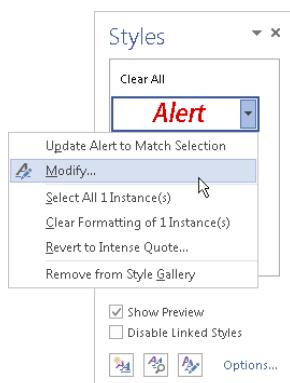
If the right name isn't selected, select it now in the Styles pane or Apply Styles task pane.

3. In the Styles pane, open the style's drop-down list and choose Modify, as shown in Figure 3-6; in the Apply Styles task pane, click the Modify button.

You see the Modify Style dialog box. Does the dialog box look familiar? It is identical to the Create New Style from Formatting dialog box you used to create the style in the first place (refer to Figure 3-5).

4. Change the settings in the Modify Styles dialog box and click OK.

The previous section in this chapter explains the settings.



**Figure 3-6:**  
Choosing  
to modify a  
style.

After you modify a style, all paragraphs or text to which the style was assigned are instantly changed. You don't have to go back and reformat text and paragraphs throughout your document.

## *Creating and Managing Templates*

As I explain at the start of this chapter, every document you create is fashioned from a *template*. The purpose of a template is to store styles for documents. In the act of creating a document, you choose a template, and the styles on the template become available to you when you work on your document (Chapter 1 of this mini-book explains how to choose a template when you create a new document).

For example, when you select Blank Template in the New window or press Ctrl+N, you create a document with the Blank Document template, a relatively simple template with few styles. When you create a document with a template from Office.com or a template from Features tab in the New window, more styles are available to you because these templates are more sophisticated.

To save time formatting your documents, you are invited to create templates with styles that you know and love. You can create a new template on your own or create a template by assembling styles from other templates and documents. Styles in templates, like styles in documents, can be modified, deleted, and renamed.



To create a document from a template you created yourself, open the New window (on the File tab, choose New), click the Personal tab, and select your template (see Chapter 1 of this mini-book for details).

### *Creating a new template*

How do you want to create a new template? You can do it on your own or assemble styles from other templates. Read on.

#### *Creating a template on your own*

One way to create a template is to start by opening a document with many or all the styles you know and love. When you save this document as a template, you pass along the styles in the document to the template, and you save yourself the trouble of creating styles for the template after you create it.

Follow these steps to create a template on your own:

- 1. Create a new document or open a document with styles that you can recycle.**

- 2. On the File tab, choose Save As.**

The Save As window opens.

- 3. Click Computer.**

- 4. Click the Browse button.**

The Save As dialog box appears.

- 5. Open the Save As Type menu and choose Word Template.**

The Save As dialog box opens to the folder where templates are stored on your computer.

- 6. Enter a name for your template.**

- 7. Click the Save button.**

Create, modify, and delete styles as necessary (see “Creating a New Style” and “Modifying a Style” earlier in this chapter).

## Telling Word where templates are stored

Templates are stored in the Templates folder. To create a document from a template or trade styles between templates, you have to tell Word where you keep templates on your computer. Follow these steps:

- 1. On the File tab, choose Options.**

The Word Options dialog box opens.

- 2. Click the Save category.**

- 3. In the Default Personal Templates Location text box, enter the path to the folder where you store templates.**

- 4. Click OK.**

By default, templates are stored in this location in Windows 8, Windows 7, and Windows Vista:

✓ C:\Users\Username\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Templates folder.

If you’re having trouble finding the Templates folder, go to the File tab and choose Options. In the Word Options dialog box, go to the Advanced Category and scroll to the File Locations button. Clicking this button opens the File Locations dialog box, where, under User Templates, you can see the name of the folder in which your templates are stored.

## ***Assembling styles from different documents and templates***

Suppose that you like a style in one document and you want to copy it to another so that you can use it there. Or you want to copy it to a template to make it available to documents created with the template. Read on to find out how to copy styles between documents and between templates.

### **Copying a style from one document to another**

Copy a style from one document to another when you need the style on a one-time basis. Follow these steps:

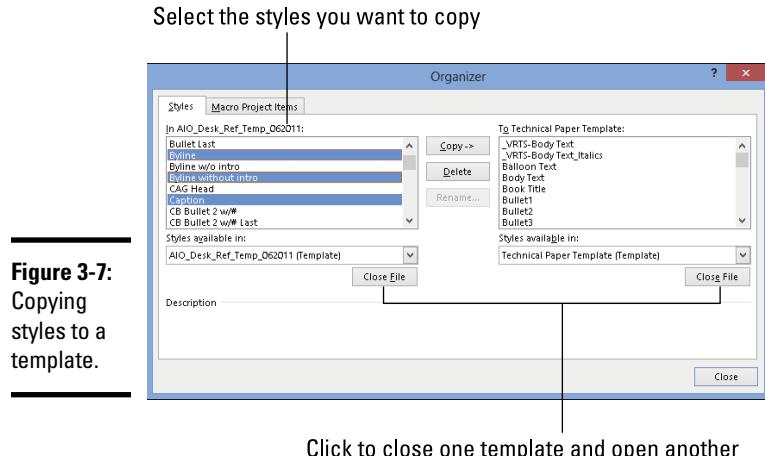
- 1. Select a paragraph that was assigned the style you want to copy.**  
Be sure to select the entire paragraph. If you want to copy a character style, select text to which you have assigned the character style.
- 2. Press Ctrl+C or right-click and choose Copy to copy the paragraph to the Clipboard.**
- 3. Switch to the document you want to copy the style to and press Ctrl+V or click the Paste button on the Home tab.**
- 4. Delete the text you just copied to your document.**

The style remains in the Styles pane and Styles gallery even though the text is deleted. You can call upon the style whenever you need it.

### **Copying styles to a template**

Use the Organizer to copy styles from a document to a template or from one template to another. After making a style a part of a template, you can call upon the style in other documents. You can call upon it in each document you create or created with the template. Follow these steps to copy a style into a template:

- 1. Open the document or template with the styles you want to copy.**  
Later in this chapter, “Opening a template so that you can modify it” explains how to open a template.
- 2. In the Styles pane, click the Manage Styles button.**  
 This button is located at the bottom of the window. The Manage Styles dialog box appears.
- 3. Click the Import/Export button.**  
You see the Organizer dialog box shown in Figure 3-7. Styles in the document or template that you opened in Step 1 appear in the In list box on the left side.



**Figure 3-7:**  
Copying  
styles to a  
template.

Click to close one template and open another

**3. Click the Close File button on the right side of the dialog box.**

The button changes names and becomes the Open File button.

**4. Click the Open File button and, in the Open dialog box, find and select the template to which you want to copy styles; then, click the Open button.**

See the sidebar “Telling Word where templates are stored,” earlier in this chapter, if you have trouble finding the Templates folder.

The names of styles in the template you chose appear on the right side of the Organizer dialog box.

**5. In the Organizer dialog box, Ctrl+click to select the names of styles on the left side of the dialog box that you want to copy to the template listed on the right side of the dialog box.**

As you click the names, they become highlighted.

**6. Click the Copy button.**

The names of styles that you copied appear on the right side of the Organizer dialog box.

**7. Click the Close button and click Save when Word asks whether you want to save the new styles in the template.**

## Attaching a different template to a document

It happens in the best of families. You create or are given a document only to discover that the wrong template is attached to it. For times like those, Word gives you the opportunity to switch templates. Follow these steps:

- 1. On the Developer tab, click the Document Template button.**

You see the Templates and Add-Ins dialog box. If the Developer tab isn't displayed on your screen, go to the File tab, choose Options, visit the Customize Ribbon category in the Word Options dialog box, select the Developer check box, and click OK.

- 2. Click the Attach button to open the Attach Template dialog box.**

- 3. Find and select the template you want and click the Open button.**

You return to the Templates and Add-ins dialog box, where the name of the template you chose appears in the Document Template box.

- 4. Click the Automatically Update Document Styles check box.**

Doing so tells Word to apply the styles from the new template to your document.

- 5. Click OK.**

## Opening a template so that you can modify it

Follow these steps to open a template in Word and be able to modify it:

- 1. On the File tab, choose Open.**

You see the Open window.

- 2. Click Computer.**

- 3. Click the Browse button.**

- 4. In the Open dialog box, go to the Templates folder where you store templates.**

See the sidebar "Telling Word where templates are stored," earlier in this chapter, if you have trouble finding the Templates folder.

- 5. Select the template.**

- 6. Click the Open button.**

The template opens in the Word window. Style modifications you make in the template become available to all documents that were fashioned from the template.

## ***Modifying, deleting, and renaming styles in templates***

Modify, delete, and rename styles in a template the same way you do those tasks to styles in a document (see “Modifying a Style” earlier in this chapter). However, in the Modify Style dialog box, select the New Documents Based on This Template option button before clicking OK.

Your style modifications will apply to all documents you create in the future with your template. For the style modifications to take effect in documents you already created with your template, tell Word to automatically update document styles in those documents. Follow these steps:

**1. Save and close your template if it is still open.**

If any documents you fashioned from the template are open, close them as well.

**2. Open a document that you want to update with the style modifications you made to the template.**

**3. Go to the Developer tab.**

To display this tab if necessary, open the File tab, choose Options, go to the Customize Ribbon category in the Word Options dialog box, select the Developer check box, and click OK.

**4. Click the Document Template button.**

The Templates and Add-ins dialog box opens. It should list the path to the Templates folder and the template you modified. If the wrong template is listed, click the Attach button and select the correct template in the Attach Template dialog box.

**5. Select the Automatically Update Document Styles check box.**

**6. Click OK.**



# *Chapter 4: Constructing the Perfect Table*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Understanding table jargon
- ✓ Creating a table and entering the text and numbers
- ✓ Changing the size of rows and columns
- ✓ Aligning table text in various ways
- ✓ Merging and splitting cells to make interesting layouts
- ✓ Decorating a table with table styles, colors, and borders
- ✓ Doing math calculations in a Word table
- ✓ Discovering an assortment of table tricks

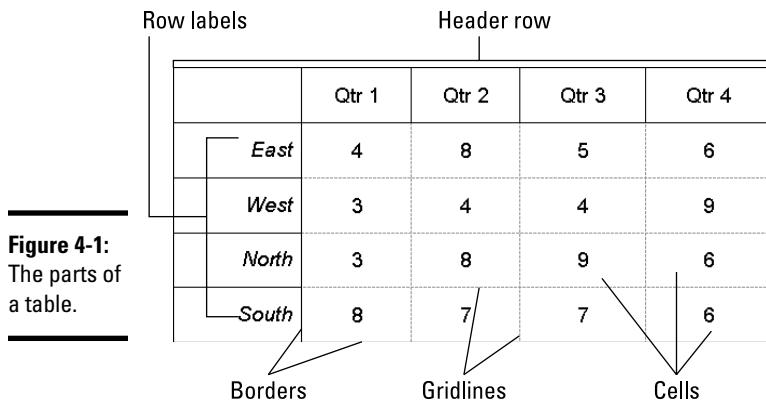
The best way to present a bunch of data at one time in Word is to do it in a table. Viewers can compare and contrast the data. They can compare Elvis sightings in different cities or income from different businesses. They can contrast the number of socks lost in different washing machine brands. A table is a great way to plead your case or defend your position. Readers can see right away whether the numbers back you up. They can refer to your table to get the information they need.

As everyone who has worked on tables knows, however, tables are a chore. Getting all the columns to fit, making columns and rows the right width and height, and editing the text in a table isn't easy. This chapter explains how to create tables, enter text in tables, change the number and size of columns and rows, lay out tables, format tables, and do the math in tables. You'll also discover a few tricks — including using a picture for the background — that only magicians know. And to start you on the right foot, I begin by explaining table jargon.

## *Talking Table Jargon*

As with much else in Computerland, tables have their own jargon. Figure 4-1 describes this jargon. Sorry, but you need to catch up on these terms to construct the perfect table:

- ◆ **Cell:** The box that is formed where a row and column intersect. Each cell holds one data item.
- ◆ **Header row:** The name of the labels along the top row that explain what is in the columns below.
- ◆ **Row labels:** The labels in the first column that describe what is in each row.
- ◆ **Borders:** The lines in the table that define where the rows and columns are.
- ◆ **Gridlines:** The gray lines that show where the columns and rows are. Unless you've drawn borders around all the cells in a table, you can't tell where rows and columns begin and end without gridlines. To display or hide the gridlines, go to the (Table Tools) Layout tab and click the View Gridlines button.



**Figure 4-1:**  
The parts of  
a table.

## Creating a Table

Word offers several ways to create a table:



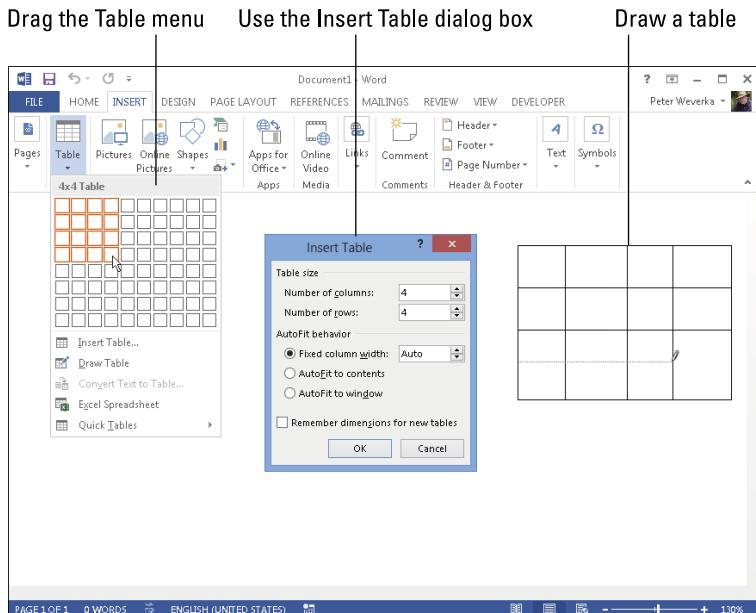
- ◆ **Drag on the Table menu.** On the Insert tab, click the Table button, point in the drop-down list to the number of columns and rows you want, click, and let go of the mouse button, as shown in Figure 4-2.
- ◆ **Use the Insert Table dialog box.** On the Insert tab, click the Table button and choose Insert Table on the drop-down list. The Insert Table dialog box appears (see Figure 4-2). Enter the number of columns and rows you want and click OK.

◆ **Draw a table.** On the Insert tab, click the Table button and then choose Draw Table on the drop-down list. The pointer changes into a pencil. Use the pencil to draw table borders, rows, and columns (see Figure 4-2). If you make a mistake, click the Eraser button on the (Table Tools) Layout tab and drag it over the parts of the table you regret drawing (you may have to click the Draw Borders button first). When you finish drawing the table, press Esc.

You can click the Pen Color button and choose a color on the drop-down list to draw your table in your favorite color.

◆ **Create a quick table.** On the Insert tab, click the Table button and choose Quick Tables on the drop-down list. Then select a ready-made table on the submenu. You have to replace the sample data in the quick table with your own data.

◆ **Construct a table from an Excel worksheet.** On the Insert tab, click the Table button, and choose Excel Spreadsheet. An Excel worksheet appears on the slide and — *gadzooks!* — you see Excel tabs and commands where Word tabs and commands used to be. The worksheet you just created is embedded in your file. Whenever you click the worksheet, Excel menus and commands instead of Word menus and commands appear on-screen. Click outside the worksheet to return to Word.



**Figure 4-2:**  
Some  
techniques  
for creating  
a table.

## Turning a list into a table

In order to turn a list into a table, all components of the list — each name, address, city name, state, and zip code listing, for example — must be separated from the next component by a tab space or a comma. Word looks for tab spaces or commas when it turns a list into a table, and the program separates data into columns according to where the tab spaces or commas are located. You have to prepare your list carefully by entering tab spaces or commas in all the right places before you can turn a list into a table.

Follow these steps to turn a list into a table after you've done all the preliminary work:

- 1. Select the list.**
- 2. On the Insert tab, click the Table button and choose Convert Text To Table on the drop-down list.**

You see the Convert Text to Table dialog box.

Note the number in the Number of Columns box. It should list the number of components into which you separated your list. If the number doesn't match the number of components, you misplaced a tab entry or comma in your list. Click Cancel, return to your list, and examine it to make sure each line has been divided into the same number of components.

- 3. Under Separate Text At, choose the Tabs or Commas option, depending on which you used to separate the components on the list.**
- 4. Click OK.**

You can turn a table into a list by clicking the Convert to Text button on the (Table Tools) Layout tab (you may have to click the Data button first, depending on the size of your screen).



After you create a table, you get two new tabs on the Ribbon. The (Table Tools) Design tab offers commands for changing the look of the table; the (Table Tools) Layout tab is for changing around the rows and columns.

To delete a table, go to the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click the Delete button, and choose Delete Table on the drop-down list.

## Entering the Text and Numbers

After you've created the table, you can start entering text and numbers. All you have to do is click in a cell and start typing. Select your table and take advantage of these techniques to make the onerous task of entering table data a little easier:



- ◆ **Quickly changing a table's size:** Drag the bottom or side of a table to change its overall size. To make the table stretch from page margin to page margin, go to the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click the AutoFit button, and choose AutoFit Window.

- ◆ **Moving a table:** Switch to Print Layout view and drag the table selector (the square in the upper-left corner of the table).
- ◆ **Choosing your preferred font and font size:** Entering table data is easier when you're working in a font and font size you like. Select the table, visit the Home tab, and choose a font and font size there. Select a table by going to the (Table Tools) Layout tab, clicking the Select button, and choosing Select Table on the drop-down list.
- ◆ **Quickly inserting a new row:** Click in the last column of the last row in your table and press the Tab key to quickly insert a new row at the bottom of the table.

Here are some shortcuts for moving the cursor in a table:

<b>Press</b>	<b>Moves the Cursor to</b>
Tab	Next column in row
Shift+Tab	Previous column in row
↓	Row below
↑	Row above
Alt+Home	Start of row
Alt+End	End of row
Alt+Page Up	Top of column
Alt+Page Down	Bottom of column

## Selecting Different Parts of a Table

It almost goes without saying, but before you can reformat, alter, or diddle with table cells, rows, or columns, you have to select them:



- ◆ **Selecting cells:** To select a cell, click in it. You can select several adjacent cells by dragging the pointer over them.
- ◆ **Selecting rows:** Move the pointer to the left of the row and click when you see the right-pointing arrow; click and drag to select several rows. You can also go to the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click inside the row you want to select, click the Select button, and choose Select Row on the drop-down list. To select more than one row at a time, select cells in the rows before choosing the Select Row command.

- ◆ **Selecting columns:** Move the pointer above the column and click when you see the down-pointing arrow; click and drag to select several columns. You can also start from the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click in the column you want to select, click the Select button, and choose Select Column in the drop-down list. To select several columns, select cells in the columns before choosing the Select Column command.
- ◆ **Selecting a table:** On the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click the Select button, and choose Select Table on the drop-down list (or press Alt+5 on the numeric keypad).

## *Laying Out Your Table*

Very likely, you created too many or too few columns or rows for your table. Some columns are probably too wide and others too narrow. If that's the case, you have to change the table layout by deleting, inserting, and changing the size of columns and rows, not to mention changing the size of the table itself. In other words, you have to modify the table layout. (Later in this chapter, "Decorating your table with borders and colors" shows how to put borders around tables and embellish them in other ways.)

### *Changing the size of a table, columns, and rows*

The fastest way to adjust the width of columns, the height of rows, and the size of a table itself is to "eyeball it" and drag the mouse:



- ◆ **Column or row:** Move the pointer onto a gridline or border, and when the pointer changes into a double-headed arrow, start dragging. Tug and pull, tug and pull until the column or row is the right size.  
You can also go to the (Table Tools) Layout tab and enter measurements in the Height and Width text boxes to change the width of a column or the height of a row. The measurements affect entire columns or rows, not individual cells.
- ◆ **A table:** Select your table and use one of these techniques to change its size:
  - *Dragging:* Drag the top, bottom, or side of the table. You can also drag the lower-right corner to change the size vertically and horizontally.
  - *Height and Width text boxes:* On the (Table Tools) Layout tab, enter measurements in the Height and Width text boxes.
  - *Table Properties dialog box:* On the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click the Cell Size group button, and on the Table tab of the Table Properties dialog box, enter a measurement in the Preferred Width text box.

## Adjusting column and row size

Resizing columns and rows can be problematic in Word. For that reason, Word offers special commands on the (Table Tools) Layout tab for adjusting the width and height of rows and columns:



- ◆ **Making all columns the same width:** Click the Distribute Columns button to make all columns the same width. Select columns before giving this command to make only the columns you select the same width.
- ◆ **Making all rows the same height:** Click the Distribute Rows button to make all rows in the table the same height. Select rows before clicking the button to make only the rows you select the same height.



You can also click the AutoFit button on the (Table Tools) Layout tab, and take advantage of these commands on the drop-down list for handling columns and rows:

- ◆ **AutoFit Contents:** Make each column wide enough to accommodate its widest entry.
- ◆ **AutoFit Window:** Stretch the table so that it fits across the page between the left and right margin.
- ◆ **Fixed Column Width:** Fix the column widths at their current settings.

Book II  
Chapter 4

Constructing the  
Perfect Table



## Inserting columns and rows

The trick to inserting (and deleting) columns and rows is to correctly select part of the table first. You can insert more than one column or row at a time by selecting more than one column or row before giving the Insert command. To insert two columns, for example, select two columns and choose an Insert command; to insert three rows, select three rows and choose an Insert command. Earlier in this chapter, “Selecting Different Parts of a Table” explains how to make table selections.

Word offers many, many ways to insert columns and rows. Too many ways, if you ask me.

### *On the (Table Tools) Layout tab*

Go to the (Table Tools) Layout tab and follow these instructions to insert and delete columns and rows:

- ◆ **Inserting columns:** Select a column or columns and click the Insert Left or Insert Right button.
- ◆ **Inserting rows:** Select a row or rows and click the Insert Above or Insert Below button.



To insert a row at the end of a table, move the pointer into the last cell in the last row and press the Tab key.

### **Right-clicking**

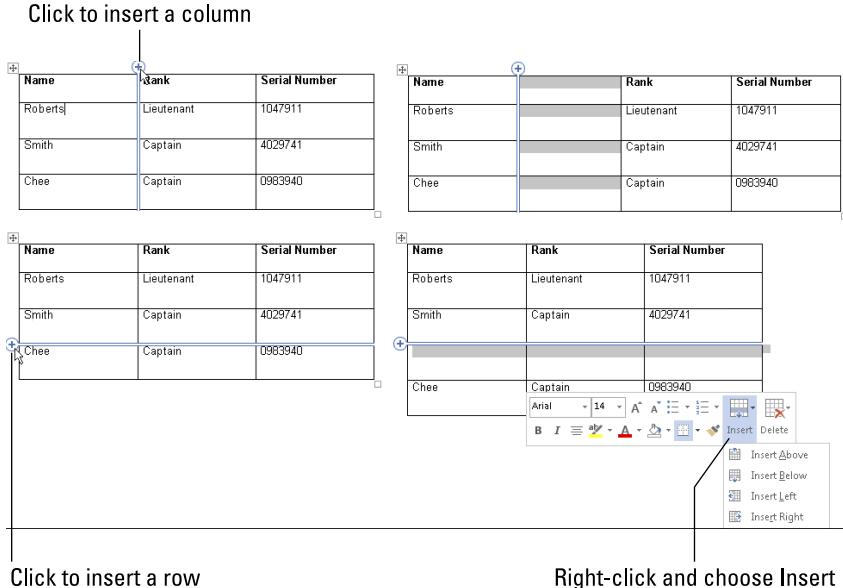
Follow these steps to insert columns or rows by right-clicking:

1. Select column or rows.
2. Right-click to display the mini-toolbar.

**Figure 4-3 shows the mini-toolbar you see when you right-click a table.**

3. Click the Insert button on the mini-toolbar.
4. Click an Insert button (Above, Below, Left, or Right).

**Figure 4-3:**  
The one-click and  
right-click  
techniques  
for inserting  
columns  
and rows.



### **One-Click Row and One-Click Column buttons**

To insert one row or one column, click a One-Click button, as shown in Figure 4-3. The One-Click Column button appears when you move the pointer between columns at the top of a table; the One-Click Row button appears when you move the pointer between rows on the left side of a table. Click a One-Click button to insert one column or one row.

## ***Deleting columns and rows***



Go to the (Table Tools) Layout tab and use these techniques to delete columns and rows:

- ◆ **Deleting columns:** Click in the column you want to delete, click the Delete button, and choose Delete Columns on the drop-down list. Select more than one column to delete more than one. (You can also right-click and choose Delete Columns.)
- ◆ **Deleting rows:** Click in the row you want to delete, click the Delete button, and choose Delete Rows. Select more than one row to delete more than one. (You can also right-click and choose Delete Rows.)



Pressing the Delete key after you select a column or row deletes the data in the column or row, not the column or row itself.

## ***Moving columns and rows***

Because there is no elegant way to move a column or row, you should move only one at a time. If you try to move several simultaneously, you open a can of worms that is best left unopened. To move a column or row:

### **1. Select the column or row you want to move.**

Earlier in this chapter, “Selecting Different Parts of a Table” explains how to select columns and rows.

### **2. Right-click in the selection and choose Cut on the shortcut menu.**

The column or row is moved to the Clipboard.

### **3. Insert a new column or row where you want the column or row to be.**

Earlier in this chapter, “Inserting columns and rows” explains how.

### **4. Move the column or row:**

- **Column:** Click in the topmost cell in your new column and then click the Paste button (on the Home tab) or press Ctrl+V.
- **Row:** Click in the first column of the row you inserted and then click the Paste button (on the Home tab) or press Ctrl+V.

## Sorting, or reordering a table

On the subject of moving columns and rows, the fastest way to rearrange the rows in a table is to sort the table. *Sorting* means to rearrange all the rows in a table on the basis of data in one or more columns. For example, a table that shows candidates and the number of votes they received could be sorted in alphabetical order by the candidates' names or in numerical order by the number of votes they received. Both tables present the same information, but the information is sorted in different ways.

The difference between ascending and descending sorts is as follows:

- ✓ Ascending arranges text from A to Z, numbers from smallest to largest, and dates from earliest to latest.
- ✓ Descending arranges text from Z to A, numbers from largest to smallest, and dates from latest to earliest.

When you rearrange a table by sorting it, Word rearranges the formatting as well as the data. Do your sorting before you format the table.

Follow these steps to sort a table:

1. On the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click the Sort button.

You see the Sort dialog box. Depending on the size of your screen, you may have to click the Data button before you see the Sort button.

2. In the first Sort By drop-down list, choose the column you want to sort with.
3. If necessary, open the first Type drop-down list and choose Text, Number, or Date to describe what kind of data you're dealing with.
4. Select the Ascending or Descending option button to declare whether you want an ascending or descending sort.
5. If necessary, on the first Then By drop-down list, choose the tiebreaker column.

If two items in the Sort By columns are alike, Word looks to your Then By column choice to break the tie and place one row before another in the table.

6. Click OK.

When you sort a table, Word ignores the *header row* — the first row in the table — and doesn't move it. However, if you want to include the header row in the sort, click the No Header Row option button in the Sort dialog box.

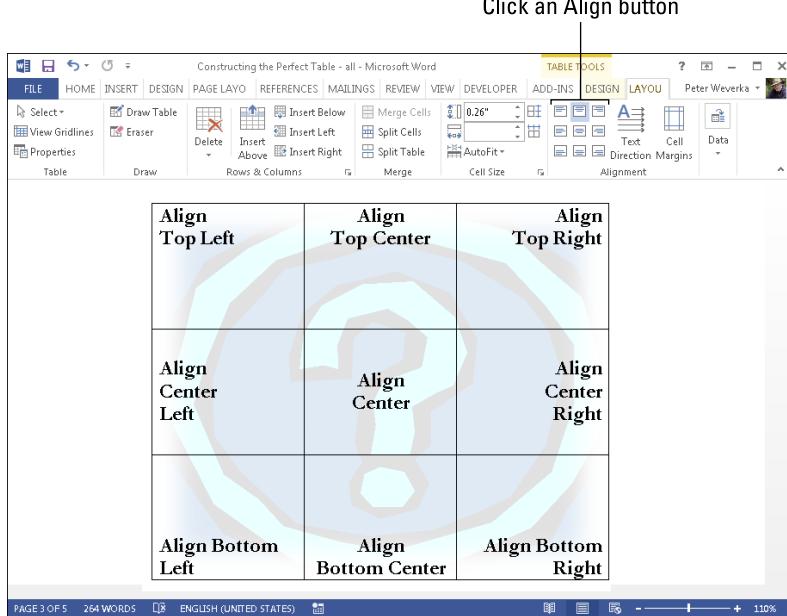
## Aligning Text in Columns and Rows

Aligning text in columns and rows is a matter of choosing how you want the text to line up vertically and how you want it to line up horizontally. Follow these steps to align text in a table:

1. Select the cells, columns, or rows, with text that you want to align (or select your entire table).
2. Go to the (Table Tools) Layout tab.
3. Click an Align button (you may have to click the Alignment button first, depending on the size of your screen).

Figure 4-4 shows where the Align buttons are on the (Table Tools) Layout tab and how these options align text in a table.

**Figure 4-4:**  
Word offers  
nine ways to  
align text.



Book II  
Chapter 4

Constructing the  
Perfect Table

## Merging and Splitting Cells

Merge and split cells to make your tables a little more elegant than run-of-the-mill tables. *Merge* cells to break down the barriers between cells and join them into one cell; *split* cells to divide a single cell into several cells (or several cells into several more cells). In the table shown in Figure 4-5, cells in rows and columns have been split or merged to create a curious-looking little table.

Select the cells you want to merge or split, go to the (Table Tools) Layout tab, and follow these instructions to merge or split cells:



- ◆ **Merging cells:** Click the Merge Cells button (you can also right-click and choose Merge Cells).



- ◆ **Splitting cells:** Click the Split Cells button (you can also right-click and choose Split Cells). In the Split Cells dialog box, declare how many columns and rows you want to split the cell into and then click OK.

**Figure 4-5:**  
Merge and split cells  
to create unusual  
tables.

Another way to merge and split cells is to click the Draw Table or Eraser button on the (Table Tools) Layout tab. Click the Draw Table button and then draw lines through cells to split them. Click the Eraser button and drag over or click the boundary between cells to merge cells. Press Esc when you finish drawing or erasing table cell boundaries.



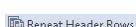
Need to split a table? Place the cursor in what you want to be the first row of the new table, go to the (Table Tools) Layout tab, and click the Split Table button.

## Repeating Header Rows on Subsequent Pages



Making sure that the *header row*, sometimes called the *heading row*, appears on a new page if the table breaks across pages is essential. The header row is the first row in the table, the one that usually describes what is in the columns below. Without a header row, readers can't tell what the information in a table means. Follow these steps to make the header row (or rows) repeat on the top of each new page that a table appears on:

1. Place the cursor in the header row or select the header rows if your table includes more than one header row.
2. On the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click the Repeat Header Rows button (depending on the size of your screen, you may have to click the Data button first).



Header rows appear only in Print Layout view, so don't worry if you can't see them in Draft view.

## Fitting a table on the page

Ideally, a table should fit on a single page, because studying table data that is spread across two or more pages can be difficult. Here are some suggestions for fitting a table on a single page:

- ✓ **Present the table in landscape mode:** In Landscape mode, a page is turned on its ear so that it is wider than it is tall and you have room for more table columns. To print in Landscape mode, however, you must create a new section for the pages in question. To change the page orientation, go to the Page Layout tab, click the Orientation button, and choose Landscape.
- ✓ **Shrink the font size:** Sometimes shrinking the font size throughout a table shrinks the table just enough to fit it on a page. To shrink fonts throughout a table, go to the Home tab and click the Decrease Font Size button (or press Ctrl+[-]). Keep decreasing the font size until the table fits on one page.
- ✓ **Shrink the columns:** On the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click the AutoFit button, and choose AutoFit Contents on the drop-down list to make each column only wide enough to accommodate its widest entry.
- ✓ **Change the orientation of header row text:** In a top-heavy table in which the header row cells contain text and the cells below contain numbers, you can make the entire table narrower by changing the orientation of the text in the header row. To turn text on its ear, select the cells whose text needs a turn, go to the (Table Tools) Layout tab, and click the Text Direction button. Keep clicking until the text turns the direction you want.

Chances are, if your table can't fit on one page, presenting the information in a table isn't the best option. Try presenting it in bulleted or numbered lists. Or present the information in short paragraphs under small fourth- or fifth-level headings.

## Formatting Your Table

After you enter text in the table, lay out the columns and rows, and make them the right size, the fun begins. Now you can dress up your table and make it look snazzy. You can choose colors for columns and rows. You can play with the borders that divide the columns and rows and shade columns, rows, and cells by filling them with gray shades or a black background. Read on to find out how to do these tricks.

### Designing a table with a table style



The fastest way to get a good-looking table is to select a table style in the Table Styles gallery, as shown in Figure 4-6. A *table style* is a ready-made assortment of colors and border choices. You can save yourself a lot of formatting trouble by selecting a table style. After you select a table style, you can modify it by selecting or deselecting check boxes in the Table Style Options group on the (Table Tools) Design tab.

Modify your table Select a table style

	Wins	Losses	Ties
Spiders	7	1	0
Knights	5	2	1
Bandits	4	2	2
River Kings	3	4	1
Bears	1	7	0

PAGE 1 OF 5 284 WORDS ENGLISH (UNITED STATES) 100%

**Figure 4-6:**  
You have  
many  
opportu-  
nities for  
designing  
tables.

Click anywhere in your table and follow these steps to choose a table style:

1. Go to the (Table Tools) Design tab.
2. Open the Table Styles gallery and move the pointer over table style choices to live-preview the table.
3. Select a table style.

To remove a table style, open the Table Styles gallery and choose Clear.



For consistency's sake, choose a similar table style — or better yet the same table style — for all the tables in your document. This way, your work doesn't become a showcase for table styles.

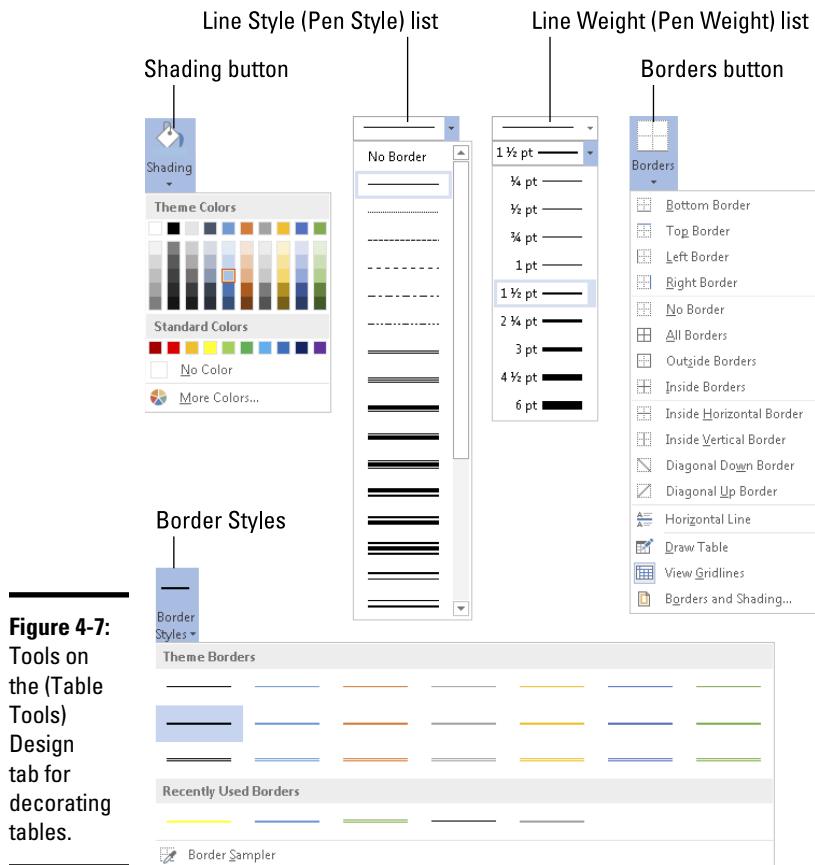
## ***Calling attention to different rows and columns***

On the (Table Tools) Design tab, Word offers Table Style Options check boxes for calling attention to different rows or columns (refer to Figure 4-6). For example, you can make the first row in the table, called the header row, stand out by selecting the Header Row check box. If your table presents numerical data with total figures in the last row, you can call attention to the last row by selecting the Total Row check box. Select or deselect these check boxes on the (Table Tools) Design tab to make your table easier to read and understand:

- ◆ **Header Row and Total Row:** These check boxes make the first row and last row in a table stand out. Typically, the header row is a different color or contains boldface text because it is the row that identifies the data in the table. Click the Header Row check box to make the first row stand out; if you also want the last row to stand out, click the Total Row check box.
- ◆ **Banded Columns and Banded Rows:** *Banded* means “striped” in Office lingo. For striped columns or striped rows — columns or rows that alternate in color — select the Banded Columns or Banded Rows check box.
- ◆ **First Column and Last Column:** Often the first column stands out in a table because it identifies what type of data is in each row. Select the First Column check box to make it a different color or boldface its text. Check the Last Column check box if you want the rightmost column to stand out.

## ***Decorating your table with borders and colors***

Besides relying on a table style, you can play interior decorator on your own. You can slap color on the columns and rows of your table, draw borders around columns and rows, and choose a look for borders. Figure 4-7 shows the drop-down lists on the (Table Tools) Design tab that pertain to table decoration. Use these drop-down lists to shade table columns and rows and draw table borders.



**Figure 4-7:**  
Tools on  
the (Table  
Tools)  
Design  
tab for  
decorating  
tables.

### **Designing borders for your table**

Follow these steps to fashion a border for your table or a part of your table:

- 1. Go to the (Table Tools) Design tab.**
- 2. Select the part of your table that needs a new border.**

You can skip this step if, rather than apply borders to your table, you intend to draw borders with the Border Painter. To select the entire table, go to the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click the Select button, and choose Select Table.



### 3. Create a look for the table borders you will apply or draw.

As shown in Figure 4-7, use all or some of these techniques to devise a border:

- **Border style:** Open the drop-down list on the Border Styles button and choose the border style that most resembles the one you want.
- **Line style:** Open the Line Style drop-down list and choose a style.
- **Line weight:** Open the Line Weight drop-down list and choose a line thickness.

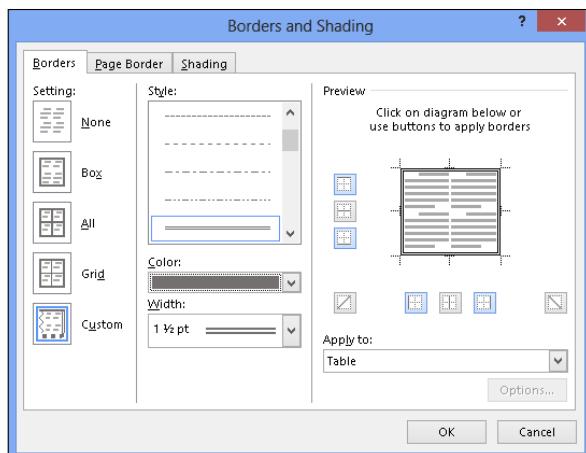
If a table on the page you’re looking at already has the border you like, you can “sample” the border. Open the drop-down list on the Border Styles button and choose Border Sampler. The pointer changes to an eyedropper. Click the border you want to select its style, weight, and color settings.

### 4. Apply or draw the table borders.

Use these techniques to apply or draw the borders:

- *Apply the borders:* Open the drop-down list on the Borders button and choose where to place borders on the part of the table you selected in Step 2.
- *Draw borders for the table:* Click the Border Painter button. The pointer changes into a pen. Drag over or click parts of the table to draw borders. Press Esc or click the Border Painter button again when you finish drawing.

You can also change borders by clicking the Borders group button and making selections in the Borders and Shading dialog box, as shown in Figure 4-8.



**Figure 4-8:**  
You can  
draw  
borders with  
the Borders  
and Shading  
dialog box.

**Selecting colors for columns, rows, or your table**

Follow these steps to paint columns, rows, or your table a new color:

1. Select the part of the table that needs a paint job.

2. In the (Table Tools) Design tab, open the drop-down list on the Shading button and choose a color (refer to Figure 4-7).

Later in this chapter, “Using a picture as the table background” explains how to use a picture as the background in a table.

**Using Math Formulas in Tables**

No, you don’t have to add the figures in columns and rows yourself; Word gladly does that for you. Word can perform other mathematical calculations as well. Follow these steps to perform mathematical calculations and tell Word how to format sums and products:

1. Put the cursor in the cell that will hold the sum or product of the cells above, below, to the right, or to the left.
2. On the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click the Formula button.

Depending on the size of your screen, you may have to click the Data button first. The Formula dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 4-9. In its wisdom, Word makes an educated guess about what you want the formula to do and places a formula in the Formula box.

Units Sold	Price Unit (\$)	Total Sale
13	178.12	\$2,315.56
15	179.33	\$2,689.95
93	178.00	\$16,554.00
31	671.13	
24	179.33	
9	69.13	
11	79.40	
196	\$1,766.23	

Formula: `=PRODUCT(LEFT)`  
Number format: `#,##0.00`  
Paste function: `MIN` `MOD` `NOT` `OR` `PRODUCT` `ROUND` `SIGN` `SUM`

**Figure 4-9:**

A math formula in a table.

3. If this isn't the formula you want, delete everything except the equal sign in the Formula box, open the Paste Function drop-down list, and choose another function for the formula.

For example, choose PRODUCT to multiply figures. You may have to type **left**, **right**, **above**, or **below** in the parentheses within the formula to tell Word where the figures that you want it to compute are.

4. In the Number Format drop-down list, choose a format for your number.
5. Click OK.



Word doesn't calculate blank cells in formulas. Enter 0 in blank cells if you want them to be included in calculations. You can copy functions from one cell to another to save yourself the trouble of opening the Formula dialog box.

## *Neat Table Tricks*

The rest of this chapter details a handful of neat table tricks to make your tables stand out in a crowd. Why should all tables look alike? Read on to discover how to make text in the header row stand on its ear, wrap text around a table, put a picture behind a table, draw diagonal border lines, draw on top of a table, and wrap slide text around a table.

### *Changing the direction of header row text*

In a top-heavy table in which the cells in the first row contain text and the cells below contain numbers, consider changing the direction of the text in the first row to make the table easier to read. Changing text direction in the first row is also a good way to squeeze more columns into a table. Consider how wide the table shown in Figure 4-10 would be if the words in the first row were displayed horizontally.

**Figure 4-10:**  
Change the  
direction  
of text to  
squeeze  
more  
columns on  
a table.

	Yes	No	Maybe	Often	Never
Prof. Plum in the Library	✓				
Miss Scarlet in the Drawing Room		✓			
Col. Mustard in the Dining Room				✓	

Follow these steps to change the direction of text on a table.

- 1. Select the row that needs a change of text direction.**

Usually, that's the first row in a table.

- 2. Go to the (Table Tools) Layout tab.**



- 3. Keep clicking the Text Direction button until text lands where you want it to land.**

You may have to click the Alignment button before you can see the Text Direction button.

- 4. Change the height of the row to make the vertical text fit.**

As “Changing the size of a table, columns, and rows” explains earlier in this chapter, you can change the height of a row by going to the (Table Tools) Layout tab and entering a measurement in the Height box.

## *Wrapping text around a table*

Nothing is sadder than a forlorn little table all alone on a page. To keep tables from being lonely, you can wrap text around them, as shown in Figure 4-11.

**Figure 4-11:**  
Wrap text to  
keep tables  
from being  
lonely.

### Fujita Scale

Scale	Wind Speed (mph)
F0	40–72
F1	73–112
F2	113–157
F3	158–206
F4	207–260
F5	261–318

The Fujita scale measures tornado intensity primarily on the damage a tornado does to buildings and vegetation. Meteorologists determine official Fujita scale measurements by surveying damage on the ground and by air. They take into account eyewitness testimony, media reports, ground-swirl patterns, radar tracking imagery, and, if video is available, videogrammetry.

To wrap text around a table, drag it into the text (drag the selection handle in the upper-left corner of the table). Nine times out of ten, that's all there is to it, but if the text doesn't wrap correctly, follow these steps to wrap your table:

- 1. On the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click the Cell Size group button.**

The Table Properties dialog box opens.

- 2. On the Table tab, under Text Wrapping, select the Around option.**

- 3. Click the Positioning button.**

The Table Positioning dialog box appears.

**4. Select the Move with Text check box and click OK.**

By selecting Move with Text, you make sure that the table stays with the surrounding text when you insert or delete text.

**5. Click OK in the Table Properties dialog box.**

### *Using a picture as the table background*

As Figure 4-12 demonstrates, a picture used as the background in a table looks mighty nice. To make it work, however, you need a graphic that serves well as the background. For Figure 4-12, I got around this problem by recoloring my graphic (Book VIII, Chapter 3 explains how to recolor a graphic.) You also need to think about font colors. Readers must be able to read the table text, and that usually means choosing a white or light font color for text so that the text can be read over the graphic. For Figure 4-12, I selected a white font color.

**Figure 4-12:**  
A well-chosen graphic in a table background helps indicate what the table is all about.

<b>Elvis Sightings by Year</b>				
	2009	2010	2011	
Memphis	14	9	7	
New Orleans	13	13	9	
Mobile	11	6	8	
	38	28	24	

Placing a graphic behind a table requires a fair bit of work, but the results are well worth the effort. First you insert the graphic and perhaps recolor it. Then you create the table. Lastly, you make the table fit squarely on top of the graphic and perhaps group the objects together.

Follow these steps to place a graphic behind a table:

**1. Insert the graphic, resize it, and format the graphic.**

Book VIII, Chapter 3 explains how to insert and resize graphics. To insert a graphic, go to the Insert tab and click the Pictures or Online Pictures button. To resize it, drag a selection handle; make the graphic as big as you want your table to be. To recolor a graphic similar to the job done to the graphic in Figure 4-12, select the (Picture Tools) Format tab, click the Color button, and choose an option.

**2. Click the Layout Options button (it's located to the right of the picture) and choose Behind Text on the drop-down list.**

Choosing Behind Text tells Word to put the graphic behind the text. You can also go to the (Picture Tools) Format tab, click the Wrap Text button, and choose Behind Text.

**3. Insert the table and make it roughly the same size as the graphic.**

These tasks are explained earlier in this chapter. To change the size of a table, drag a selection handle on its corner or side. Place the table nearby the graphic, but not right on top of it.

**4. On the (Table Tools) Design tab, open the Table Styles gallery, and choose Clear.**

With the table styles out of the way, you can see the graphic clearly through your table.

**5. Enter the data in the table, select a font and font color, select a border and border color, and align the text.**

These tasks (except for selecting fonts) are described throughout this chapter. The easiest way to choose a font and font color for a table is to select the table, go to the Home tab, and select a font and font size.

**6. Move the table squarely on top of the graphic and then make the table and graphic roughly the same size.**

Here are a few tricks that are worth knowing when you're handling a graphic and table:

- ◆ If the graphic is in front of the table, select the graphic, go to the (Picture Tools) Format tab, open the drop-down list on the Send Backward button, and choose Send Behind Text.
- ◆ To make the text in the table legible, use a light-colored font. As well, use white or light-colored table borders so that the borders can be clearly seen.

### **Drawing diagonal lines on tables**

Draw diagonal lines across table cells to cancel out those cells or otherwise make cells look different. In Figure 4-13, diagonal lines are drawn on cells to show that information that would otherwise be in the cells is either not available or is not relevant.

**Figure 4-13:**  
Diagonal  
lines mark  
off cells as  
different.

	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.	Sun.
McKeef	8:00			3:00		8:00	2:15
Arnez	9:00	6:00	2:30	12:00	8:15		4:00
Danes	9:30		2:00	7:30		3:30	7:30
Minor		12:00	4:15	5:15	2:00		
Krupf	3:30	6:00		12:00	2:30	9:00	9:00
Gough	3:00			7:00	3:30	4:530	3:30
Gonzalez	12:00	7:15	8:30				10:15

Use one of these techniques to draw diagonal lines across cells:



- ◆ **Draw Table button:** On the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click the Draw Table button (you may have to click the Draw Borders button first). The pointer changes into a pencil. Drag to draw the diagonal lines. Press Esc or click the Draw Table button a second time when you're finished drawing.

Click the Pen Color button on the (Table Tools) Design tab and choose a color before drawing on your table if you want the diagonal lines to be a certain color.



- ◆ **Borders button:** Select the cells that need diagonal lines, and on the (Table Tools) Design tab, open the drop-down list on the Borders button, and choose Diagonal Down Border or Diagonal Up Border.

To remove diagonal lines, click the Eraser button on the (Table Tools) Layout tab and click or drag across the diagonals.

## Drawing on a table

When you want to call attention to data in one part of a table, draw a circle around the data. By "draw" I mean make an Oval shape and place it over the data you want to highlight, as shown in Figure 4-14. Book VIII, Chapter 4 explains the drawing tools in detail. To spare you the trouble of turning to that chapter, here are shorthand instructions for drawing on a table:



1. On the Insert tab, click the Shapes button and select the Oval shape on the drop-down list.

**Figure 4-14:**  
You can  
circle data  
to highlight  
it.

	April	May	June
Baltimore	\$1.5 mil	\$2.3 mil	\$1.8 mil
New York	\$1.2 mil	\$3.2 mil	\$4.1 mil
Philadelphia	\$8 mil	\$1.8 mil	\$1.7 mil
Newark	\$2.1 mil	\$2.2 mil	\$2.1 mil

Shape Fill ▾

Shape Outline ▾

2. On a corner of your page or slide, away from the table, drag to draw the oval.
3. On the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, open the drop-down list on the Shape Fill button and choose No Fill.
4. Open the drop-down list on the Shape Outline button and choose a very dark color.
5. Open the drop-down list on the Shape Outline button, choose Weight, and choose a thick line.
6. Drag the oval over the data on your table that you want to highlight.

If the oval is obscured by the table, go to the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, and click the Bring Forward button (click the Arrange button, if necessary, to see this button). While you're at it, consider rotating the oval a little way to make it appear as though it was drawn by hand on the table.

# *Chapter 5: Taking Advantage of the Proofing Tools*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Fixing spelling errors and customizing the spelling dictionary
- ✓ Repairing grammatical errors in documents
- ✓ Looking up a word definition
- ✓ Finding text — and replacing it if you want
- ✓ Conducting outside research while you work in Word
- ✓ Looking for a better word in the thesaurus
- ✓ Working with and translating foreign language text

**I** was going to call this chapter “Foolproofing Your Work,” but that seemed kind of presumptuous because keeping every error from slipping into your work is well-nigh impossible. Still, you can do a good job of proofing your work and eliminating errors by using the tools that Word provides for that purpose. This chapter describes how to proof your work for spelling and grammatical errors. It shows how to find text, find and replace text, and how to conduct research in reference books and on the Internet without leaving Word. You also find out how to translate text and proof foreign language text. The proofing tools are not foolproof, but they’re close to it.



The F7 key is the key to the kingdom when it comes to proofing Word documents. Here is the magic of pressing F7 and various key combinations:

- ◆ **F7:** Run a spell-check
- ◆ **Alt+F7:** Scroll to the next misspelling
- ◆ **Ctrl+F7:** Get a word definition
- ◆ **Shift+F7:** Open the Thesaurus

## Correcting Your Spelling Errors

Word keeps a dictionary in its hip pocket, which is a good thing for you. Who wants to be embarrassed by a spelling error? Word consults its dictionary when you enter text in a document. To correct misspellings, you can either address them one at a time or start the spell checker and proof many pages simultaneously.

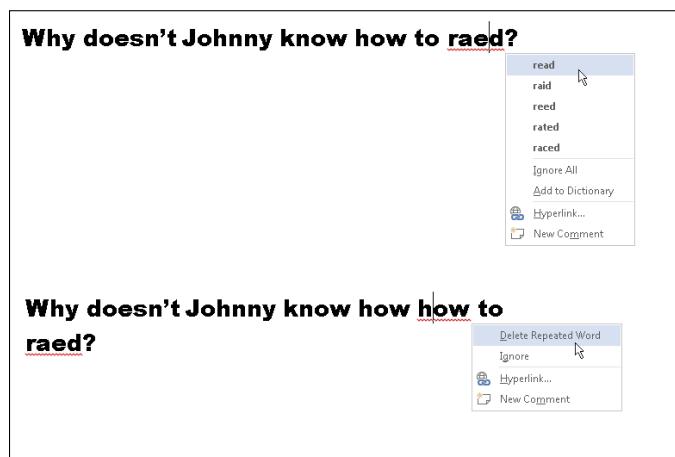


Don't trust the smell checker to be accurate all the time. It doesn't really locate misspelled words — it locates words that aren't in its dictionary. For example, if you write "Nero diddled while Rome burned," the spell checker doesn't catch the error. Nero *fiddled* while Rome burned, but because *diddle* is a legitimate word in the spelling dictionary, the spell checker overlooks the error. The moral: Proofread your documents carefully and don't rely on the spell checker to catch all your smelling errors.

### Correcting misspellings one at a time

One way to handle misspelled words is to use the one-at-a-time method of spell-checking. As shown in Figure 5-1, you can right-click each word that is underlined in red and choose a correct spelling from the shortcut menu. After you choose a word from the shortcut menu, it replaces the misspelling that you right-clicked.

**Figure 5-1:**  
Right-click  
a word  
underlined  
in red to  
correct  
a typo or  
repeated  
word.



## Getting rid of the squiggly red lines

More than a few people think that the squiggly red lines that appear under misspelled words are annoying. To keep those lines from appearing, go to the File tab, choose Options, and go to the Proofing category in the Options dialog box. Then deselect the Check Spelling As You Type check box.

Even with the red lines gone, you can do a quick one-at-a-time spell-check. Press Alt+F7 to scroll to the next misspelling and display a shortcut menu for fixing it.

Words entered twice are also flagged in red, in which case the shortcut menu offers the Delete Repeated Word option so that you can delete the second word (see Figure 5-1). You can also click Ignore All to tell Word when a word is correctly spelled and shouldn't be flagged, or click Add to Dictionary, which adds the word to the Office spelling dictionary and declares it a correctly spelled word.

## Running a spell-check

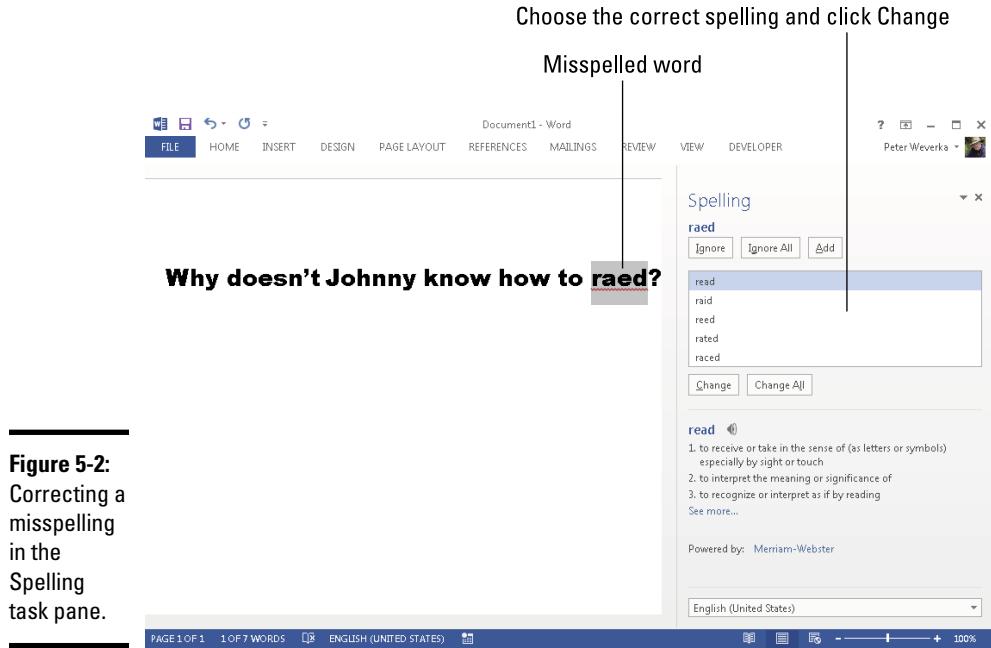
Instead of correcting misspellings one at a time, you can run a spell-check on your work. Start your spell-check with one of these methods:

- ◆ Press F7.
- ◆ Go to the Review tab and click the Spelling & Grammar button.
- ◆ On the status bar, click the Proofing Errors button. (Move the pointer over this button to see a pop-up message that tells you whether Word has found proofing errors in your document.)



You see the Spelling task pane, as shown in Figure 5-2. As I explain shortly, Word offers all sorts of amenities for handling misspelled words, but here are options for correcting known misspellings in the Spelling task pane:

- ◆ Select the correct spelling and click the Change button.
- ◆ Click in the page you're working on and correct the misspelling there; then click the Resume button.



**Figure 5-2:**  
Correcting a  
misspelling  
in the  
Spelling  
task pane.

If the word in question isn't a misspelling, tell your program how to handle the word by clicking one of these buttons:

- ◆ **Ignore:** Ignores this instance of the misspelling but stops on it again if the same misspelling appears later.
- ◆ **Ignore All:** Ignores the misspelling throughout the document you're working on and in all other open documents as well.
- ◆ **Change/Delete:** Enters the selected word in the document where the misspelling used to be. When the same word appears twice in a row, the Delete button appears. Click the Delete button to delete the second word in the pair.
- ◆ **Change All:** Replaces all instances of the misspelled word with the word that you select. Click the Change All button to correct a misspelling that occurs throughout a document.
- ◆ **Add:** Adds the misspelling to the Office spelling dictionary. By clicking the Add button, you tell Word that the misspelling is a legitimate word or name.



Office programs share the same spelling dictionary. For example, words you add to the spelling dictionary in Word are deemed correct spellings in PowerPoint presentations, Excel spreadsheets, Publisher publications, Access databases, and Outlook e-mails.

### **Preventing text from being spell checked**

Spell-checking address lists, lines of computer code, and foreign languages such as Spanglish for which Microsoft doesn't offer foreign language dictionaries is a thorough waste of time. Follow these steps to tell the spell checker to ignore text:

1. Select the text.
2. In the Review tab, click the Language button and choose Set Proofing Language on the drop-down list.  
You see the Language dialog box.
3. Select the Do Not Check Spelling or Grammar check box.
4. Click OK.

Book II  
Chapter 5

Taking Advantage  
of the Proofing  
Tools

## **Checking for Grammatical Errors in Word**

Much of what constitutes good grammar is, like beauty, in the eye of the beholder. Still, you can do your best to repair grammatical errors in Word documents by getting the assistance of the grammar checker. The grammar checker identifies grammatical errors, explains what the errors are, and gives you the opportunity to correct the errors.

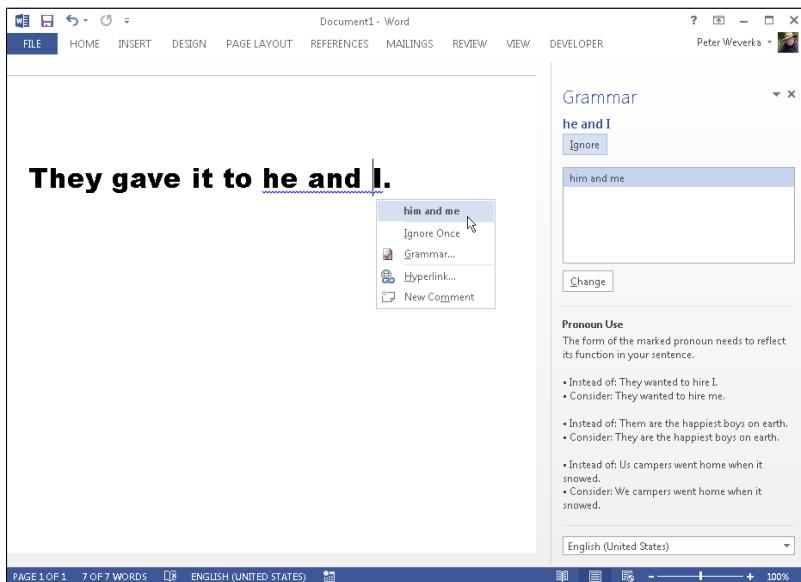
Figure 5-3 shows the grammar checker in action. To correct grammatical errors:



- ◆ **Correct errors one at a time:** Right-click and choose an option on the shortcut menu, as shown in Figure 5-3. Grammatical errors are underlined in blue.
- ◆ **Open the Grammar task pane:** Press F7, click the Spelling & Grammar button on the Review tab, or click the Proofing Errors button on the status bar. The Grammar task pane opens. Select a correction and click Change or click the Ignore button to disregard the grammar error.

## 144 Getting a Word Definition

If you want to fine-tune how Word runs its grammar checker, go to the File tab and choose Options, and in the Word Options dialog box, go to the Proofing category. Under When Correcting Spelling and Grammar in Word, choose whether to mark grammatical errors with blue lines, check for grammatical as well as spelling errors, and in the Writing Style drop-down list, how stringent you want the rules of grammar to be. Choose Grammar & Style, not Grammar Only, if you want Word to enforce style rules as well as the rules of grammar.



**Figure 5-3:**  
Fix  
grammatical  
errors  
with the  
grammar  
checker.

## Getting a Word Definition

Rather than reach for a large, unwieldy dictionary, you can get a word definition in the Dictionary task pane, as shown in Figure 5-4. Click the word that needs defining and use one of these techniques to get its definition:

- ◆ On the Review tab, click the Define button.
- ◆ Press Ctrl+F7.

The first time you seek a word definition, the Definition task pane gives you the opportunity to download a dictionary to your computer. Downloading a dictionary costs nothing and takes but a moment.



**Figure 5-4:**  
The  
Dictionary  
task pane in  
action.

## Finding and Replacing Text

Use the Find command to locate a name or text passage. Use its twin, the powerful Replace command, to find and replace a name or text passage throughout a document. For an idea of how useful the Replace command is, imagine that the company you work for just changed its name and the old company name is in many different places. By using the Replace command, you can replace the old company name with the new name throughout a long document in a matter of seconds.

### *The basics: Finding stray words and phrases*

To locate stray words, names, text passages, and formats, follow these basic steps:

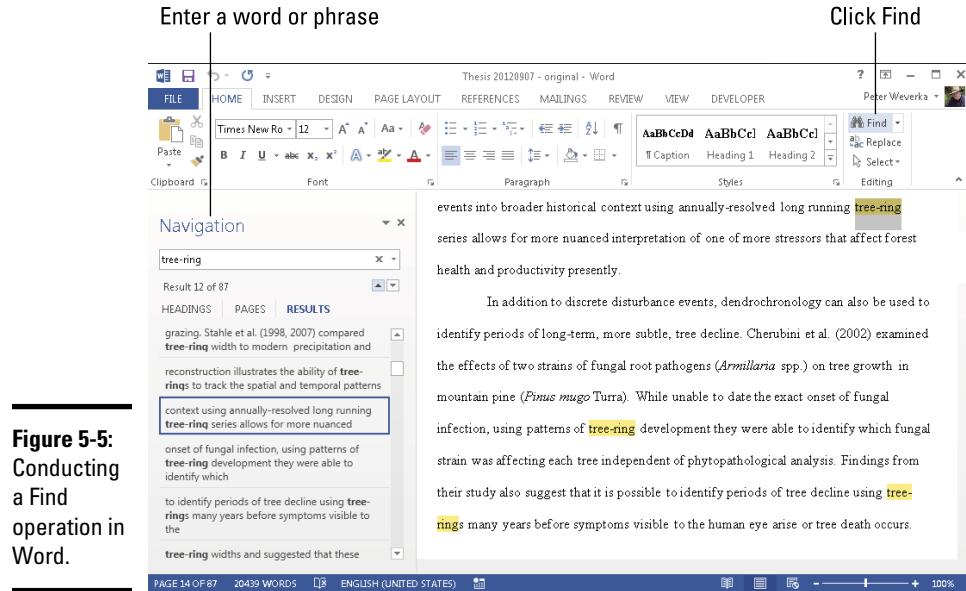


1. Press **Ctrl+F** or go to the Home tab and click the Find button.

The Navigation pane appears so that you can enter search criteria in the Results tab, as shown in Figure 5-5.

2. Enter the word or phrase in the search text box.

After you enter the word or phrase, the Navigation pane lists each instance of the term you're looking for and the term is highlighted in your document wherever it is found (see Figure 5-5).



**Figure 5-5:**  
Conducting  
a Find  
operation in  
Word.

3. If you want to conduct a narrow search, click the **Find Options** button — located to the right of the Search text box in the Navigation pane — and make a choice on the drop-down list.

Later in this chapter, “Narrowing your search” explains how to make searches more efficient by choosing options on this drop-down list.

4. Click an instance of the search term in the Navigation pane to scroll to a location in your document where the search term is located.

To go from search term to search term, you can also scroll in the Navigation pane, click the Previous button or Next button (located below the Search text box), or press Ctrl+Page Up or Ctrl+Page Down.

## Narrowing your search

To narrow your search, click the Find Options button in the Navigation pane, as shown in Figure 5-6. Then choose an option on the drop-down list:

- ◆ **Options:** Opens the Find Options dialog box so that you can select options to narrow your search. Table 5-1 explains these options.

- ◆ **Advanced Find:** Opens the Find tab of the Find and Replace dialog box so that you can select options to narrow the search. Table 5-1 explains these options. Go this route if you want to search using font, paragraph, and other formats as well as advanced search criteria. By clicking the Format button and Special button, you can search for text that was formatted a certain way, as well as for special characters such as paragraph marks and page breaks.
- ◆ **Find (Graphics, Tables, Equations, Footnotes/Endnotes, Comments):** Search for a particular object type. For example, choose Tables to search for tables.



Click the More button in the Find and Replace dialog box to see all the search options.

Click the Find Options button

Choose an option

**Figure 5-6:**  
Conducting  
a narrow  
search.

**Table 5-1****Search Options in the Find Options and Find and Replace Dialog Box**

<b>Option</b>	<b>Description</b>
Match Case	Searches for words with upper- and lowercase letters that exactly match those in the search text box. When the Match Case option is selected, a search for <i>bow</i> finds <i>bow</i> , but not <i>Bow</i> or <i>BOW</i> .
Find Whole Words Only	Normally, a search for <i>bow</i> yields <i>elbow</i> , <i>bowler</i> , <i>bow-wow</i> , and all other words with the letters <i>b-o-w</i> (in that order). Choose this option and you get only <i>bow</i> .
Use Wildcards	Choose this option to use wildcards in searches. (See “Using wildcard operators to refine searches,” later in this chapter.)
Sounds Like	Search for words that sound like the one in the Search text box. A search for <i>bow</i> with this option selected finds <i>beau</i> , for example. However, it doesn’t find <i>bough</i> . This command isn’t very reliable.
Find All Word Forms	Takes into account verb conjugations and plurals in searches. With this option, you get <i>bows</i> , <i>bowing</i> , and <i>bowed</i> as well as <i>bow</i> .
Highlight All	Highlights search results on the page. (Click the Reading Highlight button in the Find and Replace dialog box.)
Incremental Find <sup>1</sup>	Searches for and highlights text as you type it in the Search text box.
Match Prefix	A <i>prefix</i> is a syllable appearing before the root or stem of a word to alter its meaning. For example, <i>co</i> , <i>mid</i> , <i>non</i> , and <i>un</i> are prefixes in the words <i>coauthor</i> , <i>midtown</i> , <i>nonviolent</i> , and <i>unselfish</i> . Choose this option and enter a prefix in the Find What text box to locate words that begin with the prefix you enter.
Match Suffix	A <i>suffix</i> is a syllable or two appearing at the end of a word that alters its meaning. For example, <i>age</i> , <i>ish</i> , and <i>ness</i> are suffixes in the words <i>spillage</i> , <i>smallish</i> , and <i>darkness</i> . Choose this option and enter a suffix in the Find What text box to find words that end with the same suffix.
Ignore Punctuation Characters	Search in text for word phrases without regard for commas, periods, and other punctuation marks. For example, a search for <i>Yuma Arizona</i> finds <i>Yuma, Arizona</i> (with a comma) in the text.
Ignore White Space Characters	Search in text for word phrases without regard for white space caused by multiple blank spaces or tab entries.



After you finish conducting a search for formatted text, don't forget to click the No Formatting button in the Find and Replace dialog box. (You can't conduct a normal search again unless you turn format searching off.)

### Using wildcard operators to refine searches

Word permits you to use wildcard operators in searches. A *wildcard operator* is a character that represents characters in a search expression. Wildcards aren't for everybody. Using them requires a certain amount of expertise, but after you know how to use them, wildcards can be invaluable in searches and macros. Table 5-2 explains the wildcard operators that you can use in searches. Click the Use Wildcards check box if you want to search using wildcards.

**Table 5-2** Wildcards for Searches

Operator	What It Finds	Example
?	Any single character	b?t finds bat, bet, bit, and but.
*	Zero or more characters	t*o finds to, two, and tattoo.
[xyz]	A specific character, x, y, or z	t[aeiou]pper finds tapper, tipper, and topper.
[x-z]	A range of characters, x through z	[1-4]000 finds 1000, 2000, 3000, and 4000, but not 5000.
[!xy]	Not the specific character or characters, xy	p[!lo]t finds pat and pet, but not pit or pot.
<	Characters at the beginning of words	<info finds information, infomaniac, and infomercial.

(continued)

**Table 5-2 (continued)**

<i>Operator</i>	<i>What It Finds</i>	<i>Example</i>
>	Characters at the end of words	<code>ese&gt;</code> finds <i>these</i> , <i>jurnalese</i> , and <i>legalese</i> .
@	One or more instances of the previous character	<code>sho@t</code> finds <i>shot</i> and <i>shoot</i> .
{n}	Exactly <i>n</i> instances of the previous character	<code>sho{2}t</code> finds <i>shoot</i> but not <i>shot</i> .
{n,}	At least <i>n</i> instances of the previous character	<code>^p{3,}</code> finds three or more paragraph breaks in a row, but not a single paragraph break or two paragraph breaks in a row.
{n,m}	From <i>n</i> to <i>m</i> instances of the previous character	<code>10{2,4}</code> finds <i>100</i> , <i>1000</i> , and <i>10000</i> , but not <i>10</i> or <i>100000</i> .



You can't conduct a whole-word-only search with a wildcard. For example, a search for `f*s` not only finds *fads* and *fits* but also all text strings that begin with *f* and end with *s*, such as *for the birds*. Wildcard searches can yield many, many results and are sometimes useless.



To search for an asterisk (\*), question mark (?), or other character that serves as a wildcard search operator, place a backslash (\) before it in the text box.

### Searching for special characters

Table 5-3 describes the *special characters* you can look for in Word documents. To look for the special characters listed in the table, enter the character directly in the text box or click the Special button in the Find and Replace dialog box, and then choose a special character from the pop-up list. Be sure to enter lowercase letters. For example, you must enter `^n`, not `^N`, to look for a column break. **Note:** A caret (^) precedes special characters.

**Table 5-3****Special Characters for Searches**

<i>To Find/Replace</i>	<i>Enter</i>
<b>Manual Formats That Users Insert</b>	
Column break	<code>^n</code>
Field <sup>1</sup>	<code>^d</code>
Manual line break („)	<code>^l</code>

To Find/Replace	Enter
Manual page break	^m
No-width non break	^z
No-width optional break	^x
Paragraph break (¶)	^p
Section break <sup>1</sup>	^b
Section character	^%
Tab space (→)	^t
<b>Punctuation Marks</b>	
1/4 em space	^q
Caret (^)	^~
Ellipsis	^i
Em dash (—)	^+
En dash (–)	^=
Full-width ellipses	^j
Nonbreaking hyphen	^~
Optional hyphen	^-
White space (one or more blank spaces) <sup>1</sup>	^w
<b>Characters and Symbols</b>	
Foreign character	You can type foreign characters in the Find What and Replace With text boxes
ANSI and ASCII characters and symbols	^nnnn, where nnnn is the four-digit code
Any character <sup>1</sup>	^?
Any digit <sup>1</sup>	^#
Any letter <sup>1</sup>	^\$
Clipboard contents <sup>2</sup>	^c
Contents of the Find What box <sup>2</sup>	^&
<b>Elements of Reports and Scholarly Papers</b>	
Endnote mark <sup>1</sup>	^e
Footnote mark <sup>1</sup>	^f
Graphic <sup>1</sup>	^g

<sup>1</sup>For use in find operations only<sup>2</sup>For use in replace operations only



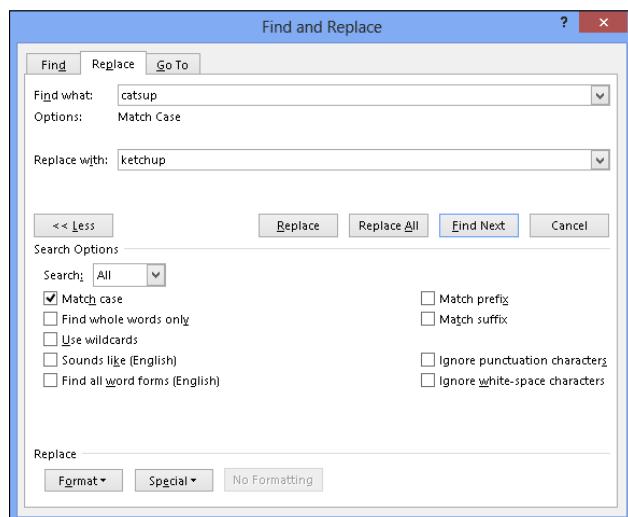
Before searching for special characters, go to the Home tab and click the Show/Hide ¶ button. That way, you see special characters — also known as *hidden format symbols* — on-screen when Word finds them.



Creative people find many uses for special characters in searches. The easiest way to find section breaks, column breaks, and manual line breaks in a document is to enter  $^{\text{b}}$ ,  $^{\text{n}}$ , or  $^{\text{l}}$ , respectively, and start searching. By combining special characters with text, you can make find-and-replace operations more productive. For example, to replace all double hyphens (–) in a document with em dashes (—), enter – in the Find What text box and  $^{\text{m}}$  in the Replace With text box. This kind of find-and-replace operation is especially useful for cleaning documents that were created in another program and then imported into Word.

### Conducting a find-and-replace operation

Conducting a find-and-replace operation is the spitting image of conducting a find operation. Figure 5-7 shows the Replace dialog box, the place where you declare what you want to find and what to replace it with. Do the options and buttons in the dialog box look familiar? They do if you read the previous handful of pages about searching because the Replace options are the same as the Find options.



**Figure 5-7:**  
Using the  
powerful  
Replace  
command.



The key to a successful find-and-replace operation is making sure you *find* exactly what you want to find and replace. One way to make sure that you find the right text is to start by running a Find operation. If the program finds precisely the text you want, you're in business. Click the Replace tab in the Find and Replace dialog box and then enter the replacement text.

To locate and replace words, names, or text passages with the Find command, follow these steps:

#### Replace

1. Press **Ctrl+H** or go to the Home tab and click the Replace button.

The Find and Replace dialog box appears (see Figure 5-7).

2. Describe the text that needs replacing.

Earlier in this chapter, “The basics: Finding stray words and phrases” explains how to construct a search. Try to narrow your search so you find only the text you’re looking for.

3. Click the Find Next button.

Did your program find what you’re looking for? If it didn’t, describe the search again.

4. Enter the replacement text in the Replace With text box.

You can select replacement text from the drop-down list.

5. Either replace everything simultaneously or do it one at a time.

Click one of these buttons:

- Click Replace All to make all replacements in an instant.
- Click Find Next and then either click Replace to make the replacement or Find Next to bypass it.

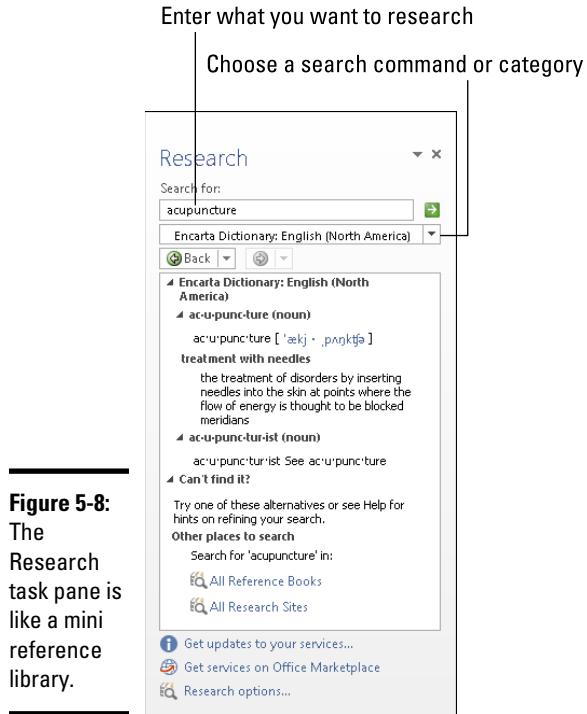
Click the Replace All button only if you are very, very confident that the thing your program found is the thing you want to replace.



Be sure to examine your document after you conduct a find-and-replace operation. You never know what the powerful Replace command will do. If the command makes a hash of your document, click the Undo button.

## Researching a Topic Inside Word

Thanks to the Research task pane, your desk needn’t be as crowded as before. The Research task pane offers dictionaries, foreign language dictionaries, a thesaurus, language translators, and encyclopedias, as well as Internet searching, all available from inside Word (and the other Office programs too). As shown in Figure 5-8, the Research task pane can save you a trip to the library.



**Figure 5-8:**  
The  
Research  
task pane is  
like a mini  
reference  
library.

The task pane offers menus and buttons for steering a search in different directions, but no matter what you want to research in the Research task pane, start your search the same way:

**1. Either click in a word or select the words that you want to research.**

For example, if you want to translate a word, click it. Clicking a word or selecting words saves you the trouble of entering words in the Search For text box, but if no word in your document describes what you want to research, don't worry about it. You can enter the subject of your search later.

**2. Alt+click the word or words you want to research. (In Excel and PowerPoint, you can also click the Research button on the Review tab.)**

The Research task pane appears (refer to Figure 5-8). If you've researched since you started running Word, the options you chose for researching last time appear in the task pane.

**3. Enter a research term in the Search For text box (if one isn't there already).**

4. Open the Search For drop-down list and tell Word where to steer your search.

Choose a reference book or research website.

5. Click the Start Searching button (or press Enter).

The results of your search appear in the Research task pane.

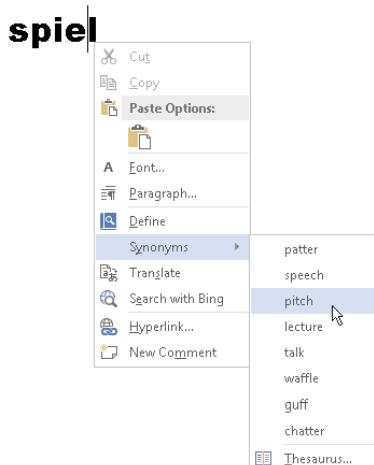
If your search yields nothing worthwhile or nothing at all, scroll to the bottom of the task pane and try the All Reference Books or All Research Sites link. The first link searches all reference books — the dictionaries, thesauruses, and translation service. The second searches research sites — Bing, Factiva iWorks, and HighBeam Research.



You can retrace a search by clicking the Back button or Forward button in the Research task pane. These buttons work like the Back and Forward buttons in a web browser.

## Finding the Right Word with the Thesaurus

If you can't find the right word or if the word is on the tip of your tongue but you can't quite remember it, you can always give the Thesaurus a shot. To find synonyms for a word, start by right-clicking the word and choosing Synonyms on the shortcut menu, as shown in Figure 5-9. With luck, the synonym you're looking for appears on the submenu, and all you have to do is click to enter the synonym. Usually, however, finding a good synonym is a journey, not a Sunday stroll.



**Figure 5-9:**  
Searching  
for a  
synonym.

To search for a good synonym, click the word in question and open the Thesaurus task pane with one of these techniques:

- ◆ Press Shift+F7.
- ◆ Right-click the word and choose Synonyms⇒Thesaurus.
- ◆ Go to the Review tab and click the Thesaurus button.



The Thesaurus task pane opens. It offers a list of synonyms and sometimes includes an antonym or two at the bottom. Now you're getting somewhere:

- ◆ **Choosing a synonym:** Move the pointer over the synonym you want, open its drop-down list, and choose Insert.
- ◆ **Finding a synonym for a synonym:** If a synonym intrigues you, click it. The task pane displays a new list of synonyms.
- ◆ **Searching for antonyms:** If you can't think of the right word, type its antonym in the text box and then look for an "antonym of an antonym" in the task pane.

## Proofing Text Written in a Foreign Language

In the interest of cosmopolitanism, Word gives you the opportunity to make foreign languages a part of documents. To enter and edit text in a foreign language, start by installing proofing tools for the language. With the tools installed, you tell Word where in your document a foreign language is used. After that, you can spell check text written in the language.

To spell check text written in Uzbek, Estonian, Afrikaans, and other languages apart from English, French, and Spanish, you have to obtain additional proofing tools from Microsoft. These can be obtained at the Microsoft Download Center at [www.microsoft.com/en-us/download](http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download) (enter **proofing tools** in the Search box). Proofing tools include a spell checker, grammar checker, thesaurus, hyphenator, AutoCorrect list, and translation dictionary, but not all these tools are available for every language.



The status bar along the bottom of the screen lists which language the cursor is in. Glance at the status bar if you aren't sure which language Word is whispering in your ear.

## Telling Office which languages you will use

Follow these steps to inform Word that you will use a language or languages besides English in your documents:

1. On the Review tab, click the Language button and choose Language Preferences.

The Options dialog box opens to the Language category.



2. Open the Add Additional Editing Languages drop-down list, select a language, and click the Add button to make that language a part of your documents.
3. Click OK.

## *Marking text as foreign language text*

The next step is to tell Office where in your document you're using a foreign language. After you mark the text as foreign language text, Office can spell check it with the proper dictionaries. Follow these steps to mark text so that Office knows in which language it was written:

1. Select the text that you wrote in a foreign language.
2. Go to the Review tab.
3. Click the Language button and choose Set Proofing Language on the drop-down list.
4. Select a language and click OK.

You see the Language dialog box, as shown in Figure 5-10.

Click in the words you selected and glance at the status bar. It tells you that the words were written in the language you selected in the Language dialog box.

Book II  
Chapter 5

Taking Advantage  
of the Proofing  
Tools



**Figure 5-10:**  
Identifying  
foreign  
language  
words  
for spell-  
checking.

## *Translating Foreign Language Text*

Office offers a gizmo for translating words and phrases from one language to another. The translation gizmo gives you the opportunity to translate single words and phrases as well as entire documents, although, in my experience, it is only good for translating words and phrases. To translate an entire document, you have to seek the help of a real, native speaker.

Follow these steps to translate foreign language text:

- 1. Select the word or phrase that needs translating.**
- 2. On the Review tab, click the Translate button and choose a Translate option on the drop-down list.**



Office offers these ways to translate words:

- **Translate Document:** Word sends the text to a translation service, and the translated text appears on a web page. Copy the text and do what you will with it. (If the wrong translation languages are listed, choose correct languages from the drop-down lists.)
- **Translate Selected Text:** The Research task pane opens, as shown in Figure 5-11. Choose a From and To option to translate the word from one language to another.
- **Mini Translator:** After you choose this option, move the pointer over the word you need translated. A little toolbar appears with the translation. You can click the Play button on the toolbar to hear the translation. (If the Mini Translator command doesn't list the correct language, click the Translate button, select the Choose Translation Language option, and select a language in the Translation Language Options dialog box.)



**Figure 5-11:**  
Use the  
Research  
task pane  
to translate  
a word or  
phrase.

# **Chapter 6: Desktop Publishing with Word**

---

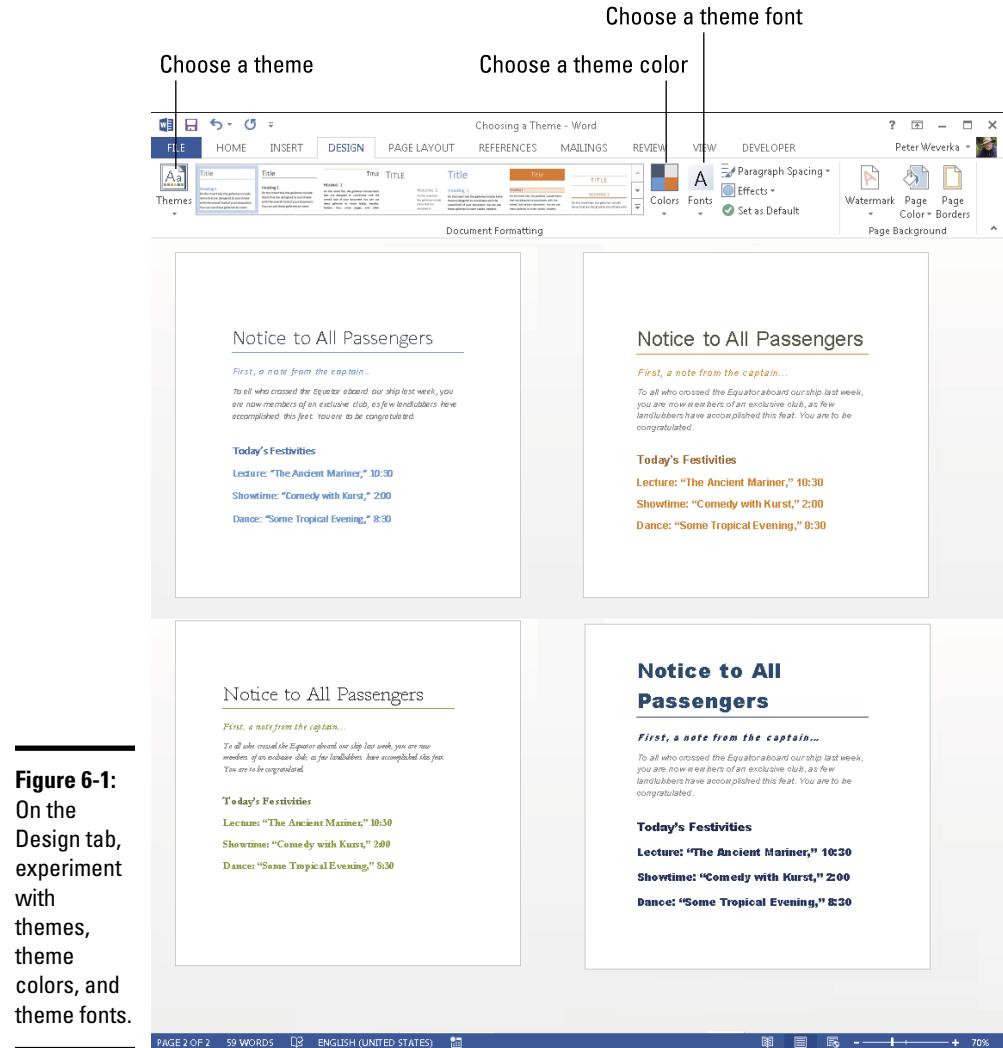
## **In This Chapter**

- ✓ Choosing a new theme
- ✓ Putting borders on pages
- ✓ Considering ways to desktop-publish in Word
- ✓ Wrapping text around graphics and other objects
- ✓ Putting text boxes in documents
- ✓ Decorating pages with drop caps and watermarks
- ✓ Running text in newspaper-style columns
- ✓ Printing landscape documents on various sizes of paper
- ✓ Showing video in a document

**O**nce upon a time, word processors were nothing more than glorified typewriters. They were good for typing and basic formatting, and not much else. But over the years, Microsoft Word has become a desktop publishing program in its own right. This chapter explains a few desktop publishing features that can make your documents stand out in the crowd — themes, columns, text boxes, page borders, watermarks, video, and drop caps, to name a few.

## **Experimenting with Themes**

A *theme* is a colorful, ready-made design for headings and text. Each theme imposes a slightly different look on a document. If you want to experiment with themes, theme colors, and theme fonts, more power to you, but be prepared to click the Undo button and backtrack as you rummage around for the right look for your document. Figure 6-1 shows some theme experiments.



**Figure 6-1:**  
On the  
Design tab,  
experiment  
with  
themes,  
theme  
colors, and  
theme fonts.

Starting on the Design tab, follow these instructions to experiment with themes:



- ◆ **Choosing a new theme:** Click the Themes button and choose a theme on the drop-down list.
- ◆ **Choosing a new set of colors for your theme:** Click the Theme Colors button, slide the pointer over the different color sets on the drop-down list, and see what effect they have on your document.
- ◆ **Changing the fonts:** Click the Theme Fonts button and choose a combination of fonts on the drop-down list for the headings and text in your document.

## Sprucing Up Your Pages

You can play interior decorator with the pages of a document by putting a border around pages, splashing color on pages, and taking advantage of the predesigned cover pages that Word provides for you. Keep reading if making the pages of your document a little prettier interests you.

### Decorating a page with a border

Word offers a means of decorating title pages, certificates, menus, and similar documents with a page border. Besides lines, you can decorate the sides of a page with stars, pieces of cake, and other artwork. If you want to place a border around a page in the middle of a document, you must create a section break where the page is.

Before you create your border, place the cursor on the page where the border is to appear. Place the cursor on the first page of a document if you want to put a border around only the first page. If your document is divided into sections and you want to put borders around certain pages in a section, place the cursor in the section — either in the first page if you want the borders to go around it, or in a subsequent page.

With the cursor in the right place, follow these steps to decorate your page or pages with a border:

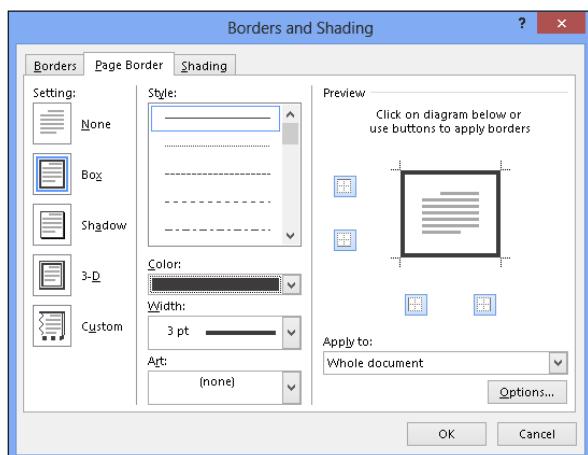


- 1. Go to the Design tab and click the Page Borders button.**

You see the Borders and Shading dialog box, as shown in Figure 6-2.

- 2. Under Setting, choose which kind of border you want.**

Use the None setting to remove borders.



**Figure 6-2:**  
Putting  
borders on  
pages.

3. On the **Apply To** drop-down menu, tell Word which page or pages in the document get borders.
4. Select options to construct the border you want and then click **OK**.

The Page Border tab offers a bunch of tools for fashioning a border:

- ◆ **Line for borders:** Under Style, scroll down the list and choose a line for the borders. You will find interesting choices at the bottom of the menu. Be sure to look in the Preview window to see what your choices in this dialog box add up to.
- ◆ **Color for borders:** Open the Color drop-down list and choose a color for the border lines if you want a color border.
- ◆ **Width of borders:** If you chose artwork for the borders, use the Width drop-down list to tell Word how wide the lines or artwork should be.
- ◆ **Artwork for borders:** Open the Art drop-down list and choose a symbol, illustration, star, piece of cake, or other artwork, if that is what you want for the borders. You will find some amusing choices on this long list, including ice cream cones, bats, and umbrellas.
- ◆ **Borders on different sides of the page:** Use the four buttons in the Preview window to tell Word on which sides of the page to draw borders. Click these buttons to remove or add borders, as you wish.
- ◆ **Distance from edge of page:** Click the Options button and fill in the Border and Shading Options dialog box if you want to get specific about how close the borders can come to the edge of the page or pages.

### ***Putting a background color on pages***

Especially if you intend to save your Word document as a web page, you will be glad to know that putting a background color on pages is easy. You can't, however, pick and choose which pages get a background color. Putting background colors on the pages of a document is an all-or-nothing proposition.



To grace a page with a background color or gradient color mixture, go to the Design tab, click the Page Color button, and choose a color on the drop-down list. Choose Fill Effects to open the Fill Effects dialog box and apply gradient color mixtures or patterns to the pages.

### ***Getting Word's help with cover letters***

Writing and designing a cover page for a letter or report is a chore. Word can't dictate a cover page for you, but it can provide a handsome preformatted cover page that looks nice at the front of a report or article. Figure 6-3 shows example of cover pages.



To place a cover page at the start of a document, go to the Insert tab and click the Cover Page button.



**Figure 6-3:**  
Examples  
of ready-  
made cover  
pages.

## Making Use of Charts, Diagrams, Shapes, Clip Art, and Photos

Figure 6-4 shows a newsletter that includes a chart, diagram, shape, clip-art image, and photo. You are invited to include these items in your Word documents, and you'll be glad to know that including them isn't very much trouble.



- ◆ **Charts:** A chart is an excellent way to present data for comparison purposes. The pie slices, bars, columns, or lines tell readers right away which business is more productive, for example, or who received the most votes. Book VIII, Chapter 1 explains how to create charts.



- ◆ **Diagrams:** A diagram allows readers to quickly grasp an idea, relationship, or concept. Instead of explaining an abstract idea, you can portray it in a diagram. Book VIII, Chapter 2 explains diagrams.



- ◆ **Shapes and lines:** Shapes and lines can also illustrate ideas and concepts. You can also use them for decorative purposes in Word documents. Book VIII, Chapter 4 explains how to draw lines, arrows, and shapes.



- ◆ **Clip-art and photos:** Clip-art and photos make a document livelier. They add a little color to documents. Book VIII, Chapter 3 explains how to place clip-art images and photos in documents.

**Figure 6-4:**  
This newsletter includes a photo, chart, diagram, shape, and clip-art image.



## Working with the Drawing Canvas

As Book VIII, Chapter 4 explains, shapes and lines are a great way to illustrate ideas. You can in effect doodle on the page and give readers another insight into what you want to explain. In Word, however, drawing lines and shapes is problematic unless you draw them on the drawing canvas.

The *drawing canvas* works like a corral to hold lines and shapes. After you create a drawing canvas, you can draw inside it as though you were drawing on a little page, as shown in Figure 6-5. You can treat the drawing canvas as an object in its own right. You can move it, along with the things inside it, to new locations. You can also, by way of the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, give the drawing canvas an outline shape and fill color. The drawing canvas makes working with objects on a page, especially lines and shapes, that much easier.

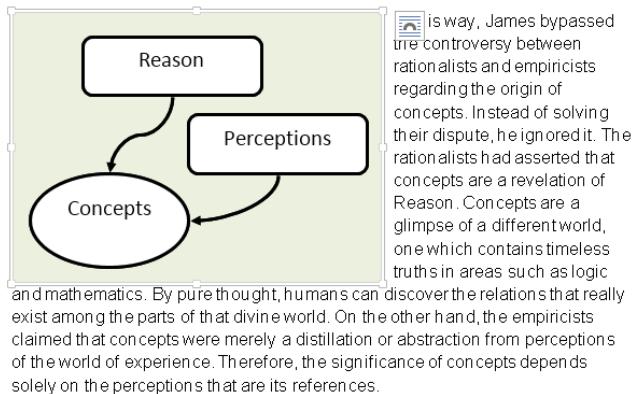
Follow these steps to create a drawing canvas for holding lines and shapes:

1. Place the cursor roughly where you want the drawing canvas to be.
2. Go to the Insert tab.



### 3. Click the Shapes button and choose New Drawing Canvas.

You can find the New Drawing Canvas command at the bottom of the Shapes drop-down list. A drawing canvas appears on your screen.



**Figure 6-5:**  
The drawing canvas — a corral for shapes and lines.



The drawing canvas is an object in its own right. You can wrap text around it, give it an outline, and give it a color fill. You can drag it to a new location. To change its size, drag a handle on the side or corner.

## Positioning and Wrapping Objects Relative to the Page and Text

“Object” is just Office’s generic term for a shape, line, text box, clip-art image, photo, diagram, WordArt image, or chart that you insert in a document. Book VIII, Chapter 4 explains how to manipulate an object — how to change its size, shape, and other qualities. When you place an object in a Word document, you have to consider more than its size and shape. You also have to consider where to position it on the page and how to wrap text around it. In Word lingo, *wrap* refers to what text does when it butts heads with a shape, text box, photo, diagram, or other object. You must be in Print Layout view to wrap and position objects on a page.



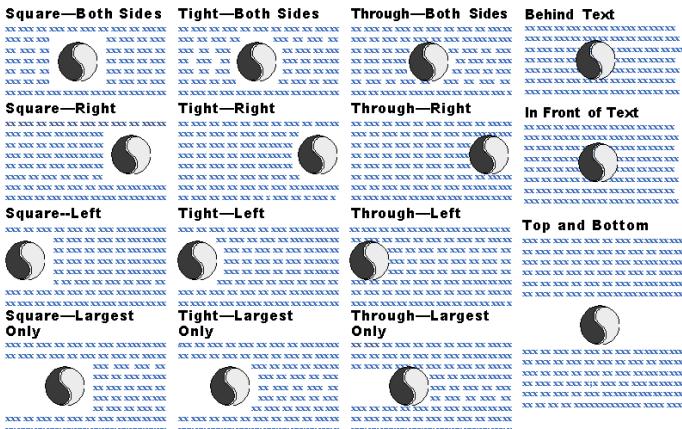
When you insert an object, it lands *inline with text*. That means it lands against the left margin and text doesn’t wrap around its side. Before you can change the position of an object, you must select it and choose a text-wrapping option apart from *Inline with Text*.

## Wrapping text around an object

Figure 6-6 illustrates the 15 different ways you can wrap text around an object. Select the object you want to wrap text around and use one of these techniques to wrap text around the object:



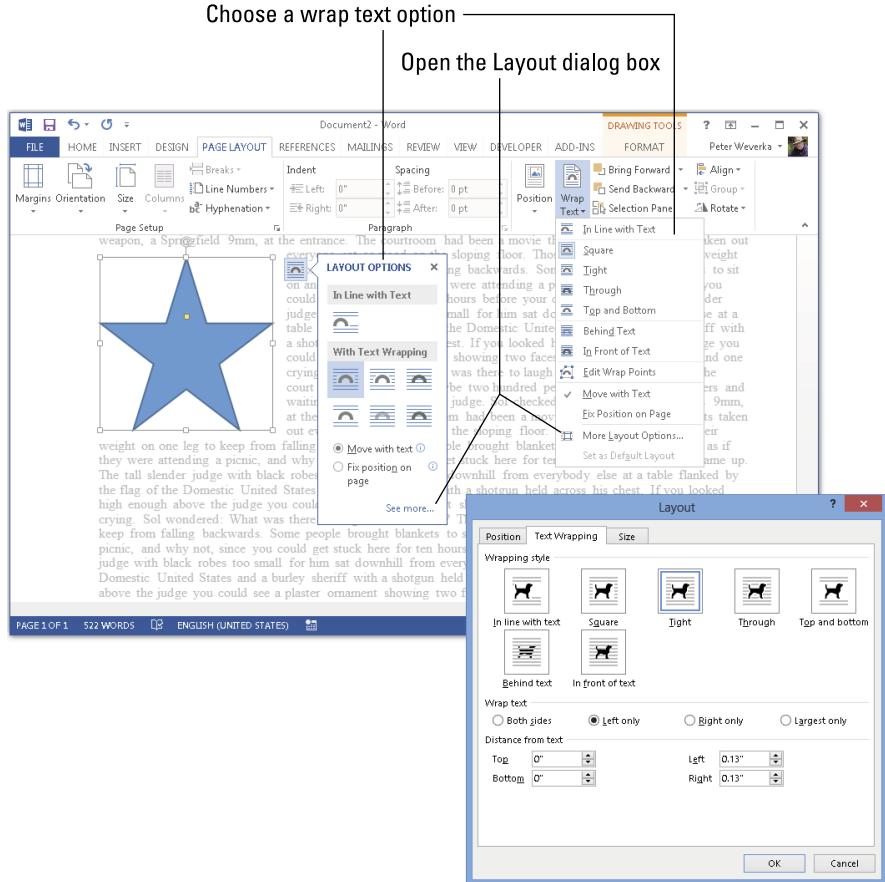
- ◆ Click the Layout Options button (it's located to the right of the object) and choose an option on the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 6-7.
- ◆ On the Page Layout or Format tab, click the Wrap Text button and choose an option on the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 6-7. (You may have to click the Arrange button first, depending on the size of your screen.)
  - Open the Layout dialog box, go to the Text Wrapping tab, and choose a wrapping style and side around which to wrap text. Figure 6-6 shows what the different combinations of Wrapping Style and Wrap Text options do. To open the Layout dialog box:
    - Click the Position button and click the See More link on the drop-down list.
    - Click the Wrap Text button and choose More Layout Options on the drop-down list.



**Figure 6-6:**  
All the ways  
to wrap text  
in a Word  
document.



Wrapped text looks best when it is justified and hyphenated. That way, text can get closer to the object that is being wrapped.



**Figure 6-7:**  
Choosing  
how to wrap  
text.

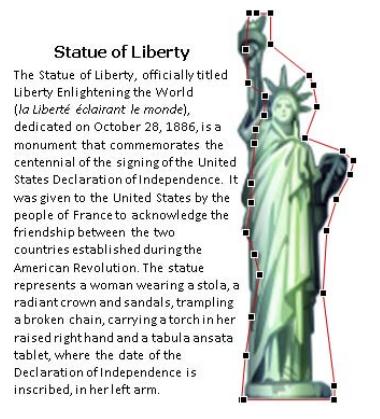
## Positioning an object on a page

To position an object in a Word page, you can drag it to a new location. As Book VIII, Chapter 4 explains in torturous detail, dragging means to select the object, move the pointer over its perimeter, click when you see the four-headed arrow, and slide the object to a new location.

To make positioning objects on a page a little easier, Word also offers Position commands for moving objects to specific places on the page. For example, you can place an object squarely in a corner or middle of the page.

## Wrapping text with precision

You can decide for yourself how close or far text is from an object when you wrap text. Select the object, and on the Format tab, click the Wrap Text button and choose Edit Wrap Points on the drop-down list. Small black squares called *wrap points* appear around the object. Click and drag the wrap points to push text away from or bring text closer to the object in question.



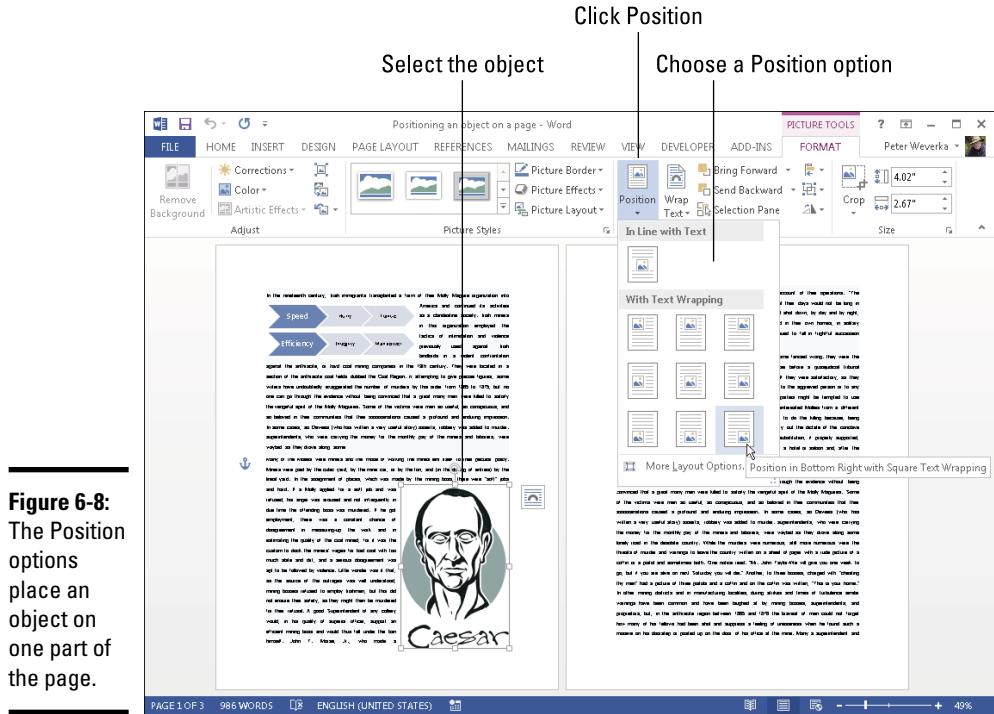
Select your object, go to the Format tab, and use one of these techniques to move your object precisely into place:



- ◆ Click the Position button and select a With Text Wrapping option on the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 6-8. (You may have to click the Arrange button first, depending on the size of your screen.) These options position an object squarely in a corner, a side, or the middle of the page.
- ◆ Click the Position button and choose More Layout Options on the drop-down list, or click the Size group button and select the Position tab in the Layout dialog box. Then choose position options. Go to the Layout dialog box when you want to place objects in the very same position on different pages.



When you insert an object, Word attaches it to the paragraph where the cursor is located when you make the insertion. For that reason, if you move that paragraph to another page or the paragraph gets moved as you edit text, the object moves right along with the paragraph. You can locate the paragraph to which an object is connected by clicking the object. The anchor symbol appears beside the paragraph to which the object is connected.



**Figure 6-8:**  
The Position  
options  
place an  
object on  
one part of  
the page.

## Working with Text Boxes

Put text in a text box when you want a notice or announcement to stand out on the page. Like other objects, text boxes can be shaded, filled with color, and given borders, as the examples in Figure 6-9 demonstrate. You can also lay them over graphics to make for interesting effects. I removed the borders and the fill color from the text box on the right side of Figure 6-9, but rest assured, the text in this figure lies squarely in a text box. (Book VIII, Chapter 4 explains how to give borders, shading, and color to objects such as text boxes.)

You can move a text box around at will on the page until it lands in the right place. You can even use text boxes as columns and make text jump from one text box to the next in a document — a nice feature, for example, when you want a newsletter article on page 1 to be continued on page 2. Instead of cutting and pasting text from page 1 to page 2, Word moves the text for you as the column on page 1 fills up.

**Figure 6-9:**  
Examples of  
text boxes.



## Inserting a text box



To create a text box, go to the Insert tab, click the Text Box button, and use one of these techniques:

- ◆ **Choose a ready-made text box:** Scroll in the drop-down list and choose a preformatted text box.
- ◆ **Draw a conventional text box:** Choose Draw Text Box on the drop-down list, and then click and drag to draw the text box. Lines show you how big it will be when you release the mouse button.

After you insert the text box, you can type text in it and call on all the formatting commands on the (Drawing) Format tab. These commands are explained in Book VIII, Chapter 4. It also describes how to turn a shape such as a circle or triangle into a text box (create the shape, right-click it and choose Add Text, and start typing).



Here's a neat trick: You can turn the text in a text box on its side so that it reads from top to bottom or bottom to top, not from left to right. Create a text box, enter the text, go to the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, click the Text Direction button, and choose a Rotate option on the drop-down list.

## Making text flow from text box to text box

As I mention earlier, you can link text boxes so that the text in the first box is pushed into the next one when it fills up. To link text boxes, start by creating all the text boxes that you need. You cannot link one text box to another if the second text box already has text in it. Starting on the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, follow these directions to link text boxes:



- ◆ **Creating a forward link:** Click a text box and then click the Create Link button to create a forward link. The pointer changes into a very odd-looking pointer that is supposed to look like a pitcher. Move the odd-looking pointer to the next text box in the chain and click there to create a link.
- ◆ **Breaking a link:** To break a link, click the text box that is to be the last in the chain, and then click the Break Link button.



## Dropping In a Drop Cap

A *drop cap* is a large capital letter that “drops” into the text, as shown in Figure 6-10. Drop caps appear at the start of chapters in many books, this book included, and you can find other uses for them, too. In Figure 6-10, one drop cap marks the A side of a list of songs on a homemade music CD.

**Figure 6-10:**  
Creating a  
drop cap.

**A**ll agreed at the end of the competition that Nervous Jimmy had won the day. He had eclipsed the competition. He had thrashed throughout. He had raged. No doubt about it, it had been a gnarly performance.

**W**oe overcame the weary army as it returned to camp. None had thought it would end the way it did, with the soldiers of the Fighting 44<sup>th</sup> fleeing in a rout. Yet flee they had, across the Larame River and beyond. And now they huddled under the cottonwood trees, exhausted, barely able to remember their own names.

**A** Stray Cat Blues (1972) \* Stop Breakin' Down (1972) \* Love in Vain (1969) \* Ventilator Blues (1972) \* I Got the Blues (1971) \* I'm a King Bee (1964) \* Prodigal Son (1968) \* You Got to Move (1971) \* Sweet Black Angel (1972)



To create a drop cap, start by clicking anywhere in the paragraph whose first letter you want to “drop.” If you want to “drop” more than one character at the start of the paragraph, select the characters. Then go to the Insert tab, click the Add a Drop Cap button, and choose Dropped or Drop Cap Options. Choosing Drop Cap Options opens the Drop Cap dialog box shown in Figure 6-10, where you can experiment with these options:

- ◆ **Position:** Choose which kind of drop-cap you want. In Margin places the drop-cap to the left of the paragraph, in the margin, not in the paragraph itself.
- ◆ **Font:** Choose a font from the Font drop-down list. Choose a different font from the text in the paragraph.
- ◆ **Lines to Drop:** Enter the number of text lines to drop the letter.
- ◆ **Distance from Text:** Keep the 0 setting unless you’re dropping an *I*, *l*, or other skinny letter or number.

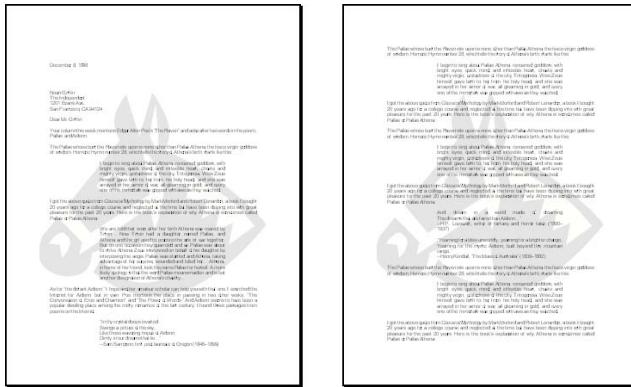
Click the Add a Drop Cap button and choose None to remove a drop cap.

## Watermarking for the Elegant Effect

A *watermark* is a pale image or set of words that appears behind text on each page in a document. True watermarks are made in the paper mold and can be seen only when the sheet of paper is held up to a light. You can’t make

true watermarks with Word, but you can make the closest thing to them that can be attained in the debased digital world in which we live. Figure 6-11 shows two pages of a letter in which the paper has been “watermarked.” Watermarks are one of the easiest formatting tricks to accomplish in Word.

**Figure 6-11:**  
Watermarks  
showing  
faintly  
on the page.



To create a watermark for every page of a document, go to the Design tab and click the Watermark button. From the drop-down list, create your watermark:

- ◆ **Prefabricated text watermark:** Scroll down the list and choose an option. You will find “Confidential,” “Urgent,” and other text watermarks.
- ◆ **Picture watermark:** Choose Custom Watermark, and in the Printed Watermark dialog box, click the Picture Watermark option button. Then click the Select Picture button. In the Insert Pictures dialog box, select a graphics file to use for the watermark and click the Insert button. Back in the Printed Watermark dialog box, choose or enter a size for the graphic on the Scale drop-down menu. I don’t recommend unchecking the Washout check box — do so and your image may be so dark it obscures the text.
- ◆ **Text watermark:** Choose Custom Watermark and, in the Printed Watermark dialog box, click the Text Watermark option button. Type a word or two in the Text box (or choose an entry from the drop-down menu). Choose a font, size, color, and layout for the words. If you uncheck the Semitransparent check box, you do so at your peril because the watermark words may be too dark on the page.

To tinker with a watermark, reopen the Printed Watermark dialog box. To remove a watermark, click the Watermark button and choose Remove Watermark on the drop-down list.

## ***Putting Newspaper-Style Columns in a Document***

Columns look great in newsletters and similar documents. And you can pack a lot of words in columns. I should warn you, however, that the Columns command is only good for creating columns that appear on the same page. Running text to the next page with the Columns command can be problematic. If you're serious about running text in columns, I suggest either constructing the columns from text boxes or using Publisher, another Office program. Book IX, Chapter 3 explains Publisher.



Sometimes it is easier to create columns by creating a table or by using text boxes, especially when the columns refer to one another. In a two-column résumé, for example, the left-hand column often lists job titles ("Facsimile Engineer") whose descriptions are found directly across the page in the right-hand column ("I Xeroxed stuff all day long"). Creating a two-column résumé with Word's Columns command would be futile because making the columns line up is nearly impossible. Each time you add something to the left-hand column, everything *snakes* — it gets bumped down in the left-hand column and the right-hand column as well.



### ***Doing the preliminary work***

Before you put text in newspaper-style columns, write it. Take care of the spelling, grammar, and everything else first because making text changes to words after they've been arranged in columns is difficult. Columns appear only in Print Layout view.

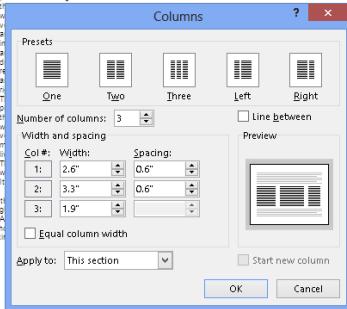


To "columunize" text, select it, go to the Page Layout tab, and click the Columns button. Then either choose how many columns you want on the drop-down list or choose More Columns to create columns of different widths.

You see the Columns dialog box shown in Figure 6-12 if you choose More Columns. Here are the options in the Columns dialog box:

- ◆ **Preset columns:** Select a Presets box to choose a preset number of columns. Notice that, in some of the boxes, the columns aren't of equal width.
- ◆ **Number of columns:** If a preset column doesn't do the trick, enter the number of columns you want in the Number of Columns box.
- ◆ **Line between columns:** A line between columns is mighty elegant and is difficult to draw on your own. Choose the Line Between check box to run lines between columns.

**Figure 6-12:**  
Running text  
in columns.



- ◆ **Columns width:** If you uncheck the Equal Column Width check box, you can make columns of unequal width. Change the width of each column by using the Width boxes.
  - ◆ **Space between columns:** Enter a measurement in the Spacing boxes to determine how much space appears between columns.
  - ◆ **Start New Column:** This check box is for putting empty space in a column, perhaps to insert a text box or picture. Place the cursor where you want the empty space to begin, choose This Point Forward on the Apply To drop-down list, and click the Start New Column check box.

Word creates a new section if you selected text before you columnized it, and you see your columns in Print Layout view. Chapter 2 of this mini-book explains sections.

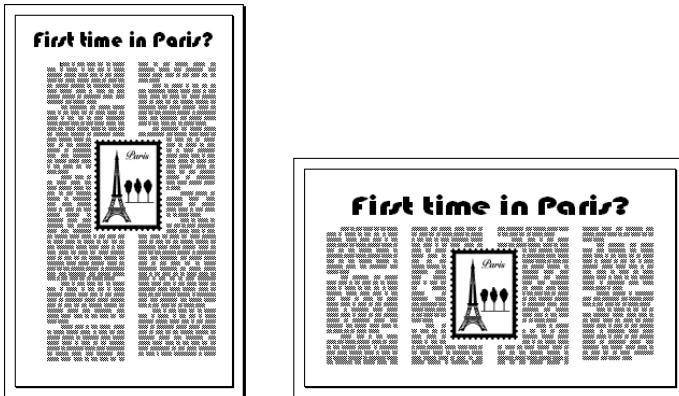


To "break" a column in the middle and move text to the next column, click where you want the column to break and press Ctrl+Shift+Enter or go to the Page Layout tab, click the Breaks button, and choose Column on the drop-down list.

# *Landscape Documents*

A *landscape* document is one in which the page is wider than it is long, like a painting of a landscape, as shown on the right side of Figure 6-13. Most documents, like the pages of this book, are printed in *portrait* style, with the short sides of the page on the top and bottom. However, creating a landscape document is sometimes a good idea because a landscape document stands out from the usual crowd of portrait documents and sometimes printing in landscape mode is necessary to fit text, tables, and graphics on a single page.

**Figure 6-13:**  
A portrait document (left) and landscape document (right).



You're ready to go if you want to turn all the pages in your document into landscape pages. To turn some of the pages into landscape pages, create a section for the pages that need to appear in Landscape mode and click in the section (Chapter 2 of this mini-book explains sections). Starting on the Page Layout tab, use these techniques to change the page orientation:



- ◆ **Landscape pages:** Click the Orientation button and choose Landscape on the drop-down list.
- ◆ **Portrait pages:** Click the Orientation button and choose Portrait on the drop-down list.

## Printing on Different Size Paper

You don't have to print exclusively on standard 8.5 x 11 paper; you can print on legal-size paper and other sizes of paper as well. A newsletter with an unusual shape really stands out in a crowd and gets people's attention. Go to the Page Layout tab and use one of these techniques to change the size of the paper on which you intend to print a document:

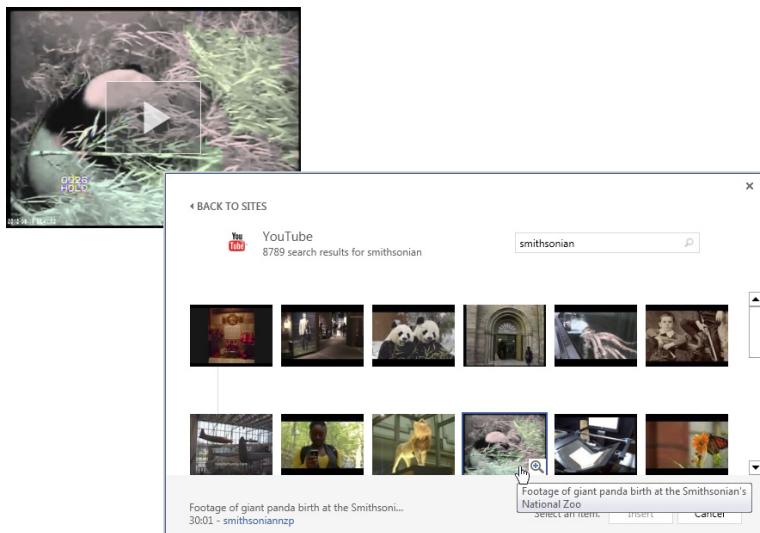


- ◆ Click the Size button and choose an option on the drop-down list.
- ◆ Click the Size button and choose More Paper Sizes. You see the Paper tab in the Page Setup dialog box. Choose a setting on the Paper Size drop-down list. If none of the settings suits you, enter your own settings in the Width and Height text boxes.

## *Showing Online Video in a Document*



When words and pictures don't do the job, consider making video a part of your document with the Online Video command. This command establishes a link between your document and a video on the Internet. You see the first frame of the video in the Word document. Clicking the Play button in this frame opens a video viewer so you can play the video, as shown at the top of Figure 6-14.



**Figure 6-14:**  
Making  
video part  
of a Word  
document.

To insert an online video in a document, go to the Insert tab and click the Online Video button. The Insert Video dialog box appears. Use it to search for an online video with the Bing search engine, search for an online video at YouTube, or enter the video's online address. As shown in Figure 6-14, the search results window tells you how long each video is and gives you the opportunity to preview a video by clicking the View Larger button.

# ***Chapter 7: Getting Word's Help with Office Chores***

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ✓ Commenting on others' work
- ✓ Tracking revisions to documents
- ✓ Printing envelopes and labels
- ✓ Mail merging for form letters and bulk mailing

**T**his chapter is dedicated to the proposition that everyone should get their work done sooner. It explains how Word can be a help in the office, especially when it comes to working on team projects. This chapter explains comments, using revision marks to record edits, and mail merging, Microsoft's term for generating form letters, labels, and envelopes for mass mailings.

Book X explains another way to collaborate on team projects — by collaborating online with the Office Web Apps.

## ***Highlighting Parts of a Document***

In my work, I often use the Highlight command to mark paragraphs and text that need reviewing later. And on rainy days, I use it to splash color on my documents and keep myself amused. Whatever your reasons for highlighting text in a document, go to the Home tab and use one of these techniques to do it:



- ♦ **Select text and then choose a highlighter:** Select the text you want to highlight, and then either click the Text Highlight Color button (if it's displaying your color choice) or open the drop-down list on the button and choose a color.
- ♦ **Choose a highlighter and then select text:** Either click the Text Highlight Color button (if it's already displaying your color choice) or open the drop-down list on the button and choose a color. The pointer changes into a crayon. Drag across the text you want to highlight. When you finish highlighting, click the Text Highlight Color button again or press Esc.

To remove highlights, select the highlighted text, open the drop-down list on the Text Highlight Color button, and choose No Color. Select the entire document (press Ctrl+A) and choose No Color to remove all highlights from a document.

Highlight marks are printed along with the text. To keep highlights from being printed, go to the File tab, choose Options, visit the Display category in the Word Options dialog box, and deselect the Show Highlighter Marks check box.

### ***Commenting on a Document***

People collaborating on a document can write comments and in so doing prove that two heads are better than one. Comments give you the opportunity to suggest improvements, plead with your collaborators, debate your editor, and praise others, all in the interest of turning out a better document.

To enter and read comments, go to the Review tab, as shown in Figure 7-1. These pages explain how to enter comments, examine comments, hide and display comments, and do all else that pertains to commenting on a document.

#### ***Entering a comment***

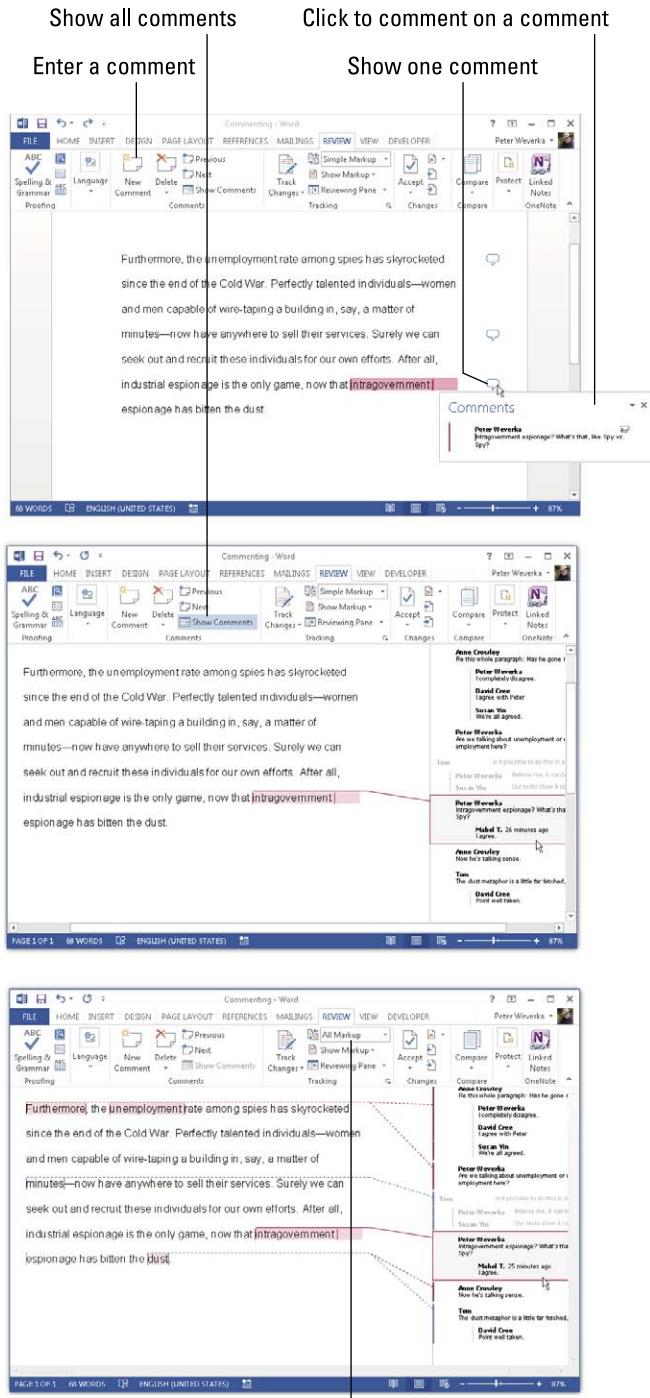
In my experience, Print Layout view is the best view for entering and reading comments. Use these techniques to write comments:



- ◆ **Entering a comment:** Select the word or sentence that you want to comment on. Then, on the Review tab, click the New Comment button and enter your comment in a balloon on the right side of the screen or the Revision pane on the left side.
- ◆ **Commenting on a comment:** Display the comment that needs commentary in a balloon and click the button in the upper-right corner of the balloon (see Figure 7-1). Space (and your name) appears in the balloon so that you can write a comment about the comment. Collaborators can discuss topics in this way.



Whether you enter and read comments in the Revisions pane on the left side of the screen or balloons on the right side depends on your Show Markup choice. Click the Show Markup button on the Review tab, choose Balloons, and choose an option on the submenu to display comments in different ways. See “Viewing and displaying comments,” the next topic in this chapter, for details.



**Figure 7-1:**  
Comments as icons in Simple Markup view (top); comments shown in Simple Markup view (middle); comments in All Markup view (bottom).

Switch between Simple Markup and All Markup view



Each comment lists the name of the person who wrote it. If a comment you wrote doesn't list your name, go to the File tab, click Options, and enter your user name in the General tab of the Word Options dialog box. Select the Always Use These Values Regardless of Sign In to Office check box if you are enrolled in Office 365 and you sign in to Office.com under a different name than the one you entered.

## Viewing and displaying comments

The makers of Word want you to be able to view comments when necessary but shunt them aside when comments get in the way. To tell Word how to display comments, go to the Review tab and choose an option on the Display for Review drop-down list (see Figure 7-1):



- ◆ Choose Simple Markup to keep comments from crowding the screen. Then click the Show Comments button if necessary:

- *Show Comments button clicked.* Comments appear in balloons on the right side of the screen. Move the pointer over a comment to see what it refers to on the page (see Figure 7-1).
  - *Show Comments button not clicked.* Comments are marked by icons on the right side of the page. Click an icon to read a comment in a balloon (see Figure 7-1).

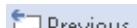


- ◆ Choose All Markup to see where all the comments are. Then click the Show Markup button and choose an option on the drop-down list to display comments:
- ◆ Choose Balloons⇒Show Revisions in Balloons (or Show Only Comments and Formatting in Balloons) to show comments in balloons on the right side of the screen.
- ◆ Choose Balloons⇒Show All Revisions Inline to show commenters' initials in the text. You can move the pointer over a commenter's initials to read his or her comment in a pop-up box.
- ◆ Choose No Markup to cease displaying comment icons or comments.

## Caring for and feeding comments

Starting on the Review tab, here is a handful of tasks that deserve comment (if you'll pardon my little pun):

- ◆ **Editing a comment:** Display the comment and edit its text. If you have trouble finding the comment associated with highlighted text, right-click the highlighted text and choose Edit Comment.
- ◆ **Going from comment to comment:** Click the Previous or Next button.





- ◆ **Displaying comments by a specific reviewer:** Click the Show Markup button, choose Specific People, and deselect All Reviewers on the submenu. Then click the button again, choose Specific People, and choose the name of a reviewer. To see all comments again, click the Show Markup button and choose Specific People>All Reviewers.



- ◆ **Deleting comments:** Delete one, all, or some comments:
  - **Deleting a comment:** Select a comment and click the Delete button. You can also right-click and choose Delete Comment.
  - **Deleting all the comments in the document:** Open the drop-down list on the Delete button and choose Delete All Comments in Document.
  - **Deleting comments made by one or two people:** First, isolate comments made by people whose comments you want to delete (see “Displaying comments by a particular reviewer” earlier in this list). Then open the drop-down list on the Delete button and choose Delete All Comments Shown.
- ◆ **Marking a Comment as Done:** Rather than delete a comment, you can mark it as done to keep a record of it. Comments marked this way are shown in gray text. To mark a comment as done, right-click it and choose Mark Comment Done on the shortcut menu.

Book II  
Chapter 7

Getting Word's Help  
with Office Chores

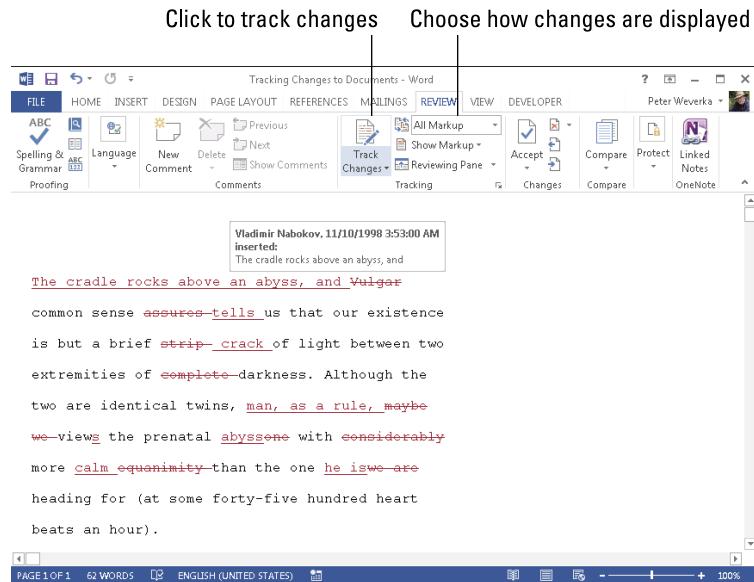
## *Tracking Changes to Documents*

When many hands go into revising a document, figuring out who made changes to what is impossible. What’s more, it’s impossible to tell what the first draft looked like. Sometimes it’s hard to tell whether the changes were for good or ill. To help you keep track of changes to documents, Word offers the Track Changes command. When this command is in effect:

- ◆ Changes to a document are recorded in a different color, with one color for each reviewer.
- ◆ New text is underlined; deleted text is crossed out.

By moving the pointer over a change, you can read the name of the person who made it as well as the words that were inserted or deleted. You can see changes as well in the Reviewing pane. As you review changes, you can accept or reject each change. You can also see the original document, a copy with revisions, or the final copy simply by making a choice from the Display for Review drop-down list on the Review tab.

To give you an idea of what tracking marks look like, Figure 7-2 shows the first two sentences of Vladimir Nabokov's autobiography *Speak, Memory* with marks showing where the author made additions and deletions to the original draft.



**Figure 7-2:**  
A document with change marks and changes showing.

## Telling Word to start marking changes

To start tracking where editorial changes are made to a document, turn Track Changes on. You can do that with one of these techniques:



- ◆ On the Review tab, click the Track Changes button (or open its drop-down list and choose Track Changes)
- ◆ Press Ctrl+Shift+E.
- ◆ On the status bar, click the words *Track Changes* so that the status bar reads “Track Changes: On.” If you don’t see the words *Track Changes* on your status bar and you want to see them there, right-click the status bar and select Track Changes on the pop-up menu.

To stop tracking changes to a document, click the Track Changes button again, press Ctrl+Shift+E again, or click the words *Track Changes* on the status bar so that the words read “Track Changes: Off.”

## Reading and reviewing a document with change marks

Reading and reviewing a document with change marks isn't easy. The marks can get in the way. Fortunately, Word offers the Display for Review menu on the Review tab for dealing with documents that have been scarred by change marks. Choose options on the Display for Review drop-down list to get a better idea of how your changes are taking shape:

- ◆ **Get an idea where changes were made:** Choose Simple Markup. A vertical line appears on the left side of the page to show where changes were made. (This line doesn't appear in Draft and Outline view.)
- ◆ **See where additions and deletions were made:** Choose All Markup (refer to Figure 7-2). Additions are underlined and deleted text is crossed through.
- ◆ **See what the document would look like if you accepted all changes:** Choose No Markup. All change marks are stripped away and you see what your document would look like if you accepted all changes made to it.
- ◆ **See what the document would look like if you rejected all changes:** Choose Original. You get the original, pristine document back.

Book II  
Chapter 7

Getting Word's Help  
With Office Chores

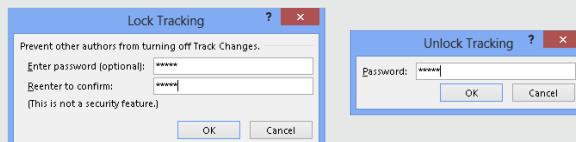
## Requiring your collaborators to track changes

As well as insist that your collaborators track the changes they make to a document, you can compel them to do so. You can lock your document so that all editorial changes made to it are tracked with revision marks.

To lock a document against anyone's making changes without the changes being tracked, go to the Review tab, open the drop-down list on the Track Changes button, and choose Lock Tracking. Then enter and reenter a password in the Lock Tracking dialog box.

All changes are tracked automatically in a document that has been locked against anyone's turning off the track changes mechanism.

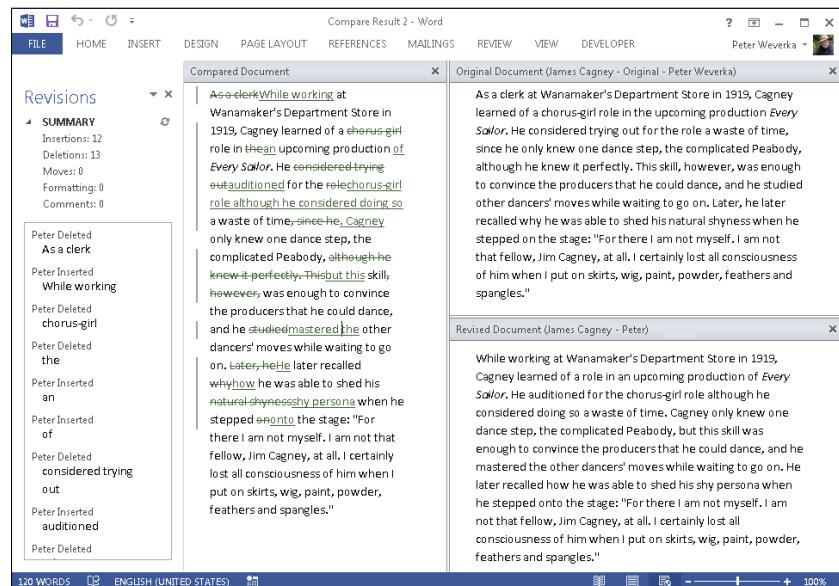
To unlock a document so that you and your collaborators can once again turn the track changes feature on or off, open the drop-down list on the Track Changes button and deselect Lock Tracking. Then enter the password in the Unlock Tracking dialog box.



## Marking changes when you forgot to turn on change marks

Suppose that you write the first draft of a document and someone revises it but that someone doesn't track changes. How can you tell where changes were made? For that matter, suppose that you get hold of a document, you change it around without tracking changes, and now you want to see what your editorial changes did to the original copy. I have good news: You can compare documents to see the editorial changes that were made to them. Word offers a command for comparing the original document to a revised edition and another for comparing two different revised editions of the same document.

After you make the comparison, Word creates a third document similar to the one shown in Figure 7-3. In the Source Document pane on the right side of the window, you can see the documents you're comparing. The Compared Document pane, meanwhile, shows who made changes and what those changes are.



**Figure 7-3:**  
Comparing documents to see where editorial changes were made.

Follow these steps to compare an original document to its revised copy or two revised copies:

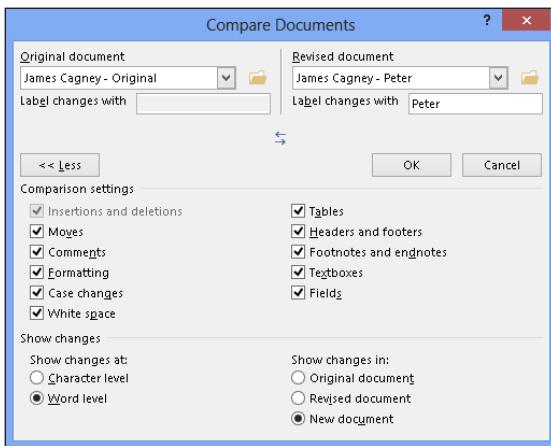
### 1. On the Review tab, click the Compare button.

You see a drop-down list (depending on the size of your screen, you may have to choose Compare more than once to get to the drop-down list).



- On the drop-down list, choose Compare to compare the original document to its revised edition; choose Combine to compare two editions of the same document that were revised separately.

You see the Compare Documents dialog box or the Combine Documents dialog box, as shown in Figure 7-4. These dialog boxes work the same way.



**Figure 7-4:**  
Choosing  
which  
documents  
to compare.

- On the Original Document drop-down list, choose the original or a revised edition of the document; if its name isn't there, click the Browse button and select it in the Open dialog box.
- On the Revised Document drop-down list, choose a revised copy, or else click the Browse button and select it in the Open dialog box.
- Click the More button.

You see more options for comparing or combining documents.

- If you so desire, deselect Comparison Settings check boxes to tell Word what you want to compare.
- Click OK.

Word creates a new document that shows where changes were made to the original copy or where the revised copies differ (refer to Figure 7-3). You can save this document if you want to.



To help with document comparisons, you can tell Word what to display in the Source Documents pane on the right side of the screen. On the Review tab, click the Compare button, choose Show Source Documents, and choose an option on the submenu. You can hide the source documents, show the original document, show the revised edition, or show both editions.



### ***Accepting and rejecting changes to a document***

Word gives you the chance to accept or reject changes one at a time, but in my considerable experience with changes (I am a sometime editor), I find that the best way to handle changes is to go through the document, reject the changes you don't care for, and when you have finished reviewing, accept all the remaining changes. That way, reviewing changes is only half as tedious.



Previous



Next

Whatever your preference for accepting or rejecting changes, start by selecting a change. To do so, either click it or click the Previous or Next button on the Review tab to locate it in your document. With the change selected, do one of the following:



- ◆ **Accept a change:** Click the Accept button or open the drop-down list on the Accept button and choose Accept This Change or Accept and Move to Next. You can also right-click and choose Accept.



- ◆ **Reject a change:** Click the Reject button or open the drop-down list on the Reject button and choose Reject This Change or Reject and Move to Next. You can also right-click and choose Reject.

- ◆ **Accept all changes:** Open the drop-down list on the Accept button and choose Accept All Changes.

- ◆ **Reject all changes:** Open the drop-down list on the Reject button and choose Reject All Changes.



By way of the Accept and Reject buttons, you can also accept or reject all changes made by a single reviewer. First, isolate the reviewer's changes by clicking the Show Markup button, choosing Specific People, and selecting a reviewer's name. Then open the drop-down list on the Accept or Reject button, and choose Accept All Changes Shown or Reject All Changes Shown.

### ***Printing an Address on an Envelope***

Printing addresses gives correspondence a formal, official look. It makes you look like a big shot. (Later in this chapter, "Churning Out Letters, Envelopes, and Labels for Mass Mailings" explains how to print more than one envelope at a time). Here's how to print an address and a return address on an envelope:

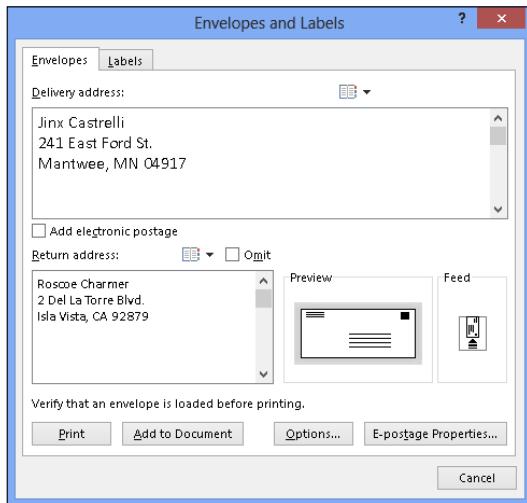
1. **To save a bit of time, open the document that holds the letter you want to send; then select the name and address of the person you want to send the letter to.**

By doing so, you save yourself from having to type the address. However, you don't have to open a document to start with.

2. **On the Mailings tab, click the Envelopes button (you may have to click the Create button first, depending on the size of your screen).**

The Envelopes tab of the Envelopes and Labels dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 7-5.





**Figure 7-5:**  
Printing  
on an  
envelope.

3. Enter a name and address in the Delivery Address box (the address is already there if you selected it in Step 1).
4. Enter your return address in the Return Address box, if you want.
5. Click the Omit check box if you don't want your return address to appear on the envelope.
6. Click the Options button, and in the Envelope Options dialog box, tell Word what size your envelopes are and how your printer handles envelopes.

Tell Word about your envelopes on the Envelope Options and Printing Options tabs, and click OK:

- *Envelope Options tab:* Choose an envelope size, a font for printing the delivery and return address, and a position for the addresses. The sample envelope in the Preview shows you what your position settings do when the envelope is printed.
- *Printing Options tab:* Choose a technique for feeding envelopes to your printer. Consult the manual that came with your printer, select one of the Feed Method boxes, click the Face Up or Face Down option button, and open the Feed From drop-down list to tell Word which printer tray the envelope is in or how you intend to stick the envelope in your printer.

7. Click the Print button.

All that trouble just to print an address on an envelope!

## Printing a Single Address Label (or a Page of the Same Label)

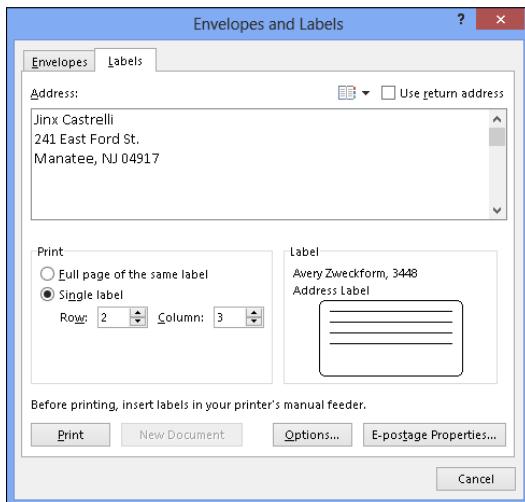
If you need to print a single label or a sheet of labels that are all the same, you can do it. Before you start printing, however, take note of the label's brand name and product number. You are asked about brand names and product numbers when you print labels. (Later in this chapter, "Churning Out Letters, Envelopes, and Labels for Mass Mailings" explains how to print multiple labels as part of a mass mailing.)

Follow these steps to print a single label or a sheet full of identical labels:



1. On the Mailings tab, click the Labels button (you may have to click the Create button first, depending on the size of your screen).

You see the Labels tab of the Envelopes and Labels dialog box, as shown in Figure 7-6.



**Figure 7-6:**  
Printing  
labels.

2. Enter the label — the name and address — in the Address box.
3. Either click the Options button or click the label icon in the Label box to open the Label Options dialog box.
4. In the Printer Information area, select either Continuous-Feed Printers or Page Printers to declare which kind of printer you have; on the Tray drop-down list, choose the option that describes how you will feed labels to your printer.

**5. Open the Label Vendors drop-down list and choose the brand or type of labels that you have.**

If your brand is not on the list, click the Details button, and describe your labels in the extremely confusing Information dialog box. A better way, however, is to measure your labels and see whether you can find a label of the same size by experimenting with Product Number and Label Information combinations.

**6. In the Product Number menu, select the product number listed on the box that your labels came in.**

Look in the Label Information box on the right to make sure that the Height, Width, and Page Size measurements match those of the labels you have.

**7. Click OK to return to the Envelopes and Labels dialog box.**

**8. Choose a Print option.**

Tell Word to print a single label or a sheet full of labels:

- *Full Page of the Same Label:* Select this option button if you want to print a pageful of the same label. Likely, you'd choose this option to print a pageful of your own return addresses. Click the New Document button after you make this choice. Word creates a new document with a pageful of labels. Save and print this document on a sheet of labels.
- *Single Label:* Select this option button to print one label. Then enter the row and column where the label is located and click the Print button.

## *Churning Out Letters, Envelopes, and Labels for Mass Mailings*

Thanks to the miracle of computing, you can churn out form letters, labels, and envelopes for a mass mailing in the privacy of your home or office, just as the big companies do. Churning out form letters, envelopes, and labels is easy, as long as you take the time to prepare the source file. The *source file* is the file that the names and addresses come from. A Word table, an Excel worksheet, a Microsoft Access database table or query, or an Outlook Contacts list or Address Book can serve as the source file. (Book VI explains Outlook; Book III explains Excel; Book VII explains Access.)

To generate form letters, envelopes, or labels, you merge the form letter, envelope, or label document with a source file. Word calls this process *merging*. During the merge, names and addresses from the source file are plugged

into the appropriate places in the form letter, envelope, or label document. When the merge is complete, you can either save the form letters, envelopes, or labels in a new file or start printing right away.

The following pages explain how to prepare the source file and merge addresses from the source file with a document to create form letters, labels, or envelopes. Then you discover how to print the form letters, labels, or envelopes after you have generated them.



Word offers a mail-merge wizard (*wizard* is Microsoft's name for a step-by-step procedure you can follow to accomplish a task). If you want to try your hand at using the wizard to complete a mail merge, go to the Mailings tab, click the Start Mail Merge button, and choose Step by Step Mail Merge Wizard on the drop-down list. Good luck to you!

### ***Preparing the source file***

If you intend to get addresses for your form letters, labels, or envelopes from an Outlook Contact List or Address Book on your computer, you're ready to go. However, if you haven't entered the addresses yet or you are keeping them in a Word table, Excel worksheet, Access database table, or Access query, make sure that the data is in good working order:

- ◆ **Word table:** Save the table in its own file and enter a descriptive heading at the top of each column. In the merge, when you tell Word where to plug in address and other data, you will do so by choosing a heading name from the top of a column. In Figure 7-7, for example, the column headings are Last Name, First Name, Street, and so on. (Chapter 4 of this mini-book explains how to construct a Word table.)

**Figure 7-7:**  
A Word  
source table  
for a mail  
merge.

Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	ZIP	Birthday
Creed	Hank	443 Oak St.	Atherton	CA	93874	July 31
Daws	Leon	13 Spruce St.	Colma	CA	94044	April 1
Maves	Carlos	11 Guy St.	Reek	NV	89201	February 28
Ng	Winston	1444 Unger Ave.	Colma	CA	94404	November 12
Smith	Jane	121 First St.	Colma	CA	94044	January 10
Weiss	Shirley	441 Second St.	Poltroon	ID	49301	May 4

- ◆ **Excel worksheet:** Arrange the worksheet in table format with a descriptive heading atop each column and no blank cells in any columns. Word will plug in addresses and other data by choosing heading names.
- ◆ **Access database table or query:** Make sure that you know the field names in the database table or query where you keep the addresses. During the merge, you will be asked for field names. By the way, if you're comfortable in Access, query a database table for the records you will

need. As you find out shortly, Word offers a technique for choosing only the records you want for your form letters, labels, or envelopes. However, by querying first in Access, you can start off with the records you need and spare yourself from having to choose records in Word.

A Word table, Excel worksheet, or Access table or query can include more than address information. Don't worry about deleting information that isn't required for your form letters, labels, and envelopes. As you find out soon, you get to decide which information to take from the Word table, Excel worksheet, or Access table or query.

## **Merging the document with the source file**

After you prepare the source file, the next step in generating form letters, labels, or envelopes for a mass mailing is to merge the document with the source file. Follow these general steps to do so:

### **1. Create or open a document.**

- *Form letters:* Either create a new document and write your form letter, being careful to leave out the parts of the letter that differ from recipient to recipient, or open a letter you have already written and delete the addressee's name, the address, and other parts of the letter that are particular to each recipient.
- *Envelopes:* Create a new document.
- *Labels:* Create a new document.

### **2. On the Mailings tab, click the Start Mail Merge button.**



### **3. Choose Letters, Envelopes, or Labels on the drop-down list.**

### **4. Prepare the groundwork for creating form letters, envelopes, or labels for a mass mailing.**

What you do next depends on what kind of mass mailing you want to attempt:

- *Form letters:* You're ready to go. The text of your form letter already appears on-screen if you followed the directions for creating and writing it in Step 1.
- *Envelopes:* You see the Envelope Options dialog box, where, on the Envelope Options and Printing Options tabs, you tell Word what size envelope you will print on. See "Printing an Address on an Envelope," earlier in this chapter, for instructions about filling out these tabs (see to Step 6). A sample envelope appears on-screen.
- *Labels:* You see the Label Options dialog box, where you tell Word what size labels to print on. See "Printing a Single Address Label (Or a Page of the Same Label)" earlier in this chapter, if you need advice for filling out this dialog box (refer to Steps 4 through 7).



- 5. Click the Select Recipients button and choose an option on the drop-down list to direct Word to your source file or the source of your address and data information.**

Earlier in this chapter, “Preparing the source file” explains what a source file is. Your options are as follows:

- *Addresses from a Word table, Excel worksheet, Access database table, or Access query:* Choose Use an Existing List. You see the Select Data Source dialog box. Locate the Word file, the Excel worksheet, or the Access database, select it, and click Open.

If you select an Excel worksheet or Access database, you see the Select Table dialog box. Select the worksheet, table, or query you want and click the OK button.

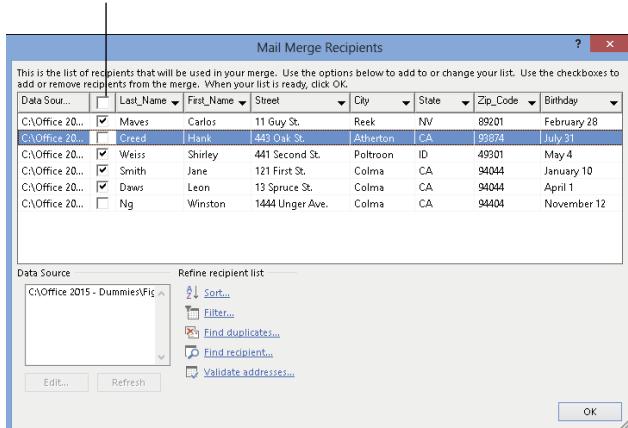
- **Addresses from Microsoft Outlook:** Choose Choose from Outlook Contacts (Outlook must be your default e-mail program to get addresses from Outlook). Then, in the Select Contacts dialog box, choose Contacts and click OK. The Mail Merge Recipients dialog box appears (skip to Step 7).



- 6. Click the Edit Recipient List button.**

The Mail Merge Recipients dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 7-8.

Choose the names of recipients



**Figure 7-8:**  
Choosing  
who gets  
mail.

**7. In the Mail Merge Recipients dialog box, select the names of people to whom you will send mail; then click OK.**

To select recipients' names, check or uncheck the boxes on the left side of the dialog box.

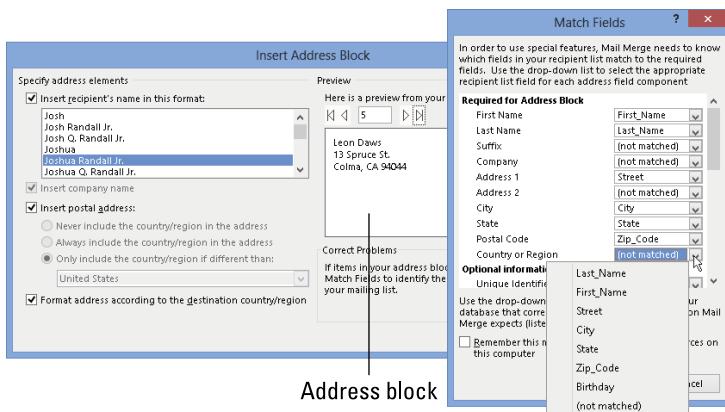
**8. Enter the address block on your form letters, envelopes, or labels.**

The *address block* is the address, including the recipient's name, company, title, street address, city, and ZIP Code. If you're creating form letters, click in the sample letter where the address block will go. If you're printing on envelopes, click in the middle of the envelope where the delivery address will go. Then follow these steps to enter the address block:

- Click the Address Block button. The Insert Address Block dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 7-9.



**Figure 7-9:**  
Creating  
the address  
block (left)  
and linking  
it with  
address  
fields (right).



- Choose a format for entering the recipient's name in the address block. As you do so, watch the Preview window; it shows the actual names and addresses that you selected in Step 7.
- Click the Match Fields button. You see the Match Fields dialog box, shown in Figure 7-9.

- d. Using the drop-down lists on the right side of the dialog box, match the fields in your source file with the address block fields on the left side of the dialog box. In Figure 7-9, for example, the Street field is the equivalent of the Address 1 field on the left side of the dialog box, so Street is chosen from the drop-down list to match Address 1.
- e. Click OK in the Match Fields dialog box and the Insert Address Block dialog box. The <<AddressBlock>> field appears in the document where the address will go. Later, when you merge your document with the data source, real data will appear where the field is now. Think of a field as a kind of placeholder for data.

**9. Click the Preview Results button on the Mailings tab to see real data rather than fields.**

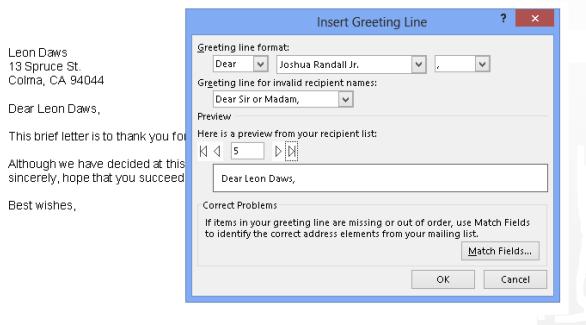


Now you can see clearly whether you entered the address block correctly. If you didn't enter it correctly, click the Match Fields button (it's in the Write & Insert Fields group) to open the Match Fields dialog box and make new choices.

**10. Put the finishing touches on your form letters, labels, or envelopes:**



- *Form letters:* Click where the salutation ("Dear John") will go and then click the Greeting Line button. You see the Insert Greeting Line dialog box, shown in Figure 7-10. Make choices in this dialog box to determine how the letters' salutations will read.



**Figure 7-10:**  
Entering the greeting.



The body of your form letter may well include other variable information such as names and birthdays. To enter that stuff, click in your letter where variable information goes and then click the Insert Merge Field button. The Insert Merge Field dialog box appears and lists fields from the source file. Select a field, click the Insert button, and click the Close button. (You can also open the drop-down list on the Insert Merge Field button and choose a field from the source file.)

If you're editing your form letter and you need to see precisely where the variable information you entered is located, click the Highlight Merge Fields button. The variable information is highlighted in your document.

- **Envelopes:** To position the address block correctly, you may have to press the Enter key and tab keys to move it to the center of envelope. If you don't like the fonts or font sizes on the envelope, select an address, go to the Home tab, and change fonts and font sizes there.

To enter a return address, click in the upper-left corner of the envelope and enter it there.

- **Labels:** Click the Update Labels button to enter all recipients' labels in the sample document.



**11. Click the Next Record and Previous Record buttons on the Mailings tab to skip from recipient to recipient and make sure that you have entered information correctly.**

These buttons are located in the Preview Results group. The items you see on-screen are the same form letters, envelopes, or labels you will see when you have finished printing. (Click the Preview Results button if you see field names rather than people's names and addresses.)

If an item is incorrect, open the source file and correct it there. When you save the source file, the correction is made in the sample document.

At last — you're ready to print the form letters, envelopes, or labels. Take a deep breath and keep reading.

### ***Printing form letters, envelopes, and labels***

After you have gone to the trouble to prepare the data file and merge it with the document, you're ready to print your form letters, envelopes, or labels. Start by loading paper, envelopes, or sheets of labels in your printer:

- ◆ **Form letters:** Form letters are easiest to print. Just put the paper in the printer.
- ◆ **Envelopes:** Not all printers are capable of printing envelopes one after the other. Sorry, but you probably have to consult the dreary manual that came with your printer to find out the correct way to load envelopes.
- ◆ **Labels:** Load the label sheets in your printer.

Now, to print the form letters, envelopes, or labels, save the material in a new document or send it straight to the printer:



- ◆ **Saving in a new document:** Click the Finish & Merge button and choose Edit Individual Documents (or press Alt+Shift+N). You see the Merge to New Document dialog box. Click OK. After Word creates the document, save it and print it. You can go into the document and make changes here and there before printing. In form letters, for example, you can write a sentence or two in different letters to personalize them.
- ◆ **Printing right away:** Click the Finish & Merge button and choose Print Documents (or press Alt+Shift+M) to print the form letters, envelopes, or labels without saving them in a document. Click OK in the Merge to Printer dialog box and then negotiate the Print dialog box.



Save the form letters, labels, or envelopes in a new document if you intend to print them at a future date or ink is running low on your printer and you may have to print in two or more batches. Saving in a new document permits you to generate the mass mailing without having to start all over again with the merge process and all its tedium.

# ***Chapter 8: Tools for Reports and Scholarly Papers***

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ✓ Putting a list in alphabetical order
- ✓ Working in Outline view
- ✓ Collapsing and expanding headings
- ✓ Creating a table of contents
- ✓ Indexing and cross-referencing your work
- ✓ Managing footnotes and endnotes
- ✓ Putting together a bibliography

This chapter is hereby dedicated to everyone who has had to delve into the unknown and write a report about it. Writing reports, manuals, and scholarly papers is not easy. You have to explore uncharted territory. You have to contemplate the ineffable. And you have to write bibliographies and footnotes and maybe an index, too. Word cannot take you directly to uncharted territory, but it can take some of the sting out of it.

This chapter explains how to construct an outline, handle footnotes and endnotes, generate a table of contents, index a document, include cross-references in documents, and stitch together a bibliography.

## ***Alphabetizing a List***

Which comes first in an alphabetical list, “San Jose, California” or “San José, Costa Rica”? You could research the matter on your own, delving into various dictionaries and online references, or you could rely on the Sort button for the answer. Follow these steps to quickly alphabetize a list:

- 1. Select the list.**
- 2. On the Home page, click the Sort button.**



You see the Sort Text dialog box. The Then By options are for sorting tables; they don’t concern you, because you’re sorting a list.

- 3. Click OK.**

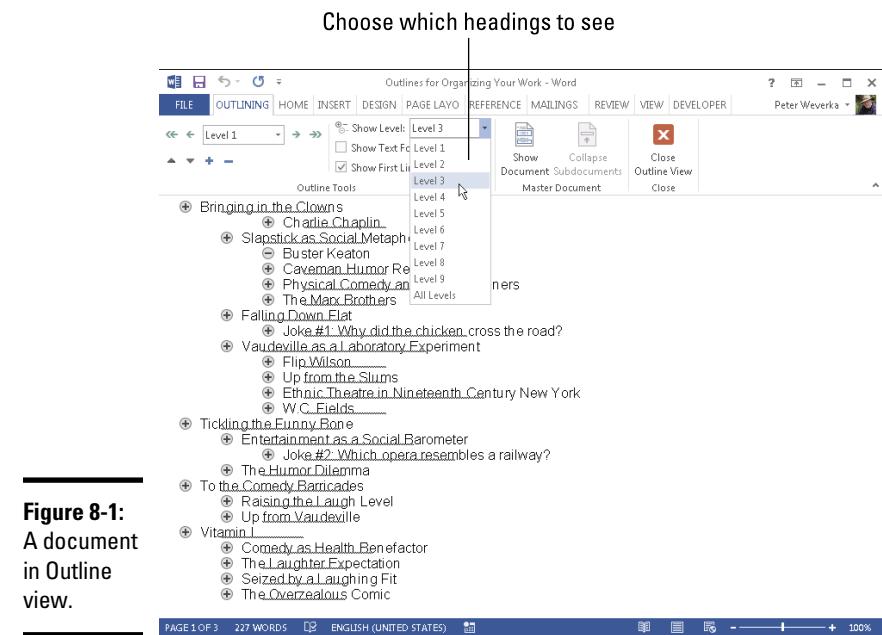
That was easy.

## *Outlines for Organizing Your Work*

Outline view is a great way to see at a glance how your document is organized and whether you need to organize it differently. To take advantage of this feature, you must have assigned heading styles to the headings in your document (Chapter 3 of this mini-book explains styles). In Outline view, you can see all the headings in your document. If a section is in the wrong place, you can move it simply by dragging an icon or by clicking one of the buttons on the Outlining tab. To change the rank of a heading, simply click a button to promote or demote it.

To switch to Outline view, go to the View tab and click the Outline button (or press Alt+Ctrl+O). You see the Outlining tab, as shown in Figure 8-1. Rather than see text, you see the headings in your document, as well as the first line underneath each heading. Now you get a sense of what is in your document and whether it is organized well. By choosing an option from the Show Level drop-down list, you can decide which headings to see on-screen.

To leave Outline view when you're done reorganizing your document, click the Close Outline View button or a view button apart from Outline.



**Figure 8-1:**  
A document  
in Outline  
view.

## *Viewing the outline in different ways*

Before you start rearranging your document in Outline view, get a good look at it:

- ◆ **View some or all headings:** Choose an option from the Show Level drop-down list (refer to Figure 8-1). To see only first-level headings, for example, choose Level 1. To see first-, second-, and third-level headings, choose Level 3. Choose All Levels to see all the headings.
- ◆ **View heading formats:** Click the Show Text Formatting check box. When this check box is selected, you can see how headings were formatted and get a better idea of their ranking in your document.
- ◆ **View or hide the subheadings in one section:** To see or hide the subheadings and text in one section of a document, select that section by clicking the plus sign beside its heading; then, click the Expand button (or press Alt+Shift+plus sign) to see the subheadings, or click the Collapse button (or press Alt+Shift+minus sign) to hide the subheadings. You can also double-click the plus sign beside a heading to view or hide its subheadings. (Later in this chapter, “Collapsing and Expanding Parts of a Document” explains how to view or hide subheadings in Print Layout view.)
- ◆ **View or hide paragraph text:** Click the Show First Line Only check box (or press Alt+Shift+L). When this check box is selected, you see only the first line in each paragraph. First lines are followed by an ellipsis (...) so you know that more text follows.



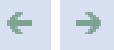
Notice the plus and minus icons next to the headings and the text. A plus icon means that the item has subheadings and text under it. For example, headings almost always have plus icons because text comes after them. A minus icon means that nothing is found below the item in question. For example, body text usually has a minus icon because body text is lowest on the Outline totem pole.

## *Rearranging document sections in Outline view*

Outline view is mighty convenient for moving sections in a document and for promoting and demoting sections. Use these techniques to rearrange and reorganize your document:



- ◆ **Move a section:** To move a section up or down in the document, select it and click the Move Up or Move Down button (or press Alt+Shift+↑ or Alt+Shift+↓). You can also drag the plus sign to a new location. If you want to move the subheadings and subordinate text along with the section, be sure to click the Collapse button to tuck all the subheadings and subtext into the heading before you move it.



- ◆ **Promote and demote headings:** Click the heading and then click the Promote button or Demote button (or press Alt+Shift+← or Alt+Shift+→). For example, you can promote a Level 3 heading to Level 2 by clicking the Promote button. Click the Promote To Heading 1 button to promote any heading to a first-level heading; click the Demote To Body text button to turn a heading into prose.
- ◆ **Choose a new level for a heading:** Click the heading and choose a new heading level from the Outline Level drop-down list.

### ***Collapsing and Expanding Parts of a Document***

As long as you apply heading styles (Heading 1, Heading 2, and so on) to headings, you can collapse and expand parts of a document. Click the Collapse button next to a heading to conceal its subheadings and subtext. Collapsing clears the screen of material that doesn't require your attention. Click the Expand button next to a heading to display its subheadings and subtext.

Figure 8-2 demonstrates expanding and collapsing. Use these techniques to collapse or expand the subheadings and subtext under a heading:

- ◆ **Collapsing:** Click the Collapse button to the left of a heading.
- ◆ **Expanding:** Move the pointer over a heading to display its Expand button; then click the Expand button.



You can collapse headings by default. On the Home tab, click the Paragraph group button to open the Paragraph dialog box. On the Indents and Spacing tab, choose an outline level and select the Collapsed by Default check box

### ***Generating a Table of Contents***

A book-size document or long report isn't worth very much without a table of contents (TOC). How else can readers find what they're looking for? Generating a table of contents with Word is easy, as long as you give the headings in the document different styles — Heading 1, Heading 2, and so on (Chapter 3 of this mini-book explains styles). The beautiful thing about Word TOCs is the way they can be updated nearly instantly. If you add a new heading or erase a heading, you can update the TOC with a snap of your fingers. Moreover, you can quickly go from a TOC entry to its corresponding heading in a document by Ctrl+clicking the entry.

Click to expand

<p>Click to collapse</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ CHAPTER 1: Literature Review</li> <li>▷ CHAPTER 2: Remote sensing of forest productivity in Northeastern forests</li> <li>▷ Tables:</li> <li>▷ Figures:</li> <li>▷ Appendix A:</li> <li>▷ Literature Cited:</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ CHAPTER 1: Literature Review</li> <li>▷ CHAPTER 2: Remote sensing of forest productivity in Northeastern forests           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ 2.1. Introduction</li> <li>▷ 2.2. Methods</li> <li>▷ 2.3. Results and Discussion</li> <li>▷ 2.4. Conclusions</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Comparing BAI and vegetation indices across all years and all sites revealed fourteen vegetation indices that had significant (<math>p \leq 0.05</math>) global relationships with BAI measurements (Table 4). NDVI, one of the most commonly used vegetation indices in studies comparing remotely sensed data and tree-rings (Kaufmann et al. 2004, Lopatin et al. 2006, Kaufmann et al. 2008, Forbes et al. 2009, Babst et al. 2010, Lloyd et al. 2010,</p>
--	--

**Figure 8-2:**  
Collapse  
subheadings  
and subtext  
under a  
heading  
to keep  
the screen  
from getting  
crowded.

Book II  
Chapter 8

Tools for Reports  
and Scholarly  
Papers



Before you create your TOC, create a new section in which to put it and number the pages in the new section with Roman numerals (Chapter 2 of this mini-book explains sections and how to number pages). TOCs, including the TOC in this book, are usually numbered in this way. The first entry in the TOC should cite page number 1. If you don't heed my advice and create a new section, the TOC will occupy the first few numbered pages of your document, and the numbering scheme will be thrown off.

## Creating a TOC



To create a table of contents, place the cursor where you want the TOC to go, visit the References tab, and click the Table of Contents button. On the drop-down list, choose one of Word's automatic TOC options or choose Insert Table of Contents to fashion a TOC on your own in the Table of Contents dialog box. (See "Customizing a TOC," later in this chapter, for information about fashioning a TOC in the Table of Contents dialog box.)



Suppose that you want to copy a TOC to another document? To copy a TOC, drag the pointer down its left margin to select it, and then press **Ctrl+Shift+F9**. Next, use the Copy and Paste commands to copy the TOC to the other document. Because Word gives the text of TOCs the Hyperlink character style, you have to change the color of the text in the TOC (it's blue) and remove the

underlines. As for the original TOC, you “disconnected” it from the headings in your document when you pressed Ctrl+Shift+F9. Press the Undo button to undo the effects of pressing Ctrl+Shift+F9 and “disconnecting” your TOC from the headers to which it refers.

## ***Updating and removing a TOC***

Follow these instructions to update and remove a TOC:



- ◆ **Updating a TOC:** If you add, remove, or edit a heading in your document, your TOC needs updating. To update it, go to the References tab and click the Update Table button, or click in the TOC and press F9. A dialog box asks how to update the TOC. Either update the page numbers only or update the entire table, including all TOC entries and page numbers.
- ◆ **Removing a TOC:** On the References tab, click the Table of Contents button and choose Remove Table of Contents on the drop-down list.

## ***Customizing a TOC***

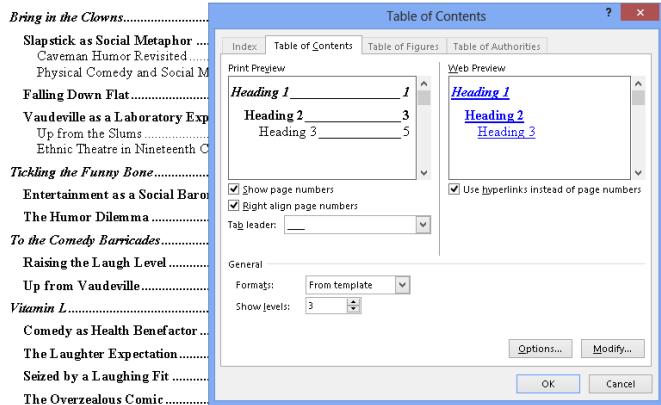


Want to tinker with your TOC? You can number the headings in different ways and tell Word to include or exclude certain headings.

To change around a TOC, click inside it, go to the References tab, click the Table of Contents button, and choose Custom Table of Contents on the drop-down list. You see the Table of Contents dialog box shown in Figure 8-3. Choose options to declare which headings you want for your TOC and how you want to format it:

- ◆ **Showing page numbers:** Deselect the Show Page Numbers box if you want your TOC to be a simple list that doesn’t refer to headings by page.
- ◆ **Aligning the page numbers:** Select the Right Align Page Numbers check box if you want page numbers to line up along the right side of the TOC so that the ones and tens line up under each other.
- ◆ **Choosing a tab leader:** A *leader* is the punctuation mark that appears between the heading and the page number the heading is on. If you don’t want periods as the leader, choose another leader or choose (None).
- ◆ **Choosing a format:** Choose a format from the Formats drop-down list if you don’t care to use the one from the template. Just be sure to watch the Print Preview and Web Preview boxes to see the results of your choice.
- ◆ **Choosing a TOC depth:** The Show Levels box determines how many heading levels are included in the TOC. Unless your document is a legal contract or other formal paper, enter a **2** or **3** here. A TOC is supposed to help readers find information quickly. Including lots of headings that take a long time to read through defeats the purpose of having a TOC.





**Figure 8-3:**  
You can decide for yourself which headings go in a TOC and how it's numbered.

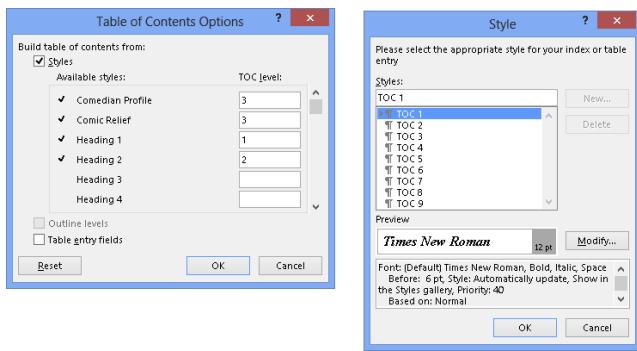
## Changing the structure of a TOC

Sometimes the conventional TOC that Word generates doesn't do the trick. Just because a heading has been given the Heading 1 style doesn't mean that it should receive first priority in the TOC. Suppose that you created another style called Chapter Title that should stand taller in the hierarchy than Heading 1. In that case, you need to rearrange the TOC so that Heading 1 headings rank second, not first, in the TOC hierarchy.

Use the Table of Contents Options and Style dialog boxes to tinker with a TOC. These dialog boxes are shown in Figure 8-4. To open them, click, respectively, the Options button or Modify button in the Table of Contents dialog box (refer to Figure 8-3).

- ◆ **Assigning TOC levels to paragraph styles:** The Table of Contents Options dialog box lists each paragraph style in the document you're working in. For headings you want to appear in the TOC, enter a number in the TOC Level text box to determine the headings' rank. If headings assigned the Heading 1 style are to rank second in the TOC, for example, enter a 2 in Heading 1's TOC Level text box. You can exclude headings from a TOC by deleting a number in a TOC Level box.
- ◆ **Including table entry fields:** To include text you marked for entry in the TOC, select the Table Entry Fields check box in the Table of Contents Options dialog box (later in this chapter, the sidebar "Marking oddball text for inclusion in the TOC" explains how TOC fields work).

- ◆ **Changing the look of TOC entries:** The Style dialog box you see when you click the Modify button gives you the chance to choose new fonts, character styles, and font sizes for TOC entries if you generated your TOC from a template. Click the Modify button. Then, in the Style dialog box, choose options to format the TOC style. For example, click the Bold button to boldface TOC entries. (Chapter 3 of this mini-book explains modifying styles.)



**Figure 8-4:**  
Changing  
a TOC's  
structure  
and  
formatting.

## Marking oddball text for inclusion in the TOC

Table of contents entries can refer to a particular place in a document, not just to headings that have been assigned heading styles. For example, you can include figure captions.

Use one of these techniques to mark an entry in your document for inclusion in the TOC:

- ✓ Click in the heading, figure caption, or whatnot. Next, click the Add Text button on the References tab and choose a TOC level on the drop-down list (the Do Not Show in Table of Contents option keeps text from being included in the TOC). If you choose Level 2, for example, the entry appears with other second-level headings.
- ✓ Click in a heading or text and press Alt+Shift+O. Then, in the Mark Table of Contents Entry dialog box, make sure that

the words you want to appear in the TOC appear in the Entry text box (edit or enter the words if need be), and make sure that C (for Contents) appears in the Table Identifier box. In the Level box, enter a number to tell Word how to treat the entry when you generate the table of contents. For example, entering 1 tells Word to treat the entry like a first-level heading and give it top priority. A 3 places the entry with the third-level headings. Finally, click the Mark button.

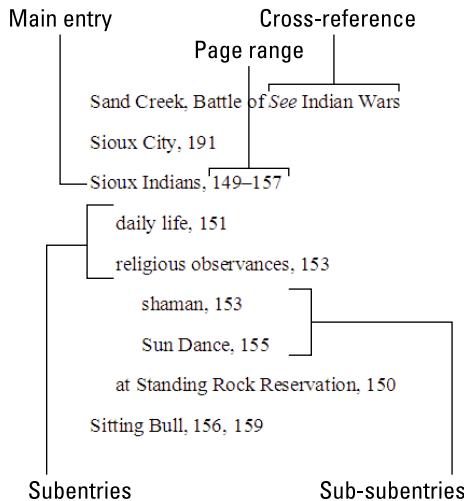
When you generate the table of contents, be sure to include the oddball entries. To do that, click the Options button in the Table of Contents dialog box and, in the Table of Contents Options dialog box (refer to Figure 8-4), select the Table Entry Fields check box.

## *Indexing a Document*

A good index is a thing of beauty. User manuals, reference works of any length, and reports that readers will refer to all require indexes. Except for the table of contents, the only way to find information in a long document is to look in the index. An index at the end of a company report reflects well on the person who wrote the report. It gives the appearance that the author put in a fair amount of time to complete the work, even if he or she didn't really do that.

An index entry can be formatted in many ways. You can cross-reference index entries, list a page range in an index entry, and break out an index entry into subentries and sub-subentries. To help you with your index, Figure 8-5 explains indexing terminology.

**Figure 8-5:**  
Different  
ways of  
handling  
index  
entries.



Writing a good index entry is as hard as writing a good, descriptive heading. As you enter index entries in your document, ask yourself how you would look up information in the index, and enter your index entries accordingly.



## **Marking index items in the document**

The first step in constructing an index is to mark index entries in your document. Marking index items yourself is easier than it seems. After you open the Mark Index Entry dialog box, it stays open so that you can scroll through your document and make entries.

- 1. If you see a word or phrase in your document that you can use as a main, top-level entry, select it; otherwise, place the cursor in the paragraph or heading whose topic you want to include in the index.**

You can save a little time by selecting a word, as I describe shortly.



- 2. On the References tab, click the Mark Entry button (or press Alt+Shift+X).**

The Mark Index Entry dialog box appears. If you selected a word or phrase, it appears in the Main Entry box.

- 3. Choose how you want to handle this index entry (refer to Figure 8-5 to see the various ways to make index entries).**

When you enter the text, don't put a comma or period after it. Word does that when it generates the index. The text that you enter appears in your index.

- *Main Entry*: If you're entering a main, top-level entry, leave the text in the Main Entry box (if it's already there), type new text to describe this entry, or edit the text that's already there. Leave the Subentry box blank.
- *Subentry*: To create a subentry, enter text in the Subentry box. The subentry text will appear in the index below the main entry text, so make sure that some text is in the Main Entry box and that the subentry text fits under the main entry.
- *Sub-subentry*: A sub-subentry is the third level in the hierarchy. To create a sub-subentry, type the subentry in the Subentry box, enter a colon (:), and type the sub-subentry without entering a space, like so: **religious observances:shaman**.

- 4. Decide how to handle the page reference in the entry.**

Again, your choices are many:

- *Cross-reference*: To go without a page reference and refer the reader to another index entry, click the Cross-Reference option button and type the other entry in the text box after the word *See*. What you type here appears in your index, so be sure that the topic you refer the reader to is really named in your index.

- *Current Page:* Click this option to enter a single page number after the entry.
- *Page Range:* Click this option if you're indexing a subject that covers several pages in your document. A page range index entry looks something like this: "Sioux Indians, 149–157." To make a page range entry, you must create a bookmark first. Leave the Mark Index Entry dialog box, select the text in the page range, and press Ctrl+Shift+F5 or click the Bookmark button on the Insert tab. In the Bookmark dialog box, enter a name in the Bookmark Name box, and click the Add button. (Chapter 1 of this mini-book explains bookmarks.)

**5. You can boldface or italicize a page number or page range by clicking a Page Number Format check box.**

In some indexes, the page or page range where the topic is explained in the most depth is italicized or boldfaced so that readers can get to the juiciest parts first.

**6. If you selected a single word or phrase in Step 1, you can click the Mark All button to have Word go through the document and mark all words that are identical to the one in the Main Entry box; click Mark to put this single entry in the index.**

Click outside the Mark Index Entry dialog box and find the next topic or word that you want to mark for the index. Then click the Mark Entry button on the References tab and make another entry.



A bunch of ugly field codes appear in your document after you mark an index entry. You can render them invisible by clicking the Show/Hide@@ps button on the Home tab (or pressing Ctrl+Shift+8).

## Generating the index

After you mark all the index entries, it's time to generate the index:

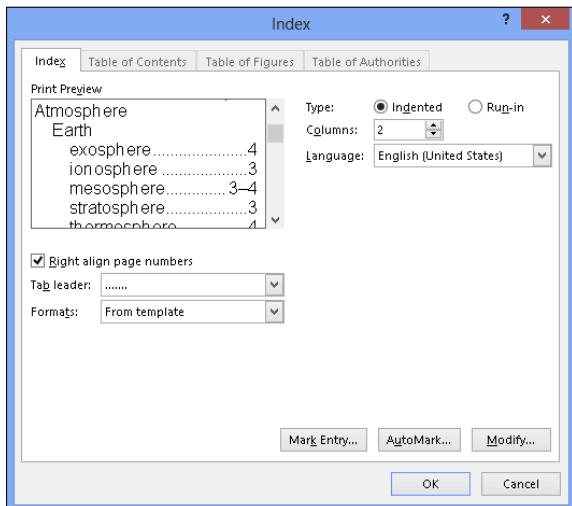
**1. Place the cursor where you want the index to go, most likely at the end of the document.**

You might type the word **Index** at the top of the page and format the word in a decorative way.

**2. On the References tab, click the Insert Index button.**

You see the Index dialog box shown in Figure 8-6.





**Figure 8-6:**  
Generating  
an index.

### 3. Choose options in the dialog box and click OK.

As you make your choices, watch the Print Preview box to see what happens.

Here are the options in the Index dialog box:

- ◆ **Type:** Choose Run-in if you want subentries and sub-subentries to run together; choose Indented to indent subentries and sub-subentries below main entries (refer to Figure 8-6).
- ◆ **Columns:** Stick with 2, unless you don't have subentries or sub-subentries and you can squeeze three columns on the page or you are working on a landscape document.
- ◆ **Language:** Choose a language for the table, if necessary and if you have installed a foreign language dictionary. If you have installed the dictionary, you can run the spell-checker over your index and make sure that the entries are spelled correctly. (Chapter 5 of this mini-book explains foreign language dictionaries.)
- ◆ **Right Align Page Numbers:** Normally, page numbers appear right after entries and are separated from entries by a comma, but you can right-align the entries so that they line up under one another with this option.
- ◆ **Tab Leader:** Some index formats place a *leader* between the entry and the page number. A leader is a series of dots or dashes. If you're working with a format that has a leader, you can choose a leader from the drop-down list.

- ◆ **Formats:** Word offers a number of attractive index layouts. You can choose one from the list.
- ◆ **Modify:** Click this button if you're adventurous and want to create an index style of your own (Chapter 3 explains styles).



To update an index after you create or delete entries, click it and then click the Update Index button or right-click the index and then choose Update Field on the shortcut menu.

### *Editing an index*

After you generate an index, read it carefully to make sure that all entries are useful to readers. Inevitably, something doesn't come out right, but you can edit index entries as you would the text in a document. Index field markers are enclosed in curly brackets with the letters **XE** and the text of the index entry in quotation marks, like so: { XE: "Wovoka: Ghost Dance" }. To edit an index marker, click the Show/Hide ¶ button on the Home tab (or press Ctrl+Shift+8) to see the field markers and find the one you need to edit. Then delete letters or type letters as you would do normal text.



Here's a quick way to find index field markers: After clicking the Show/Hide ¶ button, with the index fields showing, press Ctrl+G to open the Go To tab of the Find and Replace dialog box. In the Go to What menu, choose Field; type **XE** in the Enter Field Name box, and click the Next button until you find the marker you want to edit. You can also use the Find command on the Home tab to look for index entries. Word finds index entries as well as text as long as you click the Show/Hide ¶ button to display index fields in your document.

## *Putting Cross-References in a Document*

*Cross-references* are very handy indeed. They tell readers where to go to find more information about a topic. The problem with cross-references, however, is that the thing being cross-referenced really has to be there. If you tell readers to go to a heading called "The Cat's Pajamas" on page 93, and neither the heading nor the page is really there, readers curse and tell you where to go, instead of the other way around.

Fortunately for you, Word lets you know when you make errant cross-references. You can refer readers to headings, page numbers, footnotes, endnotes, and plain-old paragraphs. And as long you create captions for your cross-references with the Insert Caption button on the References tab, you can also make cross-references to equations, figures, graphs, listings, programs, and tables. If you delete the thing that a cross-reference refers to and render the cross-reference invalid, Word tells you about it the next time you update your cross-references. Best of all, if the page number, numbered item, or text that a cross-reference refers to changes, so does the cross-reference.

Follow these steps to create a cross-reference:

- 1. Write the first part of the cross-reference text.**

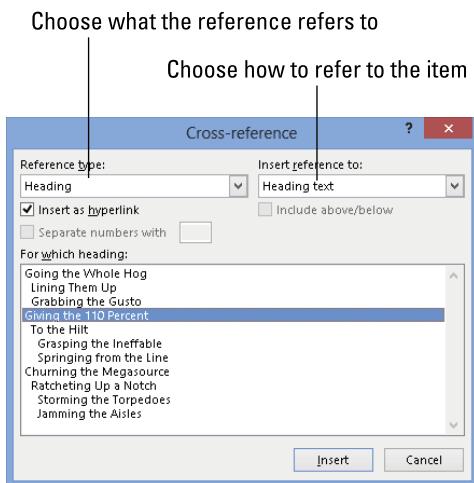
For example, you could write **To learn more about these cowboys of the pampas, see page** and then type a blank space. The blank space separates the word *page* from the page number in the cross-reference. If you are referring to a heading, write something like **For more information, see “**. Don't type a blank space this time because the cross-reference heading text will appear right after the double quotation mark.

- 2. On the References tab, click the Cross-Reference button.**

The Cross-Reference dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 8-7.

- 3. Choose what type of item you're referring to in the Reference Type drop-down list.**

If you're referring to a plain old paragraph, choose Bookmark. Then click outside the dialog box, scroll to the paragraph you're referring to, and place a bookmark there. (Chapter 1 of this mini-book explains bookmarks.)



**Figure 8-7:**  
Entering  
a cross-  
reference.

- 4. Make a choice in the Insert Reference To box to refer to text, a page number, or a numbered item.**

The options in this box are different, depending on what you chose in Step 3.

- **Text:** Choose this option (Heading Text, Entire Caption, and so on) to include text in the cross-reference. For example, choose Heading Text if your cross-reference is to a heading.

- *Number:* Choose this option to insert a page number or other kind of number, such as a table number, in the cross-reference.

- *Include Above/Below:* Check this box to include the word *above* or *below* to tell readers where, in relation to the cross-reference, the thing being referred to is located in your document.

**5. If you wish, leave the check mark in the Insert as Hyperlink check box to create a hyperlink as well as a cross-reference.**

With a hyperlink, someone reading the document on-screen can Ctrl+click the cross-reference and go directly to what it refers to.

**6. In the For Which box, tell Word where the thing you're referring to is located.**

To do so, select a heading, bookmark, footnote, endnote, equation, figure, graph, or whatnot. In long documents, you almost certainly have to click the scrollbar to find the one you want.

**7. Click the Insert button and then click the Close button.**

**8. Back in your document, enter the rest of the cross-reference text, if necessary.**

When you finish creating your document, update all the cross-references. To do that, press Ctrl+A to select the entire document. Then press F9 or right-click in the document and choose Update Field on the shortcut menu.



If the thing referred to in a cross-reference is no longer in your document, you see Error! Reference source not found where the cross-reference should be. To find cross-reference errors in long documents, look for the word *Error!* with the Find command (press Ctrl+F). Investigate what went wrong, and repair or delete errant cross-references.

## Putting Footnotes and Endnotes in Documents

A *footnote* is a bit of explanation, a comment, or a reference that appears at the bottom of the page and is referred to by a number or symbol in the text. An *endnote* is the same thing, except that it appears at the end of the section, chapter, or document. If you've written a scholarly paper of any kind, you know what drag footnotes and endnotes are.

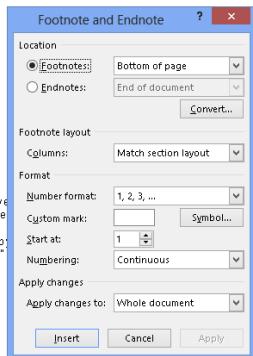
You will be glad to know that Word takes some of the drudgery out of footnotes and endnotes. For example, if you delete or add a note, all notes after the one you added or deleted are renumbered. And you don't have to worry about long footnotes because Word adjusts the page layout to make room for them. You can change the numbering scheme of footnotes and endnotes at will. When you are reviewing a document, all you have to do is move the pointer over a footnote or endnote citation. The note icon appears, as does a pop-up box with the text of the note.

## Entering a footnote or endnote

To enter a footnote or endnote in a document:

1. Place the cursor in the text where you want the note's number or symbol to appear.
  2. On the References tab, click the Insert Footnote button (or press **Ctrl+Alt+F**) or the Insert Endnote button (or press **Ctrl+Alt+D**).
- In Print Layout view, Word scrolls to the bottom of the page or the end of the document or section so that you can enter the note, as shown in Figure 8-8. If you are in Draft view, the Notes pane opens at the bottom of the screen with the cursor beside the number of the note you're about to enter.
3. Enter your footnote or endnote.
  4. In Print Layout view, scroll upward to return to the main text; click the Close button in the Notes pane if you're in Draft view.

**Figure 8-8:**  
Entering a  
footnote in  
Print Layout  
view (left);  
the Footnote  
and Endnote  
dialog box  
(right).



Click the Show Notes button at any time to see your notes in the Notes pane, at the bottom of the page, or at the end of the section or document.



To quickly return from writing a note to the place in your document where the footnote or endnote number citation is located, double-click the number citation at the bottom of the page (in Print Layout view) or the Notes pane (in Draft view). For example, if you just finished entering footnote 3, double-click the number 3.

## Choosing the numbering scheme and position of notes

Choosing the numbering scheme and positioning of endnotes and footnotes is quite easy. On the References tab, click the Footnotes group button. The Footnote and Endnote dialog box appears (refer to Figure 8-8). Tell Word where to place your notes:

- ◆ **Footnotes:** Choose Bottom of Page to put footnotes at the bottom of the page no matter where the text ends; choose Below Text to put footnotes directly below the last line of text on the page.
- ◆ **Endnotes:** Choose End of Section if your document is divided into sections (such as chapters) and you want endnotes to appear at the back of sections; choose End of Document to put all endnotes at the very back of the document.
- ◆ **Columns:** If you want to run footnotes or endnotes into columns, choose the number of columns you want.

In the Format area, tell Word how to number the notes:

- ◆ **Number Format:** Choose A B C, i ii iii, or another numbering scheme, if you want. You can also enter symbols by choosing the last option on this drop-down list.
- ◆ **Custom Mark:** You can mark the note with a symbol by clicking the Symbol button and choosing a symbol in the Symbol dialog box. If you go this route, you have to enter a symbol each time you insert a note. Not only that, you may have to enter two or three symbols for the second and third notes on each page or document because Word can't renumber symbols.
- ◆ **Start At:** To start numbering the notes at a place other than 1, A, or i, enter 2, B, ii, or whatever in this box.
- ◆ **Numbering:** To number the notes continuously from the start of your document to the end, choose Continuous. Choose Restart Each Section to begin anew at each section of your document. For footnotes, you can begin anew on each page by choosing Restart Each Page.

By the way, the Convert button in the Footnote and Endnote dialog box is for fickle scholars who suddenly decide that their endnotes should be footnotes or vice versa. Click it and choose an option in the Convert Notes dialog box to turn footnotes into endnotes, turn endnotes into footnotes, or — in documents with both endnotes and footnotes — make the endnotes footnotes and the footnotes endnotes.

### ***Deleting, moving, and editing notes***

If a devious editor tells you that a footnote or endnote is in the wrong place, that you don't need a note, or that you need to change the text in a note, all is not lost:

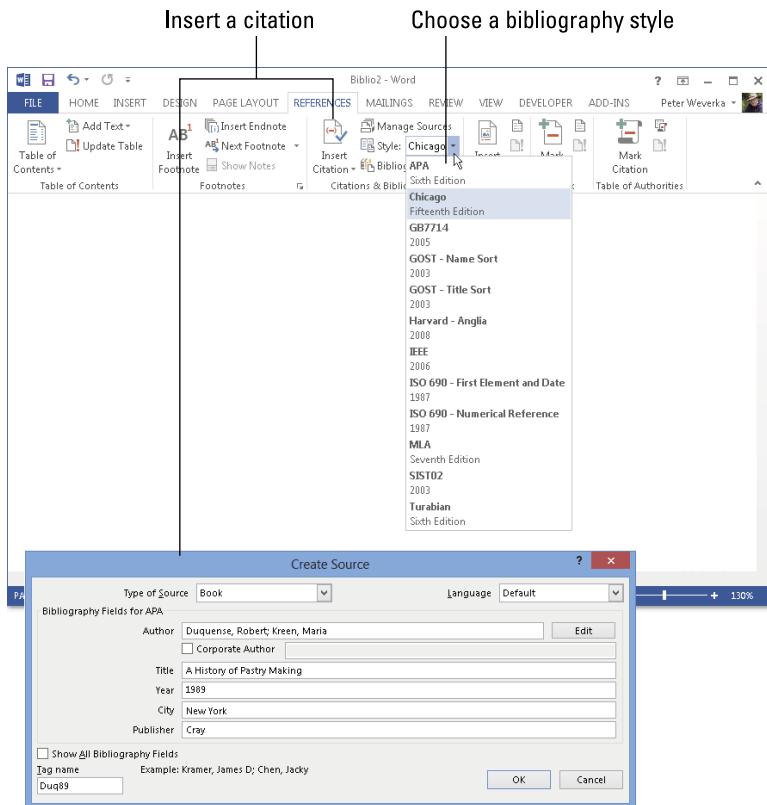
- ◆ **Editing:** To edit a note, double-click its number or symbol in the text. You see the note on-screen. Edit the note at this point.
- ◆ **Moving:** To move a note, select its number or symbol in the text and drag it to a new location, or cut and paste it to a new location.
- ◆ **Deleting:** To delete a note, select its number or symbol and press the Delete key.

Footnotes and endnotes are renumbered when you move or delete one of them.

## ***Compiling a Bibliography***

A *bibliography* is a list, usually in alphabetical order by author name, of all the books, journal articles, websites, interviews, and other sources used in the writing of an article, report, or book. Writing a good bibliography is a chore. Besides keeping careful track of sources, you have to list them correctly. Does the author's name or work's name come first in the citation? How do you list a website or magazine article without an author's name?

Word's Bibliography feature is very nice in this regard: It solves the problem of how to enter citations for a bibliography. All you have to do is enter the bare facts about the citation — the author's name, title, publication date, publisher, and so on — and Word presents this information correctly in the bibliography. You can choose among several popular bibliographical styles (APA, Chicago, and others) from the Style drop-down list, as shown in Figure 8-9. After you make your choice, Word reformats all bibliography citations. You don't have to worry about whether titles should be underlined or italicized, or how authors' names should be listed in the bibliography.



**Figure 8-9:**  
Adding a citation (left) and formatting citations (right) for a bibliography.

## Inserting a citation for your bibliography

An abbreviated citation appears in the text of your document in between parentheses where you enter a citation; the complete citation appears in the bibliography. After you enter the information about a citation, entering it a second time is easy because Word keeps a master list of all citations you have used in your work, both in the document you're working on and your other documents. To enter a citation, click in your document at the place that refers to the source, go to the References tab, and use one of these techniques to enter the citation:

- ◆ **Entering a citation you've already entered in your document:** Click the Insert Citation button and choose the citation on the drop-down list. The top of the drop-down list presents citations you've already entered.



- ◆ **Creating a new citation:** Click the Insert Citation button and choose Add New Source. You see the Create Source dialog box shown in Figure 8-9. Choose an option on the Type of Source drop-down list and enter particulars about the source. You can click the Show All Bibliography Fields check box to enlarge the dialog box and enter all kinds of information about the source. Whether clicking the check box is necessary depends on how detailed you want your bibliography to be.
- ◆ **Inserting a citation placeholder:** Click the Insert Citation button and choose Add New Placeholder if you're in a hurry and you don't currently have all the information you need to describe the source. The Placeholder Name dialog box appears. Enter a placeholder name for the source and click OK. Later, when you have the information for the source, either click the citation in the text and choose Edit Source on its drop-down list or click the Manage Sources button, and in the Source Manager dialog box, select the placeholder name (it has a question mark next to it) and click the Edit button. You see the Edit Source dialog box. Enter the information and click OK.
- ◆ **Inserting a citation you've entered in another document:** Click the Manage Sources button. You see the Source Manager dialog box. In the Master List, select the source you need and click the Copy button. Then click Close and enter the citation by clicking the Insert Citation button and choosing the name of the citation you copied.

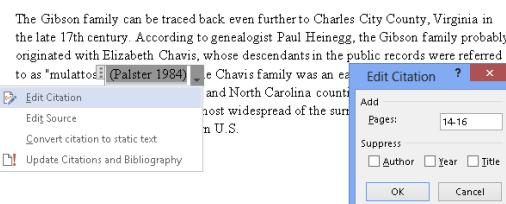


Your citation appears in text in parentheses. Move the pointer over it and you see an inline drop-down list that you can open to edit the citation as it appears in-text as well as edit it in the bibliography, as shown in Figure 8-10.

---

**Figure 8-10:**  
In-text  
citations  
have inline  
drop-down  
lists.

---



## ***Editing a citation***

Use one of these techniques to edit a citation:



- ◆ Open the citation's inline drop-down list (refer to Figure 8-10) and choose Edit Source. You see the Edit Source dialog box, where you can edit the citation.
- ◆ Click the Manage Sources button on the References tab. The Source Manager dialog box appears. Select the citation, click the Edit button, and change around the citation in the Edit Source dialog box.

## ***Changing how citations appear in text***

Citations appear in text enclosed in parentheses. Use one of these techniques to change how a citation appears in the text of your document:

- ◆ **Changing what's in parentheses:** Open the citation's drop-down list and choose Edit Citation (refer to Figure 8-10). You see the Edit Citation dialog box. To suppress the author's name, year, or title from appearing inside parentheses, click the Author, Year, or Title check box (whether the citation in parentheses lists the author, year, or title depends on which citation style you choose). To make page numbers appear with the citation, enter page numbers in the Pages box.
- ◆ **Removing the in-text citation:** Swipe over the citation to select it and press Delete. Removing an in-text citation this way does not prevent the citation from appearing in the bibliography.

## ***Generating the bibliography***

Go to the References tab and follow these steps to generate your bibliography:

1. **Click in your document where you want the bibliography to appear.**  
Probably that place is toward the end of the document.
2. **On the References tab, open the Style drop-down list and choose a style.**

If you're generating your bibliography for a paper you will submit to a journal or institution, ask the editors which style they prefer for bibliographies and choose that style from the list.



**3. Click the Manage Sources button.**

You see the Source Manager dialog box. Citations in the Current List box will appear in your bibliography.

**4. If necessary, address citations in the Current List box.**

If you entered any citation placeholders, their names appear in the list next to question marks. Select these placeholders, click the Edit button, and enter information in the Edit Source dialog box.

To keep a citation from appearing in the bibliography, select it and click the Delete button.

**5. Click the Close button in the Source Manager dialog box.**

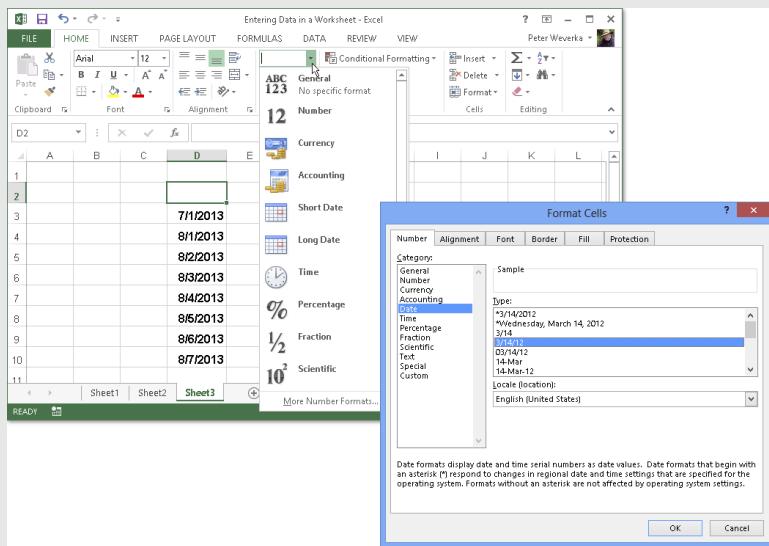


**6. Click the Bibliography button and choose a built-in bibliography or the Insert Bibliography command on the drop-down list.**

There it is — your bibliography.

# Book III

# Excel 2013



Want to know more about Excel? Go to [www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio](http://www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio)

# *Contents at a Glance*

<b>Chapter 1: Up and Running with Excel . . . . .</b>	<b>221</b>
Creating a New Excel Workbook.....	221
Getting Acquainted with Excel.....	223
Entering Data in a Worksheet .....	225
Quickly Entering Lists and Serial Data with the AutoFill Command....	231
Formatting Numbers, Dates, and Time Values .....	232
Conditional Formats for Calling Attention to Data.....	235
Establishing Data-Validation Rules .....	236
<b>Chapter 2: Refining Your Worksheet . . . . .</b>	<b>239</b>
Editing Worksheet Data .....	239
Moving Around in a Worksheet .....	240
Getting a Better Look at the Worksheet .....	241
Comments for Documenting Your Worksheet.....	244
Selecting Cells in a Worksheet.....	246
Deleting, Copying, and Moving Data .....	247
Handling the Worksheets in a Workbook.....	247
Keeping Others from Tampering with Worksheets .....	249
<b>Chapter 3: Formulas and Functions for Crunching Numbers . . . . .</b>	<b>253</b>
How Formulas Work.....	253
The Basics of Entering a Formula.....	258
Speed Techniques for Entering Formulas .....	259
Copying Formulas from Cell to Cell.....	264
Detecting and Correcting Errors in Formulas.....	266
Working with Functions .....	269
<b>Chapter 4: Making a Worksheet Easier to Read and Understand . . . . .</b>	<b>275</b>
Laying Out a Worksheet .....	275
Decorating a Worksheet with Borders and Colors.....	280
Getting Ready to Print a Worksheet.....	285
<b>Chapter 5: Advanced Techniques for Analyzing Data . . . . .</b>	<b>293</b>
Seeing What the Sparklines Say .....	293
Managing Information in Lists .....	294
Forecasting with the Goal Seek Command.....	298
Performing What-If Analyses with Data Tables .....	299
Analyzing Data with Pivot Tables .....	303

# *Chapter 1: Up and Running with Excel*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Creating an Excel workbook
- ✓ Understanding what a worksheet is
- ✓ Entering text as well as numeric, date, and time data
- ✓ Using the AutoFill command to enter lists and serial data
- ✓ Establishing conditional formats for text
- ✓ Setting up data-validation rules

**T**his chapter introduces *Microsoft Excel*, the official number cruncher of Office 2013. The purpose of Excel is to track, analyze, and tabulate numbers. Use the program to project profits and losses, formulate a budget, or analyze Elvis sightings in North America. Doing the setup work takes time, but after you enter the numbers and tell Excel how to tabulate them, you're on Easy Street. Excel does the math for you. All you have to do is kick off your shoes, sit back, and see how the numbers stack up.

This chapter explains what a workbook and a worksheet is, and how rows and columns on a worksheet determine where cell addresses are. You also discover tips and tricks for entering data quickly in a worksheet and how to construct data-validation rules to make sure that data is entered accurately.

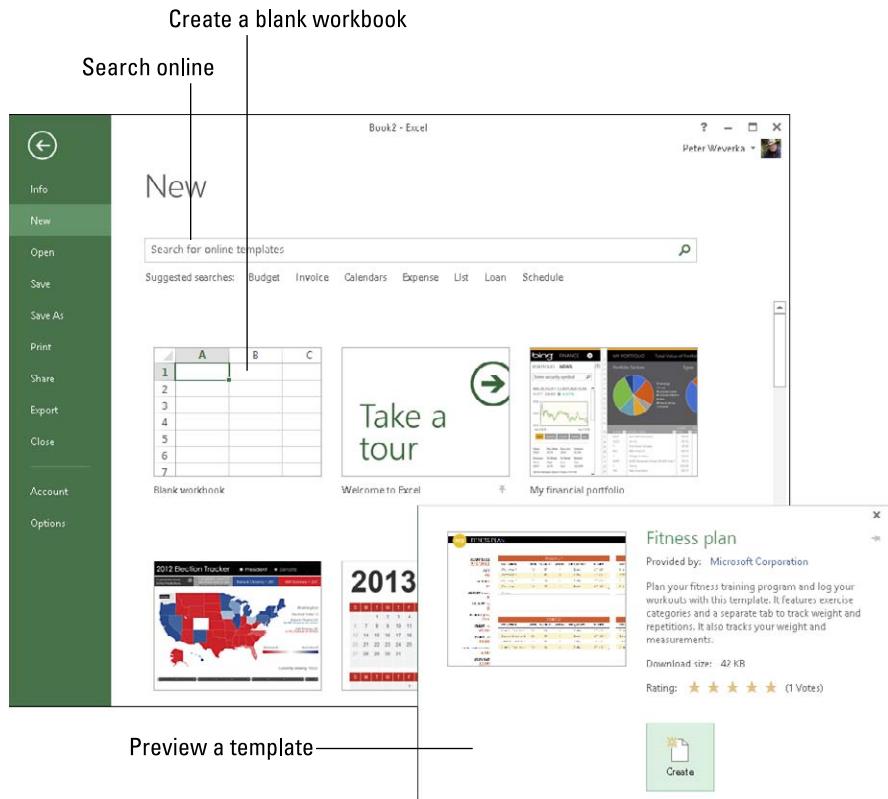
## *Creating a New Excel Workbook*

*Workbook* is the Excel term for the files you create with the Excel. When you create a workbook, you are given the choice of creating a blank workbook or creating a workbook from a template.

A *template* is a preformatted workbook designed for a specific purpose, such as budgeting, tracking inventories, or tracking purchase orders. Creating a workbook from a template is mighty convenient if you happen to find a template that suits your purposes, but in my experience, you almost always have to start from a generic, blank workbook because your data is your own. You need a workbook you create yourself, not one created from a template by someone else.

**FILE**

To create a workbook, begin by going to the File tab and choosing New. You see the New window shown in Figure 1-1. This window offers templates for creating workbooks and the means to search for templates at Office.com.



**Figure 1-1:**  
Create a  
workbook  
by starting  
in the New  
window.

Use these techniques in the New window to choose a template and create a workbook:



- ◆ **Choose the blank workbook template:** Choose Blank Workbook to create a plain template.  
Or, by pressing **Ctrl+N** you can create a new, blank workbook without opening the New window.
- ◆ **Choose a template:** Select a template to examine it in a preview window (refer to Figure 1-1). You can click a template to examine it in a preview window (refer to Figure 1-1). Click the Create button in the preview window to create a document from the template.

- ◆ **Search online for a template:** Enter a search term in the Search box and click the Start Searching button (or click a suggested search term). New templates appear in the New window. Click a template to preview it (see Figure 1-1). Click the Create button to create a document from the template.



Click the Home button if your search for a template takes you too far afield. This button is located to the left of the Search box.

Book I, Chapter 1 explains how to save workbooks after you create them, as well as how to open a workbook.

## Getting Acquainted with Excel

If you've spent any time in an Office application, much of the Excel screen may look familiar to you. The buttons on the Home tab — the Bold and the Align buttons, for example — work the same in Excel as they do in Word. The Font and Font Size drop-down lists work the same as well. Any command in Excel that has to do with formatting text and numbers works the same in Excel and Word.

As mentioned earlier, an Excel file is a *workbook*. Each workbook comprises one or more worksheets. A *worksheet*, also known as a *spreadsheet*, is a table into which you enter data and data labels. Figure 1-2 shows a worksheet with data about rainfall in different counties.

Book III  
Chapter 1

Up and Running  
with Excel

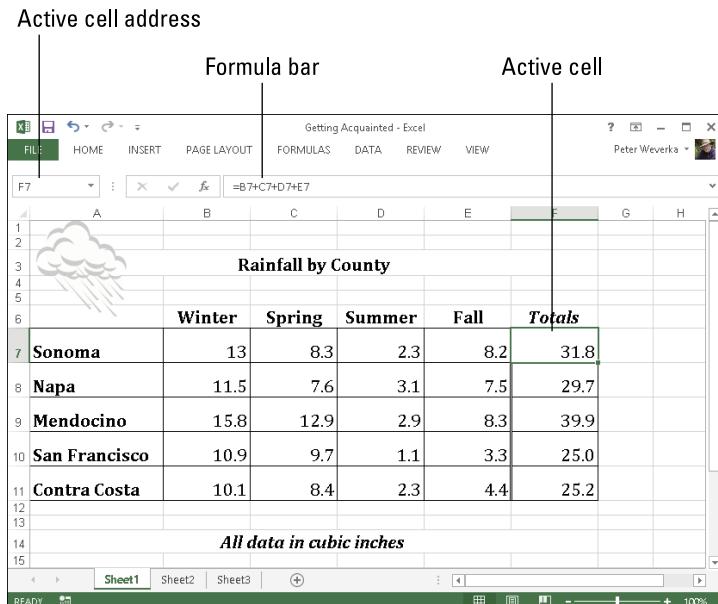


Figure 1-2:  
The Excel  
screen.

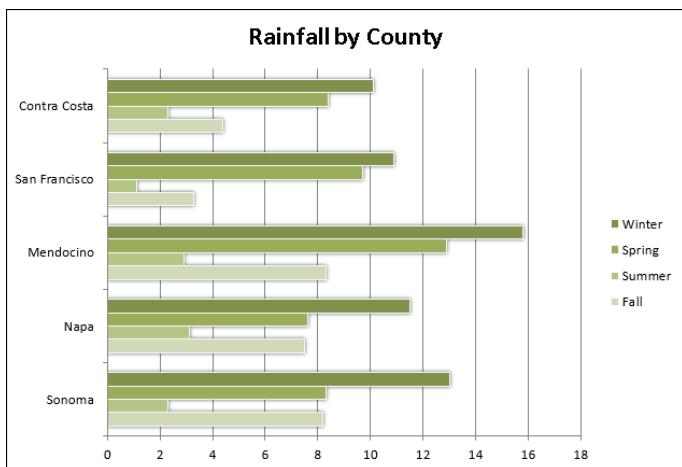
A worksheet works like an accountant's ledger — only it's much easier to use. Notice how the worksheet is divided by gridlines into columns (A, B, C, and so on) and rows (1, 2, 3, and so on). The rectangles where columns and rows intersect are *cells*, and each cell can hold one data item, a formula for calculating data, or nothing at all.

Each cell has a different cell address. In Figure 1-2, cell B7 holds 13, the amount of rain that fell in Sonoma County in the winter. Meanwhile, as the Formula bar at the top of the screen shows, cell F7, the *active cell*, holds the formula =B7+C7+D7+E7, the sum of the numbers in cells — you guessed it — B7, C7, D7, and E7.



The beauty of Excel is that the program does all the calculations and recalculations for you after you enter the data. If I were to change the number in cell B7, Excel would instantly recalculate the total amount of rainfall in Sonoma County in cell F7. People like myself who struggled in math class will be glad to know that you don't have to worry about the math because Excel does it for you. All you have to do is make sure that the data and the formulas are entered correctly.

After you enter and label the data, enter the formulas, and turn your worksheet into a little masterpiece, you can start analyzing the data. For example, you can also generate charts like the one in Figure 1-3. Do you notice any similarities between the worksheet in Figure 1-2 and the chart in Figure 1-3? The chart is fashioned from data in the worksheet, and it took me about half a minute to create that chart. (Book VIII, Chapter 4 explains how to create charts in Excel, Word, and PowerPoint.)



**Figure 1-3:**  
A chart  
generated  
from the  
data in  
Figure 1-2.

## Rows, columns, and cell addresses

Not that anyone needs them all, but an Excel worksheet has numerous columns and more than 1 million rows. The rows are numbered, and columns are labeled A to Z, then AA to AZ, then BA to BZ, and so on. The important thing to remember is that each cell has an address whose name comes from a column letter and a row number. The first cell in row 1 is A1, the second is B1, and so on. You need to enter cell addresses in formulas to tell Excel which numbers to compute.

To find a cell's address, either make note of which column and row it lies in or click the cell and glance at the Formula bar (refer to Figure 1-2). The left side of the Formula bar lists the address of the *active cell*, the cell that is selected in the worksheet. In Figure 1-2, cell F7 is the active cell.

## Workbooks and worksheets

By default, each workbook includes one worksheet, called Sheet1, but you can add more worksheets. Think of a workbook as a stack of worksheets. Besides calculating the numbers in cells across the rows or down the columns of a worksheet, you can make calculations throughout a workbook by using numbers from different worksheets in a calculation. Chapter 2 of this mini-book explains how to add worksheets, rename worksheets, and do all else that pertains to them.

Book III  
Chapter 1

# Entering Data in a Worksheet

Entering data in a worksheet is an irksome activity. Fortunately, Excel offers a few shortcuts to take the sting out of it. These pages explain how to enter data in a worksheet, what the different types of data are, and how to enter text labels, numbers, dates, and times.

Up and Running  
with Excel

## The basics of entering data

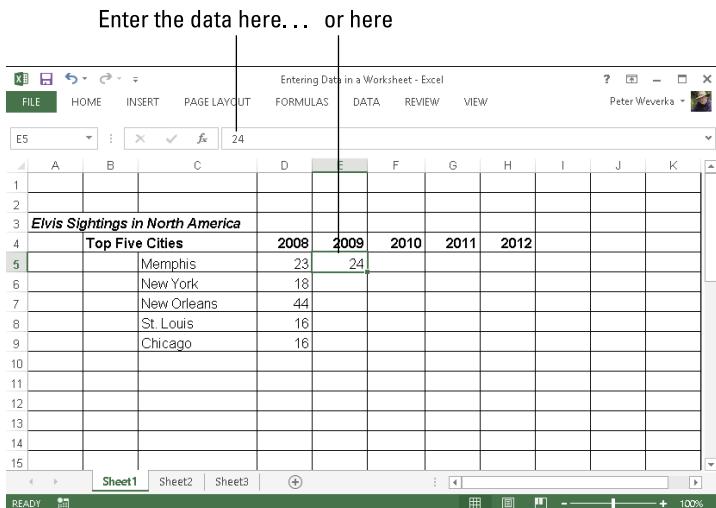
What you can enter in a worksheet cell falls into four categories:

- ◆ Text
- ◆ A value (numeric, date, or time)
- ◆ A logical value (True or False)
- ◆ A formula that returns a value, logical value, or text

Still, no matter what type of data you're entering, the basic steps are the same:

**1. Click the cell where you want to enter the data or text label.**

As shown in Figure 1-4, a square appears around the cell to tell you that the cell you clicked is now the active cell. Glance at the left side of the Formula bar if you're not sure of the address of the cell you're about to enter data in. The Formula bar lists the cell address.



**Figure 1-4:**  
Entering  
data.

**2. Type the data in the cell.**

If you find typing in the Formula bar easier, click and start typing there. As soon as you type the first character, the Cancel button (an X) and Enter button (a check mark) appear beside the Insert Function button (labeled *fx*) on the Formula bar.

**3. Press the Enter key to enter the number or label.**

Besides pressing the Enter key, you can also press an arrow key ( $\leftarrow$ ,  $\uparrow$ ,  $\rightarrow$ ,  $\downarrow$ ), press Tab, or click the Enter button (the check mark) on the Formula bar.

If you change your mind about entering data, click the Cancel button or press Esc to delete what you entered and start over.

Chapter 3 of this mini-book explains how to enter logical values and formulas. The next several pages describe how to enter text labels, numeric values, date values, and time values.

## Entering text labels

Sometimes a text entry is too long to fit in a cell. How Excel accommodates text entries that are too wide depends on whether data is in the cell to the right of the one you entered the text in:

- ◆ If the cell to the right is empty, Excel lets the text spill into the next cell.
- ◆ If the cell to the right contains data, the entry gets cut off. Nevertheless, the text you entered is in the cell. Nothing gets lost when it can't be displayed on-screen. You just can't see the text or numbers except by glancing at the Formula bar, where the contents of the active cell can be seen in its entirety.



To solve the problem of text that doesn't fit in a cell, widen the column, shorten the text entry, reorient the text (Chapter 4 of this mini-book explains aligning numbers and text in columns and rows), or wrap the contents of the cell. *Wrapping* means to run the text down to the next line, much the way the text in a paragraph runs to the next line when it reaches the right margin. Excel makes rows taller to accommodate wrapped text in a cell. To wrap text in cells, select the cells, go to the Home tab, and click the Wrap Text button (you can find it in the Alignment group).

## Entering numeric values



When a number is too large to fit in a cell, Excel displays pounds signs (###) instead of a number or displays the number in scientific notation (8.78979E+15). You can always glance at the Formula bar, however, to find out the number in the active cell. As well, you can always widen the column to display the entire number.

To enter a fraction in a cell, enter a 0 or a whole number, a blank space, and the fraction. For example, to enter  $\frac{3}{8}$ , type a **0**, press the spacebar, and type **3/8**. To enter 5%, type the **5**, press the spacebar, and type **3/8**. For its purposes, Excel converts fractions to decimal numbers, as you can see by looking in the Formula bar after you enter a fraction. For example,  $5\frac{3}{8}$  displays as 5.375 in the Formula bar.



Here's a little trick for entering numbers with decimals quickly in all the Excel files you work on. To spare yourself the trouble of pressing the period key (.), you can tell Excel to enter the period automatically. Instead of entering **12.45**, for example, you can simply enter **1245**. Excel enters the period for you: **12.45**. To perform this trick, go to the File tab, choose Options, visit the Advanced category in the Excel Options dialog box, click the Automatically Insert a Decimal Point check box, and in the Places text box, enter the number of decimal places you want for numbers. Deselect this option when you want to go back to entering numbers the normal way.

## Entering date and time values

Dates and times can be used in calculations, but entering a date or time value in a cell can be problematic because these values must be entered in such a way that Excel can recognize them as dates or times, not text.



Not that you necessarily need to know it, but Excel converts dates and times to serial values for the purpose of being able to use dates and times in calculations. For example, July 31, 2004, is the number 38199. July 31, 2004, at Noon is 38199.5. These serial values represent the number of whole days since January 1, 1900. The portion of the serial value to the right of the decimal point is the time, represented as a portion of a full day.

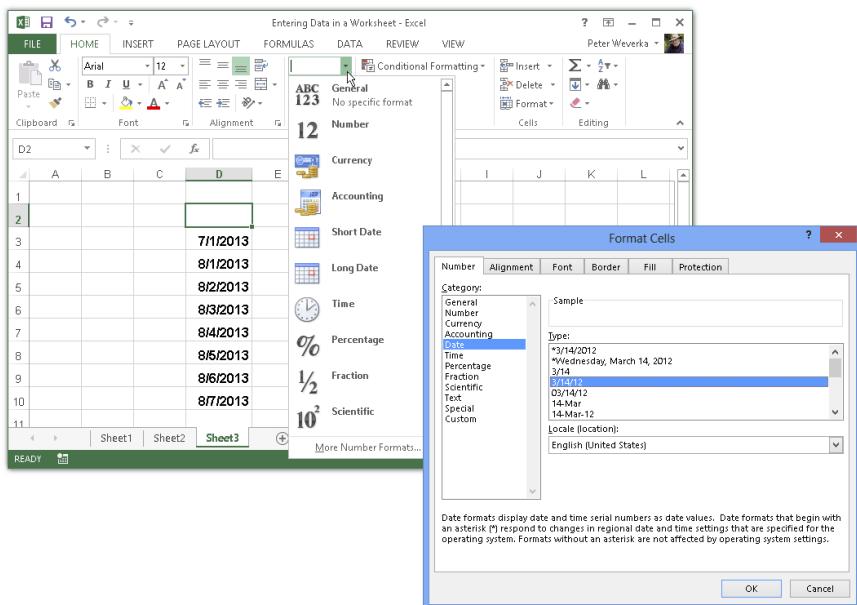
### Entering date values

You can enter a date value in a cell in just about any format you choose, and Excel understands that you're entering a date. For example, enter a date in any of the following formats and you'll be all right:

<i>m/d/yy</i>	7/31/13
<i>m-d-yyyy</i>	7-31-2013
<i>d-mmm-yy</i>	31-Jul-13

Here are some basic things to remember about entering dates:

- ◆ **Date formats:** You can quickly apply a format to dates by selecting cells and using one of these techniques:
  - On the Home tab, open the Number Format drop-down list and choose Short Date (*m/d/yyyy*; 7/31/2013) or Long Date (*day of the week, month, day, year*; Wednesday, July 31, 2013), as shown in Figure 1-5.
  - On the Home tab, click the Number group button to open the Number tab of the Format Cells dialog box. As shown in Figure 1-5, choose the Date category and then choose a date format.
- ◆ **Current date:** Press Ctrl+; (semicolon) to enter the current date.
- ◆ **Current year's date:** If you don't enter the year as part of the date, Excel assumes that the date you entered is in the current year. For example, if you enter a date in the *m/d* (7/31) format during the year 2013, Excel enters the date as 7/31/13. As long as the date you want to enter is the current year, you can save a little time when entering dates by not entering the year because Excel enters it for you.



**Figure 1-5:**  
Format  
dates and  
numbers on  
the Number  
Format  
drop-down  
list or  
Format Cells  
dialog box.



- ◆ **Dates on the Formula bar:** No matter which format you use for dates, dates are displayed in the Formula bar in the format that Excel prefers for dates: *m/d/yyyy* (7/31/2013). How dates are displayed in the worksheet is up to you.
- ◆ **20th and 21st century two-digit years:** When it comes to entering two-digit years in dates, the digits 30 through 99 belong to the 20th century (1930–1999), but the digits 00 through 29 belong to the 21st century (2000–2029). For example, 7/31/13 refers to July 31, 2013, not July 31, 1910. To enter a date in 1929 or earlier, enter four digits instead of two to describe the year: **7-31-1929**. To enter a date in 2030 or later, enter four digits instead of two: **7-31-2030**.
- ◆ **Dates in formulas:** To enter a date directly in a formula, enclose the date in quotation marks. (Make sure that the cell where the formula is entered has been given the Number format, not the Date format.) For example, the formula `=TODAY() - "1/1/2013"` calculates the number of days that have elapsed since January 1, 2013. Formulas are the subject of Chapter 3 of this mini-book.



## Entering data with Flash Fill

Don't look now, but Excel is peering over your shoulder to see whether it can enter data for you with Flash Fill, a mechanism whereby Excel recognizes the data you want to enter and offers to enter it on your behalf. When Excel recognizes a pattern in the data and thinks it can fill in a column for you, a ghostly image of the data Excel wants to enter appears in the column. Press Enter if you want to enter this data.

After you press Enter, the Flash Fill Options button appears. Click it to open a menu with options for Undoing Flash Fill and selecting cells.

Flash Fill is useful for cleaning up worksheets with data that you imported from a comma- or tab-delimited file. Often this data arrives in a mishmash with data from different categories in the same column.

Date	Transaction	Score	Name			
2/2/2013	Weverka-4971	48	Weverka			
2/2/2013	Johnson-891	42	Johnson			
2/3/2013	McKeil- 497	78	McKeil			
2/4/2013	Munoz-9071	23	Munoz			
2/4/2013	Hong-9781	12	Hong			
2/5/2013	Chester-9714	34	Chester			

### Entering time values

Excel recognizes time values that you enter in the following ways:

*h:mm* AM/PM                    3:31 AM

*h:mm:ss* AM/PM                    3:31:45 PM

Here are some things to remember when entering time values:

- ◆ **Use colons:** Separate hours, minutes, and seconds with a colon (:).
- ◆ **Time formats:** To change to the *h:mm:ss* AM/PM time format, select the cells, go to the Home tab, open the Number Format drop-down list, and choose Time (see Figure 1-5). You can also change time formats by clicking the Number group button on the Home tab and selecting a time format on the Number tab of the Format Cells dialog box.
- ◆ **AM or PM time designations:** Unless you enter AM or PM with the time, Excel assumes that you're operating on military time. For example, 3:30 is considered 3:30 a.m.; 15:30 is 3:30 p.m. Don't enter periods after the letters *am* or *pm* (don't enter a.m. or p.m.).

- ◆ **Current time:** Press Ctrl+Shift+; (semicolon) to enter the current time.
- ◆ **Times on the Formula bar:** On the Formula bar, times are displayed in this format: *hours:minutes:seconds*, followed by the letters AM or PM. However, the time format used in cells is up to you.

### **Combining date and time values**

You can combine dates and time values by entering the date, a blank space, and the time:

- ◆ 7/31/13 3:31 am
- ◆ 7-31-13 3:31:45 pm

## **Quickly Entering Lists and Serial Data with the AutoFill Command**

Data that falls into the “serial” category — month names, days of the week, and consecutive numbers and dates, for example — can be entered quickly with the AutoFill command. Believe it or not, Excel recognizes certain kinds of serial data and enters it for you as part of the AutoFill feature. Instead of laboriously entering this data one piece at a time, you can enter it all at one time by dragging the mouse. Follow these steps to “autofill” cells:

Book III  
Chapter 1

Up and Running  
with Excel

#### **1. Click the cell that is to be first in the series.**

For example, if you intend to list the days of the week in consecutive cells, click where the first day is to go.

#### **2. Enter the first number, date, or list item in the series.**

#### **3. Move to the adjacent cell and enter the second number, date, or list item in the series.**

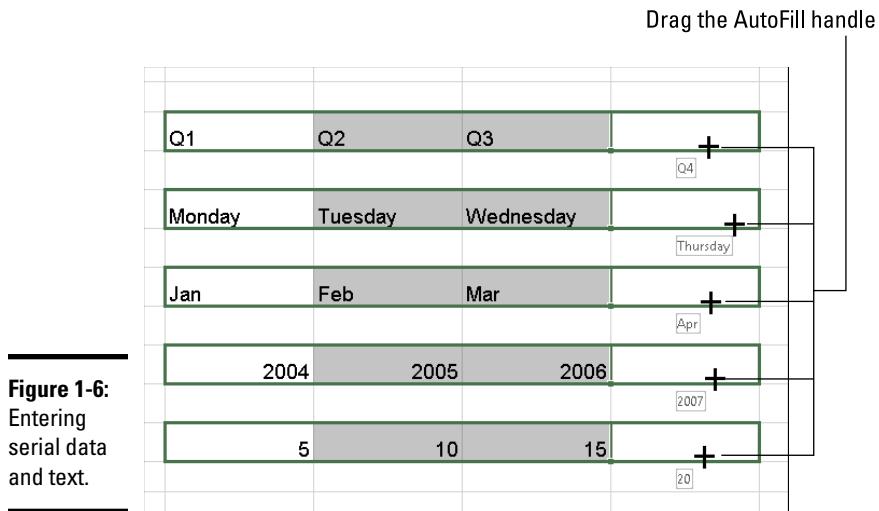
If you want to enter the same number or piece of text in adjacent cells, it isn’t necessary to take this step, but Excel needs the first and second items in the case of serial dates and numbers so that it can tell how much to increase or decrease the given amount or time period in each cell. For example, entering **5** and **10** tells Excel to increase the number by 5 each time so that the next serial entry is 15.

#### **4. Select the cell or cells you just entered data in.**

To select a single cell, click it; to select two, drag over the cells. Chapter 2 of this mini-book describes all the ways to select cells in a worksheet.

- Click the AutoFill handle and start dragging in the direction in which you want the data series to appear on your worksheet.

The *AutoFill handle* is the little green square in the lower-right corner of the cell or block of cells you selected. As you drag, the serial data appears in a pop-up box, as shown in Figure 1-6.



**Figure 1-6:**  
Entering  
serial data  
and text.



The AutoFill Options button appears after you enter the serial data. Click it and choose an option if you want to copy cells or fill the cells without carrying along their formats.



To enter the same number or text in several empty cells, drag over the cells to select them or select each cell by holding down the Ctrl key as you click. Then type a number or some text and press Ctrl+Enter.

## *Formatting Numbers, Dates, and Time Values*

When you enter a number that Excel recognizes as belonging to one of its formats, Excel assigns the number format automatically. Enter **45%**, for example, and Excel assigns the Percentage number format. Enter **\$4.25**, and Excel assigns the Currency number format. Besides assigning formats by hand, however, you can assign them to cells from the get-go and spare yourself the trouble of entering dollar signs, commas, percent signs, and other extraneous punctuation. All you have to do is enter the raw numbers. Excel does the window dressing for you.

## Creating your own AutoFill list

As you probably know, Excel is capable of completing lists on its own with the AutoFill feature. You can enter the days of the week or month names simply by entering one day or month and dragging the AutoFill handle to enter the others. Here's some good news: The AutoFill command can also reproduce the names of your coworkers, the roster of a softball team, street names, or any other list that you care to enter quickly and repeatedly in a worksheet.

Follow these steps to enter items for a list so that you can enter them in the future by dragging the AutoFill handle:

- If you've already entered items for the list on your worksheet, select the items.**

If you haven't entered the items yet, skip to Step 2.

- On the File tab, and choose Options to open the Excel Options dialog box.**

- Go to the Advanced category.**
- Click the Edit Custom Lists button (you have to scroll down to find it).**

You see the Custom Lists dialog box.

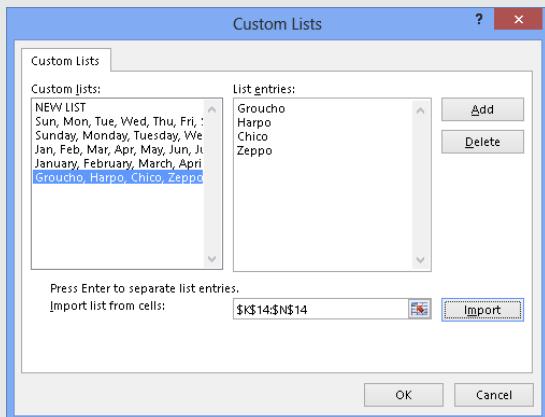
- In the List Entries box, do one of the following:**

If you selected the items in Step 1, click the Import button. The items you selected appear in the List Entries box.

If you need to enter items for the list, enter them in the List Entries box, with one item on each line.

- Click the Add button.**

- Click OK.**

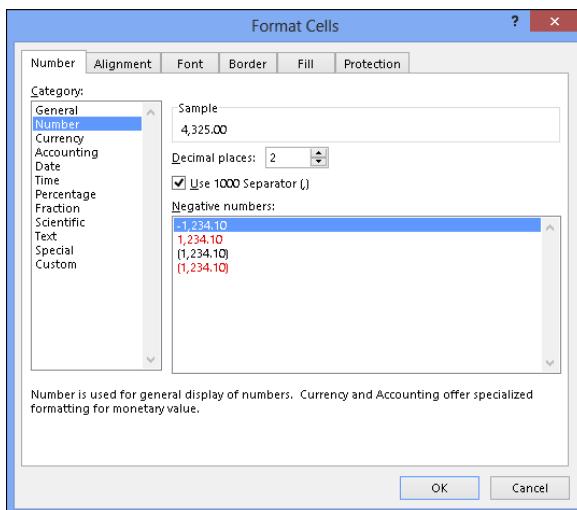


Excel offers five number-formatting buttons on the Home tab — Accounting Number Format, Percent Style, Comma Style, Increase Decimal, and Decrease Decimal. Select cells with numbers in them and click one of these buttons to change how numbers are formatted:



- ◆ **Accounting Number Format:** Places a dollar sign before the number and gives it two decimal places. You can open the drop-down list on this button and choose a currency symbol apart from the dollar sign.
- ◆ **Percent Style:** Places a percent sign after the number and converts the number to a percentage.
- ◆ **Comma Style:** Places commas in the number.
- ◆ **Increase Decimal:** Increases the number of decimal places by one.
- ◆ **Decrease Decimal:** Decreases the number of decimal places by one.

To choose among many formats and to format dates and time values as well as numbers, go to the Home tab, click the Number group button, and make selections on the Number tab of the Format Cells dialog box. Figure 1-7 shows this dialog box. Choose a category and select options to describe how you want numbers or text to appear.



**Figure 1-7:**  
The Number category of the Format Cells dialog box.



To strip formats from the data in cells, select the cells, go to the Home tab, click the Clear button, and choose Clear Formats.



Entering ZIP Codes can be problematic because Excel strips the initial zero from the number if it begins with a zero. To get around this problem, visit the Number tab of the Format Cells dialog box (see Figure 1-7), choose Special in the Category list, and select a ZIP Code option.

## Conditional Formats for Calling Attention to Data

A *conditional format* is one that applies when data meets certain conditions. To call attention to numbers greater than 10,000, for example, you can tell Excel to highlight those numbers automatically. To highlight negative numbers, you can tell Excel to display them in bright red. Conditional formats help you analyze and understand data better.

Select the cells that are candidates for conditional formatting and follow these steps to tell Excel when and how to format the cells:



1. On the Home tab, click the Conditional Formatting button (you may have to click the Styles button first, depending on the size of your screen).
2. Choose Highlight Cells Rules or Top/Bottom Rules on the drop-down list.

You see a submenu with choices about establishing the rule for whether values in the cells are highlighted or otherwise made more prominent:

- *Highlight Cells Rules*: These rules are for calling attention to data if it falls in a numerical or date range, or it's greater or lesser than a specific value. For example, you can highlight cells that are greater than 400.
- *Top/Bottom Rules*: These rules are for calling attention to data if it falls within a percentage range relative to all the cells you selected. For example, you can highlight cells with data that falls in the bottom 10-percent range.

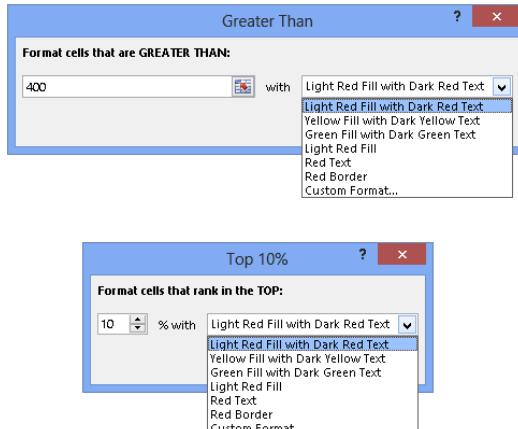
3. Choose an option on the submenu.

You see a dialog box similar to the ones in Figure 1-8.

4. On the left side of the dialog box, establish the rule for flagging data.
5. On the With drop-down list, choose how you want to call attention to the data.

For example, you can display the data in red or yellow. You can choose Custom Format on the drop-down list to open the Format Cells dialog box and choose a font style or color for the text.

6. Click OK.



**Figure 1-8:**  
Establishing  
a condition  
format for  
data.

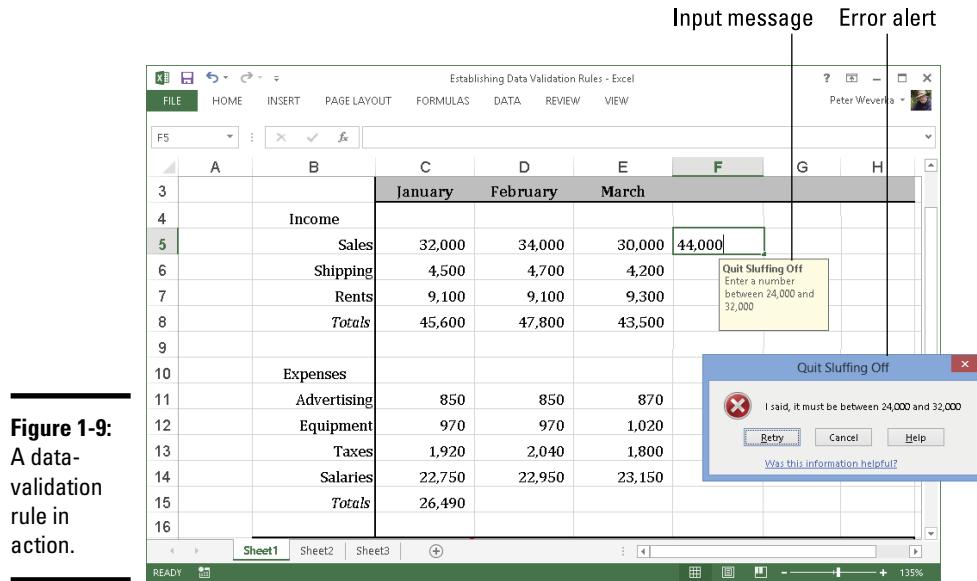
To remove conditional formats, select the cells with the formats, go to the Home tab, click the Conditional Formatting button, and choose Clear Rules→Clear Rules from Selected Cells.

You can also establish conditional formats by selecting cells and clicking the Quick Analysis button (or pressing Ctrl+Q). In the pop-up window, choose Formatting and then click Greater Than or Top 10% to create a highlight-cell or top/bottom rule.

## Establishing Data-Validation Rules

By nature, people are prone to enter data incorrectly because the task of entering data is so dull. This is why data-validation rules are invaluable. A *data-validation rule* is a rule concerning what kind of data can be entered in a cell. When you select a cell that has been given a rule, an input message tells you what to enter, as shown in Figure 1-9. And if you enter the data incorrectly, an error alert tells you as much, also shown in Figure 1-9.

Data-validation rules are an excellent defense against sloppy data entry and that itchy feeling you get when you're in the middle of an irksome task. In a cell that records date entries, you can require dates to fall in a certain time frame. In a cell that records text entries, you can choose an item from a list instead of typing it yourself. In a cell that records numeric entries, you can require the number to fall within a certain range. Table 1-1 describes the different categories of data-validation rules.



**Figure 1-9:**  
A data-validation rule in action.

**Table 1-1** Data-Validation Rule Categories

Rule	What Can Be Entered
Any Value	Anything whatsoever. This is the default setting.
Whole Number	Whole numbers (no decimal points allowed). Choose an operator from the Data drop-down list and values to describe the range of numbers that can be entered.
Decimal	Same as the Whole Number rule except numbers with decimal points are permitted.
List	Items from a list. Enter the list items in cells on a worksheet, either the one you're working in or another. Then reopen the Data Validation dialog box, click the Range Selector button (you can find it on the right side of the Source text box), and select the cells that hold the list. The list items appear in a drop-down list on the worksheet.
Date	Date values. Choose an operator from the Data drop-down list and values to describe the date range. Earlier in this chapter, "Entering date and time values" describes the correct way to enter date values.
Time	Time values. Choose an operator from the Data drop-down list and values to describe the date and time range. Earlier in this chapter, "Entering date and time values" describes the correct way to enter a combination of date and time values.
Text Length	A certain number of characters. Choose an operator from the Data drop-down list and values to describe how many characters can be entered.
Custom	A logical value (True or False). Enter a formula that describes what constitutes a true or false data entry.

Follow these steps to establish a data-validation rule:

- 1. Select the cell or cells that need a rule.**



- 2. On the Data tab, click the Data Validation button.**

As shown in Figure 1-10, you see the Settings tab of the Data Validation dialog box.

- 3. On the Allow drop-down list, choose the category of rule you want.**

Table 1-1, earlier in this chapter, describes these categories.

- 4. Enter the criteria for the rule.**

What the criteria is depends on what rule category you're working in. Table 1-1 describes how to enter the criteria for rules in each category. You can refer to cells in the worksheet by selecting them. To do that, either select them directly or click the Range Selector button and then select them.

- 5. On the Input Message tab, enter a title and input message.**

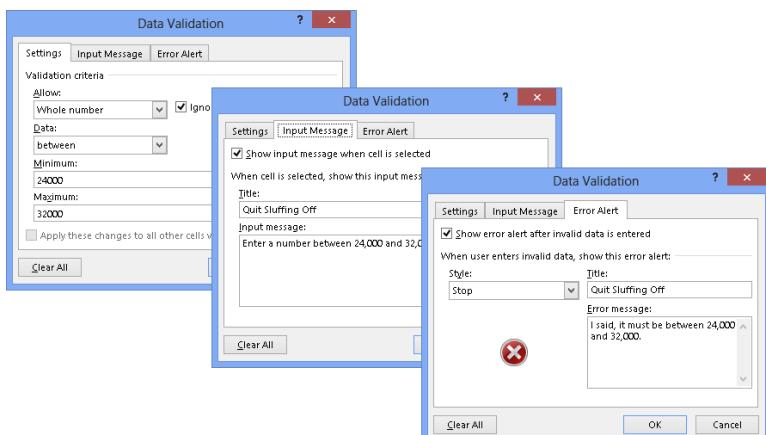
You can see a title (“Quit Sluffing Off”) and input message (“Enter a number between 24,000 and 32,000”) in Figure 1-9. The title appears in boldface. Briefly describe what kind of data belongs in the cell or cells you selected.

- 6. On the Error Alert tab, choose a style for the symbol in the Message Alert dialog box, enter a title for the dialog box, and enter a warning message.**

In the error message in Figure 1-9, shown previously, the Stop symbol was chosen. The title you enter appears across the top of the dialog box, and the message appears beside the symbol.

- 7. Click OK.**

To remove data-validation rules from cells, select the cells, go to the Data tab, click the Data Validation button, and on the Settings tab of the Data Validation dialog box, click the Clear All button, and click OK.



**Figure 1-10:**  
Creating  
a data-  
validation  
rule.

# *Chapter 2: Refining Your Worksheet*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ **Changing worksheet data**
- ✓ **Going here and there in a worksheet**
- ✓ **Freezing and splitting columns and rows to make data entry easier**
- ✓ **Documenting a worksheet with comments**
- ✓ **Selecting cells**
- ✓ **Copying and moving data**
- ✓ **Inserting, deleting, and renaming worksheets**
- ✓ **Hiding and protecting worksheets so that they can't be altered**

This chapter delves into the workaday world of worksheets (say that three times fast). It explains how to edit worksheet data and move quickly here and there in a worksheet. You also discover techniques for entering data quickly, selecting cells, and copying and moving data in cells. This chapter describes how to move, delete, and rename worksheets as well as protect them from being edited or altered.

## *Editing Worksheet Data*

Not everyone enters data correctly the first time. To edit data you entered in a cell, do one of the following:

- ◆ **Double-click the cell.** Doing so places the cursor squarely in the cell, where you can start deleting or entering numbers and text.
- ◆ **Click the cell and press F2.** This technique also lands the cursor in the cell.
- ◆ **Click the cell you want to edit.** With this technique, you edit the data on the Formula bar.



If nothing happens when you double-click, or if pressing F2 lands the cursor in the Formula bar, not a cell, somebody has been fooling with the Options settings. On the File tab, choose Options, select the Advanced category in the Excel Options dialog box, and click the Allow Editing Directly in Cells check box.

### Moving Around in a Worksheet

Going from place to place gets progressively more difficult as a worksheet gets larger. Luckily for you, Excel offers keyboard shortcuts for jumping around. Table 2-1 describes these keyboard shortcuts.

**Table 2-1 Keyboard Shortcuts for Getting Around in Worksheets**

<i>Press . . .</i>	<i>To Move the Selection . . .</i>
Home	To column A
Ctrl+Home	To cell A1, the first cell in the worksheet
Ctrl+End	To the last cell in the last row with data in it
←, →, ↑, ↓	To the next cell
Ctrl+←, →, ↑, ↓	In one direction toward the nearest cell with data in it or to the first or last cell in the column or row
PgUp or PgDn	Up or down one screen's worth of rows
Ctrl+PgUp or Ctrl+PgDn	Backward or forward through the workbook, from worksheet to worksheet

As well as pressing keys, you can use these techniques to get from place to place in a worksheet:

- ◆ **Scroll bars:** Use the vertical and horizontal scroll bars to move to different areas. Drag the scroll box to cover long distances. To cover long distances very quickly, hold down the Shift key as you drag the scroll box on the vertical scroll bar.
- ◆ **Scroll wheel on the mouse:** If your mouse is equipped with a scroll wheel, turn the wheel to quickly scroll up and down.
- ◆ **Name box:** Enter a cell address in the Name box and press Enter to go to the cell. The Name box is found to the left of the Formula bar.



- ◆ **The Go To command:** On the Home tab, click the Find & Select button and choose Go To on the drop-down list (or press Ctrl+G or F5). You see the Go To dialog box. Enter a cell address in the Reference box and click OK. Cell addresses you've already visited with the Go To command are already listed in the dialog box. Click the Special button to open the Go To Special dialog box and visit a formula, comment, or other esoteric item.
- ◆ **The Find command:** On the Home tab, click the Find & Select button and choose Find on the drop-down list (or press Ctrl+F). Enter the data you seek in the Find What box and click the Find Next button. Click the Find All button to find all instances of the item you're looking for. A list of the items appears at the bottom of the dialog box; click an item to go to it.



To scroll to the active cell if you no longer see it on-screen, press Ctrl+Backspace.

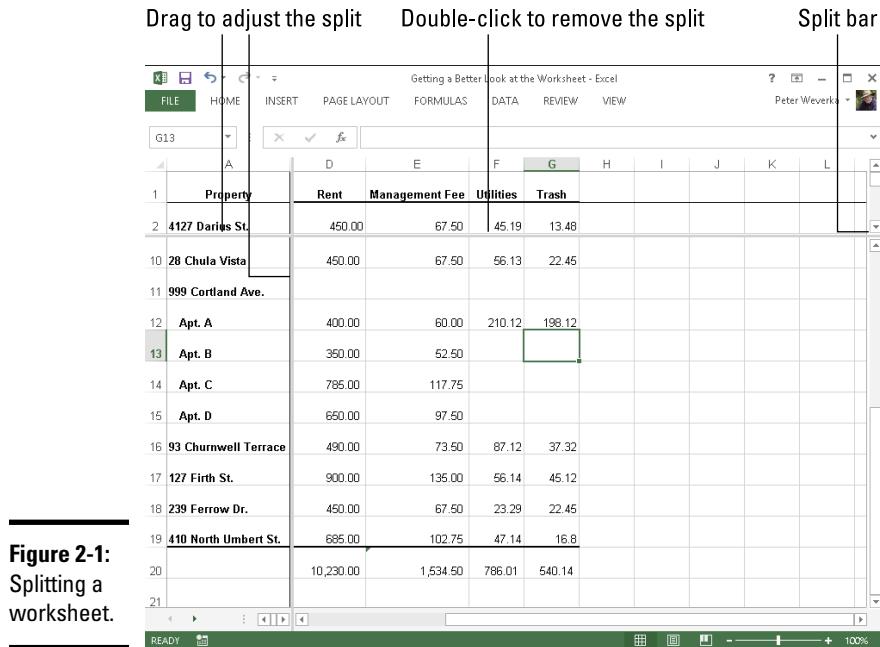
## Getting a Better Look at the Worksheet

Especially when you're entering data, it pays to get a good look at the worksheet. You need to know which column and row you're entering data in. These pages explain techniques for changing your view of a worksheet so that you always know where you are. Read on to discover how to freeze, split, and hide columns and rows. (On the subject of changing views, Book I, Chapter 3 explains an essential technique for changing views: zooming in and zooming out.)

### *Freezing and splitting columns and rows*

Sometimes your adventures in a worksheet take you to a faraway cell address, such as X31 or C39. Out there in the wilderness, it's hard to tell where to enter data because you can't see the data labels in the first column or first row that tell you where to enter data on the worksheet.

To see one part of a worksheet no matter how far you stray from it, you can *split* the worksheet or *freeze* columns and rows on-screen. In Figure 2-1, I split the worksheet so that column A (Property) always appears on-screen, no matter how far I scroll to the right; similarly, row 1 (Property, Rent, Management Fees, and so on) also appears at the top of the worksheet no matter how far I scroll down. Notice how the row numbers and column letters are interrupted in Figure 2-1. Because I split the screen, I always know what data to enter in a cell because I can clearly see property names in the first column and the column headings along the top of the worksheet.



**Figure 2-1:**  
Splitting a worksheet.

Freezing columns or rows on a worksheet works much like splitting except that lines instead of gray bars appear on-screen to show which columns and rows are frozen, and you can't adjust where the split occurs by dragging the boundary where the worksheet is split.

### Giving the Split or Freeze Panes command

Follow these steps to split or freeze columns and rows on-screen:

1. Click the cell that is directly below the row you want to freeze or split and is in the column to the right of the column that you want to freeze or split.

In other words, click where you want the split to occur.

2. On the View tab, split or freeze the columns and rows.

Go to the View tab and use one of these techniques:

- **Splitting:** Click the Split button and then click and drag the split bars to split the screen horizontally or vertically (refer to Figure 2-1). The other way to split a worksheet is to grab hold of a *split bar*, the little division markers directly above the vertical scroll bar and directly to the right of the horizontal scroll bar (in the lower-right corner of





your screen). You can tell where split bars are because the pointer turns into a double arrow when it's over a split bar.

- **Freezing:** Click the Freeze Panes button and choose one of three Freeze options on the drop-down list. The second and third options, respectively, freeze the top row or first column. The first option, Freeze Panes, freezes the column(s) to the left and the row(s) above the cell you selected in Step 1.

Bars or lines appear on-screen to show which row(s) and column(s) have been frozen or split. Move where you will in the worksheet. The column(s) and row(s) you froze or split stay on-screen.

### ***Unsplitting and unfreezing***

Use one of these techniques to keep your worksheet from splitting or freezing to death:

- ◆ **Unsplitting:** Click the Split button again; double-click one of the split bars to remove it; or drag a split bar into the top or left side of the worksheet window.
- ◆ **Unfreezing:** On the View tab, click the Freeze Panes button and choose Unfreeze Panes on the drop-down list.

### ***Hiding columns and rows***

Another way to take the clutter out of a worksheet is to temporarily hide columns and rows:



- ◆ **Hiding columns or rows:** Drag over the column letters or row numbers of the columns or rows that you want to hide. Dragging this way selects entire columns or rows. Then go to the Home tab, click the Format button, choose Hide & Unhide, and choose Hide Columns or Hide Rows.
- ◆ **Unhiding columns and rows:** Select columns to the right and left of the hidden columns, or select rows above and below the hidden rows. To select columns or rows, drag over their letters or numbers. Then go to the Home tab, click the Format button, choose Hide & Unhide, and choose Unhide Columns or Unhide Rows.



It's easy to forget where you hid columns or rows. To make sure all columns and rows in your worksheet are displayed, click the Select All button (or press **Ctrl+A**) to select your entire worksheet. Then go to the Home tab, click the Format button and choose Hide & Unhide⇒Unhide Columns; click the Format button again and choose Hide & Unhide⇒Unhide Rows.

## Your own customized views

After you go to the trouble of freezing the screen or zooming in to a position you're comfortable with, you may as well save your view of the screen as a customized view. That way, you can call upon the customized view whenever you need it. View settings, the window size, the position of the grid on-screen, and cells that are selected can all be saved in a customized view.

Follow these steps to create a customized view:

- 1. On the View tab, click the Custom Views button.**

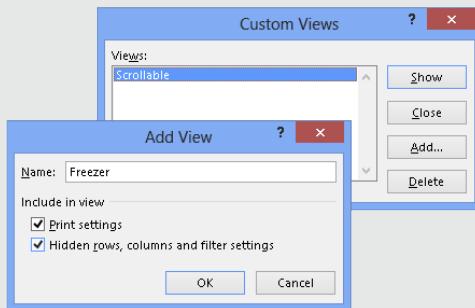
You see the Custom Views dialog box. It lists views you've already created, if you've created any.

- 2. Click the Add button.**

The Add View dialog box appears.

- 3. Enter a name for the view and click OK.**

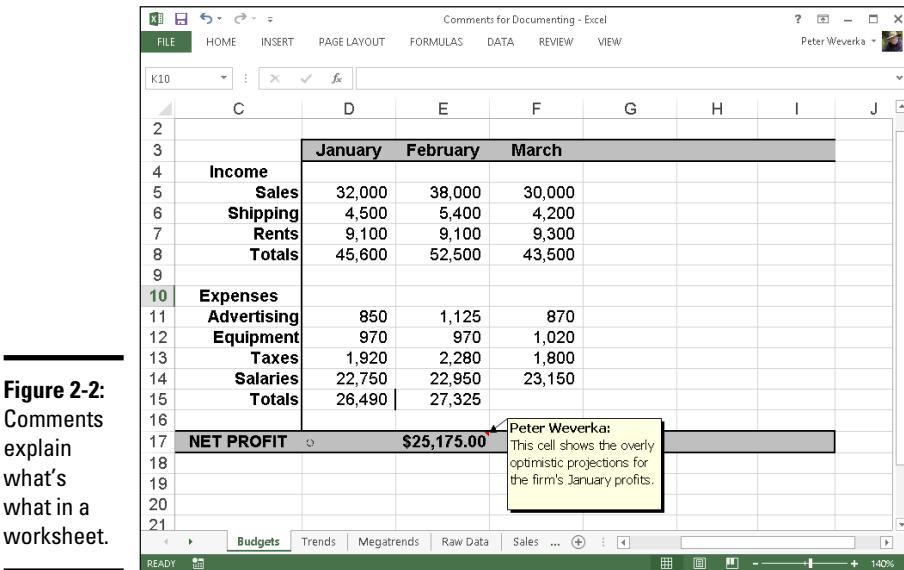
To switch to a customized view, click the Custom Views button, select a view in the Custom Views dialog box, and click the Show button.



## *Comments for Documenting Your Worksheet*

It may happen that you return to your worksheet days or months from now and discover to your dismay that you don't know why certain numbers or formulas are there. For that matter, someone else may inherit your worksheet and be mystified as to what the heck is going on. To take the mystery out of a worksheet, document it by entering comments here and there.

A *comment* is a note that describes part of a worksheet. Each comment is connected to a cell. You can tell where a comment is because a small red triangle appears in the upper-right corner of cells that have been commented on. Move the pointer over one of these triangles and you see the pop-up box, a comment, and the name of the person who entered the comment, as shown in Figure 2-2. Click the Show All Comments button on the Review tab to see every comment in a worksheet.



**Figure 2-2:**  
Comments explain what's what in a worksheet.

Here's everything a mere mortal needs to know about comments:



◆ **Entering a comment:** Click the cell that deserves the comment, go to the Review tab, and click the New Comment button. Enter your comment in the pop-up box. Click in a different cell when you finish entering your comment.



◆ **Reading a comment:** Move the pointer over the small red triangle and read the comment in the pop-up box (refer to Figure 2-2). You can also right-click a cell and choose Show/Hide Comment.



◆ **Finding comments:** On the Review tab, click the Previous or Next button to go from comment to comment.

◆ **Editing a comment:** Select the cell with the comment, and on the Review tab, click the Edit Comment button, and edit the comment in the pop-up box. You can also right-click the cell and choose Edit Comment.

◆ **Deleting comments:** On the Review tab, click a cell with a comment, and then click the Delete button, or right-click the cell and choose Delete Comment. To delete several comments, select them by Ctrl+clicking and then click the Delete button.

◆ **Deleting all comments in a worksheet:** Select all comments and then, on the Review tab, click the Delete button. You can select all comments by clicking the Find & Select button on the Home tab and choosing Comments on the drop-down list.



If your name doesn't appear in the pop-up box after you enter a comment and you want it to appear there, go to the File tab, choose Options, select the General category in the Excel Options dialog box, and enter your name in the User Name text box.

You can print the comments in a worksheet. On the Page Layout tab, click the Page Setup group button, and on the Sheet tab of the Page Setup dialog box, open the Comments drop-down list and choose At End of Sheet or As Displayed on Sheet.

### Selecting Cells in a Worksheet

To format, copy, move, delete, and format numbers and words in a worksheet, you have to select the cells in which the numbers and words are found. Here are ways to select cells and the data inside them:

- ◆ **A block of cells:** Drag diagonally across the worksheet from one corner of the block of cells to the opposite corner. You can also click in one corner and Shift+click the opposite corner.
- ◆ **Adjacent cells in a row or column:** Drag across the cells.
- ◆ **Cells in various places:** While holding down the Ctrl key, click different cells.
- ◆ **A row or rows:** Click a row number to select an entire row. Click and drag down the row numbers to select several adjacent rows.
- ◆ **A column or columns:** Click a column letter to select an entire column. Click and drag across letters to select adjacent columns.
- ◆ **Entire worksheet:** Click the Select All button, the square to the left of the column letters and above the row numbers; press Ctrl+A; or press Ctrl+Shift+Spacebar.



Press Ctrl+Spacebar to select the column that the active cell is in; press Shift+Spacebar to select the row where the active cell is.

You can enter the same data item in several different cells by selecting cells and then entering the data in one cell and pressing Ctrl+Enter. This technique comes in very handy, for example, when you want to enter a placeholder zero (0) in several different cells.

## Deleting, Copying, and Moving Data

In the course of putting together a worksheet, it is sometimes necessary to delete, copy, and move cell contents. Here are instructions for doing these chores:



- ◆ **Deleting cell contents:** Select the cells and then press the Delete key; on the Home tab, click the Clear button and choose Clear Contents; or right-click and choose Clear Contents. (Avoid the Delete button on the Home tab for deleting cell contents. Clicking that button deletes cells as well as their contents.)



- ◆ **Copying and moving cell contents:** Select the cells and use one of these techniques:

- *Cut or Copy and Paste commands:* When you paste the data, click where you want the first cell of the block of cells you're copying or moving to go. (Book I, Chapter 2 explains copying and moving data in detail.) Be careful not to overwrite cells with data in them when you copy or move data. After you paste data, you see the Paste Options button. Click this button and choose an option from the drop-down list to format the data in different ways.
- *Drag and drop:* Move the pointer to the edge of the cell block, click when you see the four-headed arrow, and start dragging. Hold down the Ctrl key to copy the data.

Book III  
Chapter 2

Refining Your Worksheet

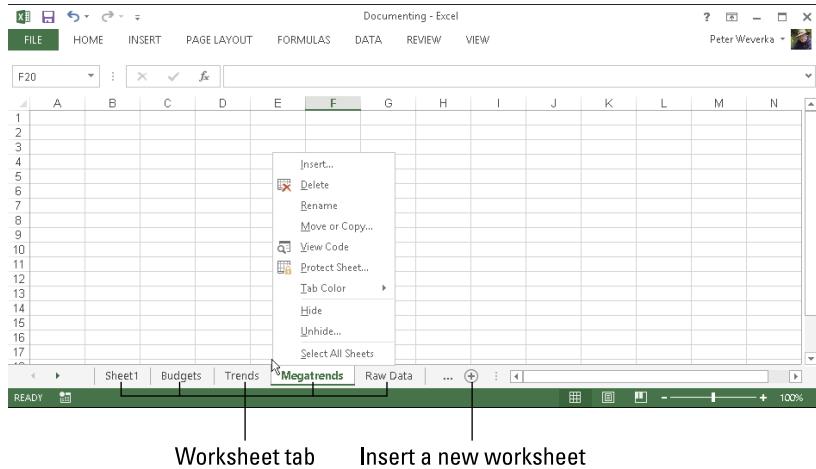
## Handling the Worksheets in a Workbook

A workbook can hold more than one worksheet. Keeping more than one worksheet in the same workbook has advantages. For example, in a workbook that tracks monthly income from rental properties, you can record monthly income on 12 worksheets, 1 for each month. By constructing formulas that calculate income data across the 12 worksheets, you can track annual income from the properties.

As Figure 2-3 shows, Excel places a tab at the bottom of the screen for each worksheet in a workbook. Worksheets are named Sheet1, Sheet2, and so on, but you can change their names. Click a tab to go from worksheet to worksheet. Right-click a tab open a shortcut menu with commands for handling worksheets.

## 248 Handling the Worksheets in a Workbook

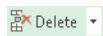
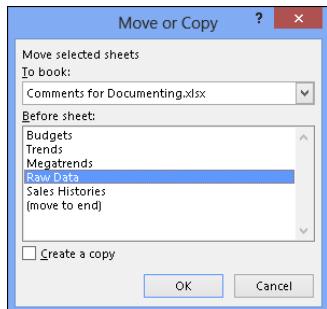
**Figure 2-3:**  
You can  
have  
multiple  
worksheets  
in a  
workbook.



Follow these instructions to move among, add, delete, rename, and change the order of worksheets:

- ◆ **Inserting a new worksheet:** Click the New Sheet button (you can find it in the lower-left corner of the screen to the right of the worksheet tab); press Shift+F11; or on the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Insert button and choose Insert Sheet.
- ◆ **Moving among worksheets:** To go from one worksheet to another, click a worksheet tab along the bottom of the screen. If you can't see a tab, click one of the scroll arrows to the left of the worksheet tabs.
- ◆ **Renaming a worksheet:** Right-click the worksheet tab, choose Rename on the shortcut menu, type a new name, and press Enter. You can also go to the Home tab, click the Format button, choose Rename Sheet on the drop-down list, and enter a new name. Spaces are allowed in names, and names can be 31 characters long. Brackets ([ ]) are allowed in names, but you can't use these symbols: / \ : ? and \*.
- ◆ **Selecting worksheets:** Click the worksheet's tab to select it. To select several worksheets, Ctrl+click their tabs or click the first tab and then Shift+click the last tab in the set. To select all the worksheets, right-click a tab and choose Select All Sheets on the shortcut menu.
- ◆ **Rearranging worksheets:** Drag the worksheet tab to a new location. As you drag, a tiny black arrow and a page icon appear to show you where the worksheet will land after you release the mouse button. You can also select a sheet, go to the Home tab, click the Format button, and choose Move or Copy Sheet on the drop-down list. The Move or Copy dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 2-4. Select the sheet in the Before Sheet list where you want the worksheet to go and click OK.

**Figure 2-4:**  
Besides dragging it, you can move a worksheet in this dialog box.



- ◆ **Deleting a worksheet:** Select the sheet, and on the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Delete button and choose Delete Sheet. You can also right-click a worksheet tab and choose Delete. Be careful, because you can't restore your deleted worksheet by pressing the Undo button.
- ◆ **Copying a worksheet:** Select the sheet, hold down the Ctrl key, and drag the worksheet tab to a new location.
- ◆ **Moving a worksheet to another notebook:** Make sure that the other workbook is open, open the drop-down list on the Format button, and choose Move or Copy Sheet. Then select the other workbook's name in the Move or Copy dialog box and click OK.
- ◆ **Color-coding a worksheet:** Right-click a worksheet tab and choose Tab Color. Then select a color in the submenu, or choose More Colors and select a color in the Colors dialog box.



You can change the size of columns or apply numeric formats to the same addresses in different worksheets by selecting all the sheets first and then formatting one worksheet. The formats apply to all the worksheets that you select. Being able to format several different worksheets simultaneously comes in handy, for example, when your workbook tracks monthly data and each worksheet pertains to one month. Another way to handle worksheets with similar data is to create the first worksheet and copy it to the second, third, and fourth worksheets with the Copy and Paste commands.

## Keeping Others from Tampering with Worksheets

People with savvy and foresight sometimes set up workbooks so that one worksheet holds raw data and the other worksheets hold formulas that calculate the raw data. This technique prevents others from tampering with the raw data. Furthermore, if the worksheet with raw data is hidden, the chance that it will be tampered with is lower; and if the worksheet is protected, people can't

tamper with it unless they have a password. These pages explain how to hide a worksheet so that others are less likely to find it. I also tell you how to protect a worksheet from being edited.

## Hiding a worksheet

Follow these instructions to hide and unhide worksheets:



- ◆ **Hiding a worksheet:** Right-click the worksheet's tab and choose Hide on the shortcut menu. You can also go to the Home tab, click the Format button, and choose Hide & Unhide⇒Hide Sheet.
- ◆ **Unhiding a worksheet:** Right-click any worksheet tab and choose Unhide; or go to the Home tab, click the Format button, and choose Hide & Unhide⇒Unhide Sheet. Then, in the Unhide dialog box, select the sheet you want to unhide and click OK.

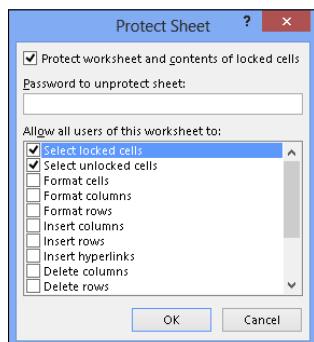
## Protecting a worksheet

Protecting a worksheet means to restrict others from changing it — from formatting it, inserting new rows and columns, or deleting rows and columns, among other tasks. You can also prevent any editorial changes whatsoever from being made to a worksheet. Follow these steps to protect a worksheet from tampering by others:

1. **Select the worksheet that needs protection.**
2. **On the Review tab, click the Protect Sheet button.**



You see the Protect Sheet dialog box shown in Figure 2-5. You can also open this dialog box by going to the Home tab, clicking the Format button, and choosing Protect Sheet.



**Figure 2-5:**  
Select what  
you want  
others to be  
able to do.

3. Enter a password in the Password to Unprotect Sheet box if you want only people with the password to be able to unprotect the worksheet after you protect it.
4. On the Allow All Users of This Worksheet To list, select the check box next to the name of each task that you want to permit others to do.

For example, click the Format Cells check box if you want others to be able to format cells.



Deselect the Select Locked Cells check box to prevent any changes from being made to the worksheet. By default, all worksheet cells are locked, and by preventing others from selecting locked cells, you effectively prevent them from editing any cells.

**5. Click OK.**

If you entered a password in Step 3, you must enter it again in the Confirm Password dialog box and click OK.

To unprotect a worksheet that you protected, go to the Review tab and click the Unprotect Sheet button. You must enter a password if you elected to require others to have a password before they can unprotect a worksheet.



# *Chapter 3: Formulas and Functions for Crunching Numbers*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Constructing a formula
- ✓ Using cell ranges in formulas
- ✓ Naming cell ranges
- ✓ Referring to cells in other worksheets
- ✓ Copying formulas to other columns and rows
- ✓ Preventing errors in formulas
- ✓ Using functions in formulas

**F**ormulas are where it's at as far as Excel is concerned. After you know how to construct formulas, and constructing them is pretty easy, you can put Excel to work. You can make the numbers speak to you. You can turn a bunch of unruly numbers into meaningful figures and statistics.

This chapter explains what a formula is, how to enter a formula, and how to enter a formula quickly. You also discover how to copy formulas from cell to cell and how to keep formula errors from creeping into your workbooks. Finally, this chapter explains how to make use of the hundred or so functions that Excel offers.

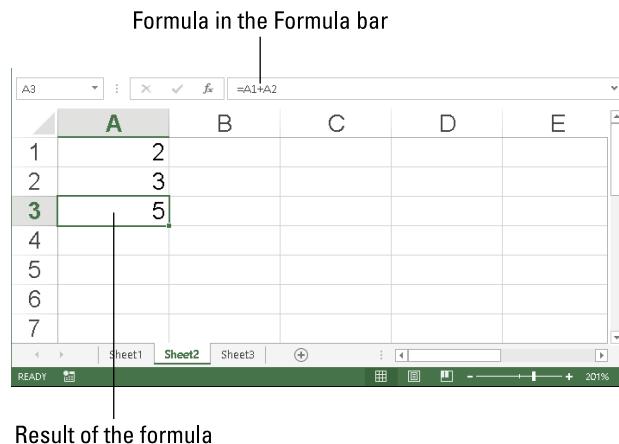
## *How Formulas Work*

A *formula*, you may recall from the sleepy hours you spent in math class, is a way to calculate numbers. For example,  $2+3=5$  is a formula. When you enter a formula in a cell, Excel computes the formula and displays its results in the cell. Click in cell A3 and enter  $=2+3$ , for example, and Excel displays the number 5 in cell A3.

### *Referring to cells in formulas*

As well as numbers, Excel formulas can refer to the contents of different cells. When a formula refers to a cell, the number in the cell is used to compute the formula. In Figure 3-1, for example, cell A1 contains the number 2; cell A2 contains the number 3; and cell A3 contains the formula  $=A1+A2$ . As shown

in cell A3, the result of the formula is 5. If I change the number in cell A1 from 2 to 3, the result of the formula in cell A3 ( $=A1+A2$ ) becomes 6, not 5. When a formula refers to a cell and the number in the cell changes, the result of the formula changes as well.



**Figure 3-1:**  
A simple formula.

To see the value of using cell references in formulas, consider the worksheet shown in Figure 3-2. The purpose of this worksheet is to track the budget of a school's Parent Teacher Association (PTA):

	A	B	C	D	E
1					
2	<b>Income</b>		<i>Actual Income</i>	<i>Projected Income</i>	<i>Over/Under Budget</i>
3	Book Fair		4,876.40	5,500.00	-623.60
4	Dances		1,476.95	1,800.00	-323.05
5	Fundraising		13,175.00	5,000.00	8,175.00
6	Merchandise Sales		5,888.50	7,000.00	-1,111.50
7	Membership Fees		3,918.00	3,000.00	918.00
8	<b>Total Income</b>		\$29,334.85	\$22,300.00	\$7,034.85
9					

**Figure 3-2:**  
Using formulas in a worksheet.

- ◆ Column C, Actual Income, lists income from different sources.
- ◆ Column D, Projected Income, shows what the PTA members thought income from these sources would be.
- ◆ Column E, Over/Under Budget, shows how actual income compares to projected income from the different sources.

As the figures in the Actual Income column (column C) are updated, figures in the Over/Under Budget column (column E) and the Total Income row (row 8) change instantaneously. These figures change instantaneously because the formulas refer to the numbers in cells, not to unchanging numbers (known as *constants*).

Figure 3-3 shows the formulas used to calculate the data in the worksheet in Figure 3-2. In column E, formulas deduct the numbers in column D from the numbers in column C to show where the PTA over- or under-budgeted for the different sources of income. In row 8, you can see how the SUM function is used to total cells in rows 3 through 7. The end of this chapter explains how to use functions in formulas.

A	B	C	D	E
1				
2	<b>Income</b>	<i>Actual Income</i>	<i>Projected Income</i>	<i>Over/Under Budget</i>
3	Book Fair	4876.4	5500	=C3-D3
4	Dances	1476.95	1800	=C4-D4
5	Fundraising	13175	5000	=C5-D5
6	Merchandise Sales	5888.5	7000	=C6-D6
7	Membership Fees	3918	3000	=C7-D7
8	<b>Total Income</b>	=SUM(C3:C7)	=SUM(D3:D7)	=SUM(E3:E7)
9				

**Figure 3-3:**  
The formulas used to generate the numbers in Figure 3-2.



Excel is remarkably good about updating cell references in formulas when you move cells. To see how good Excel is, consider what happens to cell addresses in formulas when you delete a row in a worksheet. If a formula refers to cell C1 but you delete row B, row C becomes row B and the value in cell C1 changes addresses from C1 to B1. You would think that references in formulas to cell C1 would be out of date, but you would be wrong. Excel automatically adjusts all formulas that refer to cell C1. Those formulas now refer to cell B1 instead.



In case you're curious, you can display formulas in worksheet cells instead of the results of formulas, as was done in Figure 3-3, by pressing Ctrl+' (apostrophe) or clicking the Show Formulas button on the Formulas tab (you may have to click the Formula Auditing button first, depending on the size of your screen). Click the Show Formulas button a second time to see formula results again.

## Referring to formula results in formulas

Besides referring to cells with numbers in them, you can refer to formula results in a cell. Consider the worksheet shown in Figure 3-4. The purpose of this worksheet is to track scoring by the players on a basketball team over three games:

- ◆ The Totals column (column E) shows the total points each player scored in the three games.
- ◆ The Average column (column F), using the formula results in the Totals column, determines how much each player has scored on average. The Average column does that by dividing the results in column E by 3, the number of games played.

In this case, Excel uses the results of the total-calculation formulas in column E to compute average points per game in column F.

The figure consists of two screenshots of an Excel spreadsheet, labeled Sheet1.

**Screenshot 1 (Top):** This shows the final state of the data. Column E contains the sum of columns B, C, and D for each player. Column F contains the average of the values in column E. The formulas are not visible in this view.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
		Game 1	Game 2	Game 3	Totals	Average
2						
3	Jones	4	3	7	14	4.7
4	Sacharsky	2	1	0	3	1.0
5	Mellon	11	13	8	32	10.7
6	Gomez	8	11	6	25	8.3
7	Riley	2	0	0	2	0.7
8	Pealer	3	8	4	15	5.0
9	Subrata	13	18	18	49	16.3
10		43	54	43	140	46.7
11						

**Screenshot 2 (Bottom):** This shows the same data with the formulas visible in the cells. The formulas in column E are =B3+C3+D3, =B4+C4+D4, =B5+C5+D5, =B6+C6+D6, =B7+C7+D7, =B8+C8+D8, and =B9+C9+D9. The formulas in column F are =E3/3, =E4/3, =E5/3, =E6/3, =E7/3, =E8/3, and =E9/3.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
		Game 1	Game 2	Game 3	Totals	Average
2						
3	Jones	4	3	7	=B3+C3+D3	=E3/3
4	Sacharsky	2	1	0	=B4+C4+D4	=E4/3
5	Mellon	11	13	8	=B5+C5+D5	=E5/3
6	Gomez	8	11	6	=B6+C6+D6	=E6/3
7	Riley	2	0	0	=B7+C7+D7	=E7/3
8	Pealer	3	8	4	=B8+C8+D8	=E8/3
9	Subrata	13	18	18	=B9+C9+D9	=E9/3
10		=SUM(B3:B9)	=SUM(C3:C9)	=SUM(D3:D9)	=B10+C10+D10	=E10/3
11						

**Figure 3-4:**  
Using  
formula  
results  
as other  
formulas.

## Operators in formulas

Addition, subtraction, and division aren't the only operators you can use in formulas. Table 3-1 explains the arithmetic operators you can use and the key you press to enter each operator. In the table, operators are listed in the order of precedence (see the "The order of preference" sidebar for an explanation of precedence).

**Table 3-1 Arithmetic Operators for Use in Formulas**

Precedence	Operator	Example Formula	Returns
1	% (Percent)	=50%	50 percent, or 0.5
2	^ (Exponentiation)	=50^2,	50 to the second power, or 2500
3	* (Multiplication)	=E2 * 4	The value in cell E2 multiplied by 4
3	/ (Division)	=E2 / 3	The value in cell E2 divided by 3
4	+ (Addition)	=F1+F2+F3,	The sum of the values in those cells
4	- (Subtraction)	=G5-8,	The value in cell G5 minus 8
5	& (Concatenation)	="Part No. &D4	The text <i>Part No.</i> and the value in cell D4
6	= (Equal to)	=C5=4,	If the value in cell C5 is equal to 4, returns TRUE; returns FALSE otherwise
6	<> (Not equal to)	=F3<>9	If the value in cell F3 is <i>not</i> equal to 9, returns TRUE; returns FALSE otherwise
6	< (Less than)	=B9<E11	If the value in cell B9 is less than the value in cell E11; returns TRUE; returns FALSE otherwise
6	<= (Less than or equal to)	=A4<=9	If the value in cell A4 is less than or equal to 9, returns TRUE; returns FALSE otherwise
6	> (Greater than)	=E8>14	If the value in cell E8 is greater than 14, returns TRUE; returns FALSE otherwise
6	>= (Greater than or equal to)	=C3>=D3	If the value in cell C3 is greater than or equal to the value in cell D3; returns TRUE; returns FALSE otherwise

## The order of precedence

When a formula includes more than one operator, the order in which the operators appear in the formula matters a lot. Consider this formula:

$$=2+3*4$$

Does this formula result in 14 ( $2+[3*4]$ ) or 20 ( $[2+3]*4$ )? The answer is 14 because Excel performs multiplication before addition in formulas. In other words, multiplication takes precedence over addition.

The order in which calculations are made in a formula that includes different operators is called the *order of precedence*. Be sure to remember the order of precedence when you construct complex formulas with more than one operator:

1. Percent (%)
2. Exponentiation (^)
3. Multiplication (\*) and division (/); leftmost operations are calculated first
4. Addition (+) and subtraction (-); leftmost operations are calculated first
5. Concatenation (&)
6. Comparison (<, <=, >, >=, and <>)

To get around the order of precedence problem, enclose parts of formulas in parentheses. Operations in parentheses are calculated before all other parts of a formula. For example, the formula  $=2+3*4$  equals 20 when it is written this way:  $=(2+3)*4$ .

Another way to compute a formula is to make use of a function. As “Working with Functions” explains later in this chapter, a function is a built-in formula that comes with Excel. SUM, for example, adds the numbers in cells. AVG finds the average of different numbers.

## *The Basics of Entering a Formula*

No matter what kind of formula you enter, no matter how complex the formula is, follow these basic steps to enter it:

1. Click the cell where you want to enter the formula.
2. Click in the Formula bar if you want to enter the data there rather than the cell.
3. Enter the equal sign (=).

You must be sure to enter the equal sign before you enter a formula. Without it, Excel thinks you’re entering text or a number, not a formula.



**4. Enter the formula.**

For example, enter =B1\*.06. Make sure that you enter all cell addresses correctly. By the way, you can enter lowercase letters in cell references. Excel changes them to uppercase after you finish entering the formula. The next section in this chapter explains how to enter cell addresses quickly in formulas.

**5. Press Enter or click the Enter button (the check mark on the Formula bar).**

The result of the formula appears in the cell.

## *Speed Techniques for Entering Formulas*

Entering formulas and making sure that all cell references are correct is a tedious activity, but fortunately for you, Excel offers a few techniques to make entering formulas easier. Read on to find out how ranges make entering cell references easier and how you can enter cell references in formulas by pointing and clicking. You also find instructions here for copying formulas.

### *Clicking cells to enter cell references*

The hardest part about entering a formula is entering the cell references correctly. You have to squint to see which row and column the cell you want to refer to is in. You have to carefully type the right column letter and row number. However, instead of typing a cell reference, you can click the cell you want to refer to in a formula.

In the course of entering a formula, simply click the cell on your worksheet that you want to reference. As shown in Figure 3-5, shimmering marquee lights appear around the cell that you clicked so that you can clearly see which cell you're referring to. The cell's reference address, meanwhile, appears in the Formula bar. In Figure 3-5, I clicked cell F3 instead of entering its reference address on the Formula bar. The reference F3 appears on the Formula bar, and the marquee lights appear around cell F3.

Get in the habit of pointing and clicking cells to enter cell references in formulas. Clicking cells is easier than typing cell addresses, and the cell references are entered more accurately.

**Figure 3-5:**  
Clicking to enter a cell reference.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	Sales by Quarter							
2		Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	Totals		
3	North	23,456	41,281	63,421	42,379	=C3+D3+E3+F3		
4	East	4,881	8,907	4,897	6,891			
5	West	42,571	37,191	50,178	47,098			
6	South	5,719	6,781	5,397	4,575			
7								
8								

POINT 118%

## Entering a cell range

A *cell range* is a line or block of cells in a worksheet. Instead of typing cell reference addresses one at a time, you can simply select cells on your worksheet. In Figure 3-6, I selected cells C3, D3, E3, and F3 to form cell range C3:F3. This spares me the trouble of entering one at a time the cell addresses that I want in the range. The formula in Figure 3-6 uses the SUM function to total the numeric values in cell range C3:F3. Notice the marquee lights around the range C3:F3. The lights show precisely which range you’re selecting. Cell ranges come in especially handy where functions are concerned (see “Working with Functions,” later in this chapter).

**Figure 3-6:**  
Using a cell range in a formula.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	Sales by Quarter							
2		Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	Totals		
3	North	23,456	41,281	63,421	42,379	=SUM(C3:F3)		
4	East	4,881	8,907	4,897	6,891			
5	West	42,571	37,191	50,178	47,098			
6	South	5,719	6,781	5,397	4,575			
7								
8								

ENTER 118%

To identify a cell range, Excel lists the outermost cells in the range and places a colon (:) between cell addresses:

- ◆ A cell range comprising cells A1, A2, A3, and A4 is listed this way: A1:A4.
- ◆ A cell range comprising a block of cells from A1 to D4 is listed this way: A1:D4.

You can enter cell ranges on your own without selecting cells. To do so, type the first cell in the range, enter a colon (:), and type the last cell.

## Naming cell ranges so that you can use them in formulas

Whether you type cell addresses yourself or drag across cells to enter a cell range, entering cell address references is a chore. Entering =C1+C2+C3+C4, for example, can cause a finger cramp; entering =SUM(C1:C4) is no piece of cake, either.

To take the tedium out of entering cell ranges in formulas, you can name cell ranges. Then, to enter a cell range in a formula, all you have to do is select a name in the Paste Name dialog box or click the Use in Formula button on the Formulas tab, as shown in Figure 3-7. Naming cell ranges has an added benefit: You can choose a name from the Name Box drop-down list and go directly to the cell range whose name you choose, as shown in Figure 3-7.

The screenshot shows a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet titled "Speed Techniques for entering - Excel". The spreadsheet contains a table with columns for Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, and Totals. Row 3 contains values for the North, East, West, and South regions. The formula in cell G3 is =SUM(

	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	Totals
North	23,456	41,281	63,421	42,379	=SUM(
East	4,881	8,907	4,897	6,891	
West	42,571	37,191	50,178	47,098	
South	5,719	6,781	5,397	4,575	

A context menu is open over the formula in cell G3, with the "Use in Formula" option selected. A "Paste Name" dialog box is also open, showing the names "East", "North", "South", and "West" in the list. The "OK" button is highlighted.

**Figure 3-7:**  
Choosing a  
named cell  
range.



Naming cell ranges has one disadvantage, and it's a big one. Excel doesn't adjust cell references when you copy a formula with a range name from one cell to another. A range name always refers to the same set of cells. Later in this chapter, "Copying Formulas from Cell to Cell" explains how to copy formulas.

### ***Creating a cell range name***

Follow these steps to create a cell range name:

- 1. Select the cells that you want to name.**
- 2. On the Formulas tab, click the Define Name button.**  
You see the New Name dialog box.
- 3. Enter a descriptive name in the Name box.**  
Names can't begin with a number or include blank spaces.
- 4. On the Scope drop-down list, choose Workbook or a worksheet name.**  
Choose a worksheet name if you intend to use the range name you're creating only in formulas that you construct in a single worksheet. If your formulas will refer to cell range addresses in different worksheets, choose Workbook so that you can use the range name wherever you go in your workbook.
- 5. Enter a comment to describe the range name, if you want.**  
Enter a comment if doing so will help you remember where the cells you're naming are located or what type of information they hold. As I explain shortly, you can read comments in the Name Manager dialog box, the place where you go to edit and delete range names.
- 6. Click OK.**



In case you're in a hurry, here's a fast way to enter a cell range name: Select the cells for the range, click in the Name Box (you can find it on the left side of the Formula bar, as shown in Figure 3-7), enter a name for the range, and press the Enter key.

### ***Entering a range name as part of a formula***

To include a cell range name in a formula, click in the Formula bar where you want to enter the range name and then use one of these techniques to enter the name:



- ◆ On the Formulas tab, click the Use in Formula button and choose a cell range name on the drop-down list (refer to Figure 3-7).
- ◆ Press F3 or click the Use in Formula button and choose Paste Names on the drop-down list. You see the Paste Name dialog box (refer to Figure 3-7). Select a cell range name and click OK.

### **Quickly traveling to a cell range that you named**

To go quickly to a cell range you named, open the drop-down list on the Name Box and choose a name (refer to Figure 3-7). The Name Box drop-down list is located on the left side of the Formula bar.

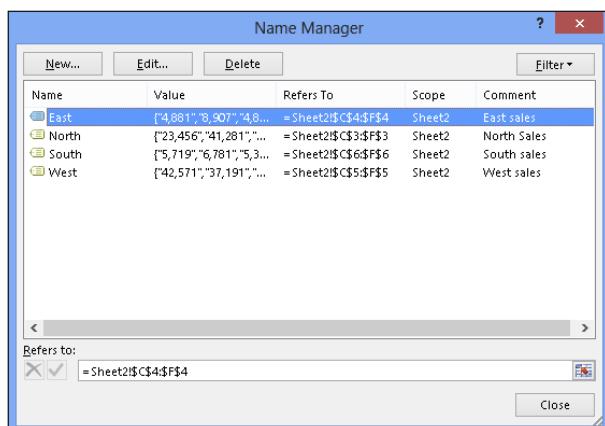
To make this trick work, the cursor can't be in the Formula bar. The Name Box drop-down list isn't available when you're constructing a formula.

### **Managing cell range names**



To rename, edit, or delete cell range names, go to the Formulas tab and click the Name Manager button. You see the Name Manager dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-8. This dialog box lists names, cell values in names, the worksheet on which the range name is found, and whether the range name can be applied throughout a workbook or only in one worksheet. To rename, edit, or delete a cell range name, select it in the dialog box and use these techniques:

- ◆ **Renaming:** Click the Edit button and enter a new name in the Edit Name dialog box.
- ◆ **Reassigning cells:** To assign different cells to a range name, click the Edit button. You see the Edit Name dialog box. To enter a new range of cells, either enter the cells' addresses in the Refers To text box or click the Range Selector button (it's to the right of the text box), drag across the cells on your worksheet that you want for the cell range, and click the Cell Selector button again to return to the Edit Name dialog box.
- ◆ **Deleting:** Click the Delete button and click OK in the confirmation box.



**Figure 3-8:**  
The Name  
Manager  
dialog box.

## Referring to cells in different worksheets

Excel gives you the opportunity to use data from different worksheets in a formula. If one worksheet lists sales figures from January and the next lists sales figures from February, you can construct a “grand total” formula in either worksheet to tabulate sales in the two-month period. A reference to a cell on a different worksheet is called a *3D reference*.

Construct the formula as you normally would, but when you want to refer to a cell or cell range in a different worksheet, click a worksheet tab to move to the other worksheet and select the cell or range of cells there. Without returning to the original worksheet, complete your formula in the Formula bar and press Enter. Excel returns you to the original worksheet, where you can see the results of your formula.



The only odd thing about constructing formulas across worksheets is the cell references. As a glance at the Formula bar tells you, cell addresses in cross-worksheet formulas list the sheet name and an exclamation point (!) as well as the cell address itself. For example, this formula in Sheet 1 adds the number in cell A4 to the numbers in cells D5 and E5 in Sheet 2:

=A4+Sheet2!D5+Sheet2!E5

This formula in Sheet 2 multiplies the number in cell E18 by the number in cell C15 in Worksheet 1:

=E18\*Sheet1!C15

This formula in Sheet 2 finds the average of the numbers in the cell range C7:F7 in Sheet 1:

=AVERAGE(Sheet1!C7:F7)

## Copying Formulas from Cell to Cell

Often in worksheets, you use the same formula across a row or down a column, but different cell references are used. For example, in the worksheet shown in Figure 3-9, column F totals the rainfall figures in rows 7 through 11. To enter formulas for totaling the rainfall figures in column F, you could laboriously enter formulas in cells F7, F8, F9, F10, and F11. But a faster way is to enter the formula once in cell F7 and then copy the formula in F7 down the column to cells F8, F9, F10, and F11.

The figure consists of two screenshots of an Excel spreadsheet. Both screenshots show a table with columns labeled Winter, Spring, Summer, Fall, and Totals. Row 7 contains the formula  $=B7+C7+D7+E7$ . In the top screenshot, the AutoFill handle is being dragged from cell F7 down to cell F11. In the bottom screenshot, the formula has been copied down to rows 8 through 11, resulting in totals of 31.8, 29.7, 39.9, and 25 respectively.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
6		Winter	Spring	Summer	Fall	Totals	
7	Sonoma	13	8.3	2.3	8.2	31.8	
8	Napa	11.5	7.6	3.1	7.5		
9	Mendocino	15.8	12.9	2.9	8.3		
10	San Francisco	10.9	9.7	1.1	3.3		
11	Contra Costa	10.1	8.4	2.3	4.4		
12							
13							

Drag outside selection to extend series or fill; drag inside to clear

Sheet1 Sheet2 Sheet3 + 175%

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
6		Winter	Spring	Summer	Fall	Totals	
7	Sonoma	13	8.3	2.3	8.2	31.8	
8	Napa	11.5	7.6	3.1	7.5	29.7	
9	Mendocino	15.8	12.9	2.9	8.3	39.9	
10	San Francisco	10.9	9.7	1.1	3.3	25	
11	Contra Costa	10.1	8.4	2.3	4.4	25.2	
12							
13							

Drag outside selection to extend series or fill; drag inside to clear

Sheet1 Sheet2 Sheet3 + 175%

**Figure 3-9:**  
Copying a formula.



When you copy a formula to a new cell, Excel adjusts the cell references in the formula so that the formula works in the cells to which it has been copied. Astounding! Opportunities to copy formulas abound on most worksheets. And copying formulas is the fastest and safest way to enter formulas in a worksheet.

Follow these steps to copy a formula:

1. Select the cell with the formula you want to copy down a column or across a row.
2. Drag the AutoFill handle across the cells to which you want to copy the formula.

This is the same AutoFill handle you drag to enter serial data (see Chapter 1 of this mini-book about entering lists and serial data with the AutoFill command). The AutoFill handle is the small green square in the lower-right corner of the cell. When you move the mouse pointer over it, it changes to a black cross. Figure 3-9 shows a formula being copied.

### 3. Release the mouse button.

If I were you, I would click in the cells to which you copied the formula and glance at the Formula bar to make sure that the formula was copied correctly. I'd bet you it was.

You can also copy formulas with the Copy and Paste commands. Just make sure that cell references refer correctly to the surrounding cells.

## Detecting and Correcting Errors in Formulas

It happens. Everyone makes an error from time to time when entering formulas in cells. Especially in a worksheet in which formula results are calculated into other formulas, a single error in one formula can spread like a virus and cause miscalculations throughout a worksheet. To prevent that calamity, Excel offers several ways to correct errors in formulas. You can correct them one at a time, run the error checker, and trace cell references, as the following pages explain.



By the way, if you want to see formulas in cells instead of formula results, go to the Formulas tab and click the Show Formulas button or press Ctrl+' (apostrophe). Sometimes seeing formulas this way helps to detect formula errors.

### Correcting errors one at a time

When Excel detects what it thinks is a formula that has been entered incorrectly, a small green triangle appears in the upper-left corner of the cell where you entered the formula. And if the error is especially egregious, an *error message*, a cryptic three- or four-letter display preceded by a pound sign (#), appears in the cell. Table 3-2 explains common error messages.

**Table 3-2****Common Formula Error Messages**

<i>Message</i>	<i>What Went Wrong</i>
#DIV/0!	You tried to divide a number by a zero (0) or an empty cell.
#NAME	You used a cell range name in the formula, but the name isn't defined. Sometimes this error occurs because you type the name incorrectly. (Earlier in this chapter, "Naming cell ranges so that you can use them in formulas" explains how to name cell ranges.)
#N/A	The formula refers to an empty cell, so no data is available for computing the formula. Sometimes people enter N/A in a cell as a placeholder to signal the fact that data isn't entered yet. Revise the formula or enter a number or formula in the empty cells.
#NULL	The formula refers to a cell range that Excel can't understand. Make sure that the range is entered correctly.
#NUM	An argument you use in your formula is invalid.
#REF	The cell or range of cells that the formula refers to aren't there.
#VALUE	The formula includes a function that was used incorrectly, takes an invalid argument, or is misspelled. Make sure that the function uses the right argument and is spelled correctly.



To find out more about a formula error and perhaps correct it, select the cell with the green triangle and click the Error button. This small button appears beside a cell with a formula error after you click the cell. The drop-down list on the Error button offers opportunities for correcting formula errors and finding out more about them.

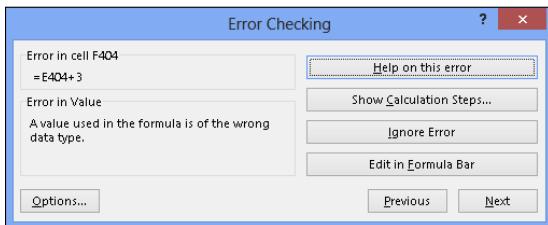


### **Running the error checker**

Another way to tackle formula errors is to run the error checker. When the checker encounters what it thinks is an error, the Error Checking dialog box tells you what the error is, as shown in Figure 3-10. To run the error checker, go to the Formulas tab and click the Error Checking button (you may have to click the Formula Auditing button first, depending on the size of your screen).

If you see clearly what the error is, click the Edit in Formula Bar button, repair the error in the Formula bar, and click the Resume button in the dialog box (you find this button at the top of the dialog box). If the error isn't one that really needs correcting, either click the Ignore Error button or click the Next button to send the error checker in search of the next error in your worksheet.

**Figure 3-10:**  
Running  
the error  
checker.

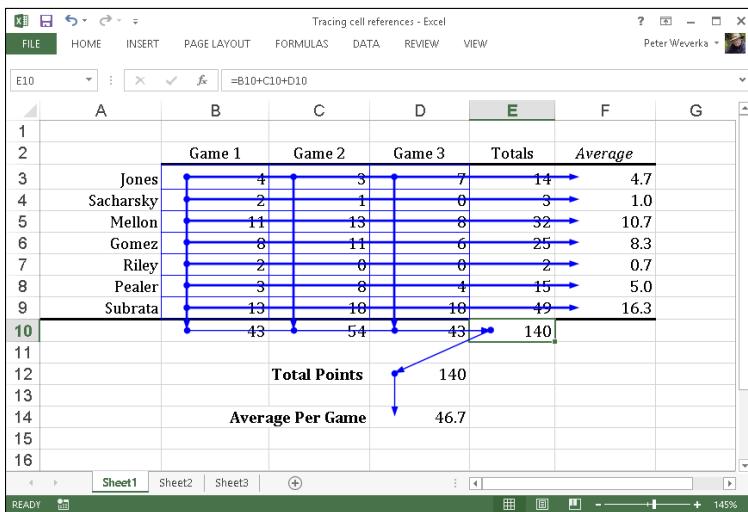


## Tracing cell references

In a complex worksheet in which formulas are piled on top of one another and the results of some formulas are computed into other formulas, it helps to be able to trace cell references. By tracing cell references, you can see how the data in a cell figures into a formula in another cell; or, if the cell contains a formula, you can see which cells the formula gathers data from to make its computation. You can get a better idea of how your worksheet is constructed, and in so doing, find structural errors more easily.

Figure 3-11 shows how cell tracers describe the relationships between cells. A *cell tracer* is a blue arrow that shows the relationships between cells used in formulas. You can trace two types of relationships:

**Figure 3-11:**  
Tracing the  
relationships  
between  
cells.





- ◆ **Tracing precedents:** Select a cell with a formula in it and trace the formula's *precedents* to find out which cells are computed to produce the results of the formula. Trace precedents when you want to find out where a formula gets its computation data. Cell tracer arrows point from the referenced cells to the cell with the formula results in it.

To trace precedents, go to the Formulas tab and click the Trace Precedents button (you may have to click the Formula Auditing button first, depending on the size of your screen).



- ◆ **Tracing dependents:** Select a cell and trace its *dependents* to find out which cells contain formulas that use data from the cell you selected. Cell tracer arrows point from the cell you selected to cells with formula results in them. Trace dependents when you want to find out how the data in a cell contributes to formulas elsewhere in the worksheet. The cell you select can contain a constant value or a formula in its own right (and contribute its results to another formula).

To trace dependents, go to the Formulas tab and click the Trace Dependents button (you may have to click the Formula Auditing button first, depending on the size of your screen).



- To remove the cell tracer arrows from a worksheet, go to the Formulas tab and click the Remove Arrows button. You can open the drop-down list on this button and choose Remove Precedent Arrows or Remove Dependent Arrows to remove only cell-precedent or cell-dependent tracer arrows.

## Working with Functions

A *function* is a canned formula that comes with Excel. Excel offers hundreds of functions, some of which are very obscure and fit only for use by rocket scientists or securities analysts. Other functions are very practical. For example, you can use the SUM function to quickly total the numbers in a range of cells. Rather than enter =C2+C3+C4+C5 on the Formula bar, you can enter =SUM(C2 : C5), which tells Excel to total the numbers in cell C2, C3, C4, and C5. To obtain the product of the number in cell G4 and .06, you can use the PRODUCT function and enter =PRODUCT(G4, .06) on the Formula bar.



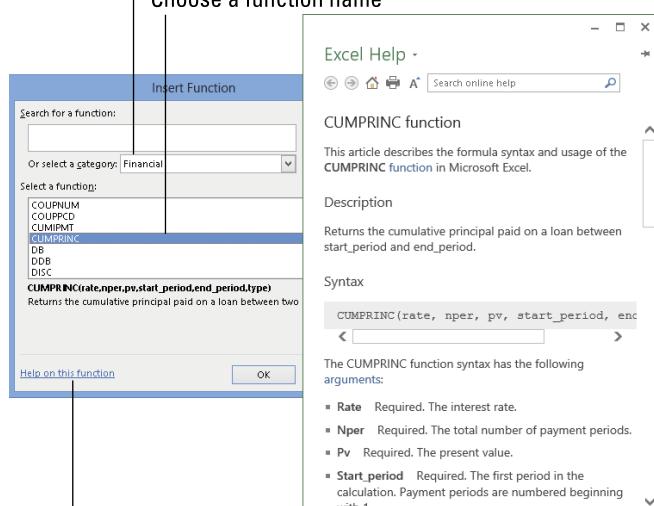
Table 3-3 lists the most common functions. To get an idea of the numerous functions that Excel offers, go to the Formulas tab and click the Insert Function button. You see the Insert Function dialog box shown in Figure 3-12. (Later in this chapter, I show you how this dialog box can help with using functions in formulas.) Choose a function category in the dialog box, choose a function name, and read the description. You can click the Help on This Function link to open the Excel Help window and get a thorough description of a function and how it's used.

**Table 3-3****Common Functions and Their Use**

<b>Function</b>	<b>Returns</b>
AVERAGE(number1,number2,...)	The average of the numbers in the cells listed in the arguments.
COUNT(value1,value2,...)	The number of cells that contain the numbers listed in the arguments.
MAX(number1,number2,...)	The largest value in the cells listed in the arguments.
MIN(number1,number2,...)	The smallest value in the cells listed in the arguments.
PRODUCT(number1,number2,...)	The product of multiplying the cells listed in the arguments.
STDEV(number1,number2,...)	An estimate of standard deviation based on the sample cells listed in the argument.
STDEVP(number1,number2,...)	An estimate of standard deviation based on the entire sample cells listed in the arguments.
SUM(number1,number2,...)	The total of the numbers in the arguments.
VAR(number1,number2,...)	An estimate of the variance based on the sample cells listed in the arguments.
VARP(number1,number2,...)	A variance calculation based on all cells listed in the arguments.

Choose a category

Choose a function name



**Figure 3-12:**  
The Insert  
Function  
dialog box.

Click to learn more



## Using arguments in functions

Every function takes one or more *arguments*. Arguments are the cell references or numbers, enclosed in parentheses, which the function acts upon. For example, =AVERAGE(B1:B4) returns the average of the numbers in the cell range B1 through B4; =PRODUCT(6.5,C4) returns the product of multiplying the number 6.5 by the number in cell C4. When a function requires more than one argument, enter a comma between the arguments (enter a comma without a space).

## Entering a function in a formula

To enter a function in a formula, you can enter the function name by typing it in the Formula bar, or you can rely on Excel to enter it for you. Enter function names yourself if you're well acquainted with a function and comfortable using it.

No matter how you want to enter a function as part of a formula, start this way:

- 1. Select the cell where you want to enter the formula.**
- 2. In the Formula bar, type an equal sign (=).**



Please, please, please be sure to start every formula by entering an equal sign (=). Without it, Excel thinks you're entering text or a number in the cell.

- 3. Start constructing your formula, and when you come to the place where you want to enter the function, type the function's name or call upon Excel to help you enter the function and its arguments.**

Later in this chapter, "Manually entering a function" shows how to type in the function yourself; "Getting Excel's help to enter a function" shows how to get Excel to do the work.

If you enter the function on your own, it's up to you to type the arguments correctly; if you get Excel's help, you also get help with entering the cell references for the arguments.

## Manually entering a function

Be sure to enclose the function's argument or arguments in parentheses. Don't enter a space between the function's name and the first parenthesis. Likewise, don't enter a comma and a space between arguments; enter a comma, nothing more:

=SUM(F11,F14,23)

## Quickly entering a formula and function

Excel offers the AutoSum button and Quick Analysis button for quickly entering formulas that include a function.

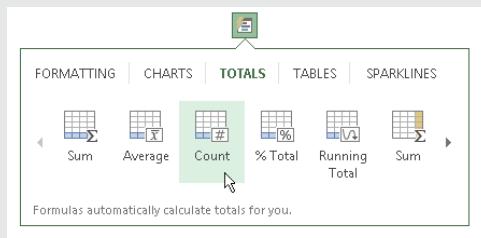
Click the cell where you want the results of your formula to appear and try these techniques for constructing formulas with the AutoSum button:

- ✓ On the Home or Formulas tab, click the AutoSum button to total nearby cells.
- ✓ On the Home or Formulas tab, open the drop-down list on the AutoSum button and choose Sum, Average, Count Numbers, Max, or Min. Respectively, these functions total, average, obtain the number of, obtain the highest value in, or obtain the lowest value in nearby cells.

Excel takes an educated guess as to which cells need totaling, averaging, or whatever, and quickly enters a formula for you.

Use the Quick Analysis button to construct a formula with the SUM, AVERAGE, or COUNT function, or one of their variations:

- 1. Select the cells that will be used as arguments by the function.**  
The Quick Analysis button appears.
- 2. Click the Quick Analysis button.**
- 3. Choose Totals in the pop-up window.**
- 4. Move the pointer over the various functions and glance at your worksheet to see the results of your formulas.**
- 5. Select a function.**

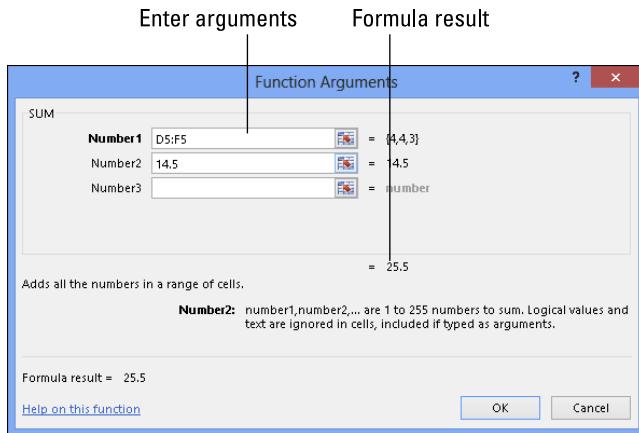


You can enter function names in lowercase. Excel converts function names to uppercase after you click the Enter button or press Enter to complete the formula. Entering function names in lowercase is recommended because doing so gives you a chance to find out whether you entered a function name correctly. If Excel doesn't convert your function name to uppercase, you made a typing error when you entered the function name.

### *Getting Excel's help to enter a function*

Besides entering a function by typing it, you can do it by way of the Function Arguments dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-13. The beauty of using this

dialog box is that it warns you if you enter arguments incorrectly. What's more, the Function Arguments dialog box shows you the results of the formula as you construct it so that you can tell whether you're using the function correctly.



**Figure 3-13:**  
The  
Function  
Arguments  
dialog box.

Follow these steps to get Excel's help with entering a function as part of a formula:

### 1. On the Formulas tab, tell Excel which function you want to use.

You can do that with one of these techniques:

- **Click a Function Library button:** Click the button whose name describes what kind of function you want and choose the function's name on the drop-down list. You can click the Financial, Logical, Text, Date & Time, Lookup & Reference, Math & Trig, or More Functions buttons.
- **Click the Recently Used button:** Click this button and choose the name of a function you used recently.
- **Click the Insert Function button:** Clicking this button opens the Insert Function dialog box (refer to Figure 3-12). Find and choose the name of a function. You can search for functions or choose a category and then scroll the names until you find the function you want.

You see the Function Arguments dialog box (refer to Figure 3-13). It offers boxes for entering arguments for the function to compute.



**2. Enter arguments in the spaces provided by the Function Arguments dialog box.**

To enter cell references or ranges, you can click or select cells in your worksheet. If necessary, click the Range Selector button (you can find it to the right of an argument text box) to shrink the Function Arguments dialog box and get a better look at your worksheet.

**3. Click OK when you finish entering arguments for your function.**

I hope you didn't have to argue too strenuously with the Function Arguments dialog box.

# ***Chapter 4: Making a Worksheet Easier to Read and Understand***

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ✓ Aligning numbers and text
- ✓ Changing column and row sizes
- ✓ Applying cell styles to data in cells
- ✓ Splashing color on a worksheet
- ✓ Drawing borders between cells and titles
- ✓ Making worksheets fit well on the page
- ✓ Preparing a worksheet before you print it

This short and pithy chapter explains how to dress a worksheet in its Sunday best in case you want to print and present it to others. It explains how to align numbers and text, insert rows and columns, and change the size of rows and columns. You find out how to decorate a worksheet with colors and borders as well as create and apply styles to make formatting tasks go more quickly. Finally, this chapter describes everything you need to know before you print a worksheet, including how to make it fit on one page and repeat row labels and column names on all pages.

## ***Laying Out a Worksheet***

Especially if you intend to print your worksheet, you may as well dress it in its Sunday best. And you can do a number of things to make worksheets easier to read and understand. You can change character fonts. You can draw borders around or shade important cells. You can also format the numbers so that readers know, for example, whether they’re staring at dollar figures or percentages. This part of Chapter 4 is dedicated to the proposition that a worksheet doesn’t have to look drab and solemn.

## Merging and centering text across several cells

In the illustration shown here, “Sales Totals by Regional Office” is centered across four different cells. Normally, text is left aligned, but if you want to center it across several cells, drag across the cells to select them, go to the Home tab, and click the Merge & Center button. Merging and centering allows you to display text across several columns.

To “unmerge and uncenter” cells, select the text that you merged and centered, open the drop-down list on the Merge & Center button, and choose Unmerge Cells. You can also deselect the Merge Cells check box in the Format Cells dialog box (refer to Figure 4-2).

B	C	D	E	F	G
Sales Totals by Regional Office					
	North	West	East	South	

## Aligning numbers and text in columns and rows

To start with, numbers in worksheets are right-aligned in cells, and text is left-aligned. Numbers and text sit squarely on the bottom of cells. You can, however, change the way that data is aligned. For example, you can make data float at the top of cells rather than rest at the bottom, and you can center or justify data in cells. Figure 4-1 illustrates different ways to align text and numbers. How text is aligned helps people make sense of your worksheets. In Figure 4-1, for example, Income and Expenses are left-aligned so that they stand out and make it clearer what the right-aligned column labels below are all about.

Select the cells whose alignment needs changing and follow these instructions to realign data in the cells:

- ◆ **Changing the horizontal (side-to-side) alignment:** On the Home tab, click the Align Left, Center, or Align Right button. You can also click the Alignment group button, and on the Alignment tab of the Format Cells dialog box, choose an option on the Horizontal drop-down list. Figure 4-2 shows the Format Cells dialog box.
- ◆ **Changing the vertical (top-to-bottom) alignment:** On the Home tab, click the Top Align, Middle Align, or Bottom Align button. You can also click the Alignment group button to open the Format Cells dialog box (refer to Figure 4-2) and choose an option on the Vertical drop-down list. The Justify option makes all the letters or numbers fit in a cell, even if it means wrapping text to two or more lines.



- ♦ **Reorienting the cells:** On the Home tab, click the Orientation button and choose an option on the drop-down list. (For Figure 4-2, I chose the Angle Counterclockwise option.) You can also click the Alignment group button, and on the Alignment tab of the Format Cells dialog box (refer to Figure 4-2), drag the diamond in the Orientation box or enter a number in the Degrees text box.

Left-aligned

Wrapped Right-aligned

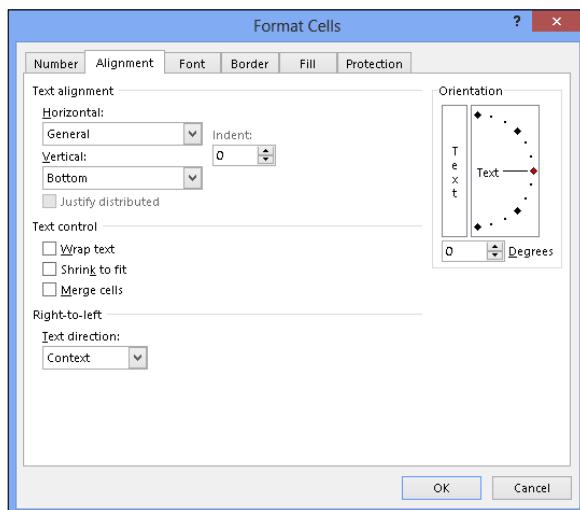
Reoriented

		January	February	March	April	Totals	Average
<i>Budget Data for Quarter 1</i>							
<i>Income</i>							
Sales	32,000	34,000	30,000	31,000	127,000	31,750	
Shipping	4,500	4,700	4,200	4,300	17,700	4,425	
Rents	9,100	9,100	9,300	9,300	36,800	9,200	
<i>Totals</i>	45,600	47,800	43,500	44,600	181,500	45,375	
<i>Expenses</i>							
Advertising	850	850	870	870	3,440	860	
Equipment	970	970	1,020	1,020	3,980	995	
Taxes	1,920	2,040	1,800	1,860	7,620	1,905	
Salaries	22,750	22,950	23,150	23,300	92,150	23,038	
<i>Totals</i>	26,490	26,810	26,840	27,050	107,190	26,798	
<b>NET PROFIT</b>	<b>\$19,110</b>	<b>\$20,990</b>	<b>\$16,660</b>	<b>\$17,550</b>	<b>\$74,310</b>	<b>\$18,578</b>	

**Figure 4-1:**  
Ways to align data.

Book III  
Chapter 4

Making a  
Worksheet Easier  
to Read and  
Understand



**Figure 4-2:**  
The Alignment tab of the Format Cells dialog box.



Changing the orientation of text in cells is an elegant solution to the problem of keeping a worksheet from getting too wide. Numbers are usually a few characters wide, but heading labels can be much wider than that. By changing the orientation of a heading label, you make columns narrower and keep worksheets from growing too wide to fit on the screen or page.

### ***Inserting and deleting rows and columns***

At some point, everybody has to insert new columns and rows and delete ones that are no longer needed. Make sure before you delete a row or column that you don't delete data that you really need. Do the following to insert and delete rows and columns:



- ◆ **Deleting rows or columns:** Drag across the row numbers or column letters of the rows or columns you want to delete; then right-click and choose Delete, or, on the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Delete button and select Delete Sheet Rows or Delete Sheet Columns.



- ◆ **Inserting rows:** Select the row below the row you want to insert; then, on the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Insert button and choose Insert Sheet Rows, or right-click the row you selected and choose Insert on the shortcut menu. For example, to insert a new row above row 11, select the current row 11 before choosing Insert Sheet Rows. You can insert more than one row at a time by selecting more than one row before giving the Insert Sheet Rows command.

- ◆ **Inserting columns:** Select the column to the right of where you want the new column to be; then, on the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Insert button and choose Insert Sheet Columns, or right-click the column you selected and choose Insert on the shortcut menu. You can insert more than one column this way by selecting more than one column before giving the Insert command.



A fast way to insert several rows or columns is to insert one and keep pressing F4 (the Repeat command) until you insert all the rows or columns you need.



After you insert rows or columns, the Insert Options button appears. Click it and choose an option from the drop-down list if you want your new row or column to have the same or different formats as the row or column you selected to start the Insert operation.

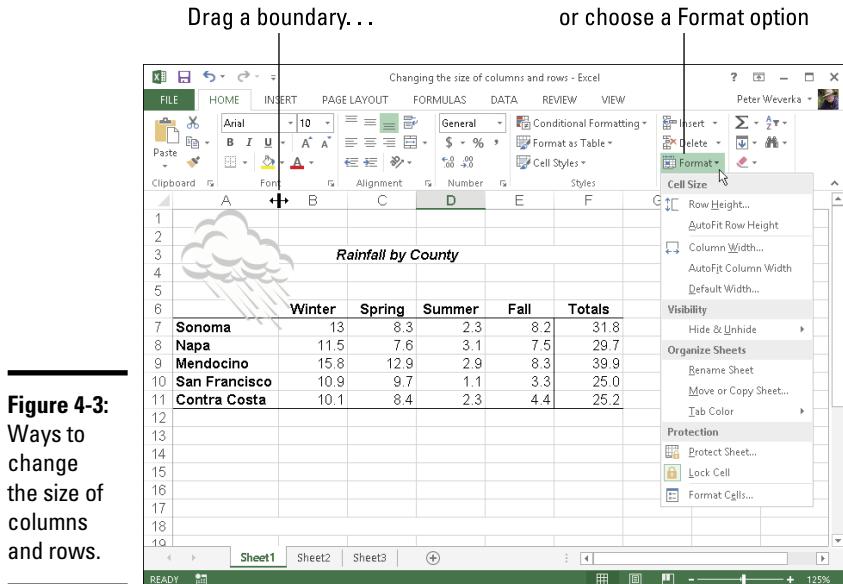


To insert more than one row or column at a time, select more than one row number or column letter before giving the Insert command.

## Changing the size of columns and rows

By default, columns are 8.43 characters wide. To make columns wider, you have to widen them yourself. Rows are 12.75 points high, but Excel makes them higher when you enter letters or numbers that are taller than 12.75 points (72 points equals one inch). Excel offers a bunch of different ways to change the size of columns and rows. You can start on the Home tab and choose options on the Format button drop-down list, as shown in Figure 4-3, or you can rely on your wits and change sizes manually by dragging or double-clicking the boundaries between row numbers or column letters.

Before you change the size of columns or rows, select them (Chapter 2 of this mini-book explains how). Click or drag across row numbers to select rows; click or drag across column letters to select columns.



**Figure 4-3:**  
Ways to  
change  
the size of  
columns  
and rows.

### Adjusting the height of rows

Here are ways to change the height of rows:

- ◆ **One at a time:** Move the mouse pointer onto the boundary between row numbers and, when the pointer changes to a cross, drag the boundary between rows up or down. A pop-up box tells you how tall the row will be after you release the mouse button.



- ◆ **Several at a time:** Select several rows and drag the boundary between one of the rows. When you do so, all rows change height. You can also go to the Home tab, click the Format button, choose Row Height, and enter a measurement in the Row Height dialog box.
- ◆ **Tall as the tallest entry:** To make a row as tall as its tallest cell entry, double-click the border below a row number (after you've selected a row) or go to the Home tab, click the Format button, and choose AutoFit Row Height.

### *Adjusting the width of columns*

Here are ways to make columns wider or narrower:



- ◆ **One at a time:** Move the mouse pointer onto the boundary between column letters, and when the pointer changes to a cross, drag the border between the columns. A pop-up box tells you what size the column is.
- ◆ **Several at a time:** Select several columns and drag the boundary between one of the columns; all columns adjust to the same width. You can also go to the Home tab, click the Format button, choose Column Width, and enter a measurement in the Column Width dialog box.
- ◆ **As wide as their entries:** To make columns as wide as their widest entries, select the columns, go to the Home tab, click the Format button, and choose AutoFit Column Width on the drop-down list. You can also double-click the right border of a column letter. By "auto-fitting" columns, you can be certain that the data in each cell in a column appears on-screen.

To change the 8.43-character standard width for columns in a worksheet, go to the Home tab, click the Format button, choose Default Width on the drop-down list, and enter a new measurement in the Standard Width dialog box.

## *Decorating a Worksheet with Borders and Colors*

The job of gridlines is simply to help you line up numbers and letters in cells. By default, gridlines aren't printed, and because gridlines aren't printed, drawing borders on worksheets is absolutely necessary if you intend to print your worksheet. Use borders to steer the reader's eye to the most important parts of your worksheet — the totals, column labels, and heading labels. You can also decorate worksheets with colors. This part of the chapter explains how to put borders and colors on worksheets.

## Cell styles for quickly formatting a worksheet

A style is a collection of formats — boldface text, a background color, or a border around cells — that can be applied all at once to cells without having to visit a bunch of different dialog boxes or give a bunch of different commands. Styles save time. If you find yourself choosing the same formatting commands time and time again, consider creating a style. That way, you can apply all the formats simultaneously and go to lunch earlier. Excel comes with many built-in styles, and you can create styles of your own, as the following pages explain.

### Applying a built-in cell style

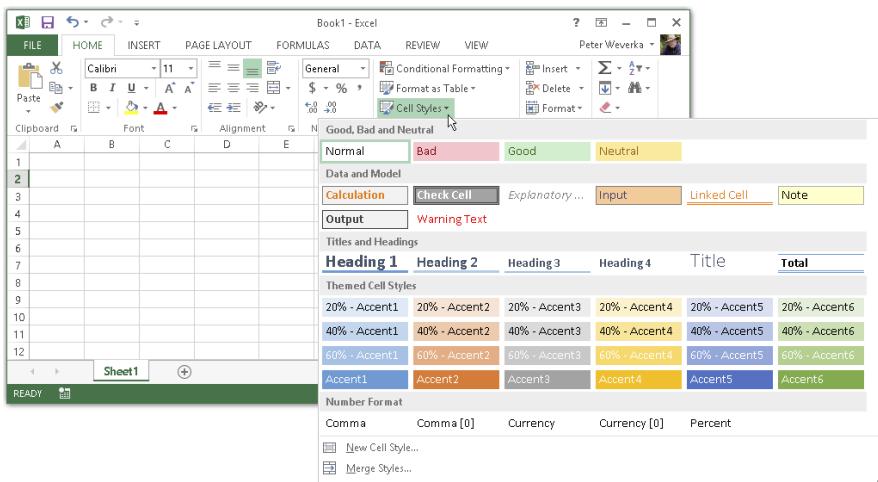
By way of the Cell Styles gallery, you can choose from any number of attractive styles for cells in a worksheet. Excel offers styles for titles and headings, styles for calling attention to what kind of data is in cells, and styles to accent cells. Follow these steps to reformat cells by choosing a cell style:

- 1. Select the cells that need a new look.**
- 2. On the Home tab, click the Cell Styles button.**

As shown in Figure 4-4, the Cell Styles gallery opens.

- 3. Select a cell style.**

The Cell Styles gallery is divided into categories. Scroll through the categories until you find a style that suits your purposes.



**Figure 4-4:**  
Choosing a  
new style  
from the  
Cell Styles  
gallery.



To remove a style from cells, select the cells, open the Cell Styles gallery, and choose Normal. (You find Normal in the "Good, Bad and Neutral" category.)

### ***Creating your own cell style***

The names of cell styles you create on your own are placed at the top of the Cell Styles gallery under the Custom heading. Create a cell style if you're the creative type or if no built-in style meets your high standards. Follow these steps to create a cell style:

- 1. Apply the formatting commands you want for your style to a single cell.**

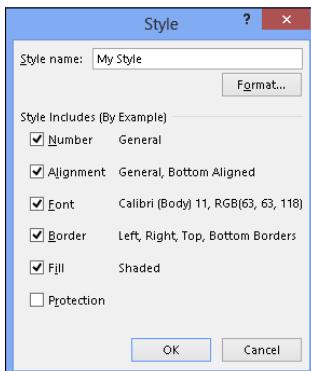
For example, left-align cell data. Or apply a fill color to the cells (see "Decorating worksheets with colors," later in this chapter). Or change fonts and font sizes. Knock yourself out. Choose all the formatting commands you want for your new style.

- 2. On the Home tab, click the Cell Styles button to open the Cell Styles gallery.**

Depending on the size of your screen, you may have to click the Styles button and then click the More button first.

- 3. Choose New Cell Style at the bottom of the gallery.**

You see the Style dialog box shown in Figure 4-5. It lists formatting specifications that you chose for the cell you selected in Step 1. If these specifications aren't what you're after, or if you want to change a specification, you can click the Format button and construct your new style in the Format Cells dialog box.



**Figure 4-5:**  
Creating a  
new style  
for the  
Cell Styles  
gallery.

4. Enter a descriptive name for your style in the Style Name text box.
5. Click OK.

Next time you open the Cell Styles gallery, you see the name of your style at the top under Custom.

To remove a style you created from the Cell Styles gallery, right-click its name in the gallery and choose Delete on the shortcut menu.

## **Formatting cells with table styles**

Especially if your worksheet data is arranged neatly into columns and rows so that it looks like a conventional table, one of the easiest ways to decorate cells is to take advantage of table styles. Excel offers many preformatted table styles that you can apply to columns and rows on a worksheet.

Follow these steps to experiment with table styles:



1. Select the cells you want to format as a table.
  2. On the Home tab, click the Format As Table button and select a table style in the gallery.
- The Format As Table dialog box appears.
3. If the cells you want to format include headers, the labels at the top of column rows that describe the data in the columns below, select the My Table Has Headers check box.
  4. Click OK in the Format As Table dialog box.

You can go to the (Table Tools) Design tab to refine your table. Click the Quick Styles button on the (Table Tools) Design tab and choose a different table style in the gallery if you don't care for the style you chose.

To remove a table style from cells, select the cells, go to the (Table Tools) Design tab, and choose Clear in the Quick Styles gallery.

As Chapter 5 of this mini-book explains, choosing the Format As Table command can be a way to filter and sort table data. This is why the Format As Table command places filter buttons in the first row of tables. To remove these filter buttons, deselect the Filter Button check box on the (Table Tools) Design tab.

## Slapping borders on worksheet cells

Put borders on worksheet cells to box in cells, draw lines beneath cells, or draw lines along the side of cells. Borders can direct people who review your worksheet to its important parts. Typically, for example, a line appears above the Totals row of a worksheet to separate the Totals row from the rows above and help readers locate cumulative totals.

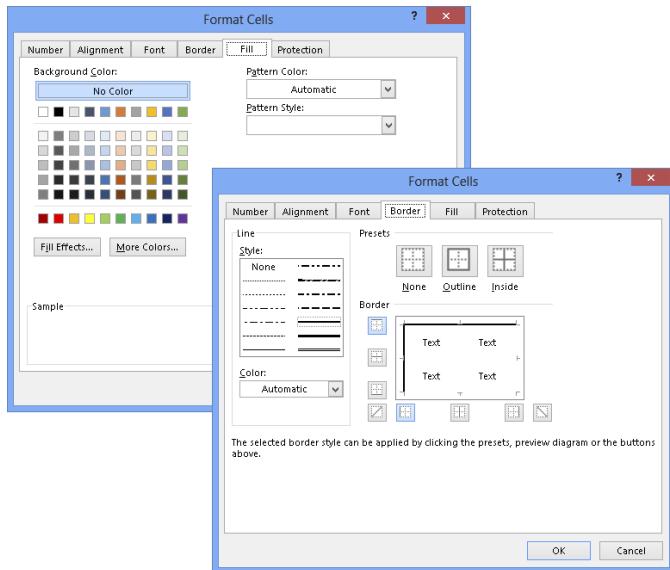
To draw borders on a worksheet, start by selecting the cells around which or through which you want to place borders. Then do one of the following to draw the borders:



- ◆ **Borders button:** On the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Borders button (it's in the Font group) and choose a border, as shown in Figure 4-6.
- ◆ **Drawing:** On the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Borders button and choose Draw Border or Draw Border Grid. Then drag on the screen to draw the borders. Press Esc when you finish drawing.
- ◆ **Format Cells dialog box:** On the Home tab, click the Format button and choose Format Cells, or choose More Borders on the Borders button drop-down list. The Format Cells dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 4-7. On the Border tab, select a border style and either click in the Border box to tell Excel where to draw the border or click a Presets button. The Border tab offers different lines for borders and colors for borderlines as well.

	2005	2006	2007	2008
<b>East</b>	1413	2423	4320	982
<b>West</b>	9023	3429	4329	3981
<b>North</b>	4902	8927	7921	9823
<b>South</b>	3820	7290	6530	1948
	21,163	24,075	25,107	18,742

**Figure 4-6:**  
Drawing a  
border with  
the Borders  
button.



**Figure 4-7:**  
Go to the  
Format Cells  
dialog box  
to apply  
color (left)  
or draw  
borders  
(right).

To remove the border from cells, select the cells, open the drop-down list on the Borders button, and choose No Border.

Book III  
Chapter 4

Making a  
Worksheet Easier  
to Read and  
Understand

## Decorating worksheets with colors

Apply background colors to cells to make them stand out or help the people who review your worksheets understand how they are laid out. Select the cells that need a background color and use these techniques to splash color on your worksheet:



- ◆ On the Home tab, click the Format button and choose Format Cells on the drop-down list. You see the Format Cells dialog box. On the Fill tab, select a color and click OK. Figure 4-7 shows what the Fill tab looks like.
- ◆ On the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Fill Color button and select a color.

## Getting Ready to Print a Worksheet

Printing a worksheet isn't simply a matter of giving the Print command. A worksheet is a vast piece of computerized sprawl. Most worksheets don't fit neatly on a single page. If you simply click the Print button to print your worksheet, you wind up with page breaks in unexpected places, both on the right side of the page and the bottom. Read on to discover how to set up a worksheet so that the people you hand it to can read and understand it.

## Making a worksheet fit on a page

Unless you tell it otherwise, Excel prints everything from cell A1 to the last cell with data in it in the southeast corner of the worksheet. Usually, it isn't necessary to print all those cells because some of them are blank. And printing an entire worksheet often means breaking the page up in all kinds of awkward places. To keep that from happening, following are some techniques for making a worksheet fit tidily on one or two pages.



As you experiment with the techniques described here, switch occasionally to Page Layout view. In this view, you get a better idea of what your worksheet will look like when you print it. To switch to Page Layout view, click the Page Layout button on the status bar or View tab.

### Printing part of a worksheet



To print part of a worksheet, select the cells you want to print, go to the Page Layout tab, click the Print Area button, and choose Set Print Area on the drop-down list. This command tells Excel to print only the cells you selected. On the worksheet, a box appears around cells in the print area. To remove the box from your worksheet, click the Print Area button and choose Clear Print Area on the drop-down list.

### Printing a landscape worksheet

If your worksheet is too wide to fit on one page, try turning the page on its side and printing in landscape mode. In landscape mode, pages are wider than they are tall. Landscape mode is often the easiest way to fit a worksheet on a page.



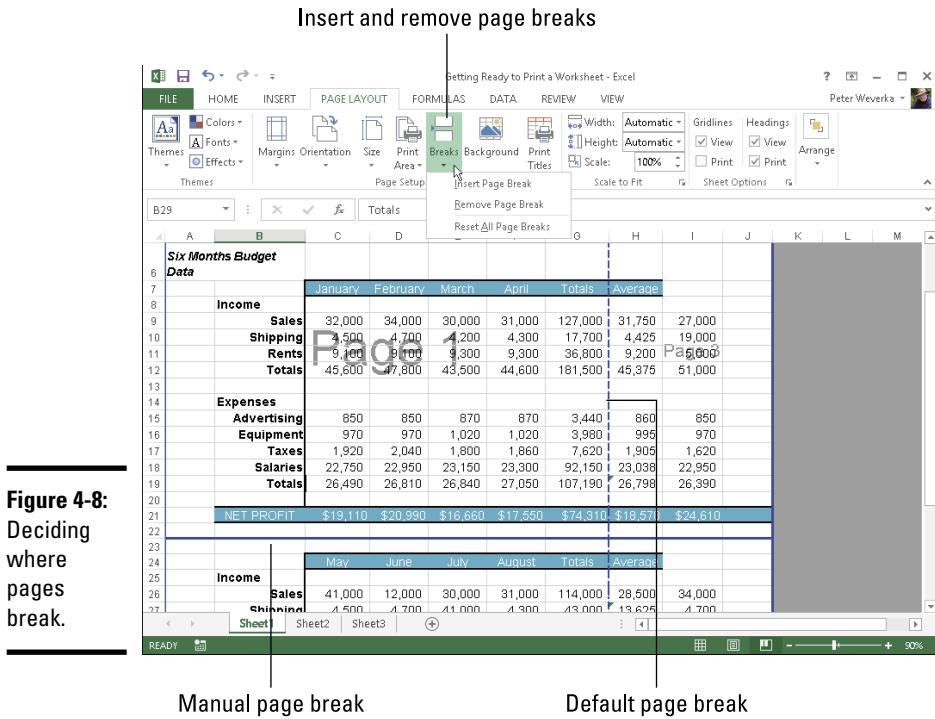
To make yours a landscape worksheet instead of a portrait worksheet, go to the Page Layout tab, click the Orientation button, and choose Landscape on the drop-down list.

### Seeing and adjusting the page breaks

Reading a worksheet is extremely difficult when it's broken awkwardly across pages. Where one page ends and the next begins is a *page break*. Use these techniques to see where page breaks occur, adjust the position of page breaks, and insert and remove page breaks:



- ◆ **Viewing where page breaks occur:** Click the Page Break Preview button on the status bar or View tab. As shown in Figure 4-8, you switch to Page Break Preview view. In this view, page numbers appear clearly on the worksheet and dashed lines show you where Excel wants to break the pages.



**Figure 4-8:**  
Deciding  
where  
pages  
break.

Book III  
Chapter 4

Making a  
Worksheet Easier  
to Read and  
Understand

- ◆ **Adjusting page break positions:** In Page Break Preview view, drag a dashed line to adjust the position of a page break. After you drag a dashed line, it ceases being a default page break and becomes a manual page break. Manual page breaks are marked by solid lines, not dashed lines (see Figure 4-8). You can drag them, too. Excel shrinks the numbers and letters on your worksheet if you try to squeeze too much data on a worksheet by dragging a page break.
- ◆ **Inserting a page break:** Select the cell directly below where you want the horizontal break to occur and directly to the right of where you want the vertical break to be, go to the Page Layout tab, click the Breaks button, and choose Insert Page Break (see Figure 4-8). Drag a page break to adjust its position.
- ◆ **Removing a page break:** Select a cell directly below or directly to the right of the page break, go to the Page Layout tab, click the Breaks button, and choose Remove Page Break (see Figure 4-8).
- ◆ **Removing all manual page breaks:** To remove all manual page breaks you inserted, go to the Page Layout tab, click the Breaks button, and choose Reset All Page Breaks.



Switch to Page Layout or Normal view after you're done fooling with page breaks. You can clearly see page breaks in Page Layout view. In Normal view, page breaks are marked by a dotted line.

### ***"Scaling to fit" a worksheet***

To scale the numbers and letters in a worksheet and make them a bit smaller so that they fit on a page, you can experiment with the Scale to Fit options. These options are located on the Page Layout tab. Starting in Page Layout view, go to the Page Layout tab and test-drive these options to make your worksheet fit on a single page or a certain number of pages:

- ◆ **Scaling by width:** Open the Width drop-down list and choose an option to make your worksheet fit across one or more pages. Choose the 1 Page option, for example, to squeeze a worksheet horizontally so that it fits on one page.
- ◆ **Scaling by height:** Open the Height drop-down list and choose an option to make your worksheet fit across on a select number of pages. For example, choose the 2 Pages option to shrink a worksheet vertically so that it fits on two pages.
- ◆ **Scaling by percentage:** Enter a percentage measurement in the Scale box to shrink a worksheet vertically and horizontally. To scale this way, you must choose Automatic in the Width and Height drop-down lists.



You can also fit a worksheet on a select number of pages by going to the Page Setup dialog box shown in Figure 4-9. With this technique, you get a chance to "print-preview" your worksheet and get a better look at it after you change the scale. On the Page Layout tab, click the Page Setup group button to open the Page Setup dialog box. On the Page tab of the dialog box, select the Fit To option button and enter the ideal number of pages you want for your worksheet in the Page(s) Wide By and Tall text boxes. Excel shrinks the data as much as is necessary to make it fit on the number of pages you asked for. Click the Print Preview button to preview your worksheet in the Print window and find out whether shrinking your worksheet this way helps.

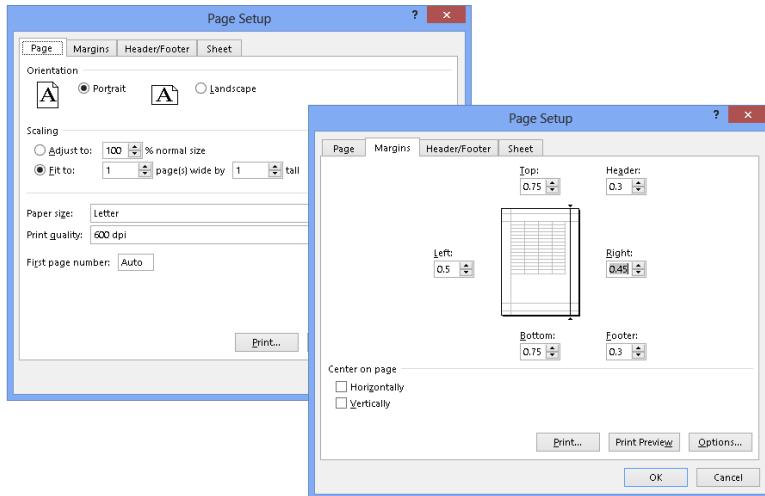
### ***Adjusting the margins***

Another way to stuff all the data onto one page is to narrow the margins a bit. Go to the Page Layout tab and use either of these techniques to adjust the size of the margins:



- ◆ Click the Margins button and choose Narrow on the drop-down list.
- ◆ Click the Page Setup group button, and on the Margins tab of the Page Setup dialog box, change the size of the margins, as shown in Figure 4-9. By clicking the Print Preview button, you can preview your worksheet in the Print window and adjust margins there by dragging them. Select the

Show Margins button to display the margins. (This little button is in the lower-right corner of the Print window.)

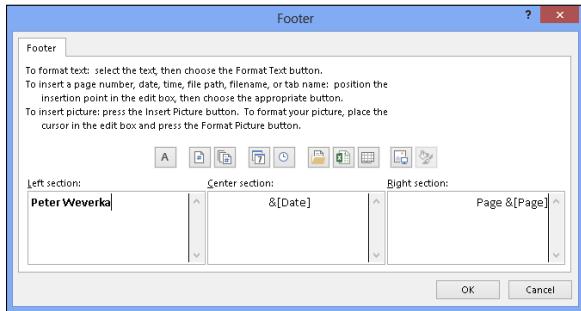


**Figure 4-9:**  
The Page  
(left) and  
Margins tab  
(right) of the  
Page Setup  
dialog box.

## Making a worksheet more presentable

Before you print a worksheet, visit the Page Setup dialog box and see what you can do to make your worksheet easier for others to read and understand. To open the Page Setup dialog box, go to the Page Layout tab and click the Page Setup group button. Here are your options:

- ◆ **Including page numbers on worksheets:** On the Page tab of the Page Setup dialog box (refer to Figure 4-9), enter 1 in the First Page Number text box. Then, on the Header/Footer tab, open the Header or Footer drop-down list and choose an option that includes a page number. Choosing the Page 1 of ? option, for example, enters the page number and the total number of pages in the worksheet in your header or footer.
- ◆ **Putting headers and footers on pages:** On the Header/Footer tab of the Page Setup dialog box, choose options from the Header and Footer drop-down lists. You can find options for listing the file name, page numbers, the date, and your name. By clicking the Custom Header or Custom Footer button, you can open the Header or Footer dialog box and construct a header or footer there. Figure 4-10 shows the Footer dialog box.



**Figure 4-10:**  
Constructing  
a fancy  
footer.

- ◆ **Centering worksheet data on the page:** On the Margins tab of the page Setup dialog box, select Horizontally or Vertically to center the worksheet relative to the top or bottom or sides of the page. You can select both check boxes. The preview screen shows what your choices mean in real terms.
- ◆ **Printing gridlines, column letters, and row numbers:** By default, the gridlines, column letters, and row numbers that you know and love in a worksheet aren't printed, but you can print them by going to the Sheet tab of the Page Setup dialog box and selecting the Gridlines check box as well as the Row and Column Headings check box.

### *Repeating row and column headings on each page*

If your worksheet is a big one that stretches beyond one page, you owe it to the people who view your worksheet to repeat row and column headings from page to page. Without these headings, no one can tell what the data in the worksheet means. Follow these steps to repeat row and column headings from page to page:



1. **On the Page Layout tab, click the Print Titles button.**

You see the Sheet tab of the Page Setup dialog box.

2. **Select the Row and Column Headings check box.**

You can find this check box under Print.

3. **To repeat rows, click the Range Selector button next to the Rows to Repeat at Top text box; to repeat columns, click the Range Selector button next to the Columns to Repeat at Left text box.**

These buttons are located on the right side of the dialog box. The dialog box shrinks so that you can get a better look at your worksheet.

**4. Select the row or column with the labels or names you need.**

As long as they're next to each other, you can select more than one row or column by dragging over the row numbers or column letters.

**5. Click the Range Selector button to enlarge the dialog box and see it again.**

The text box now lists a cell range address.

**6. Repeat Steps 3 through 5 to select column or row headings.****7. Click OK to close the Page Setup dialog box.**

If I were you, I would click the Print Preview button in the Page Setup dialog box first to make sure that row and column headings are indeed repeating from page to page.

To remove row and column headings, return to the Sheet tab of the Page Setup dialog box and delete the cell references in the Rows to Repeat at Top text box and the Columns to Repeat at Left text box. You can also press Ctrl+F3 and delete Print\_Titles in the Name Manager dialog box.



# ***Chapter 5: Advanced Techniques for Analyzing Data***

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ✓ Generating a sparkline chart
- ✓ Sorting information in a worksheet list
- ✓ Filtering a list to find the information you need
- ✓ Using the Goal Seek command to produce formula results
- ✓ Performing what-if analyses with data tables
- ✓ Examining data with a PivotTable

**T**his chapter offers a handful of tricks for analyzing the data that you so carefully and lovingly enter in a worksheet. Delve into this chapter to find out what sparklines are and how to manage, sort, and filter data in lists. You also discover how the Goal Seek command can help you target values in different kinds of analyses, and how you can map out different scenarios with data by using one- and two-input data tables. Finally, this chapter explains how a PivotTable can help turn an indiscriminate list into a meaningful source of information.

## ***Seeing What the Sparklines Say***

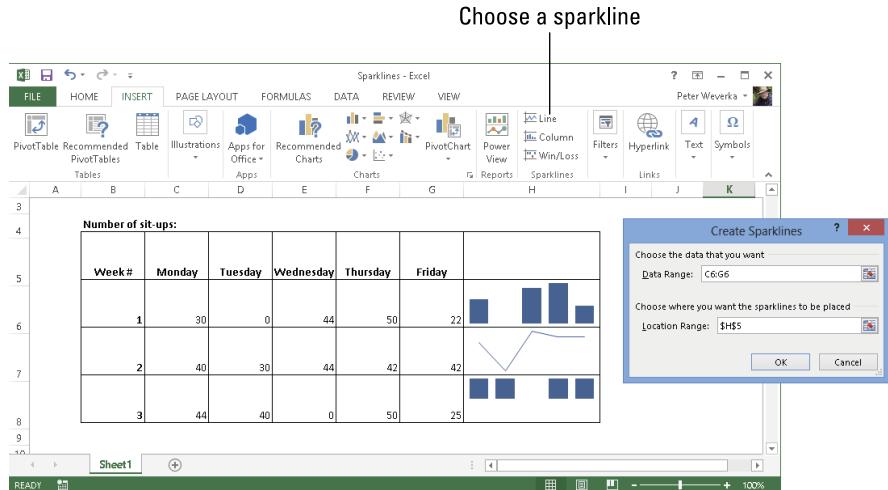
Maybe the easiest way to analyze information in a worksheet is to see what the sparklines say. Figure 5-1 shows examples of sparklines. In the form of a tiny line or bar chart, sparklines tell you about the data in a row or column.

Follow these steps to create a sparkline chart:

- 1. Select the cell where you want the chart to appear.**
- 2. On the Insert tab, click the Line, Column, or Win/Loss button.**  
The Create Sparklines dialog box appears.
- 3. Drag in a row or column of your worksheet to select the cells with the data you want to analyze.**
- 4. Click OK in the Create Sparklines dialog box.**

To change the look of a sparkline chart, go to the (Sparkline Tools) Design tab. There you will find commands for changing the color of the line or bars, choosing a different sparkline type, and doing one or two other things to pass the time on a rainy day. Click the Clear button to remove a sparkline chart.

**Figure 5-1:**  
Sparklines  
in action  
(top to  
bottom):  
Column,  
Line, and  
Win/Loss.



You can also create a sparkline chart with the Quick Analysis button. Drag over the cells with the data you want to analyze. When the Quick Analysis button appears, click it, choose Sparklines in the pop-up window, and then choose Line, Column, or Win/Loss.



## Managing Information in Lists

Although Excel is a spreadsheet program, many people use it to keep and maintain lists, such as the list shown in Figure 5-2. Addresses, inventories, and employee data are examples of information that typically is kept in lists. These pages explain how to sort and filter a list to make it yield more information. Sort a list to put it in alphabetical or numeric order; filter a list to isolate the information you need.



Before you attempt to sort or filter a list, select a cell in the list. Excel can't tell where a list is in a worksheet — it can't sort or filter information — until you select a cell in the list.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
3		Product ID	Product Name	Unit Cost	Packaging Cost	Shipping Cost	Sale Per Unit	Profit	Warehouse	Supervisor	
4		11114	Cricker	3.34	0.27	0.33	6.12	2.18	LaRue	Smity	
5		11118	Crumpet	2.99	0.24	0.18	7.00	3.59	Trenton	Munoz	
6		11109	Culet	4.16	0.17	0.32	6.01	1.36	Trenton	Munoz	
7		11117	Doublet	9.46	1.01	0.99	14.33	2.87	Pickford	Salazaar	
8		11101	Gasket	2.24	0.29	0.89	4.14	0.72	Pickford	Salazaar	
9		11107	Knacker	14.31	3.14	0.45	20.98	3.08	Massy	Yee	
10		11115	Knicker	8.78	1.01	0.89	10.79	0.11	Trenton	Munoz	
11		11111	Knocker	23.08	2.10	0.89	32.89	6.82	Trenton	Munoz	
12		11105	Placker	7.39	0.98	1.11	12.14	2.66	Pickford	Salazaar	
13		11104	Pludget	6.41	0.29	0.32	7.69	0.87	Massy	Yee	
14		11113	Rammer	2.15	0.16	0.32	5.10	2.47	Massy	Yee	
15		11110	Ropper	13.44	2.89	0.79	21.43	4.31	LaRue	Smith	

**Figure 5-2:**  
A list in a  
worksheet.

## Sorting a list

Sorting means to rearrange the rows in a list on the basis of data in one or more columns. Sort a list on the Last Name column, for example, to arrange the list in alphabetical order by last name. Sort a list on the ZIP Code column to arrange the rows in numerical order by ZIP Code. Sort a list on the Birthday column to arrange it chronologically from earliest born to latest born.

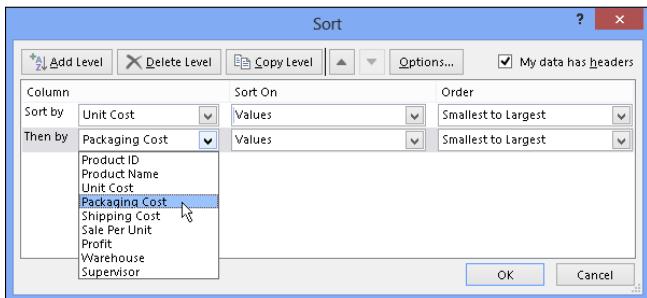
Starting on the Data tab, here are all the ways to sort a list:



Sort

- ◆ **Sorting on a single column:** Click any cell in the column you want to use as the basis for the sort; then click the Sort Smallest to Largest or Sort Largest to Smallest button. (On the Home tab, you can get to these buttons by clicking the Sort & Filter button first.) For example, to sort item numbers from smallest to largest, click in the Item Number column and then click the Sort Smallest to Largest button.
- ◆ **Sort on more than one column:** Click the Sort button on the Data tab. You see the Sort dialog box, as shown in Figure 5-3. Choose which columns you want to sort with and the order in which you want to sort. To add a second or third column for sorting, click the Add Level button.

**Figure 5-3:**  
Sort to  
arrange the  
list data in  
different  
ways.



### Filtering a list

Filtering means to scour a worksheet list for certain kinds of data. To filter, you tell Excel what kind of data you're looking for, and the program assembles rows with that data to the exclusion of rows that don't have the data. You end up with a shorter list with only the rows that match your filter criteria. Filtering is similar to using the Find command except that you get more than one row in the results of the filtering operation. For example, in a list of addresses, you can filter for addresses in California. In a price list, you can filter for items that fall within a certain price range.

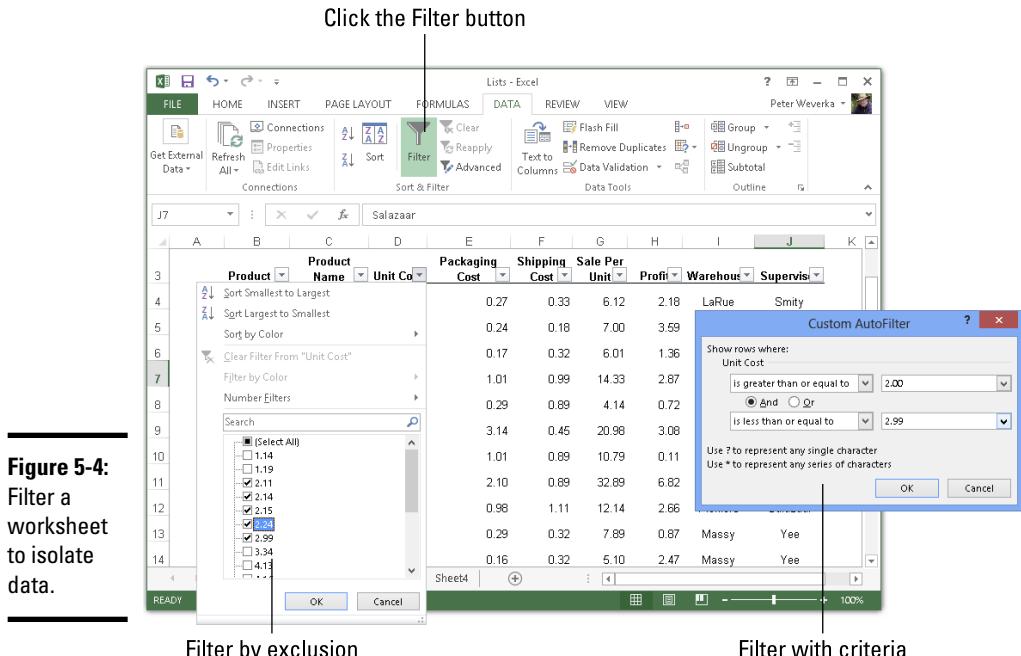


To filter data, your list needs column headers, the descriptive labels in the first row that describe what is in the columns below. Excel needs column headers to identify and be able to filter the data in the rows. Each column header must have a different name.



To filter a list, start by going to the Data tab and clicking the Filter button. As shown in Figure 5-4, a drop-down list appears beside each column header.

Your next task is to open a drop-down list in the column that holds the criteria you want to use to filter the list. For example, if you want to filter the list to items that cost more than \$100, open the Cost column drop-down list; if you want to filter the list so that only the names of employees who make less than \$30,000 annually appears, open the Salary drop-down list.



**Figure 5-4:**  
Filter a  
worksheet  
to isolate  
data.

After you open the correct column drop-down list, tell Excel how you want to filter the list:

- ◆ **Filter by exclusion:** On the drop-down list, deselect the Select All check box and then select the check box next to each item you *don't* want to filter out. For example, to filter an Address list for addresses in Boston, Chicago, and Miami, deselect the Select All check box and then select the check boxes next to Boston, Chicago, and Miami on the drop-down list. Your filter operation turns up only addresses in those three cities.
- ◆ **Filter with criteria:** On the drop-down list, choose Number Filters, and then choose a filter operation on the submenu (or simply choose Custom Filter). You see the Custom AutoFilter dialog box.

Choose an operator (equals, is greater than, or another) from the drop-down list, and either enter or choose a target criterion from the list on the right side of the dialog box. You can search by more than one criterion. Select the And option button if a row must meet both criteria to be selected, or select the Or option button if a row can meet either criterion to be selected.

## 298 Forecasting with the Goal Seek Command

Click the OK button on the column's drop-down list or the Custom AutoFilter dialog box to filter your list.



To see all the data in the list again — to *unfilter* the list — click the Clear button on the Data tab.

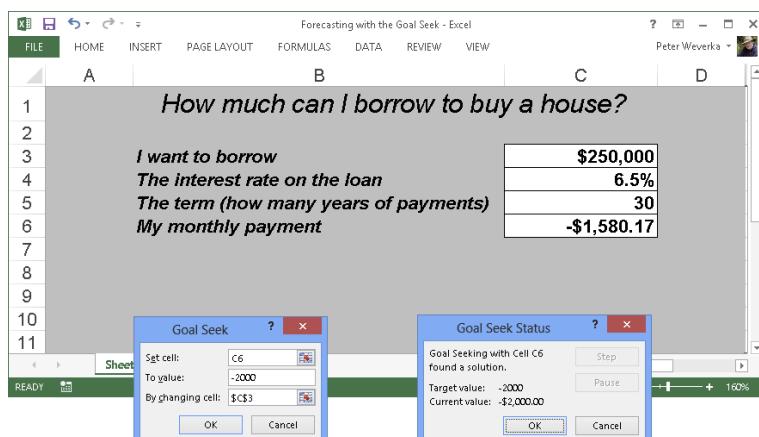
## Forecasting with the Goal Seek Command

In a conventional formula, you provide the raw data and Excel produces the results. With the Goal Seek command, you declare what you want the results to be and Excel tells you the raw data you need to produce those results.

The Goal Seek command is useful in analyses when you want the outcome to be a certain way and you need to know which raw numbers will produce the outcome that you want.

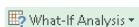
Figure 5-5 shows a worksheet designed to find out the monthly payment on a mortgage. With the PMT function, the worksheet determines that the monthly payment on a \$250,000 loan with an interest rate of 6.5 percent and to be paid over a 30-year period is \$1,580.17. Suppose, however, that the person who calculated this monthly payment determined that he or she could pay more than \$1,580.17 per month? Suppose the person could pay \$1,750 or \$2,000 per month. Instead of an outcome of \$1,580.17, the person wants to know how much he or she could borrow if monthly payments — the outcome of the formula — were increased to \$1,750 or \$2,000.

To make determinations such as these, you can use the Goal Seek command. This command lets you experiment with the arguments in a formula to achieve the results you want. In the case of the worksheet in Figure 5-5, you can use the Goal Seek command to change the argument in cell C3, the total amount you can borrow, given the outcome you want in cell C6, \$1,750 or \$2,000, the monthly payment on the total amount.



**Figure 5-5:**  
Experimenting with the  
Goal Seek command.

Follow these steps to use the Goal Seek command to change the inputs in a formula to achieve the results you want:



- 1. Select the cell with the formula whose arguments you want to experiment with.**
  - 2. On the Data tab, click the What-If Analysis button and choose Goal Seek on the drop-down list.**
- You see the Goal Seek dialog box shown in Figure 5-5. The address of the cell you selected in Step 1 appears in the Set Cell box.
- 3. In the To Value text box, enter the target results you want from the formula.**
- In the example in Figure 5-5, you enter 1750 or 2000, the monthly payment you can afford for the 30-year mortgage.
- 4. In the By Changing Cell text box, enter the address of the cell whose value is unknown.**

To enter a cell address, select a cell on your worksheet. In Figure 5-5, you select the address of the cell that shows the total amount you want to borrow.

- 5. Click OK.**

The Goal Seek Status dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 5-5. It lists the target value that you entered in Step 3.

- 6. Click OK.**

On your worksheet, the cell with the argument you wanted to alter now shows the target you're seeking. In the case of the example worksheet in Figure 5-5, you can borrow \$316,422 at 6.5 percent, not \$250,000, by raising your monthly mortgage payments from \$1,580.17 to \$2,000.

Book III  
Chapter 5

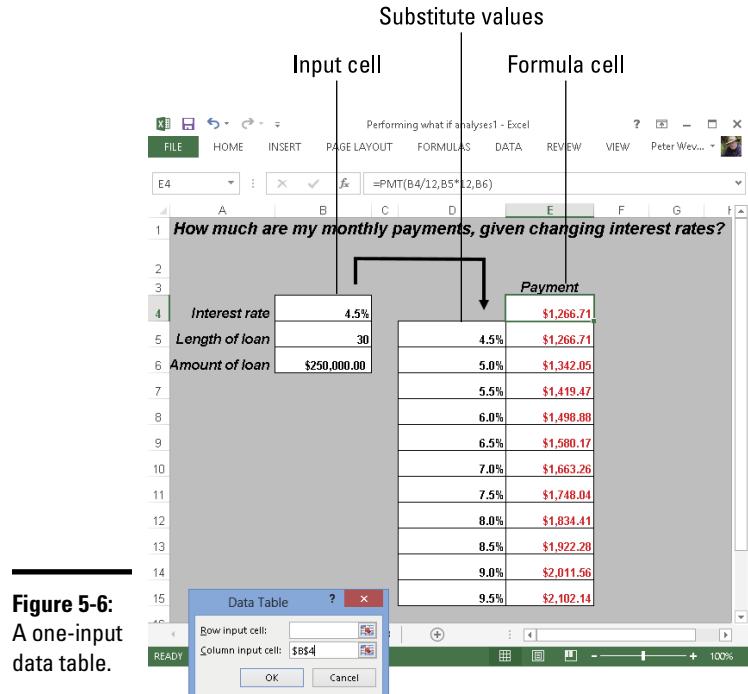
Advanced Techniques for Analyzing Data

## Performing What-If Analyses with Data Tables

For something a little more sophisticated than the Goal Seek command (which I describe in the preceding section), try performing what-if analyses with data tables. With this technique, you change the data in input cells and observe what effect changing the data has on the results of a formula. The difference between the Goal Seek command and a data table is that with a data table, you can experiment simultaneously with many different input cells and in so doing experiment with many different scenarios.

### Using a one-input table for analysis

In a *one-input table*, you find out what the different results of a formula would be if you changed one *input cell* in the formula. In Figure 5-6, that input cell is the interest rate on a loan. The purpose of this data table is to find out how monthly payments on a \$250,000, 30-year mortgage are different, given different interest rates. The interest rate in cell B4 is the input cell.



**Figure 5-6:**  
A one-input  
data table.

Follow these steps to create a one-input table:

**1. On your worksheet, enter values that you want to substitute for the value in the input cell.**

To make the input table work, you have to enter the substitute values in the right location:

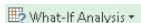
- *In a column:* Enter the values in the column starting one cell below and one cell to the left of the cell where the formula is located. In Figure 5-6, for example, the formula is in cell E4 and the values are in the cell range D5:D15.
- *In a row:* Enter the values in the row starting one cell above and one cell to the right of the cell where the formula is.

**2. Select the block of cells with the formula and substitute values.**

Select a rectangle of cells that encompasses the formula cell, the cell beside it, all the substitute values, and the empty cells where the new calculations will soon appear.

- *In a column:* Select the formula cell, the cell to its left, all the substitute-value cells, and the cells below the formula cell.
- *In a row:* Select the formula cell, the cell above it, the substitute values in the cells directly to the right, and the now-empty cells where the new calculations will appear.





- 3. On the Data tab, click the What-If Analysis button and choose Data Table on the drop-down list.**

You see the Data Table dialog box (refer to Figure 5-6).

- 4. In the Row Input Cell or Column Input Cell text box, enter the address of the cell where the input value is located.**

The input value is the value you're experimenting with in your analysis. In the case of the worksheet shown in Figure 5-6, the input value is located in cell B4, the cell that holds the interest rate.

If the new calculations appear in rows, enter the address of the input cell in the Row Input Cell text box; if the calculations appear in columns (refer to Figure 5-6), enter the input cell address in the Column Input Cell text box.

- 5. Click OK.**

Excel performs the calculations and fills in the table.

To generate the one-input table, Excel constructs an array formula with the TABLE function. If you change the cell references in the first row or plug in different values in the first column, Excel updates the one-input table automatically.

## ***Using a two-input table for analysis***

In a two-input table, you can experiment with two input cells rather than one. Getting back to the example of the loan payment in Figure 5-6, you can calculate not only how loan payments change as interest rates change but also how payments change if the life of the loan changes. Figure 5-7 shows a two-input table for examining monthly loan payments given different interest rates and two different terms for the loan, 15 years (180 months) and 30 years (360 months).

Follow these steps to create a two-input data table:

- 1. Enter one set of substitute values below the formula in the same column as the formula.**

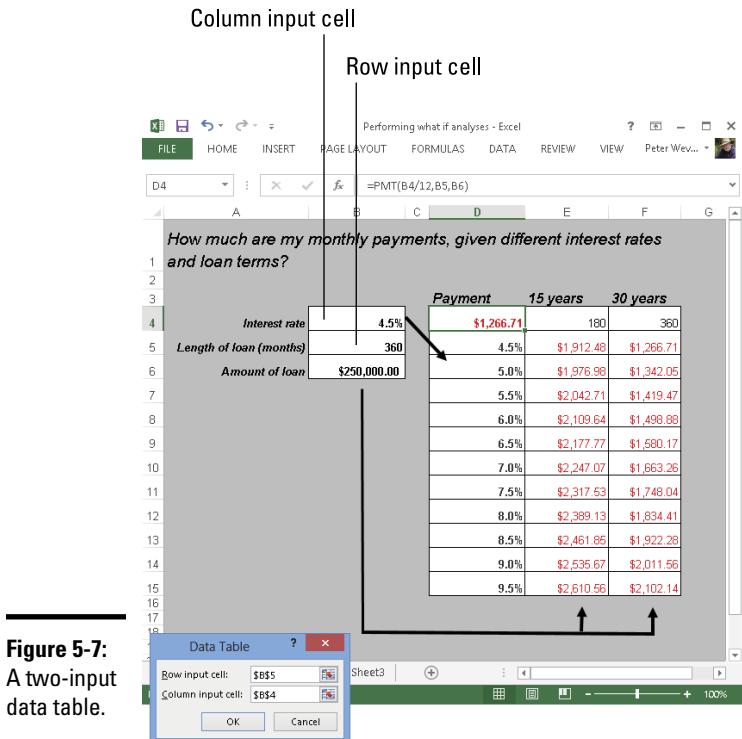
In Figure 5-7, different interest rates are entered in the cell range D5:D15.

- 2. Enter the second set of substitute values in the row to the right of the formula.**

In Figure 5-7, 180 and 360 are entered. These numbers represent the number of months of the life of the loan.

- 3. Select the formula and all substitute values.**

Do this correctly and you select three columns, including the formula, the substitute values below it, and the two columns to the right of the formula. You select a big block of cells (the range D4:F15, in this example).



**Figure 5-7:**  
A two-input  
data table.

4. On the Data tab, click the What-If Analysis button and choose Data Table on the drop-down list.

The Data Table dialog box appears (refer to Figure 5-7).

5. In the Row Input Cell text box, enter the address of the cell referred to in the original formula where substitute values to the right of the formula can be plugged in.

In Figure 5-7, for example, the rows to the right of the formula are for length of loan substitute values. Therefore, I select cell B5, the cell referred to in the original formula where the length of the loan is listed.

6. In the Column Input Cell text box, enter the address of the cell referred to in the original formula where substitute values below the formula are.

In Figure 5-7, the substitute values below the formula cell are interest rates. Therefore, I select cell B4, the cell referred to in the original formula where the interest rate is entered.

7. Click OK.

Excel performs the calculations and fills in the table.

## Analyzing Data with Pivot Tables

*PivotTables* give you the opportunity to reorganize data in a long worksheet list and in so doing analyze the data in new ways. You can display data such that you focus on one aspect of the list. You can turn columns into rows and rows into columns. You can turn the list inside out and perhaps discover things you didn't notice before.



Make sure that the list you want to analyze with a PivotTable has column headers. Column headers are the descriptive labels that appear across the top of columns in a list. Excel needs column headers to construct PivotTables.

### *Creating a PivotTable*

PivotTables are an opportunity to make sense of long, unwieldy lists like the list of sales figures shown at the top of Figure 5-8. Using a PivotTable, I can arrange this list around any of the column headings. I can focus on sales reps to see how much income they generate. I can arrange the list by date to see when sales are at their highest and lowest.

Follow these steps to create a PivotTable:



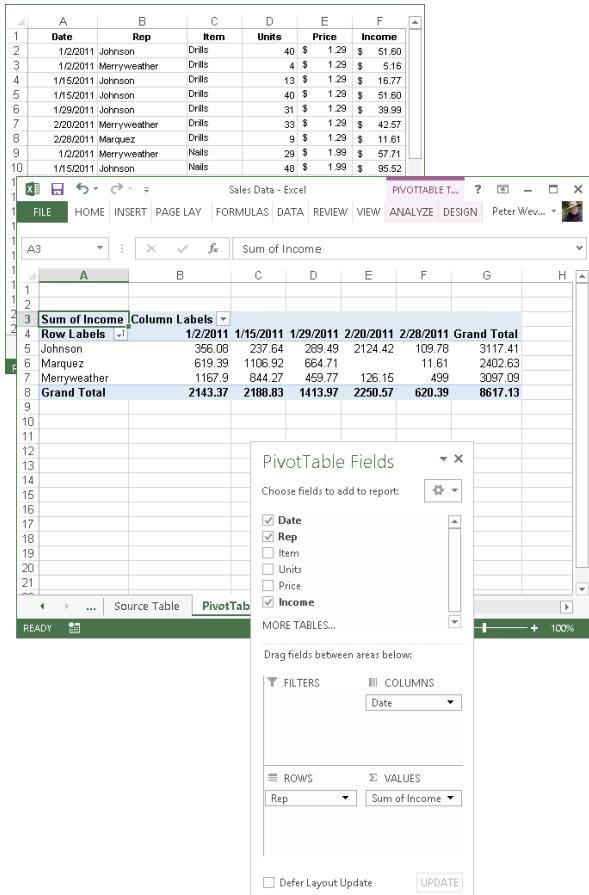
- 1. Select a cell anywhere in your list.**
- 2. On the Insert tab, click the PivotTable button.**

Excel selects what it believes is your entire list, and you see the Create PivotTable dialog box. If the list isn't correctly selected, click outside the dialog box and select the data you want to analyze.

- 3. Choose the New Worksheet option.**

You can choose the Existing Worksheet option and select cells on your worksheet to show Excel where you want to place the PivotTable, but in my experience, creating it on a new worksheet and moving it later is the easier way to go.

The (PivotTable Tools) Analyze tab and PivotTable Fields task pane appear, as shown in Figure 5-8. The task pane lists the names of fields, or column headings, from your table.



**Figure 5-8:**  
Creating a  
PivotTable  
(bottom)  
from a list  
(top).

4. In the PivotTable Fields task pane, drag field names into the four areas (Filters, Columns, Rows, and Values) to construct your PivotTable.

As you construct your table, you see it take shape on-screen. You can drag fields in and out of areas as you please. Drag one field name into each of these areas:

- **Rows:** The field whose data you want to analyze.
- **Columns:** The field by which you want to measure and compare data.
- **Values:** The field with the values used for comparison.
- **Filters (optional):** A field you want to use to sort table data. (This field's name appears in the upper-left corner of the PivotTable. You can open its drop-down list to sort the table; see “Sorting a list,” earlier in this chapter.)

## ***Putting the finishing touches on a PivotTable***

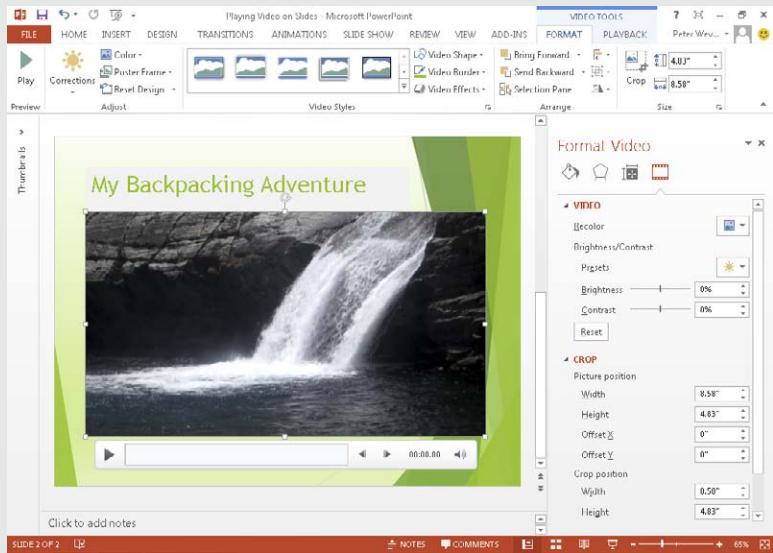
Go to the (PivotTable Tools) Design tab to put the finishing touches on a PivotTable:

- ◆ **Grand Totals:** Excel totals columns and rows in PivotTables. If you prefer not to see these “grand totals,” click the Grand Totals button and choose an option to remove them from rows, columns, or both.
- ◆ **Report Layout:** Click the Report Layout option to choose among different ways of laying out the PivotTable.
- ◆ **PivotTable Styles:** Choose a PivotTable style to breathe a little color into your PivotTable.



# Book IV

# PowerPoint 2013



You can find out even more about PowerPoint features at [www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio](http://www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio)

# *Contents at a Glance*

<b>Chapter 1: Getting Started in PowerPoint .....</b>	<b>309</b>
Getting Acquainted with PowerPoint.....	310
A Brief Geography Lesson .....	311
A Whirlwind Tour of PowerPoint .....	312
Creating a New Presentation.....	313
Advice for Building Persuasive Presentations.....	316
Creating New Slides for Your Presentation.....	318
Getting a Better View of Your Work.....	323
Hiding and Displaying the SlidesPane and Notes Pane .....	324
Selecting, Moving, and Deleting Slides .....	325
Putting Together a Photo Album .....	326
Hidden Slides for All Contingencies .....	329
<b>Chapter 2: Fashioning a Look for Your Presentation .....</b>	<b>331</b>
Looking at Themes and Slide Backgrounds .....	331
Choosing a Theme for Your Presentation .....	334
Creating Slide Backgrounds on Your Own .....	334
Changing the Background of a Single or Handful of Slides .....	341
Choosing the Slide Size.....	342
Using Master Slides and Master Styles for a Consistent Design.....	342
<b>Chapter 3: Entering the Text.....</b>	<b>347</b>
Entering Text.....	347
Fun with Text Boxes and Text Box Shapes .....	350
Controlling How Text Fits in Text Frames and Text Boxes .....	352
Positioning Text in Frames and Text Boxes .....	356
Handling Bulleted and Numbered Lists .....	357
Putting Footers (and Headers) on Slides.....	359
<b>Chapter 4: Making Your Presentations Livelier .....</b>	<b>363</b>
Suggestions for Enlivening Your Presentation .....	363
Presenting Information in a Table .....	364
Exploring Transitions and Animations .....	365
Making Audio Part of Your Presentation.....	370
Playing Video on Slides.....	374
Recording a Voice Narration for Slides .....	377
<b>Chapter 5: Delivering a Presentation .....</b>	<b>379</b>
All about Notes .....	379
Rehearsing and Timing Your Presentation .....	380
Showing Your Presentation.....	381
Tricks for Making Presentations a Little Livelier .....	385
Delivering a Presentation When You Can't Be There in Person.....	388

# *Chapter 1: Getting Started in PowerPoint*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Introducing PowerPoint
- ✓ Finding your way around the screen
- ✓ Understanding what creating a presentation is all about
- ✓ Creating a presentation
- ✓ Inserting the slides
- ✓ Changing views of the screen
- ✓ Rearranging the Slides and Notes panes
- ✓ Manipulating slides
- ✓ Creating a photo album
- ✓ Hiding slides for use in a presentation

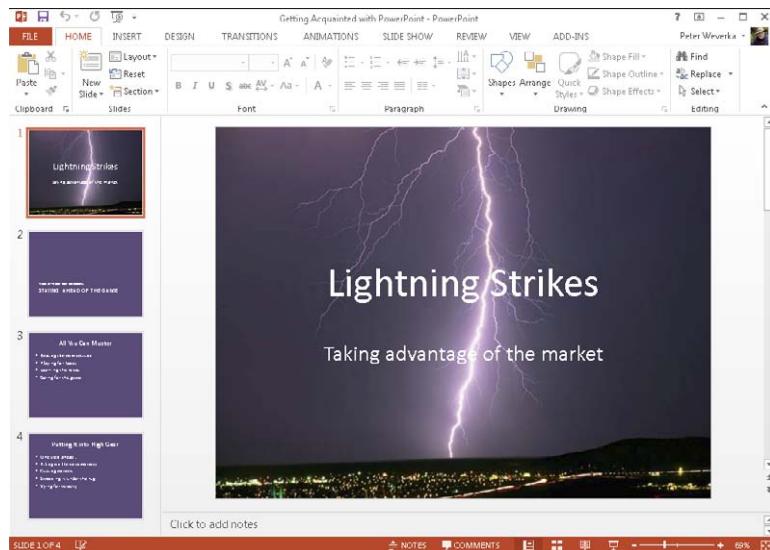
**I**t's impossible to sit through a conference, seminar, or trade show without seeing at least one PowerPoint presentation. PowerPoint has found its way into nearly every office and boardroom. I've heard of a man (a very unromantic man) who proposed to his wife by way of a PowerPoint presentation.

As nice as PowerPoint can be, it has its detractors. If the software isn't used properly, it can come between the speaker and the audience. In a *New Yorker* article titled "Absolute PowerPoint: Can a Software Package Edit Our Thoughts?," Ian Parker argued that PowerPoint may actually be more of a hindrance than a help in communicating. PowerPoint, Parker wrote, is "a social instrument, turning middle managers into bullet-point dandies." The software, he added, "has a private, interior influence. It edits ideas. . . . It helps you make a case, but also makes its own case about how to organize information, how to look at the world."

To make sure that you use PowerPoint wisely, this chapter shows what creating a PowerPoint presentation entails. After a brief tour of PowerPoint, you find out how to create presentations, get a better view of your work, insert slides, put together a photo album, and hide slides.

# *Getting Acquainted with PowerPoint*

Figure 1-1 (top) shows the PowerPoint window. That thing in the middle of the window is a *slide*, the PowerPoint word for an image that you show your audience. Surrounding the slide are many tools for entering text and decorating slides. When the time comes to show your slides to an audience, you dispense with the tools and make the slide fill the screen, as shown in Figure 1-1 (bottom).



**Figure 1-1:**  
The  
PowerPoint  
window  
(top) and a  
slide as it  
looks in a  
presentation  
(bottom).

To make PowerPoint do your bidding, you need to know a little jargon:

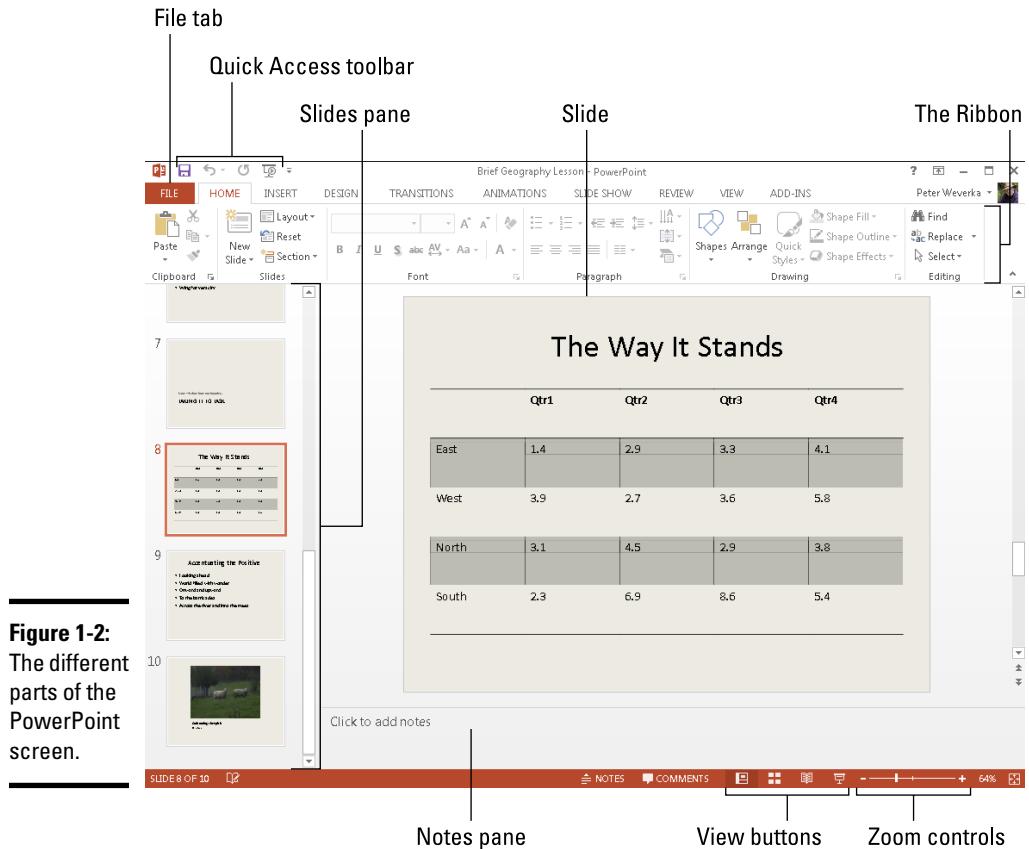
- ◆ **Presentation:** All the slides, from start to finish, that you show your audience. Sometimes presentations are called “slide shows.”
- ◆ **Slides:** The images you create with PowerPoint. During a presentation, slides appear on-screen one after the other. Don’t be put off by the word *slide* and dreary memories of sitting through your uncle’s slide show vacation memories. You don’t need a slide projector to show these slides. You can plug a laptop or other computer into special monitors that display PowerPoint slides.
- ◆ **Notes:** Printed pages that you, the speaker, write and print so that you know what to say during a presentation. Only the speaker sees notes. Chapter 5 in this mini-book explains notes.
- ◆ **Handout:** Printed pages that you may give to the audience along with a presentation. A handout shows the slides in the presentation. Handouts are also known by the somewhat derogatory term *leave-behinds*. Chapter 5 of this mini-book explains handouts.

## A Brief Geography Lesson

Figure 1-2 shows the different parts of the PowerPoint screen. I’d hate for you to get lost in PowerPoint Land. Fold down the corner of this page so that you can return here if screen terminology confuses you:

### FILE

- ◆ **File tab:** The tab you visit to create, open, and save PowerPoint presentations, as well as do other file-management tasks.
- ◆ **Quick Access toolbar:** A toolbar with four buttons — Save, Undo, Repeat, and Start From Beginning. You see this toolbar wherever you go in PowerPoint.
- ◆ **Ribbon:** The place where the tabs are located. Click a tab — Home, Insert, Design, Transitions, Animations, Slide Show, Review, or View — to start a task.
- ◆ **Slides pane:** In Normal view, the place on the left side of the screen where you can see the slides or the text on the slides in your presentation. Scroll in the Slides pane to move backward and forward in a presentation.
- ◆ **Slide window:** Where a slide (in Normal view) or slides (in Slide Sorter view) are displayed. Scroll to move backward or forward in your presentation.
- ◆ **Notes pane:** Where you type notes (in Normal view) that you can refer to when giving your presentation. The audience can’t see these notes — they’re for you and you alone. See Chapter 5 of this mini-book for details.



**Figure 1-2:**  
The different parts of the  
PowerPoint screen.

- ◆ **View buttons:** Buttons you can click to switch to (from left to right) Normal, Slide Sorter, Reading View, and Slide Show. See “Getting a Better View of Your Work,” later in this chapter.
- ◆ **Zoom controls:** Tools for enlarging or shrinking a slide (in Normal and Slide Sorter view).

## A Whirlwind Tour of PowerPoint

To help you understand what you’re getting into, you’re invited on a whirlwind tour of PowerPoint. Creating a PowerPoint presentation entails completing these basic tasks:

- ◆ **Creating the slides:** After you create a new presentation, your next task is to create the slides. PowerPoint offers many preformatted slide layouts, each designed for presenting information a certain way.

- ◆ **Notes:** As you create slides, you can jot down notes in the Notes pane. You can use these notes later to formulate your presentation and decide what to say to your audience while each slide is on-screen (see Chapter 5 of this mini-book).
- ◆ **Designing your presentation:** After you create a presentation, the next step is to think about its appearance. You can change slides' colors and backgrounds, as well as choose a *theme* for your presentation, an all-encompassing design that applies to all (or most of) the slides (see Chapter 2 of this mini-book).
- ◆ **Inserting tables, charts, diagrams, and shapes:** A PowerPoint presentation should be more than a loose collection of bulleted lists. Starting on the Insert tab, you can place tables, charts, and diagrams on slides, as well as adorn your slides with text boxes, WordArt images, and shapes (see Chapter 4 of this mini-book).
- ◆ **“Animating” your slides:** PowerPoint slides can play video and sound, as well as be “animated” (see Chapter 4 of this mini-book). You can make the items on a slide move on the screen. As a slide arrives, you can make it spin or flash.
- ◆ **Delivering your presentation:** During a presentation, you can draw on the slides. You can also blank the screen and show slides out of order. In case you can't be there in person, PowerPoint gives you the opportunity to create self-running presentations and presentations that others can run on their own. You can also distribute presentations on CDs and as videos (see Chapter 5 of this mini-book).

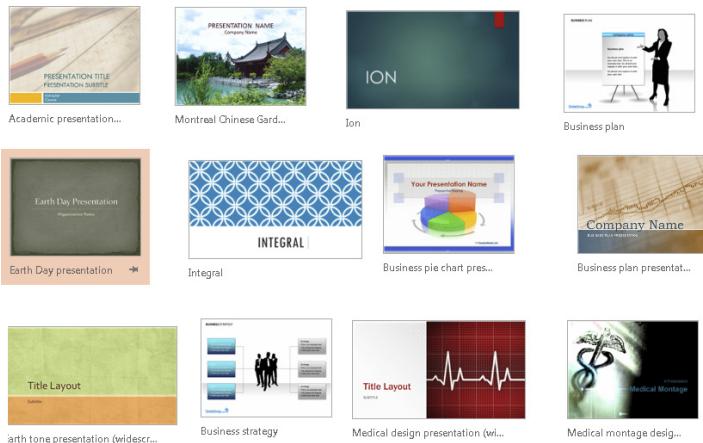
## *Creating a New Presentation*

All PowerPoint presentations are created using a template. A *template* is a blueprint for creating slides. Each template comes with its own particular slide layouts, colors, and fonts. When you create a presentation, you are invited to choose the template best suited for your audience. Figure 1-3 shows examples of templates.

PowerPoint offers these templates for creating presentations:

- ◆ **The Blank Presentation template:** A bare-bones template that you can use as the starting point for designing a presentation on your own.
- ◆ **Built-In templates:** Sophisticated templates designed by Microsoft artists. Figure 1-4 shows some of these templates in the New window, the window where you create presentations.
- ◆ **Online templates:** Sophisticated templates from Microsoft that you can download to your computer.

- ◆ **Personal templates:** Templates that you or someone apart from Microsoft designed and created. Many companies provide templates with their company colors and fonts for employees to use when creating PowerPoint presentations.



**Figure 1-3:**  
Examples of  
PowerPoint  
templates.



Built-in and online templates are a mixed blessing. They're designed by artists and they look very good. Some templates come with *boilerplate text* — already written material that you can recycle into your presentation. However, presentations made from templates are harder to modify. Sometimes the design gets in the way. As well, a loud or intricate background may overwhelm a diagram or chart you want to put on a slide.

Follow these steps to create a PowerPoint presentation:

## FILE

### 1. Click the File tab.

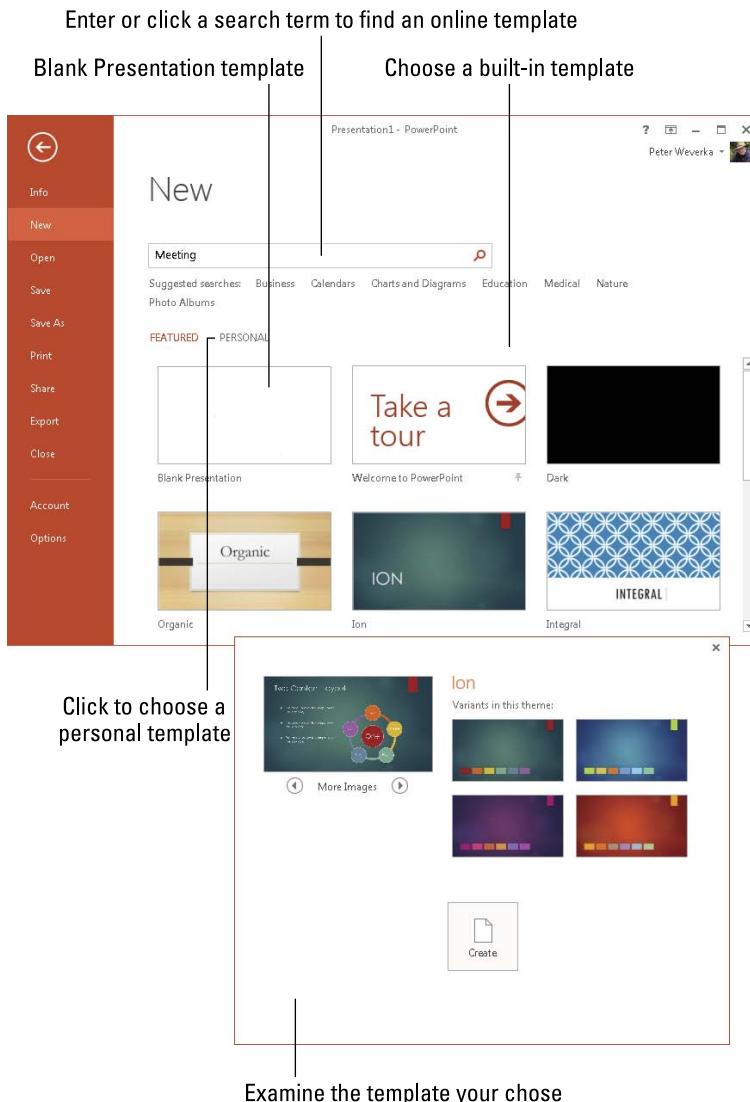
### 2. Choose New.

The New window opens (refer to Figure 1-4).

### 3. Choose a template.

Choose the template that is best suited for the audience who will see your presentation.

- **Blank Presentation:** Click the Blank Presentation icon. A new presentation is created. (By pressing Ctrl+N, you can create a new, blank presentation without even opening the New window.)
- **Built-in template:** Select a featured template in the New window. A preview window opens so that you can examine the slide layouts and themes that the template offers (refer to Figure 1-4). Click the Close button to return to the New window; click the Create button to create a presentation with the template you selected.



**Figure 1-4:**  
In the New window,  
choose a  
template for  
creating a  
presentation.

- **Online template:** Search for a template online by entering a search term or clicking a suggested search term (refer to Figure 1-4). When you select a template, a preview window opens so that you can examine it more thoroughly. Click the Create button to create a presentation; click the Home button to return to the New window.
- **Personal template:** Click the Personal tab and select the folder where your personal templates are stored. Then select a template and click the Create button.



Before you can create a presentation with a personal template, you must tell PowerPoint where your personal templates are stored. To do so, click the File tab and choose Options. In the PowerPoint Option dialog box, go to the Save category, and in the Default Personal Templates Location text box, enter the path to the folder where you keep personal templates. Unless you tell PowerPoint where to find personal templates, the Personal tab doesn't appear in the New window (refer to Figure 1-4). In past versions of PowerPoint, personal templates were stored in this folder:

C:\Users\Name\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\PowerPoint

## *Advice for Building Persuasive Presentations*

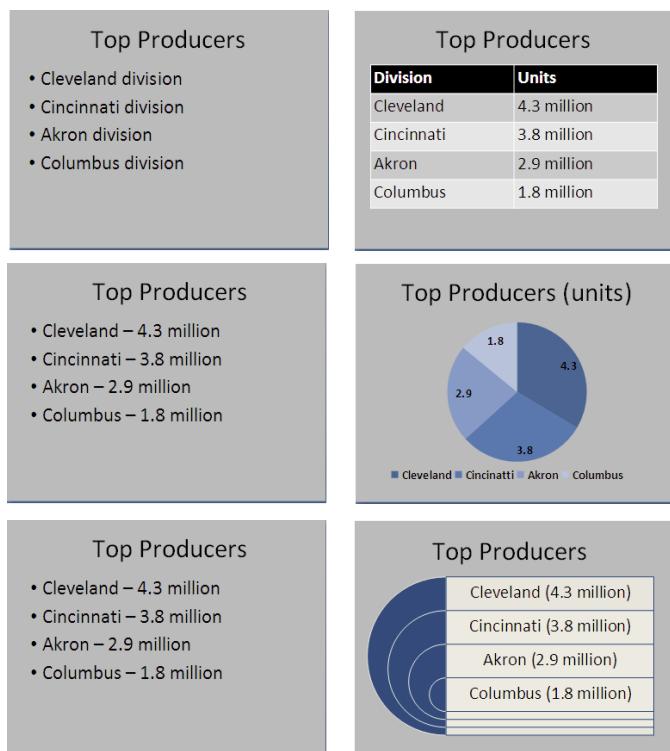


Before you create any slides, think about what you want to communicate to your audience. Your goal isn't to dazzle the audience with your PowerPoint skills, but communicate something — a company policy, the merits of a product, the virtues of a strategic plan. Your goal is to bring the audience around to your side. To that end, here is some practical advice for building persuasive presentations:

- ◆ **Start by writing the text in Word.** Start in Microsoft Word, not PowerPoint, so you can focus on the words. In Word, you can clearly see how a presentation develops. You can make sure that your presentation builds to its rightful conclusion. PowerPoint has a special command for getting headings from a Word file. (See “Conjuring slides from Word document headings,” later in this chapter.)
- ◆ **When choosing a design, consider the audience.** A presentation to the American Casketmakers Association calls for a mute, quiet design; a presentation to the Cheerleaders of Tomorrow calls for something bright and splashy. Select a slide design that sets the tone for your presentation and wins the sympathy of the audience.
- ◆ **Keep it simple.** To make sure that PowerPoint doesn't upstage you, keep it simple. Make use of the PowerPoint features, but do so judiciously. An animation in the right place at the right time can serve a valuable purpose. It can highlight an important part of a presentation and grab the audience's attention. But stuffing a presentation with too many gizmos turns a presentation into a carnival sideshow and distracts from your message.
- ◆ **Follow the one-slide-per-minute rule.** At the very minimum, a slide should stay on-screen for at least one minute. If you have 15 minutes to speak, you're allotted no more than 15 slides for your presentation, according to the rule.
- ◆ **Beware the bullet point.** Terse bullet points have their place in a presentation, but if you put them there strictly to remind yourself what to say next, you're doing your audience a disfavor. Bullet points can cause

drowsiness. They can be a distraction. The audience skims the bullets when it should be attending to your voice and the argument you're making. When you're tempted to use a bulleted list, consider using a table, chart, or diagram instead. Figure 1-5 demonstrates how a bulleted list can be presented instead in a table, chart, or diagram.

- ◆ **Take control from the start.** Spend the first minute introducing yourself to the audience without running PowerPoint (or, if you do run PowerPoint, put a simple slide with your company name or logo on-screen). Make eye contact with the audience. This way, you establish your credibility. You give the audience a chance to get to know you.
- ◆ **Make clear what you're about.** In the early going, state very clearly what your presentation is about and what you intend to prove with your presentation. In other words, state the conclusion at the beginning as well as the end. This way, your audience knows exactly what you're driving at and can judge your presentation according to how well you build your case.



**Figure 1-5:**  
List  
information  
presented  
in a table  
(top), chart  
(middle),  
and diagram  
(bottom).

- ◆ **Personalize the presentation.** Make the presentation a personal one. Tell the audience what *your* personal reason for being there is or why *you* work for the company you work for. Knowing that you have a personal stake in the presentation, the audience is more likely to trust you. The audience understands that you're not a spokesperson, but a *speaker* — someone who has come before them to make a case for something that you believe in.
- ◆ **Tell a story.** Include an anecdote in the presentation. Everybody loves a pertinent and well-delivered story. This piece of advice is akin to the previous one about personalizing your presentation. Typically, a story illustrates a problem for *people* and how *people* solve the problem. Even if your presentation concerns technology or an abstract subject, make it about people. “The people in Shaker Heights needed faster Internet access,” not “the data switches in Shaker Heights just weren’t performing fast enough.”
- ◆ **Rehearse and then rehearse some more.** The better you know your material, the less nervous you will be. To keep from getting nervous, rehearse your presentation until you know it backward and forward. Rehearse it out loud. Rehearse it while imagining you’re in the presence of an audience.
- ◆ **Use visuals, not only words, to make your point.** You really owe it to your audience to take advantage of the table, chart, diagram, and picture capabilities of PowerPoint. People understand more from words and pictures than they do from words alone. It’s up to you — not the slides — as the speaker to describe topics in detail with words.

Want to see how PowerPoint can suck the life and drama out of a dramatic presentation? Try visiting the Gettysburg PowerPoint Presentation, a rendering of Lincoln’s Gettysburg Address in PowerPoint. Yikes! You can find it here: <http://norvig.com/Gettysburg> or <http://vimeo.com/7849863>.

## *Creating New Slides for Your Presentation*

After you create a presentation, your next step on the path to glory is to start adding the slides. To create a new slide, you start by choosing a slide layout. *Slide layouts* are the preformatted slide designs that help you enter text, graphics, and other things. Some slide layouts have *text placeholder frames* for entering titles and text; some come with *content placeholder frames* designed especially for inserting a table, chart, diagram, picture, clip-art image, or media clip.

When you add a slide, select the slide layout that best approximates the slide you have in mind for your presentation. Figure 1-6 shows the slide layouts that are available when you create a presentation with the Blank Presentation template. These pages explain how to insert slides and harvest them from Word document headings.

## Inserting a new slide

Follow these steps to insert a new slide in your presentation:

- 1. Select the slide that you want the new slide to go after.**

In Normal view, select the slide on the Slides pane. In Slide Sorter view, select the slide in the main window.



- 2. On the Home or Insert tab, click the bottom half of the New Slide button.**

You see a drop-down list of slide layouts. (If you click the top half of the New Slide button, you insert a slide with the same layout as the one you selected in Step 1.) Figure 1-6 shows what the slide layouts look like (left), what a slide looks like right after you insert it (middle), and finished slides (right).

- 3. Select the slide layout that best approximates the slide you want to create.**

Don't worry too much about selecting the right layout. You can change slide layouts later on, as "Selecting a different layout for a slide" explains later in this chapter.



## Speed techniques for inserting slides

When you're in a hurry, use these techniques to insert a slide:

- ◆ **Creating a duplicate slide:** Select the slide or slides you want to duplicate, and on the Home or Insert tab, open the drop-down list on the New Slide button and choose Duplicate Selected Slides. You can also open the drop-down menu on the Copy button and choose Duplicate.
- ◆ **Copying and pasting slides:** Click the slide you want to copy (or Ctrl+click to select more than one slide) and then click the Copy button on the Home tab (or press Ctrl+C). Next, click to select the slide that you want the copied slide (or slides) to appear after and click the Paste button (or press Ctrl+V).
- ◆ **Recycling slides from other presentations:** Select the slide that you want the recycled slides to follow in your presentation, and on the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the New Slide button and choose Reuse Slides. The Reuse Slides task pane opens. Open the drop-down list on the Browse button, choose Browse File, and select a presentation in the Browse dialog box. The Reuse Slides task pane shows thumbnail versions of slides in the presentation you selected. One at a time, click slides to add them to your presentation. You can right-click a slide and choose Insert All Slides to grab all the slides in the presentation.

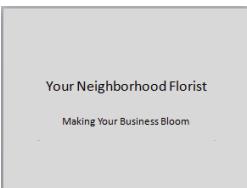


Title Slide



Click to add title

Click to add subtitle



Your Neighborhood Florist

Making Your Business Bloom



Title and Content



Click to add title

• Click to add text



## Ways to Enhance Your Business

- Serving your community
- Assessing your customers' needs
- Finding the right location
- Keeping it new
- Foraging for opportunities



Section Header



Click to add text

**CLICK TO ADD TITLE**



Step 1 on the Road to Success  
**SERVING YOUR COMMUNITY**



Two Content



Click to add title

• Click to add text



## What's Out There?



- Assessing your customers
- Targeting your goals
- Meeting your benchmarks



Comparison



Click to add title

• Click to add text



## Flora and Fauna

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| <b>Flora</b>   | <b>Fauna</b>   |
| • Flowers      | • Holidays     |
| • bouquets     | • Birthdays    |
| • dressings    | • Celebrations |
| • Garden       | • Events       |
| • Window sills | • Proceedings  |



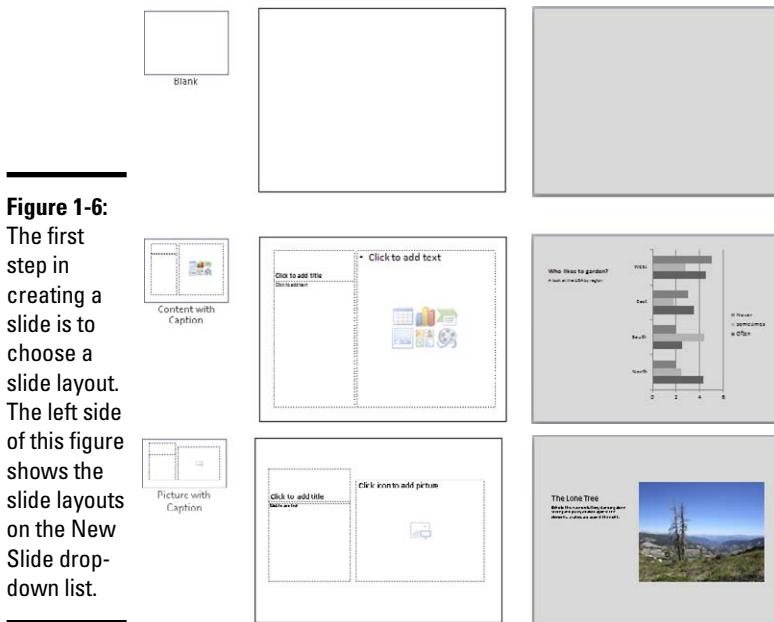
Title Only



Click to add title



In the Garden

**Figure 1-6:**

The first step in creating a slide is to choose a slide layout. The left side of this figure shows the slide layouts on the New Slide dropdown list.

## *Conjuring slides from Word document headings*

If you think about it, Word headings are similar to slide titles. Headings, like slide titles, introduce a new topic. If you know your way around Word and you want to get a head start creating a PowerPoint presentation, you can borrow the headings in a Word document for your PowerPoint slides. After you import the headings from Word, you get one slide for each Level 1 heading (headings given the Heading 1 style). Level 1 headings form the title of the slides, Level 2 headings form first-level bullets, Level 3 headings form second-level bullets, and so on. Paragraph text isn't imported. Figure 1-7 shows what headings from a Word document look like after they land in a PowerPoint presentation.

Follow these steps to use headings in a Word document to create slides in a PowerPoint presentation:



- 1. On the View tab, click the Outline View button.**

The Outline tab displays slide text (see Figure 1-7). You get a better sense of how headings from the Word document land in your presentation by viewing your presentation from the Outline tab.

- 2. Select the slide that the new slides from the Word document will follow.**



3. On the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the New Slide button and choose Slides from Outline.

You see the Insert Outline dialog box.

4. Select the Word document with the headings you want for your presentation and click the Insert button.

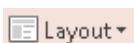
Depending on how many first-level headings are in the Word document, you get a certain number of new slides. These slides probably need work. The Word text may need tweaking to make it suitable for a PowerPoint presentation.

Each level-1 heading in the Word document becomes a slide title in PowerPoint

**Figure 1-7:**  
Headings  
from a Word  
document  
imported  
into a  
PowerPoint  
presentation.

## Selecting a different layout for a slide

If you mistakenly choose the wrong layout for a slide, all is not lost. You can start all over. You can graft a new layout onto your slide with one of these techniques:



- ◆ On the Home tab, click the Layout button and choose a layout on the drop-down list.
- ◆ Right-click the slide (being careful not to right-click a frame or object), choose Layout, and choose a layout on the submenu.



PowerPoint also offers the Reset command for giving a slide its original layout after you've fiddled with it. If you push a slide all out of shape and you regret doing so, select your slide, go to the Home tab, and click the Reset button.

## Getting a Better View of Your Work

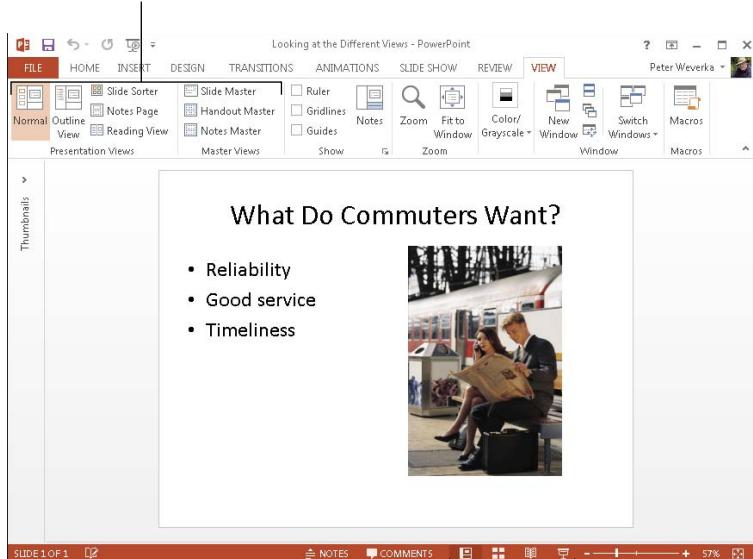
Depending on the task at hand, some views are better than others. These pages explain how to change views and the relative merits of Normal, Slide Sorter, Notes Page, Slide Master, Reading View, Handout Master, and Notes Master view.

### Changing views

PowerPoint offers two places to change views:

- ◆ **View buttons on the status bar:** Click a View button — Normal, Slide Sorter, Reading View, or Slide Show — on the status bar to change views, as shown in Figure 1-8.
- ◆ **View tab:** On the View tab, click a button on the Presentation Views or Master Views group, as shown in Figure 1-8.

Click a View button on the View tab...



or click a View button on the status bar

**Figure 1-8:**  
Techniques  
for changing  
views.

Book IV  
Chapter 1

Getting Started in  
PowerPoint

### Looking at the different views

Here is a survey of the different views with suggestions about using each one:



- ◆ **Normal view for examining slides:** Switch to Normal view and select a slide in the Slides pane when you want to examine a slide. In this view, thumbnail slides appear in the Slides pane, and you can see your slide in all its glory in the middle of the screen.



- ◆ **Outline view for fiddling with text:** Switch to Outline view when to enter or read text (refer to Figure 1-7). The words appear in outline form. Outline view is ideal for focusing on the words in a presentation.



- ◆ **Slide Sorter view for moving and deleting slides:** In Slide Sorter view, you see thumbnails of all the slides in the presentation (use the Zoom slider to change the size of thumbnails). From here, moving slides around is easy, and seeing many slides simultaneously gives you a sense of whether the different slides are consistent with one another and how the whole presentation is shaping up. The slides are numbered so that you can see where they appear in a presentation.



- ◆ **Notes Page view for reading your speaker notes:** In Notes Page view, you see notes you've written to aid you in your presentation, if you've written any. You can write notes in this view as well as in the Notes pane in Normal view. Chapter 5 of this mini-book explains notes pages.



- ◆ **Reading View view for focusing on slides' appearance:** In Reading View view, you also see a single slide, but it appears on-screen with the View buttons and with buttons for moving quickly from slide to slide. Switch to Reading View view to proofread slides and put the final touches on a presentation.

- ◆ **The Master views for a consistent presentation:** The Master views — Slide Master, Handout Master, and Notes Master — are for handling *master styles*, the formatting commands that pertain to all the slides in a presentation, handouts, and notes. To switch to these views, go to the View tab and click the appropriate button. Chapter 2 of this mini-book looks into master slides and master styles.



PowerPoint offers a button called Fit Slide to Current Window that you can click while you're in Normal view to make the slide fill the window. This little button is located in the lower-right corner of the screen, to the right of the Zoom controls.

### Hiding and Displaying the Slides Pane and Notes Pane

In Normal view, the Slides pane with its slide thumbnails appears on the left side of the screen, and the Notes pane appears on the bottom of the screen so that you can scribble notes about slides. Sometimes these panes just take up valuable space. They clutter the screen and occupy real estate that could be better used for formatting slides. Follow these instructions to temporarily close the Slides and Notes panes:



- ◆ **Hiding and displaying the Notes pane:** Click the Notes button on the status bar or View tab. To change the size of the Notes pane, move the pointer over the border between the pane and the rest of the screen, and after the pointer changes to a two-headed arrow, drag the border.



- ◆ **Hiding and displaying the Slides pane:** To hide the Slides pane, move the pointer over the border between the pane and the middle of the screen, and when the pointer changes to a two-headed arrow, drag the border to the left. To display the Slides pane, click the Thumbnails button.

You can change the size of either pane by moving the pointer over its border and then clicking and dragging.

## Selecting, Moving, and Deleting Slides

As a presentation takes shape, you have to move slides forward and backward. Sometimes you have to delete a slide. And you can't move or delete slides until you select them first. Herewith are instructions for selecting, moving, and deleting slides.

### Selecting slides

The best place to select slides is Slide Sorter view (if you want to select several at a time). Use one of these techniques to select slides:

- ◆ **Select one slide:** Click the slide.
- ◆ **Select several different slides:** Hold down the Ctrl key and click each slide in the Slides pane or in Slide Sorter view.
- ◆ **Select several slides in succession:** Hold down the Shift key and click the first slide and then the last one.
- ◆ **Select a block of slides:** In Slide Sorter view, drag across the slides you want to select. Be sure when you click and start dragging that you don't click a slide.
- ◆ **Selecting all the slides:** On the Home tab, click the Select button and choose Select All on the drop-down list.



### Moving slides

To move or rearrange slides, you're advised to go to Slide Sorter view. Select the slide or slides that you want to move and use one of these techniques to move slides:

- ◆ **Dragging and dropping:** Click the slides you selected and drag them to a new location.
- ◆ **Cutting and pasting:** On the Home tab, cut the slide or slides to the Windows Clipboard (click the Cut button, press Ctrl+X, or right-click and choose Cut). Then select the slide that you want the slide or slides to appear after and give the Paste command (click the Paste button, press Ctrl+V, or right-click and choose Paste). You can right-click between slides to paste with precision.

## ***Deleting slides***

Before you delete a slide, think twice about deleting. Short of using the Undo command, you can't resuscitate a deleted slide. Select the slide or slides you want to delete and use one of these techniques to delete slides:

- ◆ Press the Delete key.
- ◆ Right-click and choose Delete Slide on the shortcut menu.

## ***Putting Together a Photo Album***

*Photo album* is just PowerPoint's term for inserting many photographs into a presentation all at once. You don't necessarily have to stuff the photo album with travel or baby pictures for it to be a proper photo album. The Photo Album is a wonderful feature because you can use it to dump a bunch of photos in a PowerPoint presentation without having to create slides one at a time, insert the photos, and endure the rest of the rigmarole. Create a photo album to quickly place a bunch of photos on PowerPoint slides.

## ***Creating your photo album***

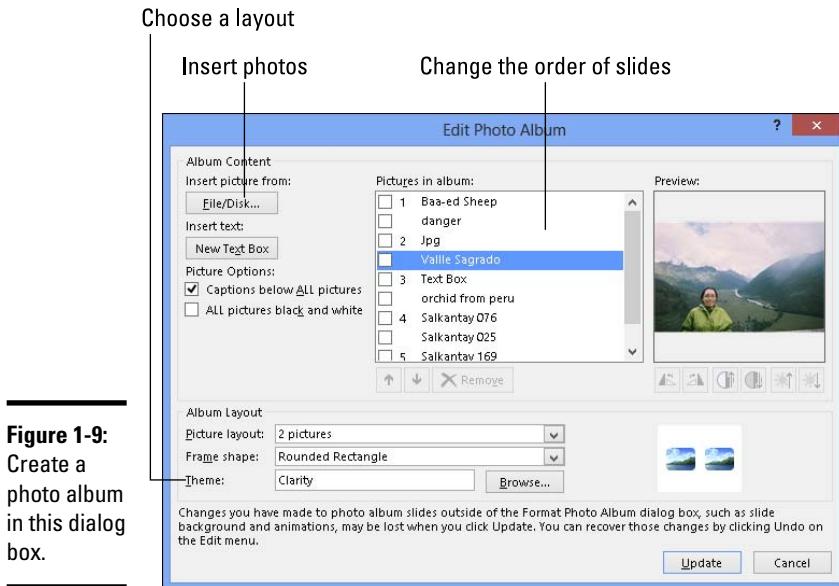


PowerPoint creates a new presentation for you when you create a photo album. To start, take note of where on your computer the photos you want for the album are. Then go to the Insert tab and click the Photo Album button. You see the Photo Album dialog box, as shown in Figure 1-9. For such a little thing, the Photo Album dialog box offers many opportunities for constructing a PowerPoint presentation. Your first task is to decide which pictures you want for your album. Then you choose a slide layout for the pictures.

## ***Inserting pictures and creating slides***

Here is the lowdown on choosing pictures for a photo album:

- ◆ **Inserting photos:** Click the File/Disk button and choose photos in the Insert New Pictures dialog box. You can select more than one photo at a time by Ctrl+clicking. The filenames of photos you selected appear in the Pictures in Album box. Slide numbers appear as well so that you know which photos are on which slides.
- ◆ **Deciding how photos are framed:** Open the Frame Shape drop-down list and choose an option for placing borders or rounded corners on your photos. (This option isn't available if you choose Fit to Slide on the Picture Layout drop-down list.)



**Figure 1-9:**  
Create a  
photo album  
in this dialog  
box.

- ◆ **Inserting a text box:** Insert a text box if you want to enter commentary in your photo album. In the Pictures in Album box, select the picture or text box that you want your new text box to go after and then click the New Text Box button. Later, you can go into your presentation and edit the placeholder text, which PowerPoint aptly enters as *Text Box*.
- ◆ **Providing captions for all pictures:** To place a caption below all the pictures in your photo album, select the Captions Below ALL Pictures check box. PowerPoint initially places the picture file name in the caption, but you can delete this caption and enter one of your own. (To select this option, you must choose a picture layout option besides Fit to Slide.)
- ◆ **Changing the order of pictures:** Select a picture in the Pictures in Album box and then click an arrow button to move it forward or backward in the presentation.
- ◆ **Changing the order of slides:** Ctrl+click to select each picture on a slide. Then click an arrow as many times as necessary to move the slide forward or backward in the presentation.
- ◆ **Removing a picture:** Select a picture in the Pictures in Album box and click the Remove button to remove it from your photo album. You can Ctrl+click pictures to select more than one.

### **Choosing a layout for slides**

Your next task is to go to the bottom of the Photo Album dialog box (refer to Figure 1-9) and choose a layout for the slides in the presentation. Open the Picture Layout drop-down list to choose one of the seven picture layouts:

- ◆ Choose Fit to Slide for a presentation in which each picture occupies an entire slide.
- ◆ Choose a “pictures” option to fit 1, 2, or 4 pictures on each slide.
- ◆ Choose a “pictures with” option to fit 1, 2, or 4 pictures as well as a text title frame on each slide.

### **Changing the look of pictures**

The Photo Album dialog box (refer to Figure 1-9) offers a handful of tools for changing the look of the pictures. When you use these tools, keep your eye on the Preview box — it shows you what you’re doing to your picture.

- ◆ **Making all photos black and white:** Select the ALL Pictures Black and White check box.
- ◆ **Rotating pictures:** Click a Rotate button to rotate a picture clockwise or counterclockwise.
- ◆ **Changing the contrast:** Click a Contrast button to sharpen or mute the light and dark colors or shades in the picture.
- ◆ **Changing the brightness:** Click a Brightness button to make a picture brighter or more somber.
- ◆ **Choosing a frame shape for pictures:** If you opted for a “picture” or “picture with” slide layout, you can choose a shape — Soft Edge Rectangle, Compound Frame, or others — for your pictures on the Frame Shape drop-down list.
- ◆ **Choosing a theme for your photo album:** If you selected a “picture” or “picture with” slide layout, you can choose a theme for your slide presentation. Click the Browse button and choose a theme in the Choose Theme dialog box.

At last, click the Create button when you’re ready to create the photo album. PowerPoint attaches a title slide to the start of the album that says, *Photo Album* with your name below.

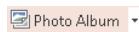
### **Putting on the final touches**

Depending on the options you chose for your photo album, it needs all or some of these final touches:

- ◆ **Fix the title slide:** Your title slide should probably say more than the words *Photo Album* and your name.

- ◆ **Fill in the text boxes:** If you asked text boxes with your photo album, by all means, replace PowerPoint's generic text with meaningful words of your own.
- ◆ **Write the captions:** If you asked for photo captions, PowerPoint entered photo file names below photos. Replace these file names with something more descriptive.

### *Editing a photo album*



To go back into the Photo Album dialog box and rearrange the photos in your album, go to the Insert tab, open the drop-down list on the Photo Album button, and choose Edit Photo Album on the drop-down list. You see the Edit Photo Album dialog box. It looks and works exactly like the Photo Album dialog box (refer to Figure 1-9). Of course, you can also edit your photo album by treating it like any other PowerPoint presentation. Change the theme, fiddle with the slides, and do what you will to torture your photo album into shape.

## *Hidden Slides for All Contingencies*

Hide a slide when you want to keep it on hand “just in case” during a presentation. Hidden slides don’t appear in slide shows unless you shout *Ollie ollie oxen free!* and bring them out of hiding. Although you, the presenter, can see hidden slides in Normal view and Slide Sorter view, where their slide numbers are crossed through, the audience doesn’t see them in the course of a presentation unless you decide to show them. Create hidden slides if you anticipate having to steer your presentation in a different direction — to answer a question from the audience, prove your point more thoroughly, or revisit a topic in more depth. Merely by right-clicking and choosing a couple of commands, you can display a hidden slide in the course of a slide show.



### *Hiding a slide*

The best place to put hidden slides is the end of a presentation where you know you can find them. Follow these steps to hide slides:

1. **Select the slide or slides that you want to hide.**
2. **On the Slide Show tab, click the Hide Slide button.**



You can also right-click a slide in the Slides pane or Slide Sorter view and choose Hide Slide. Hidden slides’ numbers are crossed through in the Slides pane and the Slide Sorter window.

To unhide a slide, click the Hide Slide button again or right-click the slide and choose Hide Slide.

## ***Showing a hidden slide during a presentation***

Hidden slides don't appear during the course of a presentation, but suppose that the need arises to show one. Before showing a hidden slide, take careful note of which slide you're viewing now. You have to return to this slide after viewing the hidden slide. Follow these steps to view a hidden slide during a presentation:

- 1. Click the Slides button.**

You see a screen with thumbnail versions of the slides in your presentation. You can also open this screen by right-clicking and choosing See All Slides.

- 2. Select a hidden slide so that the audience can view it.**

You can tell which slides are hidden because their slide numbers are enclosed in parentheses.

How do you resume your presentation after viewing a hidden slide? If you look at only one hidden slide, you can right-click and choose Last Viewed on the shortcut menu to return to the slide you saw before the hidden slide. If you've viewed several hidden slides, right-click the screen, choose See All Slides, and select a slide to pick up where you left off.

# *Chapter 2: Fashioning a Look for Your Presentation*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Introducing themes and slide backgrounds
- ✓ Choosing themes and theme variants
- ✓ Creating a solid color, gradient, clip-art, picture, and texture slide background
- ✓ Selecting a theme or background for specific slides
- ✓ Changing the size of slides
- ✓ Redesigning your presentation with master slides

**F**rom the audience's point of view, this chapter is the most important in this mini-book. What your presentation looks like — which theme and background style you select for the slides in your presentation — sets the tone. From the very first slide, the audience judges your presentation on its appearance. When you create a look for your presentation, what you're really doing is declaring what you want to communicate to your audience.

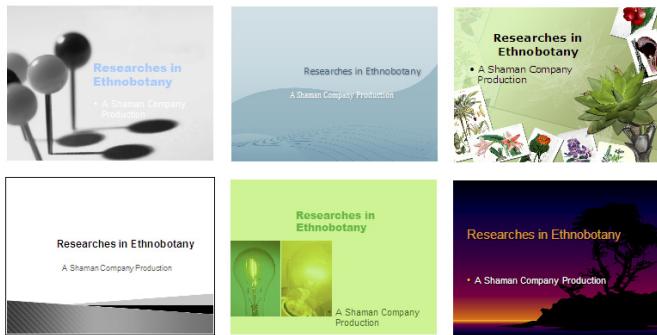
This chapter explains how to handle slide backgrounds. It examines what you need to consider when you select colors and designs for backgrounds. You also discover how to select and customize a theme, and how to create your own slide backgrounds. This chapter looks into how to change the background of some but not all of the slides in a presentation. It also explains how to use master slides and master styles to make sure that slides throughout your presentation are consistent with one another.

## *Looking at Themes and Slide Backgrounds*

What a presentation looks like is mostly a matter of the theme you choose and the slide backgrounds you make for the slides in your presentation. A *theme* is a “canned” slide design. Themes are designed by graphic artists. Most themes include sophisticated background patterns and colors. As well, you can create a background of your own from a single color, a gradient mixture of two colors, or a picture.

## 332 Looking at Themes and Slide Backgrounds

Figure 2-1 shows examples of themes. When you installed PowerPoint on your computer, you also installed a dozen or more themes, and you can acquire more themes online from Office.com and other places. After you select a theme, you can select a theme variant — a slight variation on the theme you selected.



**Figure 2-1:**  
Examples of  
themes.

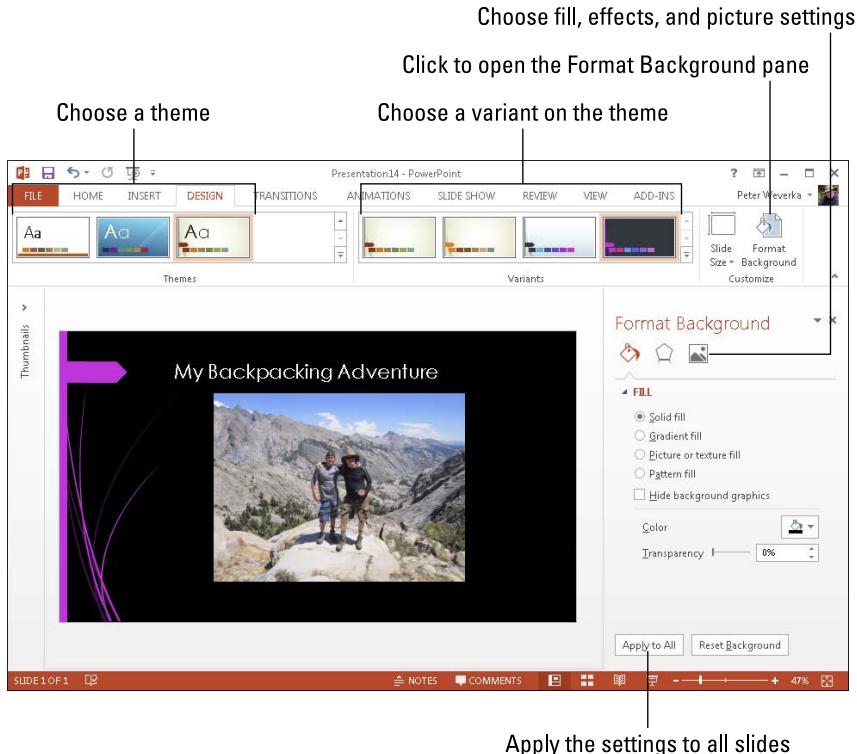
Figure 2-2 shows examples of backgrounds you can create yourself. Self-made backgrounds are not as intrusive as themes. The risk of the background overwhelming the lists, tables, charts, and other items in the forefront of slides is less when you fashion a background style yourself. You can apply a background that you create to a single slide or all the slides in your presentation.

**Figure 2-2:**  
Examples of  
background  
styles  
(clockwise  
from upper  
left): plain  
style,  
gradient,  
solid color,  
customized  
radial  
gradient,  
clip art, and  
picture.



To choose a theme or create slide backgrounds, start on the Design tab, as shown in Figure 2-3. The Design tab offers themes, theme variants, and the Format Background pane, the place to go when you want to fashion a fashionable background for slides.

**Figure 2-3:**  
Decide  
what your  
presentation  
looks like on  
the Design  
tab.



More than any other design decision, what sets the tone for a presentation are the colors you select for slide backgrounds. If the purpose of your presentation is to show photographs you took on a vacation to Arizona's Painted Desert, select light-tone, hot colors for the slide backgrounds. If your presentation is an aggressive sales pitch, consider a black background. There is no universal color theory for selecting the right colors in a design because everyone is different. Follow your intuition. It will guide you to the right background color choices.

## ***Choosing a Theme for Your Presentation***

PowerPoint offers many different themes in the Themes gallery, and if you happen to have PowerPoint presentations at hand, you can borrow a theme from another presentation. Experimenting with themes is easy. You are hereby encouraged to test different themes until you find the right one.

Starting on the Design tab, use one of these techniques to select a new theme for your presentation:

- ◆ **Selecting a theme in the Themes gallery:** Open the Themes gallery and move the pointer over different themes to "live-preview" them. Click a theme to select it.
- ◆ **Borrowing a theme from another presentation:** On the Design tab, open the Themes gallery, and click Browse for Themes. You see the Choose Theme or Themed Document dialog box. Locate and select a presentation with a theme you can commandeer for your presentation and click the Apply button.

To refine your theme, choose an option in the Variants gallery on the Design tab.

## ***Creating Slide Backgrounds on Your Own***

Besides a theme, your other option for creating slide backgrounds is to do it on your own. For a background, you can have a solid color, a transparent color, a gradient blend of colors, a picture, or a clip-art image.

- ◆ **Solid color:** A single, uniform color. You can adjust a color's transparency and in effect "bleach out" the color to push it farther into the background.
- ◆ **Gradient:** A mixture of different colors with the colors blending into one another.
- ◆ **Clip art:** A clip-art image from the Microsoft Clip Organizer.
- ◆ **Picture:** A photograph or graphic.
- ◆ **Texture:** A uniform pattern that gives the impression that the slide is displayed on a material such as cloth or stone.

How to create these kinds of slide backgrounds on your own is the subject of the next several pages.

## *Using a solid (or transparent) color for the slide background*

Using a solid or transparent color for the background gives your slides a straightforward, honest look. Because all the slides are the same color or transparent color, the audience can focus better on the presentation itself rather than the razzle-dazzle. Follow these steps to use a solid or transparent color as the background for slides:



1. On the Design tab, click the Format Background button.

The Format Background pane opens.

2. Click the Solid Fill option button.

3. Click the Color button and choose a color on the drop-down list.

The muted theme colors are recommended because they look better in the background, but you can select a standard color or click the More Colors button and select a color in the Colors dialog box.

4. Drag the Transparency slider if you want a “bleached out” color rather than a slide color.

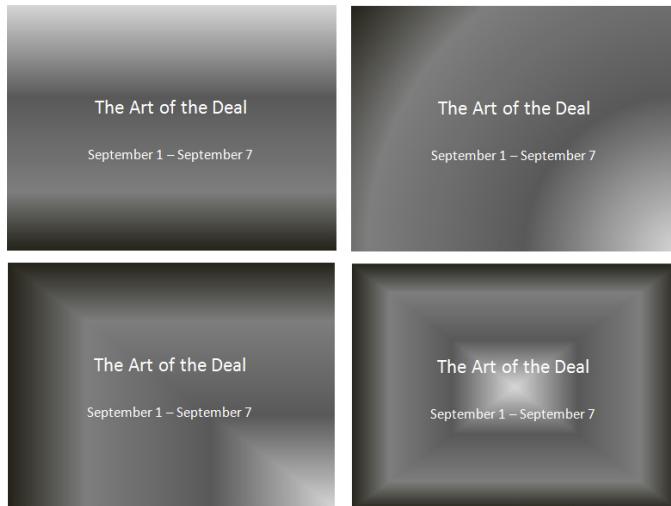
At 0% transparency, you get a solid color; at 100%, you get no color at all.

5. Click the Apply to All button and then the Close button.

I sincerely hope you like your choice of colors, but if you don’t, try, try, try again.

## *Creating a gradient color blend for slide backgrounds*

Gradient refers to how and where two or more colors grade, or blend, into one another on a slide. As well as the standard linear gradient direction, you can opt for a radial, rectangular, or path gradient direction. Figure 2-4 shows examples of gradient fill backgrounds. These backgrounds look terribly elegant. Using a gradient is an excellent way to create an original background that looks different from all the other presenter’s slide backgrounds.



**Figure 2-4:**  
Examples of  
gradient fill  
slide back-  
grounds  
(clockwise  
from upper  
left): linear,  
radial, rect-  
angular, and  
path.

Follow these steps to create a gradient background for slides:



1. **On the Design tab, click the Format Background button to open the Format Background pane.**
2. **Click the Gradient Fill option button.**

Before you experiment with gradients, try opening the Preset Gradients drop-down list to see whether one of the ready-made gradient options does the job for you.

3. **On the Type drop-down list, choose what type of gradient you want — Linear, Radial, Rectangular, Path, or Shade from Title (see Figure 2-4).**

If you choose Linear, you can enter a degree measurement in the Angle box to change the angle at which the colors blend. At 90 degrees, for example, colors blend horizontally across the slide; at 180 degrees, they blend vertically.

4. **Create a gradient stop for each color transition you want on your slides.**

Gradient stops determine where colors are, how colors transition from one to the next, and which colors are used. You can create as many gradient stops as you want. Here are techniques for handling gradient stops:

- *Adding a gradient stop:* Click the Add Gradient Stop button. A new gradient stop appears on the slider. Drag it to where you want the color blend to occur.
- *Removing a gradient stop:* Select a gradient stop on the slider and click the Remove Gradient Stop button.

- *Choosing a color for a gradient stop:* Select a gradient stop on the slider, click the Color button, and choose a color on the drop-down list.
- *Positioning a gradient stop:* Drag a gradient stop on the slider or use the Position box to move it to a different location.

- 5. Drag the Brightness slider to make the colors dimmer or brighter.**
  - 6. Drag the Transparency slider to make the colors on the slides more or less transparent.**
- At 0% transparency, you get solid colors; at 100%, you get no color at all.
- 7. Click the Apply to All button.**

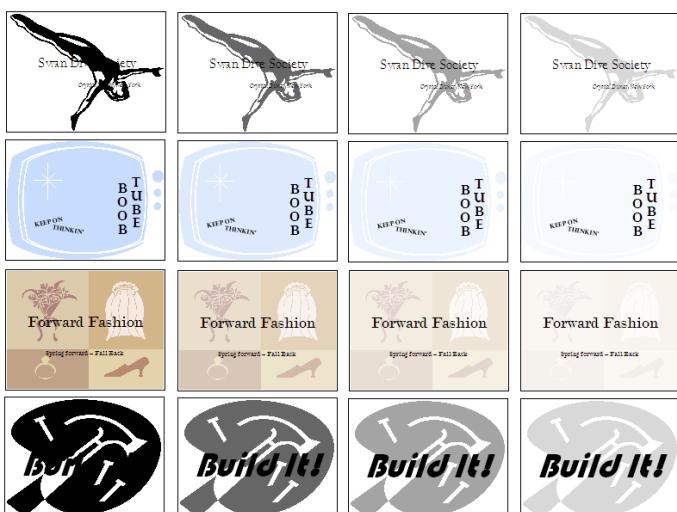
Very likely, you have to experiment with stop colors and stop positions until you blend the colors to your satisfaction. Good luck.

## Placing a picture in the slide background

As long as they're on the pale side or you've made them semitransparent, pictures from Office.com or the Internet do fine for slide backgrounds. They look especially good in title slides. Figure 2-5 shows examples of pictures as backgrounds. As Book VIII, Chapter 3 explains, Office.com offers numerous photos and clip-art images. You're invited to place one in the background of your slides by following these steps:



- 1. On the Design tab, click the Format Background button to open the Format Background pane.**



**Figure 2-5:**  
For backgrounds, a picture usually has to be at least somewhat transparent. These slides are (from left to right) 0%, 40%, 65%, and 85% transparent.

**2. Click the Picture or Texture Fill option button.**

**3. Click the Online button.**

You see the Insert Pictures dialog box.

**4. Find and select picture that you can use in the background of your slides.**

Book VIII, Chapter 3 explains the ins and outs of trolling for pictures. You can get a picture from Office.com, scrounge one from the Internet, or cadge it from a SkyDrive folder.

**5. In the Format Background pane, enter a Transparency measurement.**

Drag the Transparency slider or enter a measurement in the box. The higher the measurement, the more transparent the image is (see Figure 2-5).

**6. Enter measurements in the Offsets boxes to make your picture fill the slide.**

**7. Click the Apply to All button and then click Close.**

There you have it. The picture you selected lands in the slides' backgrounds.

### ***Using a photo of your own for a slide background***

Figure 2-6 shows examples of photos being used as slide backgrounds. Besides getting a photo from Office.com or another place on the Internet, you can use one of your own photos.



Select your photo carefully. A photo with too many colors — and that includes the majority of color photographs — obscures the text and makes it difficult to read. You can get around this problem by “recoloring” a photo to give it a uniform color tint, selecting a grayscale photograph, selecting a photo with colors of a similar hue, or making the photo semitransparent, but all in all, the best way to solve the problem of a photo that obscures the text is to start with a quiet, subdued photo. (Book VIII, Chapter 3 explains all the ins and outs of using photos in Office 2013.)



**Figure 2-6:**  
Examples  
of pictures  
used as  
slide back-  
grounds.



One more thing: Select a landscape-style photo that is wider than it is tall. PowerPoint expands photos to make them fill the entire slide background. If you select a skinny, portrait-style photo, PowerPoint has to do a lot of expanding to make it fit on the slide, and you end up with a distorted background image.

Follow these steps to use a picture as a slide background:



1. **On the Design tab, click the Format Background button to open the Format Background tab.**
2. **Click the Picture or Texture Fill option button.**
3. **Click the File button.**  
The Insert Picture dialog box appears.
4. **Locate the photo you want, select it, and click the Insert button.**  
The picture lands on your slide.
5. **Enter a Transparency measurement to make the photo fade a bit into the background.**

Drag the slider or enter a measurement in the Transparency box. The higher percentage measurement you enter, the more “bleached out” the picture is.

6. Using the Offsets text boxes, enter measurements to make your picture fit on the slides.
7. Click the Picture icon in the Format Background pane.
8. Experiment with the Picture Corrections and Picture Color options to make your picture more suitable for a background.
9. Click the Apply to All button.

How do you like your slide background? You may have to open the Format Background pane again and play with the transparency setting. Only the very lucky and the permanently blessed get it right the first time.

## Using a texture for a slide background

Yet another option for slide backgrounds is to use a texture. As shown in Figure 2-7, a *texture* gives the impression that the slide is displayed on a material such as marble or parchment. A texture can make for a very elegant slide background. Follow these steps to use a texture as a slide background:



1. On the Design tab, click the Format Background button to open the Format Background pane.



**Figure 2-7:**  
Different  
textures  
(clockwise  
from  
upper left):  
Papyrus,  
Canvas,  
Newsprint,  
and Cork.

2. Click the Picture or Texture Fill option button.
3. Click the Texture button and choose a texture on the drop-down list.
4. Enter a Transparency measurement to make the texture less imposing.  
Drag the slider or enter a measurement in the Transparency box.
5. Click the Apply to All button and then click Close.

## *Changing the Background of a Single or Handful of Slides*

To make a single slide (or a handful of slides) stand out in a presentation, change their background or theme. A different background tells your audience that the slide being presented is a little different from the one before it. Maybe it imparts important information. Maybe it introduces another segment of the presentation. Use a different background or theme to mark a transition, indicate that your presentation has shifted gears, or mark a milestone in your presentation.

Follow these steps to change the background of one or several slides in your presentation:

1. In Slide Sorter view, select the slide or slides that need a different look.

You can select more than one slide by Ctrl+clicking slides.

2. On the Design tab, choose a different theme or background for the slides you selected.

How you do this depends on whether you're working with a theme or a slide background:

- *Theme*: In the Themes gallery, right-click a theme and choose Apply To Selected Slides.
- *Slide background*: In Slide Sorter view, select the slides that need a different background. Then make like you're creating a background style for all the slides (see "Creating Slide Backgrounds on Your Own" earlier in this chapter) but don't click the Apply to All button.



When you assign a different theme to some of the slides in a presentation, PowerPoint creates another Slide Master. You may be surprised to discover that when you add a new slide to your presentation, a second, third, or fourth set of slide layouts appears on the New Slide drop-down list. These extra layouts appear because your presentation has more than one Slide Master. Later in this chapter, "Using Master Slides and Master Styles for a Consistent Design," explains what Slide Masters are.

## Choosing the Slide Size

By default, slides in PowerPoint 2013 presentations are 16:9 ratio widescreen slides. In previous versions of PowerPoint, slides were 4:3 ratio standard size. The new, widescreen slide size is meant to accommodate modern letterbox computer screens, which are wider than they were in the past.



To change the size of the slides in a presentation, go to the Design tab and click the Slide Size button. Then, on the drop-down list, choose Standard (4:3), choose Widescreen (16:9), or choose Custom Slide Size and choose a different size in the Slide Size dialog box.

All slides in a presentation must be the same size. Sorry, you can't mix and match slides of different sizes.

## Using Master Slides and Master Styles for a Consistent Design

Consistency is everything in a PowerPoint design. Consistency of design is a sign of professionalism and care. In a consistent design, the fonts and font sizes on slides are consistent from one slide to the next, the placeholder text frames are in the same positions, and the text is aligned the same way across different slides. In the bulleted lists, each entry is marked with the same bullet character. If the corner of each slide shows a company logo, the logo appears in the same position.

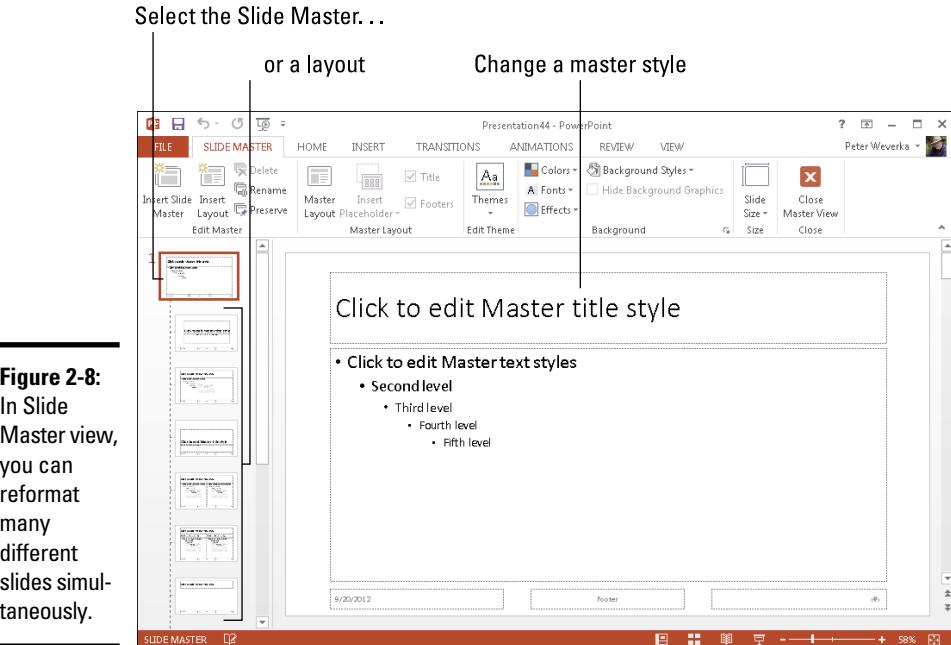
It would be torture to have to examine every slide to make sure it is consistent with the others. In the interest of consistency, PowerPoint offers master styles and master slides. A *master slide* is a model slide from which the slides in a presentation inherit their formats. A *master style* is a format that applies to many different slides. Starting from a master slide, you can change a master style and in so doing, reformat many slides the same way. These pages explain how master slides can help you quickly redesign a presentation.

## Switching to Slide Master view

To work with master slides, switch to *Slide Master view*, as shown in Figure 2-8. From this view, you can start working with master slides:

- 1. Go to the View tab.**
- 2. Click the Slide Master button.**





**Figure 2-8:**  
In Slide  
Master view,  
you can  
reformat  
many  
different  
slides simu-  
taneously.

In Slide Master view, you can select a master slide in the Slides pane, format styles on a master slide, and in this way reformat many different slides. (Click the Close Master View button or a view button such as Normal or Slide Sorter to leave Slide Master view.)

## Understanding master slides and master styles

Master slides are special, high-powered slides. Use master slides to deliver the same formatting commands to many different slides. Whether the commands affect all the slides in your presentation or merely a handful of slides depends on whether you format the Slide Master (the topmost slide in Slide Master view) or a layout (one of the other slides):

- ◆ **The Slide Master:** The *Slide Master* is the first slide in the Slides pane in Slide Master view (refer to Figure 2-8). It's a little bigger than the master slides, as befits its status as Emperor of All Slides. Formatting changes you make to the Slide Master affect all the slides in your presentation. When you select a theme for your presentation, what you're really doing is assigning a theme to the Slide Master. Because formatting commands given to the Slide Master apply throughout a presentation, the theme design and colors are applied to all slides. If you want a company logo to appear on all your slides, place the logo on the Slide Master.

- ◆ **Layouts:** As you know, you choose a slide layout — Title and Content, for example — on the New Slide drop-down list to create a new slide. In Slide Master view, PowerPoint provides one *layout* for each type of slide layout in your presentation. By selecting and reformatting a layout in Slide Master view, you can reformat all slides in your presentation that were created with the same slide layout. For example, to change fonts, alignments, and other formats on all slides that you created with the Title layout, select the Title layout in Slide Master view and change master styles on the Title layout. Each layout controls its own little fiefdom in a PowerPoint presentation — a fiefdom comprised of slides created with the same slide layout.
- ◆ **Master styles:** Each master slide — the Slide Master and each layout — offers you the opportunity to click to edit master styles (refer to Figure 2-8). The master style governs how text is formatted on slides. By changing a master style on a master slide, you can change the look of slides throughout a presentation. For example, by changing the Master Title Style font, you can change fonts in all the slide titles in your presentation.

PowerPoint's Slide Master-layouts-slides system is designed on the "trickle down" theory. When you format a master style on the Slide Master, formats trickle down to layouts and then to slides. When you format a master style on a layout, the formats trickle down to slides you created using the same slide layout. This chain-of-command relationship is designed to work from the top down, with the master slide and layouts barking orders to the slides below. In the interest of design consistency, slides take orders from layouts, and layouts take orders from the Slide Master.



In Slide Master view, you can move the pointer over a layout thumbnail in the Slides pane to see a pop-up box that tells you the layout's name and which slides in your presentation "use" the layout. For example, a pop-up box that reads "Title and Content Layout: used by slide(s) 2-3, 8" tells you that slides 2 through 3 and 8 in your presentation are governed by the Title and Content layout.

### ***Editing a master slide***



Now that you know the relationship among the Slide Master, layouts, and slides, you're ready to start editing master slides. To edit a master slide, switch to Slide Master view, select a master slide, and change a master style. To insert a picture on a master slide, visit the Insert tab.

## Changing a master slide layout

Changing the layout of a master slide entails changing the position and size of text frames and content frames as well as removing these frames:

- ◆ **Changing size of frames:** Select the frame you want to change, and then move the pointer over a frame handle on the corner, side, top or bottom of the frame and drag when you see the double-headed arrow.
- ◆ **Moving frames:** Move the pointer over the perimeter of a frame, click when you see the four-headed arrow, and drag.
- ◆ **Removing a frame from the Slide Master:** Click the perimeter of the frame to select it and then press Delete.
- ◆ **Adding a frame to the Slide Master:** Select the slide master, and on the Slide Master tab, click the Master Layout button. You see the Master Layout dialog box. Select the check box beside the name of each frame you want to add and click OK.





# *Chapter 3: Entering the Text*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Entering and changing the font, size, and color of text
- ✓ Creating text boxes and text box shapes
- ✓ Handling overflow text in text boxes and frames
- ✓ Aligning the text in text boxes and text frames
- ✓ Creating bulleted and numbered lists
- ✓ Placing footers and headers on slides

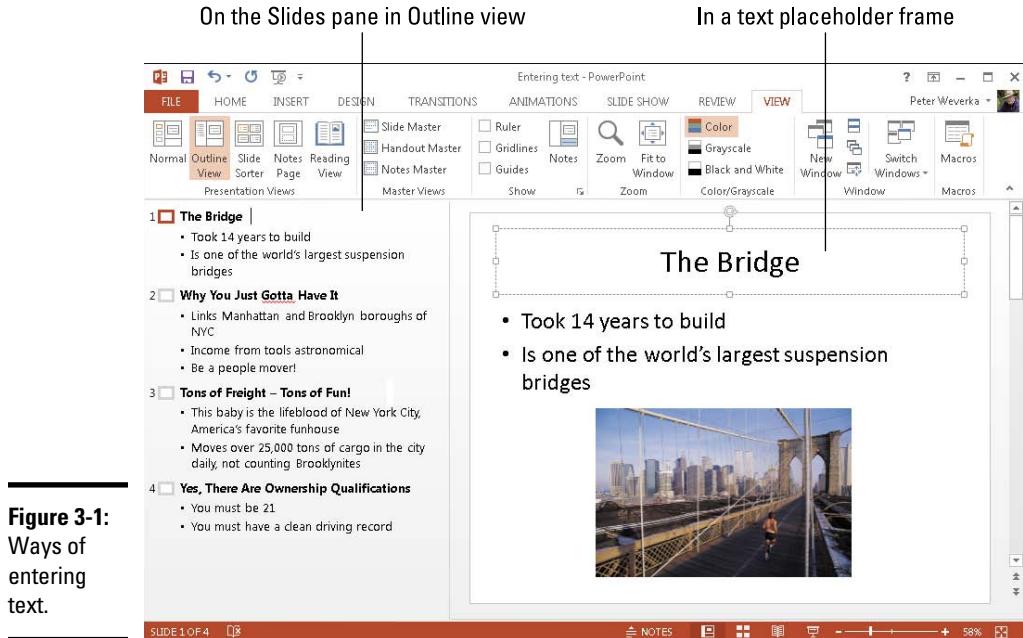
**T**his chapter explains how to change the appearance of text, create text boxes, and create text box shapes. I solve the riddle of what to do when text doesn't fit in a text box or text placeholder frame. You also discover how to align text, handle bulleted and numbered lists, and put footers and headers on all or some of the slides in your presentation.

By the time you finish reading this chapter, if you read it all the way through, you will be one of those people others turn to when they have a PowerPoint question about entering text on slides. You'll become a little guru in your own right.

## *Entering Text*

No presentation is complete without a word or two, which is why the first thing you see when you add a new slide to a presentation are the words "Click to add text." As soon as you "click," those words of instruction disappear, and you're free to enter a title or text of your own. Most slides include a text placeholder frame at the top for entering a slide title; many slides also have another, larger text placeholder frame for entering a bulleted list.

As shown in Figure 3-1, the easiest way to enter text on slides is to click in a text placeholder frame and start typing. The other way is to switch to Outline view and enter text in the Slides pane (see Figure 3-1).



**Figure 3-1:**  
Ways of  
entering  
text.

Enter text on slides the same way you enter text in a Word document — by wiggling your fingers over the keyboard. While you're at it, you can change fonts, the font size of text, and the color of text, as the following pages explain. (Chapter 1 of this mini-book describes how to get the text for slides from the headings in a Word document; Book I, Chapter 2 explains everything a sane person needs to know about handling fonts.)

## Choosing fonts for text

If you aren't happy with the fonts in your presentation, you have three ways to remedy the problem:

- ◆ **Dig in and choose new fonts on a slide-by-slide basis.** Select the text, go to the Home tab, and choose a font from the Font drop-down list or the Font dialog box.
- ◆ **Choose a new font on a master slide to change fonts throughout your presentation.** Chapter 2 of this mini-book explains master slides and how you can use them to change formats simultaneously on many slides. In Slide Master view, select a master slide and change its fonts on the Home tab.

## ***Changing the font size of text***

For someone in the back row of an audience to be able to read text in a PowerPoint presentation, the text should be no smaller than 28 points. Try this simple test to see whether text in your presentation is large enough to read: Stand five or so feet from your computer and see whether you can read the text. If you can't read it, make it larger.

Go to the Home tab and select the text whose size you want to change. Then use one of these techniques to change font sizes:

- ◆ **Font Size drop-down list:** Open this list and choose a point size. To choose a point size that isn't on the list, click in the Font Size text box, enter a point size, and press Enter.
- ◆ **Font dialog box:** Click the Font group button to open the Font dialog box. Then either choose a point size from the Size drop-down list or enter a point size in the Size text box and click OK.
- ◆ **Increase Font Size and Decrease Font Size buttons:** Click these buttons (or press **Ctrl+Shift+>** or **Ctrl+Shift+<**) to increase or decrease the point size by the next interval on the Font Size drop-down list. Watch the Font Size list or your text and note how the text changes size. This is an excellent technique when you want to "eyeball it" and you don't care to fool with the Font Size list or Font dialog box.



## ***Changing the look of text***

For the daring and experimental, PowerPoint offers about a hundred different ways to change the look of text. You can change colors, make the text glow, and make the text cast a shadow, among other things.

Select the text that needs a makeover and then use one of these techniques to change its appearance:

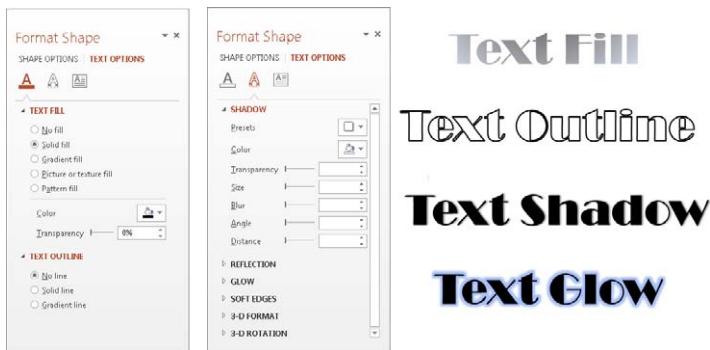


- ◆ **Changing color:** On the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Font Color button and choose a color. You can also click the Font group button to open the Font dialog box and choose a color there.



- ◆ **Choosing text fills, outlines, and effects:** On the Design tab, click the Format Background button and then select Text Options in the Format Shape pane. As shown in Figure 3-2, the Format Shape pane offers many ways to change the appearance of text:
  - **Text Fill:** Show the text in gradients, textures, or patterns. You can assign a transparent color to text by choosing a color and dragging the Transparency slider.

- **Text Outline:** Change the text outline — the outermost lines that form the letters and numbers. Try this: Under Text Fill, choose the No Fill option, and then choose a solid line as the text outline (refer to Figure 3-2).
- **Text Effects:** Give the letters and numbers a shadow, a glow, a softer edge, or another dimension. Before you experiment with these commands, try choosing an option on the Presets menu. Preset options demonstrate what these text effects can do and give you a head start in fashioning a text effect.



**Figure 3-2:**  
The Format  
Shape pane  
offers many  
commands  
for changing  
the look of  
text.



Before you change the look of text, peer into your computer screen and examine the background theme or color you selected for your slides. Unless the text is a different color from the background, the audience can't read the text. As you experiment with changing the look of text, make sure that your audience can still read the text.

## Fun with Text Boxes and Text Box Shapes

Text boxes give you an opportunity to exercise your creativity. They add another element to slides. Use them to position text wherever you want, annotate a chart or equation, or place an announcement on a slide. You can even create a vertical text box in which the text reads from top to bottom instead of left to right, or turn a text box into a circle, arrow, or other shape. Figure 3-3 shows examples of text boxes and text box shapes.

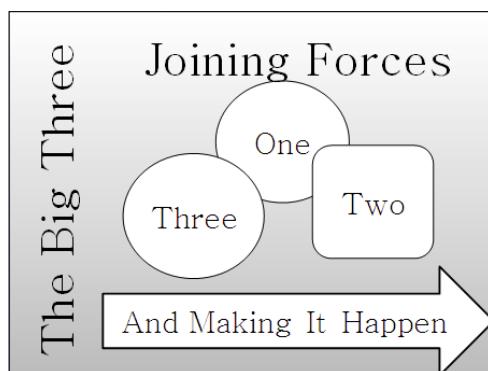
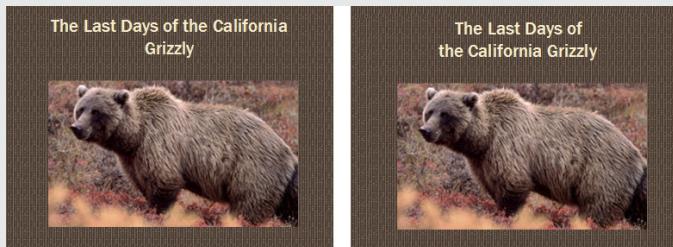
## Fixing a top-heavy title

In typesetting terminology, a *top-heavy title* is a title in which the first line is much longer than the second. Whenever a title extends to two lines, it runs the risk of being top-heavy. Unsightly top-heavy titles look especially bad on PowerPoint slides, where text is blown up to 40 points or more.

To fix a top-heavy title, click where you prefer the lines to break and then press Shift+Enter. Pressing Shift+Enter creates a *hard line break*, a forced break at the end of one line.

(To remove a hard line break, click where the break occurs and then press the Delete key.)

The only drawback of hard line breaks is remembering where you made them. In effect, the line breaks are invisible. When you edit a title with a line break, the line break remains, and unless you know it's there, you discover the line breaking in an odd place. The moral is: If you're editing a title and the text keeps moving to the next line, you may have entered a hard line break and forgotten about it.



**Figure 3-3:**  
Examples of  
text boxes  
and text box  
shapes.

Book IV  
Chapter 3

Entering the Text

In Office terminology, a PowerPoint text box is an object. Book VIII, Chapter 4 explains all the different techniques for handling objects, including how to make them overlap and change their sizes. Here are the basics of handling text boxes in PowerPoint:



◆ **Creating a text box:** On the Insert tab, click the Text Box button and move the pointer to a part of the slide where you can see the *text box pointer*, a downward-pointing arrow. Then click and start dragging to create your text box, and enter the text.

◆ **Filling a text box with color:** On the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, choose a style on the Shape Styles gallery or click the Shape Fill button and select a color. You can also go to the Design tab, click the Format Background button, and select a color, picture, pattern, or gradient in the Format Shape pane.

◆ **Rotating a text box (text included):** Use one of these techniques to rotate a text box along with the text inside it:

- Drag the rotation handle, the circle above the text box.
- On the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, click the Rotate Objects button and choose a Rotate or Flip command on the drop-down list.
- On the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, click the Size group button (you may have to click the Size button first) and, in the Format Shape pane, enter a measurement in the Rotation box.



◆ **Changing the direction of text:** On the Home tab, click the Text Direction button and choose a Rotate or Stacked option.

◆ **Turning a shape into a text box:** Create a shape, and then click in the shape and start typing. (Book VIII, Chapter 4 explains how to create a shape.)



◆ **Turning a text box into a shape:** Right-click the text box and choose Format Shape. In the Format Shape pane, go to the Size & Properties tab. Then, under Text Box, select the Do Not AutoFit option button. Next, on the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, click the Edit Shape button, choose Change Shape on the drop-down list, and choose a shape on the Change Shape submenu.



Many people object to the small text boxes that appear initially when you create a text box. If you prefer to establish the size of text boxes when you create them, not when you enter text, change the AutoFit setting and then create a default text box with the new setting. The next section in this chapter explains how to change the AutoFit settings.

### Controlling How Text Fits in Text Frames and Text Boxes

When text doesn't fit in a text placeholder frame or text box, PowerPoint takes measures to make it fit. In a text placeholder frame, PowerPoint

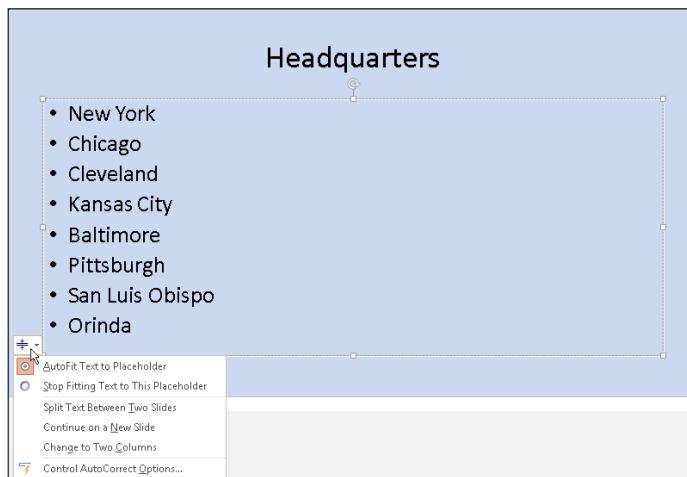
shrinks the amount of space between lines and then it shrinks the text itself. When text doesn't fit in a text box, PowerPoint enlarges the text box to fit more text. PowerPoint handles overflow text as part of its AutoFit mechanism.

How AutoFit works is up to you. If, like me, you don't care for how PowerPoint enlarges text boxes when you enter the text, you can tell PowerPoint not to "AutoFit" text, but instead to make text boxes large from the get-go. And if you don't care for how PowerPoint shrinks text in text placeholder frames, you can tell PowerPoint not to shrink text. These pages explain how to choose AutoFit options for overflow text in your text frames and text boxes.

## Choosing how PowerPoint "AutoFits" text in text frames



When text doesn't fit in a text placeholder frame and PowerPoint has to "AutoFit" the text, you see the AutoFit Options button. Click this button to open a drop-down list with options for handling overflow text, as shown in Figure 3-4. The AutoFit options — along with a couple of other techniques, as I explain shortly — represent the "one at a time" way of handling overflow text. You can also change the default AutoFit options for handling overflow text, as I also explain if you'll bear with me a while longer and quit your yawning.



**Figure 3-4:**  
The laundry list of  
AutoFit  
options.



### **"AutoFitting" the text one frame at a time**

When text doesn't fit in a text placeholder frame, especially a title frame, the first question to ask is, "Do I want to fool with the integrity of the slide design?" Making the text fit usually means shrinking the text, enlarging the text frame, or compromising the slide design in some way, but audiences notice design inconsistencies. Slides are shown on large screens where design flaws are easy to see.

Making text fit in a text frame usually means making a compromise. Here are different ways to handle the problem of text not fitting in a text frame. Be prepared to click the Undo button when you experiment with these techniques:

- ◆ **Edit the text:** Usually when text doesn't fit in a frame, the text needs editing. It needs to be made shorter. A slide is not a place for a treatise. Editing the text is the only way to make it fit in the frame without compromising the design.
- ◆ **Enlarge the frame:** Click the AutoFit Options button and choose Stop Fitting Text to This Placeholder on the shortcut menu (see Figure 3-4). Then select the frame and drag the bottom or top selection handle to enlarge it.
- ◆ **Decrease the font size:** Select the text, go to the Home tab, and choose a smaller Font Size measurement. You can also click the Decrease Font Size button (or press Ctrl+<) to decrease the font size.
- ◆ **Decrease the amount of spacing between lines:** On the Home tab, click the Paragraph group button to open the Paragraph dialog box and decrease the After measurement under Spacing.
- ◆ **Change the frame's internal margins:** Similar to a page, text frames have internal margins to keep text from getting too close to a frame border. By shrinking these margins, you can make more room for text. Right-click the text frame and choose Format Shape. Then, in the Format Shape pane, go to the Size & Properties tab, and under the Text Box settings, enter smaller margin measurements.
- ◆ **Create a new slide for the text:** If you're dealing with a list or paragraph text in a body text frame, the AutoFit Options drop-down list offers two ways to create a new slide (refer to Figure 3-4). Choose Continue on a New Slide to run the text onto another slide; choose Split Text Between Two Slides to divide the text evenly between two slides. I don't recommend either option, though. If you need to make a new slide, do it on your own and then rethink how to present the material. Inserting a new slide to accommodate a long list throws a presentation off-track.



### ***Choosing default AutoFit options for text frames***

Unless you change the default AutoFit options, PowerPoint shrinks the amount of space between lines and then shrinks the text itself to make text fit in text placeholder frames. Follow these steps if you want to decide for yourself whether PowerPoint “auto-fits” text in text frames:

- 1. Open the AutoFormat As You Type tab in the AutoCorrect dialog box.**

Here are the two ways to get there:

- Click the AutoFit Options button (refer to Figure 3-4) and choose Control AutoCorrect Options on the drop-down list.
  - On the File tab, choose Options to open the PowerPoint Options dialog box. In the Proofing category, click the AutoCorrect Options button.
- 2. Deselect the AutoFit Title Text to Placeholder check box to prevent auto-fitting in title text placeholder frames.**
  - 3. Deselect the AutoFit Body Text to Placeholder check box to prevent auto-fitting in text placeholder frames apart from title frames.**
  - 4. Click OK.**

### ***Choosing how PowerPoint “AutoFits” text in text boxes***

PowerPoint offers three options for handling overflow text in text boxes:

- ◆ **Do Not AutoFit:** Doesn’t fit text in the text box but lets text spill out
- ◆ **Shrink Text on Overflow:** Shrinks the text to make it fit in the text box
- ◆ **Resize Shape to Fit Text:** Enlarges the text box to make the text fit inside it

Follow these steps to tell PowerPoint how or whether to fit text in text boxes:

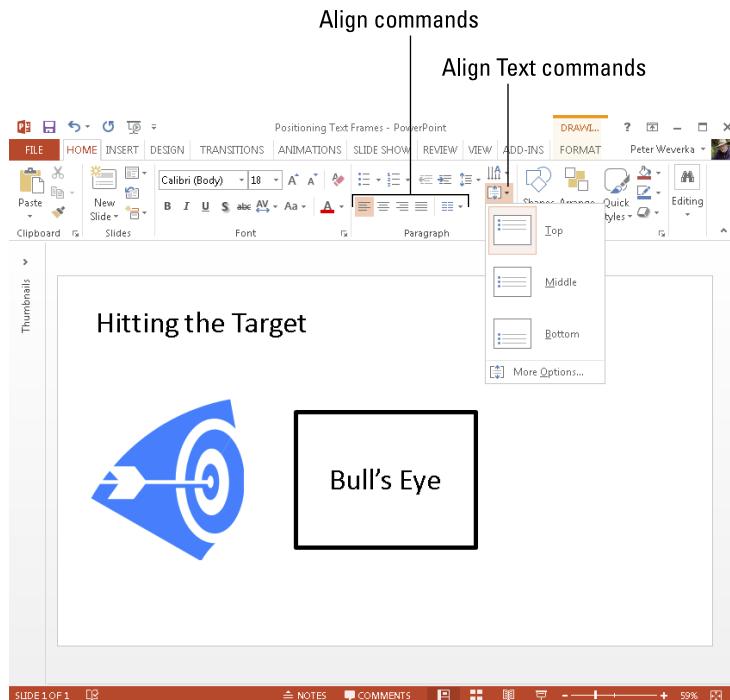
- 1. Select the text box.**
- 2. Right-click the text box and choose Format Shape.**  
The Format Shape dialog box pane opens.
- 3. Go to the Size & Properties tab.**
- 4. Display the Text Box options.**
- 5. Choose an AutoFit option: Do Not AutoFit, Shrink Text on Overflow, or Resize Shape to Fit Text.**

## Positioning Text in Frames and Text Boxes

How text is positioned in text frames and text boxes is governed by two sets of commands: the Align Text commands and the Align commands. By choosing combinations of Align and Align Text commands, you can land text where you want it in a text frame or text box. Just wrestle with these two commands until you land your text where you want it to be in a text frame or box:



- ◆ Align commands control horizontal (left-to-right) alignments. On the Home tab, click the Align Left (press Ctrl+L), Center (press Ctrl+E), Align Right (press Ctrl+R), or Justify button.
- ◆ Align Text commands control vertical (up-and-down) alignments. On the Home tab, click the Align Text button and choose Top, Middle, or Bottom on the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 3-5.



**Figure 3-5:**  
Choose an  
Align Text  
and an Align  
command  
to position  
text in text  
frames and  
boxes.

## Handling Bulleted and Numbered Lists

What is a PowerPoint presentation without a list or two? It's like an emperor without any clothes on. This part of the chapter explains everything there is to know about bulleted and numbered lists.

Lists can be as simple or complex as you want them to be. PowerPoint offers a bunch of different ways to format lists, but if you're in a hurry or you don't care whether your lists look like everyone else's, you can take advantage of the Numbering and Bullets buttons and go with standard lists. Nonconformists and people with nothing else to do, however, can try their hand at making fancy lists. The following pages cover that topic, too.

### *Creating a standard bulleted or numbered list*

In typesetting terms, a *bullet* is a black, filled-in circle or other character that marks an item on a list. Many slide layouts include text frames that are formatted already for bulleted lists. All you have to do in these text frames is "click to add text" and keep pressing the Enter key while you enter items for your bulleted list. Each time you press Enter, PowerPoint adds another bullet to the list. Bulleted lists are useful when you want to present the audience with alternatives or present a list in which the items aren't ranked in any order. Use a numbered list to rank items in a list or present step-by-step instructions.

Follow these instructions to create a standard bulleted or numbered list:



- ◆ **Creating a bulleted list:** Select the list if you've already entered the list items, go to the Home tab, and click the Bullets button. You can also right-click, choose Bullets on the shortcut menu, and choose a bullet character on the submenu if you don't care for the standard, black, filled-in circle.
  
- ◆ **Creating a numbered list:** Select the list if you've already entered the list items, go to the Home tab, and click the Numbering button. You can also right-click, choose Numbering on the shortcut menu, and select a numbering style on the submenu.
  
- ◆ **Converting a numbered to a bulleted list (or vice versa):** Drag over the list to select it, go to the Home tab, and then click the Bullets or Numbering button.

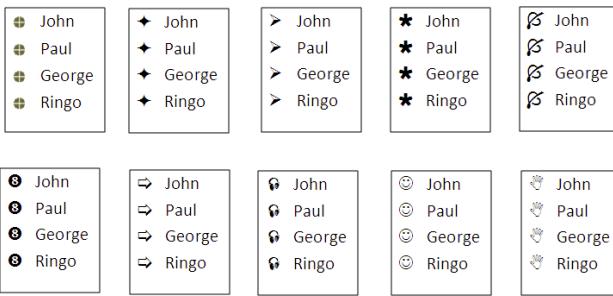


To remove the bullets or numbers from a list, select the list, open the drop-down list on the Bullets or Numbering button, and choose None.

## Choosing a different bullet character, size, and color

As Figure 3-6 demonstrates, the black filled-in circle isn't the only character you can use to mark items in a bulleted list. You can also opt for what PowerPoint calls *pictures* (colorful bullets of many sizes and shapes) or symbols from the Symbol dialog box. While you're at it, you can change the bullets' color and size.

**Figure 3-6:**  
Examples of characters you can use for bulleted lists.



If you decide to change the bullet character in your lists, be consistent from slide to slide. Unless you want to be goofy, select the same bullet character throughout the lists in your presentation for the sake of consistency. You don't want to turn your slide presentation into a showcase for bullets, do you?



To use pictures or unusual symbols for bullets, start by selecting your bulleted list, going the Home tab, and opening the drop-down list on the Bullets button. Do any of the bullets on the drop-down list tickle your fancy? If one does, select it; otherwise, click the Bullets and Numbering option at the bottom of the drop-down list. You see the Bulleted tab of the Bullets and Numbering dialog box. Starting there, you can customize your bullets:

- ◆ **Using a picture for bullets:** Click the Picture button and select a bullet in the Picture Bullet dialog box.
- ◆ **Using a symbol for bullets:** Click the Customize button and select a symbol in the Symbol dialog box. By opening the Font drop-down list and choosing a Wingdings font, you can choose an oddball character for bullets.
- ◆ **Changing bullets' size:** Enter a percentage figure in the Size % of Text box. For example, if you enter **200**, the bullets are twice as large as the font size you choose for the items in your bulleted list.
- ◆ **Changing bullets' color:** Click the Color button in the Bullets and Numbering dialog box and choose an option on the drop-down list. Theme colors are considered most compatible with the theme design you chose for your presentation.

## Choosing a different list-numbering style, size, and color



PowerPoint offers seven different ways of numbering lists. As well as choosing a different numbering style, you can change the size of numbers relative to the text and change the color of numbers. To select a different list-numbering style, size, or color, begin by selecting your list, going to the Home tab, and opening the drop-down list on the Numbering button. If you like one of the numbering-scheme choices, select it; otherwise choose Bullets and Numbering to open the Numbered tab of the Bullets and Numbering dialog box. In this dialog box, you can customize list numbers:

- ◆ **Choosing a numbering scheme:** Select a numbering scheme and click OK.
- ◆ **Changing the numbers' size:** Enter a percentage figure in the Size % of Text box. For example, if you enter 50, the numbers are half as big as the font size you choose for the items in your numbered list.
- ◆ **Changing the numbers' color:** Click the Color button and choose a color on the drop-down list. Theme colors are more compatible with the theme design you chose than the other colors are.

## Putting Footers (and Headers) on Slides

A *footer* is a line of text that appears at the foot, or bottom, of a slide. Figure 3-7 shows a footer. Typically, a footer includes the date, a company name, and/or a slide number, and footers appear on every slide in a presentation if they appear at all. That doesn't mean you can't exclude a footer from a slide or put footers on some slides, as I explain shortly. For that matter, you can move slide numbers, company names, and dates to the top of slides, in which case they become *headers*. When I was a kid, "header" meant crashing your bike and falling headfirst over the handlebars. How times change.



**Figure 3-7:**  
An example  
of a footer.

These pages explain everything a body needs to know about footers and headers — how to enter them, make them appear on all or some slides, and exclude them from slides.

## ***Some background on footers and headers***

PowerPoint provides the Header & Footer command to enter the date, a word or two, and a slide number on the bottom of all slides in your presentation. This command is really just a convenient way to enter a footer on the Slide Master without having to switch to Slide Master view. As Chapter 2 of this mini-book explains, the Slide Master governs the formatting and layout of all slides in your presentation. The Slide Master includes text placeholder frames for a date, some text, and a slide number. Anything you enter on the Slide Master, including a footer, appears on all your slides.

If a date, some text, and a slide number along the bottom of all the slides in your presentation is precisely what you want, you've got it made. You can enter a footer on every slide in your presentation with no trouble at all by using the Header & Footer command. However, if you're a maverick and you want your footers and headers to be a little different from the next guy's — if you want the date, for example, to be in the upper-right corner of slides or you want footers to appear on some slides but not others — you have some tweaking to do. You may have to create a nonstandard footer or remove the footer from some of the slides.

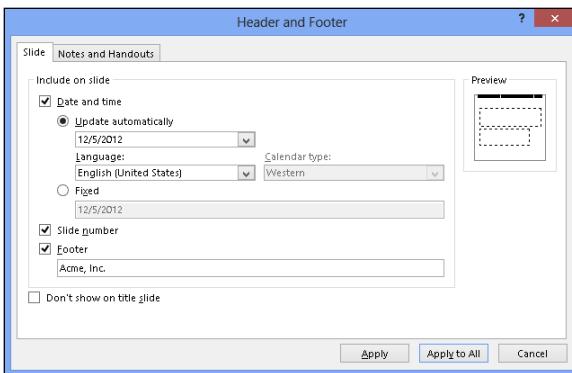
## ***Putting a standard footer on all your slides***



A standard footer includes the date, some text, and the page number. To put a standard footer on all the slides in your presentation, go to the Insert tab and click the Header & Footer button. You see the Header and Footer dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-8. Choose some or all of these options and click the Apply to All button:

- ◆ **Date and Time:** Select this check box to make the date appear in the lower-left corner of all your slides. Then tell PowerPoint whether you want a current or fixed date:
  - *Update Automatically:* Select this option button to make the day's date (or date and time) appear in the footer, and then open the drop-down list to choose a date (or date and time) format. With this option, the date you give your presentation always appears on slides.
  - *Fixed:* Select this option button and enter a date in the text box. For example, enter the date you created the presentation. With this option, the date remains fixed no matter when or where you give the presentation.

- ◆ **Slide Number:** Select this check box to make slide numbers appear in the lower-right corner of all slides.
- ◆ **Footer:** Select this check box, and in the text box, enter the words that you want to appear in the bottom, middle of all the slides.



**Figure 3-8:**  
Enter a  
standard  
footer.

### *Creating a nonstandard footer*

As “Some background on footers and headers” explains earlier in this chapter, you have to look elsewhere than the Header and Footer dialog box if you want to create something besides the standard footer. Suppose you want to move the slide number from the lower-right corner of slides to another position? Or you want to fool with the fonts in headers and footers?

Follow these steps to create a nonstandard footer:

1. **Create a standard footer if you want your nonstandard footer to include today's date and/or a slide number.**

If you want to move the slide number into the upper-right corner of slides, for example, create a standard footer first (see the preceding topic in this chapter). Later, you can move the slide number text frame into the upper-right corner of slides.

2. **On the View tab, click the Slide Master button.**

You switch to Slide Master view. Chapter 2 of this mini-book explains this view and how to format many slides at once with master slides.

3. **Select the Slide Master, the topmost slide in the Slides pane.**



4. Adjust and format the footer text boxes to taste (as they say in cookbooks).

For example, move the slide number text frame into the upper-right corner to put slide numbers there. Or change the font in the footer text boxes. Or place a company logo on the Slide Master to make the logo appear on all your slides.

5. Click the Close Master View button to leave Slide Master view.

You can always return to Slide Master view and adjust your footer.

### ***Removing a footer from a single slide***

On a crowded slide, the date, footer text, page number, and other items in the footer can get in the way or be a distraction. Fortunately, removing one or all of the footer text frames from a slide is easy:

1. Switch to Normal view and display the slide with the footer that needs removing.



2. On the Insert tab, click the Header & Footer button.

The Header and Footer dialog box appears.

3. Deselect check boxes — Date and Time, Slide Number, and Footer — to tell PowerPoint which parts of the footer you want to remove.

4. Click the Apply button.

Be careful not to click the Apply to All button. Clicking this button removes footers throughout your slide presentation.

# ***Chapter 4: Making Your Presentations Livelier***

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ✓ Looking at ways to make a presentation livelier
- ✓ Slapping a transition or animation on a slide
- ✓ Making sound a part of your presentation
- ✓ Playing video during a presentation
- ✓ Recording your own voice narration for a presentation

**T**he purpose of this chapter is to make your presentation stand out in a crowd. It suggests ways to enliven your presentation with pictures, charts, slides, and tables. It shows how transitions and animations can make a presentation livelier. Finally, you discover how to play sound and video during a presentation.

## ***Suggestions for Enlivening Your Presentation***

Starting on the Insert tab, you can do a lot to make a presentation livelier. The Insert tab offers buttons for putting pictures, tables, charts, diagrams, shapes, and clip-art images on slides:



◆ **Photos:** Everyone likes a good photo, but more than that, audiences understand more from words and pictures than they do from words alone. A well-chosen photo reinforces the ideas that you're trying to put across in your presentation. (See Book VIII, Chapter 3.)



◆ **Tables:** A table is a great way to plead your case or defend your position. Raw table data is irrefutable — well, most of the time, anyway. Create a table when you want to demonstrate how the numbers back you up. (See “Presenting Information in a Table,” later in this chapter.)



◆ **Charts:** Nothing is more persuasive than a chart. The bars, pie slices, or columns show the audience instantaneously that production is up or down, or that sector A is outperforming sector B. The audience can compare the data and see what's what. (See Book VIII, Chapter 1.)



- ◆ **Diagrams:** A diagram is an excellent marriage of images and words. Diagrams allow an audience to literally visualize a concept, idea, or relationship. You can present an abstract idea such that the audience understands it better. (See Book VIII, Chapter 2.)



- ◆ **Shapes:** Lines and shapes can also illustrate ideas and concepts. You can also use them as slide decorations. (See Book VIII, Chapter 4.)



- ◆ **Clip-art images:** Clip-art images bring a little more color to presentations. They make presentations friendlier and easier to look at. (See Book VIII, Chapter 3.)

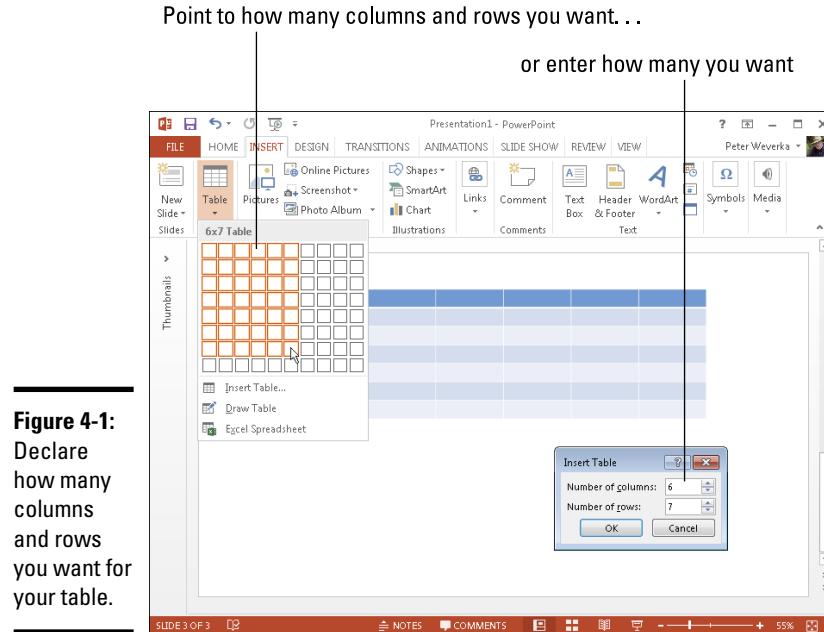
## *Presenting Information in a Table*

The purpose of a table is to present information for comparison purposes — to see which car gets the best gas mileage, which company made the most money, or who shucked the most corn. Tables on slides can't be used for reference purposes because they appear briefly on screen; viewers can't refer to them later on. Nevertheless, a table is a great way to present a quick summary of the bare facts.

PowerPoint offers no fewer than four ways to create a table. The best slide layout for creating tables is Title and Content because it offers space for a title and provides the Table icon, which you can click to create a table. Create your table with one of these techniques:



- ◆ **Dragging on the Table menu:** On the Insert tab, click the Table button, point on the drop-down list to the number of columns and rows you want, as shown in Figure 4-1, and let go of the mouse button.
- ◆ **Clicking the Table icon:** Click the Table icon in a content placeholder frame. You see the Insert Table dialog box, shown in Figure 4-1. Enter the number of columns and rows you want for your table and click OK.
- ◆ **Using the Insert Table dialog box:** On the Insert tab, click the Table button and choose Insert Table on the drop-down list. The Insert Table dialog box shown in Figure 4-1 appears. Enter the number of columns and rows you want and click OK.
- ◆ **Drawing a table:** On the Insert tab, click the Table button and choose Draw Table on the drop-down list. The pointer changes into a pencil. Use the pencil to draw the table borders. On the (Table Tools) Design tab, you can click the Draw Table button and draw the columns and rows for the table.



**Figure 4-1:**  
Declare  
how  
many  
columns  
and  
rows  
you want  
for  
your table.



After you create a table, PowerPoint places two Table Tools tabs on the Ribbon, one called Design and one called Layout. The (Table Tools) Design tab offers commands for changing the look of the table; the (Table Tools) Layout tab is for changing around the rows and columns.

The techniques for working with tables in Word and PowerPoint are terribly similar. I suggest going to Book II, Chapter 4 if your aim is to create a really, really nice table.

## Exploring Transitions and Animations

In PowerPoint-speak, a *transition* is a little bit of excitement that occurs as one slide leaves the screen and the next slide climbs aboard. An *animation* is movement on the slide. For example, you can animate bulleted lists such that the bullet points appear on a slide one at a time when you click the mouse rather than all at one time.

## The grid and drawing guides

The *grid* is an invisible set of horizontal and vertical lines to which objects — clip-art images, pictures, and shapes — cling when you move them on a slide. The grid is meant to help you line up objects squarely with one another. When you drag an object, it sticks to the nearest point on the grid.

PowerPoint also offers the *drawing guides* for aligning objects. You can drag these vertical and horizontal lines on-screen and use them to align objects with precision.

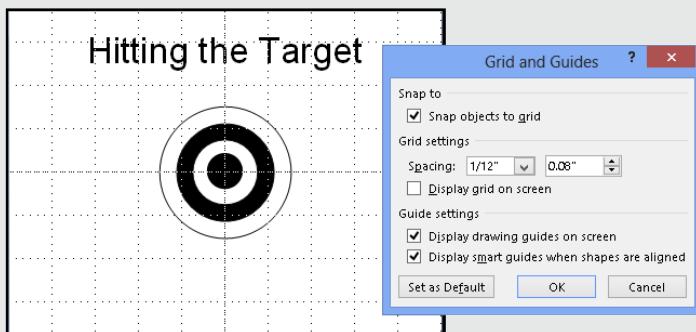
To display the grid and the drawing guides:

- ✓ **Displaying (and hiding) the grid:** Press Shift+F9 or go to the View tab and select the Gridlines check box.
- ✓ **Displaying (and hiding) the drawing guides:** Press Alt+F9 or go to the View tab and select the Guides check box.

By default, objects when you move them “snap to the grid.” That means they stick to the nearest grid line when you move them across a slide. To control whether objects snap to the grid, right-click (but not on an object or frame), choose Grid and Guides, and in the Grid and Guides dialog box, deselect the Snap Objects to Grid check box.

Even if the Snap Objects to Grid check box in the Grid and Guides dialog box is selected, you can move objects without them snapping to a gridline by holding down the Alt key while you drag.

Select the Snap Objects to Other Objects check box if you want shapes to abut each other or fall along a common axis.

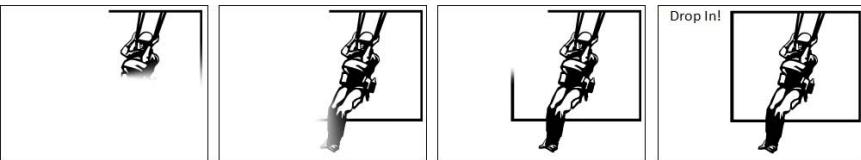


Before you know anything about transitions and animations, you should know that they can be distracting. The purpose of a presentation is to communicate with the audience, not display the latest, busiest, most dazzling presentation technology. For user-run, kiosk-style presentations, however, eye-catching transitions and animations can be useful because they draw an audience. (A user-run presentation plays on its own, as I explain in Chapter 5 of this mini-book.) For audiences that enjoy high-tech wizardry, transitions and animations can be a lot of fun and add to a presentation.

## Showing transitions between slides

Transitions include the Switch, Fade, and Push. Figure 4-2 shows how a transition works. For the figure, I chose the Clock transition. This slide doesn't so much arrive on-screen as it does sweep onto the screen in a clockwise fashion. You get a chance to test-drive these transitions before you attach them to slides.

**Figure 4-2:**  
The Clock  
transition in  
action.



## Assigning transitions to slides

To show transitions between slides, select the slide or slides that need transitions, go to the Transitions tab, and select a transition in the Transition to This Slide gallery. (To apply the same transition to all the slides in a presentation, click the Apply To All button after you select a transition.) The names and images in the gallery give you an idea of what the transitions are, and you can click the Preview button at any time to watch a transition you chose.

The Transitions tab offers these tools for tweaking a transition:



- ◆ **Effect Options:** Click the Effect Options button and choose an effect on the drop-down list. For example, choose From Top or From Bottom to make a transition arrive from the top or bottom of the screen. Not all transitions offer effect options.
- ◆ **Sound:** Open the Sound drop-down list and choose a sound to accompany the transition. The Loop Until Next Sound option at the bottom of the drop-down list plays a sound continuously until the next slide in the presentation appears.
- ◆ **Duration:** Enter a time period in the Duration box to declare how quickly or slowly you want the transition to occur.



As I mention earlier, you can click the Apply To All button to assign the same transition to all the slides in your presentation.

## Altering and removing slide transitions

In Slide Sorter view and in the Slides pane in Normal view, the transition symbol, a flying star, appears next to slides that have been assigned a transition.

Select the slides that need a transition change, go to the Transitions tab, and follow these instructions to alter or remove transitions:

- ◆ **Altering a transition:** Choose a different transition in the Transition to This Slide gallery. You can also choose different effect options and sounds, and change the duration of the transition.
- ◆ **Removing a transition:** Choose None in the Transition to This Slide gallery.

## *Animating parts of a slide*

When it comes to animations, you can choose between *animation schemes*, the pre-built special effects made by the elves of Microsoft, or customized animations that you build on your own. Only fans of animation and people with a lot of time on their hands go the second route.

### *Choosing a ready-made animation scheme*

Follow these steps to preview and choose an animation scheme for slides:

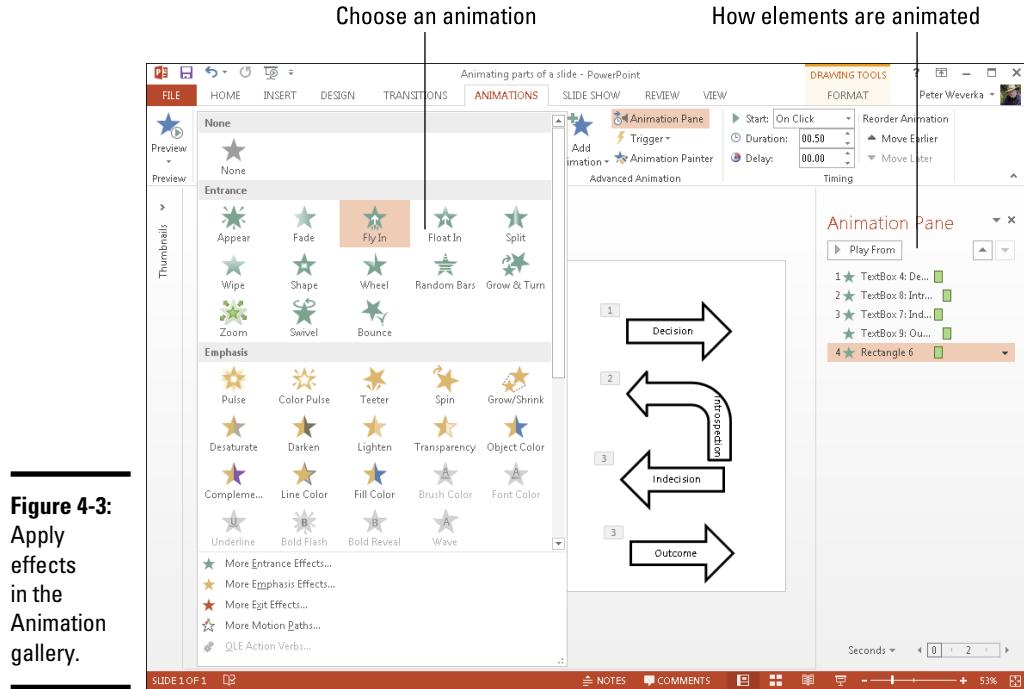
1. **Go to the Animations tab.**
2. **Click to select the element on the slide that you want to animate.**  
For example, select a text frame with a bulleted list. You can tell when you've selected an element because a selection box appears around it.
3. **In the Animation Styles gallery, choose an animation effect, as shown in Figure 4-3.**

You can choose Entrance, Emphasis, and Exit animation effects. As soon as you make your choice, the animation springs to life, and you can click the Preview button at any time to see your animation in all its glory.

4. **Click the Effect Options button and experiment with choices on the drop-down list to tweak your animation.**

Which options are available depends on the animation you chose.





**Figure 4-3:**  
Apply  
effects  
in the  
Animation  
gallery.

5. If you choose a text-box or text-frame element with more than one paragraph in Step 2, click the Effect Options button and tell PowerPoint whether to animate all the text or animate each paragraph separately from the others.

- **As Once Object or All at Once:** All the text is animated at the same time.
- **By Paragraph:** Each paragraph is treated separately and is animated on its own. For example, each item in a bulleted list is treated as a separate element — each item fades, wipes, or flies in after the one before it, not at the same time as the one before it.

Very briefly, you see a preview of the animation choice you made. To get a good look at the animation you just chose for your slide, click the Preview button on the Animations tab.

To remove an animation, return to the Animation Styles gallery and choose None.

### ***Fashioning your own animation schemes***



To fashion your own animation scheme, go to the Animations tab and click the Animation Pane button. You see the Animation pane, as shown in Figure 4-3. It lists, in order, each animation that occurs on your slide (if animations occur). Select an element on the slide and follow these general instructions to animate it:



- ◆ Click the Add Animation button and choose an animation.
- ◆ On the Start drop-down list, declare whether the animation begins when you click your slide (Start On Click), at the same time as the previous animation (Start With Previous), or after the previous animation (Start After Previous).
- ◆ In the Duration box, enter how long you want the animation to last.
- ◆ In the Delay box, enter a time period to declare how soon after the previous animation in the Animation pane you want your animation to occur.
- ◆ Select an animation in the task pane and click a Re-Order button to change the order in which animations occur, if more than one element is animated on your slide.

## ***Making Audio Part of Your Presentation***

Especially in user-run, kiosk-style presentations, audio can be a welcome addition. Audio gives presentations an extra dimension. It attracts an audience. PowerPoint offers two ways to make audio part of a presentation:

- ◆ **As part of slide transitions:** A sound is heard as a new slide arrives on-screen. On the Transitions tab, open the Sound drop-down list and choose a sound. (See “Showing transitions between slides” earlier in this chapter.)
- ◆ **On the slide itself:** The means of playing audio appears on the slide in the form of an Audio icon, as shown in Figure 4-4. By moving the mouse over this icon, you can display audio controls, and you can use these controls to play audio. You can also make audio play as soon as the slide arrives on-screen.

Table 4-1 describes the audio files you can use in PowerPoint presentations and whether each file type is a wave or MIDI sound. To find out what kind of audio file you’re dealing with, note the file’s three-letter extension; or open Windows Explorer or Computer, find the sound file, right-click it, and choose Properties.



**Figure 4-4:**  
Making  
audio part  
of a  
presentation.

**Table 4-1**

**Sound File Formats**

<i>File Type</i>	<i>Extension</i>	<i>Wave/MIDI</i>
MIDI Sequence	.midi, .mid	MIDI
MP3 audio file	.mp3	Wave
Wave audio	.wav	Wave
Windows Media Audio File	.wma	Wave

## *Inserting an audio file on a slide*

Follow these steps to insert an audio file in a slide:

- 1. Go to the Insert tab.**
- 2. Click the Audio button.**
- 3. Choose an option on the drop-down list.**



You can fetch the audio file from your computer or Office.com.

- *Online Audio:* In the Insert Audio dialog box, enter a word that describes the sound file you want, and when you find the file, click Insert.
- *Audio on My PC:* You see the Insert Audio dialog box. Locate and select a sound file and then click Insert. You can click a file icon to hear part of the file play.



An Audio icon appears on the slide to remind you that audio is supposed to play when your slide is on-screen. You can change the size of this icon by selecting it and dragging a corner handle or going to the (Audio Tools) Format tab and entering new Height and Width measurements. You can also drag the icon into an out-of-the-way corner of your slide.

To quit playing a sound file on a slide, select its Audio icon and then press the Delete key.

### *Telling PowerPoint when and how to play an audio file*

To tell PowerPoint when and how to play an audio file, start by selecting the Audio icon and going to the (Audio Tools) Playback tab, as shown in Figure 4-5. From there, you can control when and how audio files play:



◆ **Controlling the volume:** Click the Volume button and choose an option on the drop-down list to control how loud the audio plays.



◆ **Playing the audio file automatically in the background:** Click the Play in Background button. Clicking this button tells PowerPoint to play the audio automatically, across slides, until you or another presenter clicks the Pause button to stop the audio from playing.

**Figure 4-5:**  
Visit the  
(Audio  
Tools)  
Playback  
tab to  
control  
when and  
how sounds  
play.



- ◆ **Deciding when and how to play audio:** Click the No Style button. Then select these options:
  - *Start:* Choose Automatically to make the audio play as soon as the slide appears; choose On Click to play the audio when you click the Audio icon on your slide.
  - *Play Across Slides:* Play the audio file throughout a presentation, not just when the slide with the audio file appears.
  - *Loop Until Stopped:* Play the audio file continuously until you or another presenter clicks the Pause button.
- ◆ **Hiding and unhiding the Audio icon:** Select the Hide During Show check box. If you hide the Audio icon, the file must play automatically; otherwise, you won't see the icon and be able to click it and view the audio controls.
- ◆ **Rewind After Playing:** Starts replaying the audio file from the beginning after it is finished playing.

Click the Play button on the (Audio Tools) Playback tab to play an audio file.

### ***Playing audio during a presentation***

While an audio file is playing during a presentation, controls for starting, pausing, and controlling the volume appear on-screen (refer to Figure 4-4). They appear on-screen, I should say, if the Audio icon appears on your slide. (If you've hidden the Audio icon, you're out of luck because you can't see the Audio icon or use its audio controls.)

Follow these instructions to start, pause, and control the volume of an audio recording during a presentation:

- ◆ **Starting an audio file:** Move the pointer over the Audio icon, and when you see the Audio controls, click the Play/Pause button (or press Alt+P).
- ◆ **Pausing an audio file:** Click the Play/Pause button (or press Alt+P). Click the button again to resume playing the audio file.
- ◆ **Muting the volume:** Click the Mute/Unmute icon (or press Alt+U).
- ◆ **Controlling the volume:** Move the pointer over the Mute/Unmute icon to display the volume slider and then drag the volume control on the slider.

## Playing Video on Slides

If a picture is worth a thousand words, what is a moving picture worth? Ten thousand? To give your presentation more cachet, you can play video on slides and in so doing, turn your presentation into a mini-movie theater.

To play video, PowerPoint relies on *Windows Media Player*, the media player that comes with Windows. Therefore, to play video on a slide, stick to formats that Windows Media Player can handle: ASF (Advanced Systems Format), AVI (Audio Visual Interleaved), MPEG (Motion Picture Experts Group), MPG (Media Planning Group), WMV (Windows Media Video), MOV (QuickTime Video), and SWF (Adobe Flash). You can download versions of Windows Media Player at this web page:

<http://windows.microsoft.com/en-US/windows/downloads/windows-media-player>

### Inserting a video on a slide

Follow these steps to insert a video on a slide:



1. On the Insert tab, click the Video button.
2. Choose an option on the drop-down list.

You can play a video file on your computer or get a video from Office.com.

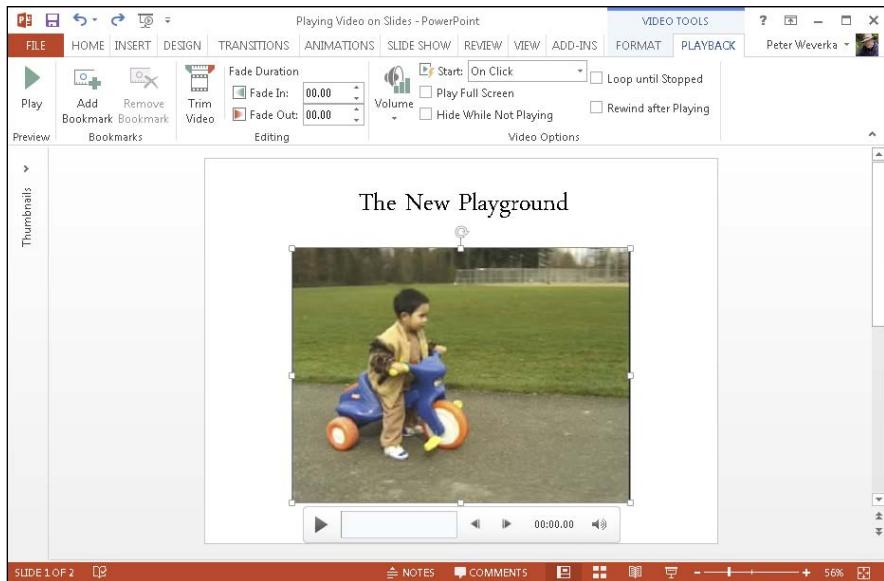
- *Online Video*: The Insert Video dialog box appears (you can also open this dialog box by clicking the Insert Video icon on some slide layouts). Search for a video on the Internet, obtain a video from a SkyDrive folder, or embed a video from YouTube.
- *Video on My PC*: You see the Insert Video dialog box. Select a video and click Insert.



The video appears on your slide. If I were you, I would find out how (or whether) the video plays. To do that, click the Play/Pause button (or press Alt+P) or click the Play button on the (Video Tools) Playback or (Video Tools) Format tab.

### Fine-tuning a video presentation

As shown in Figure 4-6, select the video and go to the (Video Tools) Playback tab to fine-tune a video presentation. The Playback tab offers all kinds of commands for making a video play the way you want it to play. Here are different ways to fine-tune a video presentation:



**Figure 4-6:**  
Visit the  
(Video  
Tools)  
Playback  
tab to fine-  
tune a video  
presentation.



Add  
Bookmark



Trim  
Video



Volume

- ◆ **Adding a bookmark:** Add a bookmark to be able to skip ahead or backward to a place in the video when you play it. Click the Add Bookmark button, and on the timeline, click where you want to place the bookmark. The bookmark appears in the form of a circle. You can click this circle to go to the bookmark while you play the video. To remove a bookmark, select it on the timeline and click the Remove Bookmark button.
- ◆ **Trimming the video:** To trim from the start and or end of a video, click the Trim Video button. Then, in the Trim Video dialog box, drag the green slider to trim from the start of the video; drag the red slider to trim from the end.
- ◆ **Fading in and out:** Enter time measurements in the Fade In and Fade Out text boxes to make the video fade in or out.
- ◆ **Controlling the volume:** Click the Volume button and choose Low, Medium, High, or Mute to control how loud the video sound is.
- ◆ **Playing the video automatically or when you click the Play/Pause button:** Open the Start drop-down list and choose Automatically or On Click to tell PowerPoint when to start playing the video.
- ◆ **Playing the video at full-screen:** Make a video fill the entire screen by selecting the Play Full Screen check box. Be careful of this one. Videos can look terribly grainy when they appear on the big screen.
- ◆ **Hiding the video when it isn't playing:** You can hide the video until you start playing it by selecting the Hide While Not Playing check box. Be sure to choose Automatically on the Start drop-down list if you select this check box.

- ◆ **Continuously playing, or looping, the video:** Play a video continuously or until you go to the next slide by selecting the Loop Until Stopped check box.
- ◆ **Rewinding the video when it's finished playing:** Rewind a video if you want to see the first frame, not the last, when the video finishes playing. Select the Rewind After Playing check box to make the start of the video appear after the video plays; deselect this option to freeze-frame on the end of the video when it finishes playing.

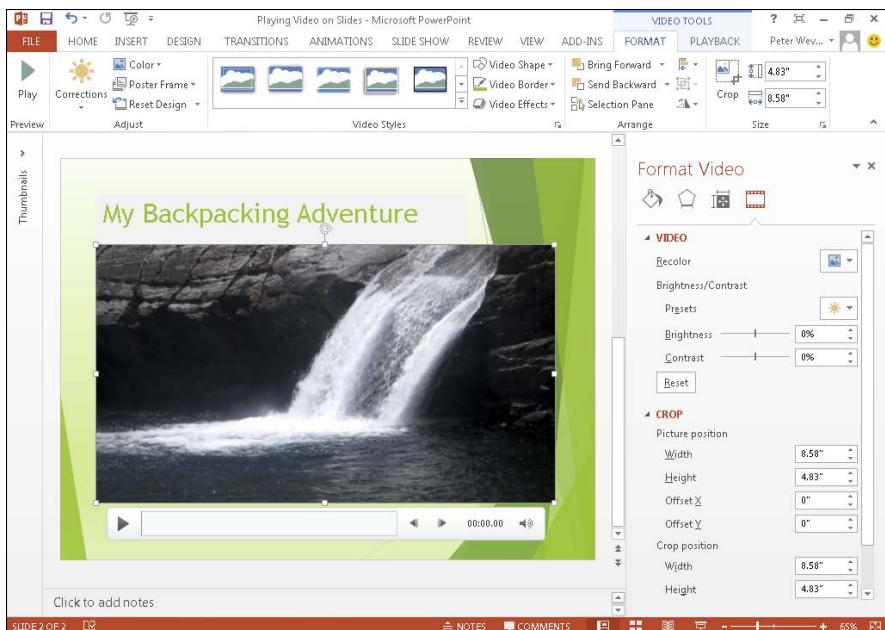
### ***Experimenting with the look of the video***

Want to make your video look a little sharper? If so, you are hereby invited to experiment with the commands on the (Video Tools) Format tab and Format Video pane shown in Figure 4-7.

To open the Format Video pane, go to (Video Tools) Format tab and do one of the following:



- ◆ Click the Corrections button and choose Video Corrections Options on the drop-down list.
- ◆ Click the Video Styles group button.



**Figure 4-7:**  
You can  
change the  
look of a  
video.

When you're in an experimental mood, select your video and try these techniques for changing its appearance:

- ◆ **Recolor the video:** Click the Color button (on the Format tab) or the Recolor button (in the Format Video pane) and select a color or black-and-white option.
- ◆ **Change the brightness and contrast:** Click the Corrections button and choose a setting in the gallery, or change the Brightness and Contrast settings in the Format Video pane.

## *Recording a Voice Narration for Slides*

A voice narration in a PowerPoint presentation is sophisticated indeed. A self-playing, kiosk-style presentation can be accompanied by a human voice such that the narrator gives the presentation without actually being there. To narrate a presentation, a working microphone must be attached or built in to your computer. You record the narration for slides one slide at a time or all at one time, and the recording is stored in the PowerPoint file, not in a separate audio file.

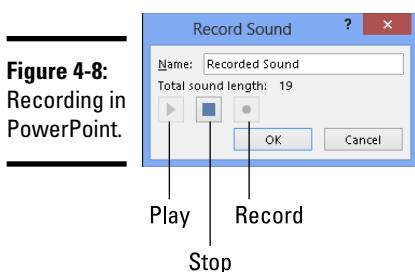
The best way to record voice narrations is to do it on a slide-by-slide basis. You can record across several slides, but getting your voice narration and slides to be in sync with one another can be a lot of trouble.

Place your script on your desk and follow these steps to record a voice narration for a slide:

1. Select the slide that needs a voice narration.
2. Go to the Insert tab.
3. Open the drop-down list on the Audio button and choose Record Audio.

You see the Record Sound dialog box shown in Figure 4-8.

**Figure 4-8:**  
Recording in  
PowerPoint.



**4. Click the Record button and start reading your script.**

Click the Stop button when you want to pause recording; click the Record button to resume recording.

You can click the Play button at any time to play back what you have recorded so far. Notice that the dialog box notes how many seconds your recording lasts.

**5. Click the OK button in the Record Sound dialog box when you have finished recording the narration for your slide.**

The Audio icon appears on your slide to show that your slide is accompanied by an audio file.

Your next task is to select the Audio icon, go to the (Audio Tools) Playback tab, and tell PowerPoint when to play the audio recording, at what volume to play it, and whether you want it to loop. See “Telling PowerPoint when and how to play an audio file,” earlier in this chapter.



To play voice narrations during a presentation, make sure that the Play Narrations check box is selected on the Slide Show tab.

# *Chapter 5: Delivering a Presentation*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Writing, editing, and printing speaker notes
- ✓ Rehearsing a presentation to see how long it is
- ✓ Going from slide to slide in a live presentation
- ✓ Drawing on slides during a presentation
- ✓ Delivering a presentation when you can't be there in person

**A**t last, the big day has arrived. It's time to give the presentation. "Break a leg," as actors say before they go on stage. This chapter explains how to rehearse your presentation to find out how long it is and how to show your presentation. You discover some techniques to make your presentation livelier, including how to draw on slides with a pen or highlighter and blank out the screen to get the audience's full attention. The chapter describes how to handle the speaker notes and print handouts for your audience. In case you can't be there in person to deliver your presentation, this chapter shows you how to create a user-run presentation, a self-running presentation, a presentation designed to be viewed from a CD, and video of a presentation.

## *All about Notes*

Notes are strictly for the speaker. The unwashed masses can't see them. Don't hesitate to write notes to yourself when you put together your presentation. The notes will come in handy when you're rehearsing and giving your presentation. They give you ideas for what to say and help you communicate better. Here are instructions for entering, editing, and printing notes:



- ♦ **Entering a note:** To enter a note, start in Normal or Outline view and enter the note in the Notes pane. If the Notes pane isn't displayed, click the Notes button on the Status bar or View tab. Treat the Notes pane like a page in a word processor. For example, press Enter to start a new paragraph and press the Tab key to indent text. You can drag the border above the Notes pane up or down to make the pane larger or smaller.



- ◆ **Editing notes in Notes Page view:** After you've jotted down a bunch of notes, switch to Notes Page view and edit them. To switch to Notes Page view, visit the View tab and click the Notes Page button. Notes appear in a text frame below a picture of the slide to which they refer. You may have to zoom in to read them.
- ◆ **Printing your notes:** On the File tab, choose Print (or press Ctrl+P). You see the Print window. Under Other Settings, open the second drop-down list and choose Note Pages. Then click the Print button.

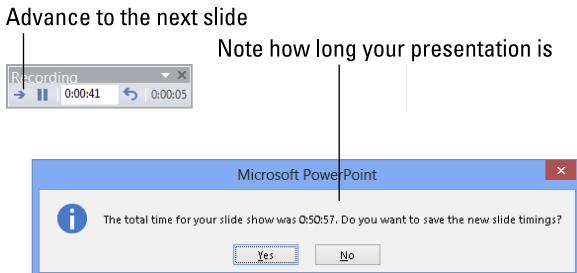
## *Rehearsing and Timing Your Presentation*

Slide presentations and theatrical presentations have this in common: They are as good as the number of times you rehearse them. Be sure to rehearse your presentation many times over. The more you rehearse, the more comfortable you are giving a presentation. Follow these steps to rehearse a presentation, record its length, and record how long each slide is displayed:

1. Select the first slide in your presentation.
2. Go to the Slide Show tab.
3. Click the Rehearse Timings button.



The Recording toolbar appears, as shown in Figure 5-1, and you switch to Slide Show view.



**Figure 5-1:**  
Timing a  
rehearsal.

4. Give your presentation one slide at a time and click the Next button on the Recording toolbar to go from slide to slide.

When each slide appears, imagine that you're presenting it to an audience. Say what you intend to say during the real presentation. If you anticipate audience members asking questions, allot time for questions.

The Recording toolbar tells you how long each slide has been displayed and how long your presentation is so far. You can do these tasks from the Recording toolbar:

- *Go to the next slide:* Click the Next button.
- *Pause recording:* Click the Pause Recording button to temporarily stop the recording so that you can feed the dog or take a phone call. Click the Resume Recording button to resume recording.
- *Repeat a slide:* Click the Repeat button if you get befuddled and want to start over with a slide. The slide timing returns to 0:00:00.

**5. In the dialog box that asks whether you want to keep the slide timings, note how long your presentation is (see Figure 5-1).**

Is your presentation too long or too short? I hope, like baby bear's porridge, your presentation is "just right." But if it's too long or short, you have some work to do. You have to figure out how to shorten or lengthen it.

**6. In the dialog box that asks whether you want to keep the new slide timings, click Yes if you want to see how long each slide stayed on-screen during the rehearsal.**

By clicking Yes, you can go to Slide Sorter view and see how long each slide remained on-screen.



If you save the slide timings, PowerPoint assumes that, during a presentation, you want to advance to the next slide manually or after the recorded time, whichever comes first. For example, suppose the first slide in your presentation remained on-screen for a minute during the rehearsal. During your presentation, the first slide will remain on-screen for a minute and automatically yield to the second slide unless you click to advance to the second slide before the minute has elapsed. If you recorded slide timings strictly to find out how long your presentation is, you need to tell PowerPoint not to advance automatically to the next slide during a presentation after the recorded time period elapses. On the Slide Show tab, deselect the Use Timings check box.

Book IV  
Chapter 5

## Showing Your Presentation

Compared to the preliminary work, giving a presentation can seem kind of anticlimactic. All you have to do is go from slide to slide and woo your audience with your smooth-as-silk voice and powerful oratory skills. Well, at least the move-from-slide-to-slide part is pretty easy. These pages explain how to start and end a presentation, all the different ways to advance or retreat from slide to slide, and how to jump to different slides.

Delivering a  
Presentation

## Starting and ending a presentation

Here are the different ways to start a presentation from the beginning:



- ◆ On the Quick Access toolbar or Slide Show tab, click the From Beginning button (or press F5).
- ◆ Select the first slide and then click the Slide Show view button on the Status bar.

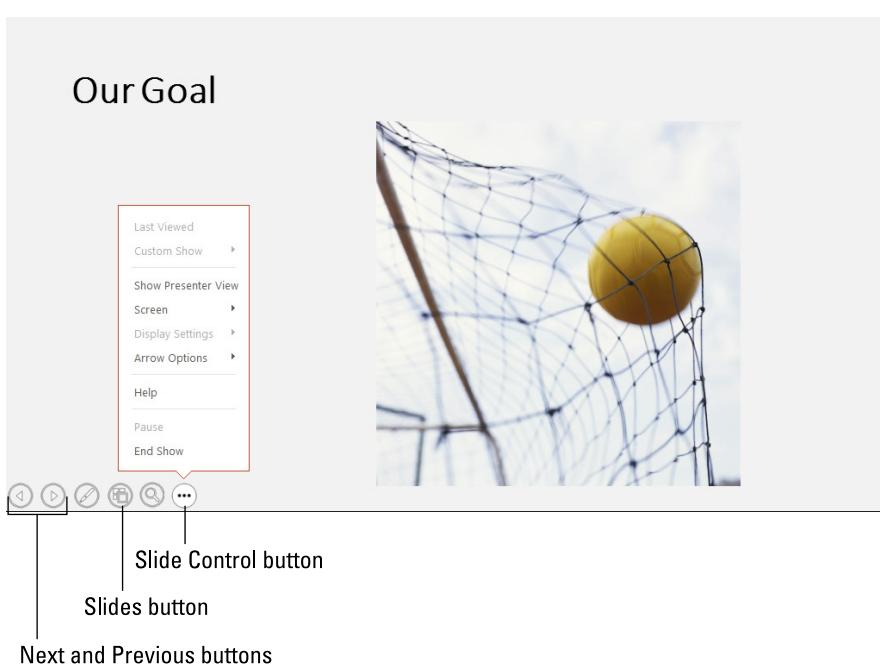


You can start a presentation in the middle by selecting a slide in the middle and then clicking the Slide Show view button or going to the Slide Show tab and clicking the From Current Slide button.

Here are the different ways to end a presentation prematurely:

- ◆ Press Esc or – (the Hyphen key).
- ◆ Click the Slide Control button and choose End Show on the pop-up menu. The Slide Control button is located in the lower-left corner of the screen, as shown in Figure 5-2.
- ◆ Right-click and choose End Show in the shortcut menu.

**Figure 5-2:**  
Besides  
using  
keyboard  
shortcuts,  
you can  
move from  
slide to slide  
by clicking  
on-screen.



## Going from slide to slide

In a nutshell, PowerPoint offers four ways to move from slide to slide in a presentation. Table 5-1 describes techniques for navigating a presentation using the four different ways:

- ◆ **Click the Next or Previous button:** These buttons are located in the lower-left corner of the screen, as shown in Figure 5-2. If you don't see them, jiggle the mouse.
- ◆ **Click the Slides button and choose a slide:** Clicking the Slides button displays thumbnail versions of all the slides in the presentation. Click a thumbnail to go to a specific slide. (To return to the slide you saw previously, right-click and choose Last Viewed on the shortcut menu.)
- ◆ **Right-click on-screen:** Right-click and choose a navigation option at the top of the shortcut menu.
- ◆ **Press a keyboard shortcut:** Press one of the numerous keyboard shortcuts that PowerPoint offers for going from slide to slide (see Table 5-1).

**Table 5-1 Techniques for Getting from Slide to Slide**

To Go Here	Button	Right-Click and Choose . . .	Keyboard Shortcut
Next slide*	Next	Next	Enter, spacebar, N, PgDn, ↓, or →
Previous slide	Previous	Previous	Backspace, P, PgUp, ↑, or ←
Specific slide	Slides	See All Slides	<i>Slide number</i> +Enter; Ctrl+S and then select <i>Slide number and title</i>
Last viewed slide	Slide Control	Last Viewed	
First slide			Home
Last slide			End

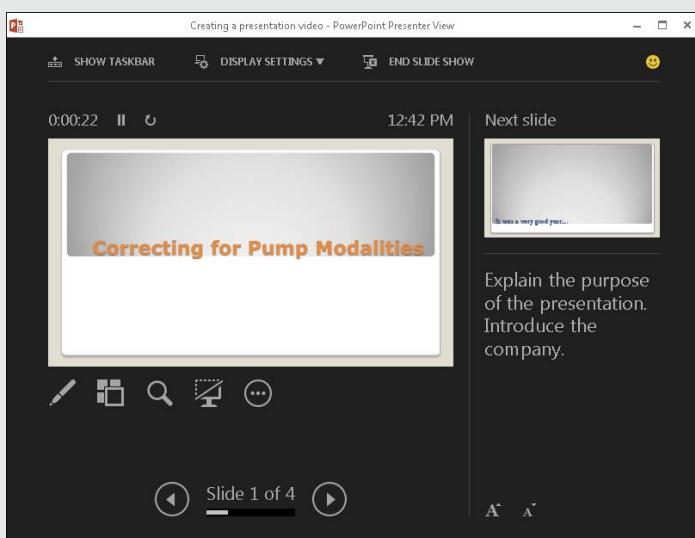
\*If animations are on a slide, commands for going to the next slide instead make animations play in sequence. To bypass animations and go to the next slide, use a command for going forward across several slides. (See "Jumping forward or backward to a specific slide.")

## Presenter View for Dual Monitors

If two monitors are connected to your computer, you have the option of using Presenter view to give presentations. In Presenter view, the full-screen slide appears on one monitor and a special screen for showing your presentation appears in the other. In this screen, speaker notes are easier to read and the buttons and other controls for getting from slide to slide are larger. Moreover, a timer shows you how long each slide has been on-screen.

Regardless of whether two monitors are connected to your computer, you can test-drive Presenter view by pressing Alt+F5.

To give presentations in Presenter view, go to the Slide Show tab and select Use Presenter View. On the Monitor drop-down list, choose Automatic to allow PowerPoint to choose which monitor the audience sees, or choose a monitor name to select the monitor yourself.



### *Going forward (or backward) from slide to slide*

To go forward from one slide to the following slide in a presentation, click on-screen. After you click, the next slide appears. If all goes well, clicking is the only technique you need to know when giving a presentation to go from slide to slide, but Table 5-1 lists other ways to go to the next slide in a presentation as well as techniques for going backward to the previous slide.



To go to the first slide in a presentation, press Home; to go to the last slide, press End.

### ***Jumping forward or backward to a specific slide***

If you find it necessary to jump forward or backward across several slides in your presentation to get to the slide you want to show, it can be done with these techniques:

- ◆ Click the Slides button (in the lower-left corner of the screen, as shown in Figure 5-2). Thumbnail versions of the slides in the presentation appear. Click a thumbnail to view a slide.
- ◆ Press Ctrl+S. You see the All Slides dialog box. It lists all slides in your presentation. Select the slide you want to show and click the Go To button.
- ◆ Press the slide number you want on your keyboard (if you can remember the slide's number) and then press the Enter key. For example, to show the third slide in your presentation, press 3 and then press Enter.

## ***Tricks for Making Presentations a Little Livelier***

Herewith are a few tricks to make your presentations a little livelier. I explain how to draw on slides, highlight parts of slides, blank the screen, and zoom in. Take this bag of tricks to your next PowerPoint presentation to make your presentation stand out.

### ***Wielding a pen or highlighter in a presentation***

Drawing on slides is an excellent way to add a little something to a presentation. Whip out a pen and draw on a slide to get the audience's attention. Draw to underline words or draw check marks as you hit the key points, as shown in Figure 5-3.

#### ***Drawing or highlighting on a slide***

Follow these steps to draw or highlight on a slide:

**1. Click the Pen button and choose a color on the pop-up menu.**

The Pen button is located in the lower-left corner of the screen (refer to Figure 5-3).

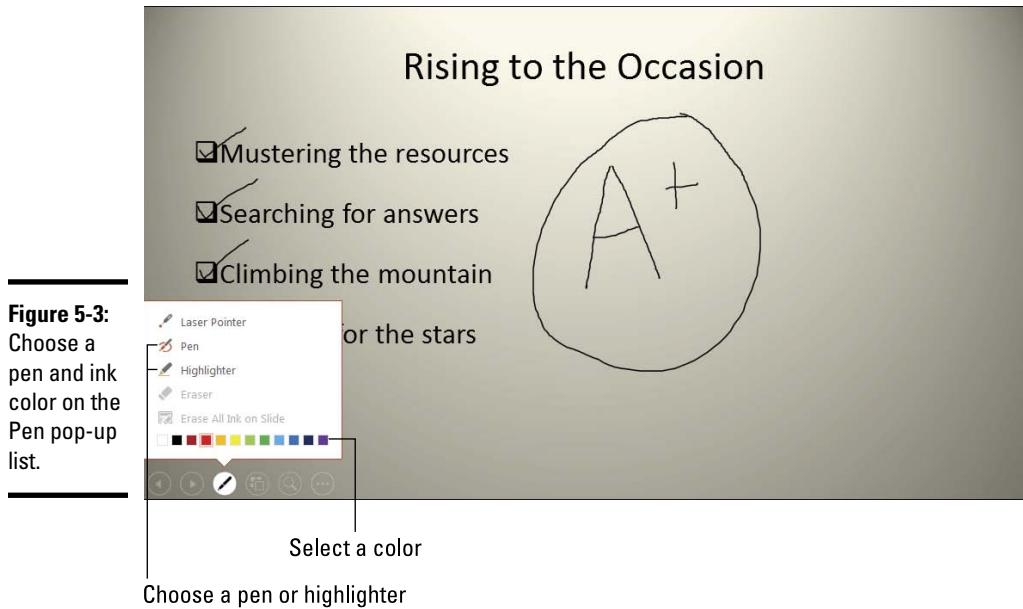
**2. Click the Pen button again and choose Pen (to draw on slides) or Highlighter (to highlight parts of a slide).**

**3. Drag the mouse to draw or highlight on the slide.**

**4. Press Esc when you're finished using the pen or highlighter.**

Be careful not to press Esc twice because the second press tells PowerPoint to end the presentation.

You can also right-click, choose Pointer Options, and make selections on the submenu to draw or highlight (choose Ink Color to choose a color).



**Figure 5-3:**  
Choose a pen and ink color on the Pen pop-up list.

### Hiding and erasing pen and highlighter markings

Follow these instructions to hide and erase pen and highlighter markings:

- ◆ **Temporarily showing or hiding markings:** Right-click and choose Screen→Show/Hide Ink Markup.
- ◆ **Permanently erasing markings one at a time:** Click the Pen button and choose Eraser (or right-click and choose Pointer Options→Eraser). The Eraser appears. Click a line to erase it. Press Esc after you're finished using the Eraser.
- ◆ **Permanently erasing all the markings on a slide:** Press E or click the Pen button and choose Erase All Ink on Slide (refer to Figure 5-3).
- ◆ **Erasing markings you told PowerPoint to keep:** As I explain shortly, PowerPoint asks at the end of a presentation that you drew on or highlighted whether you want to keep the markings. If you elect to keep them, the markings become part of your presentation, and you can't delete them by clicking with the Eraser or by choosing the Erase All Ink on Slide command. To discard these markings later, go to the Review tab, open the drop-down list on the Delete button, and choose one of these options:
  - *Delete All Comments and Ink on this Slide:* Deletes markings you made on a slide you selected
  - *Delete All Comments and Ink in This Presentation:* Deletes markings you made on all the slides in your presentation



*Note:* If you don't see the Ink Markup tools, go to the ribbon's View tab and make sure the Show/Hide Ink Markup checkbox is selected.

Markings aren't permanent, although you can keep them. At the end of a presentation in which you have marked on slides, a dialog box asks whether you want to keep or discard your markings. Click the Keep or Discard button. (If you prefer not to see this dialog box because you intend never to keep your markings, go to the File tab and choose Options. In the PowerPoint Options dialog box, select the Advanced category and deselect the Prompt to Keep Ink Annotations When Exiting check box.)



### ***Blanking the screen***

Here's a technique for adding a little drama to a presentation: When you want the audience to focus on you, not the PowerPoint screen, blank the screen. Make an all-black or all-white screen appear where a PowerPoint slide used to be. Every head in the audience will turn your way and listen keenly to what you have to say next. I sure hope you have something important to say.

Follow these instructions to blank out the screen during a presentation:

- ◆ **Black screen:** Press B, the period key, or right-click and choose Screen⇨Black Screen.
- ◆ **White screen:** Press W, the comma key, or right-click and choose Screen⇨White Screen.

To see a PowerPoint slide again, click on-screen or press any key on the keyboard.

### ***Zooming In***

Yet another way to add pizazz to a presentation is to zoom in on slides. To draw the audience's attention to part of a slide, you can magnify it by following these steps:

1. **Click the Zoom button in the lower-left corner of the screen.**  
You can also right-click and choose Zoom In. The pointer changes to a magnifying glass.
2. **Move to and click the part of a slide you want the audience to focus on.**
3. **Press Esc.**

## *Delivering a Presentation When You Can't Be There in Person*

Let me count the ways that you can deliver a presentation without being there in person:

- ◆ Deliver your presentation in the form of a *handout*, a printed version of the presentation with thumbnail slides.
- ◆ Create a self-running presentation.
- ◆ Create a user-run presentation with action buttons that others can click to get from slide to slide.
- ◆ Show your presentation over the Internet.
- ◆ Make a video of your presentation.
- ◆ Package your presentation so that people who don't have PowerPoint can view it.

The rest of this chapter explains these techniques for delivering a presentation when you can't be there in the flesh.

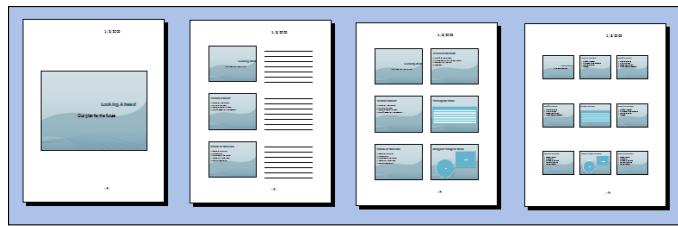
### *Providing handouts for your audience*

*Handouts* are thumbnail versions of slides that you print and distribute to the audience. Figure 5-4 shows examples of handouts. Handouts come in one, two, three, four, six, or nine slides per page. If you select three slides per page, the handout includes lines that your audience can take notes on (see Figure 5-4); the other sizes don't offer these lines.

---

**Figure 5-4:**  
Examples  
of handouts  
(from left  
to right)  
at  
one,  
three,  
six,  
and  
nine  
slides  
per  
page.

---





To tell PowerPoint how to construct handouts, go to the View tab and click the Handout Master button. In Handout Master view, on the Handout Master tab, you can do a number of things to make your handouts more useful and attractive. As you make your choices, keep your eye on the sample handout page; it shows what your choices mean in real terms.

- ◆ **Handout Orientation:** Select Portrait or Landscape. In landscape mode, the page is turned on its side and is longer than it is tall.
- ◆ **Slide Size:** Select Standard or Widescreen.
- ◆ **Slides-Per-Page:** Open the drop-down list and choose how many slides appear on each page. Figure 5-4 shows what some of the choices are.
- ◆ **Header:** Select the Header check box and enter a header in the text frame to make a header appear in the upper-left corner of all handout pages. Candidates for headers include your name, your company name, and the location of a conference or seminar. The point is to help your audience identify the handout.
- ◆ **Footer:** Select the Footer check box and enter a footer in the text frame in the lower-left corner of handout pages. Candidates for footers are the same as candidates for headers.
- ◆ **Date:** Select this check box if you want the date you print the handout to appear on the handout pages.
- ◆ **Page Number:** Select this check box if you want page numbers to appear on the handout pages.
- ◆ **Background Styles:** Open the Background Styles drop-down list and select a gradient or color, if you're so inclined. Chapter 2 of this mini-book explains background styles. Make sure that the background doesn't obscure the slide thumbnails or put too much of a burden on your printer.

To print handouts, go to the File tab and choose Print (or press Ctrl+P). You see the Print window. Under Settings, open the second drop-down list, and under Handouts, choose how many slides to print on each page. Then click the Print button.

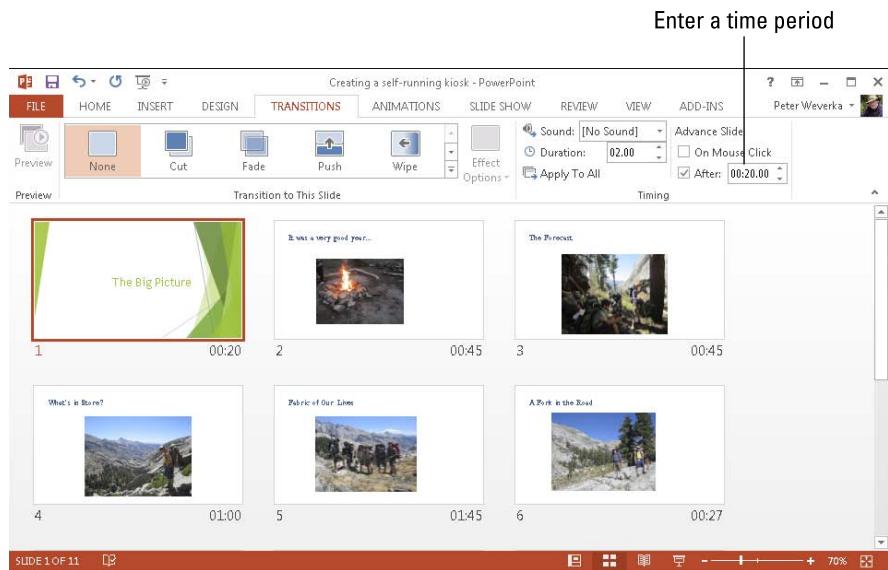
### ***Creating a self-running, kiosk-style presentation***

A self-running, kiosk-style presentation is one that plays on its own. You can make it play from a kiosk or simply send it to co-workers so that they can play it. In a self-running presentation, slides appear on-screen one after the other without you or anyone else having to advance the presentation from slide to slide. When the presentation finishes, it starts all over again from Slide 1.

### Telling PowerPoint how long to keep slides on-screen

PowerPoint offers two ways to indicate how long you want each slide to stay on-screen:

- ◆ **Entering the time periods yourself:** Switch to Slide Sorter view and go to the Transitions tab. Then deselect the On Mouse Click check box and select the After check box, as shown in Figure 5-5. Next, tell PowerPoint to keep all slides on-screen the same amount of time or choose a different time period for each slide:



**Figure 5-5:**  
Enter how long you want each slide or all the slides to remain on-screen.

- *All slides the same time:* Enter a time period in the After text box and click the Apply to All button.
- *Each slide a different time:* One by one, select each slide and enter a time period in the After text box.
- ◆ **Rehearsing the presentation:** Rehearse the presentation and save the timings. (See “Rehearsing and Timing Your Presentation” earlier in this chapter.) Be sure to save the slide timings after you’re finished rehearsing. In Slide Sorter view, you can see how long each slide will stay on-screen (see Figure 5-5).

### **Telling PowerPoint that your presentation is self-running**

Before you can "self-run" a presentation, you have to tell PowerPoint that you want it to do that. Self-running presentations don't have the control buttons in the lower-left corner. You can't click the screen or press a key to move forward or backward to the next or previous slide. The only control you have over a self-running presentation is pressing the Esc key (pressing Esc ends the presentation).

Follow these steps to make yours a kiosk-style, self-running presentation:

1. Go to the Slide Show tab.



2. Click the Set Up Slide Show button.

You see the Set Up Slide Show dialog box.

3. Under Show Type, choose the Browsed at a Kiosk (Full Screen) option.

When you select this option, PowerPoint automatically selects the Loop Continuously Until 'Esc' check box.

4. Click OK.

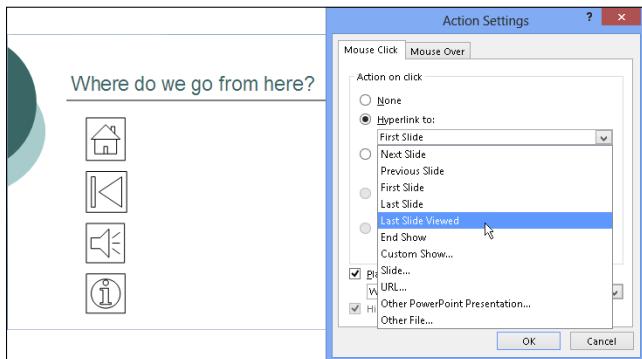
That's all there is to it.

### **Creating a user-run presentation**

A *user-run*, or *interactive*, presentation is one that the viewer gets to control. The viewer decides which slide appears next and how long each slide remains on-screen. User-run presentations are similar to websites. Users can browse from slide to slide at their own speed. They can pick and choose what they want to investigate. They can backtrack and view slides they saw previously or return to the first slide and start anew.

Self-run presentations are shown in Reading view (click the Reading View button on the status bar to see what self-run presentations look like). A task bar appears along the bottom of the screen. On the right side of the task bar, viewers can click the Previous button or Next button to go from slide to slide. They can also click the Menu button to open a pop-up menu with commands for navigating slides.

Another way to help readers get from slide to slide is to create action buttons. An *action button* is a button that you can click to go to another slide in your presentation or the previous slide you viewed, whatever that slide was. PowerPoint provides 11 action buttons in the Shapes gallery. Figure 5-6 shows some action buttons and the dialog box you use to create them.



**Figure 5-6:**  
Action buttons.

### Drawing an action button

After you draw an action button from the Shapes gallery, the Action Settings dialog box shown in Figure 5-6 appears so you can tell PowerPoint which slide to go to when the button is clicked. Select the slide (or master slide) that needs action and follow these steps to adorn it with an action button:

1. On the Home or Insert tab, open the Shapes gallery and scroll to the Action Buttons category at the bottom.

2. Click an action button to select it.

Choose the button that best illustrates which slide will appear when the button is clicked.

3. Draw the button on the slide.

To do so, drag the pointer in a diagonal fashion. (As far as drawing them is concerned, action buttons work the same as all other shapes and other objects. Book VIII, Chapter 4 explains how to manipulate objects.) The Action Settings dialog box shown in Figure 5-6 appears after you finish drawing your button.

4. Go to the Mouse Over tab if you want users to activate the button by moving the mouse pointer over it, not clicking it.

5. Select the Hyperlink To option button.

6. On the Hyperlink To drop-down list, choose an action for the button.

You can go to the next slide, the previous slide, the first or last slide in a presentation, the last slide you viewed, or a specific slide.

To make clicking the action button take users to a specific slide, choose Slide on the list. You see the Hyperlink to Slide dialog box, which lists each slide in your presentation. Select a slide and click OK.



- 7. To play a sound when your action button is activated, select the Play Sound check box and select a sound on the drop-down list.**

“Mouse-over” hyperlinks require sound accompaniment so that users understand when they’ve activated an action button.

- 8. Click OK in the Actions Settings dialog box.**

To test your button, you can right-click it and choose Open Hyperlink.



To change a button’s action, select it and then click the Action button on the Insert tab, or right-click your action button and choose Edit Hyperlink. In the Action Settings dialog box, choose a new action and click OK.

### ***Making yours a user-run presentation***

Follow these steps to declare yours a user-run presentation:



- 1. Go to the Slide Show tab.**
  - 2. Click the Set Up Slide Show button.**
- You see the Set Up Show dialog box.
- 3. Select the Browsed by an Individual (Window) option button.**
  - 4. Click OK.**

Your presentation is no longer quite yours. It also belongs to all the people who view it in your absence.

## ***Presenting a Presentation Online***

Presenting online means to play a presentation on your computer for others who watch it over the Internet. As you go from slide to slide, audience members see the slides on their web browsers. Presenting online is an excellent way to show a presentation to others during a conference call or to others who don’t have PowerPoint.

Presenting online is made possible by the Office Presentation Service, a free service for everyone who has Office software and a Microsoft Account. (What a Microsoft Account is and how to obtain one — it’s free — is explained in detail in Book X, Chapter 1). The first time you attempt to show a presentation online, you are asked to provide your Microsoft Account username and password.

The Office Presentation service creates a temporary web address for you to show your presentation. Before showing it, you send audience members a link to this web address. Audience members, in turn, click the link to open and watch your presentation in their web browsers.



Before presenting online, make sure you know the e-mail addresses of the people who will view your presentation. Make sure as well that they are available to view it. Online presentations are shown in real time. After you close a presentation, its link is broken and the audience can no longer watch it in their web browsers.

Follow these steps to show a presentation online:

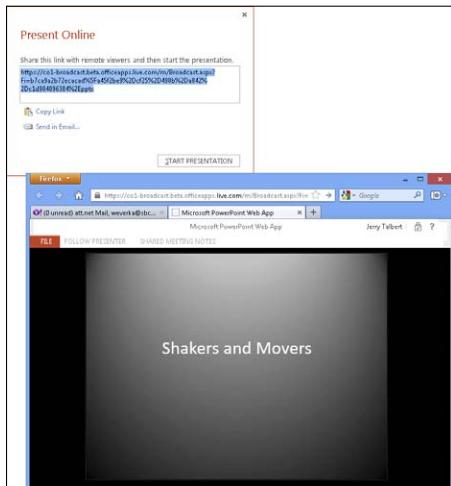


- On the Slide Show tab, click the Present Online button.**

The Present Online dialog box appears. You can also open this dialog box on the File tab by choosing Share⇒Present Online and clicking the Present Online button.

- Click the Connect button.**

The Office Presentation Service generates a URL link for you to send to the people who will view your presentation, as shown in Figure 5-7.



**Figure 5-7:**  
Others can  
click the  
URL link  
(top) to view  
an online  
presentation  
in a browser  
window  
(bottom).

- Send the link to your audience.**

You can send the link with Outlook or another e-mail software.

- *Copy and send the link by e-mail:* Click Copy Link to copy the link to the Clipboard. Then, in your e-mail software, paste the link into invitations you send to audience members.
- *Send the link with Outlook:* Click the Send in Email link. An Outlook message window appears. Address and send the message.

4. Make sure that audience members have received the e-mail invitation and are ready to watch your presentation.
5. Click the Start Presentation button.

Audience members see the presentation in their browsers, as shown in Figure 5-7.

6. Give the presentation.

Use the same techniques to advance or retreat from slide to slide as you use in any presentation.

When the presentation ends, you land in the Present Online tab.



7. On the Present Online tab, click the End Online Presentation button; click End Online Presentation in the confirmation dialog box.

Your audience sees this notice: "The presentation has ended."

## Packaging your presentation on a CD

The Package for CD command copies a presentation to a CD so that you can take a presentation on the road or distribute it to others on CDs. By using the Package for CD command, you can even distribute a presentation to people who don't have PowerPoint. Someone who doesn't have PowerPoint can download the *PowerPoint Viewer*, an abridged version of PowerPoint with all the PowerPoint slide-show commands (but none of the slide-creation commands). With the Package for CD command, you don't have to be concerned whether someone to whom you give your presentation has PowerPoint or whether PowerPoint is installed on the computer where you will give your presentation.

These pages explain the ins and outs of the Package for CD command. You find out how to copy a presentation to a CD or folder and play a presentation in PowerPoint Viewer.

## Packaging a presentation on a CD

Follow these steps to copy your presentation and the PowerPoint Viewer to a CD or a folder:

**FILE**

1. Open the presentation you want to package.
2. On the File tab, choose Export.
3. Choose Package Presentation for CD, and click the Package for CD button.

You see the Package for CD dialog box shown in Figure 5-8.

**Figure 5-8:**  
Packaging  
a CD to  
distribute to  
others.



**4. Enter a name for the CD or folder in the Name the CD text box.**

The name you enter will appear as the name of the CD if you view the CD in File Explorer or Windows Explorer; if you're copying your presentation to a folder, the name you enter will be given to the folder PowerPoint creates when it creates the packaged presentation file.

**5. Create the packaged presentation and copy it to a CD or to a folder on your computer.**

Copy the presentation to a folder if you want to send the presentation by e-mail rather than distribute it by CD.

- *Copying to a CD:* Click the Copy to CD button.
- *Copying to a folder:* Click the Copy to Folder button. In the Copy to Folder dialog box, click the Browse button, and in the Choose Location dialog box, select a folder for storing the folder where you will keep your packaged presentation. Then click the Select button and click OK in the Copy to Folder dialog box.

**6. Click Yes in the message box that asks if you want to include linked content in the presentation.**

It can take PowerPoint several minutes to assemble the files and copy them to the CD or folder.

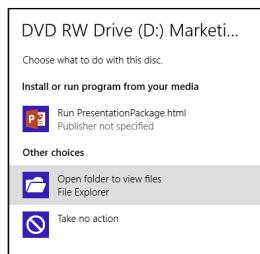
If you're copying your presentation to a CD, PowerPoint asks whether you want to copy the same presentation to another CD. Either insert a fresh CD and click Yes, or click the No button.

### ***Playing a packaged presentation***

As shown in Figure 5-9, an AutoPlay window appears when you put a CD-packaged PowerPoint presentation in the computer's CD drive. Tell the people to whom you distribute your CD that they can play the presentation starting in this window whether or not PowerPoint is installed on their computers:

- ◆ **PowerPoint (or PowerPoint Viewer) is installed:** Click Open Folder to View Files in the AutoPlay window. The Computer application opens to show the files on the CD. Double-click the PowerPoint presentation to play it.
- ◆ **PowerPoint isn't installed:** Click Run Presentation Package in the AutoPlay window. A web browser opens. Click the Download Viewer button to go to a web page at Microsoft.com and download the PowerPoint Viewer. After downloading and installing PowerPoint Viewer, you can use it to play the PowerPoint presentation.

**Figure 5-9:**  
Playing  
a CD-  
packaged  
presentation.



## Distributing your presentation to people who don't have PowerPoint

Not everyone has PowerPoint. Not everyone is so blessed. Some people live along in ignorant bliss without knowing anything about PowerPoint and its slide-show capabilities.

Don't be discouraged if you want to send your PowerPoint presentation to someone who doesn't have or may not have PowerPoint. Someone who doesn't have PowerPoint on his or her computer can still play a PowerPoint presentation by way of *PowerPoint Viewer*, a software program you can download for free from Microsoft starting at this web page (enter **PowerPoint Viewer** in the Search text box and click the Go button):

[www.microsoft.com/downloads](http://www.microsoft.com/downloads)

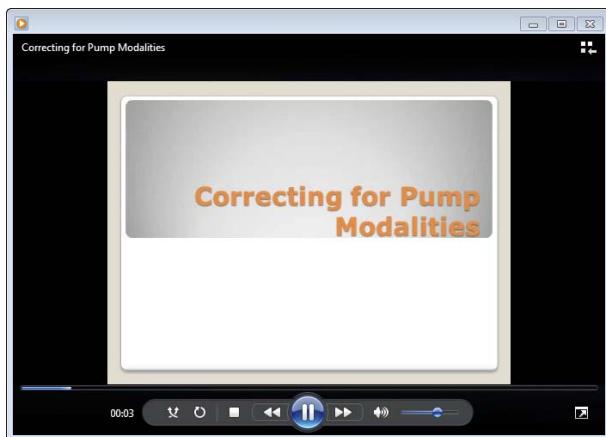
Here are instructions for running a presentation in PowerPoint Viewer:

- ✓ **Getting from slide to slide:** Click on-screen or right-click and choose Next on the shortcut menu.
- ✓ **Retreating:** Right-click and choose Previous or Last Viewed.
- ✓ **Going to a specific slide:** Right-click, choose Go to Slide, and select a slide on the submenu.
- ✓ **Ending the show:** Press Esc or right-click and choose End Show.

## ***Creating a presentation video***

Yet another way to distribute a video is to record it in an MPEG-4 file and distribute the file on a CD, distribute it by e-mail, or post it on the Internet. PowerPoint offers a command for creating an MPEG-4 version of a presentation. Every aspect of a PowerPoint presentation, including transitions, animations, sound, video itself, and voice narrations, is recorded in the presentation video.

Figure 5-10 shows an MPEG-4 version of a PowerPoint presentation being played in Windows Media Player. This utility comes with the Windows operating system. Everyone with a computer that runs Windows can play MPEG-4 versions of your presentations by playing them in Windows Media Player.



---

**Figure 5-10:**  
Viewing an  
MPEG-4  
version of a  
PowerPoint  
presentation  
in Windows  
Media  
Player.

---



Before creating your presentation video, consider how long you want each slide to appear on-screen. You can make each slide appear for a specific length of time or make all slides appear for the same length of time. To decide for yourself how long each slide appears, switch to Slide Sorter view, go to the Transitions tab, and for each slide, select the After check box and enter a measurement in the After text box. (Earlier in this chapter, “Creating a self-running, kiosk-style presentation” explains in detail how to establish how long each slide stays on-screen.)

Follow these steps to create an MPEG-4 version of a PowerPoint presentation:

**FILE**

- 1. On the File tab, choose Export.**
- 2. Choose Create a Video.**

You see the Create a Video window.

3. Open the first drop-down list and choose a display resolution for your video.
4. Open the second drop-down list and choose whether to use recorded timings and narrations.

Your choices are twofold. If you recorded a voice narration for your PowerPoint presentation, choose the second option if you want to preserve the voice narration in the video.

- *Don't Use Recorded Timings and Narrations:* Each slide stays on-screen for the same amount of time. Enter a time period in the Seconds to Spend on Each Slide box to declare how long each slide stays on-screen.
- *Use Recorded Timings and Narrations:* Each slide stays on-screen for the time period listed on the Transition tab (see the Tip at the start of this section to find out how to list slide times on the Transition tab).

5. Open the second drop-down list and choose Preview Timings and Narrations.

Your presentation video plays. How do you like it? This is what your video will look and sound like after you save it in a WMV file.

6. Click the Create Video button.

The Save As dialog box opens.

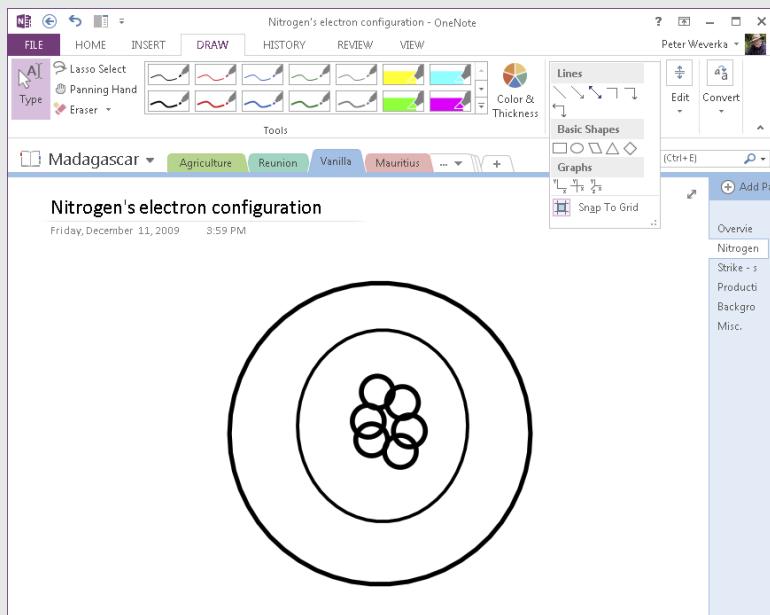
7. Choose a folder for storing the MPEG-4 file, enter a name for the file, and click the Save button.

The status bar along the bottom of the PowerPoint screen shows the progress of the video as it is being created. Creating a video can take several minutes, depending on how large your PowerPoint presentation is and how many fancy gizmos, such as sound and animation, it contains.



# Book V

# OneNote 2013



Check out more OneNote features online at [www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio](http://www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio)

# *Contents at a Glance*

<b>Chapter 1: Up and Running with OneNote .....</b>	<b>403</b>
Introducing OneNote.....	403
Finding Your Way Around the OneNote Screen .....	404
Units for Organizing Notes .....	405
Creating a Notebook.....	407
Creating Sections and Section Groups.....	408
Creating Pages and Subpages .....	410
Renaming and Deleting Groups and Pages.....	411
Getting from Place to Place in OneNote .....	411
Changing Your View of OneNote .....	412
<b>Chapter 2: Taking Notes .....</b>	<b>415</b>
Entering a Typewritten Note.....	415
Notes: The Basics .....	415
Drawing on the Page .....	418
Converting a Handwritten Note to Text .....	422
Writing a Math Expression in a Note .....	423
Taking a Screen-Clipping Note.....	424
Recording and Playing Audio Notes.....	425
Attaching, Copying, and Linking Files to Notes .....	427
<b>Chapter 3: Finding and Organizing Your Notes.....</b>	<b>431</b>
Finding a Stray Note .....	431
Tagging Notes for Follow Up .....	433
Color-Coding Notebooks, Sections, and Pages .....	437
Merging and Moving Sections, Pages, and Notes .....	437

# *Chapter 1: Up and Running with OneNote*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Getting acquainted with OneNote
- ✓ Understanding the OneNote screen
- ✓ Creating notebooks, sections, section groups, and pages
- ✓ Getting a better view of your notes
- ✓ Navigating in OneNote

**M**icrosoft OneNote 2013 is designed for taking notes — at meetings, when talking on the telephone, or in the classroom. Rather than scribble notes indiscriminately in a Word 2013 document, you can enter them in OneNote and be able to retrieve them later. You can use your notes to construct reports and white papers. You can copy them to Excel, PowerPoint, or Word. OneNote comes with all sorts of amenities for finding and filing notes. OneNote can help you brainstorm and organize your ideas.

This chapter explains what OneNote is and how you can use it to store and organize notes. It explains what sections, section groups, and pages are and why to use these items for organizing notes. You also find out how to get from place to place in OneNote and change views so that you can see your notes better.

## *Introducing OneNote*

Everybody who has been in a classroom or participated in a business meeting knows what note taking is. What makes taking notes with OneNote special is that you can store, organize, and retrieve your notes in various ways. OneNote adds another dimension to note taking. Because notes can be copied, moved, and combined with other notes, you can use notes as building blocks for different projects.

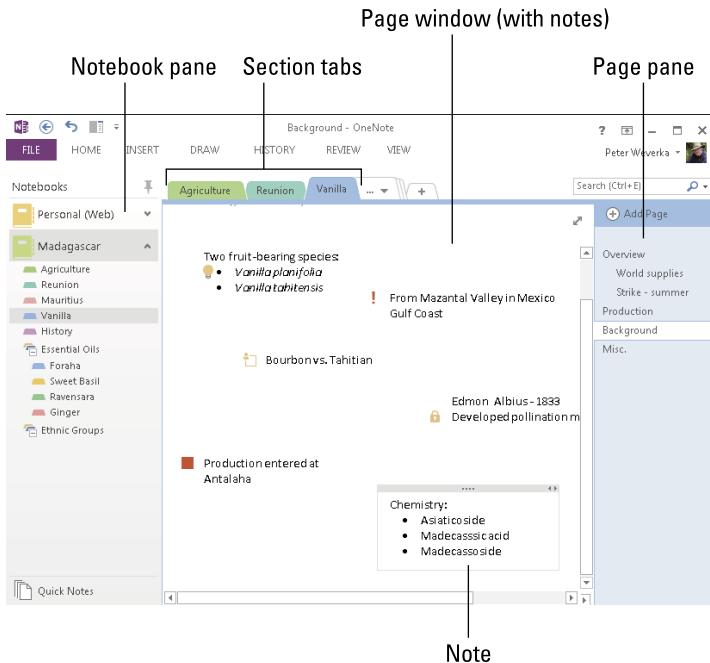
A OneNote file is called a *notebook*. Within a notebook, you can write notes and organize your notes into sections, section groups, pages, and subpages. You can use OneNote to refine your thinking about the work you want to do and the subjects you want to tackle. OneNote helps you brainstorm, and when you finish brainstorming, it helps you organize your ideas into something coherent and useful.



OneNote is unusual among Office programs in that it doesn't have a Save button or Save command. Every 30 seconds, OneNote saves all the notes for you. You needn't concern yourself with whether notes are being saved.

### Finding Your Way Around the OneNote Screen

OneNote wants you to be able to enter notes and find notes quickly, and to that purpose, the screen is divided into four main areas: the Notebook pane, Section tabs, the Page window, and the Page pane. Figure 1-1 shows where these main areas are located, and the following pages explain each area in detail.



**Figure 1-1:**  
The  
OneNote  
screen.

## Notebook pane

Located on the left side of the screen, the Notebook pane lists the names of notebooks you created, and within each notebook, it lists sections and section groups. To go to a different notebook, section, or section group, click its name in the Notebook pane.



Click the Unpin Notebook Pane from Side button to pin the Notebook pane to the left side of the screen. This pin-shaped button is located above the Notebook pane. To see the Notebook pane again, double-click the name of your notebook.

## Section (and section group) tabs

Section and section group names appear in tabs above the page (refer to Figure 1-1). Click the name of a section to see its pages. (You can also click a section name in the Notebook pane.) Click the name of a section group to make its sections appear on the tabs. Later in this chapter, “Units for Organizing Notes” explains what sections and section groups are.

## Page window

After you select a page in the Page pane, it appears in the Page window, and you can read notes you wrote on the page (refer to Figure 1-1). The title of the page appears at the top of the page window in the Title text box. Underneath the Title text box, you can see the date and time that the page was created.

To write a note, click in the Page window and start typing.

## Page pane

The names of pages and subpages in the section you selected appear on tabs in the Page pane on the right side of the screen (refer to Figure 1-1).

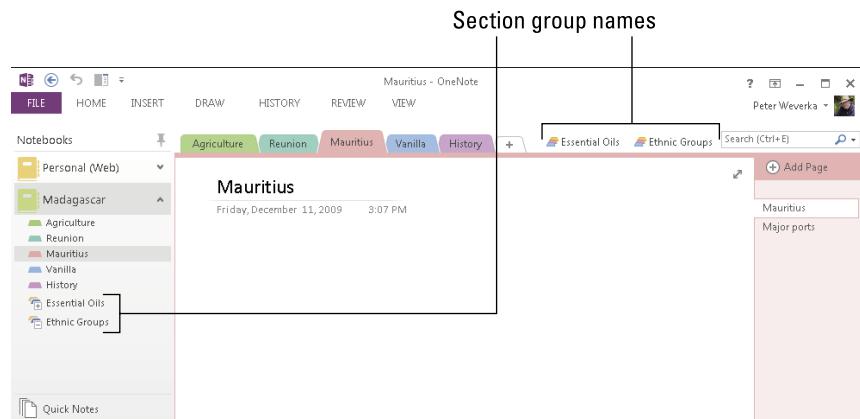
To go from page to page, click a page’s name. The top of the Page pane offers the Add Page button for creating new pages.

# Units for Organizing Notes

From largest to smallest, OneNote offers these units for organizing notes:

- ◆ **Notebook:** Create a notebook for each important project you’re involved in. OneNote places one button on the Notebook pane for each open notebook. By clicking these buttons, you can go from notebook to notebook. The Notebook pane is located on the left side of the window (see Figure 1-1).

- ◆ **Sections:** A *section* is a subcategory of a notebook; it is used to store pages. Each notebook can have many different sections, and each section, in turn, can have many pages. In Figure 1-1, there are five sections in the Madagascar notebook: Agriculture, Reunion, Mauritius, Vanilla, and History.
- ◆ **Section groups:** A *section group* is a means of organizing and quickly finding sections. In a notebook with many sections, you can store sections in a group to make finding sections easier. The names of section groups appear below the names of sections on the Notebook pane and to the right of sections in the section tabs, as shown in Figure 1-2.



**Figure 1-2:**  
Use section  
groups to  
organize  
sections.

- ◆ **Pages and subpages:** A *page* is for writing and storing notes. Pages are stored in sections. As shown in Figure 1-1, the names of pages appear on the Page pane (on the right side of the screen) on *page tabs*. Within a page, you can also create a *subpage*.
- ◆ **Notes:** Write your notes on pages and subpages. To write a note, all you have to do is click a page and start typing.



Before you write your first note, give a moment's thought to organizing notes in the notebook-section-pages hierarchy. Think of descriptive names for your notebook, sections, section groups, and pages. By giving a thought to how to organize notes, you will be able to find them more easily later on.

## Creating a Notebook

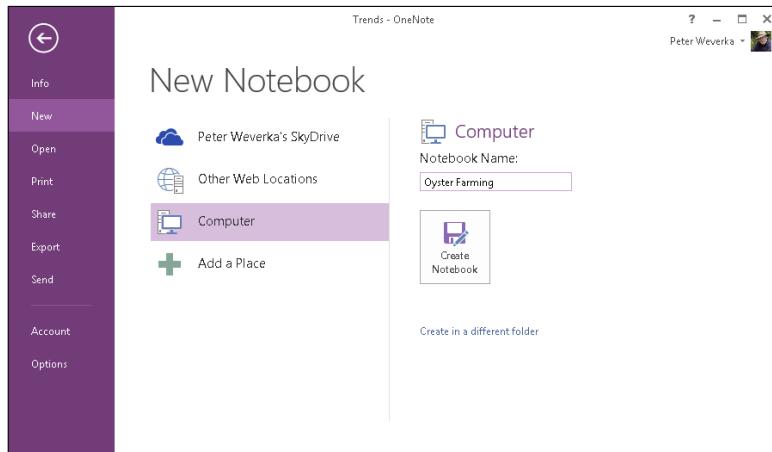
OneNote creates a new notebook for you called Personal the first time you start the program, but you are invited to create a notebook of your own. OneNote is kind of unusual among Office programs in that you name a notebook when you create it, not when you save it for the first time.

Follow these steps to create a new notebook:

### FILE

**1. On to the File tab, choose New.**

The New Notebook window opens, as shown in Figure 1-3. You can also right-click the Notebook pane and choose New Notebook to open this window.



**Figure 1-3:**  
Name your  
notebook  
when you  
create it.

**2. Choose Computer to store the notebook on your computer.**

The other options for storing files you create with Office 2013 software are described in Book I, Chapter 1.

**3. Enter a name for the notebook.**

**4. Click the Create Notebook button.**

The new notebook opens on-screen. OneNote creates a section (called New Section 1) and a page (called Untitled Page) in your notebook.

## 5. Change the name of the section and page.

Follow these instructions to change section and page names:

- *Changing the section name:* Right-click the section name, choose Rename on the shortcut menu, and enter a descriptive name. You can also double-click a name and enter a new one.
- *Changing the page name:* Enter a name in the Title text box at the top of the page. After you enter the name, the new name appears as well on the Page pane on the right side of the screen.

To delete a notebook, close OneNote, open File Finder (Windows 8) or Windows Explorer (Windows 7), go to the folder where the notebook is stored, and delete the folder. To find out where notebooks are stored by default on your computer, go to the File tab, choose Options, go to the Save & Backup category of the OneNote Options dialog box, and look for the Default Notebook Location.

# *Creating Sections and Section Groups*

After the notebook, the next units in the file storage hierarchy are the section and the section group. If a notebook is a book, a section is a chapter in a book. Create a section for each subtopic in the item you're keeping notes on. A section group is a convenient way to organize groups. A group can belong to more than one section.

## *Creating a new section*

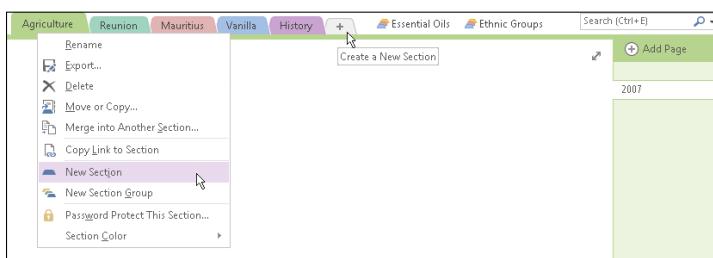
Follow these steps to create a new section:



### 1. Click the Create a New Section button.

This button (indicated by a plus sign) is located to the right of the section tabs, as shown in Figure 1-4. Rather than click the New Section button, you can right-click the Notebook pane or a section tab and choose New Section.

A new section tab aptly named “New Section 1” appears.



**Figure 1-4:**  
Two ways  
to create a  
section.

2. Enter a section name on the tab.
3. Press Enter.

To rename a section, right-click its name, choose Rename, and enter a new name.

After you create a new section, OneNote automatically creates a new page to go with it. This page is called “Untitled Page.” To rename this page, enter a name in the Title text box at the top of the page.

## ***Creating a section group***

Follow these steps to create a section group:

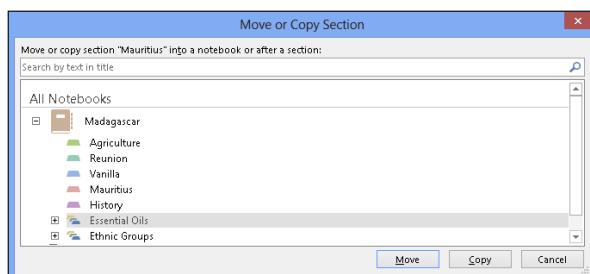
1. Right-click the Notebook pane or a section tab and choose New Section Group.
2. Enter a name for the section group.
3. Press the Enter key.

Your new section appears on the right side of the section tabs (refer to Figure 1-2). Your next task is to move or copy a section that you already created into the section group.

4. Right-click a section you want to move or copy into the group and choose Move or Copy on the drop-down list.

The Move or Copy Section dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 1-5.

**Figure 1-5:**  
Choose a section to move or copy it to a section group.



5. Select the name of the section group you created.
6. Click the Move or Copy button.

The fastest (but clumsiest) way to move a section name into a group is to drag the section name in the Notebook pane to the section group name.

## Removing a notebook from the Notebook pane

Consider removing a notebook's name from the Notebook pane if the Notebook pane gets too crowded with notebooks. Follow these instructions to remove and display a notebook's name on the Notebook pane:

- ✓ **Closing a notebook:** Right-click the notebook's name and choose Close This Notebook on the shortcut menu.

✓ **Re-opening a notebook:** Go to the File tab and choose Open. You see the Open Notebook window. Select a notebook name under Recent Notebooks. If the notebook's name doesn't appear, choose Computer, click the Browse button, and select the notebook's name in the Open Notebook dialog box.

## *Creating Pages and Subpages*

When you create a section, OneNote automatically creates a new page for you, but that doesn't mean that you can't create more pages for a section. Create a page for each subtopic you want to take notes on. Within each page, you can create subpages to help you organize your notes better.

### *Creating a new page*

Follow these steps to create a page:

**1. Click the Add Page button.**

This button is located at the top of the Page pane. A new page appears. You can also make a new page appear by pressing Ctrl+N or right-clicking the Page pane and choosing New Page.

**2. Enter a page name in the Title text box.**

The name you enter appears on a page tab in the Page pane.



You can rearrange pages (and subpages) in the Page pane by dragging their names higher or lower in the list of pages.

### *Creating a new subpage*

Use these techniques to create a subpage:

- ◆ Right-click a page and choose Make Subpage.
- ◆ In the Page pane, drag the name of the page to the right.

To turn a subpage into a page, right-click the subpage and choose Promote Subpage or drag the page's name to the left.

## ***Renaming and Deleting Groups and Pages***

If you're like me, you do a lot of deleting and renaming of groups, section groups, pages, and subpages in OneNote. Making sure that these items have descriptive names is essential for locating notes and entering notes in the right places.

Luckily for all of us, OneNote makes it easy to rename and delete groups and pages. Think the words "right-click" when you want to rename or delete a group, section group, or page. To rename or delete one of these items, right-click it and choose Rename or Delete on the shortcut menu. After you choose Rename, enter a new name for your group, section group, or page.

## ***Getting from Place to Place in OneNote***

As you fill up a notebook with sections, section groups, pages, subpages, and notes, finding the place you need to be to enter or read a note gets more complicated. Here are ways to get from section to section or page to page in the OneNote window:

- ◆ **Go to a different notebook:** Click a notebook button on the Notebook pane. Use one of these techniques to find out where clicking a notebook button takes you:
  - *Move the pointer over a button.* You see a notebook's name and the folder where it is stored in a ScreenTip box.
  - *If the Notebook pane is pinned to the side of the screen, double-click its name.* Now you can see the names of open notebooks as well as the names of notebook sections on the Notebook pane.
- ◆ **Go to a different section or section group:** Click the name of a section or section group in the Notebook pane or along the top of the page. Section group names are listed at the bottom of the Notebook pane and to the right of section names. You can expand and collapse section groups in the Notebook pane by clicking the plus or minus sign on a section group symbol.
- ◆ **Go to a different page:** Click a page or subpage tab on the Page pane on the right side of the window.

## Revisiting (and restoring) an earlier version of a page

For each day you work on a page, OneNote saves a copy of the page in case you want to revisit or restore it. To read an earlier version of a page, follow these steps:

- 1. Open the page.**
- 2. Go to the History tab.**
- 3. Click the Page Versions button.**

The names of page versions appear on the Pages pane. These page versions are dated with an author's name. (You can also see page versions by right-clicking a page's name and choosing Show Page Versions on the shortcut menu.)

- 4. Click a page version's name to open and read an earlier version of a page.**

To make an earlier version of a page the one you want for your notes, click the top of the page to open a drop-down list with options for rehiding, deleting, and restoring the page. Then choose Restore on the drop-down list.

To hide page versions, click the Page Versions button a second time or right-click a page's name and choose Hide Page Versions on the shortcut menu that appears.

To delete a page version, choose Delete Version on the drop-down list.

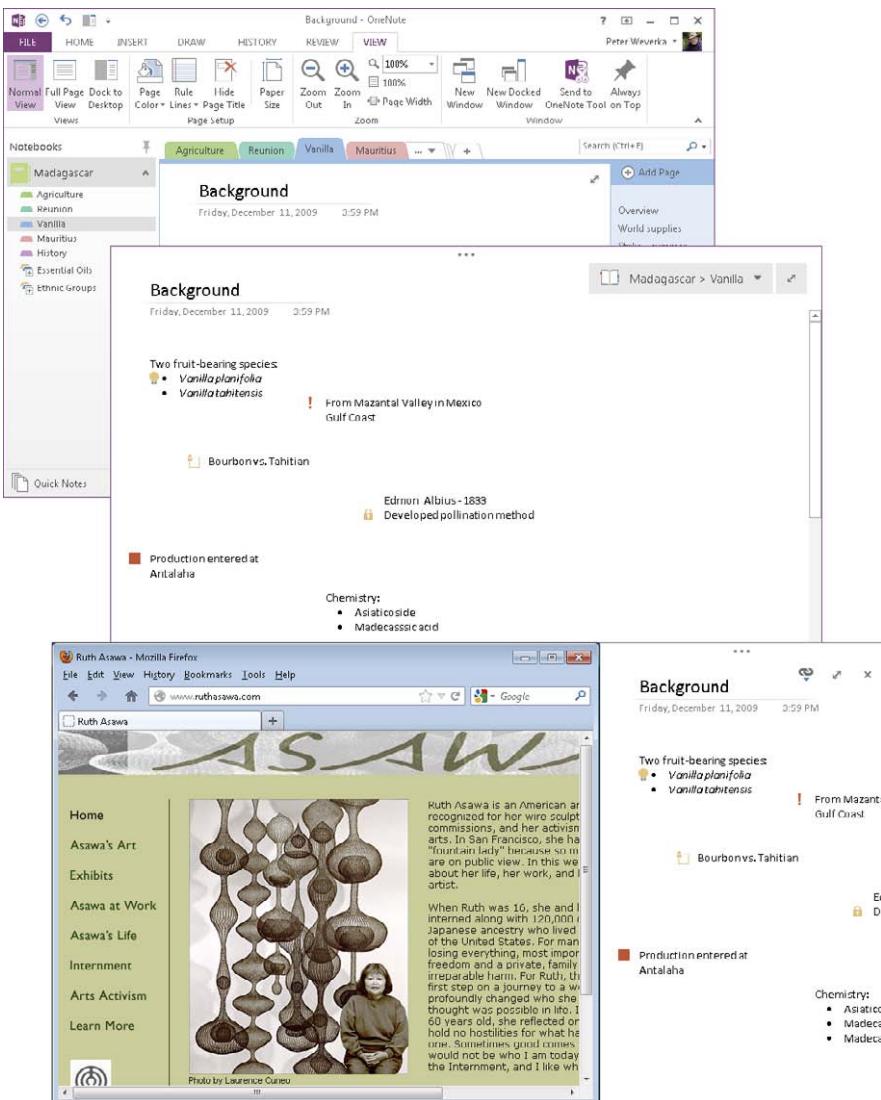


To return to the page you last visited, click the Back button on the Quick Access toolbar. This button works like the Back button in a browser. It takes you to where you were previously.

## *Changing Your View of OneNote*

As shown in Figure 1-6, OneNote offers three ways to view the screen:

- ◆ **Normal view:** For writing, editing, and organizing notes. In this view, you can see the ribbon, the Notebook pane, the tabs, and the Page pane.
- ◆ **Full Page view:** For comfortably reading your notes. In Full Page view, the OneNote buttons and tools aren't there to distract you.
- ◆ **Docked to the desktop:** For taking notes on what is in the middle of the screen — a Word document or web page, for example. While looking at a document or website, you can also see the OneNote screen and take notes there.



**Figure 1-6:**  
OneNote in  
Normal view  
(top), in Full  
Page view  
(middle),  
and docked  
to the  
desktop  
(bottom).

Use these techniques to change views:

- ◆ **View tab:** Click the Normal View, Full Page View, or Dock to Desktop button.

## 414 Changing Your View of OneNote

---

- ◆ **Keyboard:** Press F11 to switch between Normal view and Full Page view; press Ctrl+Alt+D to dock OneNote to the desktop or “undock” OneNote.

- ◆ **Quick Access toolbar:** Click the Dock to Desktop button.



While the OneNote screen is docked, you can adjust its size by dragging its left side toward or away from the center of your screen. To “undock” the OneNote screen, click the Normal View button or press Ctrl+Alt+D.

# **Chapter 2: Taking Notes**

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ✓ Entering notes with the keyboard
- ✓ Working with note containers
- ✓ Moving, selecting, and deleting notes
- ✓ Drawing in OneNote
- ✓ Turning handwritten notes into text notes
- ✓ Taking screen-clipping and audio notes
- ✓ Attaching and linking notes to files

To OneNote, a “note” is much more than something you scribble on a page. OneNote offers you the chance to create a variety of different notes — drawn notes, audio notes, screen clippings, and linked notes, for example.

This chapter delves into all the kinds of notes you can make with OneNote. It also shows you how to draw on a page, turn handwritten notes into text notes, write mathematical expressions, and attach and link files to notes.

## ***Entering a Typewritten Note***

The simplest kind of note is the typewritten note. To type a note, simply click the page where you want the note to be and start typing. Press the Enter key to begin a new paragraph in a note. You can draw upon the commands on the Home tab to format the text or change a note’s color. (Later in this chapter, “Formatting the Text in Notes,” looks at ways to format text.)

If recording when you made a note is important to you, visit the Insert tab and click the Date, Time, or Date & Time button while writing your note.

## ***Notes: The Basics***

Although the program is called OneNote, you can enter many kinds of notes. You can enter typed notes, drawings, and screen clippings, for example. Moreover, if you’re using a Tablet PC to scribble your notes, OneNote can (most of the time, anyway) recognize whether you’re writing by hand or drawing.

## Choosing your default font

By default, notes appear in Calibri font and are 11 points high. (Book I, Chapter 2 explains what fonts and font size are.) Does this font and font size do the job for you?

If it doesn't, you can change the default font and font size by following these steps:

1. On the File tab, choose Options.

The OneNote Options dialog box opens.

2. In the General category, open the Font drop-down list and choose a font.
3. Open the Size drop-down list and choose a font size.
4. Click OK.

Whatever kind of note you're dealing with, the basics of handling notes are the same. This section's pages look at note containers, how to select and delete notes, and how to get more room on-screen for notes.

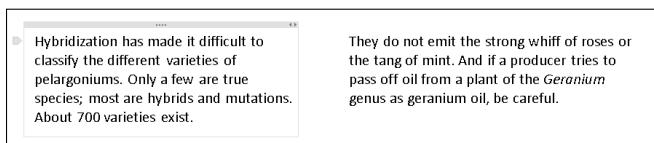
## Moving and resizing note containers

Notes appear in *containers*, as shown in Figure 2-1. Move the pointer over a note to see its container. Containers make it easier to move notes, resize notes, and arrange notes on the page so that you can read them more easily. Follow these instructions to move and resize notes:

- ◆ **Changing a note's position:** Move the pointer over the top of the note container, and when the pointer changes into a four-headed arrow, click and start dragging.
- ◆ **Changing a note's size:** Move the pointer over the right side of the note container, and when the pointer changes into a double arrow, click and drag to the left or right.

**Figure 2-1:**

Notes appear in note containers.

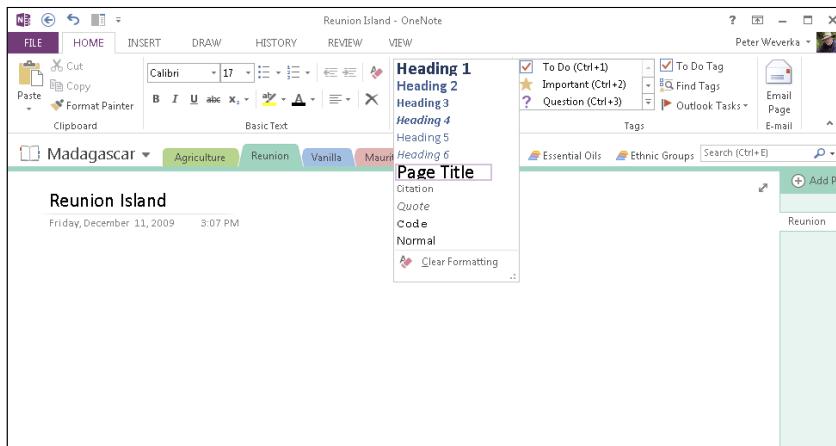


## Formatting the Text in Notes

On the Home and Insert tabs, OneNote offers commands for formatting the text in notes. If formatting a note's text makes reading and understanding it easier, by all means format the text. You can do so with these techniques:



- ◆ **Basic text formatting:** On the Home tab, you can choose a font for text, change the size and color of text, and create bulleted and numbered lists. Book I, Chapter 2 explains commands for formatting text in OneNote and the other Office applications.
- ◆ **Styles:** On the Home tab, styles present an easy way to format text. Click in the text you want to format, open the Styles gallery, and choose an option, as shown in Figure 2-2. Choose Heading 1, for example, to make a heading on a note stand out.
- ◆ **Tables:** On the Insert tab, click the Table button and choose how many columns and rows you want for your table on the drop-down list. Then enter the table data. The (Table Tools) Layout tab offers commands for laying out the table.



**Figure 2-2:**  
Choose  
a style in  
the Styles  
gallery.

## Selecting notes

Before you can do anything to a note — move it, delete it — you have to select it. The simplest way to select a note is to click it. After you click, you see the note's container (refer to Figure 2-1). You can also use these techniques to select notes:

- ◆ **Ctrl+click:** Hold down the Ctrl key and click notes to select more than one.
- ◆ **Drag:** Click and drag across a portion of a page to select several notes.
- ◆ **Press Ctrl+A:** Pressing Ctrl+A selects all the notes on a page.

## Deleting notes



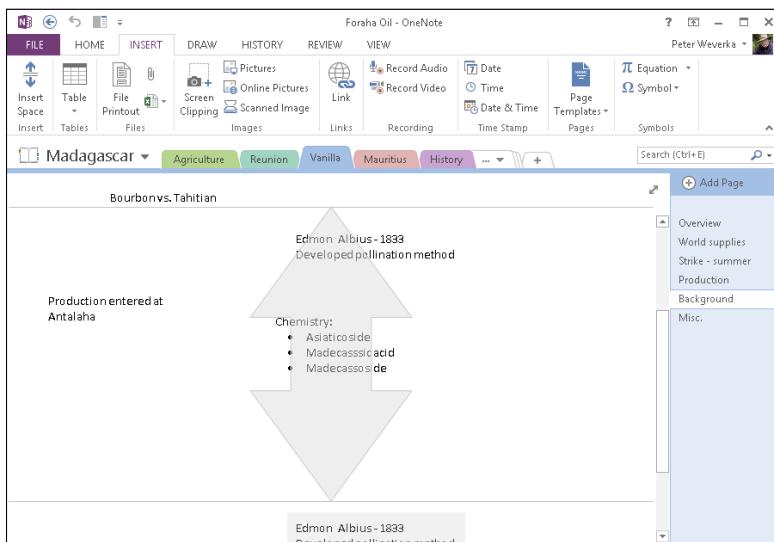
To delete notes, select them and press the Delete key. You can also go to the Home or Draw tab and click the Delete button.

Be careful about deleting notes, because you can't recover a note you deleted. OneNote gives you the opportunity to recover deleted sections and pages, but not notes you deleted.

## Getting more space for notes on a page



How do you make room for a note on a page that is crowded with notes? You can drag notes here and there, but an easier way is to go to the Insert or Draw tab and click the Insert Space button. After you click it, drag downward on the screen where you want to make more space for notes, as shown in Figure 2-3. Notes below where you drag are pushed further down the page.



**Figure 2-3:**  
Click the  
Insert  
Space  
button to  
make more  
room for  
notes.

## Drawing on the Page

Sometimes you can't say it in words, and for those occasions, consider drawing on the page instead of writing a note. OneNote offers the Draw tab precisely for that purpose. On this tab are tools for drawing lines of different colors and widths, drawing shapes, and editing your drawings.

## Drawing with a pen or highlighter

Follow these steps to draw on the page with a pen or highlighter:

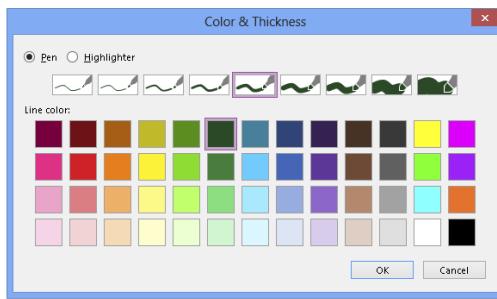
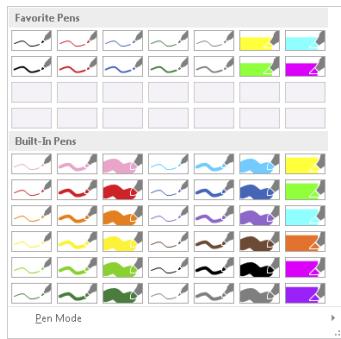
- 1. Go to the Draw tab.**
- 2. Choose a pen or highlighter.**

Use one of these techniques to choose a pen or highlighter:

- **Tools gallery:** Open the Tools gallery and choose a pen or highlighter, as shown in Figure 2-4.
- **Color & Thickness dialog box:** Click the Color & Thickness button to open the Color & Thickness dialog box, shown in Figure 2-4. Then select the Pen or Highlighter option button, choose a line thickness, and choose a line color.



**Figure 2-4:**  
On the Draw tab, choose a pen or highlighter from the Tools gallery (left) or Color & Thickness dialog box (right).



- 3. Start drawing.**

As you make your drawing, you can return to the Tools gallery or Color & Thickness dialog box and choose a different color or line type. You can also make shapes and straight lines part of your drawing. (The next topic in this chapter, “Drawing a shape,” explains how.)

- 4. Press Esc when you finish drawing or highlighting.**

Later in this chapter, “Changing the size and appearance of drawings and shapes” explains how to change a drawing’s size and appearance.

## Drawing a shape

As well as drawing freehand (the previous subject of this chapter), you can draw shapes and straight lines on the page. Making shapes and straight lines part of your drawings makes a drawing easier to understand, as shown in Figure 2-5. Follow these steps to draw a shape or straight line:

1. **On the Draw tab, choose a pen or highlighter.**

Your first step is to choose the color and line style you want for the shape or straight line:

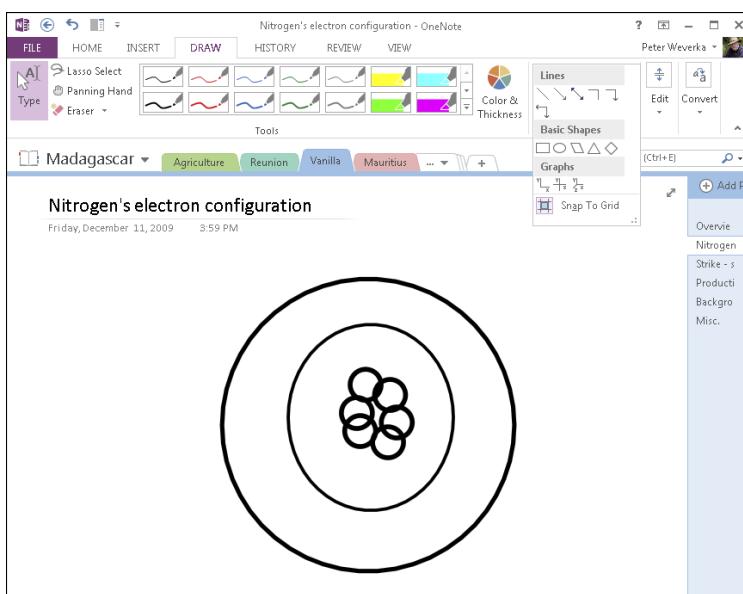
- **Tools gallery:** Open the Tools gallery and choose a pen or highlighter (refer to Figure 2-4).
- **Color & Thickness dialog box:** Click the Color & Thickness button to open the Color & Thickness dialog box (refer to Figure 2-4). In the dialog box, select the Pen or Highlighter option button, choose a line thickness, and choose a line color.

2. **On the Draw tab, open the Shapes gallery and choose line or shape.**

3. **Drag on-screen to draw the line or shape.**

4. **Press Esc when you finish drawing the line or shape.**

The next topic in this chapter explains how to change a shape's size and appearance.



**Figure 2-5:**  
You can  
draw  
shapes  
as well  
as draw  
freehand.

## Changing the size and appearance of drawings and shapes

Not that you necessarily want to open this can of worms, but you can edit drawings. Starting on the Draw tab, here are instructions for changing the look and appearance of drawings:



- ◆ **Selecting a single line or shape:** Click the Type button and then click the line or shape. Dotted lines and selection handles appear around the line or shape to show it is selected.



- ◆ **Selecting more than one shape and line:** Click the Lasso Select button and drag slantwise across the drawing.



- ◆ **Erasing:** Use the Eraser button to erase all or part of a line or shape. You can open the drop-down list on the Eraser button to choose erasers of different sizes.
  - *To erase part of a line or shape:* Click the Eraser button and drag over the part of the line or shape you want to erase.
  - *To erase entire lines and shapes:* Click the bottom half of the Eraser button to open its drop-down list, choose Stroke Eraser, and drag over or click on lines and shapes.



- ◆ **Changing line colors:** After you select a line, shape, or drawing, click Pen Properties in the pop-up menu and select a color.



- ◆ **Resizing:** After you select a line, shape, or drawing, use one of these techniques to resize it:
  - Drag a corner handle to change a shape's size and retain its symmetry.
  - Drag a side, top, or bottom handle to stretch or scrunch a shape.
- ◆ **Moving:** After you select a line, shape, or drawing, move the pointer on top of it. When you see the four-headed arrow, click and start dragging.



- ◆ **Rotating:** After you select a line, shape, or drawing, click the Rotate button and choose a Rotate or Flip option on the drop-down list.
- ◆ **Arranging overlapping lines and shapes:** When lines and shapes overlap, choose an Arrange option to determine which is highest and lowest in the stack. Select a line or shape, click the Arrange button, and choose an option on the drop-down list:
  - **Bring Forward:** Moves the line or shape higher in the stack.
  - **Bring to Front:** Moves the line or shape in front of all other lines and shapes in the stack.

- **Send Backward:** Moves the line or shape lower in the stack.
- **Send to Back:** Moves the lines or shape behind all other lines and shapes.

◆ **Deleting:** After you select a line, shape, or drawing, press Delete or click the Delete button.



### Converting a Handwritten Note to Text

Want proof that computers are getting smarter? In OneNote, you can write a note by hand using a stylus pen or your mouse and tell OneNote to convert it to text. In my experiments, the conversion works most of the time. OneNote is able to recognize my handwriting and render it in text, as shown in Figure 2-6.

Follow these steps to convert a handwritten note to text:

**1. Select the handwritten note.**

To do that, go to the Draw tab, click the Lasso Select button, and drag slantwise across the note.

**2. On the Draw tab, click the Ink to Text button.**

Your handwritten note, with a little luck and depending on the quality of your handwriting, is converted to text.



A handwritten note in black ink that reads "Welcome".

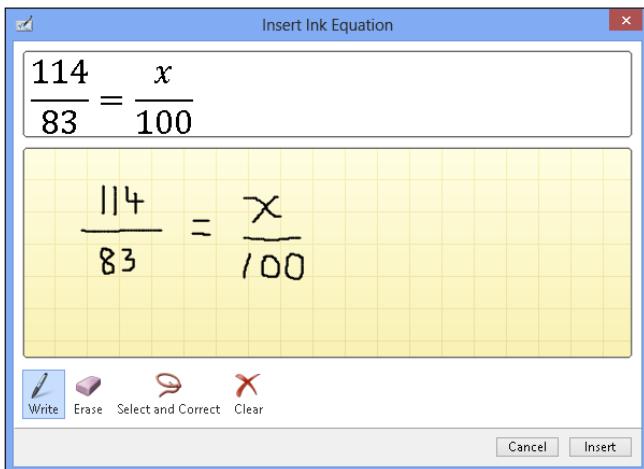


**Figure 2-6:**  
A handwritten note converted to text.

## Writing a Math Expression in a Note

The Insert tab offers the Equation Editor (click the Equation button) for writing mathematical equations, and you're welcome to give it a spin, but much more useful than the Equation Editor is another tool called the Ink Equation Editor. As shown in Figure 2-7, you can use it to construct mathematical expressions for notes.

**Figure 2-7:**  
Writing  
a math  
expression  
in the Ink  
Equation  
Editor.



To open the Ink Equation Editor, go to the Draw tab and click the Ink to Math button. The Ink Equation Editor opens. Keep your eye on the Preview area while you follow these instructions to construct your equation:

- ◆ **Writing:** Click the Write button and drag the mouse to write your expression.
- ◆ **Erasing numbers and symbols:** Click the Erase button and drag to erase a number or symbol.
- ◆ **Correcting errors:** If the Ink Equation Editor enters the wrong number or symbol, click the Select and Correct button and then click on the part of the expression that is incorrect. A drop-down menu appears. If the correct number or symbol is on the menu, select it.
- ◆ **Erasing the expression:** Click the Clear button to wipe the slate clean and start anew.

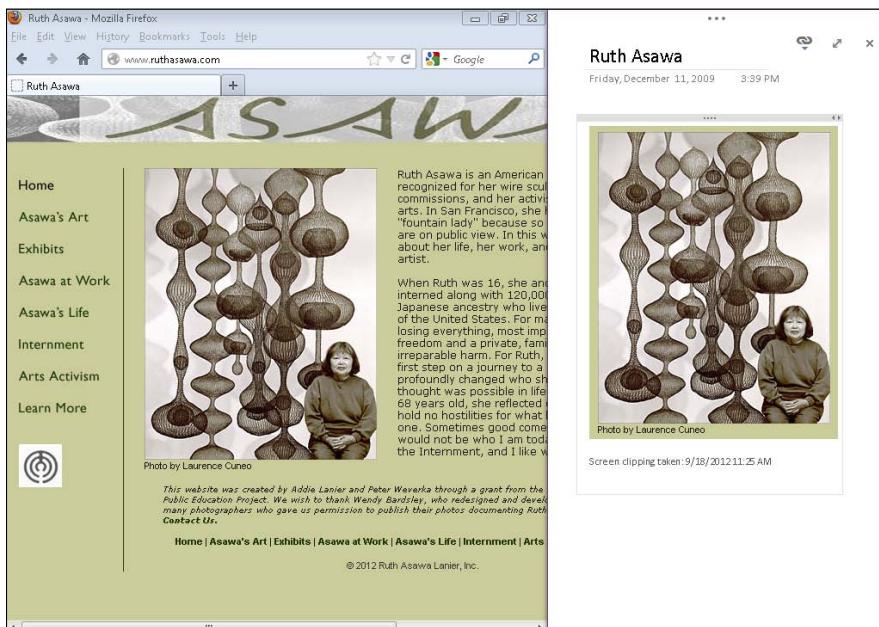
Click the Insert button to turn the equation into a note.

## Taking a Screen-Clipping Note

In OneNote lingo, a *screen clipping* is a note with a screen shot inside it, as shown in Figure 2-8. OneNote makes it remarkably easy to take screen clippings. Take them when you want to preserve part of a screen in a note. Follow these steps to make a screen-clipping note:

- 1. Go to the web page, Word document, or other item that you need a picture of.**
  - 2. Switch to OneNote.**
  - 3. On the Insert tab, click the Screen Clipping button.**
- 
- You return to the program you were in previously. You can also open the Send to OneNote window (click its icon on the Windows task bar) and choose Screen Clipping.
- 4. Drag the pointer to capture the portion of the screen you want for the clipping.**

When you finish dragging, you return to OneNote, and the screen clipping you took appears in a note.



**Figure 2-8:**  
A screen  
clipping  
taken from a  
web page.



You can also take a screen clipping when OneNote isn't running. To do so, start in the Notification tray (located in the lower-right corner of the screen), click the Send to OneNote Tool icon, and choose Screen Clipping in the pop-up window (or press Windows key+S). Then drag the pointer on your screen to capture the part of the screen you want for the clipping. The Select Location in OneNote dialog box appears. Do one of the following:

- ◆ **Select a section in the dialog box and click the Send to Selected Location button.** OneNote creates a new page in the section you chose for the clipping and places the clipping on the page.
- ◆ **Click the Copy to Clipboard button.** Back in OneNote, right-click a page and choose Paste to paste the clipping into OneNote.

## Recording and Playing Audio Notes

If you start to get sleepy in class or a meeting and you can no longer type detailed notes, consider taking an *audio note*. An audio note is a recording stored in a note container. You can take these notes as long as your computer is equipped to record sound. What OneNote calls an *audio note* is really a .wma (Windows media audio) file stored in a note container.

After you record an audio note, you can click the note's Playback button or click the Play button on the (Audio & Video) Playback tab to play the recording you made, as shown in Figure 2-9.

**Play a note**

**Figure 2-9:**  
Play and record audio notes on the (Audio & Video) Playback tab.



Notes you type while recording an audio note are attached to the audio note. You can click the playback links in these typewritten notes to revisit parts of a recording. For example, to play back a part of your professor's biology lecture, you can go to the note you wrote while your professor spoke, click the playback link inside the note, and hear the part of the lecture that interests you. In this way, you can use audio and typewritten notes to go to and hear specific parts of a lecture or meeting.

## ***Recording an audio note***

Make sure your microphone is ready to go because OneNote begins recording audio notes as soon as you click the Record Audio button. Open the page where you want to store the note and follow these steps to record an audio note:



**1. On the Insert tab or (Audio & Video) Playback tab, click the Record Audio button.**

As shown in Figure 2-9, you go immediately to the (Audio & Video) Playback tab (if you weren't there already), and OneNote begins recording.

**2. Direct your microphone to whatever you're recording — your own voice or someone else's.**

The clock at the top of the tab tells you how long the recording is. You can click the Pause button to suspend the recording; click Pause a second time to resume recording.

As you record, type notes to describe what you're hearing. You can use these typewritten notes as references when you play back the recording.

**3. Click the Stop button when you want to finish recording the audio note.**

Notes are named for the page where they are stored. The WMA icon on the note tells you that the note is a .wma (Windows media audio) file recording.

## ***Playing an audio note***

To play an audio note, select it and do one of the following:

- ◆ Click the Play icon on the note (refer to Figure 2-9).
- ◆ Right-click the note and choose Play on the shortcut menu that appears.
- ◆ Go to the (Audio & Video) Playback tab and click the Play button.

The Playback group on the (Audio & Video) Playback tab offers buttons for pausing, stopping, rewinding, and fast-forwarding an audio note as it plays (refer to Figure 2-9). Glance at the clock to see how long the note is and how many seconds and minutes have played so far.

While a note is playing, you can type other notes on the page. In other words, you can take notes on the audio recording and capture the information you missed during your catnap.



On a page with more than one audio note, click the See Playback button on the (Audio & Video) Playback tab to find out which note is currently playing. The note that is playing is highlighted and selected.

## Attaching, Copying, and Linking Files to Notes

OneNote endeavors to make it easier for you to take notes on files on your computer. You can attach a note to a file and be able to open the file quickly from inside OneNote, copy a file into a note, and link a Word or PowerPoint file to a OneNote section or page so that you can refer to notes you keep in OneNote while you're working in Word or PowerPoint. These tasks are described forthwith.

### Attaching an Office file to a note

Attach a Word, PowerPoint, or Excel file to a note so that you can quickly open the file from inside OneNote. When you attach a file, what you really do is create a shortcut from your note to the Office file. You can click the shortcut and open the attached file right away. Follow these steps to attach an Office file to a note:

1. Select the note.



2. On the Insert tab, click the File Attachment button.

You see the Choose a File or Set of Files to Insert dialog box.

3. Select the file or files.

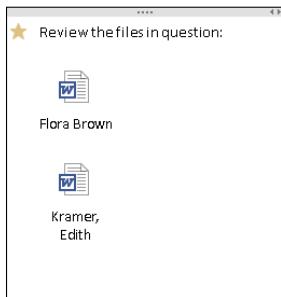
To select more than one file, Ctrl+click their names.

4. Click the Insert button.

The Insert File dialog box appears.

5. Choose Attach File.

As shown in Figure 2-10, filenames and icons appear on notes. The icons indicate what kind of file is attached to the note. To open one of these files, simply click its icon.



**Figure 2-10:**  
Files  
attached to  
a note.

### Jotting down a quick note

Suppose you're brainstorming and come up with an idea that cries out to be preserved in a note. To quickly jot down your note, write a "quick note" in the small but convenient Quick Note window. This window works in cahoots with OneNote to help you record ideas before you forget them. After you enter a note in the window, it's entered as well in OneNote in the Quick Notes folder. The next time you open OneNote, you can go to the Quick Notes folder, locate your note, and copy or move it to another folder.

Follow these steps to open the Quick Note window and enter a note:

**1. Open the Send to OneNote window:**

- ✓ Click the Send to OneNote button on the Windows taskbar.
- ✓ Press Windows key+N.

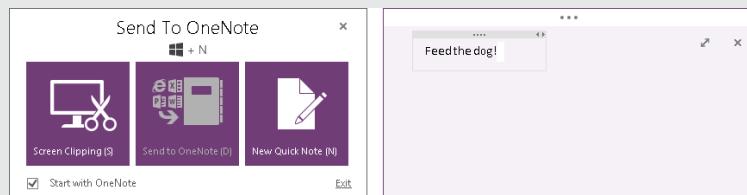
✓ Click the Send to OneNote Tool icon in the Notification area.

**2. Choose New Quick Note.**

**3. Enter your note and click the Close button in the Quick Note window.**

To find your note the next time you open OneNote, click the Quick Notes button. You can find this button at the bottom of the Notebook pane. Your note is filed away on a page named after the note you entered. From here, you can move your note to a different section.

If the OneNote icon isn't in the Notification area and you want it there, go to the File tab in OneNote and choose Options. In the Options dialog box, go to the Display category and select the Place OneNote Icon in the Notification Area of the Taskbar check box.



## Copying an Office file into OneNote

Follow these steps to copy a file from Word, PowerPoint, or Excel onto a OneNote page:



**1. On the Insert tab, click the File Printout button.**

The Choose Document to Insert dialog box opens.

**2. Select a file and click the Insert button.**



Starting in Word, Excel, or PowerPoint, you can copy a file to OneNote by going to the File tab and choosing Print. In the Print window, open the Printer drop-down list, choose Send to OneNote 2013, and click the Print button. Then switch to OneNote, and in the Select Location in OneNote dialog box, choose a section or page and click OK. If you select a section, OneNote creates a new page in the section for the material from Word, Excel, or PowerPoint; if you select a page, the material lands on the page you selected.

## Linking a Word or PowerPoint file to OneNote

By linking a Word or PowerPoint file to a OneNote section or page, you can open OneNote from inside Word or PowerPoint and refer right away to notes you took. Link a file to OneNote so that you can refer to notes you keep in OneNote while you're working on a Word or PowerPoint file.

Follow these steps to link a Word or PowerPoint file to a section or page in OneNote:

**1. Open the Word or PowerPoint file you want to link to notes you keep in OneNote.**

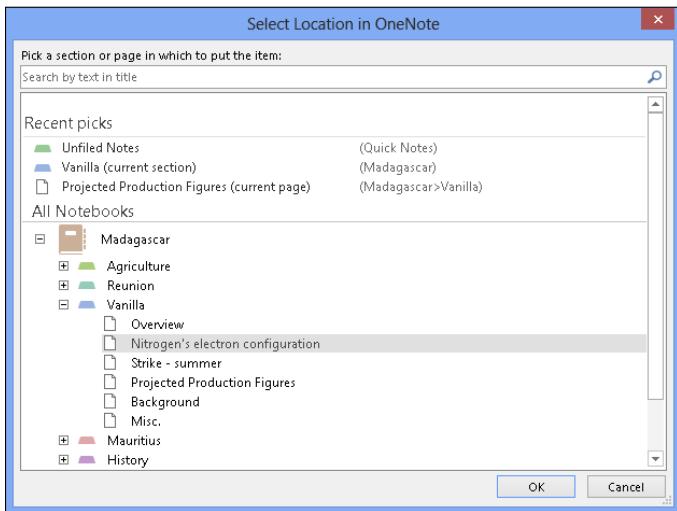
**2. On the Review tab, click the Linked Notes button.**

OneNote opens (if it wasn't already open) in Dock to Desktop view, and you see the Select Location in OneNote dialog box, as shown in Figure 2-11.

**3. In the dialog box, select the section or page with the notes that refer to your Word or PowerPoint file, and click OK.**

The Linked Note icon appears in OneNote. This icon tells you that the section or page is linked to a Word or PowerPoint file.

**Figure 2-11:**  
Choosing  
the section  
or page to  
link to.



To refer to the OneNote notes while you're working on your Word or PowerPoint file, go to the Review tab and click the Linked Notes button. OneNote opens in Dock to Desktop view. In this view, Word or PowerPoint appears on the left side of your screen, and OneNote appears on the right side. This arrangement makes it easy to work from your notes. (Chapter 1 explains docking to the desktop.)

### ***Copying a note into another Office program***

To copy a note into another program, use the copy-and-paste command. Select the note, right-click, and choose Copy. Then go to the other program, right-click, and choose Paste. Typed notes land in the other program in the form of text. Drawings land as Portable Network Graphics (.png) files.

# **Chapter 3: Finding and Organizing Your Notes**

---

## **In This Chapter**

- ✓ **Finding lost notes**
- ✓ **Tagging notes so that you can organize them better**
- ✓ **Using colors to identify notebooks, sections, and pages**
- ✓ **Moving and copying sections, pages, and notes**

If you're an habitual note taker, you may find yourself drowning in notes. You won't be able to find the note you're looking for. The great idea you had may be lost forever. How do you find the notes you want to review? More important, how can you organize your notes to make finding and recognizing them easier?

This chapter looks at how to organize your notes so that you can find them in a hurry. It tells you how to search for notes, tag notes to make finding them easier, color-code notebooks and sections, and merge and move sections, pages, and notes. You also discover OneNote's Recycle Bin, where sections and pages go to die unless you revive them.

## **Finding a Stray Note**

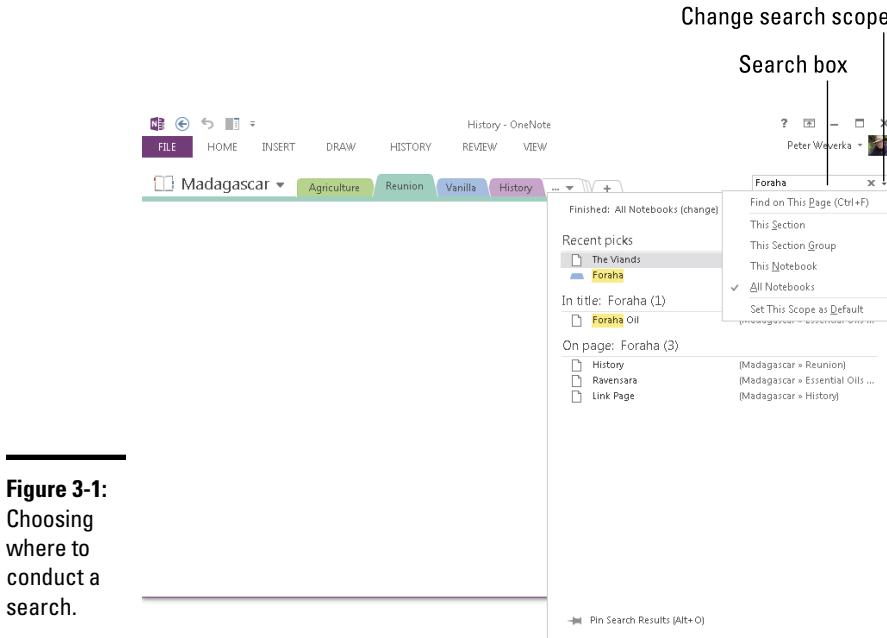
Notes have a tendency to stray. I'm not saying they move from page to page or section by section on their own in the dead of night, but it sometimes seems that way. To track down and find a stray note, you can search by word or phrase or search by author name. Better keep reading.

### **Searching by word or phrase**

As long as you can remember a word or two in a note, you can find it. Follow these steps to chase down a lost note:

- 1. Click in the Search box (or press Ctrl+E).**

The Search box is located to the right of the Section tabs, above the Page pane, as shown in Figure 3-1. As soon as you click in the Search box, the Search Results pane opens. Terms you searched for since you started OneNote appear on the Search Results pane under "Recent Picks." You can click one of these terms to rerun a search.



**Figure 3-1:**  
Choosing  
where to  
conduct a  
search.

## 2. Enter a word or phrase in the Search box.

Pages with the word or phrase you entered appear in the Search Results pane (refer to Figure 3-1).

## 3. Click a page title or page to open a page with your search term.

The Search Results pane remains open so that you can click a different page and open it.

To close the Search Results pane, click a page or click the Close button (the X in the Search box).

To narrow your search, click the Change Search Scope button (it's on the right side of the Search box) and choose This Section, This Notebook, or another option on the drop-down list (refer to Figure 3-1).

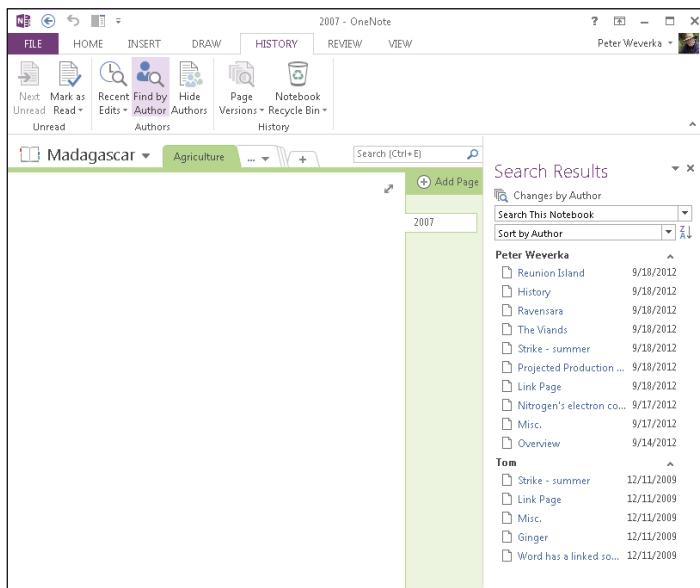
## Searching by author

Another way to search is by author name. If you share your OneNote files with others, you can search for notes written by different authors by following these steps:



### 1. On the History tab, click the Find by Author button.

The Search Results pane opens. It lists notes by author name, as shown in Figure 3-2. If you see the note you're looking for, click it now.



**Figure 3-2:**  
Searching  
for notes by  
author.

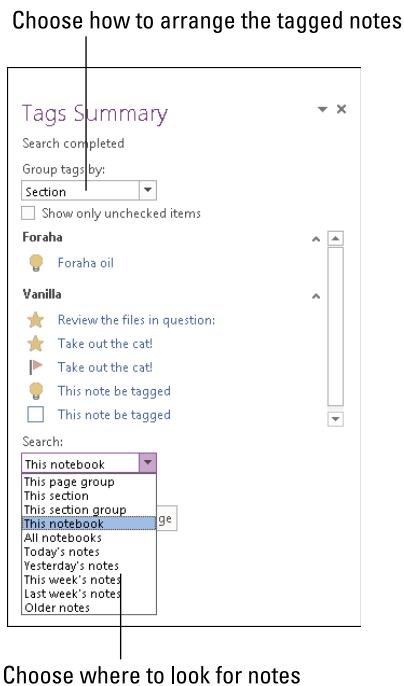
2. Open the first drop-down list and declare where to search.
  3. Open the Sort drop-down list and choose an option to sort by author name or the date notes were last modified; you can click the Sort Descending or Sort Descending button to choose how you want to sort notes.
  4. Click a note in the Search Results pane.
- OneNote opens the page with the note you clicked so that you can read the note.
5. Click the Close button (the X) in the Search Results pane to close the pane.

## Tagging Notes for Follow Up

The best way to keep notes from getting lost is to carefully place them in notebooks, sections, and pages. Short of that, you can tag notes to make it easier to follow up on them. OneNote offers numerous ways to tag notes. After you tag a note, you can search for it by opening the Tags Summary task pane, arranging notes according to how they were tagged, and pinpointing the note you want, as shown in Figure 3-3.

## 434 Tagging Notes for Follow Up

**Figure 3-3:**  
Tag notes  
so that you  
can track  
them better.



Choose where to look for notes

### Tagging a note

You can tag the same note with more than one tag. Follow these steps to tag a note:

1. Select the note.
2. On the Home tab, open the Tags gallery and choose a tag (or click the To Do Tag button).

All options except Remember for Later and Definition place an icon on the note. The aforementioned options highlight the note text, respectively, in yellow or green. Later in this chapter, “Creating and modifying tags” shows you how to add a tag of your own to the Tags gallery.



To remove tags from notes, select the notes and press Ctrl+0 (zero), or open the drop-down list on the Tags gallery and choose Remove Tag.

## Arranging tagged notes in the task pane

Follow these steps to arrange notes that you tagged in the Tags Summary task pane:



- On the Home tab, click the Find Tags button.**

You see the Tags Summary task pane (refer to Figure 3-3).

- Open the Group Tags By drop-down list and choose an option.**

These options determine the order in which tagged notes appear in the task pane. Tag Name, for example, arranges notes according to which icon they're tagged with; Section arranges notes under section names; Note Text arranges notes in alphabetical order.

- Open the Search drop-down list and choose an option.**

These options determine which notes appear in the task pane. This Section, for example, assembles only flagged notes from the section that appears on-screen; This Notebook gathers flagged notes from all sections in the notebook you're viewing.

A list of notes appears in the task pane.

- Click the name of a note you want to visit.**

OneNote opens the page with the note whose name you clicked and selects the note.

## Creating and modifying tags

If the tags in the Tags gallery don't do the trick, you can create a tag of your own. Do so either by modifying a tag that is already there or creating a new tag from scratch. Follow these steps to create a tag:

- On the Home tab, open the Tags gallery and choose Customize Tags.**

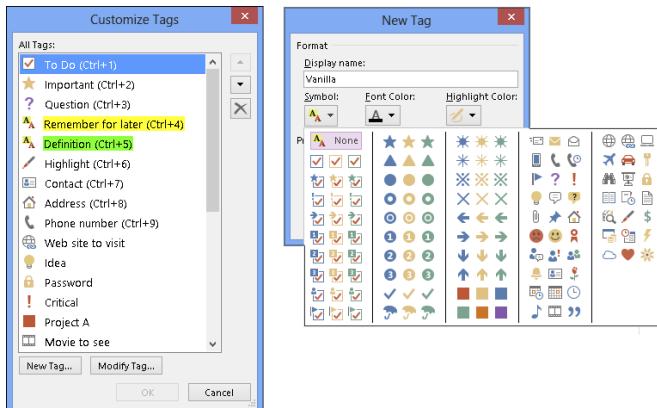
You see the Customize Tags dialog box, shown in Figure 3-4.

- Choose to modify a tag or create a new tag.**

You've come to a fork in the road:

- *Creating a new tag:* Click the New Tag button. The New Tag dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 3-4.
- *Modifying a tag:* Select a tag you don't need in the dialog box and then click the Modify Tag button. The Modify Tag dialog box appears (it looks and works just like the New Tag dialog box shown in Figure 3-4).

## 436 Tagging Notes for Follow Up



**Figure 3-4:**  
Giving a  
name and  
icon to a  
tag.

3. Enter a name for your tag in the Display Name text box.
4. Choose a symbol for the tag.
5. If you want, choose a font and highlight color.
6. Click OK.

To remove a tag you created, select it in the Customize Tags dialog box and click the Remove button. To change the order of tags in the Tags gallery, open the Customize Tags dialog box, select a tag, and click the Move Tag Up or Move Tag Down button until the tag is where you want it to be.

### Visiting the Recycle Bin

OneNote maintains a Recycle Bin of its own. If you mistakenly delete a section or page, you can recover it by going to the History tab and clicking the Notebook Recycle Bin button. Sections and pages you deleted appear (deleted pages appear on the Deleted Pages tab).

Follow these steps to restore a section or page:

1. On the History tab, click the Notebook Recycle Bin button.

2. Right-click the section or page you want to restore and choose Move or Copy.  
You see the Move or Copy dialog box.
3. Select the notebook or section where you want to restore the deleted item.
4. Click the Move button.

## Color-Coding Notebooks, Sections, and Pages

If color-coding notebooks, sections, and pages helps you understand what is in your notebooks, sections, and pages, by all means start color-coding. Devise a color scheme for assigning colors to different topics and then follow these instructions to color-code your notebooks, sections, and pages:

- ◆ **Notebook:** Right-click the notebook's name in the Notebook pane and choose Properties. The Notebook Properties dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 3-5. Choose a color on the Color drop-down list and click OK.
- ◆ **Section:** Right-click a section's name in the Notebook pane or a section tab and choose Section Color on the drop-down list. Then, on the submenu, choose a color.
- ◆ **Page:** On the View tab, click the Page Color button and choose a color on the drop-down list.



**Figure 3-5:**  
Color-coding a notebook.



## Merging and Moving Sections, Pages, and Notes

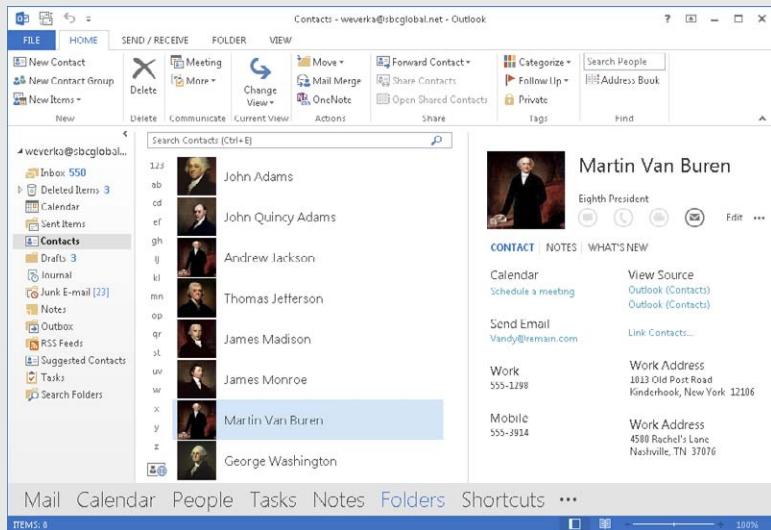
I hope that as you take notes, you find opportunities to combine sections and pages. Combining sections and pages means you're synthesizing your ideas. What used to be a sprawling mass of assorted notes is turning into a handful of rock-solid concepts. Here are instructions for merging sections, moving pages to other sections, and moving notes to different pages:

- ◆ **Merging one section into another:** On the Notebook pane or on a section tab, right-click the name of the section you want to merge with another section. On the shortcut menu, choose Merge into Another Section. You see the Merge Section dialog box. Choose a section and click the Merge button.

- ◆ **Moving a page to another section:** Right-click the page's tab and choose Move or Copy (or press Ctrl+Alt+M). You see the Move or Copy Pages dialog box. Select a section name and click the Move or Copy button.
- ◆ **Moving notes to another page:** Use the tried-and-true cut-and-paste method. Select the note, right-click, choose Cut, right-click the page where you want to move the note, and choose Paste.

# Book VI

# Outlook 2013



Check out more Outlook features online at [www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio](http://www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio)

# *Contents at a Glance*

<b>Chapter 1: Outlook Basics .....</b>	<b>441</b>
What Is Outlook, Anyway?.....	441
Navigating the Outlook Folders .....	442
Categorizing Items.....	443
Searching for Stray Folder Items .....	445
Deleting E-Mail Messages, Contacts, Tasks, and Other Items .....	448
Finding and Backing Up Your Outlook File .....	449
Cleaning Out Your Folders .....	450
<b>Chapter 2: Maintaining the Contacts Folder .....</b>	<b>455</b>
Maintaining a Happy and Healthy Contacts Folder.....	455
Contact Groups for Sending Messages to Groups.....	459
Finding a Contact in the Contacts Folder .....	461
Printing the Contacts Folder .....	462
<b>Chapter 3: Handling Your E-Mail.....</b>	<b>465</b>
Setting Up an E-Mail Account.....	465
Addressing and Sending E-Mail Messages.....	466
Sending Files and Photos.....	471
Being Advised When Someone Has Read Your E-Mail.....	473
Receiving E-Mail Messages .....	474
Reading Your E-Mail in the Inbox Window.....	475
Handling Files That Were Sent to You .....	478
Techniques for Organizing E-Mail Messages .....	479
All about E-Mail Folders.....	484
Yes, You Can Prevent Junk Mail (Sort of) .....	485
<b>Chapter 4: Managing Your Time and Schedule .....</b>	<b>489</b>
Introducing the Calendar.....	489
The Different Kinds of Activities.....	490
Seeing Your Schedule.....	491
Scheduling Appointments and Events .....	492
Canceling, Rescheduling, and Altering Activities.....	495
<b>Chapter 5: Tasks, Reminders, and Notes .....</b>	<b>497</b>
Tasks: Seeing What Needs to Get Done .....	497
Reminders for Being Alerted to Activities and Tasks .....	500
Making Notes to Yourself .....	502

# *Chapter 1: Outlook Basics*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Getting around in Outlook
- ✓ Categorizing items so that you can locate them easily
- ✓ Searching in folders
- ✓ Deleting items
- ✓ Backing up your Outlook file
- ✓ Archiving old-and-in-the-way items

This chapter pulls back the curtain and gives you a first glimpse of *Outlook*, the e-mailer, calendar, and personal organizer in the Office 2013 suite of applications. Read on to find out once and for all what Outlook does, how to get from folder to folder, and the different ways to view the stuff in folders. You can find advice about keeping folders well organized, deleting stuff, backing up an Outlook file, and cleaning out items in folders that you no longer need.

## *What Is Outlook, Anyway?*

Outlook isn't in character with the rest of the Office programs. It's a little different in that what you see on-screen changes when you click a Navigation button on the bottom of the window. Click a Navigation button — Mail, Calendar, People, Tasks, Notes, Folders, or Shortcuts — and you go to a different Outlook window altogether.

Outlook serves many different purposes. To wit, Outlook is all this:

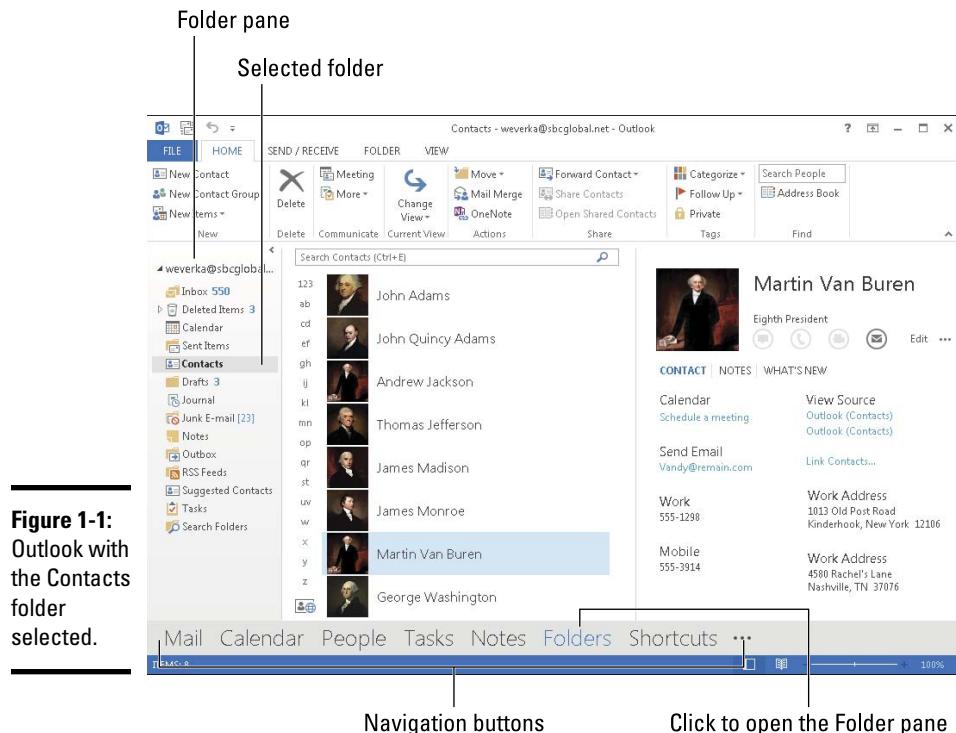
- ◆ **An e-mail program:** You can use it to send and receive e-mail messages and files, as well as organize e-mail messages in different folders so that you can keep track of them. (See Chapter 3 of this mini-book.)
- ◆ **An appointment scheduler:** Outlook is a calendar for scheduling appointments and meetings. You can tell at a glance when and where you're expected, be alerted to upcoming appointments and meetings, and invite coworkers to meetings. (See Chapter 4 of this mini-book.)
- ◆ **An address book:** The application can store the addresses, phone numbers, and e-mail addresses of friends, foes, clients, and family members. Looking up this information in the Contacts folder is easy. (See Chapter 2 of this mini-book.)

- ◆ **A task reminder:** Outlook is a means of planning projects. You can tell when deadlines fall and plan your workload accordingly. (See Chapter 5 of this mini-book.)
- ◆ **A notes receptacle:** This part of the program is a place to jot down notes and reminders. (See Chapter 5 of this mini-book.)

## Navigating the Outlook Folders

The first thing you should know about Outlook is this: All items are kept in folders, as shown in Figure 1-1. E-mail messages are kept in the Mail folder. Calendar items are kept in the Calendar folder. When you want to undertake a new task, you go to a different folder:

- ◆ **Navigation button:** Click a Navigation button — Mail, Calendar, People, Tasks, Notes, or Folders — to go to a folder. The Navigation buttons appear along the bottom of the window (see Figure 1-1).
- ◆ **Folder pane:** Click the Folders button (or press Ctrl+6) and select a folder in the Folder pane (see Figure 1-1. For example, to read incoming e-mail messages, select the Inbox folder.





You can open a folder in a new window. To do so, right-click a Navigation button or folder name and choose Open in New Window.

## Categorizing Items

One of your biggest tasks in Outlook, if you choose to accept it, is to categorize items in folders so that you can find and deal with them. Finding items can be a chore in a folder with a lot of items, but by categorizing items, you can find the ones you're looking for. Categories are color-coded to make identifying them easier. After you assign a category to an item, you can arrange items in folders by category, and in so doing, find items. Categorizing is a great way to stay on top of all the chores you have to do.

## Do you need Outlook?

Before you penetrate the mysteries of Outlook, ask yourself whether you need the application. If you don't receive volumes of e-mail, your calendar isn't crowded, and the office where you work doesn't require you to use Outlook, consider using an e-mail program that isn't as cumbersome as Outlook, or better yet, consider using a web-based e-mail program.

Outlook is good at organizing e-mail so that you can find and reply to messages quickly. It is good at handling volumes of e-mail. Outlook can help you manage schedules and coordinate meetings with co-workers. It can help you keep track of where you're supposed to be and when you're supposed to be there.

On the minus side, however, Outlook has many more features than most people need, and all these features clutter Outlook and make it hard to use. What's more, e-mail messages are kept

on your computer. Unless you carry around a laptop, you have to be at your home or office computer to collect your e-mail. With a web-based e-mail program, messages are stored on a server on the Internet, and all e-mail activity — composing, sending, and receiving messages — is accomplished through a Web browser. You can be in Timbuktu and still collect your e-mail if you can find a computer with an Internet connection. You don't have to be at home or at the office to read your e-mail.

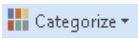
If web-based e-mailing appeals to you, ask your Internet service provider whether it offers a web-based e-mail service. Or check out Google Mail ([www.gmail.com](http://www.gmail.com)), which is free and easy to use. Google Mail offers a calendar and other amenities as well as e-mailing. If you want to keep it simple and you can manage to do that, steer clear of Outlook.

## Creating a category

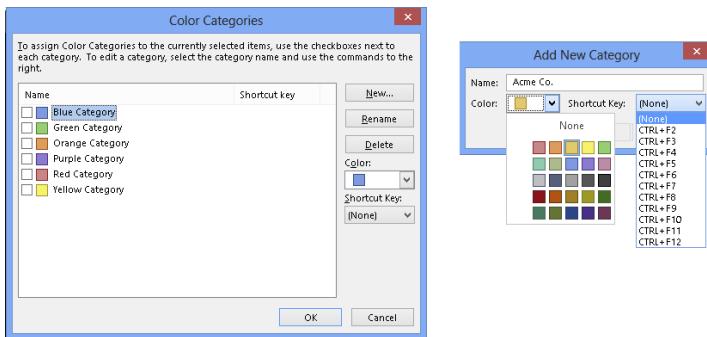
Follow these steps to create a category for organizing folder items:

1. Select an item in a folder to which you want to assign your new category.
2. On the Home tab, click the Categorize button and choose All Categories on the drop-down list.

You see the Color Categories dialog box, as shown in Figure 1-2. At this point, you can create a category from scratch or revamp one of Outlook's color-named categories:



**Figure 1-2:**  
Click the  
New button  
or Rename  
button to  
create  
a new  
category.

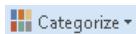


- *Creating your own category:* Click the New button to open the Add New Category dialog box, as shown in Figure 1-2. Then enter a name for your category and choose a color on the drop-down list. While you're at it, you can open the Shortcut Key drop-down list and choose a shortcut key combination for assigning your new category to items (see Figure 1-2). Click the OK button in the Color Categories dialog box.
- *Renameing a category:* In the Color Categories dialog box (see Figure 1-2), select a color category, and click the Rename button. Then enter a new name where in place of the old one. You can choose a different color for your category by choosing a color in the Color drop-down list. To assign it a shortcut key, open the Shortcut Key drop-down list and choose a shortcut key combination.

To delete a category, return to the Color Categories dialog box, select the category's name, and click the Delete button. Although the category is deceased, items to which you assigned the category keep their category assignments.

## Assigning items to categories

Follow these steps to assign a category to a folder item:



- 1. Select the item.**
- 2. On the Home tab, click the Categorize button and choose a category on the drop-down list.**

You can also right-click, choose Categorize, and select a category on the shortcut menu, or press a Ctrl+key combination if you assigned one to the category. An item can be assigned more than one category.

To remove a category assignment, select the item, click the Categorize button, and choose Clear All Categories.



Another way to quickly categorize an e-mail message is to click the Category column of the message in a mail folder window. To tell Outlook which category to assign when you click the Category column, click the Categorize button and choose Set Quick Click. You see the Set Quick Click dialog box. Choose the category on the drop-down list that you want to assign by "quick-clicking" in the Category column.

Book VI  
Chapter 1

Outlook Basics

## Arranging items by category in folders

To arrange items by category in a folder, select the folder in the Folder pane and use one of these techniques:

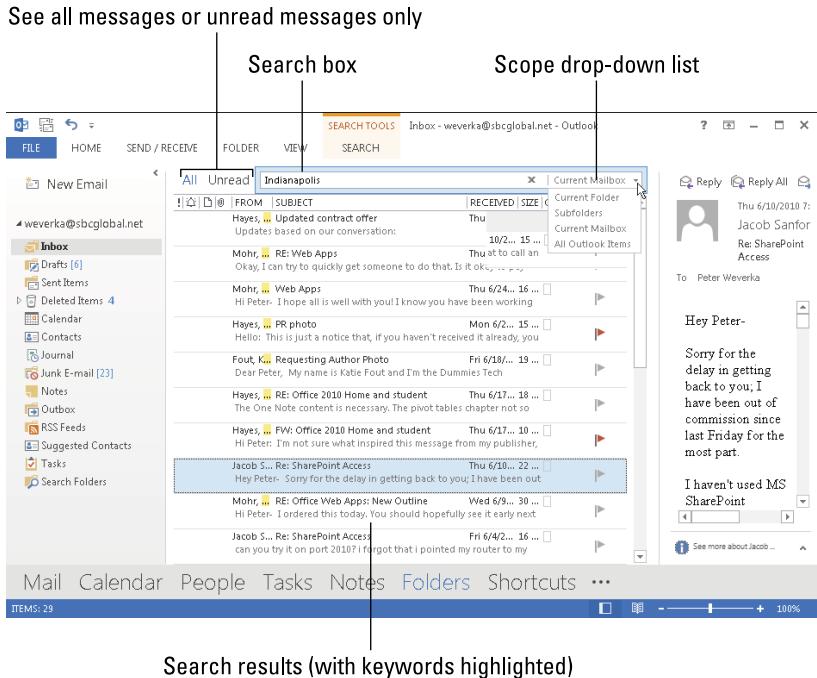
- ◆ On the View tab, choose Categories in the Arrangement gallery.
- ◆ In a list, click the Categories column heading to sort items by category.

You can also click the Categorized button on the (Search Tools) Search tab to organize the results of a search by category.

## Searching for Stray Folder Items

If you can't locate an item in a folder by scrolling, changing views, or any other means, run a search. To start a search, go to the folder you want to search and click in the Search box (or press Ctrl+E). You can find the Search box below the Ribbon. As soon as you click in the Search box, Outlook opens the (Search Tools) Search tab so that you can describe what you're seeking, as shown in Figure 1-3.

## 446 Searching for Stray Folder Items



**Figure 1-3:**  
Describe  
what you're  
searching  
for on the  
(Search  
Tools)  
Search tab.

As the following pages explain, you can conduct an instant search, narrow your search by choosing Refine options, or conduct an advanced search starting from the (Search Tools) Search tab. Search results appear in the window below the Search box. To close the search and go back to seeing the contents of your folder, click the Close Search button (the X on the right side of the Search box).

Here's a fast way to run a search: Click the Recent Searches button on the (Search Tools) Search tab and choose a search on the drop-down list to rerun one of the last six searches you conducted.

### Conducting an instant search

What Microsoft calls an “instant search” is a keyword search of the folder you’re viewing. If a keyword you enter in the Search box is found in an e-mail message, calendar appointment, contact, or other item, the item appears in the search results and the keyword is highlighted (refer to Figure 1-3). Search results begin appearing as soon as you start to type. You don’t have to press the Enter key to begin the search.



When searching an e-mail folder, you can click the All or Unread link next to the Search box to see all messages or only those you haven’t read yet.



To change how instant searches are conducted, click the Search Tools button and choose Search Options on the drop-down list. You go to the Search category in the Outlook Options dialog box. From there, you can choose which folders are searched and how search results are displayed when you conduct an instant search.

## ***Refining a search***

Refine a search when an instant search brings up too many or too few search results. Starting on the (Search Tools) Search tab, refine your search by changing its scope and choosing Refine options.

### ***Changing the scope of a search***

How wide the scope of a search is determines how many results are found in the search. Use these techniques to narrow or widen searches:

- ◆ Click a button in the Scope group on the (Search Tools) Search tab.
- ◆ Open the Scope drop-down list to the right of the Search box and choose an option (see Figure 1-3).

The options for changing the scope for searches are the following:

- ◆ **Current Mailbox (for e-mail searching only):** Expands a search for e-mail to include all folders that contain e-mail, including the Drafts and Sent Items folders. You can also press Ctrl+Alt+A.
- ◆ **All (Calendar, Contact, Task, or Note) Items:** Expands a search to the folder that you selected on the Folder pane as well as folders where calendar items, contacts, tasks, or notes are stored. This button changes names, depending on which folder you selected. You can also press Ctrl+Alt+A.
- ◆ **Current Folder:** Searches the folder you selected on the Folder pane. You can also press Ctrl+Alt+K.
- ◆ **Subfolders:** Expands the search to include the folder you selected on the Folder pane as well as its subfolders. You can also press Ctrl+Alt+Z.
- ◆ **All Outlook Items:** Expands the search to all Outlook folders. Move the pointer over the search results to see a pop-up box that lists which folder an item is stored in.

### ***Choosing Refine options***

To narrow a search, click buttons in the Refine group on the (Search Tools) Search tab. After you click a button, Outlook provides a place in the Search box for you to enter a keyword. Which buttons appear in the Refine group depends on which folder you search.

In a folder that contains e-mail, for example, you can click the From button and enter a sender name in the Search box to search for e-mails you received from a particular person. You can click the Subject button and enter a keyword to search the subject descriptions in e-mail you received.

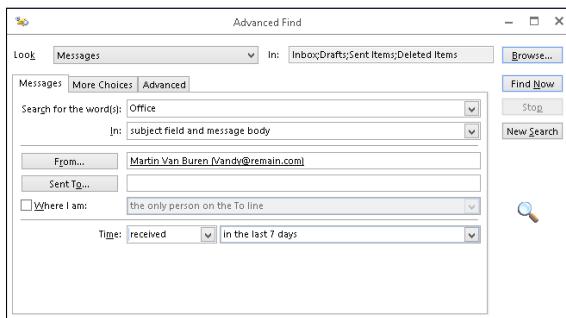
### Conducting an advanced search



If, woe is me, you can't find what you're looking for with an instant search or a refined search, you can try your luck with an advanced search.

On the (Search Tools) Search tab, click the Search Tools button and choose Advanced Find on the drop-down list. You see the Advanced Find dialog box, as shown in Figure 1-4. In the Look drop-down list, choose what you want to search for. Click the Browse button to open the Select Folder(s) dialog box, where you can select more than one folder to search in. Then choose options in the three tabs to formulate your search. Which options are available depends on which folder you're searching.

**Figure 1-4:**  
Pinpoint  
what you're  
searching  
for in the  
Advanced  
Find dialog  
box.



## Deleting E-Mail Messages, Contacts, Tasks, and Other Items

Outlook folders are notorious for filling quickly. E-mail messages, contacts, and tasks soon clog the folders if you spend any time in Outlook. From time to time, go through the e-mail folders, Contacts window, Task window, and Calendar to delete items you no longer need. To delete items, select them and do one of the following:



- ◆ Click the Delete button.
- ◆ Press the Delete key.
- ◆ Right-click and choose Delete.



Deleted items — e-mail messages, calendar appointments, contacts, and tasks — land in the Deleted Items folder in case you want to recover them. To delete items once and for all, open the Deleted Items folder and start deleting like a madman.

To empty the Delete Items folder altogether, right-click the folder and choose Empty Folder. You can also visit the File tab, choose Info, click the Cleanup Tools button, and choose Empty Deleted Items Folder on the drop-down list.

Be sure to check out “Running the Mailbox Cleanup command” at the end of this chapter. It explains a quick way to delete unwanted Inbox messages.

## Finding and Backing Up Your Outlook File

All the data you keep in Outlook — e-mail messages, names and addresses, calendar appointments and meetings — is kept in a .pst (Personal Storage Table) file on your computer. Locating this file on your computer sometimes requires the services of Sherlock Holmes. The file isn't kept in a standard location. It can be any number of places, depending on the operating system on your computer and whether you upgraded from an earlier version of Office.

The all-important .pst file is hiding deep in your computer, but you need to find it. You need to know where this file is located so that you can back it up to a CD, flash drive, or other backup medium. It holds clients' names and the names of relatives and loved ones. It holds the e-mail messages you think are worth keeping. It would be a shame to lose this stuff if your computer failed.

Here's a quick way to find the .pst file on your computer and back it up:

### FILE

**1. On the File tab, choose Info.**

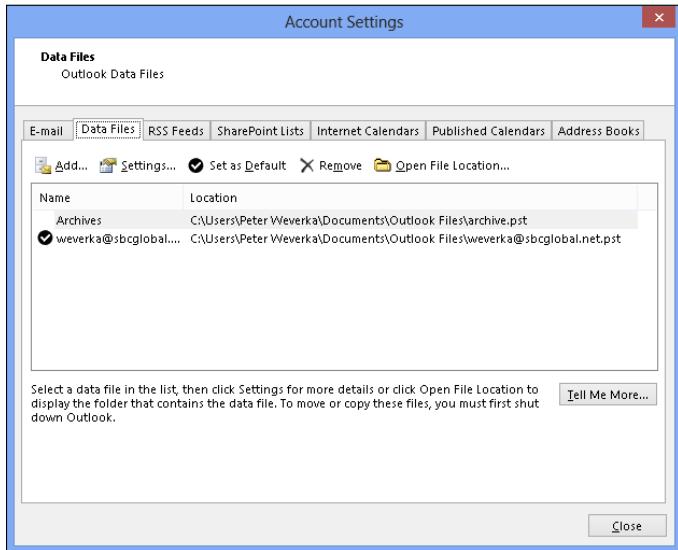
The Account Information window opens.

**2. Click the Account Settings button and choose Account Settings on the drop-down list.**

You see the Account Settings dialog box.

**3. Go to the Data Files tab.**

This tab is shown in Figure 1-5. It lists the location of your .pst file (or files).



**Figure 1-5:**  
Click the  
Open File  
Location  
button to  
find out  
where your  
Outlook file  
is located.

#### 4. Select your .pst file and click the Open File Location button.

Windows Explorer opens, and you see the folder where your .pst file is kept.

#### 5. Close Outlook.

Sorry, but you can't back up a .pst file if Outlook is running.

#### 6. To back up the file, right-click it in File Finder or Windows Explorer, choose Send To on the shortcut menu, and choose the option on the submenu that represents where you back up files.

If an accident befalls your computer, copy the backup .pst file that you made into the folder where the .pst file is stored on your computer.

## Cleaning Out Your Folders

Getting rid of unneeded items in folders is essential for good mental health. All that clutter can be distressing. Earlier in this chapter, “Deleting E-Mail Messages, Contacts, Tasks, and Other Items,” explains how to muck out folders by emptying them. These pages explain two more techniques for removing detritus from folders — archiving and the Mailbox Cleanup command.

### Archiving the old stuff

In some cases, Outlook puts e-mail messages, tasks, and appointments older than six months in the *Archive folder*, a special folder for items that Outlook

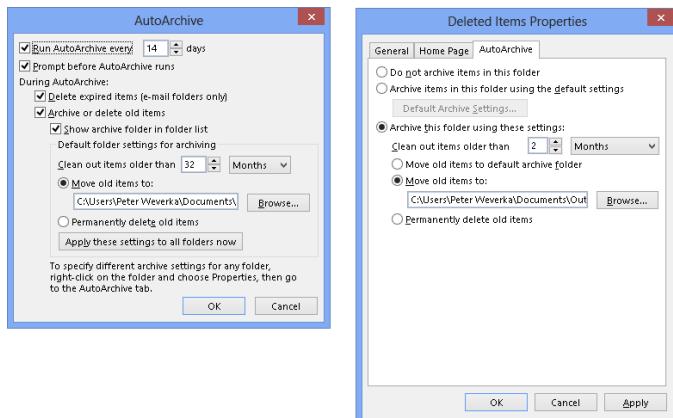
thinks are stale and not worth keeping anymore. Outlook calls sending these items to the Archive folder "autoarchiving." Items that have been archived aren't lost forever. You can visit them by opening the Archive Folders folder and its subfolders on the Folder pane. These folders and subfolders are created automatically the first time you archive items.

*Archiving* is a way of stripping your mail folders, tasks lists, and calendar of items that don't matter anymore. How and when items are archived is up to you. To archive items, you can archive them on your own, establish a default set of archiving rules that apply to all folders, or, if a folder needs individual attention and shouldn't be subject to the default archiving rules, establish special rules for that folder. Each folder can have its own set of archiving rules or be subject to the default rules.

To tell Outlook how to archive old stuff:



- ◆ **Establishing default archiving rules:** On the File tab, choose Options to open the Outlook Options dialog box. Then, on the Advanced tab, click the AutoArchive Settings button. You see the AutoArchive dialog box shown in Figure 1-6. See "Default archiving rules."
- ◆ **Establishing rules for a specific folder:** Select the folder, go to the Folder tab, and click the AutoArchive Settings button. You see the AutoArchive tab of the Properties dialog box, as shown in Figure 1-6. See "Archiving rules for a folder."
- ◆ **Archiving a folder on your own:** On the File tab, choose Info, and in the Account Information window, click the Cleanup Tools button and choose Archive on the drop-down list. You see the Archive dialog box. Select the folder with the items you want to archive and click OK.



**Figure 1-6:**  
Making the default archiving rules (left) and rules for a folder (right).

### ***Default archiving rules***

Negotiate these options in the AutoArchive dialog box to establish default archiving rules (see Figure 1-6):

- ◆ **Run AutoArchive Every:** Enter a number to tell Outlook how often to archive items.
- ◆ **Prompt Before Archive Runs:** If this check box is selected, you see a message box before archiving begins, and you can decline to archive if you want by selecting No in the message box.
- ◆ **Delete Expired Items (E-Mail Folders Only):** Select this check box to delete all e-mail messages when the time period has expired.
- ◆ **Archive or Delete Old Items:** Deselect this option if you *don't* want to archive items.
- ◆ **Show Archive Folder in Folder List:** Select this option if you want to keep the archived version of the folder in the Folder pane. Archived items are kept in this folder so you can review them.
- ◆ **Clean Out Items Older Than:** Choose a cut-off time period after which to archive items.
- ◆ **Move Old Items To:** Click the Browse button and select a folder if you want to store the Archive file in a certain location.
- ◆ **Permanently Delete Old Items:** Select this option if you want to delete, not archive, old items.

### ***Archiving rules for a folder***

Choose among these options in the Properties dialog box to establish archiving rules for a specific folder (refer to Figure 1-6):

- ◆ **Do Not Archive Items in This Folder:** Select this option if items in the folder aren't worth archiving.
- ◆ **Archive Items in This Folder Using the Default Settings:** Select this option to defer to the default archiving rules for the folder.
- ◆ **Archive This Folder Using These Settings:** Select this option to establish archiving rules for the folder.
- ◆ **Clean Out Items Older Than:** Choose a cut-off time period after which to archive the items in the folder.
- ◆ **Move Old Items to the Default Archive Folder:** Select this option to move items to the folder you selected as the default.

- ◆ **Move Old Items To:** Click the Browse button and select a folder if you want to store the archived items in a specific location.
- ◆ **Permanently Delete Old Items:** Select this option if you want to delete, not archive, items in this folder.

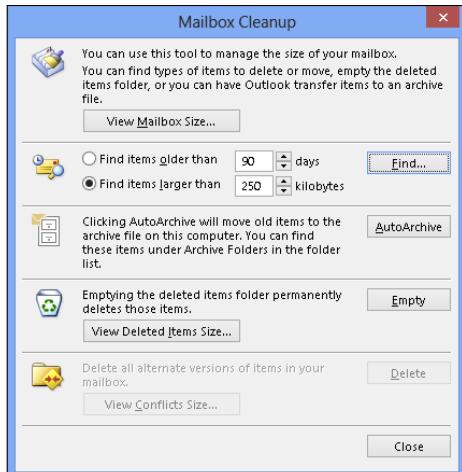


Besides archiving, another way to remove bric-a-brac automatically is to take advantage of the Rules Wizard to delete certain kinds of e-mail messages when they arrive. See Chapter 3 of this mini-book for more information.

## *Running the Mailbox Cleanup command*

The Mailbox Cleanup command is an all-purpose command for finding e-mail messages, archiving items, deleting items, and deleting alternate versions of items. To use the command, go to the File tab, choose Info, click the Cleanup Tools button, and choose Mailbox Cleanup. You see the Mailbox Cleanup dialog box shown in Figure 1-7. The dialog box offers a speedy entrée into these different Outlook tasks:

- ◆ **Seeing how much disk space folders occupy:** Click the View Mailbox Size button and then take note of folder sizes in the Folder Size dialog box.
- ◆ **Finding items:** Select an option button to find items older than a certain number of days or larger than a certain number of kilobytes, enter a days or kilobytes number, and click the Find button. You land in the Advanced Find dialog box. Earlier in this chapter, “Conducting an advanced search” explains this dialog box. Use it to select items and delete them.



**Figure 1-7:**  
Mucking  
out the mail  
boxes.

- ◆ **Archiving items:** Click the AutoArchive button to archive items in your folders. See “Archiving the old stuff” in this chapter for details.
- ◆ **Emptying the deleted items folder:** Click the Empty button to empty the Deleted Items folder. See “Deleting E-Mail Messages, Contacts, Tasks, and Other Items,” earlier in this chapter.
- ◆ **Delete alternate versions of items:** Click Delete if you conduct e-mailing through a Exchange Server account and you want to delete alternative versions of items that were created during synchronization.

# ***Chapter 2: Maintaining the Contacts Folder***

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ✓ Recording information about a new contact
- ✓ Creating a contact group
- ✓ Locating a contact in the Contacts folder
- ✓ Printing contact information in the Contacts folder

**J**n pathology (the study of diseases and how they're transmitted) a *contact* is a person who passes on a communicable disease, but in Outlook, a *contact* is someone about whom you keep information. Information about contacts is kept in the Contacts folder. This folder is a super-powered address book. It has places for storing people's names, addresses, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, Web pages, pager numbers, birthdays, anniversaries, nicknames, and other stuff besides. When you address an e-mail address, you can get it straight from the Contacts folder to be sure that the address is entered correctly.

This short but happy chapter explains how to maintain a tried-and-true Contacts folder, enter information about people in the folder, create contact groups to make sending the same message to many people easier, find a missing contact, and print the information in the Contacts folder.

To open the Contacts folder, click the People navigation button or click the Contacts folder in the Folder pane.

## ***Maintaining a Happy and Healthy Contacts Folder***

A Contacts folder is only as good and as thorough as the information about contacts that you put into it. These pages explain how to enter information about a contact and update the information if it happens to change.

## Entering a new contact in the Contacts folder

To place someone in the Contacts List, open the Contacts folder and start by doing one of the following:



- ◆ On the Home tab, click the New Contact button (or click the New Items button and choose Contact on the drop-down list).
- ◆ Press Ctrl+N (in the Contacts window) or Ctrl+Shift+C (in another window).
- ◆ In a message, right-click the sender's name in the From: line, and choose Add to Outlook Contacts on the shortcut menu.

You see the Contact form, as shown in Figure 2-1. In this form are places for entering just about everything there is to know about a person except his or her favorite ice cream flavor. Enter all the information you care to record, keeping in mind these rules of the road as you go along:

**Figure 2-1:**  
A Contact form.



- ◆ **Full names, addresses, and so on:** Although you may be tempted to simply enter addresses, phone numbers, names, and so on in the text boxes, don't do it! Click the Full Name button, for example, to enter a name (see Figure 2-1). Click the Business or Home button to enter an address in the Check Address dialog box (see Figure 2-1). By clicking

these buttons and entering data in dialog boxes, you permit Outlook to separate the component parts of names, addresses, and phone numbers. As such, Outlook can use names and addresses as a source for mass mailings and mass e-mailings.

When entering information about a company, not a person, leave the Full Name field blank and enter the company's name in the Company field.

- ◆ **Information that matters to you:** If the form doesn't appear to have a place for entering a certain kind of information, try clicking a triangle button and choosing a new information category from the pop-up menu. Click the triangle button next to the Business button and choose Home, for example, if you want to enter a home address rather than a business address.
- ◆ **File As:** Open the File As drop-down list and choose an option for filing the contact in the Contacts folder. Contacts are filed alphabetically by last name, first name, company name, or combinations of the three. Choose the option that best describes how you expect to find the contact in the Contacts folder.
- ◆ **Mailing addresses:** If you keep more than one address for a contact, display the address to which you want to send mail and select the This Is the Mailing Address check box. This way, in a mass mailing, letters are sent to the correct address.
- ◆ **E-mail addresses:** You can enter up to three e-mail addresses for each contact. (Click the triangle button next to the E-mail button and choose E-mail 2 or E-mail 3 to enter a second or third address.) In the Display As text box, Outlook shows you what the To: line of e-mail messages looks like when you send e-mail to a contact. By default, the To: line shows the contact's name followed by his or her e-mail address in parentheses. However, you can enter whatever you wish in the Display As text box, and if entering something different helps you distinguish between e-mail addresses, enter something different. For example, enter Lydia – Personal so that you can tell when you send e-mail to Lydia's personal address as opposed to her business address.
- ◆ **Photos:** To put a digital photo in a Contact form, click the Add Contact Picture placeholder, and in the Add Contact Picture dialog box, select a picture and click OK.
- ◆ **Details:** To keep a detailed dossier on a contact, click the Details button (you may have to click the Show button first, depending on the size of your Contact form) and enter information in the Details window. This window offers places for recording birthdays and other minutia.



Details



Be sure to write a few words in the Notes box to describe how and where you met the contact. When the time comes to weed out contacts in the Contacts folder list, reading these descriptions helps you decide who gets weeded and who doesn't.



When you finish entering information, click the Save & Close button. If you're in a hurry to enter contacts, click the Save & New button. Doing so opens an empty form so that you can record information about another contact.

## ***Changing a contact's information***

Outlook offers a simple and comprehensive way to change a contact's information. No matter which path you take, start by going to the View tab. From there, choose People view to make simple changes or one of the other views to make comprehensive changes to a contact:

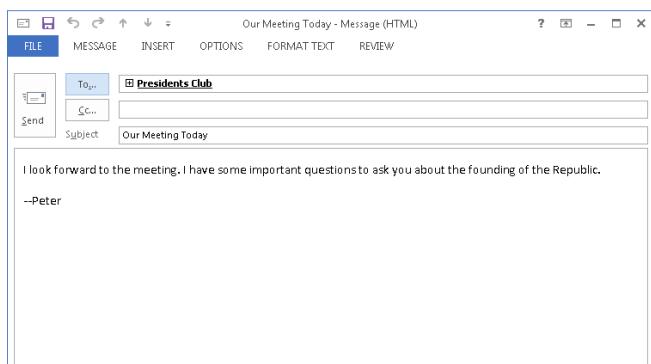
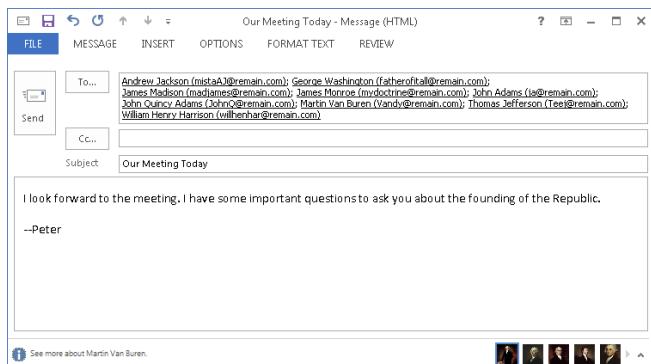
- ◆ In People view, click the Edit link or double-click a contact name to open the Edit window, as shown in Figure 2-2. Make your changes in the Edit window and click the Save button.
- ◆ In Business Card, Card, Phone, or List view, double-click the contact's name to open the Contact window. Click the Save & Close button after making your changes. While you're in the Contact window, try clicking the All Fields button and entering information in the All Fields window, as shown in Figure 2-2. The All Fields window lists fields in a line-by-line fashion. Choose an option on the Select From drop-down list, scroll in the form, and update fields as necessary.

The screenshot shows two windows side-by-side. The left window is the 'CONTACT' view of the 'Edit' dialog for 'Martin Van Buren'. It displays basic contact information: Name (Martin Van Buren), Email (Vandy@bremain.com), Work Phone (555-1298), Mobile Phone (555-3912), and IM (None). The right window is the 'All Fields' dialog for the same contact. It lists various address fields with their values: Business Address (1013 Old Post Road, Kinderhook, New York 12106), Business Address City (Kinderhook), Business Address Postal Code (12106), Business Address State (New York), Business Address Street (1013 Old Post Road), City (Kinderhook), Country/Region (United States), Home Address (11 Government Way, Chicago, IL 47814), Home Address City (Chicago), Home Address Postal Code (47814), Home Address State (IL), and Home Address Street (11 Government Way). Buttons at the bottom of the All Fields window include 'New...', 'Properties...', and 'Delete'.

**Figure 2-2:**  
Editing  
contact  
data in the  
Edit window  
(left) and the  
All Fields  
window  
(right).

## Contact Groups for Sending Messages to Groups

The captain of the volleyball team and the secretary of the PTA are examples of people who have to send e-mail messages to the same group of people on a regular basis. You might be in the same boat. You might have to send e-mail messages to the same 10 or 12 people from time to time. Entering e-mail addresses for that many people each time you want to send e-mail is a drag. To keep from having to enter so many e-mail addresses, you can create a *contact group*, a list with multiple e-mail addresses. To address your e-mail message, you simply enter the name of the contact group, not the individual names, as shown in Figure 2-3.




---

**Figure 2-3:**  
Instead of  
entering  
many  
addresses  
(top), enter  
a contact  
group name  
(bottom).

---

## Mapping out an address

To find your way to a contact's home or place of business, click the Map It button in the Contact window (or click the More button and choose Map It). As long as your computer is connected to the Internet and an address is on file for the

contact, your web browser opens to the Bing.com website, where you find a map with the address at its center. You can get driving directions from this map. Good luck getting there!

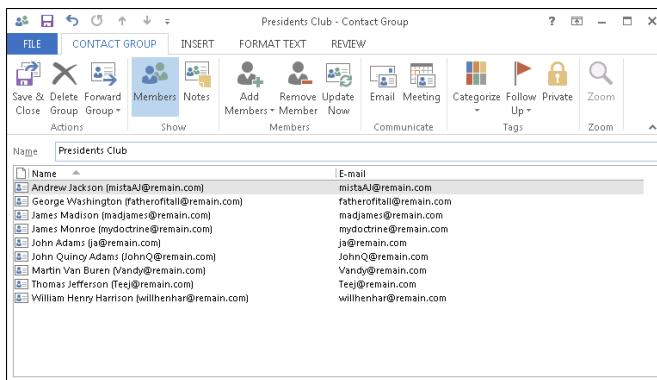
## Creating a contact group

Follow these steps to bundle e-mail addresses into a contact group:



1. On the Home tab, click the New Contact Group button (or press **Ctrl+Shift+L**).

You see the Contact Group window, as shown in Figure 2-4.



**Figure 2-4:**  
Entering  
addresses  
for a contact  
group.

2. Enter a descriptive name in the Name text box.

3. Click the Add Members button and choose an option on the drop-down list to tell Outlook where you store the addresses of friends and colleagues.

If you're a loyal user of Outlook, you likely choose From Outlook Contacts. You see the Select Members dialog box.



4. Hold down the Ctrl key and select the name of each person you want to include in the contact group.
5. Click the Members button and click OK.

You can find the Members button in the lower-left corner of the dialog box. The names you chose appear in the Contact Group window.

You can add the names of people who aren't in your Contacts folder by clicking the Add Members button, choosing New E-Mail Contact on the drop-down list, and filling out the Add New Member dialog box.

6. Click the Save & Close button in the Contact Group window.

In the Contacts folder, contact group names are marked with the Contact group icon and are clearly labeled Group.



### ***Addressing e-mail to a contact group***

To address an e-mail message to a contact group, start in the Inbox folder and click the New E-Mail button. A Message window opens. Click the To button to open the Select Names dialog box and then select a contact group name. Contact group names appear in boldface and are marked with a Contact Group icon.



The fastest way to address e-mail to a contact group is to click the Email button in the Contact Group window (refer to Figure 2-4). To open this window, double-click the name of a contact group in the Contacts folder.

### ***Editing a contact group***

The names of contact groups appear in the Contacts folder. You can treat the groups like other contacts. In the Contacts folder, double-click a contact group name to open the Contact Group window (refer to Figure 2-4). From there, you can add names to and remove names from the group.

## ***Finding a Contact in the Contacts Folder***

The Contacts folder can grow very large, so Outlook offers a number of ways to locate contacts. Here are some techniques for locating a contact in the Contacts folder:

- ◆ **Use the scrollbar:** Click the arrows or drag the scroll box to move through the list.
- ◆ **Click a letter button:** Click a letter button on the left side of the window to move in the list to names beginning with a specific letter.

- ◆ **Change views:** On the Home tab, go to the Current View gallery and choose a view option: People, Business Card, Card, Phone, or List. Changing views often helps in a search.
- ◆ **Search Contacts text box:** Enter a keyword in the Search Contacts text box (see Chapter 1 of this mini-book for instructions about searching for items in folders).

## *Printing the Contacts Folder*

The paperless office hasn't arrived yet in spite of numerous predictions to the contrary, and sometimes it's necessary to print the Contacts folder on old-fashioned paper. For times like these, I hereby explain the different ways to print the Contacts folder and how to fiddle with the look of the printed pages.



To print information about a single contact, double-click his or her name to open the Contact window. Then press Ctrl+P, and in the Print window, click the Print button.

### *Different ways to print contact information*

Follow these steps to print information about contacts in the Contacts folder:

#### **1. On the Home tab, open the Current View gallery and choose a view.**

Which printing options you get when you print information from the Contacts folder depends on which view of the Contacts folder is showing when you give the command to print:

- If you start in People, Business Card, or Card view, you can print Contacts information in these styles: card style, booklet style, memo style, or phone directory style (you find out what these styles are shortly).
- If you start in Phone or List view, you can print only in table style.

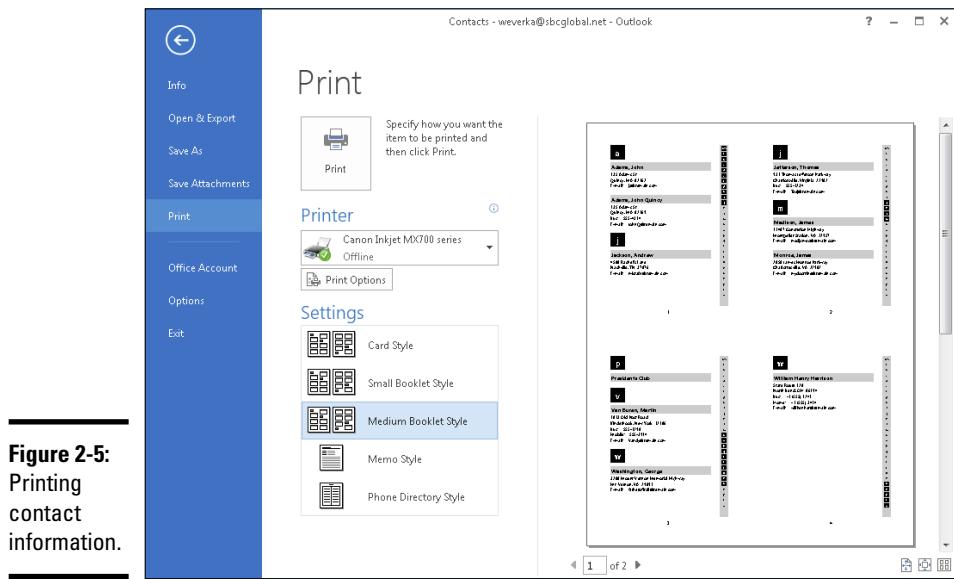
#### **2. Press Ctrl+P.**

You see the Print window, as shown in Figure 2-5.

#### **3. Under Settings, choose an option.**

Glance at the right side of the window to see what the option choices are and choose the option that suits you best.





**Figure 2-5:**  
Printing  
contact  
information.

Book VI  
Chapter 2

Maintaining the  
Contacts Folder

- Click the Print Options button if you want to change the number of columns that are printed, change fonts, change headers and footers, or otherwise fiddle with the printed pages.

The next section in this chapter explains these options.

- Click the Print button to start printing.

## Changing the look of printed pages

To determine what Contact folder information looks like when you print it, click the Print Options button in the Print window (refer to Figure 2-5). You see the Print dialog box. In this dialog box, click the Page Setup button and choose options on the Format tab of the Page Setup dialog box to change the look of the printed pages:

- Where contact information is printed: Contact information is printed alphabetically with a letter heading to mark where the As, Bs, Cs, and so on begin. To place contacts that begin with each letter on separate pages, select the Start on a New Page option button.
- Number of columns: Choose a number in the Number of Columns drop-down list to tell Outlook how many columns you want.
- Contact index: Select the Contact Index on Side check box to print thumbnail letter headings on the sides of pages.

- ◆ **Letter headings:** To remove the letter headings that mark where contacts starting with a certain letter begin, deselect the Headings for Each letter check box.
- ◆ **Fonts and font sizes:** Click a Font button and choose a different font or font size for headings and body text.
- ◆ **Gray shades:** Gray shades appear behind contact names, but you can remove them by deselecting the Print Using Gray Shading check box.

In the Header/Footer tab, the three boxes are for deciding what appears on the left side, middle, and right side of headers and footers. Type whatever you please into these text boxes. You can also click buttons in the dialog box to enter fields — a page number, total page number, printing date, printing time, or your name — in headers and footers.

# *Chapter 3: Handling Your E-Mail*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Configuring an e-mail account for Outlook
- ✓ Addressing, sending, replying to, and forwarding e-mail messages
- ✓ Sending files and pictures with e-mail
- ✓ Receiving e-mail and files over the Internet
- ✓ Organizing and managing your e-mail
- ✓ Creating and using different folders to store e-mail
- ✓ Preventing junk e-mail

**“N**either snow nor rain nor heat nor gloom of night stays these couriers from the swift completion of their appointed rounds,” reads the inscription on the Eighth Avenue New York Post Office Building. E-mailers face a different set of difficulties. Instead of snow, rain, or gloomy nights, they face the task of having to manage volumes of e-mail.

This chapter explains the basics of sending and receiving e-mail, but it also goes a step further to help you organize and manage your e-mail messages. It shows you how to send files and pictures with e-mail messages. You also find out how to be advised when someone has read your e-mail, reorganize e-mail in the Inbox window, and be alerted to incoming messages from certain people or from people writing about certain subjects. This chapter shows you how to create folders for storing e-mail and explains how to prevent junk e-mail from arriving on your digital doorstep.

## *Setting Up an E-Mail Account*

Before you can send and receive e-mail, you must provide Outlook with connection information about your e-mail service. Outlook needs your name, your e-mail address, and the password with which you log on to the e-mail service.

Follow these steps to configure an e-mail account with Outlook:

**1. On the File tab, choose Info.**

The Account Information window opens.

**2. Click the Add Account button.**

You see the Add Account dialog box.

**3. Provide your name, address, and password; and click Next.**

**4. Click the Finish button when Outlook finishes configuring your e-mail account.**

If Outlook can't configure your account, you are asked to configure the account manually.

You can configure Outlook to send and retrieve e-mail from more than one account. For each e-mail account you configure, Outlook places a new folder profile in the Folder pane.

To delete an e-mail account, go to the File tab and choose Info. Then click the Account Settings button and choose Account Settings on the drop-down list. In the Account Settings dialog box, select the account and click the Remove button.

## *Addressing and Sending E-Mail Messages*

Sadly, you can't send chocolates or locks of hair by e-mail, but you can send digital pictures and computer files. These pages explain how to do it. You also discover how to send copies and blind copies of e-mail messages, reply to and forward e-mail, send e-mail from different accounts, and postpone sending a message. Better keep reading.

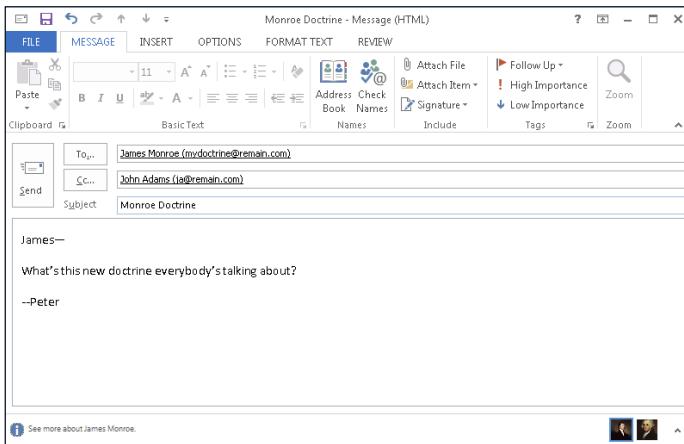
### *The basics: Sending an e-mail message*

The first half of this chapter addresses everything you need to know about sending e-mail messages. Here are the basics:



**1. In any mail folder, click the New E-Mail button on the Home tab (or press Ctrl+N).**

A Message window like the one in Figure 3-1 appears. You can open this window in a folder apart from mail folders by clicking the New Items button and choosing E-Mail Message on the drop-down list (or by pressing Ctrl+Shift+M). The New Items button is located on the Home tab.



**Figure 3-1:**  
Addressing  
and  
composing  
an e-mail  
message.

Book VI  
Chapter 3

Handling Your  
E-Mail

## 2. Enter the recipient's e-mail address in the To text box.

The next topic in this chapter, “Addressing an e-mail message,” explains the numerous ways to address an e-mail message. You can address the same message to more than one person by entering more than one address in the To text box. For that matter, you can send copies of the message and blind copies of the message to others (see “Sending copies and blind copies of messages,” later in this chapter).

## 3. In the Subject text box, enter a descriptive title for the message.

When your message arrives on the other end, the recipient sees the subject first. Enter a descriptive subject that helps the recipient prioritize the message. After you enter the subject, it appears in the title bar of the Message window.

## 4. Type the message.

Whatever you do, don't forget to enter the message itself! You can spell check your message by pressing F7 or clicking the Spelling & Grammar button on the Review tab.

## 5. Click the Send button (or press Alt+S).

Messages remain in the Outbox folder if you postpone sending them or if Outlook can't send them right away because your computer isn't connected to the Internet.



If you decide in the middle of writing a message to write the rest of it later, click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar (or press Ctrl+S) and close the Message window. The message lands in the Drafts folder. When you're ready to finish writing the message, open the Drafts folder and double-click your unfinished message to resume writing it.

Copies of the e-mail messages you send are kept in the Sent Items folder, where you can review messages you sent.

## Making Outlook your default e-mail program

If you switched to Outlook from Outlook Express or another e-mail program and you like Outlook, you need to tell your computer that Outlook is henceforward the e-mail program you want to use by default. The default e-mail program is the one that opens when you click an e-mail hyperlink on a Web page or give the order to send an Office file from inside an Office program. Follow these steps to make Outlook the default e-mail program on your computer:

1. Go to the File tab and choose Options.
2. In the Outlook Options dialog box, visit the General category.
3. Select the Make Outlook the Default Program for E-Mail, Contacts, and Calendar check box.
4. Click OK.

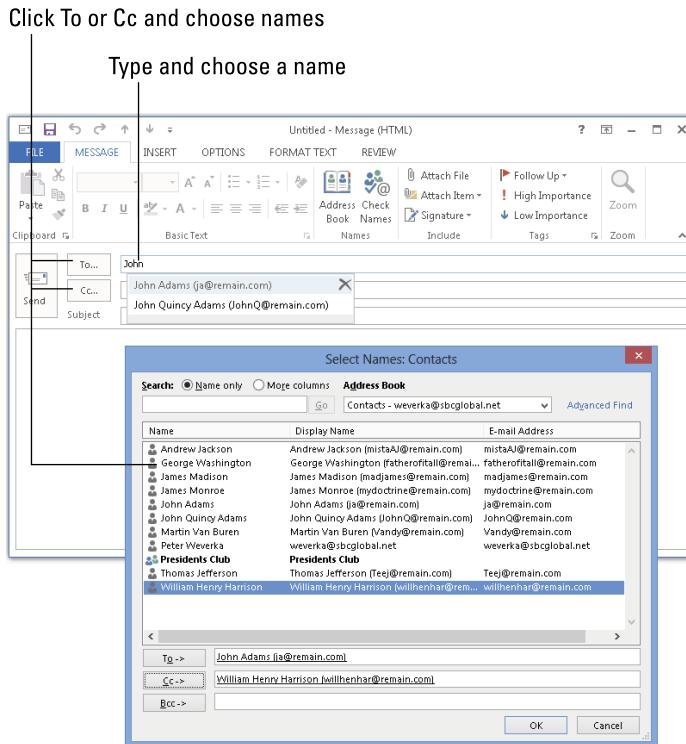
## Addressing an e-mail message

How do you address an e-mail message in the To text box of the Message window (refer to Figure 3-1)? Let me count the ways:

- ◆ **Type a person's name from the Contacts folder:** Simply type a person's name, as shown in Figure 3-2. If the name is on file in the Contacts folder, a drop-down menu with the name appears, and you can select the name on the drop-down menu.
- ◆ **Get the address (or addresses) from the Contacts folder:** Click the To (or Cc) button to send a message to someone whose name is on file in your Contacts folder. You see the Select Names dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-2. Click or Ctrl+click to select the names of people to whom you want to send the message. Then click the To-> button (or the Cc-> or Bcc-> button) to enter addresses in the To text box (or the Cc or Bcc text box) of the Message window. Click OK to return to the Message window. This is the easiest way to address an e-mail message to several different people.
- ◆ **Type the address:** Type the address if you know it offhand. You can paste an address into the Message window by right-clicking and choosing the Paste command.
- ◆ **Reply to a message sent to you:** Select the message in the Inbox folder and click the Reply button. The Message window opens with the address of the person to whom you're replying already entered in the To text box. You can also click the Reply All button to reply to enter the e-mail addresses of all the people to whom the original message was sent.



You can create contact groups for sending the same e-mail message to a group of people without having to enter an address for each recipient. For information about contact groups, see Chapter 2 of this mini-book.



**Figure 3-2:**  
Getting  
addresses  
from the  
Contacts  
folder.

## Sending e-mail from inside another Office program

As long as Outlook is your default e-mail program (I explain how to make it the default program earlier in this chapter), you can send e-mail messages or file attachments from other Office programs without opening Outlook. If the Word document, Excel worksheet, PowerPoint presentation, or Publisher publication needs sending right away, save it and follow these steps to send it as a file attachment to an e-mail message:

1. With the file you want to send on-screen, go to the File tab and choose Share.
2. In the Share window, choose E-Mail.
3. Choose a Send option.

These options differ from program to program. For example, you can send the file as an attachment to an e-mail message or send it as a PDF file. The Message window appears after you choose a Send option.

4. Enter the recipient's address in the To box and type a message in the Message box.

5. Click the Send button.

That was fast! It was faster than opening Outlook and attaching the file to the e-mail message on your own. The message is sent right away if Outlook is running. Otherwise, the message is sent next time you open Outlook.

## ***Sending copies and blind copies of messages***

When you send a copy of a message, the person who receives the message knows that copies have been sent because the names of people to whom copies were sent appear at the top of the e-mail message. But when you send blind copies, the person who receives the message doesn't know that others received it.

Follow these instructions to send copies and blind copies of messages:

- ◆ **Send a copy of a message:** Enter e-mail addresses in the Cc text box of the Message window, or in the Select Names dialog box (refer to Figure 3-2), select names and then click the Cc->button.
- ◆ **Send a blind copy of a message:** On the Options tab, click the Bcc button, or click the To or Cc button in the Message window to open the Select Names dialog box (refer to Figure 3-2), select names, and click the Bcc-> button or else enter addresses in the Bcc-> text box.

Why are these buttons called Cc and Bcc? The Cc stands for "carbon copy" and the Bcc stands for "blind carbon copy." These terms originated in the Mesozoic era when letters were composed on the typewriter, and to make a copy of a letter, you inserted carbon paper between two paper sheets and typed away.

## ***Replying to and forwarding e-mail messages***

Replies to and forwarding messages is as easy as pie. For one thing, you don't need to know the recipient's e-mail address to reply to a message. In the Inbox, select or open the message you want to reply to or forward and do the following on the Home tab, Message tab, or Reading pane:



- ◆ **Reply to author:** Click the Reply button (or press Ctrl+R). The Message window or Reading pane opens with the sender's name already entered in the To box and the original message in the text box below. Write a reply and click the Send button.



- ◆ **Reply to all parties who received the message:** Click the Reply All button (or press Ctrl+Shift+R). The Message window or Reading pane opens with the names of all parties who received the message in the To and Cc boxes and the original message in the text box. Type your reply and click the Send button.



- ◆ **Forward a message:** Click the Forward button (or press Ctrl+F). The Message window or Reading pane opens with the text of the original message. Either enter an e-mail address in the To text box or click the To button to open the Select Names dialog box and then select the names of the parties to whom the message will be forwarded. Add a word or two to the original message if you like; then click the Send button.



Forwarding a message to a third party without the permission of the original author is a breach of etiquette and very bad manners. I could tell you a story about an e-mail message of mine that an unwitting editor forwarded to a cantankerous publisher, but I'm saving that story for the soap opera edition of this book.

To add a sender's name to the Contacts folder, right-click the name in the Message window and choose Add to Outlook Contacts.

## Sending Files and Photos

Yes, it can be done. You can send files and photos along with your e-mail messages. As long as you know where the file or photo is stored on your computer, you can send it lickety-split.

Book VI  
Chapter 3

Handling Your  
E-Mail

### Auto-replying to messages

An *auto-reply* (automatic reply) is a message sent automatically to everyone who sends you a message. An auto-reply goes something like this: "I'm on vacation till Tuesday and can't reply to your message. But as soon as I return, I'll reply to you." Use auto-replies to inform people that you aren't neglecting them, you just can't reply because you're in meetings, on vacation, or otherwise occupied.

Only people who run Outlook through a Microsoft Exchange server can send auto-replies. What this means in real terms is that only people whose computers are connected to a network can auto-reply to messages. Follow these steps to find out whether your Outlook account is run through a Microsoft Exchange server:

1. On the File tab, choose Info to open the Account Information window.
2. Click the Account Settings button and choose Account Settings to open the Account Settings dialog box.

3. In the Type column, look for the words "Microsoft Exchange." If you see these words, you can send auto-replies to messages.

Follow these steps to write an auto-reply and instruct Outlook to send it to all who send you messages:

1. On the File tab, choose Info.
2. Choose Automatic Replies (Out of Office) to open the Automatic Replies dialog box.
3. Click the Send Automatic Replies check box.
4. Choose a start time and end time for sending auto-replies.
5. On the Inside My Organization tab, enter the auto-reply that you want to send to your co-workers.
6. On the Outside My Organization tab, enter the auto-reply you want to send people outside your network.
7. Click OK.

## ***Sending a file along with a message***

Sending a file along with an e-mail message is called *attaching* a file in Outlook lingo. You can send a file or several files along with an e-mail message by following these steps:



- 1. In the Message window, go to the Message or Insert tab and click the Attach File button.**

You see the Insert File dialog box.

- 2. Locate and select the file that you want to send along with your e-mail message.**

Ctrl+click filenames to select more than one file.

- 3. Click the Insert button.**

The name of the file (or files) appears in the Attached text box in the Message window. Address the message and type a note to send along with the file. You can right-click a filename in the Attach text box and choose Open on the shortcut menu to open a file you're about to send. Or, if you change your mind about sending the file, you can click Remove on the shortcut menu.



Here's a fast way to attach a file to a message: Find the file in File Finder or Windows Explorer and drag it into the Message window. The file's name appears in the Attach box as though you placed it there by clicking the Attach File button.

## ***Including a photo in an e-mail message***

As shown in Figure 3-3, you can include a photo in the body of an e-mail message. Follow these steps:

- 1. In the Message window, go to the Insert tab.**
- 2. Click in the body of the e-mail message where you want the picture to go.**
- 3. Click the Pictures button.**

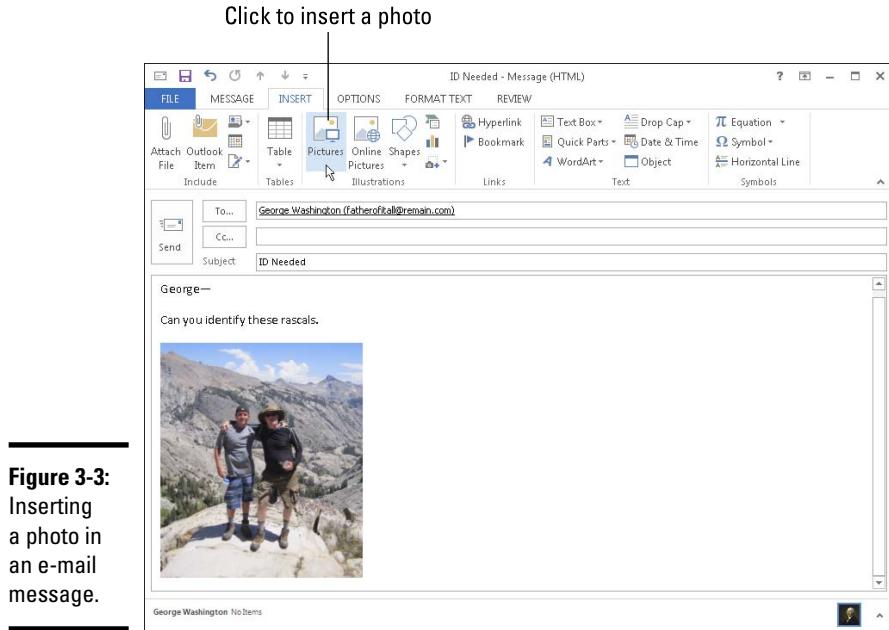


You see the Insert Picture dialog box. If the Pictures button is grayed out and you can't click it, go to the Format Text tab and click the HTML button. Choosing HTML as the format for e-mail messages enables you to send photos in the body of e-mail messages.

- 4. Locate and select the digital picture you want to send; then click the Insert button.**

The picture lands in the Message window. Book VIII, Chapter 3 explains how to manipulate graphic images in Outlook and the other Office applications.

Want to remove a picture from an e-mail message? Select it and press the Delete key.



**Figure 3-3:**  
Inserting  
a photo in  
an e-mail  
message.

Book VI  
Chapter 3

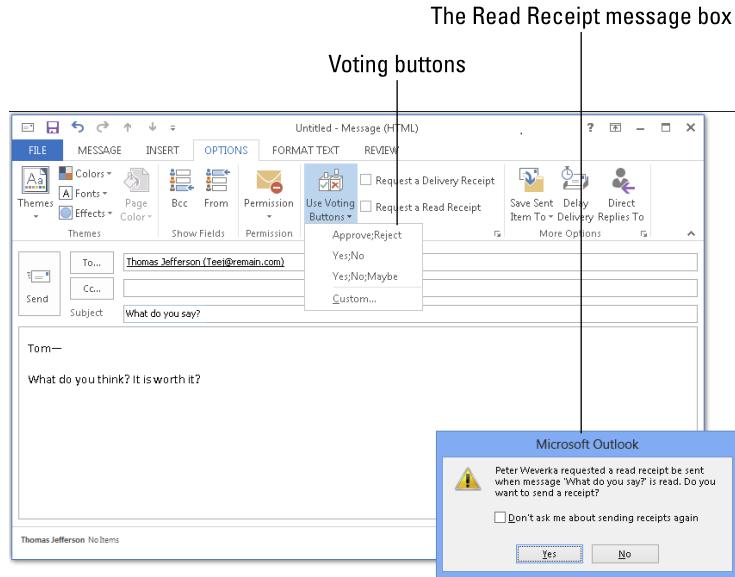
Handling Your  
E-Mail

## Being Advised When Someone Has Read Your E-Mail

Outlook offers a command whereby you can be informed when someone has received or read an e-mail message you sent. You can even send a mini-ballot to someone else, solicit their vote, and have the vote sent to you by e-mail. To perform this magic trick, start in the Message window and go to the Options tab. In the Tracking group, select one or more of these options:



- ◆ **Use Voting Buttons:** A Vote button is included on a drop-down list in the e-mail message you send. Choose a set of buttons from the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 3-4. The recipient clicks the Vote button, chooses an option on a drop-down list, and the response is sent to you in the form of an e-mail message with the word Approve, Reject, Yes, No, or Maybe in the subject line.
- ◆ **Request a Delivery Receipt:** You're informed by e-mail after the message is delivered. Select the Request a Delivery Receipt check box. To be informed, however, you and the recipient must use the same Exchange Server, and the recipient must choose to inform you that the message was delivered. Don't count on this one really working.
- ◆ **Request a Read Receipt:** The message box appears, as shown in Figure 3-4. If the recipient clicks the Yes button, a Message window appears immediately so that he or she can send an e-mail informing you that the message was read. The message, when it arrives on your end, lists the date and time that the response message was sent. Select the Request a Read Receipt check box.



**Figure 3-4:**  
Making sure  
you get a  
response.

## Receiving E-Mail Messages

Let's hope that all the e-mail messages you receive carry good news. These pages explain how to collect your e-mail and all the different ways that Outlook notifies you when e-mail has arrived. You can find several tried-and-true techniques for reading e-mail messages in the Inbox window. Outlook offers a bunch of different ways to rearrange the window as well as the messages inside it.

### Getting your e-mail

Starting in the Inbox folder on the Send/Receive tab, here are all the different ways to collect e-mail messages that were sent to you:

- ◆ **Collect all e-mail:** Click the Send/Receive All Folders button (or press F9). Mail is sent from and delivered to all your e-mail accounts. The Send/Receive All Folders button is also located on the Home tab.
- ◆ **Collect mail for the Inbox folder only:** Click the Update Folder button (or press Shift+F9).
- ◆ **Send all unsent mail:** Click the Send All button.
- ◆ **Collect e-mail from a single account (if you have more than one):** Click the Send/Receive Groups button, and on the drop-down list, choose the name of a group or an e-mail account.

## Being notified that e-mail has arrived

Take the e-mail arrival quiz. Winners get the displeasure of knowing that they understand far more than is healthy about Outlook. You can tell when e-mail has arrived in the Inbox folder because

- A) You hear this sound: *ding*.
- B) The mouse cursor briefly changes to a little envelope.
- C) A little envelope appears in the notification area to the left of the Windows clock. (You can double-click the envelope to open the Inbox folder.)
- D) A pop-up *desktop alert* with the sender's name, the message's subject, and the text of the message appears briefly on your desktop.
- E) All of the above.

The answer is E, "All of the above," but if four arrival notices strike you as excessive, you can eliminate one or two. On the File tab, choose Options, and in the Mail category of the Options dialog box, go the Message Arrival area and change the settings.

Book VI  
Chapter 3

Handling Your  
E-Mail

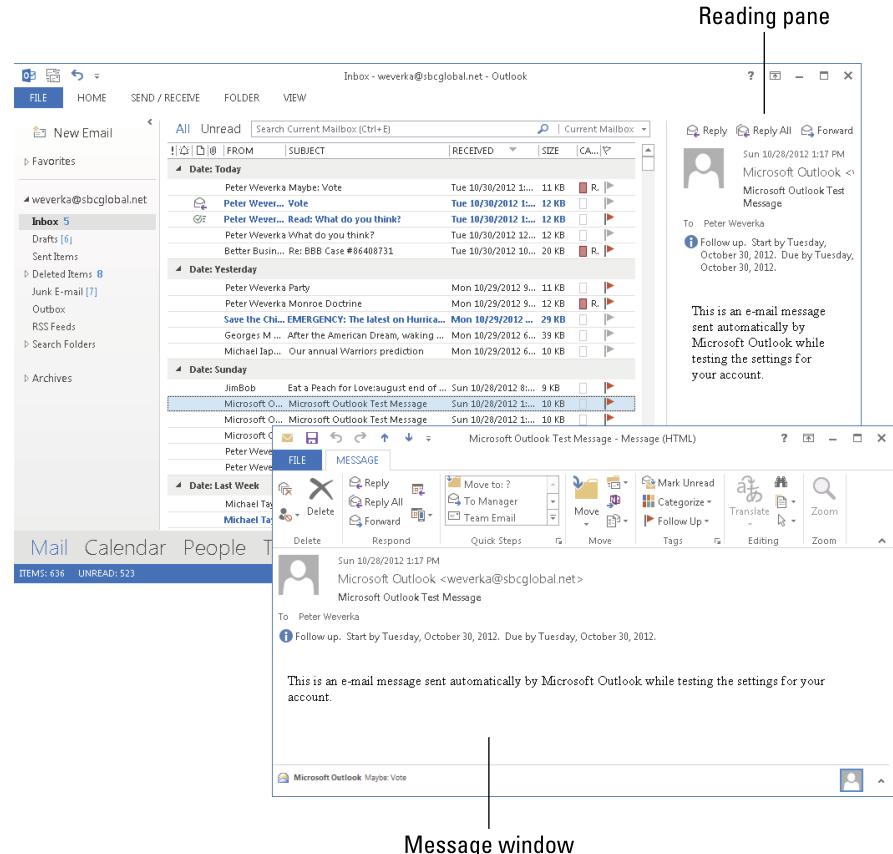
## Reading Your E-Mail in the Inbox Window

Messages arrive in the Inbox window, as shown in Figure 3-5. You can tell a thing or two about messages by glancing in the window:

- ◆ Unread messages are shown in boldface type.
- ◆ Messages that you've read (or at least opened to view) are shown in Roman type.
- ◆ In the Folder pane, a number beside a folder tells you how many unread messages are in those folders. (The number in square brackets beside the Drafts and Junk E-Mail folders tells you how many items, read and unread, are in those folders).

To read a message, select it and look in the Reading pane, or to focus more closely on a message, double-click it to open it in a Message window, as shown in Figure 3-5.

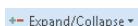
## 476 Reading Your E-Mail in the Inbox Window



**Figure 3-5:**  
Reading  
messages in  
the Reading  
pane and  
Message  
window.

Later in this chapter, “Techniques for Organizing E-Mail Messages,” explains how to organize messages in the Inbox folder. Meanwhile, here are some simple techniques you can use on the View tab to unclutter the Inbox folder and make messages easier to read:

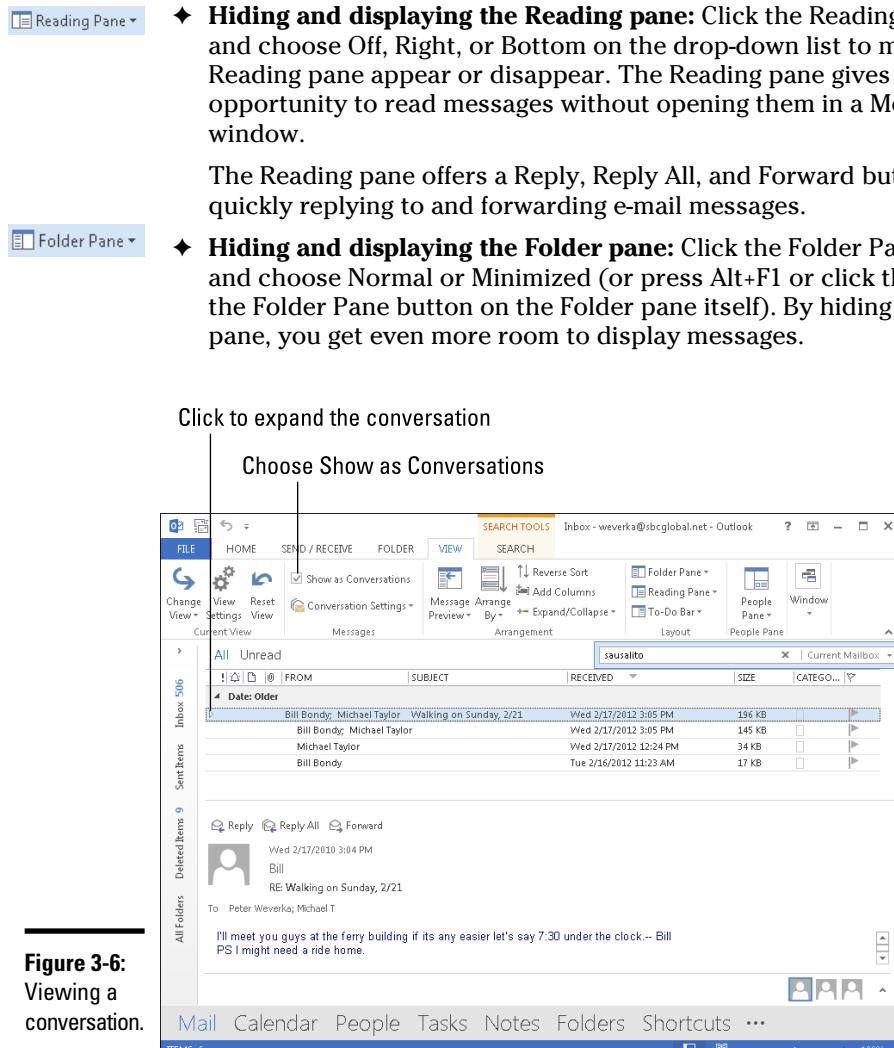
- ◆ **Changing your view of messages:** Click the Change View button and choose Compact, Single, or Preview on the drop-down list. Compact and Single display more messages on-screen. In Preview view, the first two lines of unread messages appear so that you can read them.
- ◆ **Rearranging messages:** Click the Arrange By button and choose an option on the drop-down list. For example, choose Date to arrange messages according to the date and time they were received. Choose From to arrange message by sender name in alphabetical order. Click the Reverse Sort button to reverse the way the messages are arranged.
- ◆ **Arranging messages by group:** After you choose a means of arranging messages, you can click the Expand/Collapse button to display



messages by groups. Grouped items appear under headings. For example, if you choose From to arrange messages by sender, messages are displayed under senders' names when you select the Show in Groups option.

You can expand and collapse groups by clicking the triangle buttons beside their names or by clicking the Expand/Collapse button and making a choice on the drop-down list.

- ◆ **Arrange messages by conversation:** If you arrange messages by date, you can also arrange messages by conversation, as shown in Figure 3-6. A *conversation* is a back-and-forth collection of e-mails between the same two people or group of people about the same subject. Click the Show As Conversations check box and choose options on the drop-down list to view e-mails in conversation groups.
- ◆ **Hiding and displaying the Reading pane:** Click the Reading Pane button and choose Off, Right, or Bottom on the drop-down list to make the Reading pane appear or disappear. The Reading pane gives you an opportunity to read messages without opening them in a Message window.
- ◆ **Hiding and displaying the Folder pane:** Click the Folder Pane button and choose Normal or Minimized (or press Alt+F1 or click the Minimize the Folder Pane button on the Folder pane itself). By hiding the Folder pane, you get even more room to display messages.



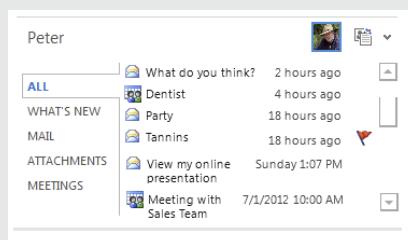
**Figure 3-6:**  
Viewing a  
conversation.

## Taking advantage of the People pane

The People pane — something new in Outlook 2013 — gives you a chance to quickly review e-mail, files, and meetings that pertain to someone who sent you an e-mail message. In the Reading pane, click the Expand button to see a list of messages, files, and meetings that relate to the person who sent you the message. Click

an item in the list to open it in a window and review it.

If you don't see the People pane at the bottom of the Reading pane, go to the View tab, click the People Pane button, and choose Normal on the drop-down list.



Suppose you open an e-mail message but you regret doing so because you want the unopened envelope icon to appear beside the message's name. In other words, you want to handle the message later on. To make a message in the Inbox window appear as if it has never been opened, right-click it and choose Mark As Unread.

## *Handling Files That Were Sent to You*

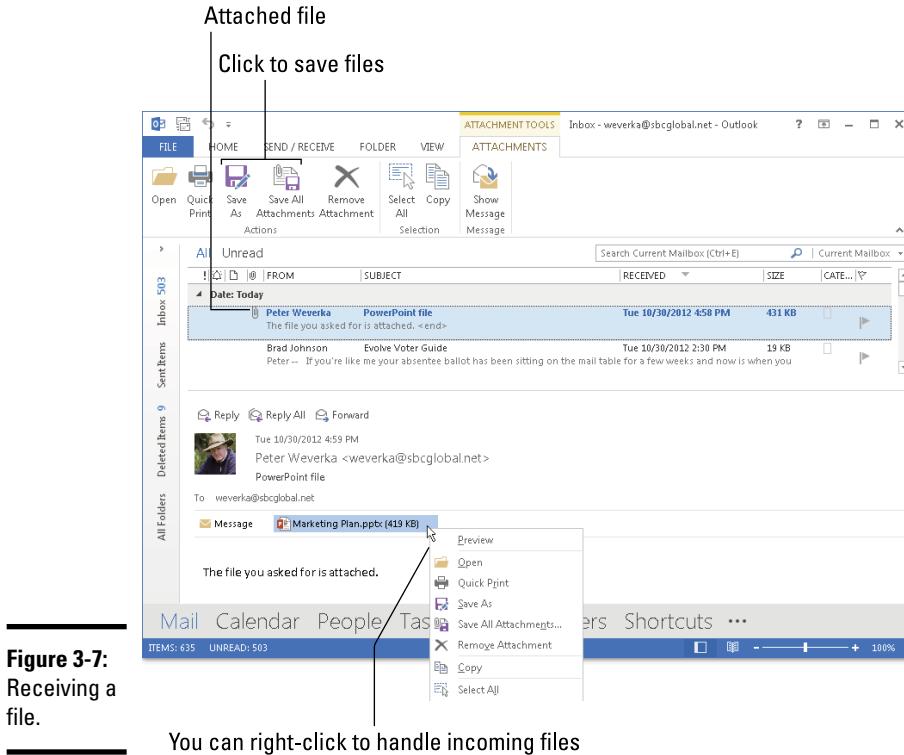
You can tell when someone sends you files along with an e-mail message because the paper clip icon appears in the Attachment column of the Inbox window (if column headings are displayed), as shown in Figure 3-7. The name of the file that was sent to you appears in the Reading pane (if the Reading pane is open) and in the Message window as well if you open the message in a window.

### *Saving a file you received*

Follow these instructions to save a file that was sent to you in a folder of your choice:



- ◆ Click to select the filename, and on the (Attachment Tools) Attachments tab, click the Save As button and save the file using the Save Attachment dialog box. Click the Save All Attachments button to save more than one file.
- ◆ Right-click the filename, choose Save As on the shortcut menu, and save the file in the Save Attachment dialog box. Right-click and choose Save All Attachments to save more than one file.



**Figure 3-7:**  
Receiving a file.

## Opening a file you received

Follow these instructions to open a file that was sent to you:

- ◆ Double-click the filename.
- ◆ Click to select the filename, and on the (Attachment Tools) Attachments tab, click the Open button.
- ◆ Right-click the filename and choose Open on the shortcut menu.



As long as the file being sent to you is a Word, PowerPoint, Excel, or Publisher file, you can preview it inside the Message window or Reading pane. To do so, right-click the filename and choose Preview on the shortcut menu.

## Techniques for Organizing E-Mail Messages

If you're one of those unfortunate souls who receives 20, 30, 40 or more e-mail messages daily, you owe it to yourself and your sanity to figure out a way to organize e-mail messages such that you keep the ones you want, you

can find e-mail messages easily, and you can quickly eradicate the e-mail messages that don't matter to you. Outlook offers numerous ways to manage and organize e-mail messages. Pick and choose the techniques that work for you.

In a nutshell, here are all the techniques for organizing e-mail messages:



- ◆ **Change views in the Inbox window:** On the View tab, click the Change View button and choose a view. Earlier in this chapter, "Reading Your E-Mail in the Inbox Window" explains all the ways to change views.

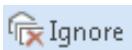


- ◆ **Delete the messages that you don't need:** Before they clutter the Inbox, delete messages that you're sure you don't need as soon as you get them. To delete a message, select it and click the Delete button on the Home tab, press the Delete key, or right-click and choose Delete.

- ◆ **Move messages to different folders:** Create a folder for each project you're involved with, and when an e-mail message about a project arrives, move it to a folder. See "All about E-Mail Folders," later in this chapter.

- ◆ **Move messages automatically to different folders as they arrive:** Instead of moving messages yourself after they arrive, you can tell Outlook to move messages automatically to different folders. See "Rules for earmarking messages as they arrive," later in this chapter.

- ◆ **Destroy junk mail as it arrives:** You can delete junk mail automatically. See "Yes, You Can Prevent Junk Mail (Sort Of)," later in this chapter.



- ◆ **Ignore messages from pesky senders:** On the Home tab, select a message and click the Ignore button to prevent messages from a sender from appearing in the Inbox. Ignored messages go straight to the Deleted Items folder.

- ◆ **Flag messages:** Flag a message with a color-coded flag to let you know to follow up on it. See "Flagging e-mail messages," the next section in this chapter.

- ◆ **Categorize messages:** Assign e-mail messages to categories; then, arrange e-mail messages by category in the Inbox window. See Chapter 1 of this mini-book for info about categorizing items in a folder.

- ◆ **Have Outlook remind you to reply to a message:** Instruct Outlook to make the Reminder message box appear at a date and time in the future so that you know to reply to a message. See "Being reminded to take care of e-mail messages," later in this chapter.

- ◆ **Make liberal use of the Search commands:** You can always find a stray message with the Search commands. (See Chapter 1 of this mini-book to know more about searching for items in folders.)

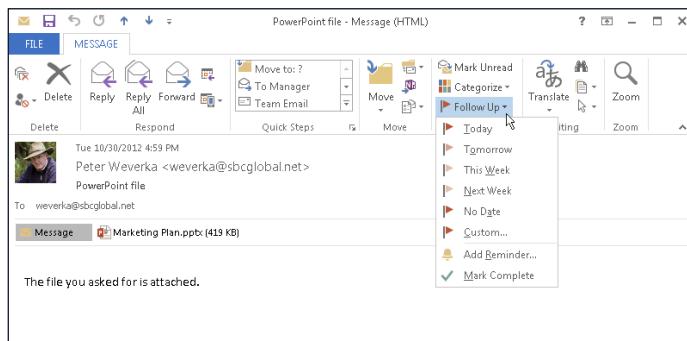
- ◆ **Archive messages you no longer need:** Archiving is a good way to strip the Inbox folder of items that you don't need. See Chapter 1 of this mini-book for more about archiving.
- ◆ **Use the Mailbox Cleanup command:** This handy command archives messages, deletes them, and deletes alternate versions of messages. See Chapter 1 of this mini-book for more about the Mailbox Cleanup command.

## Flagging e-mail messages

One way to call attention to e-mail messages is to flag them with a color-coded flag. You can use red flags, for example, to mark urgent messages and green flags to mark not-so-important ones. After you flag a message, you can arrange messages by their flag status in the Inbox folder. Follow these instructions to flag an e-mail message:



- ◆ **Starting in the Message window:** Click the Follow Up button and choose a flag on the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 3-8.
- ◆ **Starting in the Inbox folder:** Select the message, and on the Home tab, click the Follow Up button and choose a flag. You can also right-click, choose Follow Up, and choose a flag.



**Figure 3-8:**  
Flagging a  
message  
in the  
Message  
window.

To “unflag” a message, click the Follow Up button and choose Clear Flag, or right-click and choose Clear Flag. You can also choose Mark Complete to put a checkmark where the flag used to be and remind yourself that you’re done with the message. Later in this chapter, “Earmarking messages as they arrive,” explains how you can flag messages automatically as they arrive.

## Being reminded to take care of e-mail messages

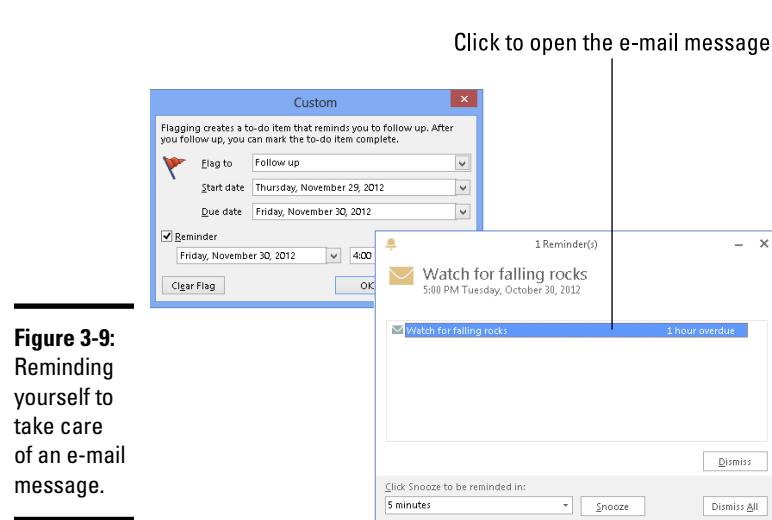
If you know your way around the Calendar and Tasks windows, you know that the Reminder message box appears when an appointment or meeting is about to take place or a task deadline is about to arrive. What you probably

don't know, however, is that you can put the Reminders dialog box to work in regard to e-mail messages by following these steps:

- 1. Select the message.**

- 2. Click the Follow Up button and choose Add Reminder.**

You see the Custom dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-9. You can also right-click a message and choose Follow Up>Add Reminder to see the dialog box.



**Figure 3-9:**  
Reminding  
yourself to  
take care  
of an e-mail  
message.

- 3. On the Flag To drop-down list, choose an option that describes why the e-mail message needs your attention later, or if none of the options suits you, enter a description in the Flag To text box.**

The description you choose or enter will appear above the message in the Reading pane and message window, as well in the Reminder message box, as shown in Figure 3-9.

- 4. In the Due Date drop-down list, choose when you want the Reminder message box to appear.**

As Chapter 5 explains in detail, the Reminder message box appears 15 minutes before the default due date time.

- 5. Click OK.**

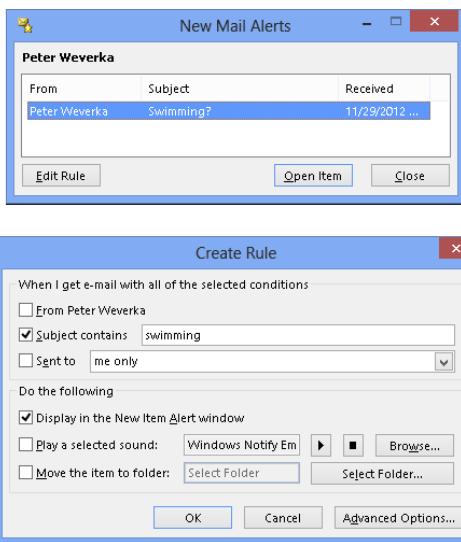
When the reminder falls due, you see the Reminder message box, as shown in Figure 3-9, where you can double-click the name of the e-mail message to open it. See Chapter 5 of this mini-book if you need to find out how the Reminder message box works.

## Rules for earmarking messages as they arrive

To help you organize messages better, Outlook gives you the opportunity to earmark messages in various ways and even move messages as they arrive automatically to folders apart from the Inbox folder. Being able to move messages immediately to a folder is a great way to keep e-mail concerning different projects separate. If you belong to a newsgroup that sends many messages per day, being able to move those messages instantly into their own folder is a real blessing because newsgroup messages have a habit of cluttering the Inbox folder.

To earmark messages for special treatment, Outlook has you create so-called rules. You can create a rule to:

- ◆ Move e-mail from a particular person automatically to a folder.
- ◆ Be alerted when e-mail arrives from a certain person or the Subject line of a message includes a certain word. The incoming messages appear in the New Mail Alerts window, as shown in Figure 3-10.



**Figure 3-10:**  
The New  
Mail Alerts  
window  
(top) and  
Create Rule  
dialog box  
(bottom).

Follow these instructions to create a rule so that incoming e-mail messages are given special treatment:

### 1. Select an e-mail message from a person whose messages require a rule.

You can skip this step if your goal is to create a rule for messages that contain a certain word in the Subject line.



**2. On the Home tab, click the Rules button.**

**3. Choose an option on the drop-down list.**

Choose an option to move messages to a folder or be alerted about messages.

- *Automatically move messages from this person to a folder:* Choose Always Move Messages From, and in the Rules and Alerts dialog box, select a folder.
- *Be alerted about messages:* Choose Create Rule. You see the Create Rule dialog box shown in Figure 3-10. Fill in the dialog box and click OK.

To change or delete a rule, click the Rules button and choose Manage Rules & Alerts. On the E-Mail Rules tab of the Rules and Alerts dialog box, select a rule and change, copy, or delete it.

## All about E-Mail Folders

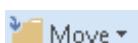
Where Outlook e-mail is concerned, everything has its place and everything has its folder. E-mail messages land in the Inbox folder when they arrive.

Messages you write go to the Outbox folder until you send them. Copies of e-mail messages you send are kept in the Sent Items folder. And you can create folders of your own for storing e-mail.

If you're one of those unlucky people who receive numerous e-mail messages each day, you owe it to yourself to create folders in which to organize e-mail messages. Create one folder for each project you're working on. That way, you know where to find e-mail messages when you want to reply to or delete them. These pages explain how to move e-mail messages between folders and create folders of your own for storing e-mail.

### Moving e-mail messages to different folders

Open or select the message you want to move and use one of these techniques to move an e-mail message to a different folder:



- ◆ On the Home tab or Message tab, click the Move button and choose a folder name on the drop-down list. If the folder's name isn't on the list, choose Other Folder and select a folder in the Move Item To dialog box.
- ◆ Right-click, choose Move, and select a folder name or choose Other Folder and select a folder in the Move Item To dialog box.
- ◆ Display the folder you want to receive the message in the Folder pane. Then drag the message from the Inbox to the folder in the Folder pane.

Earlier in this chapter, "Rules for earmarking messages as they arrive" explains how to move e-mail messages automatically to folders as e-mail is sent to you.

## Creating a new folder for storing e-mail

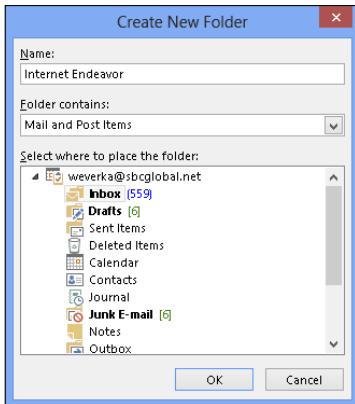
Follow these steps to create a new folder:



1. On the Folder tab, click the New Folder button.

You see the Create New Folder dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-11. You can also open this dialog box by pressing Ctrl+Shift+E or right-clicking a folder in the Folder list and choosing New Folder.

**Figure 3-11:**  
Creating a  
new folder.



2. Select the folder that the new folder will go inside.

To create a first-level folder, select Personal Folders (or the name of the topmost folder in the hierarchy).

3. Enter a name for the folder.
4. Click OK.

To delete a folder you created, open it, go to the Folder tab, and click the Delete Folder button. Items in the folder are deleted along with the folder itself. To rename a folder, open it, go to the Folder tab, click the Rename Folder button, and enter a new name.

## Yes, You Can Prevent Junk Mail (Sort of)

Outlook maintains a folder called Junk E-Mail especially for storing junk e-mail, or *spam* as the digital variety is sometimes called. E-mail messages with certain words or phrases in the Subject line — *for free!, money-back guarantee, order now* — are routed automatically to the Junk E-Mail folder, where they needn't bother you. What's more, you can add senders' names to the Blocked Senders list and route mail from those senders straight into the Junk E-Mail folder.



As nice as it is, the Junk E-Mail folder has one fatal flaw — sometimes a legitimate e-mail message finds its way into the folder. From time to time, you have to look in the Junk E-Mail folder to see whether something of value is in there — and that sort of defeats the purpose of routing messages automatically to the Junk E-Mail folder. You still have to look through all that junk e-mail!

Realistically, the only way to prevent getting junk e-mail is to safeguard your e-mail address. These pages explain how to help stamp out junk mail in your lifetime by using features inside Outlook and taking preventative measures.

### **Defining what constitutes junk e-mail**

Outlook maintains a *Safe Senders* and *Blocked Senders* list to help distinguish e-mail from junk e-mail. To help Outlook recognize junk e-mail and route it to the Junk E-Mail folder, you can take these measures to add addresses to the lists:



- ◆ **Add a sender to the Safe Senders list:** Senders on this list are deemed legitimate, and their e-mail messages are always routed to the Inbox folder. In the Message window or Home tab of a mail folder, click the Junk button and choose Never Block Sender. Choose this option if you find a legitimate e-mail message in the Junk E-Mail folder.
- ◆ **Add an address to the Blocked Senders list:** E-mail from senders on the Blocked Senders list goes straight to the Junk E-Mail folder. In the Message window or Home tab of a mail folder, click the Junk button and choose Block Sender.
- ◆ **Editing the Safe Senders and Blocked Senders lists:** Click the Junk button and choose Junk E-Mail Options. The Junk E-Mail Options dialog box opens. On the Safe Senders and Blocked Senders tab, select e-mail addresses as necessary, and click the Remove button.

To quickly move an e-mail message from the Junk E-Mail folder to the Inbox folder, click the Junk button and choose Not Junk on the drop-down list. The Mark As Not Junk dialog box appears. Click the Always Trust E-Mail From check box and click OK.



### **Preventative medicine for junk e-mail**

As zealous as Outlook is about preventing junk e-mail, the program can't really do the job. Junk e-mailers change addresses frequently. They are clever about putting words in the subject lines of their messages so that the messages aren't recognized as spam. The only foolproof way to keep your e-mail address free of junk e-mail is to follow these suggestions:

- ◆ **Use a secondary e-mail address:** Create a secondary e-mail account and give its e-mail address to businesses and merchants on the Internet who might sell your address to spammers or might themselves be spammers. The Internet offers many places to create free web-based e-mail accounts.

For example, check out Gmail (<http://gmail.google.com>) and Yahoo! Mail (<http://mail.yahoo.com>). Never give your primary e-mail address to strangers.

- ◆ **Don't reply to spam:** Don't reply to junk e-mail messages under any circumstances. By replying, all you do is alert the spammer to the fact that your e-mail address is legitimate, and that makes you a target of even more spam.
- ◆ **Don't unsubscribe to junk e-mail messages:** Some spam messages contain an Unsubscribe link that you can click to prevent more messages from coming. The links are a ruse. All you do by clicking them is make spammers aware that your e-mail address is live and therefore, worth targeting with more spam.
- ◆ **Don't buy anything advertised by spam:** Even if the message is selling what looks to be a terrific bargain, resist the temptation. By buying, you expose yourself to all the risks of replying to junk e-mail.
- ◆ **Be careful where (and how) you post your e-mail address:** Spammers gather e-mail addresses from the Internet. They get the addresses from web pages, newsgroups, chat rooms, and message boards. Harvestware, a variety of spamware, can scour the Internet for the tell-tale at symbol (@) found in e-mail addresses and copy those addresses back to a spammer's computer. If you have to post your e-mail address on the Internet, get around the problem by putting blank spaces between the letters in your address, or spell out the address like so:

johndoe at earthlink dot net



# **Chapter 4: Managing Your Time and Schedule**

---

## ***In This Chapter***

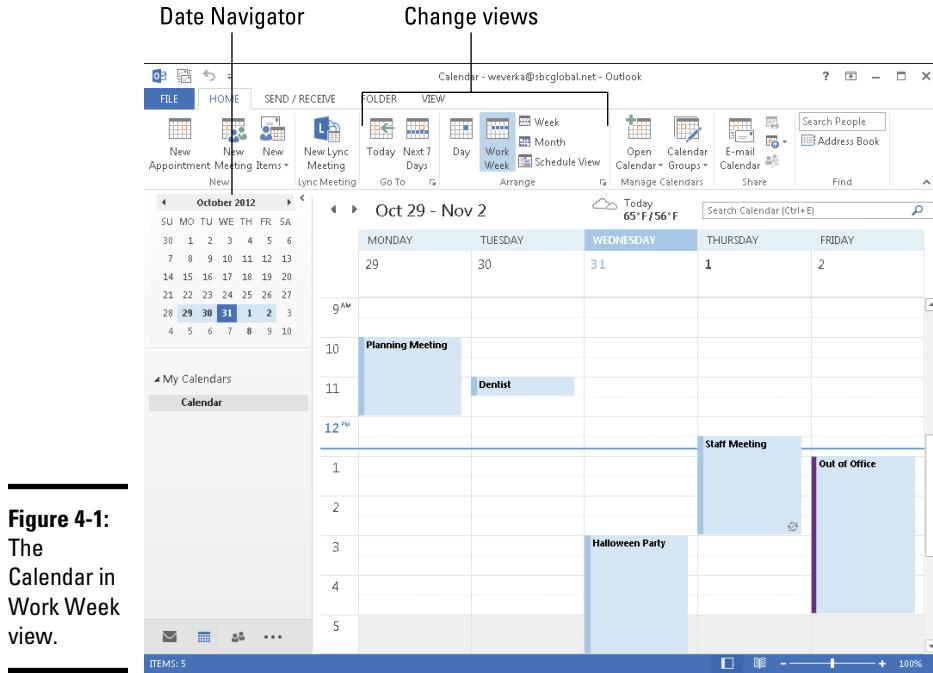
- ✓ Understanding how the Calendar works
- ✓ Going to different dates in the Calendar
- ✓ Scheduling appointments and events
- ✓ Rescheduling an activity
- ✓ Getting different views of your schedule

**T**he purpose of the Outlook Calendar is to keep you from arriving a day late and a dollar short. Use the Calendar to schedule meetings and appointments. Use it to make the most of your time. This chapter explains how to go from day to day, week to week, and month to month in the Calendar window. It shows you how to schedule and reschedule appointments and meetings and look at your schedule in different ways.

## ***Introducing the Calendar***

Use the Calendar to juggle appointments and meetings, remind yourself where you're supposed to be, and get there on time. Surveying your schedule in the Calendar window is easy. Merely by clicking a button, you can tell where you're supposed to be today, any given day, this week, this work week, this month, or any month.

Figure 4-1 shows, for example, someone's schedule during the work week of October 29 – November 2 (a work week comprises Monday through Friday, not Monday through Sunday). All you have to do to find out how busy you are on a particular day, week, or month is gaze at the Calendar window. When someone invites you to a meeting or wants to schedule an appointment, you can open the Calendar and see right away if your schedule permits you to attend the meeting or make the appointment.



**Figure 4-1:**  
The  
Calendar in  
Work Week  
view.

Outlook gives you opportunities to categorize meetings and appointments so that you can tell at a glance what they're all about. Moving a meeting or appointment is simply a matter of dragging it elsewhere in the Calendar window. By double-clicking a meeting or appointment in the Calendar window, you can open a window to find out where the meeting takes place or read notes you jotted down about the meeting. You can even make a bell ring and the Reminder message box appear when a meeting or appointment is forthcoming.

## The Different Kinds of Activities



For scheduling purposes, Outlook makes a distinction between appointments, events, and meetings. Meetings, however, aren't everybody's concern. If your computer is connected to a network and the network uses the Microsoft Exchange Server, you can use Outlook to invite colleagues on the network to come to meetings. But if your computer isn't on a network, don't bother with meetings. Schedule appointments and events instead. You can schedule the following activities:

- ◆ **Appointment:** An activity that occupies a certain time period on a certain day. For example, a meeting that takes place between 11 a.m. and 12 p.m. is an appointment.

- ◆ **Recurring appointment:** An appointment that takes place daily, weekly, or monthly on the same day and same time each day, week, or month. A weekly staff meeting is a recurring appointment. The beauty of recurring appointments is that Outlook enters them weeks and months in advance in the Calendar window. You don't have to re-enter these appointments over and over.
- ◆ **Event:** An activity that lasts all day. A trade show, for example, is an event. A birthday is an event. A day spent on vacation is also an event (is it ever!). On the Calendar, events and recurring events appear first.
- ◆ **Recurring event:** An all-day activity that takes place each week, month, or year. Unromantic (or forgetful) users of Outlook are hereby advised to schedule these recurring events in the Calendar: Valentine's Day, their significant other's birthday, and first-date and wedding anniversaries. Thanks to Outlook, no one will ever accuse you again of being cold-hearted or unromantic.
- ◆ **Meeting:** Same as an appointment except that you can invite others to attend. Scheduling meetings isn't covered in this book. See your network administrator for details.

## *Seeing Your Schedule*

Days on which meetings or appointments are scheduled appear in bold-face in the Date Navigator, the calendar located in the Folder pane (refer to Figure 4-1). Following are techniques for getting around in the Calendar window and viewing your schedule in different ways.

### *Going to a different day, week, or month*

Use these techniques to go to different days, weeks, or months in the Calendar window:



- ◆ **To today:** On the Home tab, click the Today button. Clicking this button selects today's date on your calendar in whatever view you happen to be in.



- ◆ **To the next seven days:** On the Home tab, click the Next 7 Days button to see the next seven days starting with today's date.

- ◆ **To a specific day:** Click a day in the Date Navigator (located on the Folder pane). You can also press Ctrl+G and select a day in the Go To Date dialog box. If you don't see the Date Navigator, go to the View tab, click the Folder Pane button, and choose Normal on the drop-down list.

- ◆ **To the previous or next day, work week, week, or month:** Click a Back or Forward arrow. These arrows are in the upper-left corner of the Calendar window and on either side of the month name in the Date Navigator.



Here's a quick way to go from month to month in the Date Navigator: Click the month name in the Date Navigator and hold down the mouse button. You see a list of month names. Drag the pointer to the name of the month you want to go to.

Use the scroll bar on the right side of the window to travel from hour to hour in Day, Work Week, and Week view. In Month view, manipulating the scroll bar takes you from month to month.

### ***Rearranging the Calendar window***

To get a sense of what is expected of you and where you're supposed to be, go to the Home or View tab and click one of these buttons to rearrange your view of the Calendar window:

- ◆ **Day:** Shows today's date only (press Ctrl+Alt+1).
- ◆ **Work Week:** Shows Monday through Friday of this week (press Ctrl+Alt+2).
- ◆ **Week:** Shows the entire week, Sunday through Saturday (press Ctrl+Alt+3).
- ◆ **Month:** Shows the entire month (press Ctrl+Alt+4).

## ***Scheduling Appointments and Events***

Now that you know how the Calendar window works, the next step is to fill the pages of the Calendar with all kinds of busywork. These pages explain how to schedule activities, schedule recurring activities, and magically transform an e-mail message into a Calendar item. You can find many intriguing shortcuts on these pages.

### ***Scheduling an activity: The basics***

Follow these basic steps to schedule an appointment, recurring appointment, event, or recurring event:

#### **1. Select the day in which you want to schedule the activity.**



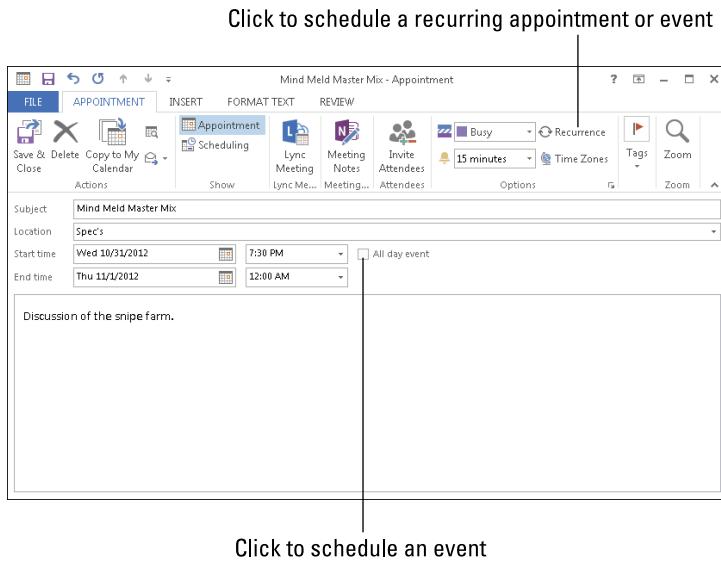
If the activity occupies a certain time period, you can select the time period in Day, Work Week, or Week view and save yourself the trouble of entering a time period in the Appointment window. To select a time period, drag downward in the Calendar window. To create a half-hour appointment, simply double-click a half-hour slot in Day, Work Week, or Week view. The Appointment dialog box opens with the Start and End time entered already.



**2. On the Home tab, click the New Appointment button (or press Ctrl+N).**

As shown in Figure 4-2, you see the Appointment window for naming the activity, stating its starting and ending time, and choosing whether you want to be alerted to its occurrence. In a folder apart from the Calendar, you can display this window by going to the Home tab, clicking the New Items button, and choosing Appointment on the drop-down list.

**Figure 4-2:**  
The  
window for  
scheduling  
activities.



**3. Enter information in the Appointment tab.**

Enter a subject, location (you can open the drop-down list and choose one you've entered before), start date and time, and end date and time. To enter a recurring event or appointment, click the Recurrence button. To enter an event instead of an appointment, click the All Day Event check box.

If the appointment time you enter conflicts with an appointment you've already scheduled, the Appointment window tells you as much. You can click the Calendar button to view the calendar and look for open timeslots.

**4. Open the Reminder drop-down list (located in the Options group) and choose an option if you want to be reminded when the activity is imminent (or choose None if you don't care to be reminded).**

Choose an option from the drop-down list to make the Reminder message box appear before the activity begins. Chapter 5 of this mini-book explains how reminders work.



5. Click the Save & Close button when you finish describing the appointment or event.

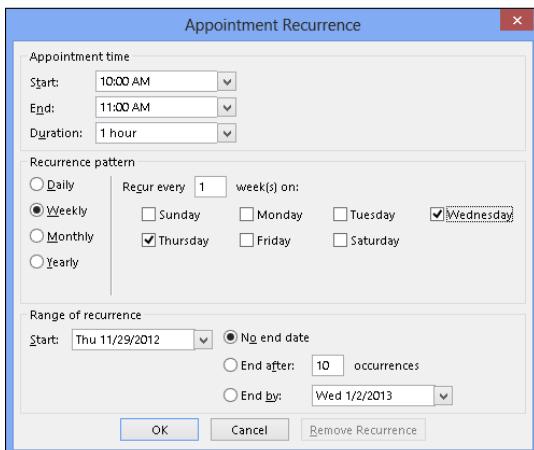
The appointment or event is entered in the Calendar window.

### Scheduling a recurring appointment or event



To enter a recurring appointment or event, click the Recurrence button in the Appointment window (refer to Figure 4-2). You see the Appointment Recurrence dialog box, as shown in Figure 4-3. Describe how persistent the activity is and click OK:

- ◆ **Appointment Time:** Enter the starting and ending time, if you didn't do so already in the Appointment form.



**Figure 4-3:**  
My, this  
appointment  
is  
persistent!

- ◆ **Recurrence Pattern:** Use the options and drop-down lists to describe how often the activity recurs.
- ◆ **Range of Recurrence:** Describe when the recurring events will cease recurring. Choose the No End Date option button if the activity occurs *ad infinitum, ad nauseum* (that's Latin for "unto infinity, most nauseously").

In the Calendar window, recurring activities are marked by the arrow chasing its tail icon.

### Scheduling an event

Select the All Day Event check box in the Appointment window (refer to Figure 4-2) to schedule an event, not an appointment. As I explain earlier, an event is an activity that lasts all day. In the Calendar, events are listed at the start of the day before appointments and meetings.

## Using an e-mail message to schedule an appointment

Here's a neat little trick that can save you time when e-mail correspondence has to do with scheduling an appointment. To get a head start on scheduling, drag the e-mail message from the Inbox folder to the Calendar folder in the Folder pane. On the theory that you want to schedule an appointment around the information

in the e-mail message, the Appointment window appears on-screen. For the subject of the appointment, Outlook enters the subject of the e-mail message. The text of the e-mail message appears in the window as well. Fiddle with the particulars of the appointment and click the Save & Close button.

## *Cancelling, Rescheduling, and Altering Activities*

Cancelling, rescheduling, and altering appointments and events is pretty easy. You can always double-click an activity to open an Appointment or Event window and change the particulars there. And you can take advantage of these shortcuts:



- ◆ **Cancelling:** Select an activity, go the (Calendar Tools) Appointment tab, and click the Delete button. When you click the Delete button to cancel a recurring activity, a drop-down list appears on the Delete button so that you can delete one occurrence of the activity or the entire series.
- ◆ **Rescheduling:** Drag the activity to a new location in the schedule. Release the mouse button when the activity is in the new timeslot.
- ◆ **Changing start and end times:** In Day, Work Week, or Week view, move the pointer over the top or bottom of the activity and start dragging when you see the double arrow.
- ◆ **Changing the description:** Click in the activity's box and start typing or editing.



# **Chapter 5: Tasks, Reminders, and Notes**

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ✓ Creating, handling, and managing tasks
- ✓ Being reminded when deadlines and activities are forthcoming
- ✓ Jotting down digital notes

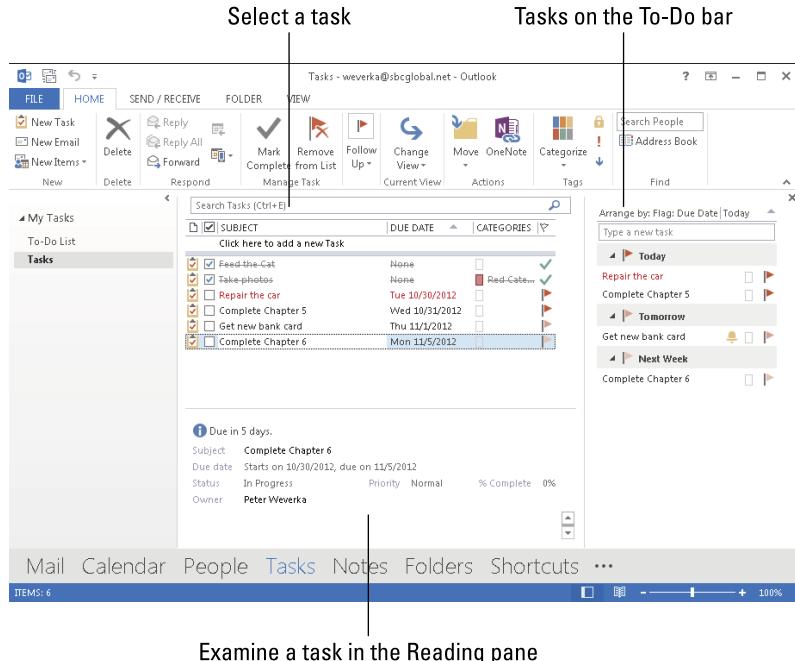
**T**his short chapter describes some Outlook goodies that were neglected in the other chapters of this mini-book. It explains how the Tasks window can help you meet your deadlines and how to be alerted when an activity is looming, a task deadline is arriving, an e-mail message needs a reply, or someone in your Contacts folder needs love and attention. Finally, it explains Outlook's digital stick 'em notes.

## ***Tasks: Seeing What Needs to Get Done***

As shown in Figure 5-1, use the Tasks window to see what needs to be done, when it's due, and whether it's overdue. On this list, due dates clearly show how smartly the whip is being cracked and how close you are to meeting or missing deadlines. A gray line appears across tasks that are done. Tasks that are overdue appear in red. Read on if you want to find out how to enter a task, attach a file to a task, and manage tasks in the Tasks window.

## 498 Tasks: Seeing What Needs to Get Done

**Figure 5-1:**  
The Tasks window shows what has been done and what needs doing.



Examine a task in the Reading pane

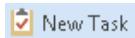


The best way to examine tasks is to display the Reading pane. This way, you can select a task and read notes you've made about it, as shown in Figure 5-1. To display the Reading pane, go to the View tab, click the Reading Pane button, and choose Right or Bottom on the drop-down list.

### Entering a task in the Tasks window

Outlook offers two ways to enter a task in the Tasks window:

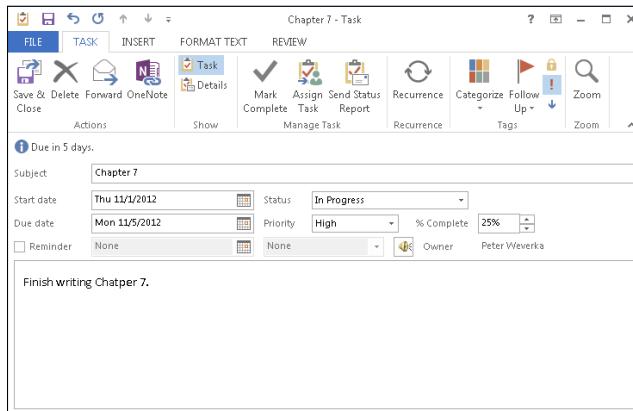
- ◆ **The fast way:** Click at the top of the window where it says “Click here to add a new Task,” type a few words to describe the task, press the Tab key to enter the start date and due date. To enter the date, type it or open the drop-down calendar and choose a date there.
- ◆ **The slow but thorough way:** On the Home tab, click the New Task button (or press Ctrl+N). You see the Task window, as shown in Figure 5-2. In this window are places for describing the task, entering start and due dates, describing the task’s status, prioritizing the task, and jotting down notes about it. Click the Save & Close button when you finish describing the task.



## Attaching a file to a task

Attaching a file to a task is a neat way to get down to work quickly. Instead of fumbling in your computer for a Word document, Excel worksheet, or other type of file to work on, you can open it merely by double-clicking its name in the Tasks window or Reading pane of the Tasks window. To attach a file to a task:

- ✓ Go to the Insert tab in the Task window and click the Attach File button. Then, in the Insert File dialog box, select the file and click the Insert button.
- ✓ Drag and drop a file to the Task window.



**Figure 5-2:**  
Describing a task.

By clicking the Recurrence button in the Task window, you can enter a Sisyphean task that gets repeated over and over again. In the Task Recurrence dialog box, describe how often the task recurs. Recurring tasks are marked in the Tasks window with a special recurring icon.

Click the Details button in the Task window to track the hours you worked on a project, the companies you worked for, and how many miles you logged going to and fro in your work.

## Examining tasks in the Tasks window

Juggling many different tasks is a high art, and to help you get better at it, the Tasks window offers these techniques for examining tasks that need doing:

- ◆ **Choose To-Do List or Tasks in the Folder pane:** Under My Tasks at the top of the Folder pane, choose To-Do List to examine all tasks, including those you fashioned from e-mail messages and Calendar appointments; choose Tasks to see only the tasks you set for yourself in the Tasks folder.
- ◆ **Arrange tasks:** On the View tab, open the Arrange By gallery and choose an option to arrange tasks on the Tasks list by Due Date, Category, Importance, or one of the other options.
- ◆ **Change views:** On the Home or View tab, click the Change View button and choose a View option. For example, choose Overdue or Next 7 Days to focus on the tasks that *really* need doing.



To display tasks on the To-Do bar (refer to Figure 5-1), go to the View tab, click the To-Do Bar button, and choose Tasks. No matter which folder you're viewing in Outlook, you can double-click a task on the To-Do bar and see it in a Task window.

## ***Handling and managing tasks***

When the time comes to manage the tasks in the Tasks window, I hope you are a stern taskmaster. Here's advice for handling and managing tasks:

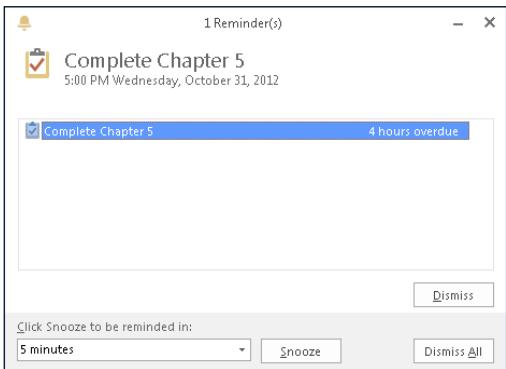
- ◆ **Marking a task as complete:** Click the check box beside the task name in the Tasks window. Outlook draws a line through completed tasks.
- ◆ **Deleting a task:** Select the task and click the Delete button or press the Delete key.
- ◆ **Editing a task:** Double-click a task in the Tasks window to open the Task window and change the particulars there.



## ***Reminders for Being Alerted to Activities and Tasks***

Outlook offers the Reminder message box to alert you when an appointment or event from the Calendar is about to take place (see Chapter 4 of this mini-book), when a task deadline is looming (see the preceding topic in this chapter), when an e-mail message needs a reply (see Chapter 3 of this mini-book), or when someone whose name is in your Contacts folder needs attention (see Chapter 2 of this mini-book).

Figure 5-3 shows the Reminder message box. When Outlook is running and you least expect it, a Reminder message box similar to the one in the figure may appear to keep you on your toes. These pages explain how to handle reminder messages, schedule messages, and make the messages appear when you want them to appear.



**Figure 5-3:**  
The  
Reminder  
message  
box.

Book VI  
Chapter 5

Tasks,  
and Notes

## Handling reminder messages

Select a reminder in the Reminder message box and do the following to handle a reminder:

- ◆ **Dismiss it:** Click the Dismiss button to shelve the reminder notice. If more than one notice appears in the Reminder message box and you want to erase them all, click the Dismiss All button.
- ◆ **Be reminded later:** Click the Snooze button. At the bottom of the dialog box, the Click Snooze to Be Reminded Again In text box tells you when the next reminder message will arrive. To change this setting, open the drop-down list and choose a different time period.
- ◆ **Open the item:** Double-click the reminder to examine the appointment, task, e-mail message, or contact to which the reminder pertains.
- ◆ **Procrastinate:** Click the Close button (the X) in the Reminder message box to make it disappear. To open the message box later, go to the View tab and click the Reminders Window button.



Reminders work only for items that are stored in these folders: Tasks, Calendar, Inbox, and Contacts. Store an item in another folder or a subfolder of one of the folders I just named, and you won't see the Reminder message box when the reminder is due. To make sure you get reminded, store items in these folders: Tasks, Calendar, Inbox, or Contacts.

## Scheduling a reminder message

Follow these instructions to schedule a reminder message:

- ◆ **Calendar appointment or event:** In the Appointment window, open the Reminder drop-down list and choose how many minutes, hours, or weeks in advance of the appointment or event to make the reminder appear.



- ◆ **Task deadline:** In the Task window (refer to Figure 5-2), select the Reminder check box and choose a day and time to be reminded in the drop-down menus.
- ◆ **E-mail message:** In the Message window or Inbox window, click the Follow Up button and choose Add Reminder on the drop-down list. You see the Custom dialog box. Select the Reminder check box and choose a date and time in the drop-down lists. If you enter a date but not a time, the Reminder message box appears at 5:00 p.m.
- ◆ **Contacts name:** In a Contact window or the Contacts window, click the Follow Up button and choose Add Reminder on the drop-down list. The Custom dialog box opens. Treat this dialog box the same way you treat the one for e-mail messages (see the preceding item in this list).

### Making reminders work your way

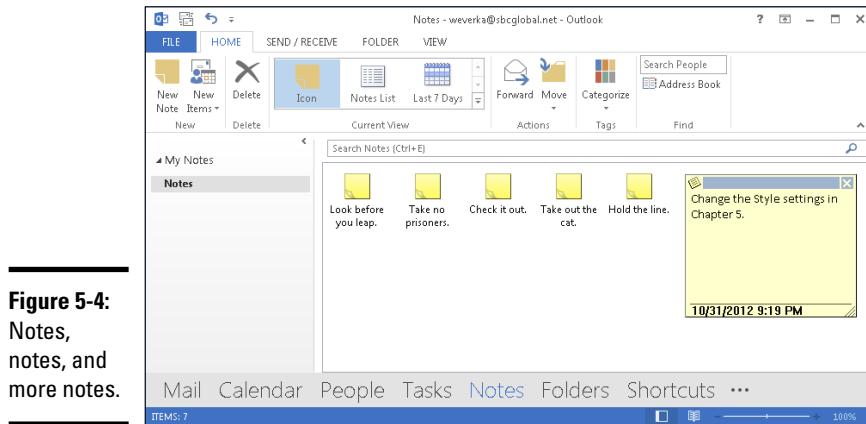
#### FILE

You can do two or three things to make reminders work your way. On the File tab, choose Options to open the Options dialog box. Then follow these instructions to have your way with reminder notices:

- ◆ **Changing the reminder time for appointments and events:** By default, the Reminder message box appears 15 minutes before appointments and events start. To change this setting, go to the Calendar category, and enter a new setting in the Default Reminders drop-down list (look under "Calendar Options").
- ◆ **Changing the default time for task reminders:** When a task's deadline arrives, the Reminders dialog box lets you know at 8:00 a.m. (or when you start Outlook, if you start the program after 8:00 a.m.). To change this default setting, go to the Tasks category and choose a new time from the Default Reminder Time drop-down list.
- ◆ **Playing a different sound (or no sound):** By default, you hear a little chime when the Reminder message box appears on-screen. To hear a different sound or no sound at all, go to the Advanced category of the Options dialog box. To play no sound, deselect the Play Reminder Sound check box. To play a different sound, click the Browse button and then select a .wav sound file in the Reminder Sound File dialog box.

### Making Notes to Yourself

As shown in Figure 5-4, notes resemble the yellow stick 'em notes that you often see affixed to manuscripts and refrigerator doors. Click the Notes button in the Navigation pane to go to the Notes window. Write a note to mark down a deadline, for example, or remind yourself to take out the cat. Here are instructions for doing all and sundry with notes:



**Figure 5-4:**  
Notes,  
notes,  
and  
more notes.

Book VI  
Chapter 5

Tasks,  
Reminders,  
and Notes

- ◆ **Creating a note:** Click the New Note button (or press Ctrl+N) and type the note in the Note window. Then click outside the window. You can create a note when you're not in the Notes window by pressing Ctrl+Shift+N.
- ◆ **Opening a note:** Double-click a note to read it in its Note window.
- ◆ **Forwarding a note:** To forward a note to someone in an e-mail message, right-click the note and choose Forward. A Message window opens so that you can address the message. The note arrives in the form of a file attachment, and the recipient must have Outlook in order to read it.
- ◆ **Deleting a note:** Select the note and click the Delete button or press the Delete key.



# Book VII

# Access 2013

The screenshot shows two Microsoft Access 2013 windows side-by-side.

**Employee List Window:**

- Navigation Pane:** Shows the "Employees" table with fields: ID, Company, Last Name, First Name, E-mail Address, Job Title, and Business Phone.
- Query Editor:** Displays a query with the following settings:
  - Field:** Job Title, First Name, Last Name, Business Phone
  - Table:** Employees
  - Sort:** Job Title
  - Show:**
  - Criteria:** "Sales Representative"
- Results:** A grid showing six records of sales representatives.

Job Title	First Name	Last Name	Business Phone
Sales Representative	Nancy	Freehafer	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Jan	Kotas	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Mariya	Sergienko	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Michael	Nepper	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Robert	Zare	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Anne	Hellung-Larsen	(123)555-0100

**Sales Reps List Window:**

- Navigation Pane:** Shows the "Employees" table with fields: ID, Company, Last Name, First Name, E-mail Address, Job Title, and Business Phone.
- Results:** A grid showing the same six sales representative records as the first window.

Job Title	First Name	Last Name	Business Phone
Sales Representative	Nancy	Freehafer	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Jan	Kotas	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Mariya	Sergienko	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Michael	Nepper	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Robert	Zare	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Anne	Hellung-Larsen	(123)555-0100



Check out more Access features online at [www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio](http://www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio)

# *Contents at a Glance*

<b>Chapter 1: Introducing Access . . . . .</b>	<b>507</b>
What Is a Database, Anyway?.....	507
Tables, Queries, Forms, and Other Objects .....	509
Creating a Database File .....	513
Finding Your Way Around the Navigation Pane .....	514
Designing a Database .....	516
<b>Chapter 2: Building Your Database Tables . . . . .</b>	<b>521</b>
Creating a Database Table.....	521
Opening and Viewing Tables.....	525
Entering and Altering Table Fields .....	526
Field Properties for Making Sure That Data Entries Are Accurate.....	532
Indexing for Faster Sorts, Searches, and Queries.....	540
Establishing Relationships Between Database Tables .....	542
<b>Chapter 3: Entering the Data. . . . .</b>	<b>549</b>
The Two Ways to Enter Data .....	549
Entering the Data in Datasheet View.....	550
Entering the Data in a Form .....	554
Finding a Missing Record .....	556
Finding and Replacing Data.....	557
<b>Chapter 4: Sorting, Querying, and Filtering for Data . . . . .</b>	<b>559</b>
Sorting Records in a Database Table .....	559
Filtering to Find Information .....	560
Querying: The Basics .....	566
Six Kinds of Queries .....	574
<b>Chapter 5: Presenting Data in a Report . . . . .</b>	<b>579</b>
Creating a Report.....	579
Opening and Viewing Reports .....	581
Tweaking a Report.....	581

# *Chapter 1: Introducing Access*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Understanding how databases work
- ✓ Looking at tables, queries, forms, and other database objects
- ✓ Creating a database
- ✓ Opening and closing tables
- ✓ Designing the tables, queries, forms, and the other parts of a database

The word *database* is prone to making most people feel kind of queasy. Can you blame them? Database terminology — record, field, and filter — is the worst of the worst. It even puts other computer terminology to shame. Databases intimidate most people. Even brave souls with a considerable amount of experience in Word and Excel shy away from *Access*, the Office 2013 database program. However, Access can be invaluable for storing and organizing customer lists, inventories, addresses, payment histories, donor lists, and volunteer lists. What's more, Access is easy to use, after you get the hang of it. No kidding!

This chapter introduces databases and the concepts behind databases. It shows you how to create a database and database tables for storing information. The second half of this chapter explains how to design databases. Sorry, but you have to know about database design before you can start fooling with databases. You can't jump right in as you can with the other Office programs.



Access offers a practice database called Northwind that you can experiment with as you get to know your way around databases. To open this database, click the File tab and choose New. Then, in the New window, enter **Northwind** in the Search box and click the Start Searching button.

## *What Is a Database, Anyway?*

Whether you know it, you're no stranger to databases. The address book on your computer is a database. The telephone directory in the desk drawer is, too. A recipe book is also a database in that recipes are categorized under different headings. If you ever arranged a CD collection in a certain way — in alphabetical order or by musical genre, for example — you created a database of CDs, one that makes finding a particular CD easier. Any place where information is stored in a systematic way can be considered a *database*. The only difference between a computerized database and a conventional database, such as a telephone directory, is that storing, finding, and manipulating data is much easier in a computerized database.

## Access database terminology

Stumbling over database terminology is easy. To keep yourself from stumbling, fold back the corner of this page and return here if one of these database terms puzzles you:

- ✓ **Cell:** In a database table, a place for entering one piece of data. Cells appear in a database table where a field and record intersect.
- ✓ **Database:** A systematic way of organizing information so that it can be retrieved and manipulated easily.
- ✓ **Database table:** A collection of data records arranged into well-defined categories, or fields. Most relational databases have more than one table.
- ✓ **Dynaset:** The results of a search for data in a database. (This term is short for dynamic set.) A dynaset is not to be confused with a dinosaur.
- ✓ **Field:** One category of information in a database table. Fields are the equivalent of columns in a conventional table.
- ✓ **Filtering:** Finding the records in a database table that have the same or nearly the same field value. Filtering is a more convenient but not as sophisticated means of querying a database.
- ✓ **Foreign field:** In a relationship between two database tables, the field that is on the “many” side of a one-to-many relationship. The primary key field is on the “one” side.
- ✓ **Form:** Similar to a dialog box, a place with text boxes and drop-down lists for entering records in a database table.
- ✓ **Module:** A Visual Basic procedure whose job is to perform a certain task in Access.
- ✓ **Object:** The catch-all term for the tables, queries, forms, and reports that you create and open starting in the Navigation pane.
- ✓ **Primary key field:** The field in a database table where unique, one-of-a-kind data is stored. To query more than one database table at a time, the tables must have primary key fields.
- ✓ **Query:** A question asked of a database that yields information. Queries can be made of a single database table, several tables, or even other queries.
- ✓ **Record:** In a database table, all the data that has been recorded about one person or thing. A record is the equivalent of a row in a conventional table.
- ✓ **Relational database:** A database program in which data is kept in more than one database table, relationships are established between tables, and queries can be conducted and reports made by assembling data from different tables. Access is a relational database. A database that permits only one table is a *flat-file database*.
- ✓ **Report:** Information gathered from a database and laid out in such a way that it's easy to read and understand. Reports are meant to be printed and distributed.
- ✓ **Sort:** To rearrange records in a database table so that the records appear in alphabetical, numerical, or date order in one field.

Imagine how long it would take to find all the New York addresses in an address list with 10,000 entries. In Access, you can query a 10,000-entry database and find all New York addresses in a matter of seconds. For that matter, you can query to find all the addresses in a certain ZIP code. You can put the list in

alphabetical order by last name or in numerical order by ZIP code. Doing these chores without a computer requires many hours of dreary, monotonous labor.

## Tables, Queries, Forms, and Other Objects

One problem with getting to know a database program — and the primary reason that people are intimidated by databases — is that you can't jump right in. You have to know how data is stored in a database and how it is extracted, to use database terminology. You have to know about *objects*, Access's bland word for database tables, queries, forms, and all else that makes a database a database. To help you get going, these pages offer a crash course in databases. They explain the different *objects* — tables, queries, forms, and reports — that make up a database. Fasten your seatbelt. If you complete the crash course without crashing, you're ready to create your first database.

### Database tables for storing information

Information in databases is stored in *database tables* like the one in Figure 1-1. In a database table, you include one field for each category of information you want to keep on hand. *Fields* are the equivalent of columns in a table. Your first duty when you create a database table is to name the fields and tell Access what kind of information you propose to store in each field. The database table in Figure 1-1 is for storing employee information. It has seven fields: ID, First Name, Last Name, E-mail Address, Business Phone, Company, and Job Title.

A database can comprise one database table or many different tables that are linked together. If you're dealing with a lot of information, storing data in more than one table is to your advantage. Later in this chapter, "Separating information into different database tables" explains why storing data across several database tables is advantageous.

### Forms for entering data

After you create the fields in the database table, you can start entering the records. A *record* describes all the data concerning one person or thing. Although you can enter records straight into a database table, the easiest way to enter a record is with a *form*. Similar to a dialog box, a form has convenient text boxes and drop-down lists for entering information, as shown in Figure 1-2. On a form, you can see clearly what kind of information needs entering in each field.

# 510 Tables, Queries, Forms, and Other Objects

**A record**

**A field**

**Cells**

ID	First Name	Last Name	E-mail Address	Business Phone	Company	Job Title
1	Nancy	Freehafer	nancy@northwindtraders.com	(123)555-0100	Northwind Traders	Sales Representative
2	Andrew	Cencini	andrew@northwindtraders.com	(123)555-0100	Northwind Traders	Vice President, Sales
3	Jan	Kotas	jan@northwindtraders.com	(123)555-0100	Northwind Traders	Sales Representative
4	Mariya	Sergienko	mariya@northwindtraders.com	(123)555-0100	Northwind Traders	Sales Representative
5	Steven	Thorpe	steven@northwindtraders.com	(123)555-0100	Northwind Traders	Sales Manager
6	Michael	Nepper	michael@northwindtraders.com	(123)555-0100	Northwind Traders	Sales Representative
7	Robert	Zare	robert@northwindtraders.com	(123)555-0100	Northwind Traders	Sales Representative
8	Laura	Giussani	laura@northwindtraders.com	(123)555-0100	Northwind Traders	Sales Coordinator
9	Anne	Hellung-Larsen	anne@northwindtraders.com	(123)555-0100	Northwind Traders	Sales Representative
10	Tim	Cencini	andrew@northwindtraders.com	(123)555-0100	Northwind Traders	Vice President
Total		10				

Record: 14 | 1 of 10 | < > No Filter | Search | sheet View

**Figure 1-1:**  
A database table.

**Fields**

Customer Details

Elizabeth Andersen

General Orders

Company: Company H

**Primary Contact**

First Name: Elizabeth  
Last Name: Andersen  
Job Title: Purchasing Representative

**Phone Numbers**

Business Phone: (123)555-0100  
Mobile Phone: (123)555-0101  
Fax Number: (123)555-0101

**Address**

Street: 123 8th Street  
City: Portland  
State/Province: OR  
Zip/Postal Code: 99999  
Country/Region: USA

Record: 14 | 1 of 29 | < > No Filter | Search

**Figure 1-2:**  
A form for entering data.

## Queries for getting the data out

Figure 1-3 shows a simple query for finding out which employees in the database table shown in Figure 1-1 are Sales Representatives. A *query* is a question you ask of a database. The question here is, “Who is a Sales Representative?” Notice the criterion “Sales Representative” in the Job Title field on the Query grid.

The screenshot illustrates the process of running a query in Microsoft Access. It is divided into three main sections:

- Table being queried:** Shows the "Employees" table in the Navigation Pane. The table contains fields: ID, Company, Last Name, First Name, E-mail Address, Job Title, and Business Phone.
- Query criteria:** Shows the "Query1" query in the Query Tools ribbon. The query grid includes columns for Job Title, First Name, Last Name, and Business Phone. The "Criteria" row shows "Sales Representative" under the Job Title column.
- Results of the query:** Shows the "Sales Reps List" query results in the Navigation Pane. The results table displays six records where the Job Title is "Sales Representative". The data is as follows:

Job Title	First Name	Last Name	Business Phone
Sales Representative	Nancy	Freelhafer	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Jan	Kotas	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Maria	Sergienko	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Michael	Nepper	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Robert	Zare	(123)555-0100
Sales Representative	Anne	Hellung-Larsen	(123)555-0100

**Figure 1-3:**  
Querying a  
database.

In an address database, you can use a query to find all the people in a particular ZIP code or state. If information about contributions is stored in the database, you can find out who contributed more than \$500 last year. Queries can get very complex. For example, you can find all the people in a particular city who contributed between \$50 and \$500 and volunteered more than eight hours in the past year. You can construct the query so that it produces each person's name and telephone number, or you can construct it so that all the information you have concerning each person appears in the query results.

When you get junk mail, it likely comes to your mailbox as the result of a database query. Companies routinely buy and sell customer databases. They query these databases to gather the names of people who they believe are well-disposed to purchasing the products they sell. Next time you get junk

mail solicitation, study the letter and ask yourself, “How did I get in this database, and which database query produced my name?” The junk mailer is probably targeting extraordinarily beautiful, intelligent people.

After you create a query, you can save it and run it again. You can use it as the basis for constructing new queries. The information in database tables usually changes over time. Customers change addresses. New products come online, and others are discontinued. But no matter how much the data changes, you can find out exactly what you want to know from a database by running a well-crafted query.

## Reports for presenting and examining data

Figure 1-4 shows a *report*. Reports can be made from database tables or from the results of queries. Reports are usually read by managers and others who don’t get their hands dirty in databases. They’re meant to be printed and distributed so that the information can be scrutinized and analyzed. Access offers many attractive reports. Don’t worry — the program does most of the layout work for you, and exporting reports to a Word file is easy.

The screenshot shows a Microsoft Access window with the title bar "Northwind : Database - C:\Office 2015 - Dummies\Figures\zFiles for Art Shots\Access\Northwind.accdb (Access 2007 - 2013...)". The ribbon tabs are FILE, HOME, CREATE, EXTERNAL DATA, and DATABASE TOOLS. The status bar shows "Peter Weverka" and the date "Monday, November 05, 2012". The main area displays a report titled "Employee Address Book" with a table of data. The table has columns: Employee Name, Address, City, State/Province, Zip/Postal Code, and Country/Region. The data is grouped by initial letters (C, F, G, H, K, N, S) and includes the following rows:

	Employee Name	Address	City	State/Province	Zip/Postal Code	Country/Region
C	Andrew Cencini	123 2nd Avenue	Bellevue	WA	99999	USA
F	Nancy Freehafer	123 1st Avenue	Seattle	WA	99999	USA
G	Laura Giussani	123 8th Avenue	Redmond	WA	99999	USA
H	Anne Hellung-Larsen	123 9th Avenue	Seattle	WA	99999	USA
K	Jan Kotas	123 3rd Avenue	Redmond	WA	99999	USA
N	Michael Nepper	123 6th Avenue	Redmond	WA	99999	USA
S	Mariya Sergienko	123 4th Avenue	Kirkland	WA	99999	USA

**Figure 1-4:**  
A report gathers data for scrutiny and analysis.

## Macros and modules

Macros and modules aren't covered in this mini-book, but they are also database objects. A *macro* is a series of commands. You can store macros for running queries and doing other Access tasks. A *module* is a collection of Visual Basic procedures and declarations for performing tasks in Access.

## Creating a Database File

Creating a database is a lot of work, at least in the beginning. You have to design the database (a subject that I explain shortly). You have to enter the raw information into the tables. You have to construct queries that allow yourself and others to read meaning into the data (see Chapter 4 of this mini-book). By contrast, creating a database file for storing the information is the easy part.

Access offers two ways to create a new database file. You can do it from scratch or get the help of a template. With a template, some of the work is done for you. The template comes with prefabricated queries, forms, and reports. However, templates are for people who already know their way around Access databases. To make use of a template, you have to know how to modify a pre-existing database.



Before you create a database file, start by deciding where in your computer to store it. Unlike other Office programs, Access requires you to save and name a new database file as soon as you create it.

### Creating a blank database file

Follow these instructions to create a blank database file:

#### FILE

1. On the File tab, choose New.

The New window appears.

2. Click the Blank Database icon.

A dialog box appears for choosing the folder where you will store your new database.

3. Click the Browse button.

You see the File New Database dialog box.

4. Select the folder where you want to keep the database file, enter a name in the File Name text box, and click OK.
5. Click the Create button.

The Navigation pane and a blank table appear. Later in this chapter, “Finding Your Way Around the Navigation Pane” explains what this pane is all about. I suggest you go there without delay or deferral.

### ***Getting the help of a template***

As I explain earlier, templates are wonderful if you have the wherewithal to modify them. Access offers prefabricated databases for tracking assets, keeping inventory, scheduling resources, and doing other things. Unfortunately, the only way to find out whether one of the templates is worthwhile is to go to the trouble to create a database from a template, open up the database file, and look around.

Follow these steps to create a database file from a template:

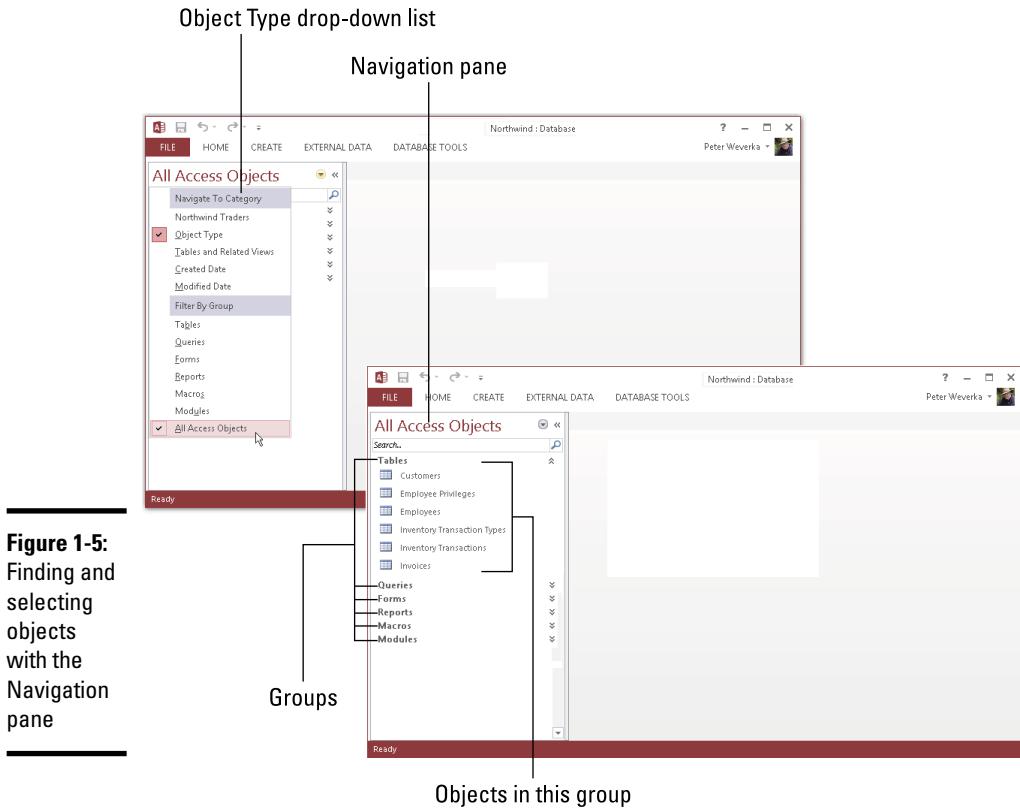
FILE

1. On the File tab, choose New.  
The New window opens.
2. Select a template or use the Search box to obtain a template from Office.com.
3. Click the Browse button.  
The File New Database dialog box opens.
4. Select the folder where you want to keep the database file, enter a name in the File Name text box, and click OK.
5. Click the Create button.

The Navigation pane and a blank table appear. Read on to find out how to find your way around the Navigation pane.

## ***Finding Your Way Around the Navigation Pane***

The first thing you see when you open most database files is a Navigation pane like the one in Figure 1-5. This is the starting point for doing all your work in Access. From here, you can select an object — that horrible word again! — and begin working. Tables, queries, and other objects you create are added to the Navigation pane when you create them.



**Figure 1-5:**  
Finding and  
selecting  
objects  
with the  
Navigation  
pane

Here are shorthand instructions for doing this, that, and the other thing in the Navigation pane:

- ◆ **Choosing an object type:** Select a group (Tables, Queries, Forms, Reports, and so on) from the Object Type drop-down list at the top of the Navigation pane, or select All Access Objects to see all the groups, as shown in Figure 1-5.
- ◆ **Creating a new object:** Go to the Create tab and choose what type of object you want to create. When creating new forms and reports, click a table or query in the Navigation pane to base the new form or report on a table or query.
- ◆ **Opening an object:** To open a database table, query, form, or report, double-click it; select it and press Enter; or right-click it and choose Open on the shortcut menu.

- ◆ **Opening an object in Design view:** The task of formulating database tables, forms, and queries is done in Design view. If an object needs reformulating, right-click it and choose Design View on the shortcut menu.
- ◆ **Finding objects:** Use the Search bar (located at the top of the Navigation pane) to search for objects.
- ◆ **Opening and closing the Navigation pane:** Click the Shutter Bar Open/Close button on upper-right corner of the Navigation pane (or press F11) when you want to shrink it and get it out of the way. You can also resize this pane by clicking the far right edge and dragging it left or right.

## *Designing a Database*

Being a database designer isn't nearly as glamorous as being a fashion designer, but it has its rewards. If you design your database carefully and correctly, it can be very useful to you and others. You can enter information accurately. When the time comes to draw information from the database, you get precisely the information you need. These pages explain everything you need to consider when designing a database. Pay close attention to "Separating information into different database tables" because the hardest part about designing a database is deciding how to distribute information across database tables and how many database tables to have.

### *Deciding what information you need*

The first question to ask yourself is about the kind of information you want to get out of the database. Customer names and addresses? Sales information? Information for inventory tracking? Interview your co-workers to find out what information could be helpful to them. Give this matter some serious thought. Your goal is to set up the database so that every tidbit of information your organization needs can be recorded.



A good way to find out what kind of information matters to an organization is to examine the forms that the organization uses to solicit or record information. These forms show precisely what the organization deems worthy of tracking in a database. Figure 1-6, for example, shows the paper form that players fill out to sign up for a baseball league whose database tables appear in Figure 1-7. Compare Figure 1-6 with Figure 1-7, and you can see that the Players, Teams, and Divisions database tables all have fields for entering information from this form.



**Sunset League  
Sign Up Form**

Name:	Birthday:
Address:	
City:	
State:	Zip:
Home Phone:	
E-mail Address:	
For Official Use Only:	
Division:	
Team Assignment:	

**Figure 1-6:**  
Paper forms  
also have  
fields.

Players	Coaches	Teams	Divisions
Player Number First Name Last Name Street Address City State Zip Code Telephone No E-Mail Address Team Name Fee Paid? Birthday Sex School Attended	Coach Number Team Name First Name Last Name Street Address City State Zip Code Telephone No E-Mail Address	Team Name Division Number Sponsor Team Colors Practice Field Practice Day Practice Time	Division Number Division Name

**Figure 1-7:**  
Plans for  
database  
tables and  
field names.

## Separating information into different database tables

After you know the information you want to record in the database, think about how to separate the information into database tables. Many are tempted to put all the information into a single database table, but because Access is a *relational database*, you can query more than one table at a time, and in so doing, assemble information from different tables.

To see how it works, consider the simple database, as shown in Figure 1-7. The purpose of this little database and its four tables is to store information about the players, coaches, and teams in a baseball league. The Team Name field appears in three tables. It serves as the link between the tables and permits more than one to be queried. By querying individual tables or combinations

of tables in this database, I can assemble team rosters, make a list of coaches and their contact information, list teams by division, put together a mailing list of all players, find out which players have paid their fee, and list players by age group, among other things. This database comprises four tables:

- ◆ **Players:** Includes fields for tracking players' names, addresses, birthdays, which teams they're on, and whether they paid their fees.
- ◆ **Coaches:** Includes fields for tracking coaches' names, addresses, and the names of the teams they coach.
- ◆ **Teams:** Includes fields for tracking team names and which division each team is in.
- ◆ **Divisions:** Includes fields for tracking division numbers and names.

Deciding how many database tables you need and how to separate data across the different tables is the hardest part of designing a database. To make the task a little easier, do it the old-fashioned way with a pencil and eraser. Here are the basic rules for separating data into different tables:

- ◆ **Restrict a table to one subject only:** Each database table should hold information about one subject only — customers, employees, products, and so on. This way, you can maintain data in one table independently from data in another table. Consider what would happen in the little league database (refer to Figure 1-7) if coach and team data were kept in a single table, and one team's coach was replaced by someone new. You would have to delete the old coach's record, delete information about the team, enter information about the new coach, and re-enter information about the team that you just deleted. But by keeping team information separate from coach information, you can update coach information and still maintain the team information.
- ◆ **Avoid duplicate information:** Try not to keep duplicate information in the same database table or duplicate information across different tables. By keeping the information in one place, you have to enter it only once, and if you have to update it, you can do so in one database table, not several.

Entire books have been written about database design, and this book can't do the subject justice. You can, however, store all your data in a single table if the data you want to store isn't very complex. The time you lose entering all the data in a single table is made up by the time you save not having to design a complex database with more than one table.

## Choosing fields for database tables

As I explain earlier, *fields* are categories of information. Each database table needs at least one field. If the table itself is a subject, you could say that its fields are facts about the subject. An Address database table needs fields for recording street addresses, cities, states, and ZIP Codes. A Products database table needs fields for product ID numbers, product names, and unit prices. Just the facts, ma'am. Within the confines of the subject, the database table needs one field for each piece of information that is useful to your organization.

When you're planning which fields to include in a database table, follow these guidelines:

- ◆ Break up the information into small elements. For example, instead of a Name field, create a First Name field and a Last Name field. This way, you can sort database tables by last name more easily.
- ◆ Give descriptive names to fields so that you know what they are later. A more descriptive name, such as *Serial Number*, is clearer than *SN*.
- ◆ Think ahead and include a field for each piece of information your organization needs. Adding a field to a database table late in the game is a chore. You have to return to each record, look up the information, and enter it.
- ◆ Don't include information that can be derived from a calculation. As I explain in Chapter 4 of this mini-book, calculations can be performed as part of a query or be made part of a table. For example, you can total the numbers in two fields in the same record or perform mathematical calculations on values in fields.

## Deciding on a primary key field for each database table



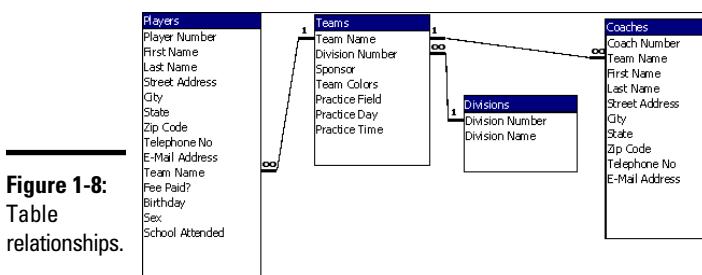
Each database table must have a *primary key field*. This field, also known as the *primary key*, is the field in the database table where unique, one-of-a-kind data is stored. Data entered in this field — an employee ID number, a part number, a bid number — must be different in each record. If you try to enter the same data in the primary key field of two different records, a dialog box warns you not to do that. Primary key fields prevent you from entering duplicate records. They also make queries more efficient. In a query, you tell Access what to look for in database tables, Access searches through the tables, and the program assembles information that meets the criteria. Primary key fields help Access recognize records and not collect the same information more than once in a query.

Social security numbers make good primary key fields because no two people have the same social security number. Invoice numbers and serial numbers also make excellent primary key fields. Returning to the sample baseball league database (refer to Figure 1-7), which fields in the little league database tables are primary key fields? In the Teams table, Team Name can be the primary key field because no two teams have the same name. Division Number can also be a primary key field because divisions in the league are numbered and no two divisions have the same number.

The Players and Coaches database tables, however, present a problem when it comes to choosing a primary key field. Two players might have the same last name, which rules out Last Name as a primary key field. A brother and sister might have the same telephone number, which rules out a Telephone No. field. Because no field holds values that are certain to be different from record to record, I introduce fields called Player Number and Coach Number. For the purpose of this database, players and coaches are assigned numbers. (Chapter 2 in this mini-book explains how Access can assign sequential numbers for you in a database table.)

### ***Mapping the relationships between tables***

If your database includes more than one table, you have to map how the tables relate to one another. Usually, relationships are formed between the primary key field in one table and the corresponding field in another, called the *foreign key*. Figure 1-8 shows the relationships between the tables in the little league database. Because these tables are linked by common fields, I can gather information from more than one table in a query or report. Chapter 2 in this mini-book takes up the subject of linking tables in more detail. For now, when you design your database, consider how to connect the various tables with common fields.



**Figure 1-8:**  
Table  
relationships.

# *Chapter 2: Building Your Database Tables*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Creating database tables
- ✓ Creating fields for a database table
- ✓ Choosing a primary key field
- ✓ Using field properties to make data entries more accurate
- ✓ Indexing fields in a table
- ✓ Forming relationships between tables

**D**atabase tables are the building blocks of a database. They hold the raw data. Relationships between the tables permit you to query and generate reports from several different tables. How well your database tables are put together and how accurately data is entered in the tables determine whether your database is a thing of beauty or a wilted flower.

This chapter explains how to create database tables and fields for the tables. It explains what primary key fields are and how primary key fields and indexed fields make it easier for Access to sort, search, and query a database. This chapter describes how to forge relationships between tables. Fasten your seatbelts. In this chapter, you find numerous tips and tricks for making sure that data is entered accurately in your database tables.

## *Creating a Database Table*

Raw data is stored in database tables (or in a single table if you decide to keep all the data in one place). The first and most important part of setting up a database is creating the tables and entering the data. After you enter the data, you can harass your database for information about the things and people your database keeps track of. If you haven't done so already, read the sections in Chapter 1 of this mini-book that pertain to storing information and designing a database before you create a database table. Chapter 1 of this mini-book explains what database tables are and how to fashion a splendid one.

The business of creating a database table starts on the Create tab. As I explain in detail in the next pages, Access offers three ways to create a database table:

- ◆ **Create the database table from scratch:** Enter and format the fields one at a time on your own.
- ◆ **Get the help of a template:** Get prefabricated fields assembled in a table. This is the way to go if you know Access well, and you can modify database tables and table fields.
- ◆ **Import the database table from another database:** This technique can be an enormous timesaver if you can recycle data that has already been entered in a database table in another Access database.

### ***Creating a database table from scratch***

Creating a table from scratch entails creating the table and then entering the fields one by one. After you open a database file, follow these steps to create a database table from scratch:

- 1. Go to the Create tab.**



- 2. Click the Table Design button.**

The Design window appears. From here, you enter fields for your database table. I hate to be like a City Hall bureaucrat who gives everybody the runaround, but I can't help myself. Turn to "Entering and Altering Table Fields" later in this chapter to find out how to enter fields in a database table.

- 3. Click the Save button on the Quick Access toolbar.**

The Save As dialog box appears.

- 4. Enter a descriptive name for your table and click OK.**

Return to the Navigation pane and you see the name of the table you created. If you don't believe me, click the Tables group to see the names of tables in your database.

### ***Creating a database table from a template***

If you know your way around Access and know how to modify database tables, you can do worse than create a database table with a template. Access offers four table templates: Contacts (for storing contact addresses and phone numbers), Issues (for prioritizing issues), Tasks (for tracking projects, their status, and when they are due), and Users (for storing e-mail addresses). As well as creating a table, Access creates ready-made queries,

forms, and reports to go along with the table. After you create a table with a template, you can remove fields that you don't want. It's always easier to delete fields than add new ones.

Follow these steps to use a template to create a table (and accompanying queries, forms, and reports):

- 1. Close all objects if any objects are open.**

To close an object, click its Close button.

- 2. On the Create tab, click the Application Parts button.**



A drop-down list with options for creating forms and tables appears. (The tables are listed under "Quick Start.")

- 3. Choose Contacts, Issues, Tasks, or Users.**

If there are other tables in your database, a dialog box asks whether you want to create a relationship between the table you're creating and another table.

- 4. Select the There Is No Relationship option button and click Create.**

Later in this chapter, "Establishing Relationships between Database Tables" explains how to create relationships on your own. If you want to create these relationships now and you have the wherewithal to do it, select an option besides There Is No Relationship, choose a table on the drop-down list, and click the Next button to choose which field to forge the relationship with.

- 5. On the Navigation pane, right-click the name of the table you created and choose Design View.**

In Design view, you can see the names of the fields in the table. If the table contains fields you don't want or you want to change the names of the fields, turn to "Entering and Altering Table Fields," later in this chapter.

## *Importing a table from another database*

Few things are more tedious than entering records in a database table. If the records you need were already entered elsewhere, more power to you. Follow these steps to get a database table from another Access database:

- 1. Go to the External Data tab.**



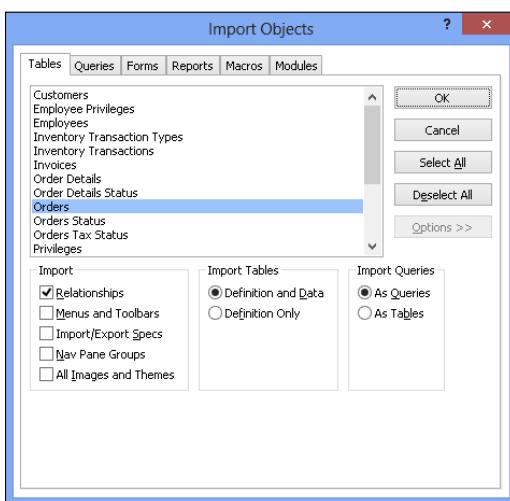
The Get External Data – Access Database dialog box opens.

- Click the Browse button, and in the File Open dialog box, select the Access database with the table you need and click Open.

You return to the Get External Data – Access Database dialog box.

- Select the first option button (Import Tables, Queries, Forms, Reports, Macros, and Modules into the Current Database) and click OK.

You see the Import Objects dialog box, as shown in Figure 2-1.



**Figure 2-1:**  
Fetching a  
table from  
another  
database.

- On the Tables tab, select the database table you want.

You can import more than one database table by clicking several table names or clicking the Select All button.

You can import a table structure — its field names and formats — without importing the data in the table. To do so, click the Options button in the Import Objects dialog box, and under Import Tables, select the Definition Only option button (refer to Figure 2-1).

- Click OK.



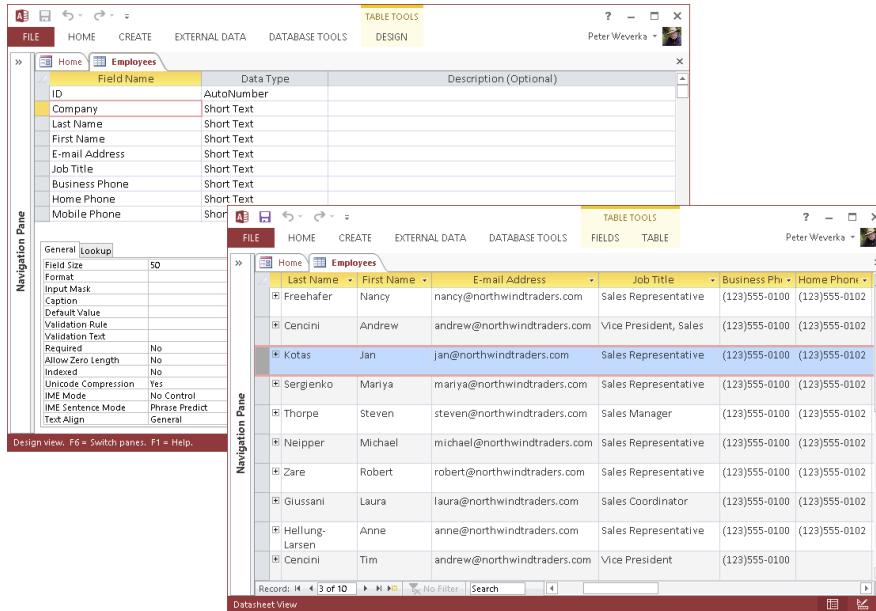
If the table you want to import includes lookup fields, import the tables or queries that the lookup fields refer to as well as the table itself. Without those tables or queries, the lookup fields won't be able to obtain any values. Later in this chapter, "Creating a lookup data-entry list" explains what lookup fields are.



## Opening and Viewing Tables

To open a table, start in the Navigation pane and select the Tables group to view the names of database tables you created. How you open a table depends on whether you want to open it in Datasheet view or Design view. Figure 2-2 illustrates the difference between these views.

- ◆ Datasheet view is for entering and examining data in a table.
- ◆ Design view is for creating fields and describing their parameters.



**Figure 2-2:**  
A table in  
Design view  
(top) and  
Datasheet  
view  
(bottom).

Select a table on the Navigation pane and use one of these techniques to open and view it:

- ◆ **Opening in Design view:** Right-click the table's name in the Navigation pane and choose Design View on the shortcut menu.
- ◆ **Opening in Datasheet view:** On the Navigation pane, double-click the table's name or right-click its name and choose Open on the shortcut menu.

- ◆ **Switching between views with the View button:** On the Home tab, click the View button. This button changes appearance, depending on whether you're in Design view or Datasheet view.
- ◆ **Switching between views on the status bar:** Click the Datasheet View or Design View button on the right side of the status bar.
- ◆ **Switching between views by right-clicking:** Right-click the table's title bar and choose Datasheet View or Design View.

## *Entering and Altering Table Fields*

After you create a database table, the next task is to enter the fields, or if Access created the table for you, alter the fields to your liking. As Chapter 1 of this mini-book explains, fields represent categories of information in a database table. They are the equivalent of columns in a conventional table. Fields determine what kind of information is stored in a database table.

These pages explain how to create a field, choose the right data type, display data in fields, and designate the primary key field in a table. While I'm on the subject of fields, W.C. Fields said, "Horse sense is the thing a horse has which keeps it from betting on people."

### *Creating a field*

Create a field on your own or get Access's help and create a ready-made field. Both techniques are described here. Ready-made fields include fields designed especially for storing currency data, hyperlinks, and date information.

#### *Creating a field on your own*

To create a field on your own, open the table that needs a new field and follow these steps on the (Table Tools) Design tab:

**1. Switch to Design view if you aren't already there.**

To switch to Design view, click the View button on the Home tab and choose Design View on the drop-down list.

**2. If necessary, insert a new row for the field.**

To do so, click in the field that is to go after the new field, and then click the Insert Rows button.





**3. Enter a name in the Field Name column.**

Names can't include periods or be longer than 64 letters, but you don't want to enter a long name anyway because it won't fit very well along the top of the table.

Some database programs don't permit spaces in field names. If you intend to export Access data to other database programs, don't include spaces in field names. Instead, run the words together or separate words with an underscore character, like this: underscore\_character.

**4. Press the Tab key or click in the Data Type column, and choose a data type from the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 2-3.**

Define field properties

Choose a data type

Field Name	Data Type	Description (Optional)
Invoice ID	AutoNumber	
Order ID	Number	
Invoice Date	Date/Time	
Ship Date	Short Text	
Due Date	Short Text	
Tax	Long Text	
Shipping	Number	
Amount Due	Date/Time	

The data type determines the kind of values that users can store in the field. Press F1 for help on data types.

**Figure 2-3:**  
Choosing a  
data type.

Data types classify what kind of information is kept in the field. The next topic in this chapter, "All about data types," explains data types.

**5. If you want, enter a description in the Description column.**

These descriptions can be very helpful when you need to reacquaint yourself with a field and find out what it's meant to do.



In case the name you choose for your field isn't descriptive enough, you can give the field a second name. The name appears in Datasheet view, on forms, and on reports. To enter a second, descriptive field name, enter the name in the Caption field on the General tab of the Design view window.

Later in this chapter, "Field Properties for Making Sure That Data Entries Are Accurate" demonstrates how to define field properties in the Design view window to make it easier for data-entry clerks to enter the data.

### ***Taking advantage of ready-made fields***

You can get a head start creating a field by using a ready-made field and then modifying it, if necessary. To create a ready-made field, switch to Datasheet view and select the field that you want your new field to go after. Then, on the (Table Tools) Fields tab, click a field button or click the More Fields button and choose the name of a field on the drop-down list.

Look for field buttons in the Add & Delete group. Field buttons include Short Text, Number, and Currency. After you create your new field, switch to Design view and examine its field properties. Some of these properties may need modifying. See "Field Properties for Making Sure That Data Entries Are Accurate" for information about field properties.

### ***All about data types***

To choose a data type for a field, open the Data Type drop-down list in the Design view window and choose a data type (see Figure 2-3). Data types are the first line of defense in making sure that data is entered correctly in a table. Try to enter text in a field assigned the Currency or Number data type, and Access tells you that your entry is invalid. You get the chance to fix your mistake as soon as you make it.

Table 2-1 explains the options on the Data Type drop-down list. Choose data types carefully because how you classify the data that is entered in a field determines how you can query the field for information. Querying for a number range is impossible, for example, if the field you're querying isn't classified as a Number or Currency field on the Data Type drop-down list.

**Table 2-1****Data Types for Fields**

<b>Data Type</b>	<b>What It's For</b>
Short Text	For storing text (city names, for example), combinations of text and numbers (street addresses, for example), and numbers that won't be calculated or used in expressions (telephone numbers, ZIP Codes, and social security numbers, for example). A Short Text field can be no longer than 255 characters.
Long Text	For storing long descriptions. Fields assigned this data type can hold 65,535 characters, not that anyone needs that many.
Number	For storing numbers to be used in calculations or sorting. (If you're dealing with monetary figures, choose the Currency data type.)
Date/Time	For storing dates and times and being able to sort data chronologically or use dates and times in calculations.
Currency	For storing monetary figures for use in calculations and sorting.
AutoNumber	For entering numbers in sequence that will be different from record to record. Use the AutoNumber data type for the primary key field if no other field stores unique, one-of-a-kind data. (See "Designating the primary key field," later in this chapter.)
Yes/No	For storing True/False, Yes/No, On/Off type data. Choose this data type to enter data with a check box in the field. When the box is selected, the data in the field is True, Yes, or On, for example.
OLE Object	For embedding an OLE link in your Access table to another object — an Excel worksheet or Word document. (Consider the using the Attachment data type as well.)
Hyperlink	For storing hyperlinks to other locations on the Internet or on the company intranet.
Attachment	For storing an image, spreadsheet, document, chart, or other file. Attaching a file to a database table is similar to attaching a file to an e-mail message. Attachments do not require as much disk space as OLE objects because they don't require Access to store a bitmap image of the original file.
Calculated	For entering a mathematical expression that uses data from other fields in the database table.
Lookup Wizard	For creating a drop-down list with choices that a data-entry clerk can choose from when entering data. See "Creating a lookup data-entry list," later in this chapter.

## Deciding how the data in fields is displayed

To decide how numbers, times, dates, currency values, and Yes/No data are displayed in fields, go to the General tab in the Field Properties part of the Design view and choose an option on the Format drop-down list. The display options are useful indeed. Choose the Currency format, for example, and you don't have to enter the dollar signs or commas when you enter a dollar figure in the field because the dollar sign and commas are entered for you.

Moreover, you can create a format of your own by entering these placeholder symbols in the Format text box:

- ✓ @ (at symbol): A character or space is required. For example, @@@@-@@ inserts a hyphen between the first set of numbers and the second. You don't have to enter the hyphen, only the text or numbers.
- ✓ & (ampersand): A character or space is optional. For example, @@@@-&@@& in a ZIP Code field tells Access that either entry is correct, a five-character ZIP code

or a five-character plus the four extra characters ZIP code.

- ✓ > (right bracket): Displays all characters in the field as uppercase. Merely by entering this symbol in the Format text box, you can display all entries in the field as uppercase without the data-entry clerk having to hold down the Shift or Caps Lock key.
- ✓ < (left bracket): Displays all characters in the field as lowercase.

General	Lookup
Format	Currency
Decimal Places	General Number: 3456.789
Input Mask	Currency \$3,456.79
Caption	Euro €3,456.79
Default Value	Fixed 3456.79
Validation Rule	Standard 3,456.79
Validation Text	Percent 123.00%
Required	Scientific 3.46E+03
Indexed	No
Text Align	General

## Designating the primary key field

As I explain in Chapter 1 of this mini-book, no database table is complete without a primary key field. The *primary key field* identifies which field in the table is unique and contains data that differs from record to record. Duplicate values and null values can't be entered in the primary key field. (A *null value* indicates a missing or unknown value.) Choosing a primary key field is so important that Access doesn't let you close a table unless you choose one.



If no field in your table holds one-of-a-kind data that is different from record to record, get around the problem with one of these techniques:

- ◆ **The AutoNumber data type:** Create a new field, give it a name, choose AutoNumber from the Data Type drop-down list (refer to Figure 2-3), and make your new field the primary key field. This way, when you

enter data, Access enters a unique number to identify each record in the field. (To generate random numbers instead of sequential numbers in an AutoNumber field, go the General tab of the Design view window, open the New Values drop-down list, and choose Random instead of Increment.)

- ◆ **A multiple-field primary key:** Combine two or more fields and designate them as the primary key. For example, if you're absolutely certain that no two people whose names will be entered in your database table have the same name, you can make the First Name and Last Name fields the primary key. The problem with multiple-field primary keys, however, is that it takes Access longer to process them, and you run the risk of entering duplicate records.

Follow these steps on the (Table Tools) Design tab to designate a field in a database table as the primary key field:

1. **In Design view, select the field or fields you want to be the primary key.**

To select a field, click its *row selector*, the small box to its left; Ctrl+click row selectors to select more than one field.

2. **Click the Primary Key button.**



A small key symbol appears on the row selector to let you know which field or fields is the primary key field.

To remove a primary key, click its row selector and then click the Primary Key button all over again.

## *Moving, renaming, and deleting fields*

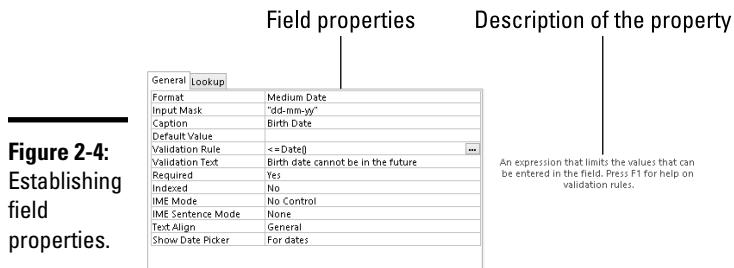
Suppose that you need to move, rename, or delete a field. To do so, switch to Design view and follow these instructions:

- ◆ **Moving a field:** Select the field's row selector (the box to its left) and release the mouse button. Then click again and drag the selector up or down to a new location.
- ◆ **Renaming a field:** Click in the Field Name box where the name is, delete the name that's there, and type a new name.
- ◆ **Deleting a field:** Click in the Field Name box, go to the (Table Tools) Design tab, and click the Delete Rows button. You can also right-click the field and choose Delete Rows on the shortcut menu.



## *Field Properties for Making Sure That Data Entries Are Accurate*

Unfortunately, entering the data in a database table is one of the most tedious activities known to humankind. And because the activity is so dull, people are prone to make mistakes when they enter data in a database table. One way to cut down on mistakes is to take advantage of the Field Properties settings on the General tab in the Design view window. Figure 2-4 shows the General tab.



**Figure 2-4:**  
Establishing  
field  
properties.

These properties determine what can and can't be entered in the different fields of a database table. Some of the settings are invaluable. The Field Size property, for example, determines how many characters can be entered in a field. In a State field where two-letter state abbreviations are to be entered, make the Field Size property 2 to be certain that no one enters more than two characters. If the majority of people you're tracking in an address database live in New York, enter NY in the Default Value property. That way, you spare data-entry clerks from having to enter NY the majority of the time. They won't have to enter it because NY is already there.

The Lookup tab in the Field Properties part of the Design view window is for creating a data-entry drop-down list. It, too, is invaluable. If you happen to know that only four items can be entered in a field, create a drop-down list with the four items. That way, data-entry clerks can choose from a list of four valid items instead of having to enter the data themselves and perhaps enter it incorrectly. (See "Creating a lookup data-entry list," later in this chapter.)

### *A look at the Field Properties settings*

Especially if yours is a large database, you're encouraged to study the field properties carefully and make liberal use of them. The Field Properties settings safeguard data from being entered incorrectly. Following is a description of the different properties (listed here in the order in which they appear

in the Design view window) and instructions for using them wisely. Which properties you can assign to a field depends on which data type the field was assigned.

### Field Size

In the Field Size box for Text fields, enter the maximum number of characters that can be entered in the field. Suppose that the field you're dealing with is ZIP Code, and you want to enter five-number ZIP codes. By entering **5** in the Field Size text box, only five characters can be entered in the field. A sleepy data-entry clerk couldn't enter a six-character ZIP code by accident.

For Number fields, select a value for the field size from the drop-down list. Table 2-2 describes these field sizes.

**Table 2-2**

**Numeric Field Sizes**

<b>Field Size</b>	<b>Description</b>
Byte	An integer that holds values from 0–255.
Integer	An integer that holds values from -32,768–+32,767.
Long Integer	An integer that holds values from -2,147,483,648–+2,147,483,647.
Single	A floating point number that holds large values up to 7 significant digits.
Double	A floating point number that holds large values up to 15 significant digits.
Replication ID*	A globally unique identifier (GUID) required for replication; this number is generated randomly.
Decimal	A number with defined decimal precision. The default precision is 0, but you can set the scale up to 28.

\*Not supported by the .accdb file format.



The Single, Double, and Decimal field size options hold different ranges of numbers. For now, if you need to store numbers after the decimal point, choose the Double field size so that you cover most situations.

### Format

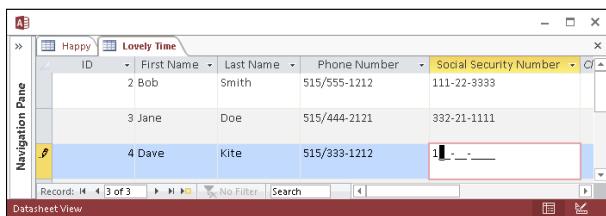
Earlier in this chapter, “Deciding how the data in fields is displayed” explains the Format property. Click the drop-down list and choose the format in which text, numbers, and dates and times are displayed.

### Decimal Places

For a field that holds numbers, open the Decimal Places drop-down list and choose how many numbers can appear to the right of the decimal point. This property affects how numbers and currency values are displayed, not their real value. Numbers are rounded to the nearest decimal point. The Auto option displays the number of decimal places that the format you choose on the Format drop-down list permits.

### *Input Mask*

For Text and Date field types, this feature provides a template with punctuation marks to make entering the data easier. Telephone numbers, social security numbers, and other numbers that typically are entered along with dashes and parentheses are ideal candidates for an input mask (another ridiculous database term!). On the datasheet, blank spaces appear where the numbers go, and the punctuation marks stand at the ready to receive numbers, as shown in Figure 2-5.



The screenshot shows a Microsoft Access datasheet with four columns: ID, First Name, Last Name, and Phone Number. The last row (Record 4) has a highlighted input mask in the Phone Number column. The input mask consists of the digits '1' and '2' followed by three underscores ('\_\_\_'). The underscore character is used as a placeholder for a digit, indicating where the user should enter a number. The rest of the row contains standard text entries: '4', 'Dave', 'Kite', and '515/333-1212'.

**Figure 2-5:**  
Input masks.

In the Input Mask text box, enter a **0** where numbers go, and enter the punctuation marks where they go. For example, enter (000) 000-0000 or 000/000-0000 to enter an input mask for a telephone number like the one shown in Figure 2-5. You can also create input masks by clicking the three dots beside the Input Mask text box. Doing so opens the Input Mask Wizard dialog box, where you can fashion a very sophisticated input mask.

### *Caption*

If the field you're working on has a cryptic or hard-to-understand name, enter a more descriptive name in the Caption text box. The value in the Caption property appears as the column heading in Datasheet view, as a label on forms, and on reports in place of the field name. People entering data understand what to enter after reading the descriptive caption.

### *Default Value*

When you know that the majority of records require a certain value, number, or abbreviation, enter it in the Default Value text box. That way, you save yourself the trouble of entering the value, number, or abbreviation most of

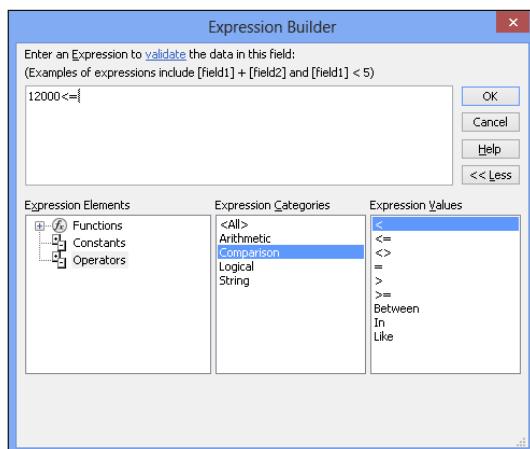
the time because the default value appears already in each record when you enter it. You can always override the default value by entering something different.

### Validation Rule

As long as you know your way around operators and Boolean expressions, you can establish a rule for entering data in a field. For example, you can enter an expression that requires dates to be entered in a certain time frame. Or you can require currency figures to be above or below a certain value. To establish a validation rule, enter an expression in the Validation Rule text box. To use dates in an expression, the dates must be enclosed by number signs (#). Here are some examples of validation rules:

>1000	The value you enter must be over 1000.
<1000	The value you enter must be under 1000.
>=10	The value you enter must be greater than or equal to ten.
<>0	The value you enter cannot be zero.
>=#1/1/2013#	The date you enter must be January 1, 2013, or later.
>=#1/1/2012# And <#1/1/2013#	The date you enter must be in the year 2012.

To get help forming expressions, click the three dots beside the Validation Rule text box to open the Expression Builder, as shown in Figure 2-6, and build an expression there. Try clicking the Help button in the Expression Builder dialog box. Doing so opens the Access Help program, where you can get advice about building expressions.



**Figure 2-6:**  
Creating a validation rule.

### ***Validation Text***

If someone enters data that violates a validation rule that you enter in the Validation Rule text box, Access displays a standard error message. The message reads, “One or more values are prohibited by the validation rule set for [this field]. Enter a value that the expression for this field can accept.” If this message is too cold and impersonal for you, you can create a message of your own for the error message dialog box. Enter your friendly message in the Validation Text text box.

### ***Required***

By default, no entry has to be made in a field, but if you choose Yes instead of No in the Required box and you fail to make an entry in the field, a message box tells you to be sure to make an entry.

### ***Allow Zero Length***

This property allows you to enter zero-length strings in a field. A *zero-length string* — two quotation marks with no text or spaces between them (“”) — indicates that no value exists for a field. To see how zero-length strings work, suppose that your database table calls for entering e-mail addresses. If you didn’t know whether one person has an e-mail address, you would leave the E-Mail Address field blank. If, however, you knew that the person didn’t have an e-mail address, you could indicate as much by entering a zero-length string. Choose Yes on the drop-down list to permit zero-length strings to be entered in the field.

### ***Indexed***

Indicates that the field has been indexed. As “Indexing for Faster Sorts, Searches, and Queries” explains later in this chapter, indexes make sorting a field and searching through a field go faster. The word *No* appears in this text box if the field has not been indexed.

### ***Unicode Expression***

Choose Yes from the Unicode Expression drop-down list if you want to compress data that is now stored in Unicode format. Storing data this way saves on disk space, and you probably don’t want to change this property.

### ***Smart Tags***

If you intend to enter Smart Tags in the field, indicate which kind you enter by clicking the three dots next to the Smart Tags box and choosing an option in the Action Tags dialog box.

### ***Text Align***

This property determines how the text is aligned in a column or on a form or report. Select General to let Access determine the alignment, or select Left, Right, Center, or Distribute.

### ***Text Format***

Available on Long Text fields, this drop-down list lets you choose to allow rich text in the field. With this property set to Rich Text, you can make different words bold, italic, underline, and change font sizes and colors. Set it to Plain Text for plain, boring text with no formatting. I wonder why that isn't the setting's name.

### ***Append Only***

Available on Long Text fields, this lets you add data only to a Long Text field to collect a history of comments.

### ***Show Date Picker***

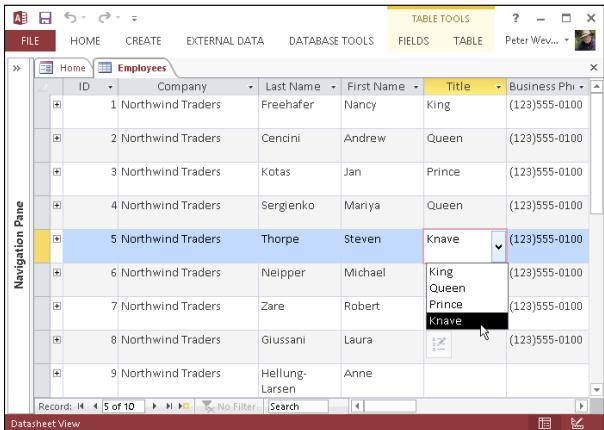
Available on Date/Time fields, choosing For Dates places a button next to the column that data-entry clerks can click to open a calendar and select a date instead of typing numbers.

## ***Creating a lookup data-entry list***

Perhaps the best way to make sure that data is entered correctly is to create a data-entry drop-down list. Whoever enters the data in your database table has to only choose an item from the list, as shown in Figure 2-7. This saves time and prevents invalid data from being entered. Access offers two ways to create the drop-down list:

- ◆ **Create the list by entering the items yourself:** Go this route when you're dealing with a finite list of items that never change.
- ◆ **Get the items from another database table:** Go this route to get items from a column in another database table. This way, you can choose from an ever-expanding list of items. When the number of items in the other database table changes, so does the number of items in the drop-down list because the items come from the other database table. This is a great way to get items from a primary key field in another table.

## 538 Field Properties for Making Sure That Data Entries Are Accurate



The screenshot shows the Microsoft Access application in Datasheet View. The 'Employees' table is open. The 'Title' column is currently active, displaying a dropdown menu with four options: 'King', 'Queen', 'Prince', and 'Knave'. The 'Knave' option is selected. The 'Navigation Pane' on the left shows the table structure. The status bar at the bottom indicates 'Record: 14 4 5 of 10'.

ID	Company	Last Name	First Name	Title	Business Ph...
1	Northwind Traders	Freehafer	Nancy	King	(123)555-0100
2	Northwind Traders	Cencini	Andrew	Queen	(123)555-0100
3	Northwind Traders	Kotas	Jan	Prince	(123)555-0100
4	Northwind Traders	Sergienko	Mariya	Queen	(123)555-0100
5	Northwind Traders	Thorpe	Steven	Knave	(123)555-0100
6	Northwind Traders	Neipper	Michael	King	(123)555-0100
7	Northwind Traders	Zare	Robert	Queen	(123)555-0100
8	Northwind Traders	Giussani	Laura	Prince	(123)555-0100
9	Northwind Traders	Hellung-Larsen	Anne	Knave	(123)555-0100

**Figure 2-7:**  
A so-called  
lookup list.

### *Creating a drop-down list on your own*

Follow these steps to create a drop-down, or *lookup*, list with entries you type:

1. In Design view, click the field that needs a drop-down list.
2. Open the Data Type drop-down list and choose Lookup Wizard, the last option in the list.

The Lookup Wizard dialog box appears.

3. Select the second option, I Will Type in the Values That I Want, and click the Next button.
4. Under Col1 in the next dialog box, enter each item you want to appear in the drop-down list; then click the Next button.

You can create a multicolumn list by entering a number in the Number of Columns text box and then entering items for the list.

5. Enter a name for the field, if necessary, and click the Finish button.

Switch to Datasheet view and open the drop-down list in the field to make sure that it displays properly.

To remove a lookup list from a field, select the field, go to the Lookup tab in the Design view window, and choose Text Box on the Display Control dropdown list.



To see what's on a drop-down list, select the field for which you created the list, switch to Design view, and select the Lookup tab in the Field Properties pane. As shown in Figure 2-8, you can edit the list by editing or removing items in the Row Source text box. Be sure that a semi-colon (;) appears between each item.

**Figure 2-8:**  
Lookup field properties.

Source of control's data

### Getting list items from a database table

Before you can get list items from another database table, you might want to define a relationship between the tables; it's not required, but it's recommended. Later in this chapter, "Establishing Relationships between Database Tables," explains how to do that. Follow these steps to get items in a dropdown list from another database table:

1. In Design view, click the field that needs a list, open the Data Type drop-down list, and choose Lookup Wizard.

The Lookup Wizard dialog box appears.

2. Select the first option, I Want the Lookup Field to Get the Values from Another Table or Query, and click Next.

You see a list of tables in your database.

3. Select the table with the data you need and click the Next button.

The dialog box shows you a list of available fields in the table.

4. Select the field where the data for your list is stored.

5. Click the > button.

The name of the list appears on the right side of the dialog box, under Selected Fields.

6. Click the Next button.

Normally, lists are displayed in ascending order, but you can select a field and click the Ascending button to reverse the order of the list. (Note that the button turns into the Descending button.)

7. Click the Finish button.

If you're so inclined, you can change the width of the list before clicking Finish, but you can always do that on the datasheet, as Chapter 3 of this mini-book explains.



Suppose that you obtain the items from the wrong field or wrong database table? To fix that problem, select the field for which you created the list, and in Design view, select the Lookup tab (refer to Figure 2-8). Choose Text Box instead of Combo Box on the Display Control drop-down list and start all over.

## ***Indexing for Faster Sorts, Searches, and Queries***

*Indexing* means to instruct Access to keep information about the data in a field or combination of fields. Because Access keeps this information on hand, it doesn't have to actually search through every record in a database table to sort data, search for data, or run a query. In a large database table, indexes make sorting, searching, and querying go considerably faster because Access looks through its own data rather than the data in tables.

The performance difference between querying a database table that has and has not been indexed is astonishing. That's the good news. The bad news is that indexes inflate the size of Access files.

By default, the field you choose as the primary key field is indexed. I recommend choosing other fields for indexing if you often conduct queries and searches. When you choose a field to index, choose one with data that varies from record to record and is likely to be the subject of searches, sorts, and queries. That way, the index means something. However, a field with data that is mostly the same from record to record is a waste of a good index, not to mention disk space. By the way, Access automatically indexes fields whose names include the words *ID*, *Code*, *Num*, and *Key*, the idea being that these fields are likely to store essential information worthy of indexing.

### ***Indexing a field***

To index a field, switch to Design view, select the field you want to index, and on the General tab of the Field Properties part of the Design window, open the Indexed drop-down list and choose one of these options:

- ◆ **Yes (Duplicates OK):** Indexes the field and allows duplicate values to be entered in the field.
- ◆ **Yes (No Duplicates):** Indexes the field and disallows duplicate values. If you choose this option, the field works something like a primary key field in that Access does not permit you to enter the same value in two different records.

### ***Indexing based on more than one field***

An index created on more than one field is called a *multifield index*. Multifield indexes make sorting, querying, and searching the database table go faster. They are especially valuable in sorting operations where records in one field are usually the same but records in a companion field are different. In a large database table that stores names and addresses, for example, many names in the Last Name field are the same, so indexing on the Last Name field isn't worthwhile, but indexing the First Name and Last Name fields helps Access distinguish records from one another.

Follow these steps to generate a multifield index:



1. Switch to Design view, and on the (Table Tools) Design tab, click the Indexes button.

You see the Indexes dialog box, as shown in Figure 2-9. The dialog box lists the primary key field already because it's indexed by default. You also see any fields to which you set the Indexed property to Yes.

Index Name	Field Name	Sort Order
City	City	Ascending
Company	Company	Ascending
First Name	First Name	Ascending
Last Name	Last Name	Ascending
Postal Code	ZIP/Postal Code	Ascending
PrimaryKey	ID	Ascending
State/Province	State/Province	Ascending
Last-First Name	First Name	Ascending
	Last Name	Ascending
<input type="text"/> Index Properties		
The name of the field to be indexed.		

**Figure 2-9:**  
The Indexes dialog box.

2. On a blank line in the dialog box, enter a name for the index in the Index Name column.
3. In the Field Name column, open the drop-down list and choose the first field you want for the multifield index.
4. In the next row, leave the Index Name blank and choose another field name from the drop-down list.

This field is the second field in the index. You can use as many as ten different fields in a multifield index. In Figure 2-9, two fields are in a multifield index: First Name and Last Name.

5. Choose Descending in the Sort Order column if you want the field sorted in descending order.

Most of the time, you want leave the Sort Order set to Ascending because most people read from A to Z.

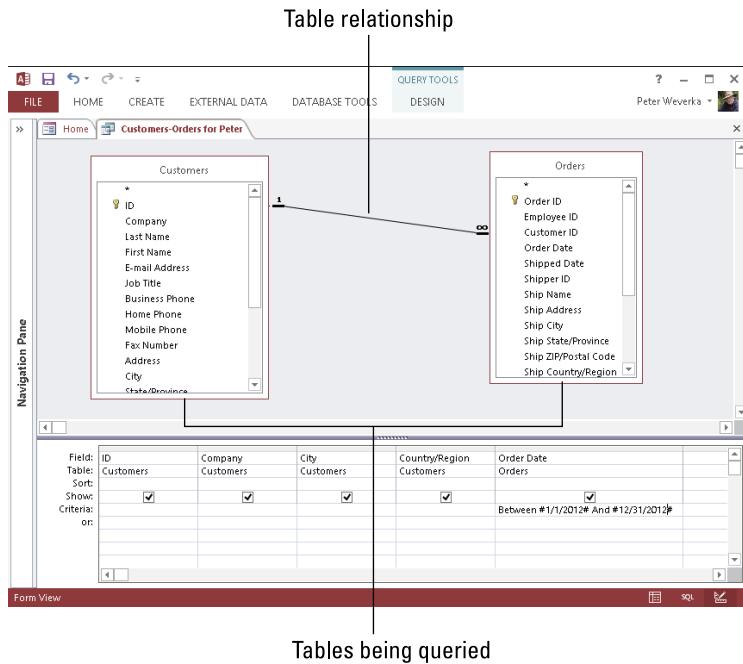
6. Click the Close button.

Click the Indexes button in Design view if you need to return to the Indexes dialog box and change how fields are indexed.

## Establishing Relationships Between Database Tables

As Chapter 1 of this mini-book explains, you have to establish relationships between tables if you want to query or generate reports with data from more than one database table. Relationships define the field that two different tables have in common. To understand why relationships between tables are necessary, consider the query shown in Figure 2-10. The purpose of this query is to list all companies that ordered items in 2012, list the companies by name, and list the city and country where each company is located.

**Figure 2-10:**  
To conduct  
a query with  
more than  
one table,  
the tables  
must have a  
relationship.



Consider what Access does to run this query:

- ◆ Access deals with two database tables, Customers and Orders.
- ◆ In the Orders table, Access looks in the Order Date field to isolate all records that describe orders made in the year 2009. The expression for finding these records is shown on the Criteria line in Figure 2-10: Between #1/1/2012# And #12/31/2012#.

- ◆ Because there is a relationship between the ID field in the Customers table and the Customer ID field in the Orders table — because the two fields hold the same type of information — Access can match the 2012 records it finds in the Orders table with corresponding records in the Customers table. Where the Customer ID of a 2012 record in the Orders table and an ID in the Customers table match, Access assembles a new record and places it in the query results.
- ◆ Data for determining which records appear in the query results is found in the Order Date field in the Orders table. But the information compiled in the query results — customer IDs, company names, cities, and countries — comes from fields in the Customers table. Thanks to the relationship between the ID and Customer ID fields in these tables, Access can draw upon information from both tables.

### ***Types of relationships***

The vast majority of relationships between tables are *one-to-many relationships* between the primary key field in one database table and a field in another. Table relationships fall in these categories:

- ◆ **One-to-many relationship:** Each record in one table is linked to many records in another table. The relationship in Figure 2-10 is a one-to-many relationship. Each ID number appears only once in the ID field of the Customers table, but in the Orders table, the same Customer ID number can appear in many records because the same customer can order many different products. When you link tables, Access creates a one-to-many relationship when one of the fields being linked is either a primary key field or an indexed field assigned the No (No Duplicates) setting. (See “Indexing for Faster Sorts, Searches, and Queries” earlier in this chapter.)
- ◆ **One-to-one relationship:** Two fields are linked. This relationship is rare and is sometimes used for security purposes.
- ◆ **Many-to-many relationship:** This complex relationship actually describes crisscrossing relationships in which the linking field is not the primary key field in either table. To create a many-to-many relationship, an intermediary table called a *junction table* is needed. This relationship is rare.



Sometimes, fields in separate tables that hold the same data also have the same name, but that isn't necessary. For example, a field called ZIP Code in one table might be called Postal Code in another. What matters is that fields that are linked have the same data type. For example, you can't create a relationship between a text field and a number field.

## Placing tables in the Relationships window

The first time you open the Relationships window, you see the Show Table dialog box. Use this dialog box to tell Access which tables to put in the Relationships window. Ctrl+click to select tables and then click the Add button.

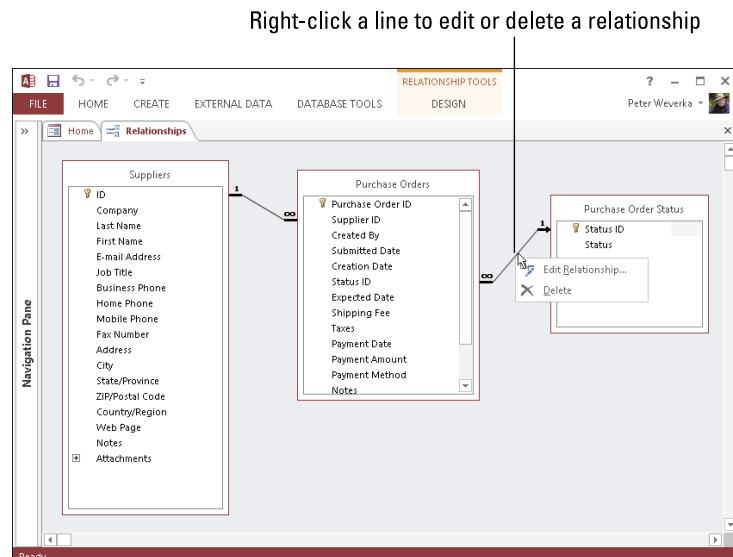
If you create a new database table and want to place it in the Relationships window, click the Relationships button to display the Relationships window; then click the Show Table button on the (Relationship Tools) Design tab. The Show Table dialog box appears. Select your new table and click the Add button.



## Handling tables in the Relationships window



To display the tables in a database and link tables to one another or see how they're related to each other, go to the Database Tools tab and click the Relationships button. You see the Relationships window, as shown in Figure 2-11. Notice the field names in each table. The primary key field is shown with a picture of a key next to it. Lines in the window show how relationships have been established between tables.



**Figure 2-11:**  
The  
Relationships  
window.

Apart from linking tables in the Relationships window (a subject I explain shortly), use these techniques on the (Relationship Tools) Design tab to handle tables:

- ◆ **Repositioning and resizing the tables:** Each table appears in its own window. Drag tables from place to place, drag a border to change a window's size, and scroll to see field names.
- ◆ **Removing a table from the window:** Select the table and click the Hide Table button.
- ◆ **Removing all tables from the window:** Click the Clear Layout button and choose Yes in the confirmation box.
- ◆ **Placing tables back on the window:** Click the Show Table button, and in the Show Table dialog box, select the tables and click the Add button.
- ◆ **Placing all tables back in the window:** To put all the tables with relationships back in the window, click the All Relationships button.
- ◆ **Studying a table's relationships:** Click the Clear Layout button to remove all tables from the window; then place the table back in the window, select it, and click the Direct Relationships button. All tables that are related to the selected table are added to the layout.



To generate and print an Access report that shows how tables in your database are linked, go to the (Relationship Tools) Design tab and click the Relationship Report button. Then save the report and print it. Chapter 5 of this mini-book explains reports.

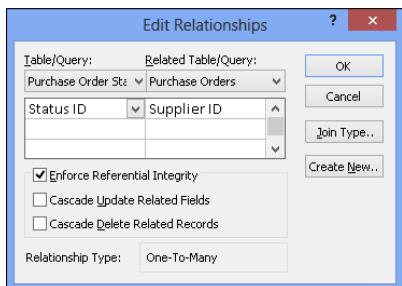
## *Forging relationships between tables*

On the (Relationship Tools) Design tab (refer to Figure 2-11), make sure that both tables are on display and then follow these steps to forge a relationship between them:

1. **Click to select the field in one table; then hold down the mouse button, drag the pointer to the field in the other table where you want to forge the link, and release the mouse button.**

You see the Edit Relationships dialog box, as shown in Figure 2-12. This dragging between table fields is probably the most awkward thing you undertake in Office 2013! If you do it right, a bar appears where the pointer is while you move it over the second table, and the names of the two fields appear in the Edit Relationships dialog box.

Notice the Relationship Type at the bottom of the dialog box. If you accidentally create a link to the wrong field, choose the correct field from the drop-down list in the dialog box.



**Figure 2-12:**  
Creating  
a table  
relationship.

## 2. Select the Enforce Referential Integrity check box.

If you don't select this box, the relationship between the tables is indeterminate, instead of being a one-to-many relationship. *Referential integrity* (another hideous database term!) has to do with whether values in the two different fields corroborate each other.

## 3. Select Cascade options if you so choose.

One of these options is excellent, and the other is dangerous:

- **Cascade Update Related Fields:** If you change a value on the “one” side of the relationship, a matching value on the “many” side changes as well to preserve referential integrity. For example, if you create a multifield primary key of First Name and Last Name and then change the name of someone, the related fields in the other table change automatically to preserve referential integrity. This is a great way to make sure that information is up to date.
- **Cascade Delete Related Records:** If you delete a record in the “one” table, all records in the “many” table to which the deleted record is linked are also deleted. For example, if you delete an employee from the “one” table, all records in the “many” table that include that employee are deleted! Access warns you before making the deletion, but still! This option is dangerous, and I don’t recommend selecting it.

## 4. Click the Create button to forge the relationship.

In the Relationships window (refer to Figure 2-11), a line is drawn between the table fields. The number 1 appears on the “one” side of the relationship and the infinity symbol ( $\infty$ ) appears on the “many” side.



After you create a one-to-many relationship between tables with the Enforce Referential Integrity check box selected, you can't enter a value in the “many” table unless it's already in the “one” table. For example, suppose that the “one” table includes a primary key field called Employee Number, and this field is linked to a field in the “many” table that is also called Employee Number. If you enter an Employee Number in the “many” table that isn't in the “one” table, Access warns you that it can't be done without

violating referential integrity. The best way to solve this problem is to create a lookup data-entry list in the “many” table with values from the primary key field in the “one” table. See “Creating a lookup data-entry list,” earlier in this chapter.

## ***Editing table relationships***

In the Relationships window (refer to Figure 2-11), select the line that represents the relationship between two database tables and follow these instructions to edit or remove the relationship:



- ◆ **Editing the relationship:** Click the Edit Relationships button or right-click and choose Edit Relationship. You see the Edit Relationships dialog box, where you can overhaul the relationship (the previous topic in this chapter explains how).
- ◆ **Deleting the relationship:** Press the Delete key or right-click and choose Delete. Then select Yes in the confirmation box.



# *Chapter 3: Entering the Data*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Entering data on a datasheet
- ✓ Changing the look of a datasheet
- ✓ Creating a form for entering data
- ✓ Finding records in a field or database table
- ✓ Finding and replacing your data

**A**t last — you can start entering the data. If you set up your database tables, named the fields, and established relationships between the tables, you're ready to go. This short chapter explains how to enter the data in a database table. It shows you how to enter data on a datasheet or enter data by way of a form. This chapter also describes how to find missing records in case one goes astray.

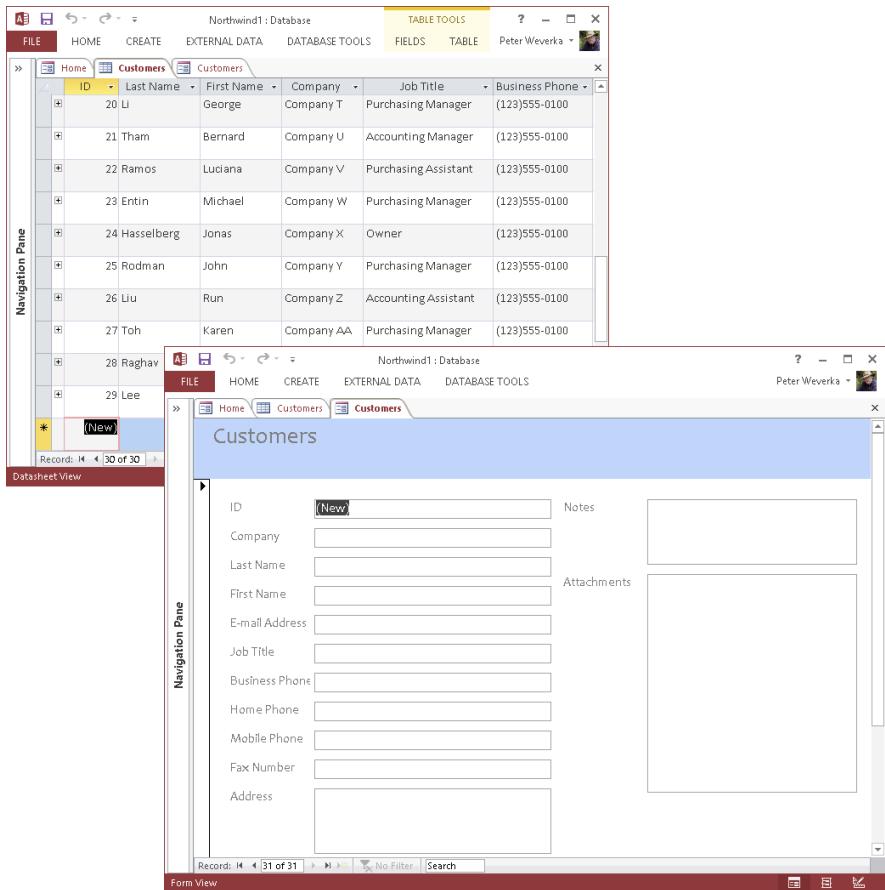
There's no getting around it: Entering data is truly a tedious activity. But if you set up the fields well and take advantage of input masks and other field properties, it isn't so bad. It's better than stepping on a shovel blade, anyway.

## *The Two Ways to Enter Data*

When it comes to entering data in a database table, you can take your pick between Datasheet view and a form. Figure 3-1 compares and contrasts the two. Here are the advantages of entering data in Datasheet view:

- ◆ Many records appear simultaneously.
- ◆ You can compare data easily between records.
- ◆ You can sort by column with the commands in the Sort and Filter group on the Home tab (as discussed in Chapter 4 of this mini-book).
- ◆ You can scroll up or down to locate records.

## 550 Entering the Data in Datasheet View



**Figure 3-1:**  
Entering  
records in  
Datasheet  
view (left)  
and in a  
form (right).

Here are the advantages of entering the data in a form:

- ◆ You don't have to scroll left or right to see all the fields.
- ◆ Getting from field to field is easier.
- ◆ Fields are clearly labeled so that you always know what to enter.

## Entering the Data in Datasheet View

Entering data in Datasheet view is like entering data in a conventional table. As with a table, a datasheet has columns and rows. Records are entered in rows, and each column represents a field. Fans of Datasheet view like being able to look at a dozen records simultaneously. For fans of Datasheet view, these pages explain how to enter data in a datasheet and change a datasheet's appearance.



Database tables open in Datasheet view when you double-click their names in the Navigation pane. But if you happen to be gazing at a table in Design view, click the View command on the Home tab or the Datasheet View button on the status bar.

## Entering data

In Datasheet view, the bottom of the window tells you how many records are entered in the database table and which record the cursor is in. To enter a new record, move to a new, empty row and start entering the data. To create a new row, do one of the following:



- ◆ On the Home tab, click the New button.
- ◆ Click the New (Blank) Record button in the Datasheet navigation buttons. These buttons are located at the bottom of the Datasheet view window.
- ◆ Scroll to the bottom of the Datasheet view window and begin typing in the row with an asterisk (\*) next to it.
- ◆ Press Ctrl++ (the plus key).

A pencil icon appears on the row selector to let you know which record you're dealing with. To get from field to field, click in a field, press the Tab key, or press Enter. Table 3-1 lists keyboard shortcuts for getting around in a datasheet.

**Table 3-1**

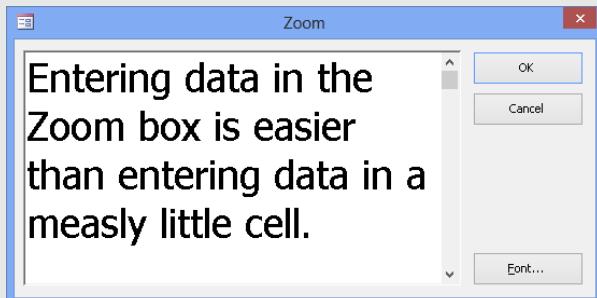
**Datasheet Shortcuts**

<i>Press...</i>	<i>To Move...</i>
↑	To the previous record. You can also press the Previous button on the Navigation buttons.
↓	To the next record. You can also press the Next button.
Tab or Enter	To the next field in the record.
Shift+Tab	To the previous field in the record.
Home	To the first field in the record.
End	To the last field in the record.
Ctrl+Home	To the first field in the first record. You can also press the First button.
Ctrl+End	To the last field in the last record. You can also press the Last button.
Page Up	Up one screen.
Page Down	Down one screen.

## Entering data in the Zoom box

To make putting a long entry in a field a little easier, Access offers the Zoom box. Instead of having to stay within the narrow confines of a datasheet field, you can press Shift+F2 to open the Zoom box and enter the data there. After you click OK, the data is entered in the

field. The Zoom box is especially convenient for entering data in a Memo field. As Chapter 2 in this mini-book explains, Memo fields can hold a whopping 65,535 characters. Move the cursor into a field and press Shift+F2 to open the Zoom box and read all the text in the field.



To delete a record, click its row selector and press the Delete key or the Delete button (located on the Home tab). You can also click in a record, go to the (Table Tools) Fields tab, and click the Delete button there.

### ***Two tricks for entering data quicker***

In a database table with many fields, it's sometimes hard to tell what data to enter. When the pointer is in the sixth or seventh field, for example, you can lose sight of the first field, the one on the left side of the datasheet that usually identifies the person or item whose record you're entering.

To freeze a field so that it appears on-screen no matter how far you travel toward the right side of the datasheet, right-click the column's heading and choose Freeze Fields on the shortcut menu. To unfreeze the fields, right-click the column heading and choose Unfreeze All Fields on the shortcut menu. You can freeze more than one field by dragging across field names at the top of the datasheet before choosing to freeze the columns. Is it getting cold in here?

Another way to handle the problem of not being able to identify where data is supposed to be entered is to hide columns in the datasheet. To perform this trick, select the columns you want to hide by dragging the pointer across their names; then right-click the column heading and choose Hide Fields on the shortcut menu. To see the columns again, right-click any column heading and choose Unhide Fields on the shortcut menu. You see the Unhide Columns dialog box. Select the fields that you want to see on the datasheet.



The fastest way to hide a column is to drag the border between it and the next column to the left until the column disappears.

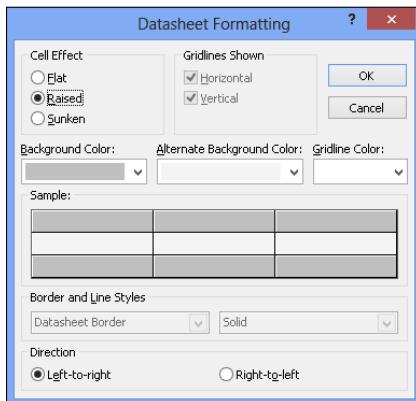
## ***Changing the appearance of the datasheet***

To make the datasheet a little less cluttered and unwieldy, try experimenting with its appearance. Access offers a few handy shortcuts for doing just that:

- ◆ **Rearranging columns:** To move a column to a different location, click its name at the top of the datasheet and drag it to the left or right.
- ◆ **Resizing columns:** Move the pointer between column names at the top of the datasheet, and when you see the double-headed arrow, click and start dragging. To make a column just large enough to fit its widest entry, move the pointer between column names and double-click when you see the double-headed arrow.
- ◆ **Changing fonts:** The default font for a datasheet is Calibri 11-point, but the Home tab offers commands for changing fonts and font sizes. Look for these commands in the Text Formatting group.
- ◆ **Changing the look of gridlines:** On the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Gridlines button and choose options to change the number and thickness of gridlines.
- ◆ **Alternate row colors:** Open the drop-down list on the Alternate Row Color button and choose a color for alternating rows on the datasheet.



To experiment all at one time with the many options for changing a datasheet's appearance, go to the Home tab and click the Text Formatting group button. You see the Datasheet Formatting dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-2. If you want a customized look for all the datasheets you work on, visit the File tab and select Options. Then go to the Datasheet category in the Options dialog box and go to town.



**Figure 3-2:**  
The  
Datasheet  
Formatting  
dialog box.

## Entering the Data in a Form

Forms like the one shown in Figure 3-3 are very convenient for entering data. The labels tell you exactly what to enter. Personally, I prefer entering data in a form to entering data on a datasheet. On a form, you take it one step — make that one record — at a time. Not looking at a dozen records makes the task of entering data a little easier. These pages explain how to create a form for entering information in a database table. You also get tried-and-true advice for moving around with the Navigation buttons.

The screenshot shows an 'Employee Details' form for 'Andrew Cencini'. The form has tabs for 'General' (selected) and 'Orders'. The 'General' tab contains fields for First Name (Andrew), Last Name (Cencini), Company (Northwind Traders), and Job Title (empty). To the right of these fields is a photo of Andrew Cencini and links for E-mail (andrew@northwindtraders.com) and Web Page (http://northwindtraders.com). The 'Phone Numbers' section includes Business Phone ((123)555-0100), Home Phone ((123)555-0102), Mobile Phone (empty), and Fax Number ((123)555-0103). The 'Address' section includes Street (123 2nd Avenue), City (Bellevue), State/Province (WA), Zip/Postal Code (99999), and Country/Region (USA). A 'Notes' section contains the text: 'Joined the company as a sales representative, was promoted to sales manager and was then named vice president of sales.' At the bottom, there is a navigation bar with 'Record: 14 - 1 of 11' and other buttons.

**Figure 3-3:**  
A form.

## Creating a form



Fortunately, the Form Wizard makes it very simple to create a form for entering information in a database table. All you have to do is start the wizard, choose the table, and make a couple of design decisions. To create a form, go to the Create tab and click the Form Wizard button. You see the first of several Form Wizard dialog boxes. Answer these questions and keep clicking the Next button until the time comes to click Finish:

- ◆ **Tables/Queries:** From the drop-down list, choose the name of the database table you need to enter data in.
- ◆ **Selected Fields:** Click the >> button to enter all the field names in the Select Fields box.
- ◆ **Layout:** Select the Columnar option button. The other layouts aren't much good for entering data in a table. If you choose Tabular or Datasheet, you may as well enter data straight into the datasheet rather than rely on a form.
- ◆ **Title:** Name your form after the table you created it for so you can identify the form easily in the Navigation pane.

To delete a form, right-click its name in the Navigation pane and choose Delete on the shortcut menu.

Book VII  
Chapter 3

## Entering the data

To open a form and begin entering data in its database table, display the form's name in the Navigation pane and then double-click the form's name. You can also right-click the name of the form and choose Open.



To enter data in a form, click the New (Blank) Record button. This button is located with the Navigation buttons at the bottom of the form window. A new, empty form appears. Start typing. Press the Tab key, press the Enter key, or click to move from field to field. You can move backward through the fields by pressing Shift+Tab. If you enter half a record and want to start over, press the Esc key to empty the current field. Press Esc again to empty all the fields.

The Navigation buttons at the bottom of the form window tell you how many records are in the database table and which record you're looking at. From left to right, the Navigation buttons take you to the first record, previous record, next record, and last record.

## Finding a Missing Record

Sometimes data goes astray. You scroll through a datasheet but simply can't find the item or record you need so badly. For times like those, Access offers the Find command. Use the command to scour a database for errant information.



Open the database table with the data that needs finding. If you know in which field the data is located, click in the field. You can save a little time that way. Then, on the Home tab, click the Find button (or press Ctrl+F). You see the Find and Replace dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-4. Fill in the dialog box as follows:



**Figure 3-4:**  
Finding  
data.

- ◆ **Find What:** Enter the item you're looking for. If you're looking for a null value, enter **null** in this text box. Enter “” (two double-quotation marks) to find zero-length strings. Table 3-2 describes the wildcard characters you can use in searches.
- ◆ **Look In:** If you clicked in a field before choosing the Find command, Current Field is selected in this box. To search the entire database table, choose Current Document on the drop-down list.
- ◆ **Match:** Choose the option that describes what you know about the item. Choosing the Any Part of Field option can make for a long search. For example, a search for the letters *chin* finds, among others, China, Ching, and itching — any word with the consecutive letters *chin*.
- ◆ **Search:** Choose an option — All, Up, or Down — that describes which direction to start searching.
- ◆ **Match Case:** If you know the combination of upper- and lowercase letters you're after and you enter the combination in the Find What text box, select this check box.
- ◆ **Search Fields As Formatted:** If you're searching for a field that has been formatted a certain way, select this check box and make sure that the text or numbers you enter in the Find What text box are formatted correctly. For example, if you're searching for a record with the date July 31, 1958, and you choose the *mm/dd/yyyy* format, enter the date as 07/31/1958.

Click the Find Next button to conduct the search. The item might be found in more than one location. Keep clicking Find Next (or pressing Alt+F) until you find the item or you die of thirst on the hot sands of the digital desert.

**Table 3-2****Wildcard Characters for Searches**

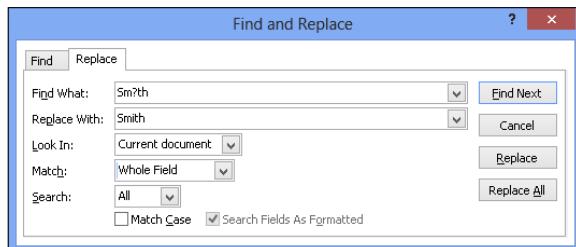
<b>Character</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example</b>
?	A single character	b?t finds <i>bat</i> , <i>bet</i> , <i>bit</i> , and <i>but</i> .
#	A single numeric digit	9411# finds 94111, 94112, 94113, and so on.
*	Any group of consecutive characters	t*o finds <i>to</i> , <i>two</i> , and <i>tattoo</i> .
[xyz]	Any character in the brackets	t[aio]pper finds <i>tapper</i> , <i>tipper</i> , and <i>topper</i> , but not <i>tupper</i> .
[!xy]	Any character not in the brackets	p[!io]t finds <i>pat</i> and <i>pet</i> , but not <i>pit</i> and <i>pot</i> .
x-z	Any character in a range of characters	[1-4]000 finds 1000, 2000, 3000, and 4000, but not 5000. The range must be in ascending order.



To quickly find the first value of a search term, start typing in the Search box in the form window or in Datasheet view. As soon as you start typing, the cursor moves to the first instance of the data you enter. The search box is located at the bottom of the screen.

## Finding and Replacing Data

Finding and replacing data is remarkably similar to finding data. The difference is that you enter data in the Replace With text box as well as the familiar Find What text box and other option boxes. Figure 3-5 shows the Replace tab of the Find and Replace dialog box. Does it look familiar? If it doesn't, read the preceding topic in this chapter.



**Figure 3-5:**  
Replacing data.



To find and replace data, go to the Home tab and click the Replace button (or press Ctrl+H). You see the Replace tab of the Find and Replace dialog box. After you enter the replacement data in the Replace With text box, make sure that Whole Field is selected in the Match drop-down list. Conducting a find-and-replace operation with Any Part of Field or Start of Field selected in the Match drop-down list can have unintended consequences. For example, a search for *Brook* also finds *Brooklyn*, *Middlebrook*, and other words that include *brook*. Blindly replacing the *brook* text string with *stream* produces, for example, *Streamlyn* and *Middlestream*.



Unless you're as confident as a gambler with four aces, don't click the Replace All button to replace all instances of the text or numbers in the database table or field you're searching in. Instead, click the Replace button to find and replace text or numbers one instance at a time.

By the way, you can also find and replace data with an update query. Chapter 4 of this mini-book covers update queries.

# ***Chapter 4: Sorting, Querying, and Filtering for Data***

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ✓ Sorting, or rearranging, records in a database table
- ✓ Filtering records in a table to see only the records you need
- ✓ Querying to collect and examine information stored in a database
- ✓ Looking at different kinds of queries

**N**ow that you've laid the groundwork, you can put your database through its paces and make it do what databases are meant to do — provide information of one kind or another. This chapter explains how to pester a database for names, addresses, dates, statistical averages, and what not. It shows how to sort records and filter a database table to see records of a certain kind. You also find out how to query a database to get it to yield its dark secrets and invaluable information.

## ***Sorting Records in a Database Table***

*Sorting* rearranges records in a database table so that the records appear in alphabetical, numerical, or date order in one field. By sorting the records in a database, you can locate records faster. What's more, being able to sort data means that you don't have to bother about the order in which you enter records because you can always sort them later to put them in a particular order.

### ***Ascending vs. descending sorts***

Records can be sorted in ascending or descending order:

- ♦ **Ascending order:** Arranges records in alphabetical order from A to Z, numbers from smallest to largest, and dates chronologically from earliest to latest.
- ♦ **Descending order:** Arranges text from Z to A, numbers from largest to smallest, and dates chronologically from latest to earliest.

## Sorting records

Follow these steps to sort the records in a database table:



1. In Datasheet view, click anywhere in the field by which you want to sort the records.



2. On the Home tab, click the Ascending or Descending button.

You can also right-click a field name at the top of a column and choose Sort A to Z or Sort Z to A on the shortcut menu. The menu choices change based on the type of data. For Number fields, you can sort smallest to largest and vice versa; for Date fields, choose to sort oldest to newest, or vice versa.



You can sort on more than one field by clicking a field and sorting it, and then clicking a second field and sorting it. Just make sure you sort the fields in reverse order. For example, to sort the database by the Employee, Customer, and Order ID fields, click in Order ID and sort it in ascending order; click in Customer and sort it in ascending order; click in Employee and sort it in ascending order. If you mess up and forget how the table is sorted, click the Remove Sort button. This button is located on the Home tab underneath the Ascending and Descending buttons.

## Filtering to Find Information

*Filtering* isolates all the records in a database table that have the same field values or nearly the same field values. Instead of all the records in the table appearing on the datasheet, only records that meet the filtering criteria appear, as shown in Figure 4-1.

The screenshot shows a Microsoft Access datasheet for the 'Orders' table. The table has columns: Employee, Shipping Fee, Order Date, Shipped Date, and Customer. There are four records for 'Anne Hellung-Larsen'. The 'Customer' column is highlighted. A 'Remove filters' button is visible above the table. The status bar at the bottom indicates 'Filtered'.

Employee	Shipping Fee	Order Date	Shipped Date	Customer
Anne Hellung-Larsen	\$200.00	1/15/2006	1/22/2006	Company AA
Anne Hellung-Larsen	\$60.00	4/5/2006	4/22/2006	Company Z
Anne Hellung-Larsen	\$200.00	4/22/2006	4/22/2006	Company AA
Anne Hellung-Larsen	\$60.00	6/5/2006	6/5/2006	Company Z
	\$0.00	11/7/2012		

**Figure 4-1:**  
Results of  
a filtering  
operation.

## The difference between a filter and a query

The biggest difference between filtering and querying is that you can save a query and call upon it more than once. Queries are kept at the ready in the Navigation pane. A filter, on the other hand, is as good as the first time you use it, although you can save and run it as a query. Filters apply to a single database table, whereas you can query to assemble information from more than one table. In the results of a query, you can include as many fields as you want, but the results of a filtering operation show all the fields in the database table, regardless of whether you want them.

When it comes to examining data, a query is more sophisticated than a filter. Although you can use standard comparison operators to find records by filtering, querying gives you the opportunity to use complex expressions as well as comparison operators. You can filter, for example, to find people whose income is greater than or less than a certain amount. However, because you can write expressions in queries, you can query to find people whose income falls within a certain range.

The basic idea behind filtering is to choose a field value in the database table and use it as the standard for finding or excluding records. For example, you can find all the orders for a particular customer, all orders taken in the month of April, or all the orders that a particular customer placed in April. For that matter, you can filter by exclusion and see the records of all the orders in a database table *not* taken in April and *not* for a particular customer. Filtering is useful when you need to find records with specific information in a single database table.

### Different ways to filter a database table

For comparison purposes, here are shorthand descriptions of the four ways to filter a database table. All filtering operations begin in Datasheet view on the Home tab. These techniques are described in detail in the upcoming pages.



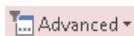
◆ **Filter by Selection:** Select all or part of a field in the database table, click the Selection button, and choose a filtering option. Access isolates all records with the data you select. This method works best when you can't quite decide what you're looking for. It's the only filtering method that permits you to look for data found in a whole field or part of a field. You can also filter data that doesn't match the selection.



◆ **Filter for Input:** Select the field you want to filter with and click the Filter button. A dialog box appears so you can choose values in the field or enter comparison operators to describe the numeric or date values you are filtering for. With this technique, you can filter for data ranges.



♦ **Filter by Form:** Click the Advanced button and choose Filter by Form. You see a form with one drop-down list for each field in your table. From the drop-down lists, make choices to describe the records you're looking for and then click the Toggle Filter button. This method is more flexible than the others because you can conduct OR as well as AND filtering operations. For example, you can isolate the records of people named Smith who also live in California, or the people who live in California or New York.



♦ **Advanced Filter/Sort:** Click the Advanced button and choose Advanced Filter/Sort. The Filter window opens. Drag the name of the field you want to filter onto the grid. Then choose a Sort option and enter a search criterion. This filtering technique has more in common with queries than filters. Truth be told, the Advanced Filter/Sort command is merely a way to query a single table.



After you filter a database table, you can run a second (or third or fourth) filter operation to filter the data even more and further isolate the data you are looking for.



### ***“Unfiltering” a database table***

You can tell when you're looking at a database table that has been filtered rather than a database table with all its records because the word *Filtered* appears at the bottom of the window next to the Navigation buttons (refer to Figure 4-1). Moreover, the filter icon appears in the field names of columns used in the filter operation and the Toggle Filter button on the Ribbon is highlighted.

When you have finished filtering a database table, use one of these techniques to “unfilter” it and see all the records in the table again:



♦ Click the word *Filtered* at the bottom of the window. You can click this word again or click the Toggle Filter button to repeat the filter operation.



♦ On the Home tab, click the Toggle Filter button. You can click this button again to repeat the filter operation.

♦ On the Home tab, click the Advanced button and choose Clear All Filters on the drop-down list. Choosing this option kills the filter operation; you can't repeat it except by reconstructing it in the Datasheet window.

### ***Filtering by selection***

Filtering by selection is the fastest way to filter a database table. It's also the best way when you're not sure what you're looking for because you can search for partial words and phrases. Follow these steps to filter by selection:

- 1. Display the database table that needs filtering in Datasheet view.**
- 2. Tell Access how to filter the records.**

To find all records with the same value or text in a particular field, simply click in a field with the value or text. If you aren't quite sure what to look for, select part of a field. For example, to find all names that start with the letters *St*, select *St* in one of the name fields.



- 3. On the Home tab, click the Selection button and choose a filtering option.**

The options you see are specific to the cell you clicked or the data you selected in Step 2. For example, if you click a Last Name field that contains the name *Smith*, your options include Equals “Smith” and Does Not Contain “Smith.” Select an option to include or exclude records in the filter operation.

## Filtering for input

Filtering for input gives you the advantage of being able to filter for data ranges. Use this technique to isolate records that fall within a numerical or date range. Follow these steps to filter for input:

- 1. Display the database table that you want to filter in Datasheet view.**
- 2. Select the field with the data you want to use for the filter operation.**
- 3. On the Home tab, click the Filter button.**



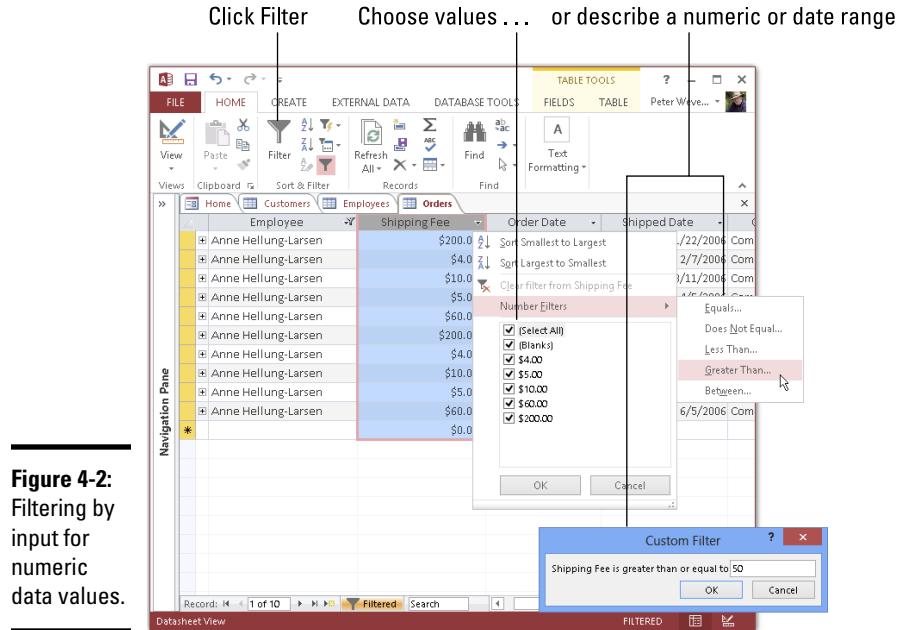
As shown in Figure 4-2, a dialog box appears so that you can describe records that you want to filter for. You can also open this dialog box by clicking the button to the right of a field name.

- 4. Tell Access how to filter the database table.**

You can choose values or describe a data range:

- *Choose values in the field:* The dialog box lists all values in the field. Deselect the Select All check box and then click to select the values you want to filter with.
- *Describe a numeric or date range:* Choose Number Filters or Date Filters and select a comparison operator on the submenu (refer to Figure 4-2). The Custom Filter dialog box appears. Enter a comparison value and click OK.

You can repeat steps 2 through 4 to filter the database table even further.

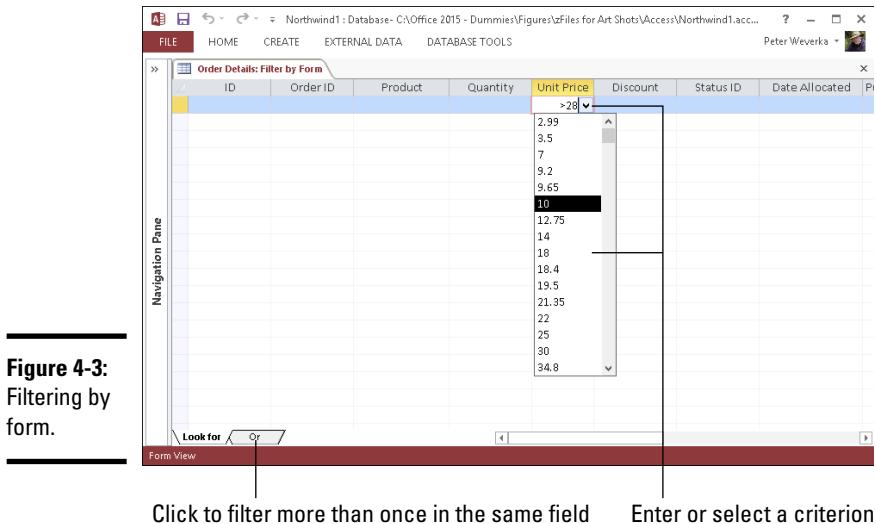


**Figure 4-2:**  
Filtering by  
input for  
numeric  
data values.

## Filtering by form

Filtering by form is a sophisticated filtering method. It permits you to filter in more than one field using an *OR search*. For example, you can tell Access to look in the Last Name field for people named *Martinez*, as well as look in the City field for *Martinezes* who live in Los Angeles or San Francisco. Moreover, you can use comparison operators in the filter operation. Follow these steps to filter by form:

1. In Datasheet view, go to the Home tab, click the Advanced button, and choose Filter by Form on the drop-down list.  
Only field names appear on the datasheet, as shown in Figure 4-3.
2. Click in a field, open its drop-down list, and enter a comparison value or select a value on the drop-down list.



**Figure 4-3:**  
Filtering by  
form.

You can choose a value on the drop-down list or, in Number and Currency fields, enter a comparison operator and a value. Table 4-1 explains the comparison operators.

### 3. If you want, enter more criteria for the filtering operation.

You can enter values in other fields as well as filter more than once in the same field.

- *Enter values in other fields:* Open the drop-down list in a field and enter a comparison value or select a value on the drop-down list.
- *Filter more than once in the same field:* Select a field in which you already entered a search criterion. Then click the Or tab and either enter a comparison value or choose a value from the drop-down list.

When you click the Or tab, the search choices you made previously disappear from the screen. Don't worry — Access remembers them on the Look For tab. You can click the Or tab again if you want to enter more criteria for Or searching.

### 4. Click the Toggle Filter button.

The results of the filtering operation appear in the datasheet.

**Table 4-1 Comparison Operators for Filtering and Querying**

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Example</i>
<	Less than	<10, any number smaller than ten
<=	Less than or equal to	<=10, ten as well as any number smaller than ten
>	Greater than	>10, any number larger than ten
>=	Greater than or equal to	>=10, ten as well as any number equal to or larger than ten
=	Equal to	=10, ten — not any other number
<>	Not equal to	<>10; all numbers except ten (instead of <>, you can enter the word <i>not</i> )
Between ... And ...	Between	Between 10 And 15, a number between 10 and 15 or equal to 10 or 15

## *Querying: The Basics*

*Querying* means to ask a question of a database and get an answer in the form of records that meet the query criteria. Query when you want to ask a detailed question of a database. “Who lives in Los Angeles and donated more than \$500 last year?” is an example of a query. So is, “Which orders were purchased by people who live in California and therefore, have to pay sales tax, and how much sales tax was charged with these orders?” A query can search for information in more than one database table. For that matter, you can query other queries for information. A query can be as sophisticated or as simple as you need it to be. In the results of the query, you can show all the fields in a database table or only a few necessary fields.

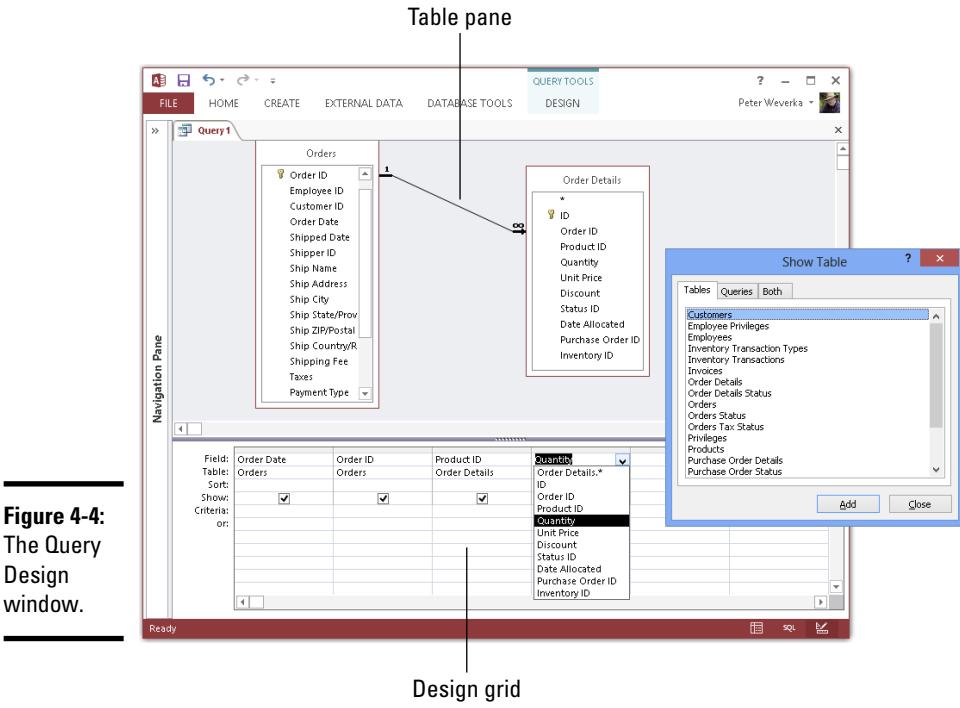
Access offers several different ways to query a database (the different techniques are described later in this chapter in “Six Kinds of Queries”). Still, no matter which kind of query you’re dealing with, the basics of creating and running a query are the same. You start on the Create tab to build new queries. To open a query you already created, double-click its name on the Navigation pane. The following pages introduce you to queries, how to create them, and how to modify them.

### *Creating a new query*

To create a new query, start on the Create tab and click the Query Design or Query Wizard button.



- ◆ **Create the query in Design view:** Click the Query Design button to see the Query Design window, as shown in Figure 4-4, as well as the Show Table dialog box for telling Access which database tables to query. Construct your query in the Design window (the following pages explain how).



**Figure 4-4:**  
The Query  
Design  
window.



- ◆ **Create the query with a wizard:** Click the Query Wizard button to display the New Query dialog box and then choose a wizard option (four possible Query Wizards are available) and answer the questions that the Query Wizard asks. You're asked which table or tables to query, which fields to include in the query, and which fields to include in the query results (the following pages explain these issues).



To run a query, open the query in the Query window, go to the (Query Tools) Design tab, and click the Run button. The results of the query appear in Datasheet view.

## Viewing queries in Datasheet and Design view

Select a query on the Navigation pane and use these techniques to view it in Datasheet or Design view. Datasheet view shows the results of running a query. Create and modify queries in Design view.



- ◆ **Opening in Design view:** Right-click the query's name in the Navigation pane and choose Design View on the shortcut menu.
- ◆ **Opening in Datasheet view:** On the Navigation pane, double-click the query's name or right-click its name and choose Open on the shortcut menu.



- ◆ **Switching between views with the View button:** On the Home tab, click the View button. This button changes appearance, depending on whether you're in Design view or Datasheet view.
- ◆ **Switching between views on the status bar:** Click the Datasheet View or Design View button on the right side of the status bar.
- ◆ **Switching between views by right-clicking:** Right-click the query's title bar and choose Datasheet View or Design View.

## *Finding your way around the Query Design window*

The Query Design window (see Figure 4-4) is where you construct a query or retool a query you constructed already. Switch to Design view to see the Query Design window. You see this window straightaway after you click the Query Design button to construct a new query. The Query Design window is divided into halves:

- ◆ **Table pane:** Lists the database tables you're querying as well as the fields in each table. You can drag the tables to new locations or drag a table border to change its size and view more fields.
- ◆ **Design grid:** Lists which fields to query from the tables, how to sort the query results, which fields to show in the query results, and criteria for locating records in fields.

## *Choosing which database tables to query*



To choose which database tables (and queries as well) to get information from, go to the (Query Tools) Design tab and click the Show Table button. You see the Show Table dialog box (refer to Figure 4-4). The Tables tab lists all the database tables you created for your database. Ctrl+click to select the tables you want to query and then click the Add button. To query a query, go to the Queries tab and select the query.

The tables and queries you choose appear in the Table pane of the Query Design window (refer to Figure 4-4). To remove a table from a query, right-click it in the Table pane and choose Remove Table on the shortcut menu.



In order to query more than one table, you need to establish relationships between tables. (Chapter 2 of this mini-book has information about establishing relationships between database tables.) So-called *join lines* in the Query Design window show how the tables are related to one another.



If you haven't defined relationships between the tables, you can still join them together by dragging a field from one table onto a field in another table. This is the same method used to create relationships between tables. Joining tables in a query doesn't create an actual relationship; it's just a temporary join for the sake of the query.

## Choosing which fields to query

After you choose which tables to query, the next step is to choose which fields to query from the tables you selected. The object is to list fields from the Table pane in the first row of the Design grid. Fields whose names you enter in the first row of the Design grid are the fields that produce query results, as demonstrated by Figure 4-5.

The screenshot shows the 'My Query' design grid. The top row contains the field names: Order Date, Order ID, Product ID, and Quantity. Below this, the 'Table' column lists 'Orders' for all four fields. The 'Show' column has checkmarks for all four fields. The 'Criteria' column contains the value '>50' for the 'Quantity' field. The 'Field' column at the bottom shows an asterisk (\*) followed by '(New)'.

The screenshot shows the 'My Query' results grid with the following data:

Order Date	Order ID	Product	Quantity
1/15/2006	30	Northwind Traders Beer	100
2/23/2006	36	Northwind Traders Clam Chowder	200
3/10/2006	38	Northwind Traders Coffee	300
3/22/2006	39	Northwind Traders Chocolate	100
3/24/2006	40	Northwind Traders Green Tea	200
3/24/2006	41	Northwind Traders Coffee	300
4/5/2006	46	Northwind Traders Ravioli	100
4/8/2006	47	Northwind Traders Beer	300
4/5/2006	55	Northwind Traders Beer	87
6/5/2006	77	Northwind Traders Boysenberry Spr.	90

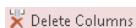
**Figure 4-5:**  
How query  
fields  
translate  
into query  
results.

Book VII  
Chapter 4

Sorting, Querying,  
and Filtering  
for Data

Access offers these techniques for listing field names in the first row of the Design grid:

- ◆ **Dragging a field name:** Drag a field name into a column on the Design grid. The field name appears on the grid, as does the name of the table that you drag the field name from.
- ◆ **Double-clicking a field name:** Double-click a field name to place it in the next available column in the Design grid.
- ◆ **Choosing a table and field name:** Click in the Table row, open the drop-down list, and choose the name of a table. Then, in the Field box directly above, open the drop-down list and choose a field name.
- ◆ **Selecting all the fields in a table:** In the unlikely event that you want all the fields from a table to appear in the query results, either double-click the asterisk (\*) at the top of the list of field names or drag the asterisk into the Design grid. Access places the name of the table followed by an asterisk in the Field text box. The asterisk signifies that all the fields from the table are included in the query.



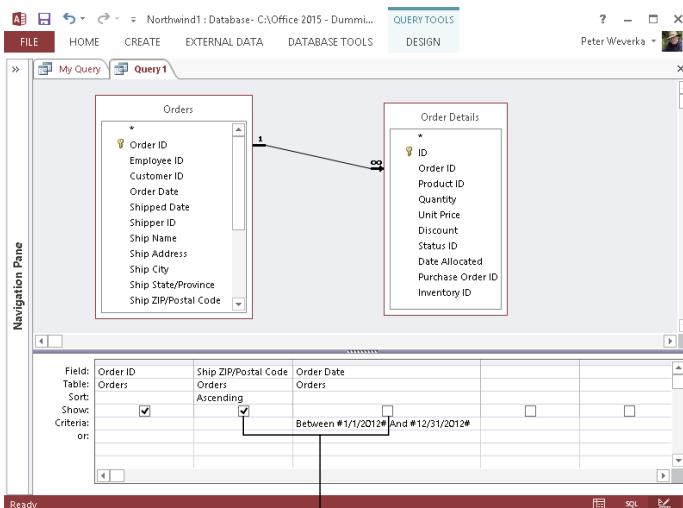
To remove a field name from the Design grid, select it and press the Delete key or go to the (Query Tools) Design tab and click the Delete Columns button.

## **Sorting the query results**

At the start of this chapter, “Sorting Records in a Database Table” explains what sorting is. The Sort row of the Design grid — directly underneath the Table name — contains a drop-down list. To sort the query, click the drop-down list in a field and choose Ascending or Descending to sort the results of a query on a particular field. To sort the results on more than one field, make sure that the first field to be sorted appears to the left of the other fields. Access reads the sort order from left to right.

## **Choosing which fields appear in query results**

Although a field is part of a query and is listed in the Query grid, it isn’t always necessary to display information from the field in the query results. Consider the Query grid shown in Figure 4-6. The object of this query is to get a list of customers by ZIP Code that ordered products in the year 2012. To that end, the query criteria cell in the Order Date field is Between #1/1/2012# And #12/31/2012#. However, when the query results are generated, listing the precise dates when the orders shipped isn’t necessary because the object of the query is to get a list of customers by ZIP Code who ordered products in 2012.



**Figure 4-6:**  
Choosing  
what  
appears in  
the query  
results.

Select or deselect to show a field's data in query results

## Moving field columns on the Query grid

The order in which field names appear in the Query grid is also the order in which they appear in the query results (refer to Figure 4-5). Follow these steps to put field columns in the right order in the Query grid:

1. Click a column's selector button to select a column.

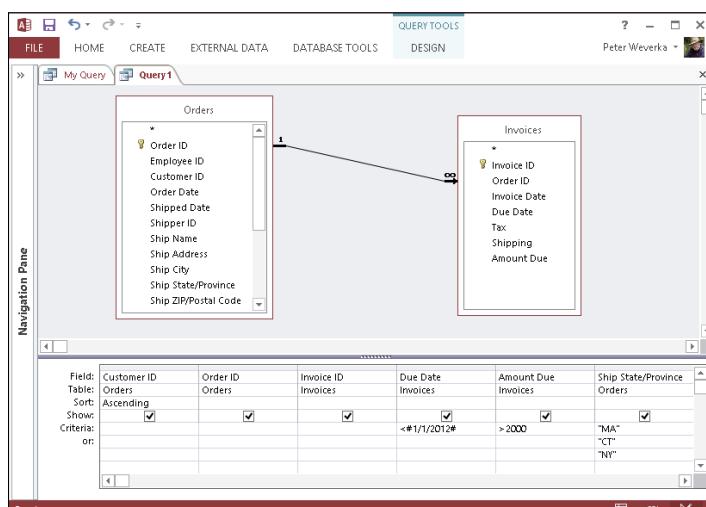
This button is the narrow gray box directly above the field name. The pointer turns into a downward-pointing arrow when you move it over the selector button.

2. Click the selector button again and drag the column to the left or right.

Whether a field's Show check box is selected in the Query grid determines whether its results are part of the query results. Deselect the Show box if a field is necessary for producing records in a query but not necessary in the query results. By the way, after you save and reopen a query, Access moves deselected Show fields to the right side of the Query grid, where you usually have to scroll to see them.

## Entering criteria for a query

What separates a run-of-the-mill query from a supercharged query is a *criterion*, an expression or value you enter on the Criteria line under a field. Enter criteria on the Criteria line of the Query grid. By entering criteria, you can pinpoint records in the database with great accuracy. In Figure 4-7, the Query grid instructs Access to retrieve orders with invoices due before January 1, 2012 that charged more than \$2000 and were shipped to Massachusetts (MA), Connecticut (CT), or New York (NY).



**Figure 4-7:**  
Including  
criteria in a  
query.



As Figure 4-7 shows, Access places double quotation marks ("") around text criteria and number signs (#) around date criteria. When you enter text or date criteria, don't enter the double quotation marks or number signs. Access enters them for you.



When you need help writing an expression for a query, try clicking the Builder button to construct your query in the Expression Builder dialog box. This button is located on the (Query Tools) Design tab.

### ***Entering numeric criteria***

Enter numeric criteria in Number and Currency fields when you want to isolate records with specific values. Earlier in this chapter, Table 4-1 describes comparison operators you can use for querying and filtering. These operators are invaluable when it comes to mining a database for information. Use the greater than (>) and less than (<) operators to find values higher or lower than a target value. Use the Between operator to find values between two numbers. For example, *Between 62 And 55* in a Currency field isolates records with all items that sell for between \$62.00 and \$55.00.



Do not include commas in numbers when you enter them as criteria. For example, enter 3200, not 3,200. Enter a comma and you get a “The expression you entered contains invalid syntax. . .” error message.

### ***Entering text criteria***

To enter a text criterion, type it in the Criteria text box. For example, to find students who attended Ohio State University, enter Ohio State in the Criteria text box of the University field. Access places double quotation marks ("") around the text you enter as soon when you move the pointer out of the Criteria text box.

Wildcards and the Not operator can come in very handy when entering text criteria:

- ◆ **Wildcards:** Wildcards make it possible to query for data whose spelling you aren't quite sure of. (In Chapter 3 of this mini-book, Table 3-2 explains what the wildcard characters are and how to use them.) For example, entering Sm?th in the Criteria box of the Last Name field finds all Smiths and Smyths. Entering E\* in the Company field finds all company names that begin with the letter *E*.
- ◆ **Not operator:** Use the Not operator to exclude records from query results. For example, to exclude records with Belgium in the Shipped To field, enter Not Belgium in the Criteria text box. This is a great way to strip unneeded records from a query.

### Entering date criteria

All the operators that work for numeric data (see Table 4-1 earlier in this chapter) also work for data entered in a Date field. For example, you would enter **>7/31/1958** in a Birth Date field to find all people born after (greater than) July 31, 1958. You would enter **Between 1/1/1920 And 12/31/1929** to retrieve data about people born in the Roaring Twenties.

Access places number signs (#) around date criteria after you enter it. You can enter dates in these formats:

- ◆ 11/22/13
- ◆ 11/22/2013
- ◆ 22-Nov-13
- ◆ November 22, 2013



For the purpose of entering two-digit years in dates, the digits 30 through 99 belong to the 20th Century (1930–1999), but the digits 00 through 29 belong to the 21st Century (2000–2029). For example, **>4/1/24** refers to April 1, 2024, not April 1, 1924. To enter a date in 1929 or earlier, enter four digits instead of two to describe the year: **>4/1/1929**. To enter a date in 2030, or later, enter four digits instead of two: **>4/1/2038**. To avoid any confusion, enter four-digit years all the time.



The Date() function can come in very handy when you want to retrieve data relative to today's date, whatever it happens to be. For example, to retrieve purchase orders made between January 1, 2009, and today's date, enter this expression: **Between 1/1/2009 And Date()**.

### *At last — saving and running a query*

To save a query and inscribe its name forever in the Navigation pane, click the Save button on the Quick Access toolbar and enter a descriptive name in the Save As dialog box. The name you enter appears in the Queries group in the Navigation pane.

After you laboriously construct your query, take it for a test drive. To run a query:



- ◆ **Starting from the Query Design window:** Click the Run button on the (Query Tools) Design tab.
- ◆ **Starting from the Navigation pane:** Double-click an existing query's name, or right-click its name and choose Open on the shortcut menu.

## Six Kinds of Queries

For your pleasure and entertainment, the rest of this chapter describes six useful types of queries. Access offers a handful of other queries, but I won't go there. Those queries are pretty complicated. If you become adept at querying, however, you're invited to look into the Help system for advice about running the query types that aren't explained here.

### Select query



A *select query* is the standard kind of query, which I explain earlier in this chapter. A select query gathers information from one or more database tables and displays the information in a datasheet. A select query is the most common query, the primal query, the starting point for most other queries.

### Top-value query

A *top-value query* is an easy way to find out, in a Number or Currency field, the highest or lowest values. On the Query grid, enter the name of the Number or Currency field you want to know more about; then choose Ascending in the Sort drop-down list to rank values from lowest to highest or Descending in the Sort drop-down list to rank values from highest to lowest. Finally, on the (Query Tools) Design tab, enter a value in the Return text box or choose a value on the Return drop-down list:

- ◆ **Highest or lowest by percentage:** Enter or choose a percentage to find, for example, the highest or lowest 25 percent of the values. To enter a percentage, type a percent sign (%) after your entry and press the Enter key.
- ◆ **Highest or lowest by ranking number:** Enter or choose a number to find, for example, the top-ten or lowest-ten values. Press the Enter key after you enter a number.



This may seem counterintuitive, but to see the top values, you have to sort the field you're ranking in descending order. For example, if you sort employees by number of sales in descending order, the employees with the top sales appear at the top. To see the bottom values, sort in ascending order.

### Summary query

Similar to a top-value query, a *summary query* is a way of getting cumulative information about all the data in a field. In a field that stores data about sales in Kentucky, for example, you can find the average amount of each sale, the total amount of all the sales, the total number of all the sales, and other data.



To run a summary query, go to the (Query Tools) Design tab and click the Totals button. A new row called Total appears on the Query grid. Open the Total drop-down list in the field whose contents you want to summarize and choose a function. Table 4-2 describes the functions.

**Table 4-2****Summary Query Functions**

<i>Function</i>	<i>Returns</i>
Sum	The total of all values in the field
Avg	The average of all values
Min	The lowest value
Max	The highest value
Count	The number of values
StDev	The standard deviation of the values
Var	The variance of the values
First	The first value
Last	The last value

The Group By, Expression, and Where choices in the Totals drop-down list are for including fields you're not performing a function on:

- ◆ **Group By:** For choosing which fields to show totals for.
- ◆ **Expression:** For creating a calculated field.
- ◆ **Where:** For setting criteria (you can't include the field in the query).

Book VII  
Chapter 4

Sorting, Querying,  
and Filtering  
for Data

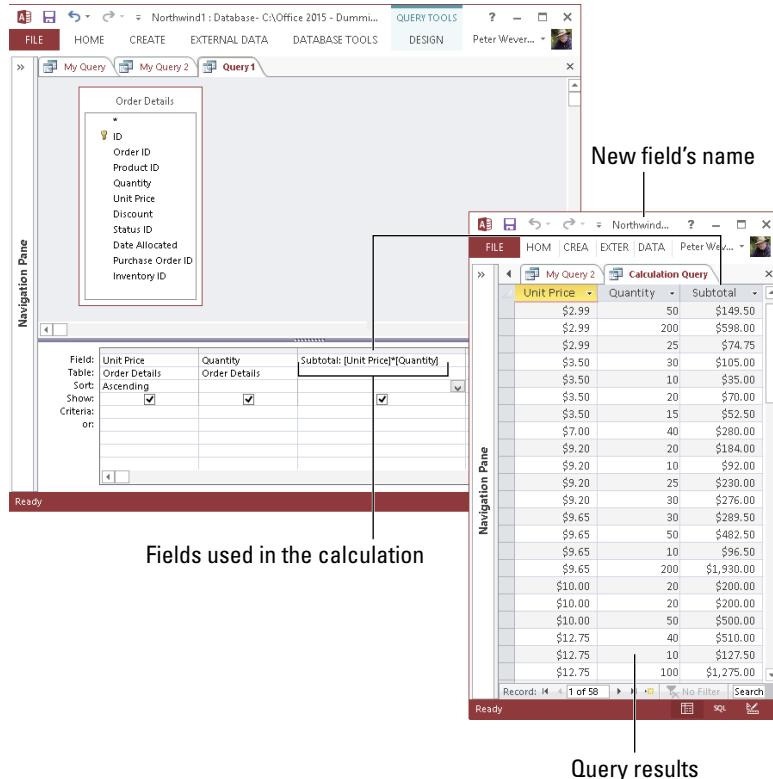
## ***Calculation query***

A *calculation query* is one in which calculations are performed as part of the query. For example, you can calculate the sales tax on items sold or total the numbers in two fields in the same record. The beauty of a calculation query is that the data is recomputed each time you run the query. If the data used to make a calculation changes, so does the result of the calculation. If you were to include the calculation in a database table, you would have to recalculate the data yourself each time one of the values changed. With a calculation query, Access does the math for you.

To construct a calculation query, you create a new field in the Query grid for storing the results of the calculation; then enter a name for the field and a formula for the calculation. Follow these steps to create a calculation query:

1. **Create a query as you normally would and be sure to include the fields you want to use for calculation purposes in the Query grid.**
2. **In the Field box of a blank field, enter a name for the Calculation field and follow it with a colon.**

In Figure 4-8, I entered **Subtotal:**. The purpose of the new Subtotal field is to calculate the Unit Price × the Quantity.



**Figure 4-8:**  
A  
calculation  
query.

**3. After the colon, in square brackets ([]), enter the name of a field whose data you use for the calculation.**

In Figure 4-8, data from the Unit Price and Quantity fields are used in the calculation, so their names appear in square brackets: [Unit Price] and [Quantity]. Be sure to spell field names correctly so that Access can recognize them.

**4. Complete the calculation.**

How you do this depends on what kind of calculation you're making. In Figure 4-8, I entered an asterisk (\*) to multiply two fields together. The equation multiplies the values in the Unit Price and Quantity fields. You can add the data from two different fields — including calculated fields — by putting their names in brackets and joining them with a plus sign, like so: [SubTotal]+[Shipping Cost].



Sometimes the results of the query aren't formatted correctly on the datasheet. To assign a new format to a field you create for the purposes of making a calculation query, right-click the field on the Query grid and choose Properties. The Property Sheet appears. On the General tab, click

the Format drop-down list and choose the correct format for your new, hand-crafted field.



## Delete query

Be careful about running delete queries. A *delete query* deletes records and doesn't give you the opportunity to get the records back if you change your mind about deleting them. If used skillfully, however, a delete query is a great way to purge records from more than one database table at once. Back up your database file before running a delete query. Edith Piaf didn't regret her delete query, but you might regret yours.

To run a delete query, start a new query, and in on the (Query Tools) Design tab, click the Delete button. Then make as though you were running a select query but target the records you want to delete. Finally, click the Run button to run the query.

You can delete records from more than one table as long as the tables are related and you chose the Cascade Delete Related Records option in the Edit Relationships dialog box when you linked the tables. (See Chapter 2 of this mini-book for advice about forging relationships between tables.)



To preview the records that will be deleted before you run the delete query, switch to Datasheet view (click the View button). Those records you see? The delete query will delete them if you click the Run button.

## Update query

An *update query* is a way to reach into a database and update records in several different tables all at one time. Update queries can be invaluable, but as with delete queries, they can have untoward consequences. Back up your database before you run an update query; then follow these steps to run it:



- 1. Starting in Design view, go to the (Query Tools) Design tab and click the Update button.**
- 2. In the field with the data that needs updating, enter text or a value in the Update To line. You can even enter another field name in square brackets ([ ]).**

What you enter in the Update To line replaces what's in the field of the records you collect.



- 3. Click the Run button.**

To update records in more than one table, you must have chosen the Cascade Update Related Fields option in the Edit Relationships dialog box when you linked the tables. (See the section in Chapter 2 of this mini-book about forging relationships between tables.)



# *Chapter 5: Presenting Data in a Report*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Creating a new report
- ✓ Opening a report
- ✓ Changing the look of a report

**T**he prettiest way to present data in a database table or query is to present it in a report. Even people who are allergic to databases can put up with database material in a report. Reports are easy to read and understand. They succinctly present the data so that you and others can interpret it. This brief chapter explains how to create reports, open them, and edit them.

## *Creating a Report*

Access comes with all kinds of complicated tools for fashioning your own report — for laying out the pages in different ways and making data fields show up in different parts of the page. If ever a task called for relying on a wizard, creating a report is it. You can save yourself a lot of trouble, and fashion sophisticated-looking reports as well, by dispensing with the fancy report-making tools and letting the wizard do the job.



What's more, the easiest and best way to make a report is to base your report on a query. As part of fashioning a report with a wizard, you can tell Access which database tables and which fields to get the data from — in other words, you can query your database from inside the Report Wizard. However, doing that requires turning somersaults and cartwheels. It's far easier to run a query to produce the results you want in your report, save your query, and then fashion a report from the query results. Chapter 4 in this mini-book explains how to create a query.



Figure 5-1 shows a report created with the Report Wizard. To create a report with the Report Wizard, go to the Create tab and click the Report Wizard button. You see the first of several Report Wizard dialog boxes. Negotiate the dialog boxes as follows, clicking the Next button as you go along:

- ♦ **Tables/Queries:** Open this drop-down list and choose the query where the information in the report will come from. A list of fields in the query appears in the Available Fields box.

- ◆ **Available Fields and Selected Fields:** Select the fields whose data you want in the report by selecting the fields one at a time and clicking the > button. Doing so moves field names from the Available Fields box to the Selected Fields box. Add all the fields by clicking the >> button.
- ◆ **How Do You Want to View Your Data?:** Choose a field to define the grouping level. A *grouping level* is like a report subheading. For example, if you make Last Name the grouping level, information in the report is presented under people's last names.
- ◆ **Do You Want to Add Any Grouping Levels?:** Include subheadings in your report by selecting a field name and clicking the > button to make it a subheading. If you're building your report on a query that includes related tables, the Report Wizard automatically adds subheadings.
- ◆ **What Sort Order and Summary Information Do You Want?:** Select up to four fields to sort the data in your report. Even if you sort the fields in a query, the report handles sorting on its own. If you include grouping levels, the report already sorts on these fields.
- ◆ **How Would You Like to Lay Out Your Report?:** Experiment with the options, and watch the Preview box, to choose a layout for your report. If your report has a lot of fields, you may want to print it in Landscape view.
- ◆ **What Title Do You Want for Your Report?:** Enter a descriptive title. The name you choose appears in the Reports group in the Navigation pane. From there, you double-click the name when you want to see the report.
- ◆ **Preview the Report:** Select this option button and click Finish.

The report appears in the Preview window. How do you like it? Later in this chapter, "Tweaking a Report" offers some tips for making a report look spiffier.

Top Ten Orders by Sales Amount				
Order ID	Order Date	SaleAmount	CompanyName	Shipped Date
41	3/24/2006	\$13,800.00	Company G	6/5/2006
38	3/10/2006	\$13,800.00	Company BB	3/11/2006
47	4/8/2006	\$4,200.00	Company F	4/8/2006
46	4/5/2006	\$3,690.00	Company I	4/5/2006
58	4/22/2006	\$3,520.00	Company D	4/22/2006
79	6/23/2006	\$2,490.00	Company F	6/23/2006
77	6/5/2006	\$2,250.00	Company Z	6/5/2006
36	2/23/2006	\$1,930.00	Company C	2/25/2006
44	3/24/2006	\$1,674.75	Company A	6/5/2006
78	6/5/2006	\$1,560.00	Company CC	6/5/2006

Thursday, November 08, 2012

Page 1 of 1

**Figure 5-1:**  
An example  
of a report.

## Opening and Viewing Reports

If you've spent any time whatsoever in Access, you know the drill for opening a so-called object. Follow these steps to open a report:

- 1. In the Navigation pane, select the Reports group.**

You see the names of reports you created.

- 2. Double-click a report name or right-click a name and choose Open from the shortcut menu.**

The report appears in Report view.



To update a report so it includes recently added data, go to the Home tab and click the Refresh All button.

## Tweaking a Report

As I mention at the start of this chapter, Access offers a bunch of complex tools for changing the layout and appearance of a report. If you're courageous and have lots of time on your hands, you're invited to take these tools in hand and go to it. In the Reports group of the Navigation pane, right-click a report and choose Layout View on the shortcut menu. Your report appears in Layout view, as shown in Figure 5-2. In this view, using tools on the Report Layout Tools tabs, you can tweak your report's appearance.

Order ID	Order Date	SaleAmount	CompanyName	Shipp
41	3/24/2006	\$13,800.00	Company G	3
38	3/10/2006	\$13,800.00	Company BB	3
47	4/8/2006	\$4,200.00	Company F	4
46	4/5/2006	\$3,690.00	Company I	4
58	4/22/2006	\$3,520.00	Company D	4
79	6/23/2006	\$2,490.00	Company F	6
77	6/5/2006	\$2,250.00	Company Z	6
36	2/23/2006	\$1,930.00	Company C	2
44	3/24/2006	\$1,674.75	Company A	6
78	6/5/2006	\$1,560.00	Company CC	6

**Figure 5-2:**  
The report in Figure 5-1  
in Layout view.

## An easier way to tweak a report — in Word

An easier way to tweak a report is to transfer your report to Microsoft Word and edit it there. Follow these steps to turn an Access report into a Word document:

- 1. On the External Data tab, click the More button in the Export group and choose Word on the drop-down list.**
- You see the Export - RTF File dialog box.
- 2. Click the Browse button, and in the File Save dialog box, choose a folder for storing the Word document, and click the Save button.**

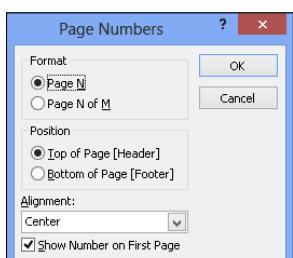
- 3. In the Export - RTF File dialog box, choose Open the Destination File After the Export Operation Is Complete.**

- 4. Click the OK button.**

In a moment, your Access report appears in Word. The file is an RTF (rich text format) file. To save it as a Word file, go to the File tab, choose Save As, click the Browse button, and in the Save As dialog box, open the Save As Type drop-down list and choose Word Document. Books I and II describe how to work with files in Word.

I tell you how to create a report with the Report Wizard in order to avoid your having to visit this imposing window. However, you can change a report's appearance in Layout view without going to very much trouble if you follow these instructions:

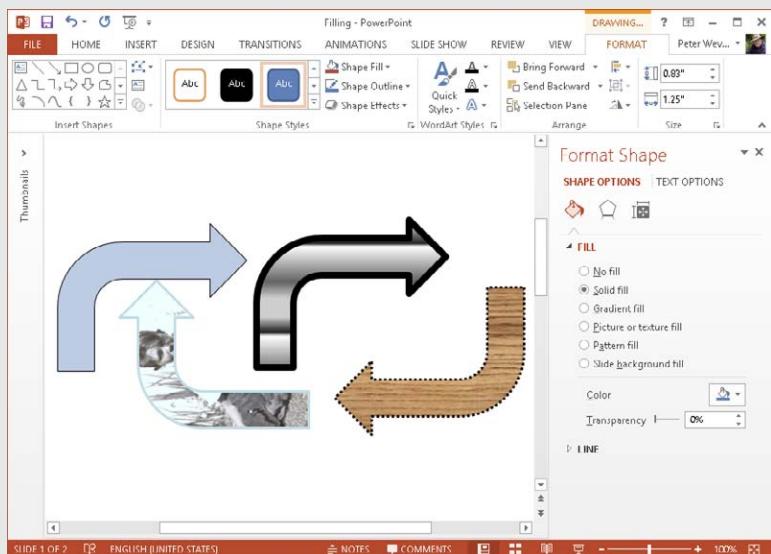
- ◆ **Choosing a new layout:** On the (Report Layout Tools) Arrange tab, click the Stacked or Tubular button, or click the Gridlines button and choose an option on the drop-down list, to change your report's layout.
- ◆ **Including page numbers:** To include page numbers on the report, go the (Report Layout Tools) Design tab and click the Page Numbers button. You see the Page Numbers dialog box shown in Figure 5-3. Choose the Page N option button to display a page number only, or select the Page N of M option button to display a page number as well as the total number of pages in the report (as in "Page 2 of 4"). Choose Position and Alignment options to describe where on the page to put the page number.
- ◆ **Changing the margins:** On the (Report Layout Tools) Page Setup tab, click the Margins button and select Normal, Wide, or Narrow on the drop-down list.



**Figure 5-3:**  
Putting on the page numbers.

# Book VIII

# Working with Charts and Graphics



Check out more about charts and graphics online at [www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio](http://www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio)

# *Contents at a Glance*

<b>Chapter 1: Creating a Chart . . . . .</b>	<b>585</b>
The Basics: Creating a Chart.....	585
Choosing the Right Chart .....	587
Providing the Raw Data for Your Chart.....	588
Positioning Your Chart in a Workbook, Page, or Slide .....	590
Changing a Chart's Appearance .....	591
Saving a Chart as a Template So That You Can Use It Again.....	597
Chart Tricks for the Daring and Heroic .....	598
Troubleshooting a Chart .....	601
<b>Chapter 2: Making a SmartArt Diagram . . . . .</b>	<b>603</b>
The Basics: Creating SmartArt Diagrams .....	603
Creating the Initial Diagram .....	605
Changing the Size and Position of a Diagram.....	607
Laying Out the Diagram Shapes.....	608
Handling the Text on Diagram Shapes.....	614
Changing a Diagram's Direction .....	615
Choosing a Look for Your Diagram .....	616
Changing the Appearance of Diagram Shapes .....	617
Creating a Diagram from Scratch .....	620
<b>Chapter 3: Handling Graphics, Photos, and Clip Art . . . . .</b>	<b>623</b>
All about Picture File Formats .....	623
Inserting a Picture in an Office File .....	627
Touching Up a Picture .....	631
Compressing Pictures to Save Disk Space .....	639
<b>Chapter 4: Drawing and Manipulating Lines, Shapes, and Other Objects . . . . .</b>	<b>641</b>
The Basics: Drawing Lines, Arrows, and Shapes.....	642
Handling Lines, Arrows, and Connectors .....	643
Handling Rectangles, Ovals, Stars, and Other Shapes .....	648
WordArt for Embellishing Letters and Words .....	651
Manipulating Lines, Shapes, Art, Text Boxes, and Other Objects.....	652
Changing an Object's Size and Shape .....	656
Changing an Object's Color, Outline Color, and Transparency .....	657
Moving and Positioning Objects.....	662

# *Chapter 1: Creating a Chart*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Creating a chart
- ✓ Examining the different types of charts
- ✓ Entering chart data in an Excel worksheet
- ✓ Positioning a chart in Excel, Word, and PowerPoint
- ✓ Changing the appearance of a chart
- ✓ Saving a customized chart as a template so that you can use it again
- ✓ Exploring some fancy-schmancy chart tricks
- ✓ Fixing common problems with charts

**N**othing is more persuasive than a chart. The bars, pie slices, lines, or columns show immediately whether production is up or down, cats are better than dogs or dogs better than cats, or catsup tastes better than ketchup. Fans of charts and graphs will be glad to know that putting a chart in a Word document, Excel worksheet, or PowerPoint slide is fairly easy.

This chapter explains how to create a chart. It looks at which charts are best for presenting different kinds of data, how to change a chart's appearance, and how to save charts in a template that you can use again. You discover some nice chart tricks, including how to make a picture the backdrop for a chart and how to annotate a chart. This chapter also addresses common chart problems.

## *The Basics: Creating a Chart*

Throughout this chapter, I explain the whys, wherefores, and whatnots of creating a chart. Before going into details, here are the basic steps that everyone needs to know to create a chart in Word, Excel, and PowerPoint:

- 1. Go to the Insert tab.**
- 2. If you're working in Excel, select the data you'll use to generate the chart (in Word and PowerPoint, skip to Step 3).**

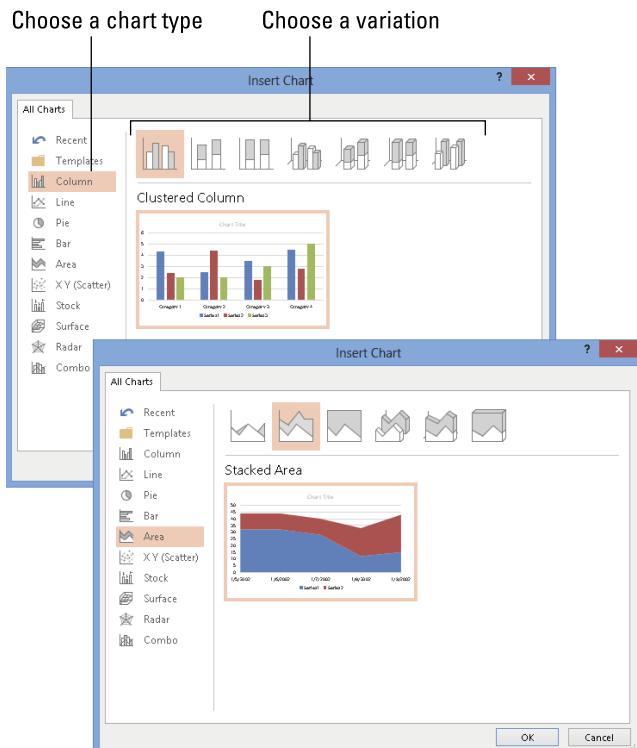
In Excel, you select the data on a worksheet before creating the chart, but in Word and PowerPoint, you enter the data for the chart after you create the chart.

### 3. Select the kind of chart you want.

How you select a chart type depends on which program you're working in:

- **Excel:** On the Insert tab, open the drop-down list on one of buttons in the Chart group (Column, Bar, and so on) and select a chart type; or click the Recommended Charts button or Charts group button to open the Insert Chart dialog box and select a chart there. As shown in Figure 1-1, the Insert Chart dialog box shows all the kinds of charts you can create. Go to the Recommended Charts tab to see which charts Excel recommends.
- **Word and PowerPoint:** Click the Chart button. You see the Insert Chart dialog box shown in Figure 1-1. Select a chart type, select a variation, and click OK. A data grid opens on the right side of your computer screen. (In PowerPoint, you can also click the Chart icon on a placeholder frame to open the Insert Chart dialog box.)

The next topic in this chapter, “Choosing the Right Chart,” describes all the charts types and advises you which to choose.



**Figure 1-1:**  
Which chart  
do you  
want?

**4. In Word and PowerPoint, replace the sample data in the data grid with the data you need for generating your chart.**

Later in this chapter, “Providing the Raw Data for Your Chart” explains how to enter data in the data grid, and the sidebar “Getting chart data from a table (Word and PowerPoint)” explains how to copy the data from a table.

After you finish entering the data, click the Close button in the data grid.

**5. Modify your chart, if you desire.**

The Chart Tools tabs and buttons to the right of the chart offer commands for making a chart look just-so (see “Changing a Chart’s Appearance,” later in this chapter).



Click the Recent button in the Insert Chart dialog box to see all the charts you examined in your search for the right chart.

And if you decide to delete the chart you created? Click its perimeter to select it and then press the Delete key.

## Choosing the Right Chart

If you’re a fan of charts, the huge selection of charts can make you feel like a kid in a candy store, but if charts aren’t your *forté*, the wealth of charts you can choose from can be daunting. You can choose among four dozen charts in ten categories (refer to Figure 1-1). Which chart is best? The golden rule for choosing a chart type is to choose the one that presents information in the brightest possible light. The purpose of a chart is to compare information across different categories. Select a chart that draws out the comparison so that others can clearly make comparisons. Table 1-1 describes the ten chart categories and explains in brief when to use each type of chart.

**Table 1-1**

**Chart Types**

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Chart Type</i>	<i>Best Use/Description</i>
	Area	Examine how values in different categories fluctuate over time, and see the cumulative change in values. (Same as a line chart except that the area between trend lines is colored in.)
	Bar	Compare values in different categories against one another, usually over time. Data is displayed in horizontal bars. (Same as a column chart except that the bars are horizontal.)

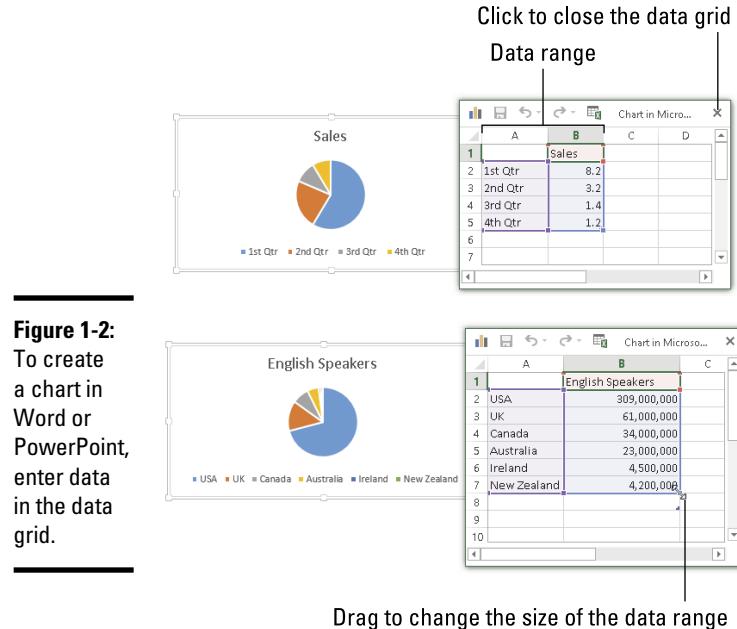
*(continued)*

**Table 1-1 (continued)**

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Chart Type</i>	<i>Best Use/Description</i>
	Column	Compare values in different categories against one another, usually over time. Data is displayed in vertical columns. (Same as a bar chart except that the bars are vertical.)
	Combo	Contrast two sets of data, with one chart overlying the other to draw out the contrast. Data is displayed in lines, bars, and stacks.
	Line	Examine how values fluctuate over time. Data is displayed in a set of points connected by a line.
	Pie	See how values compare as percentages of a whole. Data from categories is displayed as a percentage of a whole. (Similar to a doughnut chart.)
	Radar	Examine data as it relates to one central point. Data is plotted on radial points from the central point. This kind of chart is used to make subjective performance analyses.
	Stock	See how the value of an item fluctuates as well as its daily, weekly, or yearly high, low, and closing price. This chart is used to track stock prices, but it can also be used to track air temperature and other variable quantities.
	Surface	Examine color-coded data on a 3D surface to explore relationships between data values.
	XY (Scatter)	Compare different numeric data point sets in space to reveal patterns and trends in data. (Similar to a bubble chart except that the data appears as points instead of bubbles.)

## Providing the Raw Data for Your Chart

Every chart is constructed from *raw data* — the numbers and labels you select in an Excel worksheet (in Excel) or enter in the data grid (in Word and PowerPoint). If you’re operating in Word or PowerPoint, you see, in the data grid, sample data in a *data range*, as shown in Figure 1-2. The information inside the data range is used to generate the chart. You can tell where the data range begins and ends because it is enclosed in a blue border. Your job is to replace the sample data in the data range with data of your own. As you enter your data, the chart on your slide or page takes shape.



**Figure 1-2:**  
To create  
a chart in  
Word or  
PowerPoint,  
enter data  
in the data  
grid.

As you enter numbers and labels in the data grid, watch your chart take shape. Here are the basics of entering data in the data grid:

- ◆ **Entering the data in a cell:** A cell is the box in a data grid where a column and row intersect; each cell can contain one data item. To enter data in a cell, click the cell and start typing. When you're finished, press Enter, press Tab, or click a different cell.
- ◆ **Deleting the data in a cell:** To delete the data in a cell, including the sample data, click the cell and press Delete.
- ◆ **Displaying the numbers:** When a number is too large to fit in a cell, the number is displayed in scientific notation. Don't worry — the number is still recorded and is used to generate your chart. You can display large numbers by widening the columns in which the numbers are found. Move the pointer between column letters (A, B, and so on at the top of the worksheet) and when you see the double-headed arrow, click and drag to the right.
- ◆ **Changing the size of the data range:** To enclose more or fewer cells in the data range, move the pointer to the lower-right corner of the data range, and when the pointer changes into a two-headed arrow, click and drag so that the blue box encloses only the data you want for your chart.



## Getting chart data from a table (Word and PowerPoint)

Rather than painstakingly enter data in the data grid, you can get the data you need for a chart from a Word or PowerPoint table. In fact, entering the data in a Word or PowerPoint table and copying it to the data grid is easier than entering data in the narrow confines of the data grid.

Follow these steps to generate a chart from data in a table you created in Word or PowerPoint:

- 1. Click the table to select it.**
- 2. On the (Table Tools) Layout tab, click the Select button and choose Select Table on the drop-down list.**
- 3. Press Ctrl+C to copy the table data to the Clipboard.**
- 4. Click your chart to select it.**

- 5. On the (Chart Tools) Design tab, click the Edit Data button to open the data grid.**
- 6. Click in the cell in the first row, first column of the data grid (cell A1).**
- 7. Press Ctrl+V to copy the data from the table into the data grid.**

If the table you copied into the data grid is larger than the sample data that was there before, you're done. You can breathe easy. But if the table is smaller than the sample data, you have to make the data range smaller so that it encompasses only the data you copied from your table. Move the pointer to the lower-right corner of the data range and then drag in a northwesternly direction until the blue box encloses the data from your Word or PowerPoint table.



The data grid offers the Edit Data in Microsoft Excel button in case you want to enter data for your chart in Excel. Click this button and enter data in Excel if you're comfortable working there.



In Word and PowerPoint, click the Edit Data button on the (Chart Tools) Design tab at any time to open the data grid and fiddle with the numbers and data from which your chart is generated.

## *Positioning Your Chart in a Workbook, Page, or Slide*

To change the position of a chart, click to select it, click its perimeter, and when you see the four-headed arrow, start dragging. Otherwise, follow these instructions to land your chart where you want it to be:



- ◆ **Excel:** To move your chart to a different worksheet or create a new worksheet to hold your chart, go to the (Chart Tools) Design tab and click the Move Chart button. You see the Move Chart dialog box.
  - To move your chart to a different worksheet, click the Object In option button, choose the worksheet in the drop-down list, and click OK.
  - To create a new worksheet for a chart, click the New Sheet option button, enter a name for the new worksheet, and click OK.



- ◆ **Word:** Starting in Print Layout view, select your chart, and in the Page Layout or (Chart Tools) Format tab, click the Position button (you may have to click the Arrange button first, depending on the size of your screen). You see a drop-down list with text-wrapping options. Choose the option that describes how you want surrounding text to behave when it crashes into your chart. Book II, Chapter 6 looks in detail at wrapping text around charts and other objects in Word.
- ◆ **PowerPoint:** Select the chart and drag it on the slide to the right position.

## *Changing a Chart's Appearance*

Charts are awfully nice already, but perhaps you want to redesign one. Perhaps you're an interior decorator type and you want to give charts your own personal touch. As shown in Figure 1-3, Office presents many different ways to refine a chart. You can click one of the three buttons — Chart Elements, Chart Styles, or Chart Filters — that appear beside a chart when you select it. You can also go to (Chart Tools) Design tab and the (Chart Tools) Format tab. Your opportunities for tinkering with a chart are many.

These pages explain how to change a chart's appearance and layout, starting with the biggest change you can make — exchanging one type of chart for another.

### *Changing the chart type*

The biggest way to overhaul a chart is to ditch it in favor of a different chart type. Luckily for you, Office makes this task simple. I wish that changing jobs was this easy. Follow these steps to change a pumpkin into a carriage or an existing chart into a different kind of chart:

1. Click your chart to select it.
2. On the (Chart Tools) Design tab, click the Change Chart Type button, or right-click your chart and choose Change Chart Type on the shortcut menu.

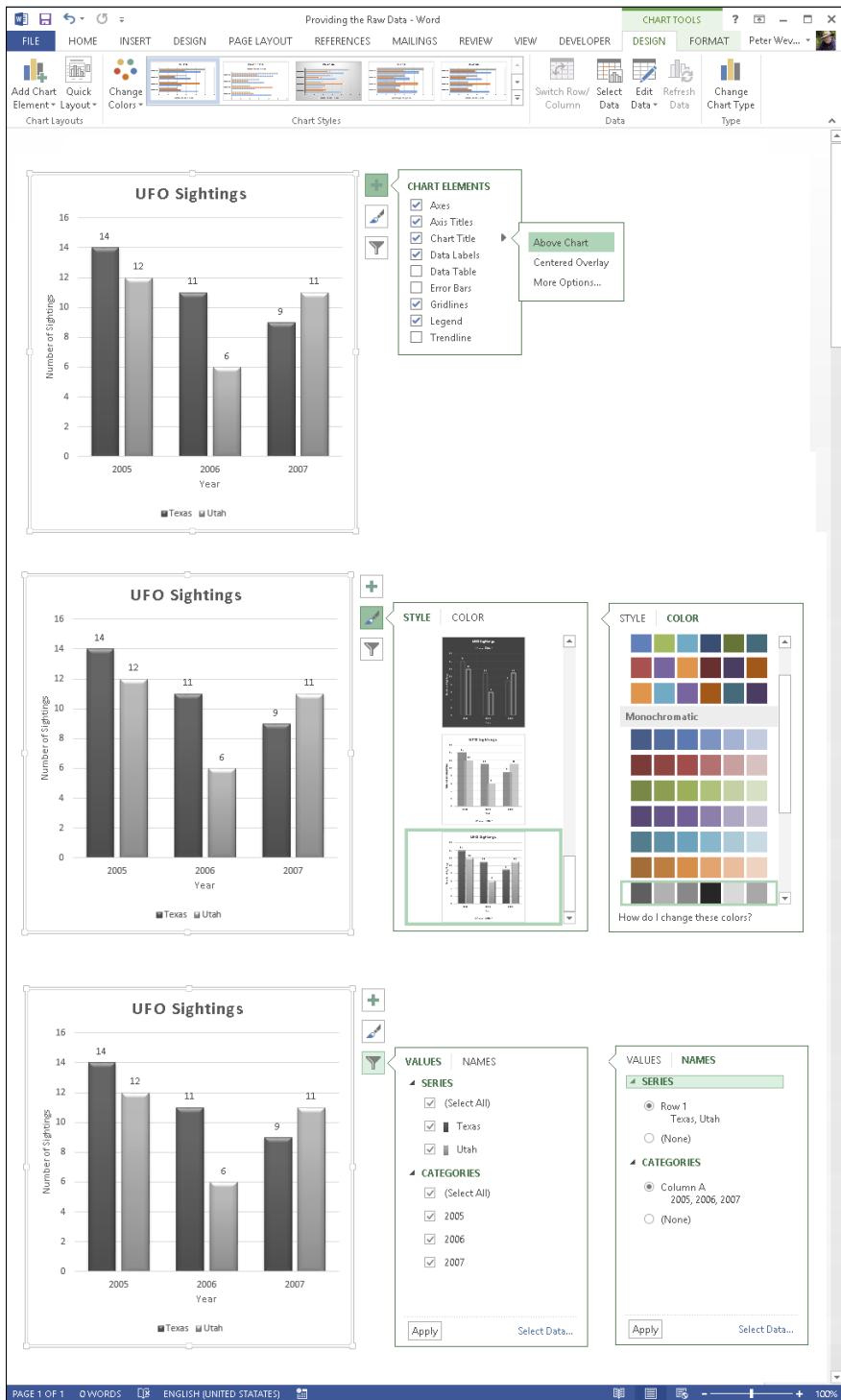


The Change Chart Type dialog box appears. Does it look familiar? This is the same dialog box you used to create your chart in the first place.

3. Select a new chart type and click OK.

Not all chart types can be converted successfully to other chart types. You may well have created a monster, in which case go back to Step 1 and start all over or click the Undo button.

## 592 Changing a Chart's Appearance



**Figure 1-3:**  
Click a  
button or go  
to the (Chart  
Tools)  
Design or  
Format tab  
to change  
the look of a  
chart.

## ***Changing the size and shape of a chart***

To make a chart taller or wider, follow these instructions:

- ◆ Click the perimeter of the chart to select it and then drag a handle on the side to make it wider, or a handle on the top or bottom to make it taller.
- ◆ Go to the (Chart Tools) Format tab and enter measurements in the Shape Height and Shape Width boxes. You can find these boxes in the Size group (you may have to click the Size button to see them, depending on the size of your screen).

## ***Choosing a new look for your chart***

Select your chart and experiment with these different ways to change its look:



- ◆ **Select a chart style:** On the (Chart Tools) Design tab, choose an option in the Chart Styles gallery. Or click the Chart Styles button and select a style on the drop-down menu (refer to Figure 1-3). These gallery options are quite sophisticated. You would have a hard time fashioning these charts on your own.
- ◆ **Change the color scheme:** On the (Chart Tools) Design tab, click the Change Colors button and select a color on the drop-down list. Or click the Chart Styles button and select a color on the drop-down menu (refer to Figure 1-3).

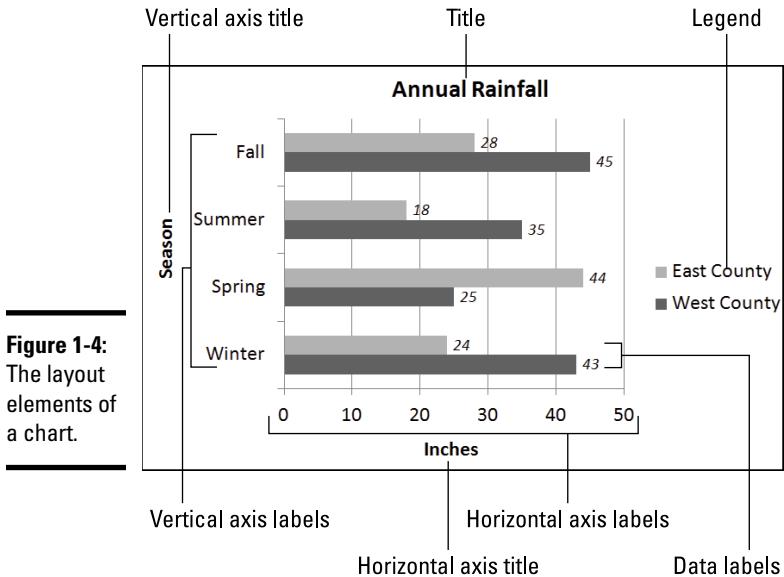
Later in this chapter, “Changing a chart element’s color, font, or other particular” explains how to dig down deep and change one particular aspect of a chart — its legend, plot area, or vertical axis, for example.



If your file includes more than one chart, make the charts consistent with one another. Give them a similar appearance so that your file doesn’t turn into a chart fashion show. You can make charts consistent with one another by choosing similar options for charts in the Chart Styles gallery.

## ***Changing the layout of a chart***

Charts are composed of different elements — the legend, the labels, and the titles. Figure 1-4 identifies chart elements. Where these elements appear is up to you. Whether to include them is up to you as well. You can, for example, place the legend on the right side of your chart or go without a legend. By choosing which elements to include and where to put elements, you fashion a layout for your chart.



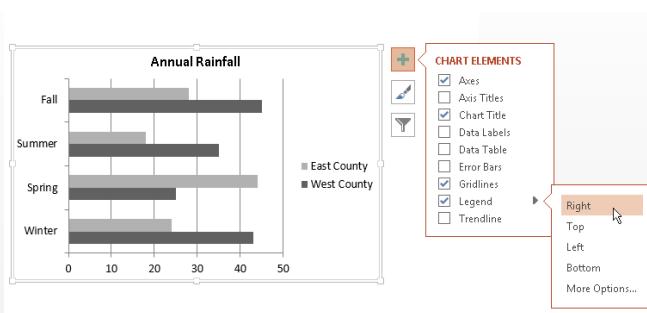
Select your chart and experiment with these techniques to decide on a layout:



- ◆ On the (Chart Tools) Design tab, click the Quick Layout button and select an option in the gallery.
- ◆ On the (Chart Tools) Design tab, click the Add Chart Element button. Then choose an element on the drop-down list, and on the submenu, choose whether to place the element (the None option) or where to place it.
- ◆ Click the Chart Elements button, choose an element on the drop-down menu, and choose whether to place it (the None option) or where to place it. Figure 1-5, for example, shows how to choose where to place the legend.



**Figure 1-5:** Clicking the Chart Elements button is one way to handle chart layouts.





**TIP** Hover the pointer over the options on the Chart Elements menus and glance at your chart. You can see right away what each option does to your chart.



To remove series or category names from a chart, click the Chart Filters button and, on the drop-down menu, deselect a column or row option button (see Figure 1-3).

## Handling the gridlines

*Gridlines* are lines that cross a chart and indicate value measurements. Most charts include major gridlines to show where bars or columns meet or surpass a major unit of measurement, and you can also include fainter, minor gridlines that mark less significant measurements.

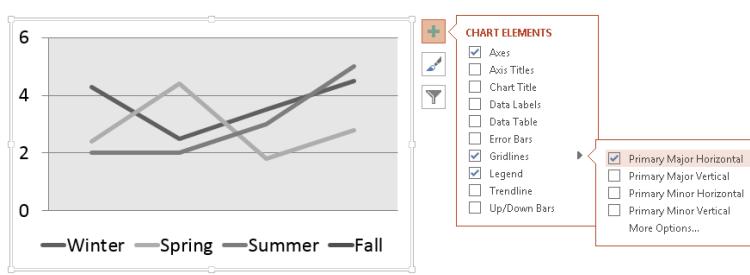
Use these techniques to handle gridlines:



- ◆ On the (Chart Tools) Design tab, click the Add Chart Element button, choose Gridlines on the drop-down list, and select or deselect an option on the submenu.
- ◆ Click the Chart Elements button, choose Gridlines, and select or deselect a check box on the submenu, as shown in Figure 1-6.

Deselecting all the gridline options removes the gridlines from a chart. Choose More Options on the submenu to open the Format Major Gridlines task pane, where you can change the color of gridlines, make gridlines semi-transparent, and make gridlines wider or narrower.

**Figure 1-6:**  
Choosing  
a Gridlines  
option by  
way of  
the Chart  
Elements  
button.



Gridlines are essential for helping read charts, but be very, very careful about displaying minor gridlines on charts. These lines can make your chart unreadable. They can turn a perfectly good chart into a gaudy pinstripe suit.

## Changing a chart element's color, font, or other particular

The (Chart Tools) Format tab is the place to go to change the color, line width, font, or font size of a chart element. Go to the (Chart Tools) Format tab, for example, to change the color of the bars in a bar chart, the color of text, or the chart background color.

Follow these basic steps to change a color, line width, font, or font size in part of a chart:

1. Go to the (Chart Tools) Format tab.
2. In the Chart Elements drop-down list, select the chart element that needs a facelift.

You can find this list in the upper-left corner of the screen, as shown in Figure 1-7.

3. Click the Format Selection button.

The Format task pane opens (see Figure 1-7).

Figure 1-7: Choose what you want to format on the Chart Elements drop-down list.

**4. Format the chart element you selected.**

In the Format task pane, you can find all the tools you need to change the color, outline, and size of a chart element. These tools are explained in detail in Chapter 4 of this mini-book.



If your experiments with retouching a chart go awry and you want to start over, click the Reset to Match Style button on the (Chart Tools) Format tab.

## *Saving a Chart as a Template So That You Can Use It Again*

If you go to the significant trouble of redecorating a chart and you expect to do it again the same way in the future, save your chart as a template. This way, you can call on the template in the future to create the same chart and not have to decorate it again. Perhaps you've created charts with your company's colors or you've created a chart that you're especially proud of. Save it as a template to spare yourself the work of reconstructing it.

A chart template holds data series colors, gridline settings, plot area colors, font settings, and the like. It doesn't hold data. These pages explain how to save a chart as a template and how to create a chart with a template you created.

### *Saving a chart as a template*

Follow these steps to make a template out of a chart:

- 1. Save your file to make sure the chart settings are saved on your computer.**
- 2. Select your chart.**
- 3. Right-click your chart and choose Save As Template on the shortcut menu.**

You see the Save Chart Template dialog box.

- 4. Enter a descriptive name for the template and click the Save button.**

Include the type of chart you're dealing with in the name. This will help you understand which template you're selecting when the time comes to choose a chart template.



By default, chart templates are saved in this folder in Windows 8, Windows 7, and Windows Vista: C:\Users\Username\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Templates\Charts. The templates have the .ctrx extension. If you want to delete or rename a template, open the Charts folder in File Explorer or Windows Explorer and do your deleting and renaming there. You can open

the Charts folder very quickly by clicking the Manage Templates button in the Insert Chart dialog box (this button appears after you choose the Templates category).

### ***Creating a chart from a template***

To create a chart from your own customized template, open the Create Chart dialog box (click the Chart button) and go to the Templates category. The dialog box shows a list of templates you created. Move the pointer over a template to read its name in a pop-up box. Select a template and click OK.

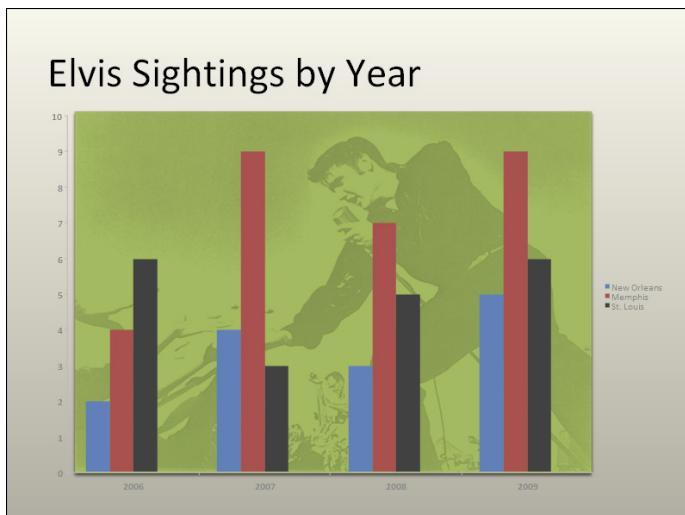
## ***Chart Tricks for the Daring and Heroic***

This chapter wouldn't be complete without a handful of chart tricks to impress your friends and intimidate your enemies. In the pages that follow, you discover how to make charts roll over and play dead. You also find out how to decorate a chart with a picture, annotate a chart, display worksheet data alongside a chart, and create a combo chart.

### ***Decorating a chart with a picture***

As shown in Figure 1-8, a picture looks mighty nice on the plot area of a chart — especially a column chart. If you have a picture in your computer that would serve well to decorate a chart, you are hereby encouraged to start decorating. Follow these steps to place a picture in the plot area of a chart:

#### **1. Select your chart.**



**Figure 1-8:**  
Using a  
picture  
as the  
background of  
a chart.

2. On the (Chart Tools) Format tab, open the Chart Elements drop-down list and choose Plot Area.



3. Click the Format Selection button.
4. In the Format Plot Area task pane, click the Picture or Texture Fill option button.
5. Click the File button.

You see the Insert Picture dialog box.

6. Locate the picture you need and select it.



Try to select a light-colored picture that will serve as a background. Chapter 3 of this mini-book explains how you can recolor a picture to make it lighter.

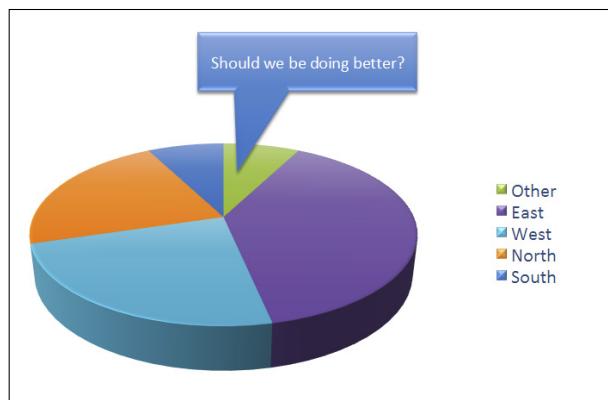
7. Click the Insert button.

The picture lands in your chart.

You may need to change the color of the *data markers* — the columns, bars, lines, or pie slices — on your chart to make them stand out against the picture. See “Changing a chart element’s color, font, or other particular,” earlier in this chapter.

## Annotating a chart

To highlight part of a chart — an especially large pie slice, a tall column, or a bar showing minuscule sales figures — annotate it with a callout text box and place the text box beside the pie slice, column, or bar. Figure 1-9 shows an example of an annotated chart. The annotation tells you that one sector isn’t performing especially well and somebody ought to get on the ball.



**Figure 1-9:**  
Annotations point out a chart’s salient features.

To annotate a chart, select a callout shape, enter text in the callout shape, and connect the shape to part of your chart. Follow these steps to annotate a chart:

- 1. Select your chart and go to the (Chart Tools) Format tab.**
- 2. Open the Shapes gallery, scroll to the Callouts section of the drop-down list, and choose a callout.**  
Depending on the size of your screen, you may have to click the Insert button to get to the Shapes button.
- 3. Drag on the page or slide to draw the callout shape.**  
Chapter 4 of this mini-book explains drawing shapes in gory detail.
- 4. Type the annotation inside the callout shape.**
- 5. Resize the callout shape as necessary to make it fit with the chart.**
- 6. Drag the yellow square on the callout shape to attach the callout to the chart.**

You probably have to do some interior decorating to make the callout color fit with the chart. Chapter 4 of this mini-book explains how to change an object's color.

### ***Displaying the raw data alongside the chart***

Showing the worksheet data used to produce a chart is sort of like showing the cops your I.D. It proves you're the real thing. It makes your chart more authentic. If yours is a simple pie chart or other chart that wasn't generated with a large amount of raw data, you can display the data alongside your chart in a data table. Anyone who sees the table knows you're not kidding or fudging the numbers.

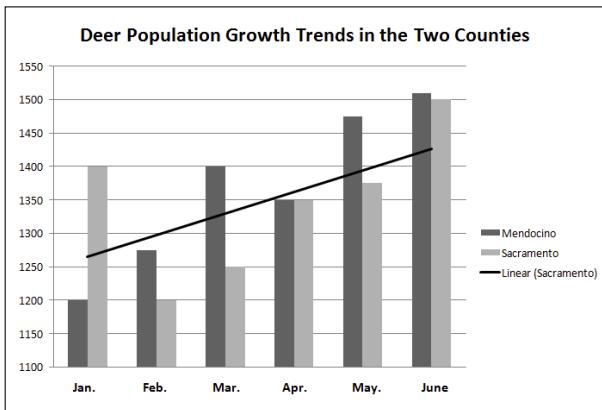
To place a table with the raw data below your chart, go to the (Chart Tools) Design tab, open the Quick Layouts gallery, and select a layout that includes a data table.



To format a data table, go to the (Chart Tools) Format tab, open the Chart Element drop-down list, and choose Data Table. Then click the Format Selection button. You see the Format Data Table task pane, where you can fill the table with color and choose colors for the lines in the table.

### ***Placing a trendline on a chart***

Especially on column charts, a *trendline* can help viewers more clearly see changes in data. Viewers can see, for example, that sales are going up or down, income is rising or falling, or annual rainfall is increasing or decreasing. Figure 1-10 shows an example of a trendline on a chart. In this case, the trendline shows that the deer population in Sacramento County is rising.



**Figure 1-10:**  
A trendline  
helps  
viewers  
recognize  
changes in  
data.

Follow these steps to put a trendline on a chart:



1. On the (Chart Tools) Layout tab, click the Add Chart Element button.
  2. Choose Trendline on the drop-down list and select a trendline option on the submenu.
- You can choose More Trendline Options on the submenu to open the Format Trendline task pane and choose additional types of trendlines.
- The Add Trendline dialog box appears.
3. Choose the data series that you want to highlight with a trendline and click OK.

To change the look of a trendline, right-click it and choose Format Trendline. In the Format Trendline task pane, choose a line color and line style.

To remove a trendline from a chart, go to the (Chart Tools) Design tab, click the Add Chart Element button, choose Trendline on the drop-down list, and choose None on the submenu.

## Troubleshooting a Chart

Sometimes tinkering with a chart opens a Pandora's Box of problems. You find yourself having to correct little errors that appear in charts. Here are some shorthand instructions for fixing common chart problems:

- ◆ **The dates in the chart aren't formatted right.** To change the way in which dates are formatted on a chart, go to the (Chart Tools) Format tab, open the Chart Elements drop-down list, and choose Horizontal (Value) Axis or Vertical (Value) Axis. Then click the Format Selection

button, and in the Format Axis task pane, go to the Number category, select Date in the Category menu, and choose a date format.

- ◆ **The numbers in the chart aren't formatted right.** To change the number of decimal places, include comma separators in numbers, display currency symbols, or do all else that pertains to numbers, go to the (Chart Tools) Format tab, open the Chart Elements drop-down list, and choose Horizontal (Value) Axis or Vertical (Value) Axis. Then click the Format Selection button. You see the Format Axis task pane. Visit the Number category and select options for displaying numbers.
- ◆ **"Category 1" or "Series 1" appears in the chart legend.** To direct you to the right place to enter data in the data grid, phantom names such as "Category 1" and "Series 1" appear in worksheets. Sometimes these phantoms wind up in chart legends as well. To remove them, go to the (Chart Tools) Design tab and click the Edit Data button. You see the data grid, where the data range used to generate the chart is enclosed in a blue box. Drag the lower-right corner of the box so that the box encloses only the data you want for your chart.
- ◆ **In 3D charts, small markers are obscured by large markers in the foreground.** For all the data markers to be shown in a 3D chart, the smaller ones have to be in the foreground. To rearrange data markers, go to the (Chart Tools) Design tab and click the Select Data button to open the Select Data Source dialog box. Then select a series and click the Up or Down button to rearrange the series in your chart. Series that are high on the list go to the back of the chart; series that are low on the list go to the front.
- ◆ **The chart doesn't gather all data from the worksheet.** On the (Chart Tools) Design tab, click the Edit Data button, and in the data grid that stores data for your chart, enlarge the blue data-range box so that it encloses all your data. You can enlarge the box by dragging its lower-right corner.

# ***Chapter 2: Making a SmartArt Diagram***

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ✓ Creating a diagram
- ✓ Repositioning and resizing diagrams
- ✓ Laying out and changing the look of diagram shapes
- ✓ Entering text on a diagram shape
- ✓ Changing the appearance of a diagram
- ✓ Creating a diagram from shapes

**A**long with charts and tables, diagrams are the best way to present your ideas. Diagrams clearly show, for example, employees' relationships with one another, product cycles, workflow processes, and spheres of influence. A diagram is an excellent marriage of images and words. Diagrams allow an audience to literally visualize a concept, idea, or relationship.

This chapter explains how to construct diagrams from SmartArt graphics and how to create a diagram. It shows how to customize diagrams by changing the size of diagrams and diagram shapes, adding and removing shapes, and changing shapes' colors. You also discover how to change the direction of a diagram and enter the text. Finally, this chapter demonstrates how to create a diagram from scratch with shapes and connectors.

## ***The Basics: Creating SmartArt Diagrams***

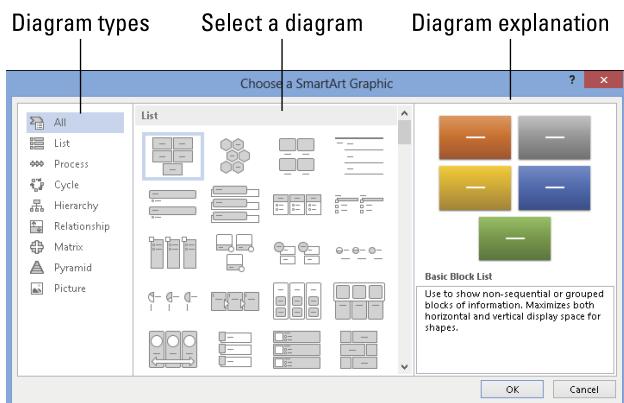
In Word, PowerPoint, and Excel, diagrams are made from *SmartArt graphics*. These diagram graphics are "interactive" in the sense that you can move, alter, and write text on them. In other words, you can use them to construct diagrams. You can alter these diagrams to your liking. You can make a diagram portray precisely what you want it to portray, although you usually have to wrestle with the diagram a bit.

## Choosing a diagram



The first step in creating a diagram is to select a layout in the Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box, shown in Figure 2-1. To open this dialog box, go to the Insert tab and click the SmartArt button. After you create the initial diagram, you customize it to create a diagram of your own. About 140 diagrams are in the dialog box. They fall into these eight categories:

<b>Diagram Type</b>	<b>Use</b>
List	For describing blocks of related information as well as sequential steps in a task, process, or workflow
Process	For describing how a concept or physical process changes over time or is modified
Cycle	For illustrating a circular progression without a beginning or end, or a relationship in which the components are in balance
Hierarchy	For describing hierarchical relationships between people, departments, and other entities, as well as portraying branchlike relationships in which one decision or action leads to another
Relationship	For describing the relationship between different components (but not hierarchical relationships)
Matrix	For showing the relationship between quadrants
Pyramid	For showing proportional or hierarchical relationships
Picture	For creating diagrams that include photographs and pictures (This catch-all category presents picture diagrams from the other categories.)



**Figure 2-1:**  
To create  
a diagram,  
start by  
selecting a  
diagram in  
this dialog  
box.



If you intend to construct a “flow chart type” diagram with many branches and levels, go to the Hierarchy category and select the Organization Chart or one of the hierarchy diagrams. As “Laying Out the Diagram Shapes” explains later in this chapter, only these choices permit you to make a diagram with many different branches and levels.

## ***Making the diagram your own***

After you select a generic diagram in the Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box and click OK, the next step is to make the diagram your own by completing these tasks:

- ◆ **Change the diagram’s size and position:** Change the size and position of a diagram to make it fit squarely on your page or slide. See “Changing the Size and Position of a Diagram,” later in this chapter.
- ◆ **Add shapes to (or remove shapes from) the diagram:** Adding a shape involves declaring where to add the shape, promoting or demoting the shape with respect to other shapes, and declaring how the new shape connects to another shape. See “Laying Out the Diagram Shapes,” later in this chapter.
- ◆ **Enter text:** Enter text on each shape, or component, of the diagram. See “Handling the Text on Diagram Shapes,” later in this chapter.

If you so desire, you can also customize your diagram by taking on some or all of these tasks:

- ◆ **Changing its overall appearance:** Choose a different color scheme or 3D variation for your diagram. See “Choosing a Look for Your Diagram,” later in this chapter.
- ◆ **Changing shapes:** Select a new shape for part of your diagram, change the size of a shape, or assign different colors to shapes to make shapes stand out. See “Changing the Appearance of Diagram Shapes,” later in this chapter.

If you’re comfortable creating a diagram of your own by drawing shapes and lines, no law says you have to begin in the Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box. Later in this chapter, “Creating a Diagram from Scratch” looks into creating a diagram by making use of text boxes, lines, and shapes.

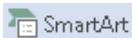
## ***Creating the Initial Diagram***

The first step in fashioning a diagram is to choose a SmartArt graphic in the Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box. After that, you roll up your sleeves, change the diagram’s size and shape, and enter the text. If you select the wrong diagram to start with, all is not lost. You can choose another diagram

in its place, although how successful swapping one diagram for another is depends on how lucky you are and how far along you are in creating your diagram. These pages explain how to create an initial diagram and swap one diagram for another.

## ***Creating a diagram***

Follow these steps to create a diagram:



### **1. On the Insert tab, click the SmartArt button.**

You see the Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box (refer to Figure 2-1). In PowerPoint, you can also open the dialog box by clicking the SmartArt icon in a content placeholder frame.

### **2. Select a diagram in the Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box.**

Diagrams are divided into nine categories, as I explain earlier in this chapter. The dialog box offers a description of each diagram. Either select a type on the left side of the dialog box or scroll the entire list to find the graphic that most resembles the diagram you want.



If you want to create a graph with many levels and branches, go to the Hierarchy category and select one of these charts: Organization Chart or Name and Title Organization Chart. These two diagrams are much more complex than the others and allow for branching. See “Laying Out the Diagram Shapes” later in this chapter for details.

### **3. Click OK.**

The next topic in this chapter explains how to swap one diagram for another, in case you chose wrongly in the Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box.

## **Starting from a sketch**

You can spare yourself a lot of trouble by starting from a sketch when you create a diagram. Find a pencil with a good eraser, grab a blank piece of paper, and start drawing. Imagine what your ideal diagram looks like. Draw the arrows or lines connecting the different parts of the diagram. Write the text. Draw the diagram that best illustrates what you want to communicate.

Later, in the Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box (refer to Figure 2-1), you can select the

diagram that most resembles the one you sketched. The dialog box offers more than 200 types of diagrams. Unless you start from a sketch and have a solid idea of the diagram you want, you can get lost in the dialog box. Also, if you don't start from a sketch, adding shapes to the diagram and landing shapes in the right places can be a chore.

## **Swapping one diagram for another**

If the diagram you chose initially doesn't do the job, you can swap it for a different diagram. How successful the swap is depends on how far along you are in creating your diagram and whether your diagram is simple or complex. Follow these steps to swap one diagram for another:

- 1. Click your diagram to select it.**
- 2. Go to the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab.**
- 3. Open the Layouts gallery (you may have to click the Change Layout button first).**

You see a gallery with diagrams of the same type as the diagram you're working with.

- 4. Select a new diagram or choose More Layouts to open the Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box and select a diagram there.**

You may have to click the trusty Undo button and start all over if the diagram you selected for the swap didn't do the job.

## **Changing the Size and Position of a Diagram**

To make a diagram fit squarely on a page or slide, you have to change its size and position. Resizing and positioning diagrams and other objects is the subject of Chapter 4 of this mini-book, but in case you don't care to travel that far to get instructions, here are shorthand instructions for resizing and positioning diagrams:

- ◆ **Resizing a diagram:** Select the diagram, move the pointer over a selection handle on the corner or side, and start dragging after the pointer changes into a two-headed arrow. You can also go to the (SmartArt Tools) Format tab and enter new measurements in the Width and Height boxes. (You may have to click the Size button to see these text boxes, depending on the size of your screen.)
- ◆ **Repositioning a diagram:** Select the diagram, move the pointer over its perimeter, and when you see the four-headed arrow, click and start dragging.

Notice when you resize a diagram that the shapes in the diagram change size proportionally. Most diagrams are designed so that shapes fill out the diagram. When you change the size of a diagram, remove a shape from a diagram, or add a shape, shapes change size within the diagram.

## *Laying Out the Diagram Shapes*

At the heart of every diagram are the rectangles, circles, arrows, and what-nots that make the diagram what it is. These shapes illustrate the concept or idea you want to express to your audience. Your biggest challenge when creating a diagram is laying out the diagram shapes.

The following pages explain how to select diagram shapes, add shapes, reposition shapes, and remove shapes from diagrams. They also offer instructions specific to working with hierarchy diagrams.

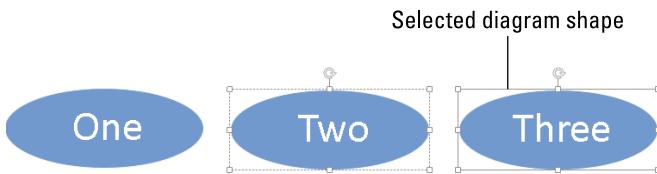
### *Selecting a diagram shape*

Before you can remove a shape from a diagram or indicate where you want to add a new shape, you have to select a diagram shape. To select a diagram shape, move the pointer over its perimeter and click when you see the four-headed arrow underneath your pointer.



You can tell when a diagram shape is selected because a solid line, not a dotted line, appears around the shape, as shown in Figure 2-2. When you see dotted lines around a shape, you're expected to enter text.

**Figure 2-2:**  
A selected  
diagram  
shape is  
surrounded  
by solid  
lines.



### *Removing a shape from a diagram*

Removing a shape from a diagram is as easy as falling off a turnip truck as long as you correctly select the shape before you remove it. To remove a shape, select it and press Delete. Other shapes grow larger when you remove a shape, in keeping with the “fill out the diagram by any means necessary” philosophy.

### *Moving diagram shapes to different positions*

Move Up

Move Down

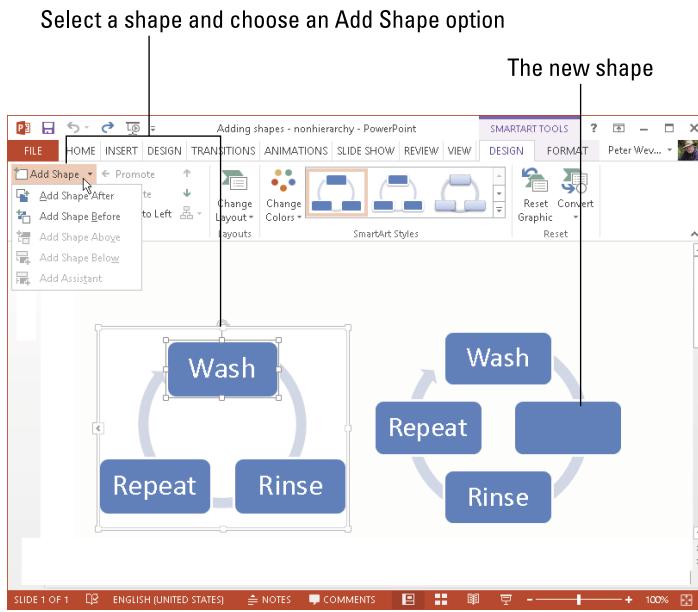
If a shape in a diagram isn't in the right position, don't fret because you can change the order of shapes very easily by going to the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab and clicking the Move Up or Move Down button.

Select the diagram shape that needs repositioning and click the Move Up or Move Down button as many times as necessary to land the shape in the right place.

## *Adding shapes to diagrams apart from hierarchy diagrams*

Unlike hierarchy diagrams, list, process, cycle, relationship, and matrix diagrams don't have branches. They always travel in one direction only. This makes adding shapes to these diagrams fairly straightforward. To add a shape, you select a shape in the diagram and then add the new shape so that it appears before or after the shape you selected, as shown in Figure 2-3.

**Figure 2-3:**  
To add a shape, start by selecting the shape that your new shape will go before or after.



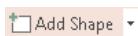
Follow these steps to add a shape to a list, process, cycle, relationship, matrix, or pyramid diagram:

1. In your diagram, select the shape that your new shape will appear before or after.

Earlier in this chapter, "Selecting a diagram shape" explains how to select diagram shapes.

2. Choose the Add Shape After or Add Shape Before command.

To get to these commands, use one of these techniques:



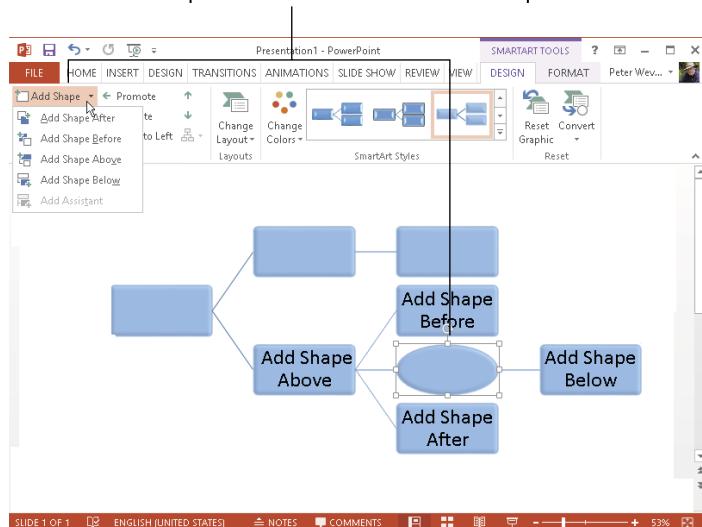
- On the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab, open the drop-down list on the Add Shape button and choose Add Shape After or Add Shape Before, as shown in Figure 2-3.
- Right-click the shape you selected, choose Add Shape on the short-cut menu, and then choose Add Shape After or Add Shape Before on the submenu.

## Adding shapes to hierarchy diagrams

Hierarchy diagrams are more complex than other diagrams because they branch out such that shapes are found on different levels. This branching out makes adding shapes to hierarchy diagrams problematic.

As shown in Figure 2-4, Office offers four Add Shape commands for adding shapes to hierarchy diagrams: Add Shape After, Add Shape Before, Add Shape Above, and Add Shape Below. What these commands do depends on whether the diagram is horizontally or vertically oriented, because what constitutes after, before, above, and below is different in vertical and horizontal diagrams. Suffice it to say that when you add shapes to hierarchy diagrams, you often have to try different commands, clicking the Undo button and starting all over until you get it right.

Select a shape and choose one of four Add Shape commands



**Figure 2-4:**  
You can  
add a  
shape after,  
before,  
above, or  
below a  
shape in a  
hierarchy  
diagram.

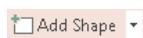
Follow these steps to add a shape to a hierarchy diagram:

- 1. In your diagram, select the shape to which your new shape will be connected.**

Earlier in this chapter, “Selecting a diagram shape” describes how to select a shape.

- 2. Choose an Add Shape command.**

Figure 2-4 shows what Add Shape commands do. You can choose Add Shape commands with one of these techniques:



- On the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab, open the drop-down list on the Add Shape button and choose an Add Shape command (refer to Figure 2-4).
- Right-click the shape you selected, choose Add Shape on the shortcut menu, and choose an Add Shape command on the submenu.

## ***Adding shapes to Organization charts***

An Organization chart diagram offers many opportunities for connecting shapes. The shapes can branch out from one another in four directions as well as appear to the side in the “assistant” position. When you place one shape below another shape, you can make the new shape *hang* so that it is joined to a line that drops, or hangs, from another shape. These pages explain how to add shapes and create hanging relationships between one shape and the shapes subordinate to it.

### ***Adding an Organization Chart shape***

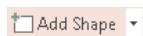
Besides adding a shape after, before, above, or below a shape, you can add an assistant shape to an Organization Chart diagram, as shown in Figure 2-5. An assistant shape is an intermediary shape between two levels. Follow these steps to add a shape to an Organization Chart diagram:

- 1. Select the shape to which you will add a new shape.**

Earlier in this chapter, “Selecting a diagram shape” explains how to select shapes. As shown in Figure 2-5, shapes are surrounded by solid lines, not dotted lines, when you select them properly.

- 2. Choose an Add Shape command.**

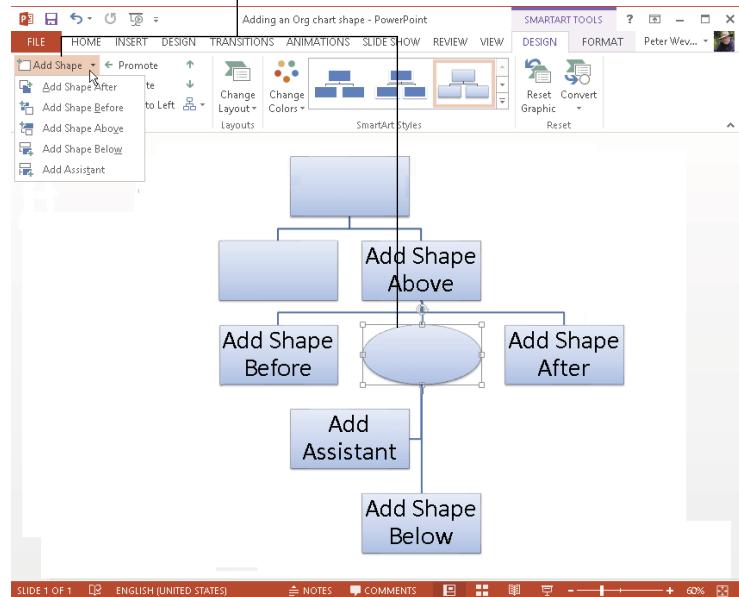
You can choose Add Shape commands in two ways:



- On the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab, open the drop-down list on the Add Shape button and choose an Add Shape command (see Figure 2-5).
- Right-click the shape you selected, choose Add Shape on the shortcut menu, and then choose an Add Shape command on the submenu.

## 612 Laying Out the Diagram Shapes

Select a shape and choose one of the five Add Shape commands



**Figure 2-5:**  
Adding a  
shape to an  
Organization  
Chart  
diagram.

Figure 2-5 demonstrates what the Add Shape commands do to a vertically oriented diagram. Notice that Add Shape Before places a new shape to the left of the shape you selected; Add Shape After places a new shape to the right.



Be careful about choosing the Add Shape Above command. This command effectively bumps the shape you selected to a lower level in order to make room for the new shape. In effect, you demote one shape when you place a new shape above it.

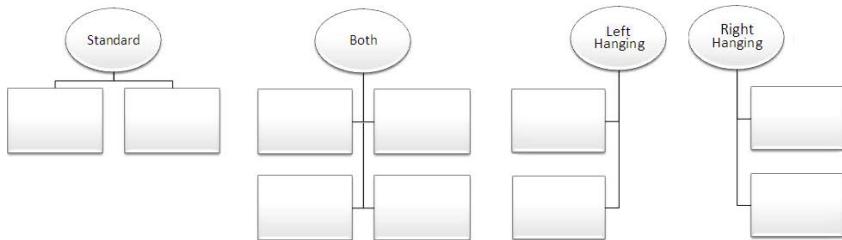


Shapes created with the Add Assistant command land on the left side of the line to which they're attached, but if you prefer the assistant shape to be on the right side of the line, you can drag it to the right.

### Hanging a shape below another shape in an Organization Chart

Besides the standard relationship between shapes above and below one another, you can create a *hanging relationship* in an Organization Chart diagram. Figure 2-6 shows the four kinds of hanging relationships — Standard, Both, Left Hanging, and Right Hanging. In a hanging relationship, the line hangs from a shape, and subordinate shapes are connected to the line.

**Figure 2-6:**  
Ways that shapes can hang in Organization Chart diagrams.



You can create a hanging relationship between shapes before or after you create the subordinate shapes. Follow these steps to create a hanging relationship:

1. Select the shape to which other shapes will hang or are hanging.
2. On the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab, click the Layout button.
3. On the drop-down list, choose Both, Left Hanging, or Right Hanging.

### Promoting and demoting shapes in hierarchy diagrams

Shapes in hierarchy diagrams are ranked by level. If a shape is on the wrong level, you can move it higher or lower in the diagram by clicking the Promote or Demote button on the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab. Promoting and demoting shapes can turn into a donnybrook if you aren't careful. If the shapes being promoted or demoted are attached to subordinate shapes, the subordinate shapes are promoted or demoted as well. This can have unforeseen and sometimes horrendous consequences.

Follow these steps to promote or demote a shape (and its subordinates) in a hierarchy diagram:

1. Select the shape that needs a change of rank.

You can select more than one shape by Ctrl+clicking.

2. Go to the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab.



3. Click the Promote or Demote button.



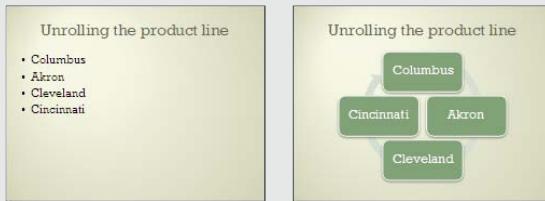
Do you like what you see? If not, you may have to click the Undo button and start all over.

## Turning a bulleted list into a diagram (PowerPoint)

Suppose you're working along in PowerPoint when suddenly the realization strikes you that a bulleted list in a text frame or text box would work much better as a diagram. For those occasions, you can click the Convert to SmartArt button. By clicking this button, you can turn the text in a text frame or text box into a diagram. If the text frame or box contains a bulleted list, each bulleted item becomes a diagram shape.

Follow these steps to turn a text frame or text box into a diagram:

- 1. Select the text frame or text box.**
  - 2. On the Home tab, click the Convert to SmartArt Graphic button.**
  - 3. Either select a diagram on the list or choose More SmartArt Graphics to open the Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box and select a diagram there.**
- You see a drop-down list with basic diagram choices.



## Handling the Text on Diagram Shapes

When you create a new diagram, “[Text]” (the word *Text* enclosed in brackets) appears on shapes. Your job is to replace this generic placeholder with something more meaningful and less bland. These sections explain how to enter text and bulleted lists on shapes.

### Entering text on a diagram shape

Use one of these techniques to enter text on a diagram shape:

- ◆ **Click in the shape and start typing:** The words you type appear in the shape, as shown in Figure 2-7.
- ◆ **Enter text in the Text pane:** Enter the text by typing it in the Text pane, as shown in Figure 2-7. The text pane opens to the left of the diagram. To open the text pane:



- On the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab, click the Text Pane button.
- Click the Text Pane button on the diagram. This button is not labeled, but you can find it to the left of the diagram.

**Figure 2-7:**  
Type directly on diagram shapes or enter text on the Text pane.



The text in diagrams shrinks as you enter more text so that all text is the same size. If you want to make the text larger or smaller in one shape, see “Changing fonts and font sizes on shapes” later in this chapter.

### Entering bulleted lists on diagram shapes

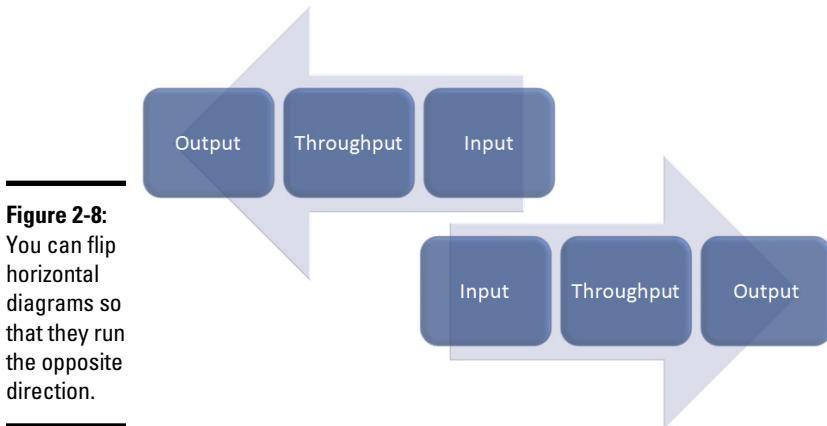
Some diagram shapes have built-in bulleted lists, but no matter. Whether or not a shape is prepared to be bulleted, you can enter bullets in a diagram shape. Here are instructions for entering and removing bullets:



- ◆ **Entering a bulleted list:** Select the shape that needs bullets, and on the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab, click the Add Bullet button. Either enter the bulleted items directly into the shape (pressing Enter as you type each entry) or click the Text Pane button to open the Text pane (refer to Figure 2-7) and enter bullets there.
- ◆ **Removing bulleted items:** Click before the first bulleted entry and keep pressing the Delete key until you have removed all the bulleted items. You can also start in the Text pane (refer to Figure 2-7) and press the Delete key there until you've removed the bulleted items, or drag to select several bulleted items and then press Delete.

## Changing a Diagram's Direction

As long as your diagram is horizontally oriented, you can change its direction. As shown in Figure 2-8, you can flip it over such that the rightmost shape in your diagram becomes the leftmost shape, and what was the leftmost shape becomes the rightmost shape. If arrows are in your diagram, the arrows point the opposite direction after you flip the diagram. You can't flip vertically oriented diagrams this way. Sorry, but diagrams that run north to south, not west to east, can't be rolled over.



**Figure 2-8:**

You can flip horizontal diagrams so that they run the opposite direction.

Follow these steps to flip a horizontally oriented diagram:

1. **Select the diagram.**
2. **On the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab, click the Right to Left button.**



If you don't like what you see, click the button again or click the Undo button.

## Choosing a Look for Your Diagram

Decide how a diagram looks by starting on the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab. Starting there, you can choose a color scheme for your diagram and a different style. Between the Change Colors drop-down list and the SmartArt Styles gallery, you can find a combination of options that presents your diagram in the best light:

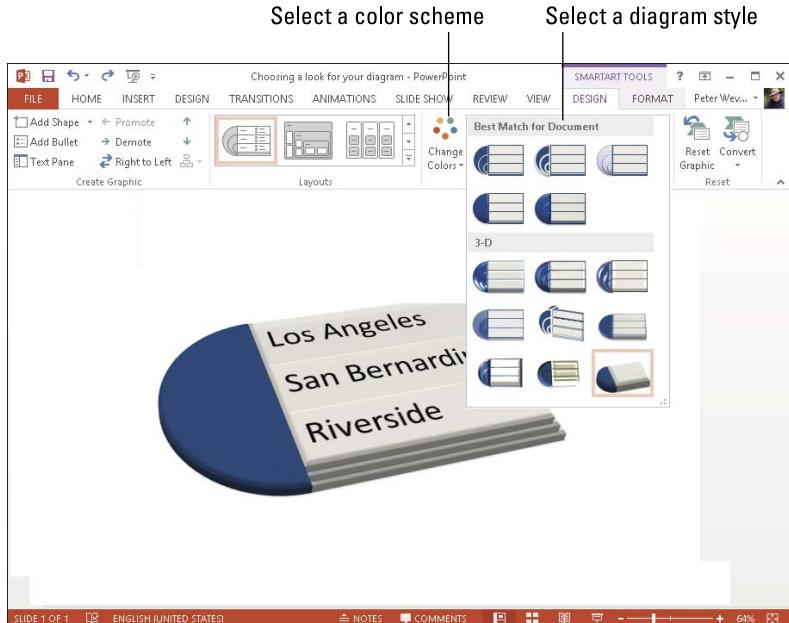


- ◆ **Change Colors button:** Click the Change Colors button to see color schemes for your diagram on the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 2-9. Point at a few options to live-preview them.
- ◆ **SmartArt Styles gallery:** Open the SmartArt Styles gallery to choose simple and 3-D variations on the diagram.



If you experiment too freely and wish to backpedal, click the Reset Graphic button on the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab. Clicking this button reverses all the formatting changes you made to your diagram.

**Figure 2-9:**  
Experiment freely with the Change Colors and SmartArt Styles gallery options.



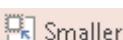
If your Word document, Excel worksheet, or PowerPoint presentation includes many diagrams, make sure your diagrams are consistent in appearance. Choose similar colors for diagrams. If you like 3-D diagrams, make the majority of your diagrams 3-D. Don't let the diagrams overwhelm the ideas they are meant to express. The point is to present ideas in diagrams, not turn your work into a SmartArt diagram showcase.

## Changing the Appearance of Diagram Shapes

To call attention to one part of a diagram, you can change the appearance of a shape and make it stand out. Any part of a diagram that is different from the other parts naturally gets more attention. To change the appearance of a shape, consider changing its size or color, exchanging one shape for another, or changing the font and font size of the text. These topics are covered in the following pages.

### Changing the size of a diagram shape

A shape that is larger than other shapes in a diagram gets the attention of the audience. Select your shape and use one of these techniques to enlarge or shrink it:



- ◆ On the (SmartArt Tools) Format tab, click the Larger or Smaller button as many times as necessary to make the shape the right size.

- ◆ Move the pointer over a corner selection handle, and when the pointer changes to a two-headed arrow, click and start dragging.

Notice that the text inside the shape remains the same size although the shape is larger. To change the size of the text in a shape, see “Changing fonts and font sizes on shapes,” later in this chapter.

To return a diagram shape to its original size after you’ve fooled with it, right-click the shape and choose Reset Shape.

### Exchanging one shape for another

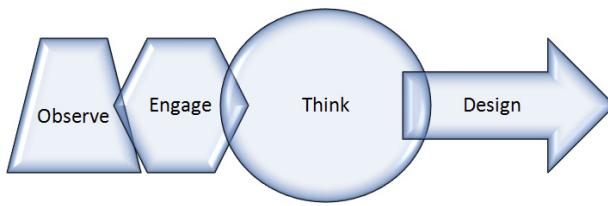
Another way to call attention to an important part of a diagram is to change shapes, as shown in Figure 2-10. Rather than a conventional shape, use an oval, block arrow, or star. You can substitute a shape in the Shapes gallery for any diagram shape (Chapter 4 of this mini-book explores the Shapes gallery). To exchange one shape for another in a diagram, select the shape and use one of these techniques:



- ◆ On the (SmartArt Tools) Format tab, click the Change Shape button and select a shape in the Shapes gallery.
- ◆ Right-click the shape, choose Change Shape on the shortcut menu, and select a shape on the submenu.

**Figure 2-10:**

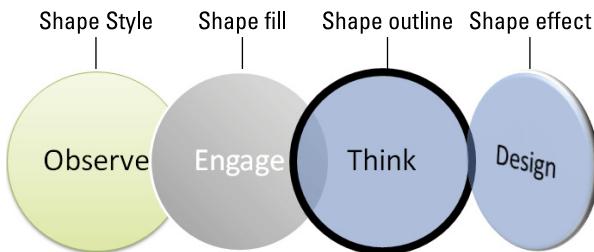
Using different shapes and different-sized shapes in a diagram.



### Changing a shape's color, fill, or outline

Yet another way to call attention to a shape is to change its color, fill, or outline border, as shown in Figure 2-11. Select a shape and go to the (SmartArt Tools) Format tab to change a shape’s color, fill, or outline.

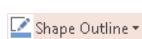
**Figure 2-11:**  
Ways to make a diagram shape stand out.



- ◆ **Restyling a shape:** Select an option in the Shape Styles gallery to give a shape a makeover.



◆ **Filling a shape with a new color:** Click the Shape Fill button and make a choice from the drop-down list to select a color, picture, two-color gradient, or texture for the shape.



◆ **Changing the outline:** Click the Shape Outline button and choose a color and weight for the shape's border on the drop-down list.



◆ **Applying a shape effect:** Click the Shape Effects button to select a shape effect for your shape.

## Editing 3-D diagrams in 2-D

Three-dimensional diagrams are wonderful. You can impress your friends with a 3-D diagram. All you have to do to turn a mundane two-dimensional diagram into a three-dimensional showpiece is go to the (SmartArt Tools) Design tab, open the SmartArt Styles gallery, and select a 3-D option.

Unfortunately, editing a 3-D diagram can be difficult. The shapes and text are all askew. It's

hard to tell where to click or what to drag when you're editing a 3-D diagram.

Fortunately, you can get around the problem of editing a 3-D diagram by temporarily displaying it in two dimensions. On the (SmartArt Tools) Format tab, click the Edit in 2-D button to temporarily render a 3-D graphic in two dimensions. Click the button a second time to return to the third dimension.



## ***Changing fonts and font sizes on shapes***

To make a diagram shape stand out, try changing the font and font size of the text on the shape. Before you change fonts and font sizes, however, you should know that changing fonts in a shape effectively disconnects the shape from the other shapes in the diagram. Normally text changes size throughout a diagram when you add or remove shapes, but when you change the font or font size in one shape, it is no longer associated with the other shapes; its letters don't change their size or appearance when shapes are added or removed from the diagram of which it is a part.

To alter the text on a diagram shape, select the text, go to the Home tab, and choose a different font, font size, and font color, too, if you want.

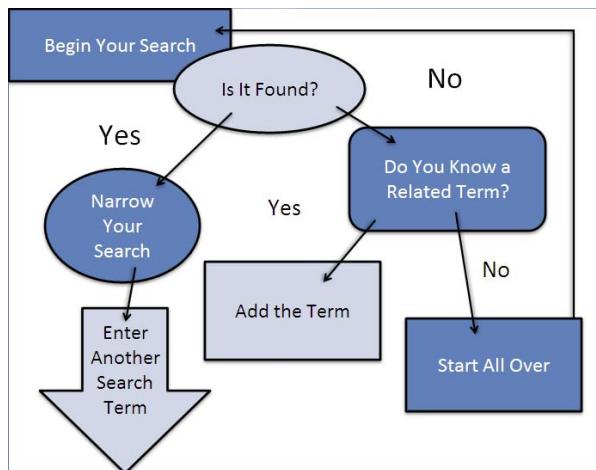
## ***Creating a Diagram from Scratch***

If you have the skill and the wherewithal, you can create a diagram from scratch by piecing together shapes, arrows, and connectors. The diagram in Figure 2-12, for example, was made not from SmartArt graphics but from shapes, arrows, and connectors. Chapter 4 of this mini-book explains how to draw shapes and lines between shapes. You can enter text on any shape merely by clicking inside it and wiggling your fingers over the keyboard.

---

**Figure 2-12:**  
A  
homegrown  
diagram  
made  
without  
SmartArt  
graphics.

---



Making a diagram from scratch has some advantages. You can draw the connectors any which way. Lines can cross the diagram chaotically. You can include text boxes as well as shapes (the diagram in Figure 2-12 has four text boxes). Don't hesitate to fashion your own diagrams when a presentation or document calls for it.



# *Chapter 3: Handling Graphics, Photos, and Clip Art*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Understanding the different graphic file formats
- ✓ Placing a graphic in a Word document, PowerPoint slide, or Excel worksheet
- ✓ Recoloring, cropping, and otherwise altering a picture
- ✓ Compressing graphics

**A** picture, so they say, is worth a thousand words. Whether it's worth a thousand words or merely 950 is debatable. What is certain is that visuals help people remember things. A carefully chosen image in a PowerPoint presentation, Word document, or Excel worksheet helps others understand you better. The image reinforces the ideas or information that you're trying to put across.

This chapter explains how you can make pictures — photographs, graphics, and clip art — part of your Word documents, PowerPoint presentations, and Excel worksheets. It looks into graphic file formats and other issues pertaining to graphics as well as how to touch up graphics in an Office application.

## *All about Picture File Formats*

Graphics and photographs come in many different file formats, and as far as Office 2013 is concerned, some are better than others. These pages explain what you need to know about graphic files to use them wisely in Office files. Here, you find out what bitmap and vector graphics are, what resolution and color depth are, and how graphic files are compressed.

### *Bitmap and vector graphics*

All graphic images fall into either the bitmap or vector category:

- ◆ A *bitmap graphic* is composed of thousands upon thousands of tiny dots called *pixels* that, taken together, form an image (the term “pixel” comes from “picture element”). A photograph is a bitmap graphic.
- ◆ A *vector graphic* is drawn with the aid of computer instructions that describe the shape and dimension of each line, curve, circle, and so on. A clip-art image is a vector graphic.

The difference between the two formats is that vector graphics do not distort when you enlarge or shrink them, whereas bitmap graphics lose resolution when their size is changed. Furthermore, vector images do not require nearly as much disk space as bitmap graphics. Drop a few bitmap graphics in a file and soon you're dealing with a file that is close to 750K in size.

Table 3-1 describes popular bitmap graphic formats; Table 3-2 lists popular vector graphic formats.

---

**Table 3-1** **Bitmap (Photograph) File Formats**

<i>Extension</i>	<i>File Type</i>	<i>Color Depth</i>	<i>Compression</i>
BMP, BMZ, DIB	Microsoft Windows Bitmap	To 24-bit	None
GFA, GIF	Graphics Interchange Format	To 8-bit	Lossy
JPEG, JPG, JFIF, JPE	JPEG File Interchange Format	To 24-bit	Lossy
PICT	Macintosh PICT	To 32-bit	None
PNG	Portable Network Graphics	To 48-bit	Lossless
RLE	Bitmap File in RLE Compression Scheme	To 24-bit	None
TIF, TIFF	Tagged Image File Format	To 24-bit	Lossless

---

**Table 3-2** **Vector (Clip Art) File Formats**

<i>Extension</i>	<i>File Type</i>
CDR	CorelDRAW
CGM	Computer Graphics Metafile
EMF	Enhanced Windows Metafile
EMZ	Windows Enhanced Metafile
EPS	Encapsulated PostScript
PCT	Macintosh PICT
WMF	Windows Metafile
WPG	WordPerfect Graphics

---

## What is clip art?

In the old days, long before the invention of computers, people would buy clip-art books. They would literally cut, or clip, images from these books and paste them into posters, letters, and advertisements.

Today's clip art is the digital equivalent of old-fashioned clip art. You can paste clip art into computer applications such as Word, PowerPoint, and Excel. You can resize clip-art images without the images losing their integrity.

The clip art available to Office 2013 users isn't encumbered by licensing restrictions; it's in the public domain, and you can use it as you please.

Use clip art to decorate your files. Use it to help illustrate an idea or simply to add a little liveliness to your work. In my experience, the hardest task where clip art is concerned is finding the right image. You can choose from so many images that finding the right one is a chore.



## Resolution

*Resolution* refers to how many pixels comprise a bitmap image. The higher the resolution, the clearer the image. Resolution is measured in *dots per inch* (dpi), sometimes called *pixels per inch* (ppi). Images with more dots — or pixels — per inch are clearer and display more fineness of detail. When you scan an image, the scanner permits you to choose a dots-per-inch setting.

High-resolution images look better but require more disk space than low-resolution images. Figure 3-1 illustrates the difference between a high-resolution and low-resolution photograph.

**Figure 3-1:**  
A high-resolution photo (left) and the same photo at low resolution (right).



## Compression



*Compression* refers to a mathematical algorithm by which bitmap graphic files can be made smaller. In effect, compression enables your computer to store a bitmap graphic with less disk space. Some bitmap graphic types can't be compressed; other bitmap graphic types are compressed using either lossless or lossy compression:

- ◆ **Lossless compression:** To maintain the picture's integrity, the same number of pixels are stored in the compressed file as in the original. Because the pixels remain intact, you can change the size of a file that has undergone lossless compression without losing picture quality.
- ◆ **Lossy compression:** Without regard for the picture's integrity, pixel data in the original picture is lost during compression. Therefore, if you try to enlarge a picture that has undergone lossy compression, the picture loses quality.

## Color depth



*Color depth* refers to the number of colors that can be displayed in a graphics file. The larger the color depth, the larger the number of colors that can be displayed, the richer the graphic looks, and the larger its file size is. Color depth is measured in bits. To get technical on you, color depth is measured in the number of bits that are needed to describe each pixel's color in the image. A bit, or "binary digit," is the smallest unit of data measurement in computing. These are the color-depth measurements:

<b>Bit Size</b>	<b>Color Depth</b>
1-bit	Black and white only
8-bit	256 colors
16-bit	65,536 colors
24-bit	16,777,216 colors
32-bit	4,294,967,296 colors

To look like photographs and not cartoons, photographs require a color depth of at least 16-bits. Sometimes color depth is described in terms of a color palette. For example, a graphic format with an 8-bit color depth is said to have a 256-color palette.



### ***Choosing file formats for graphics***

One of the challenges of using photographs and clip art in Office files is keeping file sizes to a minimum. A file that is loaded down with many photographs can take a long time to load and send over the Internet.

The trick is to find a balance between high-quality, high-resolution graphics and the need to keep file sizes low. Here are some tips for choosing graphic file formats:

- ◆ Consider sticking with clip-art vector graphics if you're including graphics in your file strictly for decoration purposes. Clip-art vector images are easy to come by, don't require very much disk space, and can be edited in Office.
- ◆ For photographs, make JPEG your first choice for graphics. JPEG images have a fairly high resolution. JPEG is the de facto photograph standard on the Internet.
- ◆ If you're dealing with black-and-white photos or resolution doesn't matter, use GIF files. These files eat up the least amount of disk space.

## ***Inserting a Picture in an Office File***

After you've weighed the merits of different kinds of graphics and decided which one is best for you, you can insert it. To insert a picture, either use one stored on your computer or get one from the Internet.



After a picture lands in a file, it becomes an object. Chapter 4 of this mini-book explains how to manipulate objects — how to move them, change their size, and change their borders. Later in this chapter, “Touching Up a Picture” looks into various ways to change the appearance of graphics.

## ***Inserting a picture of your own***

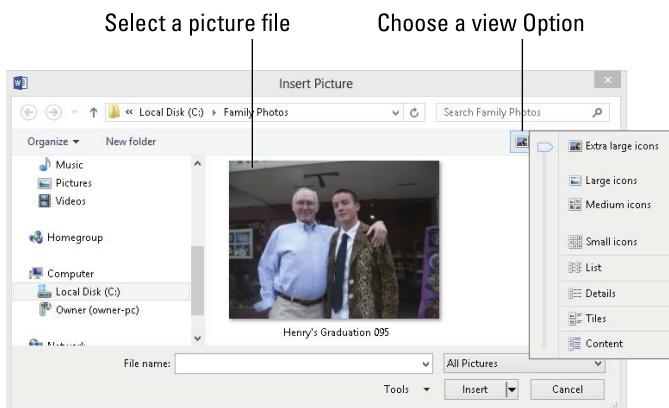
Inserting a picture stored on your computer (or computer network) is as simple as choosing it in the Insert Picture dialog box. Follow these steps to insert a picture on a PowerPoint slide, Word document, or Excel worksheet:

- 1. Go to the Insert tab.**



- 2. Click the Pictures button.**

You see the Insert Picture dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-2. In PowerPoint, you can also open this dialog box by clicking the picture icon in a content placeholder frame.



**Figure 3-2:**

You can preview a picture file before you insert it.



- 3. Select a file in the Insert Picture dialog box.**

As Figure 3-2 shows, you can choose a View option to see what a graphic looks like.

You can click the File Types button to open a drop-down list and choose a file type to locate files of a certain type in the dialog box.

- 4. Click the Insert button.**

Go to the (Picture Tools) Format tab to see all the different ways you can manipulate a picture after you insert it.

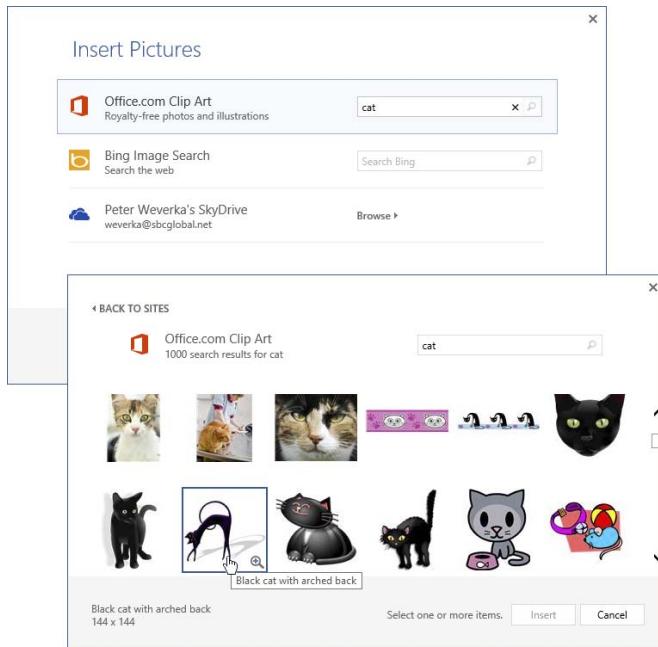


If you chose the wrong picture, don't fret because you can exchange one picture for another. On the (Picture Tools) Format tab, click the Change Picture button and select a different picture in the Insert Picture dialog box.

## **Obtaining a picture online**

Don't have a suitable picture on your computer? You can obtain a picture online. As shown in Figure 3-3, the Insert Pictures dialog box gives you the opportunity to obtain a picture from these places:

- ◆ **Office.com:** Search the repository of clip art and photos at Office.com.
- ◆ **The Internet:** Search the Internet for pictures using the Bing search engine.
- ◆ **A SkyDrive folder:** Obtain a picture from a folder you maintain or share at SkyDrive (Book X explains SkyDrive).



**Figure 3-3:**  
A picture  
search of  
Office.com  
in the Insert  
Pictures  
dialog box.

Follow these steps to obtain a picture from the Internet:

- 1. Go to the Insert tab.**
- 2. Click the Online Pictures button.**
- 3. Direct your search to Office.com, the Internet, or a SkyDrive folder.**



The Insert Pictures dialog box opens (see Figure 3-3).

You have come to a junction in the road:

- **Office.com:** Enter a search term and click the Search button (or press Enter). Then scroll through the search results, select the picture you want, and click the Insert button (see Figure 3-3).
- **The Internet:** Enter a search term in the Bing Image Search box and click the Search button (or press Enter). Then scroll through the search results, select a picture, and click Insert.
- **A SkyDrive folder:** Click the Browse button to open your SkyDrive folder. Then locate the picture you want and click Insert.

Your next task is to move the image into position and perhaps change its size. Chapter 4 of this mini-book explains how to manipulate pictures and other objects.

## Shooting a screenshot

Word, PowerPoint, Excel, and Outlook make it easier than ever to take a picture of a screen on your computer and insert it in a document, slide, worksheet, or e-mail message. Follow these steps to take a picture of a screen:

- 1. If you want to capture a portion of one screen, open the screen.**
- 2. On the Insert tab, click the Screenshot button.**
- 3. Choose a thumbnail image to shoot an entire screen, or choose Screen Clipping and drag on-screen to shoot a portion of a screen.**

A drop-down list shows you thumbnail images of each screen that is open on your computer.

A picture of the screen or a portion of the screen lands in your document, slide, worksheet, or e-mail message.

Here are a couple of other tried-and-true techniques for capturing screens:

- ✓ Press PrtScn (the key to the right of F12) to capture an entire screen to the Clipboard.
- ✓ Press Alt+PrtScn to capture the active part of the screen to the Clipboard. For example, to capture a dialog box, select the dialog box and press Alt+PrtScn.

After the screen capture is on the Clipboard, you can paste it where you will.

## Touching Up a Picture

Every picture can be a collaboration. You can do the following to make a picture your own as well as the work of the original artist:

- ◆ **Softening and sharpening:** Mute or polish a picture. See “Softening and sharpening pictures,” later in this chapter.
- ◆ **Changing the brightness and contrast:** Adjust a picture’s tone. See “Correcting a picture’s brightness and contrast.”
- ◆ **Recoloring:** Give your picture a brand-new set of colors or gray shades. See “Recoloring a picture.”
- ◆ **Choosing an artistic effect:** Take your picture for a walk on the wild side. See “Choosing an artistic effect.”
- ◆ **Choosing a picture style:** Present your picture in an oval frame, soft-edged frame, or other type of frame. See “Selecting a picture style.”
- ◆ **Cropping:** Cut out the parts of a picture that you don’t want. See “Cropping off part of a picture.”
- ◆ **Removing picture areas:** Keep the essentials of a picture and remove the rest. See “Removing the background.”



If you regret experimenting with your picture and you want to start all over, go to the (Picture Tools) Format tab and click the Reset Picture button. Clicking this button restores a picture to its original condition.

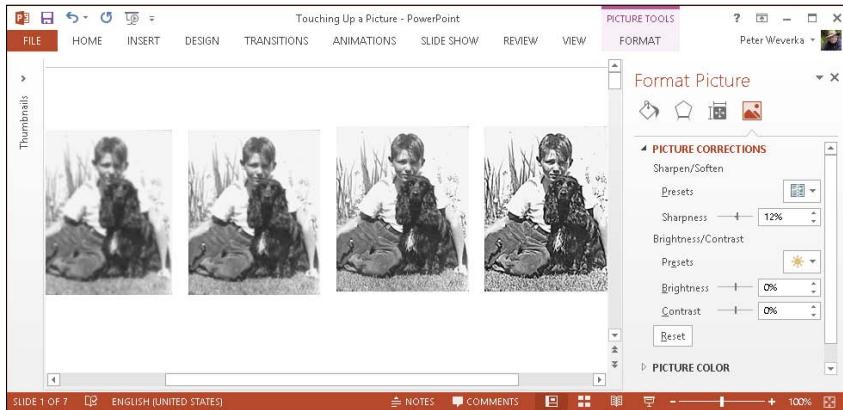
### Softening and sharpening pictures

Figure 3-4 shows the effects of the softening/sharpening settings. These settings mute a picture or make it look more succinct. To soften or sharpen a picture, select it and use one of these techniques:



- ◆ On the (Picture Tools) Format tab, click the Corrections button and choose a Sharpen and Soften option on the drop-down list.
- ◆ Open the Format Picture task pane and drag the Sharpness slider or enter a negative or positive number in the text box. Negative numbers soften the picture; positive numbers sharpen it. To open the Format Picture task pane, click the Corrections button and choose Picture Corrections Options on the drop-down list.

## 632 Touching Up a Picture



**Figure 3-4:**  
Effects  
of the  
Softnen/  
Sharpen  
settings.

### Correcting a picture's brightness and contrast

Figure 3-5 shows a picture that has been made over several times with the Brightness and Contrast settings. Brightness settings govern the overall brightness of a picture; contrast settings determine how distinguishable the different parts of the picture are from one another. Change a picture's brightness and contrast to make it fit better on a page or slide. Select your picture and use one of these techniques:

- ◆ On the (Picture Tools) Format tab, click the Corrections button and choose a Brightness and Contrast option on the drop-down list.



**Figure 3-5:**  
Effects  
of the  
Brightness  
and Contrast  
settings.

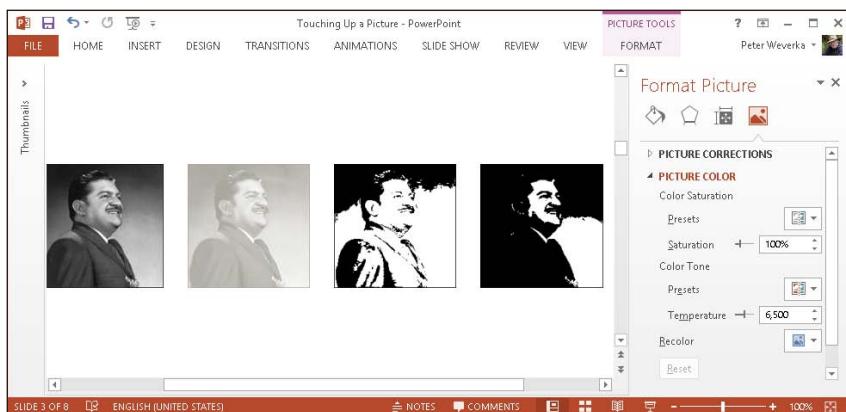
- ◆ Open the Format Picture task pane and change the Brightness and Contrast settings. Negative Brightness settings make a picture darker; positive settings make it brighter. Negative Contrast settings mute the differences between the parts of a picture; positive settings heighten the differences. To open the Format Picture task pane, click the Corrections button and choose Picture Corrections Options on the drop-down list.

## Recoloring a picture

*Recolor* a picture to give it a makeover. Figure 3-6 shows examples of Recolor options. As well as recoloring a picture, you can change its color saturation and color tone settings. *Color saturation* refers to the purity and intensity of the colors; *color tone* determines the degree of lightness and darkness. Recoloring is useful for giving a picture a uniform appearance. Select your picture and use these techniques to recolor it:



- ◆ On the (Picture Tools) Format tab, click the Color button and choose a Color Saturation, Color Tone, or Recolor option on the drop-down list. You can choose More Variations at the bottom of the list and choose a color on the sublist.
- ◆ Open the Format Picture task pane and change the Color Saturation and Color Tone settings. Change the Saturation setting to mute or bring out the colors; change the Temperature setting to make the color tones darker or lighter. To open the Format Picture task pane, click the Color button and choose Picture Color Options.



**Figure 3-6:**  
Examples  
of Recolor  
options.

## Making a color transparent

The (Picture Tools) Format tab offers the Set Transparent Color command for making one color in a picture transparent and thereby allowing the background to show through in certain parts of a picture. The Set Transparent Color command works by making all the pixels in a picture that are the same color transparent. In a picture in which one color predominates, you can make this color transparent and get some interesting effects.

To experiment with the Set Transparent Color command:



1. Select the picture.
2. On the (Picture Tools) Format tab, click the Color button and choose Set Transparent Color on the drop-down list.
3. Click in your picture on the color that you want to be transparent.

You can choose the Set Transparent Color command again and make another color in your picture transparent.



Live-previewing really comes in handy when you're recoloring a graphic. As you change Color Saturation and Color Tone settings, you can see the effect of your choices on the picture.

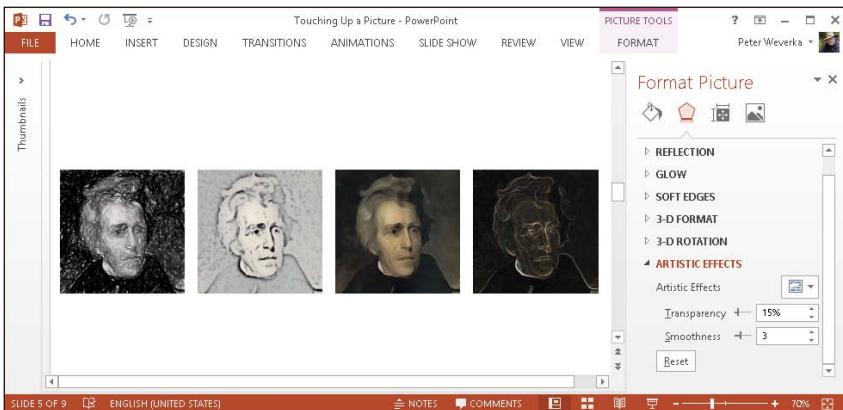
## *Choosing an artistic effect*

Figure 3-7 demonstrates four of the 23 artistic effects that you can apply to a picture: Pencil Sketch, Glow Diffused, Glass, and Glow Edges. To experiment with the artistic effects and maybe find one to your liking, select your picture and use one of these techniques:



- ◆ Go to the (Picture Tools) Format tab, click the Artistic Effects button, and choose an effect on the drop-down list.

- ◆ Open the Format Picture task pane and choose an artistic effect. To open the Format Picture dialog box, click the Artistic Effects button and choose Artistic Effects Options.



**Figure 3-7:**  
Examples  
of artistic  
effects.

### Selecting a picture style

A *picture style* is way of presenting or framing a picture. Figure 3-8 shows examples of picture styles. Picture styles include Simple Frame, Soft Edge Rectangle, Perspective Shadow, and Reflected Bevel. To choose a picture style for a picture, select it, go to the (Picture Tools) Format tab, open the Picture Styles gallery, and choose a style.



**Figure 3-8:**  
Examples  
of picture  
styles.



If you don't like the picture style you chose (or you don't care for any change you made to a picture), click the Reset Picture button to reverse all your format changes and start over.

If you like the picture styles, you may be enamored as well with the picture effects. On the (Picture Tools) Format tab, click the Picture Effects button and experiment with the options on the drop-down list and sublists.

### ***Cropping off part of a picture***

*Cropping* means to cut off part of a picture. I'm afraid you can't use the Office cropping tool like a pair of scissors or an Xacto knife to zigzag cut around the edges of a picture or cut a hole in the middle. You can, however, cut strips from the side, top, or bottom. In Figure 3-9, the cropping tool is being used to cut off extraneous parts of a picture.

**Figure 3-9:**  
Cropping off  
parts of a  
picture.



Select your picture, go to the (Picture Tools) Format tab, and use one of these techniques to crop it:



- ◆ **Crop manually:** Crop the picture by dragging its cropping handles. Click the Crop button. Cropping handles appear around the picture, as in Figure 3-9. Drag cropping handles to lop off a part or parts of the picture. Click the Crop button again or press Esc after you finish cropping.
- ◆ **Crop to a shape:** Crop the picture to a rectangle, circle, or other shape. Open the drop-down list on the Crop button, choose Crop to Shape, and select a shape in the Shapes gallery.
- ◆ **Crop to proportions:** Crop the picture to a proportional size setting. Open the drop-down list on the Crop button, choose Aspect Ratio, and choose a ratio. For example, choose 1:1 to crop to a perfect square with the width and height the same size.

- ◆ **Crop by filling:** For placing an image in a picture placeholder, crop the image to make it fit in the placeholder box.
- ◆ **Crop by fitting:** For placing an image in a picture placeholder, shrink the picture to make it fit.



With the cropping handles showing, you can drag the picture left, right, up, or down to determine where it is cropped.

Another way to crop pictures is to click the Size group button on the (Picture Tools) Format tab and enter measurements in the Crop category of the Format Picture task pane (Word doesn't allow cropping this way). Use this method if you need to crop several different pictures in the same manner.



When you crop a picture, you don't cut off a part of it — not as far as your computer is concerned. All you do is tell Office not to display part of a graphic. The graphic is still whole. You can, however, compress a graphic after you crop it, and in so doing truly shave off a part of the graphic and thereby decrease the size of the file you're working with, as "Compressing Pictures to Save Disk Space" explains later in this chapter.

## *Removing the background*

Yet another way to diddle with pictures is to use the Remove Background command. This command endeavors to locate the unessential parts of a picture so that you can remove them. In Figure 3-10, I removed the sky and then placed a rainbow clip-art image behind the skyline.

Select a picture and follow these steps to test-drive the Remove Background command:



1. **On the (Picture Tools) Format tab, click the Remove Background button.**

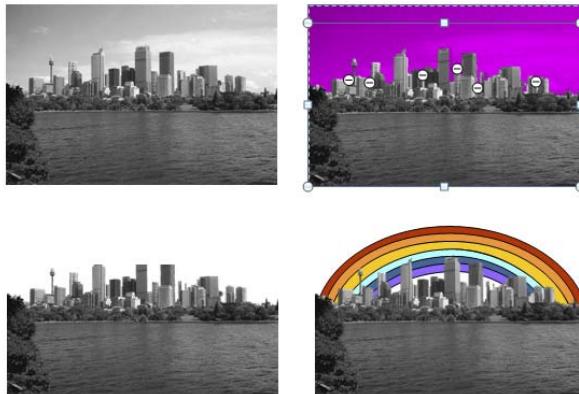
The Background Removal tab opens and the parts of your picture that Office wants to remove turn a lurid shade of magenta, which you could see in Figure 3-10 if this book were in color.

2. **On the Background Removal tab, indicate what you want to keep and remove.**

Keep your eye on what's magenta and what's not as you use these techniques, and consider zooming to 200 percent or more so that you can get a good look at your picture:

- *Changing the size of the box:* Drag the side and corner handles of the box to capture what you want to keep or remove.
- *Marking what you want to keep:* Click the Mark Areas to Keep button. The pointer changes into a pencil. Click your picture to indicate what you want to keep. Each time you click, a keep mark (a plus sign icon) appears on your picture.
- *Marking what you want to remove:* Click the Mark Areas to Remove button. The pointer changes to a pencil. Click your picture to indicate what you want to remove. When you click, a remove mark (a minus sign) appears.
- *Deleting keep and remove marks:* Click the Delete Mark button and then click a keep or remove mark to remove a mark and change what is and isn't removed from the picture.

Of course, you can click the Undo button to backtrack as you work. If you get thoroughly lost on the Background Removal tab, click the Discard All Changes button and start all over.



**Figure 3-10:**  
Removing  
parts of a  
picture (in  
this case  
the sky).



**3. Click the Keep Changes button when you finish marking what you want to keep and remove.**

How do you like your picture now? If it needs more work, click the Remove Background button again and diddle some more on the Background Removal tab. Click the Discard All Changes button if you want your original picture without the background removed.

## Compressing Pictures to Save Disk Space

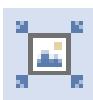
By compressing pictures, you reduce their file size and consequently the size of the file you're working on. Not all pictures can be compressed, as "Compression" explains earlier in this chapter, and some types of graphics lose their integrity when they're compressed. You can't resize lossy-compressed graphics without their looking odd.

Compress pictures to make files load faster and make e-mail messages with file attachments travel faster over the Internet. Compressing a picture file reduces its pixels per inch (ppi) setting. Follow these steps to compress pictures:

1. Optionally, select the picture or pictures you want to compress if you want to compress only one or two.

The Compress Pictures command compresses all the graphics in a file unless you select graphics first.

2. Go to the (Picture Tools) Format tab.



3. Click the Compress Pictures button.

You see the Compress Pictures dialog box.

4. Select the Apply Only to This Picture check box if you selected graphics in Step 1 and you want to compress only a couple of graphics.
5. Click the Delete Cropped Areas of Pictures check box if you want to delete the unused portions of pictures you cropped.

As "Cropping off part of a picture" explains earlier in this chapter, Office crops graphics in name only. It retains the cropped part of the graphic in case you want it back, but you can remove the cropped part as well by selecting this check box.

6. Choose a target output for the pictures.

These options tell Office which pixels per inch (ppi) setting to use when compressing graphics. Which setting you choose depends on where you intend to show your graphics.

7. Click OK.



# ***Chapter 4: Drawing and Manipulating Lines, Shapes, and Other Objects***

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ✓ Drawing and manipulating lines, arrows, and connectors
- ✓ Creating and modifying shapes
- ✓ Creating WordArt images
- ✓ Changing the color and border around an object
- ✓ Selecting, resizing, moving, aligning, overlapping, rotating, and grouping objects

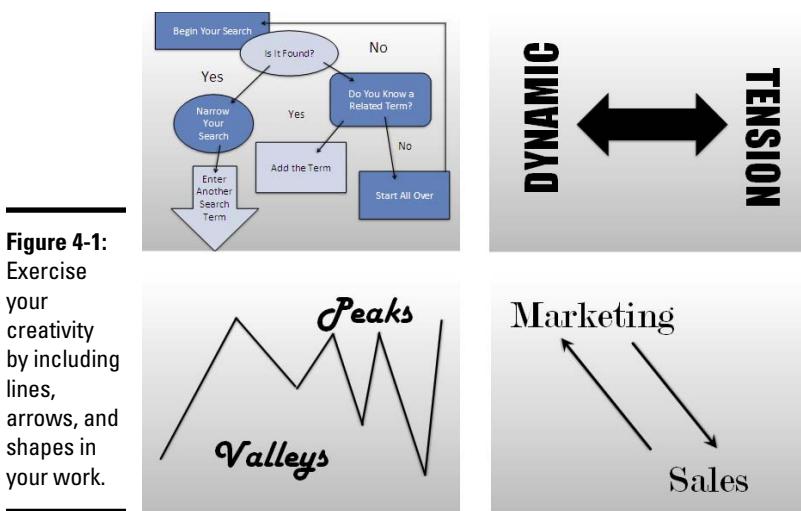
**O**ffice 2013 comes with drawing commands for drawing lines, arrows, shapes, block arrows, stars, banners, and callout shapes. And Office provides numerous ways to manipulate these objects after you draw them. The drawing commands are meant to bring out the artist in you. Use them to make diagrams, fashion your own ideograms, and illustrate difficult concepts and ideas. Lines and shapes give you a wonderful opportunity to exercise your creativity. A picture is worth a thousand words, so they say, and the drawing commands give you a chance to express yourself without having to write a thousand words.

In this chapter, you discover the many ways to manipulate lines, shapes, text boxes, WordArt images, clip-art images, and graphics. You discover how to lay out these objects on a page or slide, flip them, change their colors, resize them, move them, and otherwise torture them until they look just right. You discover how to draw lines and arrows, draw connections between shapes, and draw ovals, squares, other shapes, and WordArt images.

Use the techniques I describe in this chapter to bring something more to your Word documents, PowerPoint presentations, and Excel worksheets: originality. With the techniques I describe in this chapter, you can bring the visual element into your work. You can communicate with images as well as words and numbers.

### The Basics: Drawing Lines, Arrows, and Shapes

Figure 4-1 demonstrates how you can use lines, arrows, and shapes (not to mention text boxes) to illustrate ideas and concepts. Sometimes, saying it with lines and shapes is easier and more informative than saying it with words. Even in Excel worksheets, you can find opportunities to use lines, arrows, and shapes. For example, draw arrows and lines on worksheets to illustrate which cells are used to compute formulas.



Follow these basic steps to draw a line, arrow, or shape:

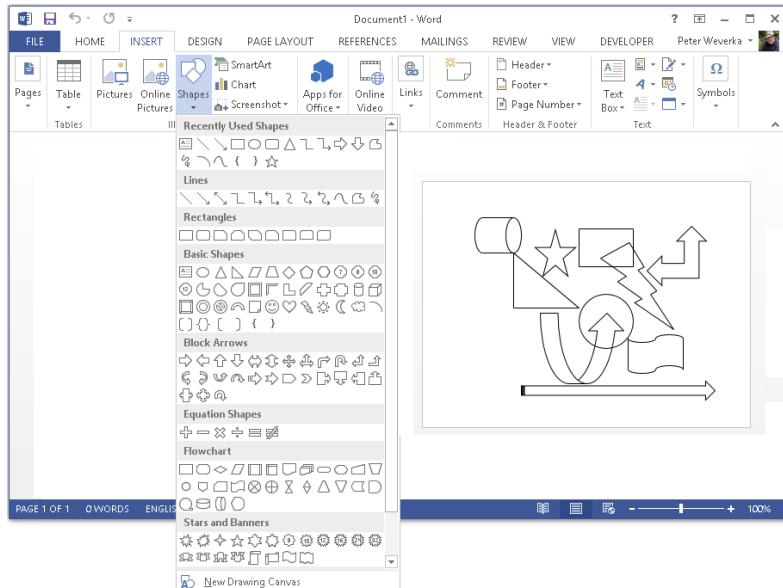
**1. Go to the Insert tab.**

In Word, you must be in Print Layout view to draw and see lines and shapes.

**2. Click the Shapes button to open the Insert Shapes gallery.**

As shown in Figure 4-2, the Shapes gallery appears. The shapes are divided into several categories, including Lines, Basic Shapes, and Block Arrows, as well as a category at the top of the gallery where shapes you chose recently are shown. (PowerPoint also offers the Shapes button on the Home tab.)

**3. Select a line, arrow, or shape in the Shapes gallery.**



**Figure 4-2:**  
To draw a line, arrow, or shape, choose it in the Shapes gallery.

#### 4. Drag on your page, slide, or worksheet.

As you drag, the line, arrow, or shape appears before your eyes.

#### 5. To alter your line, arrow, or shape — that is, to change its size, color, or outline — go to the (Drawing Tools) Format tab.

This tab offers many commands for manipulating lines and shapes. (Those commands are explained throughout this chapter.) You must select a line or shape to make the (Drawing Tools) Format tab appear.

In the upper-left corner of the (Drawing Tools) Format tab is another Shapes gallery for creating new shapes to go along with the one you created.



## Handling Lines, Arrows, and Connectors

Earlier in this chapter, Figure 4-1 shows examples of how you can use lines and arrows to present ideas. As well as lines and arrows, the Insert Shapes gallery offers *connectors*, the special lines that link shapes and can bend and stretch as you move shapes around. Use connectors along with lines and arrows to describe the relationships between the people or things in a diagram. These pages explain how to handle lines, arrows, and connectors.

## Changing the length and position of a line or arrow

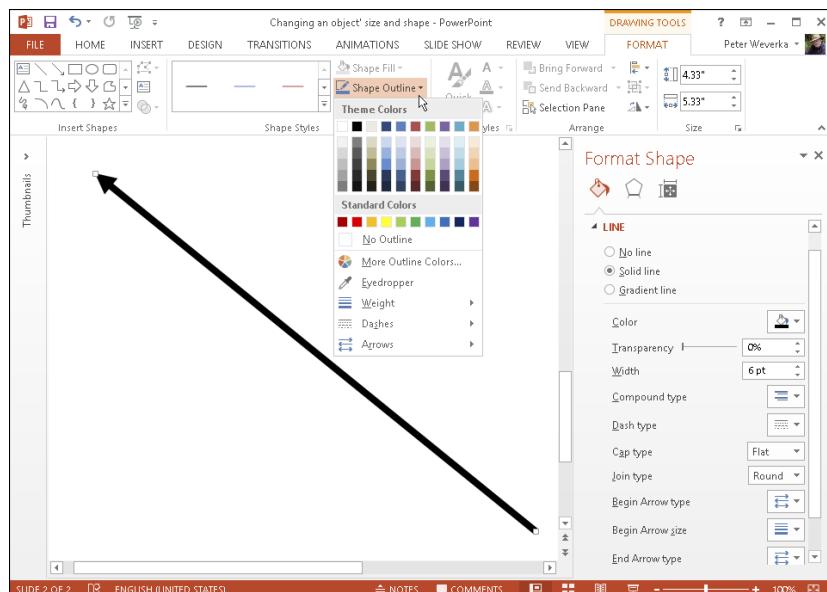
To change anything about a line or arrow, start by clicking to select it. You can tell when a line has been selected because square selection handles appear at either end. Follow these instructions to move a line or adjust its length or angle:

- ◆ **Changing the angle of a line:** Drag a selection handle up, down, or sideways. You can see where your line will be when you release the mouse button.
- ◆ **Changing the length:** Drag a selection handle away from or toward the opposite selection handle.
- ◆ **Changing the position:** Move the pointer over the line itself and click when you see the four-headed arrow. Then drag the line to a new location.

## Changing the appearance of a line, arrow, or connector



What a line looks like is a matter of its *color*, its *weight* (how wide it is), its *dash status* (it can be filled out or dashed), and its *cap* (its ends can be rounded, square, or flat). To change the appearance of a line, start by selecting it, going to the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, and opening the drop-down list on the Shape Outline button (this button is in the Shape Styles group). As shown in Figure 4-3, you see a drop-down list with commands for handling the appearance of lines, arrows, and connectors:



**Figure 4-3:**  
Change the  
appearance  
of lines on  
the Shape  
Outline drop-  
down list  
and Format  
Shape task  
pane.

## Choosing a default line style for consistency's sake

One of the secrets to making an attractive drawing is to make the lines consistent with one another. Lines should be the same width and color. They should be the same style. Unless you observe this rule, your drawings will be infested with lines of varying width and different colors. They will look like a confetti parade in a windstorm.

You can get around the problem of making lines consistent with one another by creating a model line and making it the default line style.

After you declare a default style, all new lines you create are assigned the style. You don't have to spend as much time making the lines look alike.

Give a line the style, weight, and color that you want for all (or most) lines and then follow these steps to make that line the default style:

- 1. Select and right-click the line.**
- 2. Choose Set As Default Line on the shortcut menu.**

- ◆ **Color:** Select a color on the drop-down list (refer to Figure 4-3).
- ◆ **Width:** Choose Weight on the drop-down list (refer to Figure 4-3) and then choose a line width on the submenu. You can also choose More Lines on the submenu to open the Format Shape task pane and change the width there. Enter a Width setting in points to make the line heavier or thinner.
- ◆ **Dotted or dashed lines:** Choose Dashes on the drop-down list and then choose an option on the submenu. Again, you can choose More Lines to open the Format Shape task pane and choose from many dash types and compound lines (refer to Figure 4-3).
- ◆ **Line caps:** Click the Shape Styles group button to open the Format Shape task pane (refer to Figure 4-3). Then select a cap type (Square, Round, or Flat).



You can also change the appearance of a line on the (Drawing Tools) Format tab by opening the Shape Styles gallery and selecting a style.

## Attaching and handling arrowheads on lines and connectors

Arrows, of course, have arrowheads, and arrowheads on lines and connectors can go on either side or both sides of a line. What's more, arrowheads come in different sizes and shapes. To handle arrowheads on lines and connectors, select your line or connector and go to the (Drawing Tools) Format tab. Then use one of these techniques to handle the arrowheads:



- ◆ Open the drop-down list on the Shape Outline button, choose Arrows (refer to Figure 4-3), and select an arrow on the submenu.
- ◆ Click the Shape Styles group button to open the Format Shape task pane. Then choose Arrow settings to describe where you want the arrowheads to be, what you want them to look like, and what size you want them to be.



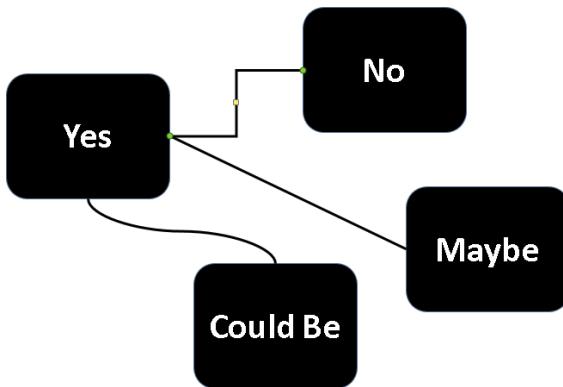
To attach an arrowhead or arrowheads to a line or connector you've already drawn, select the line and proceed as though you were attaching arrowheads to a line that already has an arrow.

### Connecting shapes by using connectors

Under Lines, the Shapes gallery offers six different connectors. Use *connectors* to link shapes and text boxes to form a diagram. Connectors differ from conventional lines in an important way: After you attach one to a shape, it stays with the shape when you move the shape. You don't have to worry about remaking all the connections after you move a shape. You can move shapes at will and let the connectors between shapes take care of themselves.

Figure 4-4 shows three types of connectors in action. (By the way, if you came here to explore how to make a diagram, be sure to check out Chapter 2 of this mini-book as well. It explains Office SmartArt diagramming.)

**Figure 4-4:**  
The three  
types of  
connectors  
(from top  
to bottom):  
elbow,  
straight, and  
curved.



To connect shapes in Word, the shapes must be on the drawing canvas. Book II, Chapter 6 describes the Word drawing canvas. (Click the Shapes button and choose New Drawing Canvas to create one.)

### **Making the connection**

Before you draw the connections, draw the shapes and arrange them on the slide where you want them to be in your diagram. Then follow these steps to connect two shapes with a connector:

- 1. Select the two shapes that you want to connect.**  
To select the shapes, hold down the Ctrl key and click each one.
- 2. On the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, open the Shapes gallery.**
- 3. Under Lines, select the connector that will best fit between the two shapes you want to link together.**
- 4. Move the pointer over a side selection handle on one of the shapes you want to connect.**
- 5. Click and drag the pointer over a selection handle on the other shape, and when you see green selection handles on that shape, release the mouse button.**

When you click a connector, you see round, green selection handles on the shapes that are joined by the connector. These green handles tell you that the two shapes are connected and will remain connected when you move them.



If your connector is attached to the wrong shape, don't despair. Select the connector, and on the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, click the Edit Shape button and choose Reroute Connectors. Then move the pointer over the green handle on the side of the connector that needs to be attached elsewhere, click, drag the connector elsewhere on the other shape, and release the mouse button when you see the green selection handles.

### **Adjusting a connector**

Chances are, your connector needs adjusting to make it fit correctly between the two shapes. Click to select your connector and follow these techniques to adjust it:

- ◆ **Changing the shape of a connector:** Drag the yellow square on the connector. As you drag, the connector assumes different shapes.
- ◆ **Changing the connector type:** Right-click the connector, choose Connector Types, and choose Straight Connector, Elbow Connector, or Curved Connector on the submenu.
- ◆ **Handling arrows on connectors:** If the arrows on the connector aren't there, are pointing in the wrong direction, or shouldn't be there, change the arrowheads around using the same techniques you use with standard arrows. See "Attaching and handling arrowheads on lines and connectors" earlier in this chapter.

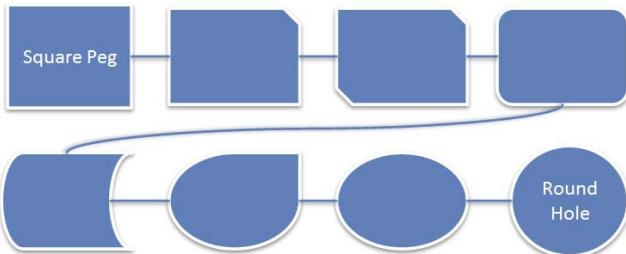


Make sure that the connector lines in your diagram are consistent with one another. Give them the same style and appearance, or else it will be hard to make sense of your diagram.

### Handling Rectangles, Ovals, Stars, and Other Shapes

Figure 4-5 illustrates how shapes can come in very handy for illustrating concepts and ideas. You can combine shapes to make your own illustrations. Apart from the standard rectangle and oval, you can draw octagons and various other “-agons,” arrows, stars, and banners. You are hereby encouraged to make shapes a part of your work, and you’ll be glad to know that drawing shapes is not difficult. These pages explain how to draw a shape, exchange one shape for another, change a shape’s symmetry, and enter words on a shape.

**Figure 4-5:**  
An example  
of using  
shapes (and  
connectors)  
to convey  
an idea.



In Word, you must be in Print Layout view to draw and handle shapes. If you intend to draw more than one shape in Word, create a drawing canvas to hold the shapes (click the Shapes button and choose New Drawing Canvas). Book II, Chapter 6 describes the drawing canvas in Word.

### Drawing a shape

Follow these steps to draw a shape:



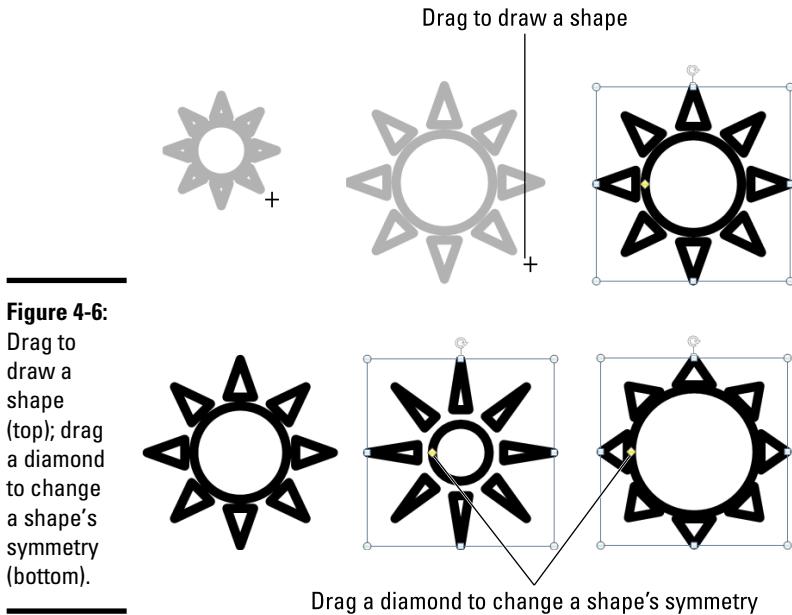
1. **On the Insert tab, click the Shapes button to open the Shapes gallery.**

You can also insert shapes from the Shapes gallery on the (Drawing Tools) Format tab.

2. **Select a shape in the gallery.**

If you’ve drawn the shape recently, you may be able to find it at the top of the gallery under Recently Used Shapes.

3. **Click and drag slantwise to draw the shape, as shown at the top of Figure 4-6.**



**Figure 4-6:**  
Drag to draw a shape (top); drag a diamond to change a shape's symmetry (bottom).



Hold down the Shift key as you drag if you want the shape to retain its proportions. For example, to draw a circle, select the Oval shape and hold down the Shift key as you draw.

### Changing a shape's size and shape

Selection handles appear on the corners and sides of a shape after you select it. With the selection handles showing, you can change a shape's size and shape:

- ◆ Hold down the Shift key and drag a corner handle to change a shape's size and retain its symmetry.
- ◆ Drag a side, top, or bottom handle to stretch or scrunch a shape.

Book VIII  
Chapter 4

Drawing and  
Manipulating Lines,  
Shapes, and Other  
Objects



1. On the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, click the Edit Shape button.

You can find this button in the Insert Shapes group.

2. Choose Change Shape on the drop-down list.
3. Select a new shape in the Shapes gallery.

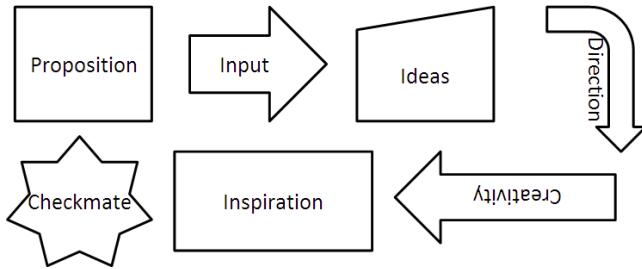
## Changing a shape's symmetry

A yellow square, sometimes more than one, appears on some shapes. By dragging a square, you can change a shape's symmetry. Figure 4-6, for example, shows the same shape (the Sun shape) altered to show different symmetries. Notice where the squares are. By dragging a square even a short distance, you can do a lot to change a shape's symmetry.

## Using a shape as a text box

Here's a neat trick: Rather than use the conventional rectangle as a text box, you can use a shape. Figure 4-7 shows examples of shapes being used as text boxes. By placing words on shapes, you can make the shapes illustrate ideas and concepts.

Figure 4-7:  
Shapes can  
do double  
duty as text  
boxes.



Follow these instructions to handle text box shapes:

- ◆ **Entering the text:** Click in the shape and start typing. In Word, you can right-click and choose Add Text if you have trouble typing in the shape.
- ◆ **Editing the text:** Click in the text and start editing. That's all there is to it. If you have trouble getting inside the shape to edit the text, select the shape, right-click it, and choose Edit Text on the shortcut menu.
- ◆ **Changing the font, color, and size of text:** Select the text, right-click the text, and choose Font. Then, in the Font dialog box, choose a font, font color, and a font size for the text.
- ◆ **Allowing the shape to enlarge for text:** You can allow the shape to enlarge and receive more text. On the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, click the Shape Styles group button, and in the Text Options/Text Box category of the Format Shape task pane, select the Resize Shape to Fit Text option button.

## Turning a text box into a text box shape

To turn a conventional text box into a text box shape, follow these instructions:

- 1. Select the text box by clicking its perimeter.**

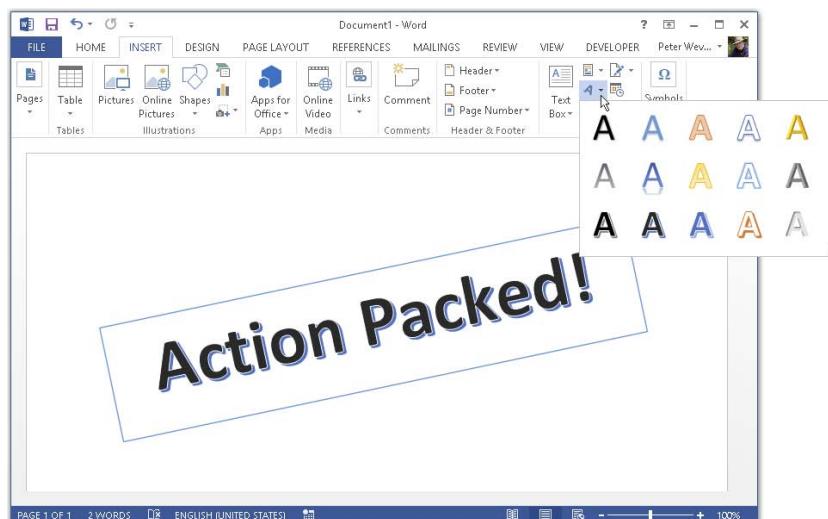
- 2. On the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, click the Edit Shape button, choose Change Shape, and then select a shape in the Shapes gallery.**

After the conversion, you usually have to enlarge the shape to accommodate the text



## WordArt for Embellishing Letters and Words

WordArt gives you the opportunity to decorate letters and words like letters and words on a birthday cake. Figure 4-8 shows the WordArt gallery, where WordArt is made, and an example of WordArt in action. After you insert WordArt, you can fool with the WordArt Styles buttons on the (Drawing Tools) Format tab and embellish the word or phrase even further.



**Figure 4-8:**  
Creating a  
WordArt  
image.

### Creating WordArt

Follow these steps to create WordArt:



1. On the Insert tab, click the WordArt button.

A drop-down list with WordArt styles appears.

2. Select a WordArt style.

Don't worry about selecting the right style; you can choose a different one later on.

3. Enter text in the WordArt text box.

Congratulations. You just created WordArt.

### Editing WordArt

Usually, you have to wrestle with WordArt before it comes out right. Select the words, go to the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, and use these techniques to win the wrestling match:



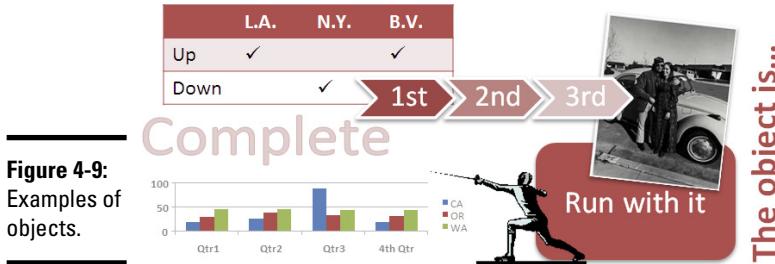
- ◆ **Editing the words:** Click in the WordArt text box and edit the text there.
- ◆ **Choosing a new WordArt style:** Click the Quick Styles button and choose a style on the drop-down list.
- ◆ **Changing the letters' color:** Click the Text Fill button and choose a color on the drop-down list.
- ◆ **Changing the letters' outline:** Click the Text Outline button and make choices to change the letters' outline.



To apply color or an outline to some of the letters or words, select the letters or words before choosing options on the (Drawing Tools) Format tab.

## Manipulating Lines, Shapes, Art, Text Boxes, and Other Objects

After you insert a shape, line, text box, clip-art image, graphic, diagram, chart, or embedded object in a file, it ceases being what it was before and becomes an *object*. Figure 4-9 shows eight objects. I'm not sure whether these eight objects resent being objectified, but Office objectifies them. As far as manipulating these items in Office is concerned, these are just objects.



The techniques for manipulating objects are the same whether you're dealing with a line, shape, graphic, clip-art image, diagram, or text box. The good news from your end is that you have to master only one set of techniques for handling these objects. Whether you want to move, change the size of, change the color of, or change the outline of a text box, clip-art image, graphic, or shape, the techniques are the same.

In the remainder of this chapter are instructions for doing these tasks with objects:

- ◆ **Selecting:** Before you can do anything to objects, you have to select them. See “Selecting objects so that you can manipulate them.”
- ◆ **Making use of the rulers and grid:** Rulers (in Word, PowerPoint, Excel, and Publisher) and the grid (in Word and PowerPoint) can be very helpful for aligning and placing objects. See “Hiding and displaying the rulers and grid.”
- ◆ **Changing an object’s size and shape:** You can enlarge, shrink, stretch, and scrunch objects to make them wider or taller. See “Changing an object’s size and shape.”
- ◆ **Applying color:** Changing an object’s color makes it stand out. You can apply patterns to some objects. See “Changing an Object’s Color, Outline Color, and Transparency.”
- ◆ **Moving and positioning:** You can land objects with precision in a Word document, PowerPoint slide, or Excel worksheet. See “Moving and Positioning Objects.”
- ◆ **Aligning and distributing:** Another way to move and position objects is to realign or redistribute them across a page, slide, or worksheet. See “Tricks for aligning and distributing objects.”

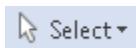
- ◆ **Overlapping:** When you're dealing with several objects, they're bound to overlap — and sometimes overlapping objects make for an interesting effect. On the right side of Figure 4-9, for example, several objects overlap and give the impression that they were "dropped there." See "When objects overlap: Choosing which appears above the other," to handle overlapping objects.
- ◆ **Rotating and flipping:** Viewers turn their heads when they see an object that has been flipped or rotated. You can rotate and flip shapes, lines, text boxes, graphics, clip-art images, and WordArt images. See "Rotating and flipping Objects."
- ◆ **Grouping:** To make working with several different objects easier, you can *group* them so that they become a single object. After objects have been grouped, manipulating them — manipulating it, I should say — is easier. See "Grouping objects to make working with them easier."

If you sighed after you finished reading this long list, I don't blame you. But be of good cheer: Most of these commands are easy to pick up, and including lines, shapes, text boxes, WordArt images, clip art, and graphics in your work is a good way to impress your friends and intimidate your enemies.

### ***Selecting objects so that you can manipulate them***

Before you can move or change the border of a graphic, text box, or other object, you have to select it. To select an object, simply click it. Sometimes, to align or decorate several objects simultaneously, you have to select more than one object at the same time. To select more than one object:

- ◆ Ctrl+click them. In other words, hold down the Ctrl key as you click the objects.
- ◆ On the Home tab, click the Select button and choose Select Objects on the drop-down list. (You may have to click the Find & Select button first, depending on the size of your screen.) Then click on one side of the objects you want to select and drag the pointer across the other objects.
- ◆ Display the Selection pane. It lists objects on the drawing canvas (Word), slide (PowerPoint), or worksheet (Excel). You can click or Ctrl+click object names in the pane to select objects. Figure 4-10 shows the Selection pane. Use these techniques to open it:
  - On the (Drawing Tools) Format tab, click the Selection Pane button.
  - On the Home tab, click the Select button and choose Selection Pane on the drop-down list. (You may have to click the Editing button first, depending on the size of your screen.)





**Figure 4-10:**  
Click an object in the Selection pane to select it.



After you select an object, its selection handles appear. Objects have eight selection handles, one at each corner and one at each side. To tell whether an object is selected, look for its selection handles.

### ***Hiding and displaying the rulers and grid***

Word, PowerPoint, and Excel offer two rulers, one along the top of the window and one along the left side. Use the rulers to help place and align objects. To display or hide these rulers, use one of these techniques:

- ◆ On the View tab, click the Ruler check box. (You may have to click the Show button first, depending on the size of your screen.) To see the rulers, you must be in Print Layout view In Word and Page Layout view in Excel.
- ◆ In PowerPoint, you can also hide or display rulers by right-clicking a slide (but not an object or frame) and choosing Ruler on the shortcut menu.

In Word and PowerPoint, the grid can come in very handy for aligning objects. On the View tab, click the Gridlines check box to see the grid. (You may have to click the Show button first.) The grid settings in PowerPoint are quite sophisticated (see Book IV, Chapter 4 for details).

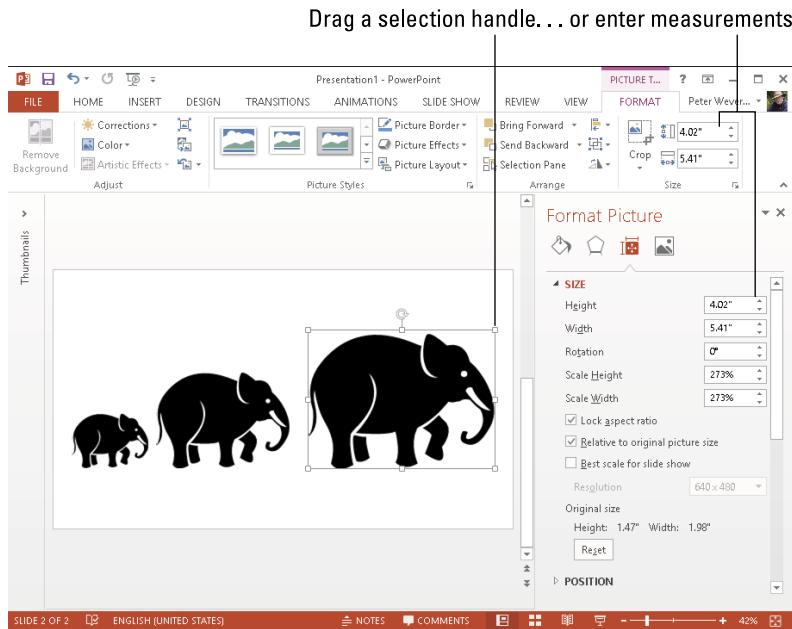


By the way, fans of the metric system will be pleased to know that you can display centimeters (or millimeters, points, or picas) on the ruler instead of inches. On the File tab, choose Options. In the Options dialog box, go to the Advanced category, open the Show Measurements in Units Of drop-down list, and choose a unit of measurement.

## Changing an Object's Size and Shape

Usually when an object arrives on-screen, you have to wrestle with it. You have to change its size (and sometimes its shape as well). Figure 4-11 demonstrates how to resize an object. Select your object and use one of these methods to change its size and shape:

- ◆ “**Eyeball it**”: Hold down the Shift key and drag a *corner* selection handle to make the object larger or smaller but maintain its proportions. Drag a selection handle on the *side* to stretch or crimp an object and change its shape as well as its size.



**Figure 4-11:**  
Ways to  
resize an  
object.

- ◆ **Enter height and width measurements:** On the Format tab, enter measurements in the Height and Width boxes (see Figure 4-11). Depending on the size of your screen, you may have to click the Size button before you can see these boxes.
- ◆ **Open the Format task pane or Layout dialog box:** Click the Size group button on the Format tab to open the Format task pane (in PowerPoint and Excel) or the Layout dialog box (in Word). Then change the Height and Width settings (see Figure 4-11).



Whether you can change an object's shape as well as its size depends on whether the object's aspect ratio is *locked*. If you're wrestling with an object and it won't do your bidding — if it refuses to change shape or it changes shape, and you don't want it to do that — unlock its aspect ratio setting. Click the Size group button, and in the task pane or dialog box that appears, select or deselect the Lock Aspect Ratio check box. When an object's aspect ratio is *locked*, it maintains its shape as you change its size, but when it's *unlocked*, you can change its shape as well as its size.



You can change the size and shape of several objects at one time by selecting all the objects before giving a command to change sizes. Being able to change objects' size this way is convenient when you want to change the size of many objects but maintain their relationships to one another.

## *Changing an Object's Color, Outline Color, and Transparency*

If an object's color doesn't suit you, you have the right to change colors. For that matter, you can opt for a "blank" object with no color or make the object semitransparent. As the saying goes, "It's a free country."

Office has its own lingo when it comes to an object's color. Remember these terms when you make like Picasso with your shapes, text boxes, graphics, and clip-art images:



- ◆ **Fill colors:** The color that fills in an object is called the *fill*. You can apply fill color to shapes, text boxes, and WordArt, but not pictures. Besides colors, you can use a picture, gradient, or texture as the fill. (See the next topic in this chapter, "Filling an object with color, a picture, or a texture.")
- ◆ **Outline colors:** The line that goes around the perimeter of an object is called the *outline*. You can choose a color, style, and line width for outlines. (See "Putting the outline around an object," later in this chapter.)





The easiest way to decorate a shape, text box, or WordArt image is to visit the Format tab and make a selection in the Styles gallery. These ready-made gallery selections can spare you the work of dealing with fill color and, outlines. Just remember not to mix and match different Style options; use them with consistency.

## Filling an object with color, a picture, or a texture

Shapes, text boxes, and WordArt images are empty when you first create them, but you can fill them with a color, picture, gradient, or texture by following these basic steps:

- 1. Select the object that needs a facelift.**
- 2. Apply a color, picture, gradient, or texture to the object.**

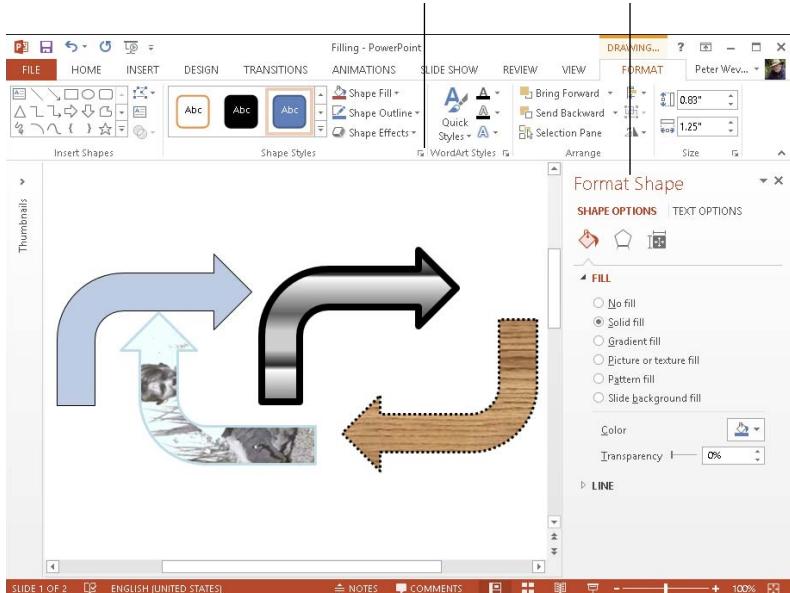
Use one of these application techniques:



- On the Format tab, click the Shape Fill button. Then, on the drop-down list, choose a color, picture, gradient, or texture.
- Click the Shape Styles group button to open the Format task pane, as shown in Figure 4-12. Then choose a color, picture, gradient, or texture.

Click the Shape Fill button and choose No Fill to remove the color, picture, gradient, or texture from an object.

Click the Shape Style group button... to open the Format task pane



**Figure 4-12:**  
Shape fills  
(from left to  
right): color,  
picture,  
gradient,  
and texture.

## Using the eyedropper to select an on-screen color (PowerPoint only)

Suppose you become enamored of a color that you see on your screen and you want to apply this color to an object. For example, suppose you want to apply the particular shade of yellow in your company logo to a shape. Using the eyedropper, you can select the color you like so well and apply it to an object on a page or slide. Follow these steps:

- 1. Select the text box, shape, slide, WordArt image, or other object that needs recoloring.**
- 2. On the Format tab, click the Shape Fill button and choose Eyedropper on the drop-down list.**
- The pointer changes to an eyedropper.
- 3. Move the eyedropper over the on-screen color that you want for the object you selected in Step 1.**

How you move the eyedropper depends on where the color you want is located on the screen.

If the on-screen color is on a Word page, PowerPoint slide, or Excel spreadsheet, simply move the eyedropper over the color.

If the on-screen color is outside your Office application — if it's on a web page, for example — hold down the left mouse button as you drag the eyedropper outside the application window. Drag the eyedropper until it is over the color you want.

A pop-up color box shows the color that the eyedropper is on, the name of the color, and the color's RGB (red green blue) settings.

- 4. Click when the pop-up color box shows you the color you want for the object you selected in Step 1.**

The object you selected in Step 1 gets the new color.

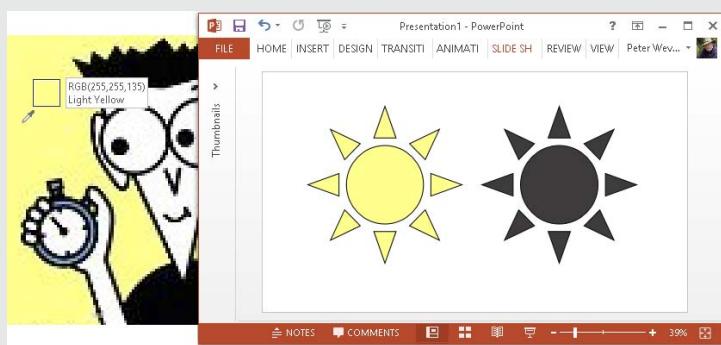


Figure 4-12 shows the same object filled with a color, picture, gradient, and texture. Which do you prefer? Your choices are as follows:

- ◆ **Color:** Applies a single color to the object.
- ◆ **Picture:** Places a picture in the object. You see the Insert Picture dialog box. Choose a picture and click the Insert button.
- ◆ **Gradient (Word and PowerPoint only):** Applies gradient color shading to the object. You can choose between various shading styles.
- ◆ **Texture:** Offers 24 patterns meant to simulate various surfaces. The choices include Granite, Paper Bag, and Pink Tissue Paper. Be sure to use the scroll bar to see all the choices.
- ◆ **Pattern:** Applies a pattern to the object. Select a pattern on the Pattern tab of the Fill Effects dialog box.

### ***Making a color transparent***



A transparent color is like gauze because instead of being solid, it shows what's behind it. Transparent colors are especially useful in text boxes because the text shows through and can be read easily. Follow these steps to make the fill color in a text box, shape, or WordArt image transparent or semi-transparent:

**1. Right-click the object and choose Format Shape.**

The Format task pane opens (see Figure 4-12).

**2. In the Fill category, drag the Transparency slider to choose how transparent a color you want.**

At 100%, the color is completely transparent and, in fact, not there; at 1%, the color is hardly transparent at all.

### **Designating a fill and outline color for all your objects**

Rather than go to the significant trouble of giving all or most of your objects the same look, you can make one object the model for all others to follow and declare it the default style. After that, all new objects you insert appear in the same style, your objects have a uniform

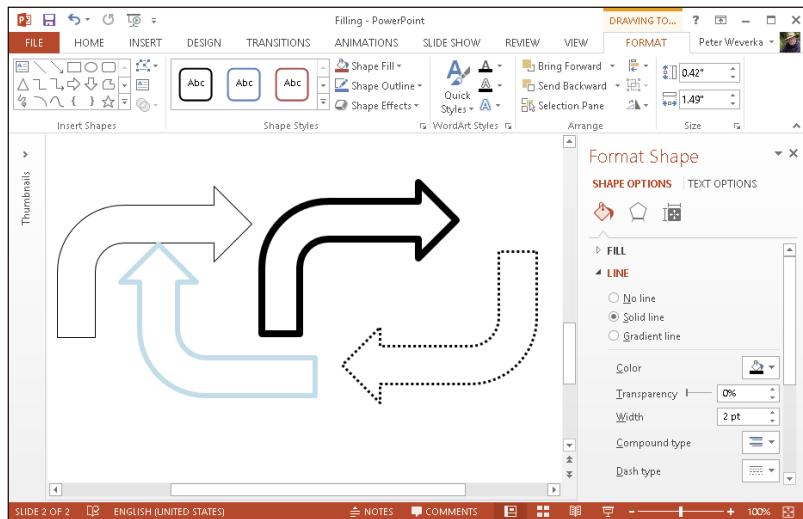
appearance, and you don't have to spend as much time formatting objects.

Select an object with a fill and an outline color that you want as your model, right-click the object, and choose Set As Default Shape to make your object the default that all other objects start from.

You can also make a graphic transparent by recoloring it. See Chapter 3 of this mini-book.

## **Putting the outline around an object**

The *outline* is the line that runs around the perimeter of an object. Put an outline color around an object to give it more definition or make it stand out. Figure 4-13 shows examples of outlines. What a shape outline looks like has to do with the color, width, and dash style you choose for it.



**Figure 4-13:**  
An object's  
outline has  
to do with  
its color,  
width, and  
dash type.

Follow these steps to change an object's outline:

- 1. Select the object.**
- 2. Change the outline.**

Use one of these techniques to change the outline:



- On the Format tab, click the Shape Outline button. Then, on the drop-down list, choose a color, weight, and dash type.
- Click the Shape Styles group button to open the Format task pane (see Figure 4-13). Then, under Line, choose a color, width, and dash type.

To remove the outline from an object, click the Shape Outline button and choose No Outline or choose No Line in the Format task pane.

## ***Moving and Positioning Objects***

Moving objects is considerably easier than moving furniture. Select the object you want to reposition and use one of these techniques to land it in the right place:

- ◆ **Dragging:** Move the pointer over the perimeter of the object, click when you see the four-headed arrow, and drag the object to a new location. Hold down the Shift key as you drag to move an object either horizontally or vertically in a straight line.
- ◆ **Using a task pane or dialog box (in PowerPoint and Word):** On the Format tab, click the Size group button. (Depending on the size of your screen, you may have to click the Size button first.) You see the Format task pane or Layout dialog box. On the Position category or tab, enter Horizontal and Vertical position measurements to place the object on the slide or page.
- ◆ **Nudging:** If you can't quite fit an object in the right place, try using a Nudge command. Nudge commands move objects up, down, left, or right. Press one of the arrow keys ( $\uparrow$ ,  $\downarrow$ ,  $\leftarrow$ ,  $\rightarrow$ ) to move the object a little bit. Hold down the Ctrl key as you press an arrow key to make the object move by tiny increments.



Use the dialog box method of positioning objects when you want objects to be in the exact same position on different pages or slides.

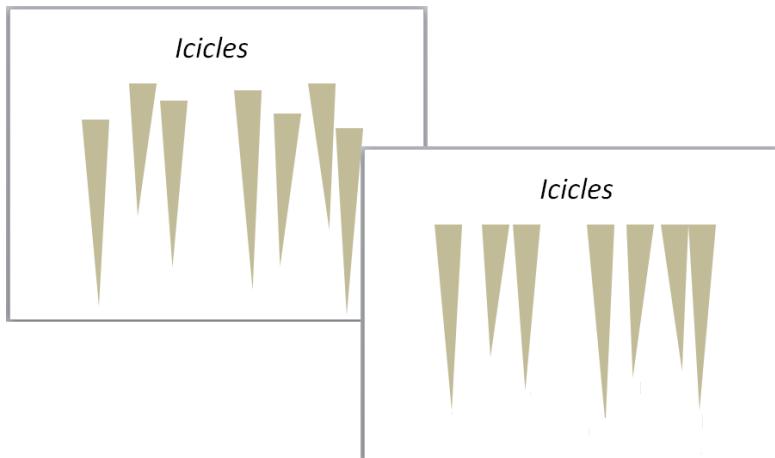
### ***Tricks for aligning and distributing objects***

When several objects appear in the same place, use the Align and Distribute commands to give the objects an orderly appearance. You can make your Word page, PowerPoint slide, or Excel worksheet look tidier by aligning the objects or by distributing them so that they are an equal distance from one another. Office offers special commands for doing these tasks.

#### ***Aligning objects***

The Align commands come in handy when you want objects to line up with one another. Suppose you need to align several shapes. As shown in Figure 4-14, you can use an Align command to line up the shapes with precision. You don't have to tug and pull, tug and pull until the shapes are aligned with one another. In the figure, I used the Align Top command to line up the shapes along the top. In Word and PowerPoint, besides aligning objects with respect to one another, you can align objects or with respect to the page (in Word) or the slide (in PowerPoint). For example, you can line up objects along the top of a slide.

**Figure 4-14:**  
Use the Align commands to align objects. These objects are aligned along the top.



Follow these steps to line up objects:

1. **Move the objects where you roughly want them to be, and if you want to align objects with respect to one another, move one object to a point that the others will align to.**

When Office aligns objects with respect to one another, it aligns them to the object in the leftmost, centermost, rightmost, topmost, middlemost, or bottommost position, depending on which Align command you choose.

2. **Select the objects you want to align.**

Earlier in this chapter, “Selecting objects so that you can manipulate them” looks at selection techniques.

3. **Go to the Format tab.**

You can also go to the Page Layout tab (in Word and Excel) or the Home tab (in PowerPoint).



4. **Click the Align button, and on the drop-down list, choose whether to align the objects with respect to one another or with respect to the page or page margin (in Word) or a slide (in PowerPoint).**

Depending on the size of your screen, you may have to click the Arrange button to get to the Align button.

5. **Click the Align button again and choose an Align command — Left, Center, Right, Top, Middle, or Bottom.**

### 6. If necessary, drag the objects on the page.

That's right — drag them. After you give an Align command, the objects are still selected, and you can drag to adjust their positions.

#### **Distributing objects so that they are equidistant**

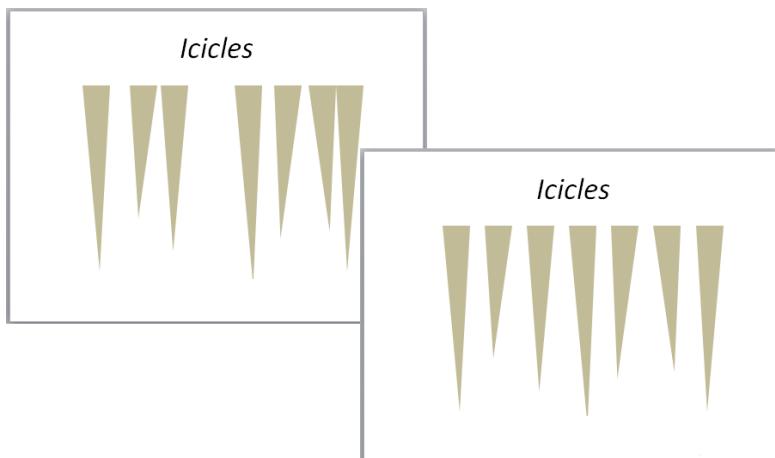
The Distribute commands — Distribute Horizontally and Distribute Vertically — come in handy for laying out objects on a page or slide. These commands arrange objects so that the same amount of space appears between each one. Rather than go to the trouble of pushing and pulling objects until they are distributed evenly, you can simply select the objects and choose a Distribute command.

Figure 4-15 demonstrates how the Distribute commands work. In the figure, I chose the Distribute Horizontally command so that the same amount of horizontal (side-by-side) space appears between the objects. Distributing objects such as these on your own is a waste of time when you can use a Distribute command.

---

**Figure 4-15:**  
The Distribute commands rearrange objects so that the same amount of space is between them.

---



Follow these steps to distribute objects horizontally or vertically on a page or slide:

- 1. Arrange the objects so that the outermost objects — the ones that will go on the top and bottom or left side and right side — are where you want them to be.**

In other words, if you want to distribute objects horizontally across a page, place the leftmost object and rightmost object where you want

them to be. Office will distribute the other objects equally between the leftmost and rightmost object.

**2. Select the objects.**

**3. Go to the Format tab.**

You can also go to the Page Layout tab (in Word and Excel) or the Home tab (in PowerPoint).



**4. Click the Align button and choose a Distribute option on the drop-down list.**

To find the Align button, you may have to click the Arrange button first, depending on the size of your screen.

## *When objects overlap: Choosing which appears above the other*

On a page or slide that is crowded with text boxes, shapes, graphics, and clip-art images, objects inevitably overlap, and you have to decide which object goes on top of the stack and which on the bottom. In a Word document, you have to decide as well whether text appears above or below objects.

Objects that deliberately overlap can be interesting and attractive to look at. On the right side of Figure 4-16, for example, a clip-art image and text box appear in front of a shape. Makes for a nice effect, no? These pages explain controlling how objects overlap with the Bring and Send commands and the Selection pane.

### *Controlling overlaps with the Bring and Send commands*

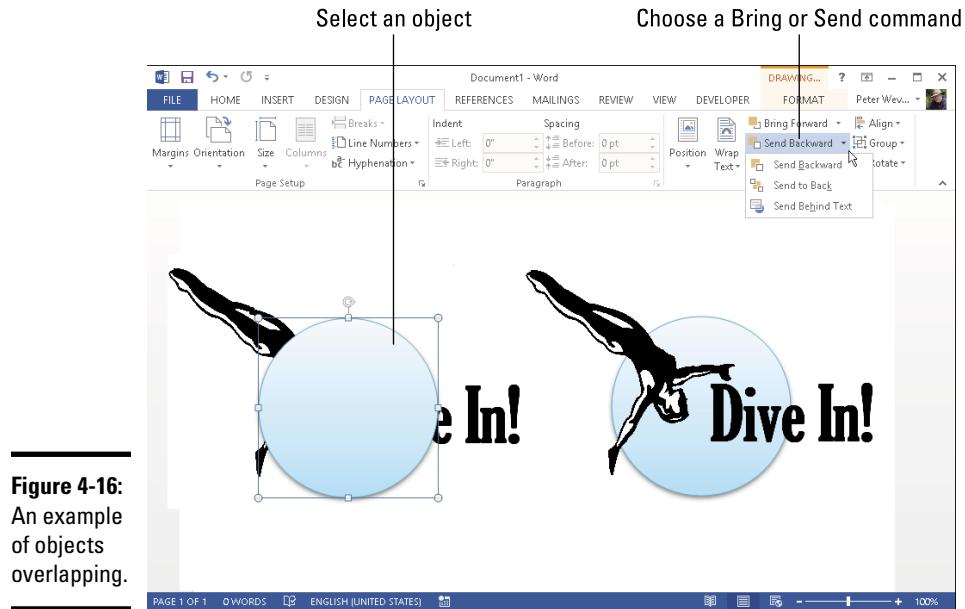
Word, PowerPoint, and Excel offer these commands for handling objects in a stack:

- ◆ **Bring Forward:** Moves the object higher in the stack
- ◆ **Bring to Front:** Moves the object in front of all other objects in the stack
- ◆ **Send Backward:** Moves the object lower in the stack
- ◆ **Send to Back:** Moves the object behind all other objects

Word offers these additional commands:

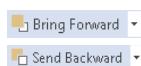
- ◆ **Bring in Front of Text:** Moves the object in front of text on the page
- ◆ **Send Behind Text:** Moves the object behind text on the page so that the text appears over the object

## 666 Moving and Positioning Objects



**Figure 4-16:**  
An example  
of objects  
overlapping.

Select an object and use one of these techniques to give a Bring or Send command:



- ◆ On the Format tab, click the Bring Forward or Send Backward button, or open the drop-down list on one of these buttons and choose a Bring or Send command (refer to Figure 4-16). Depending on the size of your screen, you may have to click the Arrange button before you can get to a Bring or Send command.

In Word and Excel, the Bring and Send commands are also available on the Page Layout tab; in PowerPoint, they are also available on the Home tab, although you may have to click the Arrange button first, depending on the size of your screen.

- ◆ Right-click an object and choose a Bring or Send command on the shortcut menu.

In Word, you can't choose a Bring or Send command unless you've chosen a text-wrapping option apart from In Line with Text for the object. Select your object, go to the Format tab, click the Text Wrap button, and choose an option on the drop-down list apart from In Line with Text. Book II, Chapter 6 looks at text wrapping in Word.





If an object on the bottom of the stack shows through after you place it on the bottom, the object on the top of the stack is transparent or semi-transparent. Transparent objects are like gauze curtains — they reveal what's behind them. If you want to make the object on the top of the stack less transparent, see “Making a color transparent,” earlier in this chapter.

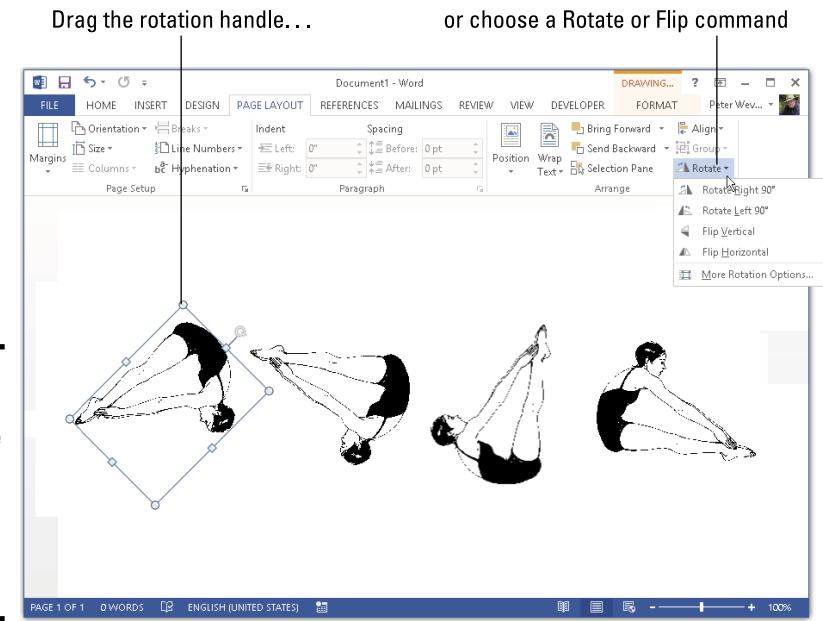
### Controlling overlaps with the Selection pane



Another way to control how objects overlap is to open the Selection pane, select an object, and click the Bring Forward or Send Backward button as necessary to move the object up or down in the stack. Earlier in this chapter, “Selecting objects so that you can manipulate them” explains the Selection pane. (On the Format tab, click the Selection Pane button to open it.)

### Rotating and flipping objects

Rotating and flipping objects — that is, changing their orientation — is a neat way to spruce up a page or slide, as Figure 4-17 demonstrates. You can rotate and flip these kinds of objects: lines, shapes, text boxes, clip-art images, graphics, and WordArt images. To flip or rotate an object, select it and do one of the following:



**Figure 4-17:**  
Members of  
an audience  
turn their  
heads when  
objects are  
rotated or  
flipped.



- ◆ **Roll your own:** Drag the object's *rotation handle*, the semicircle that appears after you select it. Hold down the Shift key as you drag to rotate the shape by 15-degree increments.
- ◆ **Choose a Rotate or Flip command:** On the Format tab, click the Rotate button and choose an option on the drop-down list (refer to Figure 4-17). The Rotate commands rotate objects by 90 degrees; the Flip commands flip objects over. The Rotate button is also found on the Page Layout tab (in Word and Excel) and the Home tab (in PowerPoint). You may have to click the Arrange button to see the Rotate button, depending on the size of your screen.
- ◆ **Open the Format task pane or Layout dialog box:** On the Rotate drop-down list, choose More Rotation Options to open the Format task pane or Layout dialog box. Enter a degree measurement in the Rotation text box.



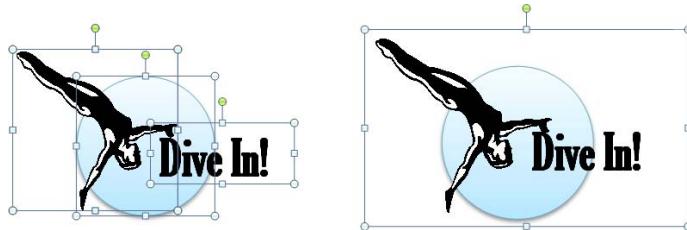
To rotate several objects simultaneously, Ctrl+click to select each object and then give a rotation command.

### ***Grouping objects to make working with them easier***

Consider the clip-art image, shape, and text box in Figure 4-18. To move, resize, or reshape these objects, I would have to laboriously move them one at a time — that is, I would have to do that if it weren't for the Group command.

**Figure 4-18:**

You can move, resize, and reshape grouped objects as though they were a single object.



The Group command assembles different objects into a single object to make moving, resizing, and reshaping objects easier. With the Group command, you select the objects that you want to “group” and then you wrap them into a bundle so that they become easier to work with.

### ***Grouping objects***

Select the objects and do one of the following to group them into one happy family:



- ◆ On the Format tab (or the Page Layout tab in Word and Excel, and the Home tab in PowerPoint), click the Group button and choose Group on the drop-down list. Depending on the size of your screen, you may have to click the Arrange button to get to the Group button.
- ◆ Right-click one of the objects you selected and choose Group>Group.

After objects are grouped, they form a single object with the eight selection handles.



To add an object to a group, select the object and the grouped objects by Ctrl+clicking and then choose the Group command.

### ***Ungrouping objects***

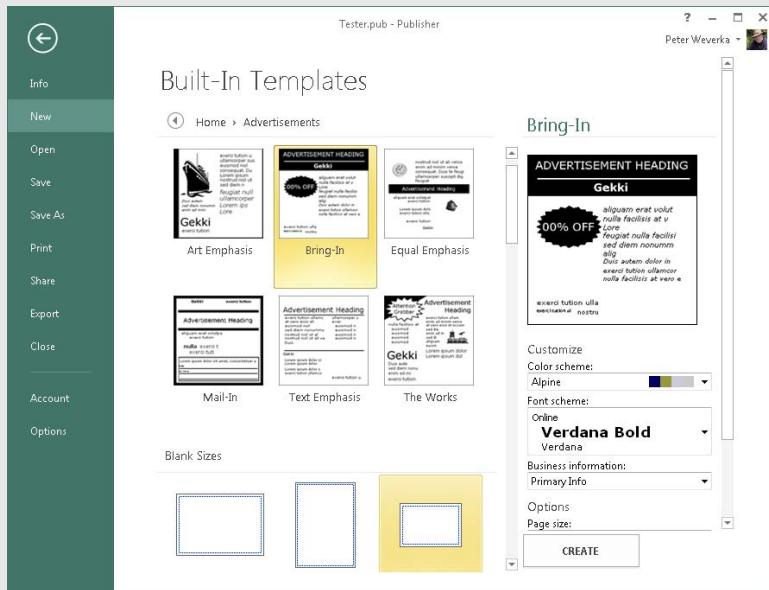


To ungroup an object and break it into its components parts, perhaps to fiddle with one of the objects in the group, select the object, go to the Format tab, click the Group button, and choose Ungroup.



# Book IX

# Office 2013: One Step Beyond



Find out about more about advanced features online at [www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio](http://www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio)

# *Contents at a Glance*

<b>Chapter 1: Customizing an Office Program .....</b>	<b>673</b>
Customizing the Ribbon .....	673
Customizing the Quick Access Toolbar.....	679
Customizing the Status Bar .....	682
Changing the Screen Background .....	682
Customizing Keyboard Shortcuts in Word.....	684
<b>Chapter 2: Ways of Distributing Your Work .....</b>	<b>687</b>
Printing — the Old Standby .....	687
Distributing a File in PDF Format.....	688
Sending Your File in an E-Mail Message.....	690
Saving an Office File as a Web Page .....	691
Blogging from inside Word.....	693
<b>Chapter 3: Working with Publisher.....</b>	<b>697</b>
“A Print Shop in a Can” .....	697
Introducing Frames .....	698
Creating a Publication.....	699
Redesigning a Publication .....	700
Getting a Better View of Your Work.....	701
Entering Text on the Pages .....	703
Making Text Fit in Text Frames.....	704
Making Text Wrap around a Frame or Graphic .....	707
Replacing the Placeholder Pictures .....	707
Inserting, Removing, and Moving Pages .....	709
Master Pages for Handling Page Backgrounds .....	710
Running the Design Checker .....	711
Commercially Printing a Publication .....	712

# *Chapter 1: Customizing an Office Program*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Personalizing the Ribbon
- ✓ Changing around the Quick Access toolbar
- ✓ Choosing what appears on the status bar
- ✓ Choosing a new screen background
- ✓ Devising keyboard shortcuts in Word

This short chapter describes a handful of things you can do to customize Office 2013 programs. Don't be afraid to make like a software developer and change a program to your liking. Many people are wary of retooling Office programs, but you can always reverse the changes you make if you don't like them, as I explain throughout this chapter.

This chapter shows how to put your favorite button commands on the Ribbon and Quick Access toolbar. Instead of fishing around for your favorite commands, you can assemble them on the Ribbon or Quick Access toolbar and locate them right away. You also discover how to change around the status bar, dress up an Office program in a new set of clothes, and designate your own keyboard shortcuts in Word.

## *Customizing the Ribbon*

As you surely know by now, the Ribbon is the stretch of ground across the top of all Office programs. The Ribbon is composed of tabs. On each tab, commands are arranged by group. To undertake a task, you visit a tab on the Ribbon, find the group with the command you want, and choose the command. If you are so inclined, you can customize the Ribbon. You can place the tabs and commands you know and love where you want to find them on the Ribbon. And you can remove tabs and commands that aren't useful to you.

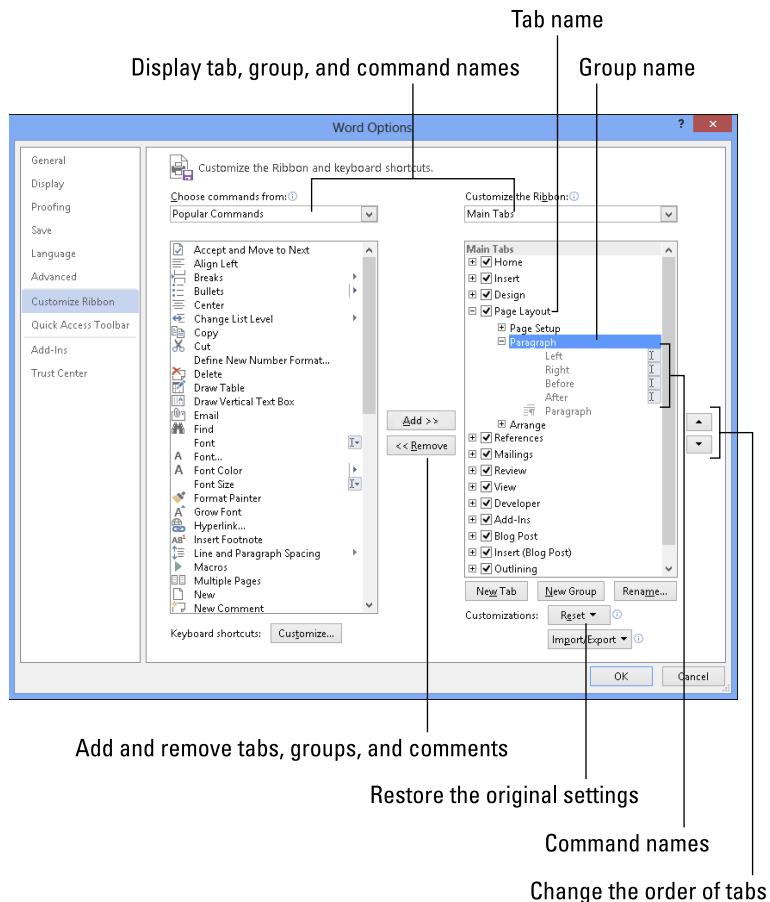
To customize the Ribbon, open the Customize Ribbon tab of the Options dialog box with one of these techniques:

## FILE

- ◆ On the File tab, choose Options, and select the Customize Ribbon category in the Options dialog box.
- ◆ Right-click a tab or button and choose Customize the Ribbon.

You see commands for customizing the Ribbon, as shown in Figure 1-1. The right side of the dialog box (“Customize the Ribbon”) lists the names of tabs, groups within tabs, and commands within groups that are currently on the Ribbon. To customize the Ribbon, you arrange the right side of the dialog box to your liking. You list the tabs, groups, and commands that you want for the Ribbon on the right side of the dialog box.

**Figure 1-1:**  
Starting  
in the  
Customize  
Ribbon  
category of  
the Options  
dialog box,  
you can  
customize  
the Ribbon.



The left side of the dialog box (“Choose Commands From”) presents every tab, group, and command in your Office program. To customize the Ribbon, you select a tab, group, or command on the left side of the dialog box and move it to the right side by clicking the Add button.

Keep reading to find out how to display tabs, groups, and commands in the Options dialog box and how to do all else that pertains to customizing the Ribbon. In case you make a hash of the Ribbon, you also find instructions for restoring the Ribbon to its original state.

## ***Displaying and selecting tab, group, and command names***

To customize the Ribbon, you need to display and select tab names, group names, and command names in the Options dialog box (refer to Figure 1-1). Start by opening the drop-down lists and choosing a display option:

- ◆ **Choose Commands From:** Choose an option to locate the tab, group, or command you want to add to the Ribbon. For example, choose All Commands to see an alphabetical list of all the commands in the Office program you’re working in; choose Main Tabs to see a list of tabs.
- ◆ **Customize the Ribbon:** Choose an option to display the names of all tabs, main tabs, or tool tabs. Tool tabs are the context-sensitive tabs that appear after you insert or click something. For example, the Table Tools tabs appear when you construct tables in Word.

After you choose display options on the drop-down lists, you can display the names of groups and commands (refer to Figure 1-1):

- ◆ **Displaying group names:** Click a plus sign icon next to a tab name to see the names of its groups. You can click the minus sign icon to fold group names back into a tab name.
- ◆ **Displaying command names in groups:** Click the plus sign icon next to a group name to see the names of its commands. You can click the minus sign icon to collapse command names.

After you display the tab, group, or command name, click to select it.

## ***Moving tabs and groups on the Ribbon***

To change the order of tabs on the Ribbon or groups on a tab, go to the Customize Ribbon category of the Options dialog box (refer to Figure 1-1) and select the name of a tab or group on the right side of the dialog box.

Then click the Move Up or Move Down button (the arrow buttons located on the right side of the dialog box). Click these buttons as necessary until tabs or groups are in the order that you see fit.



Be careful about moving groups by clicking the Move Up or Move Down button. Clicking these buttons too many times can move a group to a different tab on the Ribbon.

## ***Adding, removing, and renaming tabs, groups, and commands***

In the Options dialog box (refer to Figure 1-1), display and select the tab, group, or command you want to add, remove, or rename. Then proceed to add, remove, or rename it. (Earlier in this chapter, “Displaying and selecting tab, group, and command names” explains how to display items in the Options dialog box.)

### ***Adding items to the Ribbon***

Follow these steps to add a tab, group, or command to the Ribbon:

- 1. On the left side of the Customize Ribbon category of the Options dialog box, select the tab, group, or command you want to add.**

For example, to add the Tables group to the Home tab, select the Tables group.

Commands can be added only to custom groups. To add a command to the Ribbon, create a new group for the command (see “Creating new tabs and groups,” later in this chapter).

- 2. On the right side of the dialog box, select the tab or custom group where you want to place the item.**

If you’re adding a tab to the Ribbon, select a tab. The tab you add will go after the tab you select.

- 3. Click the Add button.**

### ***Removing items from the Ribbon***

Follow these steps to remove a tab, group, or command from the Ribbon:

- 1. On the right side of the Customize Ribbon category of the Options dialog box, select the tab, group, or command you want to remove.**
- 2. Click the Remove button.**

Except for tabs you create yourself, you can’t remove tabs from the Ribbon. And you can’t remove a command unless you remove it from a group you created yourself.

### **Renaming tabs and groups**

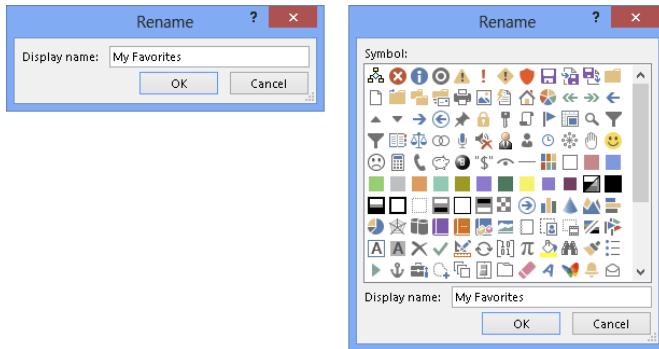
Sorry, you can't rename a command. Follow these steps to rename a tab or group:

1. On the right side of the Customize Ribbon category of the Options dialog box, select the tab or group you want to rename.
2. Click the Rename button.

You see the Rename dialog box, as shown in Figure 1-2.

3. Enter a new name and click OK.

When renaming a group, you can choose a symbol for the group in the Rename dialog box (see Figure 1-2).



**Figure 1-2:**  
Renaming  
a tab (left)  
and a group  
(right).

### **Creating new tabs and groups**

Create new tabs and groups on the Ribbon for commands that are especially useful to you. Follow these steps on the Customize Ribbon category of the Options dialog box (refer to Figure 1-1) to create a new tab or group:

1. On the right side of the dialog box, display and select the name of a tab or group.

Earlier in this chapter, “Displaying and selecting tab, group, and command names” explains how to select items in the Options dialog box.

- *Tab*: If you’re creating a tab, select a tab name. The tab you create will appear after the tab you select.
- *Group*: If you’re creating a group, select a group name. The group you create will appear after the group you select.

2. Click the New Tab or New Group button.

Your Office program creates a new tab or group called “New Tab (Custom)” or “New Group (Custom).” If you created a tab, Office also creates a new group inside your new tab.

**3. Click the Rename button to give the tab, group, or both a name.**

In the Rename dialog box, enter a descriptive name and click OK. If you’re naming a group, the Rename dialog box gives you the opportunity to select an icon to help identify the group (see Figure 1-2).

**4. Add groups, commands, or both to your newly made tab or group.**

For instructions, see “Adding items to the Ribbon,” earlier in this chapter.

### ***Resetting your Ribbon customizations***

If you make a hash of the Ribbon, all is not lost because you can restore the original settings. In the Options dialog box, click the Reset button (refer to Figure 1-1) and choose one of these commands on the drop-down list:

- ◆ **Reset Only Selected Ribbon Tab:** Select a tab name on the right side of the Options dialog box and choose this command to restore a tab to its original state.
- ◆ **Reset All Customizations:** Choose this command to restore the Ribbon in its entirety. All changes you made are reversed.

You can also remove tabs and groups you created if you discover you don’t need them. See “Removing items from the Ribbon,” earlier in this chapter.

---

## **Exporting and importing program customizations**

You can preserve your Ribbon and Quick Access toolbar customizations for posterity in a special file called an Import Customization file; these files have the .exportedUI file extension. Keep the file on hand for when you need it, or distribute the file to co-workers. For that matter, a co-worker who is proud of his or her customizations can send them to you in a file and you can load the customizations into your Office program.

To save your Ribbon and Quick Access toolbar customization settings in a file, go to the File tab, choose Options, and visit to the

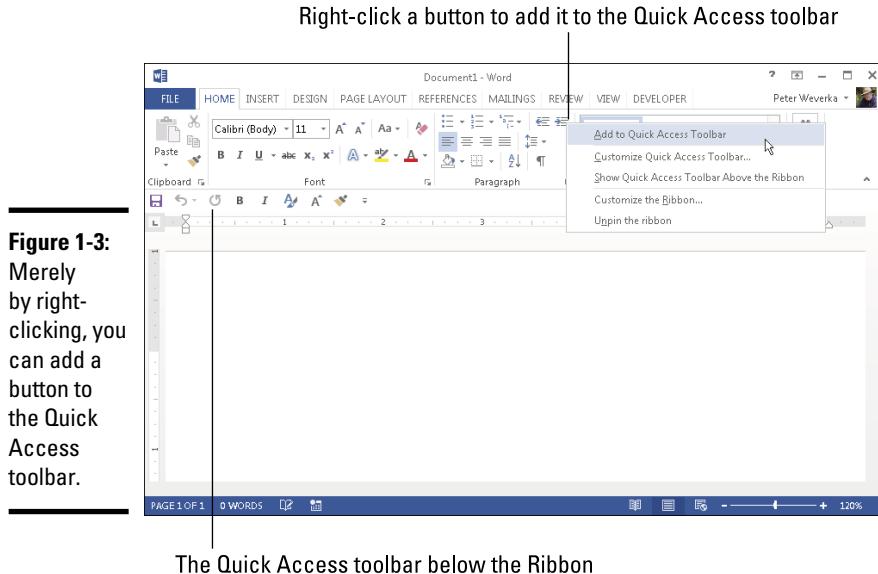
Customize Ribbon or Quick Access Toolbar category of the Options dialog box. Then click the Import/Export button and choose Export All Customizations on the drop-down list. The File Save dialog box opens. Give the customizations file a name and click the Save button.

To load customizations from a file into your Office program, return to the Customize Ribbon or Quick Access Toolbar category of the Options dialog box, click the Import/Export button, and choose Import Customization File. You see the File Open dialog box. Select the file and click the Open button.

## Customizing the Quick Access Toolbar

No matter where you go in Office, you see the Quick Access toolbar in the upper-left corner of the screen. This toolbar offers the Save, Undo, and Repeat buttons. However, which buttons appear on the Quick Access toolbar is entirely up to you. You can put your favorite buttons on the toolbar to keep them within reach. And if the Quick Access toolbar gets too big, you can move it below the Ribbon, as shown in Figure 1-3. Adding buttons to and removing buttons from the Quick Access toolbar is, I'm happy to report, a piece of cake. And moving the toolbar below the Ribbon is as easy as pie.

**Figure 1-3:**  
Merely by right-clicking, you can add a button to the Quick Access toolbar.



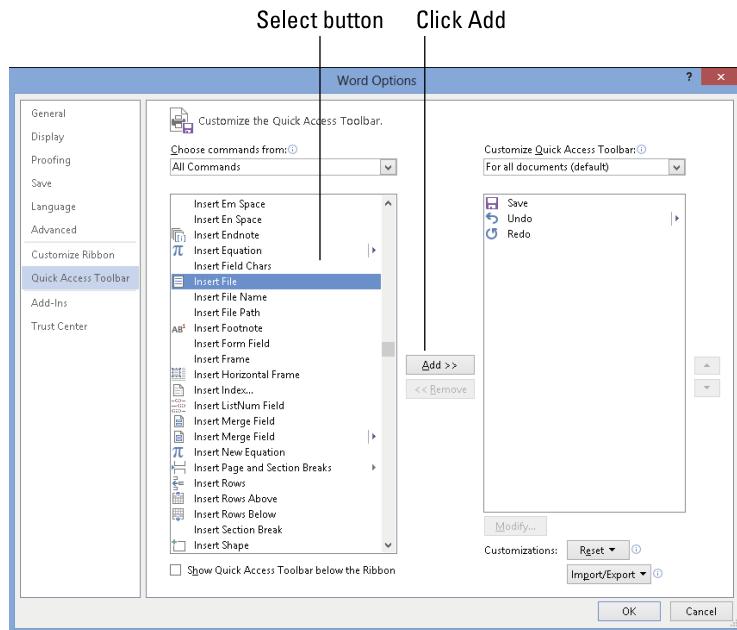
The Quick Access toolbar below the Ribbon

### Adding buttons to the Quick Access toolbar

Use one of these techniques to add buttons to the Quick Access toolbar:

- ◆ Right-click a button you want to see on the toolbar and choose Add to Quick Access Toolbar on the shortcut menu (refer to Figure 1-3). You can add all the commands in a group to the Quick Access toolbar by right-clicking the group name and choosing Add to Quick Access Toolbar.
- ◆ Click the Customize Quick Access Toolbar button (this button is located to the right of the Quick Access toolbar) and choose a button on the drop-down list. The list offers buttons deemed most likely to be placed on the Quick Access toolbar by the makers of Office.

- ◆ On the File tab, choose Options, and go to the Quick Access Toolbar category in the Options dialog box (or right-click any button or tab and choose Customize Quick Access Toolbar on the shortcut menu). You see the Quick Access Toolbar category of the Options dialog box, as shown in Figure 1-4. On the Choose Commands From drop-down list, select the name of the button you want to add to the Quick Access toolbar. Then click the Add button.



**Figure 1-4:**  
Add,  
remove,  
and reorder  
Quick  
Access  
toolbar  
buttons in  
the Options  
dialog box.

To restore the Quick Access toolbar to its original buttons, click the Reset button in the Options dialog box (see Figure 1-4) and choose Reset Only Quick Access Toolbar on the drop-down list. Choosing Reset All Customizations resets Ribbon customizations as well as Quick Access toolbar customizations.

### *Changing the order of buttons on the Quick Access toolbar*

Follow these steps to change the order of buttons on the Quick Access toolbar:

1. Click the Customize Quick Access Toolbar button and choose More Commands on the drop-down list.

The Quick Access Toolbar category of the Options dialog box appears (see Figure 1-4). You can also open this dialog box by right-clicking any button or tab and choosing Customize Quick Access Toolbar.

- 2. Select the name of a button on the right side of the dialog box and click the Move Up or Move Down button.**

These arrow buttons are located on the right side of the dialog box.

- 3. Repeat Step 2 until the buttons are in the right order.**

- 4. Click OK.**

## ***Removing buttons from the Quick Access toolbar***

Use one of these techniques to remove buttons from the Quick Access toolbar:

- ◆ Right-click a button and choose Remove from Quick Access Toolbar on the shortcut menu.
- ◆ Right-click any button or tab and choose Customize Quick Access Toolbar. You see the Quick Access Toolbar category of the Options dialog box (refer to Figure 1-4). Select the button you want to remove on the right side of the dialog box and click the Remove button.



You can click the Reset button in the Options dialog box (refer to Figure 1-4) to remove all the buttons you placed on the Quick Access toolbar.

## ***Placing the Quick Access toolbar above or below the Ribbon***

The Ribbon is the stretch of ground along the top of the screen where the tabs and buttons are found. If your Quick Access toolbar contains many buttons, consider placing it below the Ribbon, not above it (refer to Figure 1-3). Follow these instructions to place the Quick Access toolbar above or below the Ribbon:

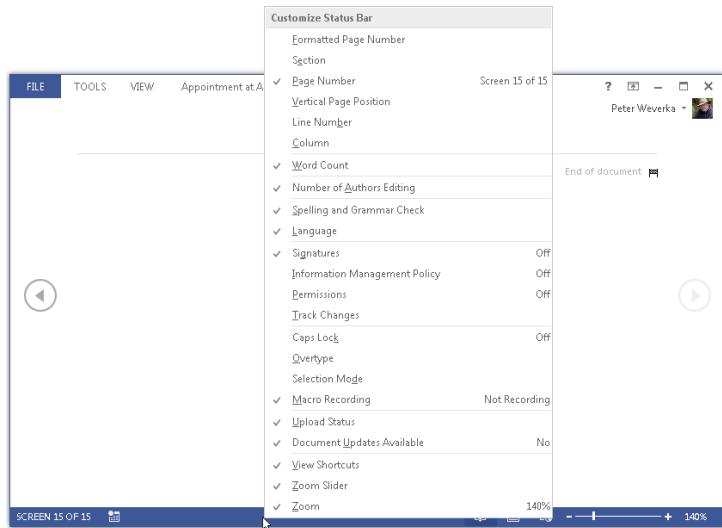
- ◆ **Quick Access toolbar below the Ribbon:** Right-click the toolbar, and on the shortcut menu, choose Show Quick Access Toolbar Below the Ribbon.
- ◆ **Quick Access toolbar above the Ribbon:** Right-click the toolbar, and on the shortcut menu, choose Show Quick Access Toolbar Above the Ribbon.

The Options dialog box offers a check box called Show Quick Access Toolbar Below the Ribbon (refer to Figure 1-4). You can select this check box as well to move the toolbar below the Ribbon.

## ***Customizing the Status Bar***

The status bar along the bottom of the window gives you information about the file you're working on. The Word status bar, for example, tells you which page you're on, how many pages are in your document, and several other things. In PowerPoint, the status bar tells you which slide you're looking at. It also presents the view buttons and Zoom controls.

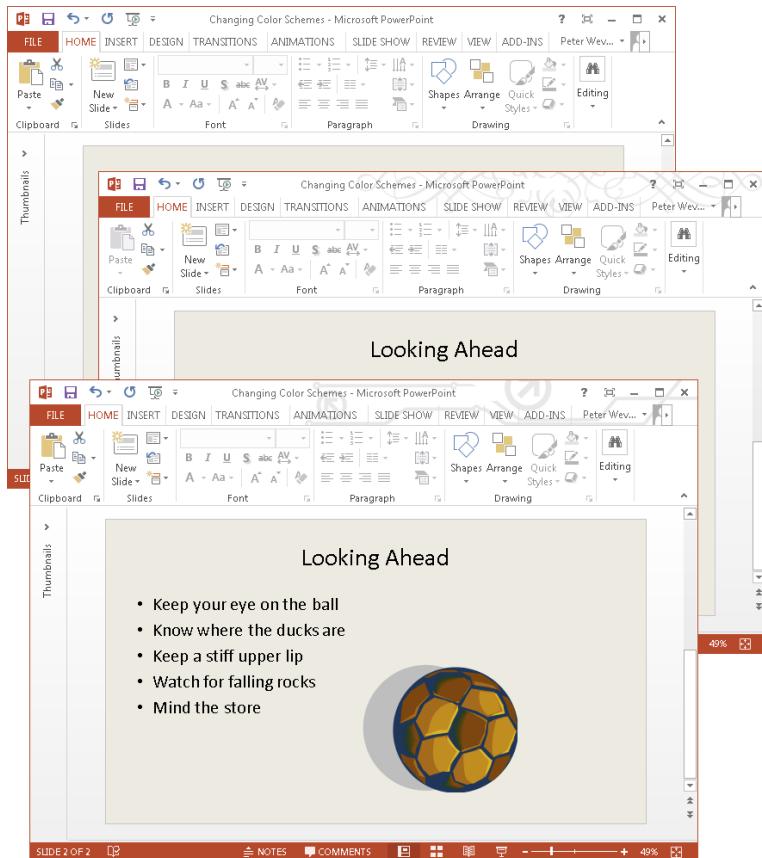
To choose what appears on the status bar, right-click the status bar. You see a drop-down list similar to the one in Figure 1-5. By selecting and deselecting items in this list, you can decide what appears on the status bar.



**Figure 1-5:**  
Right-click  
the status  
bar to  
customize it.

## ***Changing the Screen Background***

Figure 1-6 shows three screen backgrounds with which you can dress up Excel, Outlook, Access, Word, Publisher, and PowerPoint. Office offers 14 backgrounds in all. You are invited to experiment with the screen backgrounds to find one that pleases you. Follow these steps to choose a screen background:



**Figure 1-6:**  
Examples  
of screen  
back-  
grounds: No  
Background  
(top),  
Calligraphy  
(middle),  
and Circuit  
(bottom).

## FILE

### 1. On the File tab, choose Options.

You see the Options dialog box.

### 2. Select the General category.

### 3. Open the Office Background drop-down list and choose an option.

### 4. Click OK.

How do you like your new get-up?

## Customizing Keyboard Shortcuts in Word

In Microsoft Word, you can change the keyboard shortcuts. A *keyboard shortcut* is a combination of keys that you press to give a command. For example, pressing Ctrl+P opens the Print window; pressing Ctrl+S gives the Save command. If you don't like a keyboard shortcut in Word, you can change it and invent a keyboard shortcut of your own. You can also assign keyboard shortcuts to symbols, macros, building blocks, and styles.

Follow these steps to choose keyboard shortcuts of your own in Microsoft Word:

### FILE

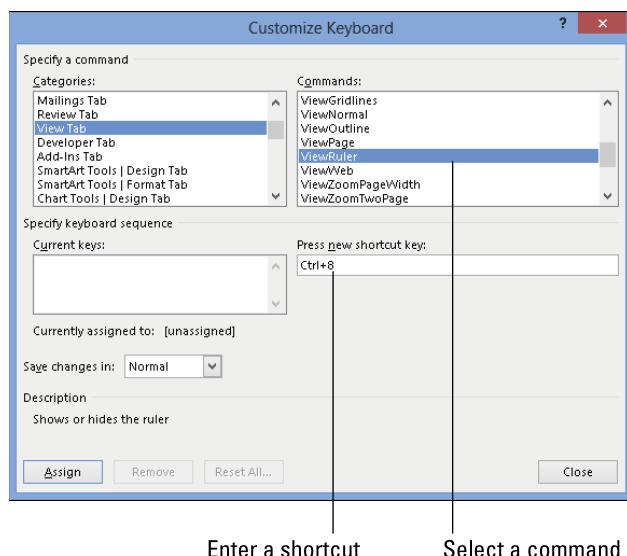
1. On the File tab, choose Options.

You see the Word Options dialog box.

2. Go to the Customize Ribbon category.

3. Click the Customize button (you can find it at the bottom of the dialog box next to the words "Keyboard Shortcuts").

You see the Customize Keyboard dialog box, as shown in Figure 1-7.



**Figure 1-7:**  
Assigning  
keyboard  
shortcuts  
to Word  
commands.

Enter a shortcut

Select a command

- 4. In the Categories list, choose the category with the command to which you want to assign the keyboard shortcut.**

At the bottom of the list are the Macros, Fonts, Building Blocks, Styles, and Common Symbols categories.

- 5. Choose the command name, macro, font, building block, style, or symbol name in the Commands list.**
- 6. In the Press New Shortcut Key box, type the keyboard shortcut.**

Press the actual keys. For example, if the shortcut is Ctrl+8, press the Ctrl key and the 8 key — don't type out C-t-r-l-8.

If you try to assign a shortcut that has already been assigned, the words "Currently assigned to" and a command name appear below the Current Keys box. You can override the preassigned keyboard assignment by entering a keyboard assignment of your own.

- 7. If you want the keyboard shortcut changes you make to apply to the document you're working on, not to all documents created with the template you're working with, open the Save Changes In drop-down list and choose your document's name.**
- 8. Click the Assign button.**
- 9. When you finish assigning keyboard shortcuts, close the Customize Keyboard dialog box.**

To delete a keyboard shortcut, display it in the Current Keys box, select it, and click the Remove button.



You can always get the old keyboard shortcuts back by clicking the Reset All button in the Customize Keyboard dialog box.



# *Chapter 2: Ways of Distributing Your Work*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Printing files
- ✓ Saving files so that others can read them in Adobe Acrobat Reader
- ✓ Sending a file by e-mail
- ✓ Saving a file so that it can be viewed in a web browser
- ✓ Writing and keeping a blog from inside Word

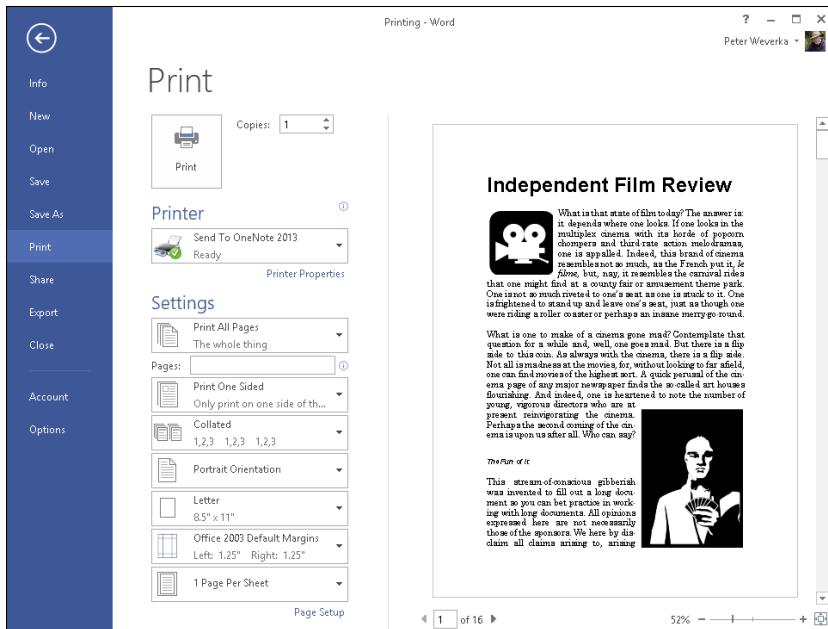
This chapter explains how to distribute your work to co-workers and friends. You'll be glad to know that people who don't have Office 2013 can still read and review an Office 2013 file you created. You can print it for them, save it so it can be read in Adobe Acrobat Reader, or save it as a web page. This chapter explains all that as well as how to send a file right away by e-mail and write and post blog entries from inside Word. By the way, Book IV, Chapter 5 describes other ways to distribute PowerPoint presentations. You can provide audience handouts, ship presentations on CDs, and save presentations as video files.

## *Printing — the Old Standby*

In spite of predictions to the contrary, the paperless office is still a pipe dream. The day has yet to materialize when Johnny at his computer is completely digitized and communicating with his colleagues without having to print anything on paper. As for Jane, she can hardly go a day without printing reports, spreadsheets, and brochures. The office is still awash in paper, and all Jane and Johnny can do for consolation is try their best to recycle.

## FILE

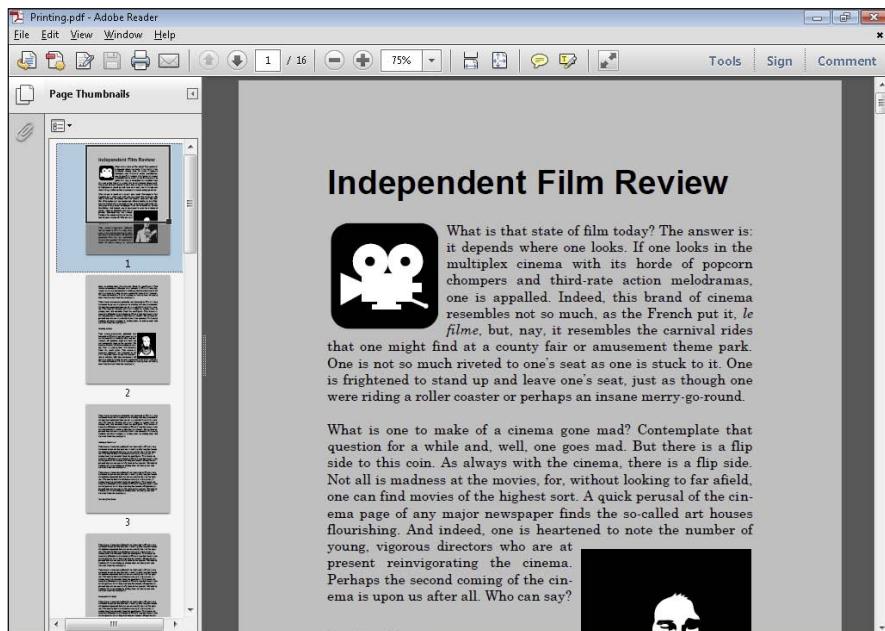
To print a file, preview a file before you print it, and do all else that pertains to printing, go to the File tab and choose Print (or press Ctrl+P). You land in the Print window, as shown in Figure 2-1. From here, you can choose how many copies to print, choose a part of a file to print, and get a look at your file before you print it. Notice that the Print window offers Zoom controls buttons and buttons for going from page to page (or slide to slide).



**Figure 2-1:**  
Starting in  
the Print  
window, you  
can preview  
and print  
files.

## Distributing a File in PDF Format

As shown in Figure 2-2, you can save and distribute a file in the PDF (Portable Document File) format if the person to whom you want to give the file doesn't have the program with which it was created. For example, someone who doesn't have Excel can still view your Excel file in PDF format. Moreover, you can post PDF files on the Internet so others can view them there.



**Figure 2-2:**  
A Word document as seen through the eyes of Adobe Acrobat Reader.

## About PDF files

PDF files are designed to be viewed and printed in a program called Adobe Reader. This program is very good at acquiring data from other programs and presenting it so it can be read and printed easily. Nearly every computer has Adobe Reader. If someone to whom you sent a PDF file doesn't have the program, they can download it for free at this web page:

<http://get.adobe.com/reader/>

Book II, Chapter 2 explains how you can open and edit PDF files in Word 2013.

## Saving an Office file as a PDF

Follow these steps to save an Office file as a PDF file:

FILE

1. Go to the File tab and choose Export to open the Export window.
2. Choose Create PDF/XPS Document.

**3. Click the Create a PDF/XPS button.**

The Publish as PDF or XPS dialog box appears. If your goal is to create an XPS file, not a PDF file, open the Save As Type drop-down list and choose XPS Document (\*.xps). Microsoft created the XPS format to compete with the PDF format. As are PDF files, XPS files are meant to present data from different programs, in this case in Internet Explorer. However, the XPS format is not nearly as well known or frequently used as the PDF format.

**4. Select a folder for storing your PDF (or XPS) file, give it a name, and click the Publish button.**

The Adobe Reader program opens and you see your file. (If you created an XPS file, Internet Explorer opens.)

Later in this chapter, “Saving an Office File as a Web Page” explains another way to distribute Office files to people who don’t have Office — by saving the files as web pages.

## *Sending Your File in an E-Mail Message*

As long as you handle your e-mail with Outlook 2013, you can send the file you’re working on to a friend or co-worker without having to open Outlook 2013. Moreover, you can send a PDF or XPS version of the file. You simply choose a command and send the thing over the Internet. Follow these steps to send an open file you’re working on to a friend or co-worker:

**FILE****1. Go to the File tab and choose Share.**

The Share window opens.

**2. Choose E-Mail.****3. Choose an E-Mail option on the right side of the window.**

How do you want to send your file? Click one of these buttons:

- *Send as Attachment*: Send the file as an attachment to an e-mail message.
- *Send a Link*: Send an e-mail link with a hyperlink to the file on a shared workspace.
- *Send as PDF*: Send a PDF version of the file as an attachment to an e-mail message.
- *Send as XPS*: Send an XPS version of the file as an attachment to an e-mail message.
- *Send as Internet Fax*: Send the file as an Internet fax (you must have signed up with an Internet fax service provider).

An Outlook 2013 message window appears with the name of your file on the subject line and the file itself in the Attach box. Your presentation is ready to send along with the e-mail message.

- 4. Enter the recipient's address in the To box and a message in the Message box.**

Book VI, Chapter 3 explains how to address, compose, and send e-mail messages with Outlook.

- 5. Click the Send button.**

That was fast! It was faster than opening Outlook and attaching the file to the e-mail message on your own.

## Saving an Office File as a Web Page

Figure 2-3 shows what a Word document looks like after it is saved as a web page and displayed in a web browser. Looks like a normal Word document, doesn't it? Anyone with a web browser can view a Word document or other Office file after it's saved as a web page. Save an Office file as a web page and post it on the Internet so that people who don't have Office can view it.



**Figure 2-3:**  
A Word document saved as a web page, as seen through the eyes of a web browser.

What is one to make of a cinema gone mad? Contemplate that question for a while and, well, one goes mad. But there is a flip side to this coin. As always with the cinema, there is a flip side. Not all is madness at the movies, for, without looking to far afield, one can find movies of the highest sort. A quick perusal of the cinema page of any major newspaper finds the so-called art houses flourishing. And indeed, one is heartened to note the number of young, vigorous directors who are at present reinvigorating the cinema. Perhaps the second coming of the cinema is upon us after all. Who can say?

### *The Fun of It*

This stream-of-conscious gibberish was invented to fill out a long document so you can get practice in working with long documents. All opinions expressed here are not necessarily those of the sponsors. We hereby disclaim all claims arising to, arising from, or arising from this material. Read the small print. This stream-of-conscious gibberish was invented to fill out a long document so you can bet

These pages explain the different ways to save an Office file as a web page, as well as how to open a web page you created in a web browser.

### **Choosing how to save the component parts**

When you save an Office file as a web page, you have the choice of saving it as a Single File Web Page (.mht, .mhtml) or Web Page (.htm, .html).



- ◆ **Single File Web Page (.mht, .mhtml):** All component parts of the file — graphics, separate pages, and sounds, for example — are bundled into a single file. Keeping all the component parts in one file makes moving, copying, and sending the file easier. However, only the Internet Explorer browser can open and read .mht and .mhtml files. The popular Mozilla Firefox, Safari, and Opera browsers can't handle them.
- ◆ **Web Page (.htm, .html):** All the component parts of the file are kept in separate files and are saved in the same folder. Keeping the component parts in separate files is the standard way to present pages on the Internet. Handling the half-dozen or more files that are needed to display the web page can be troublesome, but you can be certain that the web page displays properly in all browsers.



### **Turning a file into a web page**

Before you save your file as a web page, create a folder on your computer or computer network for storing the page if you intend to save it in several files in the .htm format. Unless you create a folder for storing all the files, you'll have a hard time locating them later, and you must be able to locate them to transfer them to a web server for display on the Internet or to send them to someone else.

Follow these steps to save an Office file as a web page:

**FILE**

1. **Go to the File tab and choose Export.**

The Export window opens.

2. **Choose Change File Type.**

Change File Type options appear on the right side of the window.

3. **Save your file as a single file web page or web page.**

The previous topic in this chapter, "Choosing how to save the component parts," explains the difference between the two.

- *Single File Web Page*: Choose the Single File Web Page option and click the Save As button. The Save As dialog box opens.
- *Web Page*: Choose the Save as Another File Type option, click the Save As button, and in the Save As dialog box, open the Save as Type drop-down list and choose Web Page.

**4. In the Save As dialog box, click the Change Title button, enter a descriptive title in the Enter Text dialog box, and click OK.**

The title you enter will appear in the title bar along the top of the web browser window.

**5. Choose a folder for storing your new web page.**

If you followed my advice about creating a web page, choose the folder you recently created for storing the page and its attendant files.

**6. Click the Save button.**

If your file includes features that can't be displayed in a web browser, the Compatibility Checker dialog box tells you what those features are. Click the Continue button to create your web page.

### ***Opening a web page in your browser***

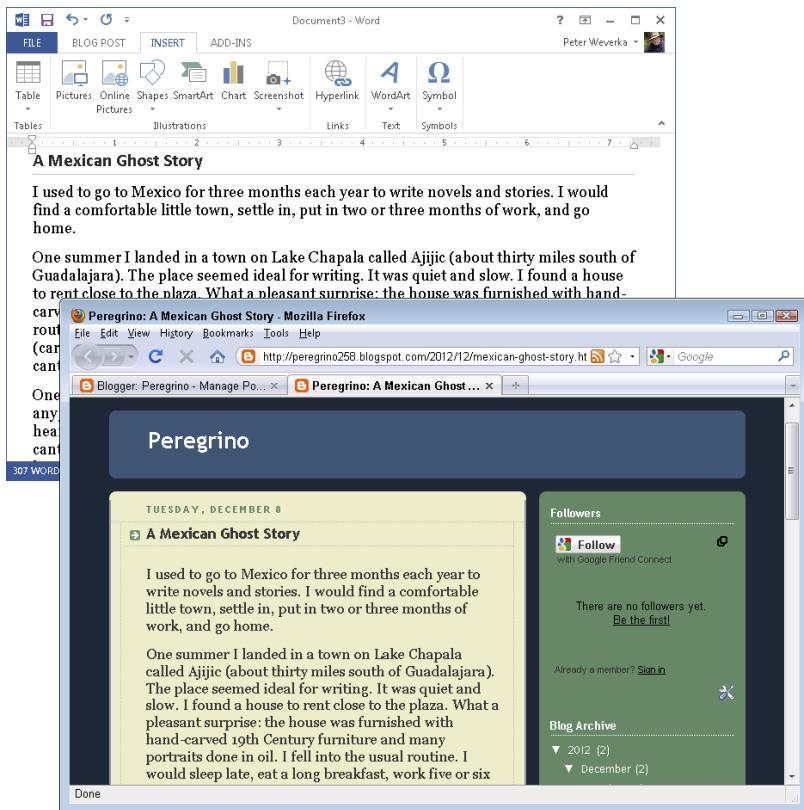
To open a web page you fashioned from an Office file, open the folder where you stored the web page in Computer or Windows Explorer and double-click the .htm or .mht file. For example, if your file is called Sales Projections, double-click the Sales Projections.htm or Sales Projections.mht file to open the web page.

## ***Blogging from inside Word***

The word *blog* is shorthand for *web log*. A typical blog is a hodgepodge of commentary and links to online news sources and often other blogs where topics of concern to the blogger are discussed. Many blogs are online diaries. You get a daily picture of what the blogger is interested in — dating, technology, politics, and just about anything else under the sun.

To make it easier to keep a blog, Word offers special commands for writing blog entries and posting them immediately with a blogging service. Figure 2-4 shows the blogging feature in action. The title and the blog entry in the Word document are transported *in toto* to the blog without your having to enter a password or even visit a blogging service. What's more, Word offers

a special Blog Post tab for posting blog entries and managing accounts with your blogging service. To take advantage of Word's blogging feature, you must already have an account with a blogging service.



**Figure 2-4:**  
A blog entry  
written  
in Word  
(top) and  
posted to  
a blogging  
service  
(bottom).

### Describing a blog account to Word

Word can't post entries to a blog unless you tell it where the blog is located, what your password is, and some other juicy tidbits. As of this writing, Word is compatible with these blogging services: Blogger, SharePoint Blog, Telligent Community, TypePad, Windows Live Spaces, and WordPress.

Follow these steps to register your blogging account with Word so Word can upload blog entries:

#### 1. Go to the File tab and choose Share.

The Share window opens.

FILE

- 2. Choose Publish as Blog Post.**
- 3. Click the Publish as Blog Post button.**

You see the Register a Blog Account dialog box.

- 4. Click the Register Now button and answer questions in the dialog box to describe the blogging service you use.**

Which questions you are asked depends on which blogging service you use. You're asked for a username and password, and also perhaps an http or ftp address for publishing pictures on your blog.

After you finish describing your blogging service, you will be pleased to discover a new tab in Word — the Blog Post tab (refer to Figure 2-4). You can use this tab to post blog entries and manage your blog accounts.

### ***Posting an entry to your blog***

When you're ready to share your thoughts with the world, follow these steps to write and post an entry to your blog from inside Word:

- 1. In Word, write the entry from scratch or open a document you've already written.**

You can start from a new document, or if you've written the entry, open the Word document with the entry.

- 2. Go to the File tab, choose Share, choose Publish as Blog Post, and click the Publish as Blog Post button.**

You land in the Blog Post tab (refer to Figure 2-4). It offers all the character styles and proofing tools that you find in Word. Go to the Insert tab to enter a hyperlink. (Book I, Chapter 2 explains hyperlinks.)

- 3. Enter a title for your blog entry in the space provided.**
- 4. When you're finished writing and preparing your blog entry, click the Publish button on the Blog Post tab.**



If all goes well, Word informs you that your post has been published on your blogging service, and it lists the time and date it was published. This information appears in the Word document itself.

Instead of publishing your blog entry right away, you can open the dropdown list on the Publish button and choose Publish as Draft. Doing so uploads the blog entry to your blogging service without posting it. The entry lands on the Editing page, where you can select it, click the Editing button, and edit it online before publishing it.

## **Taking advantage of the Blog Post tab**

By clicking buttons on the Blog Post tab, you can manage blog entries:

- ◆ **Go to your blog page:** Click the Home Page button to open your browser and display the home page of your blog.
- ◆ **Edit a blog entry:** Click the Open Existing button, and in the Open Existing Post dialog box, select a blog entry and click OK. The entry appears in Word. Edit it and click the Publish button to post it on your blog.
- ◆ **Manage accounts:** Click the Manage Accounts button to describe a new account to Word, change a blog account, or remove a blog account. Word provides the Blog Accounts dialog box for doing these activities.

# *Chapter 3: Working with Publisher*

---

## *In This Chapter*

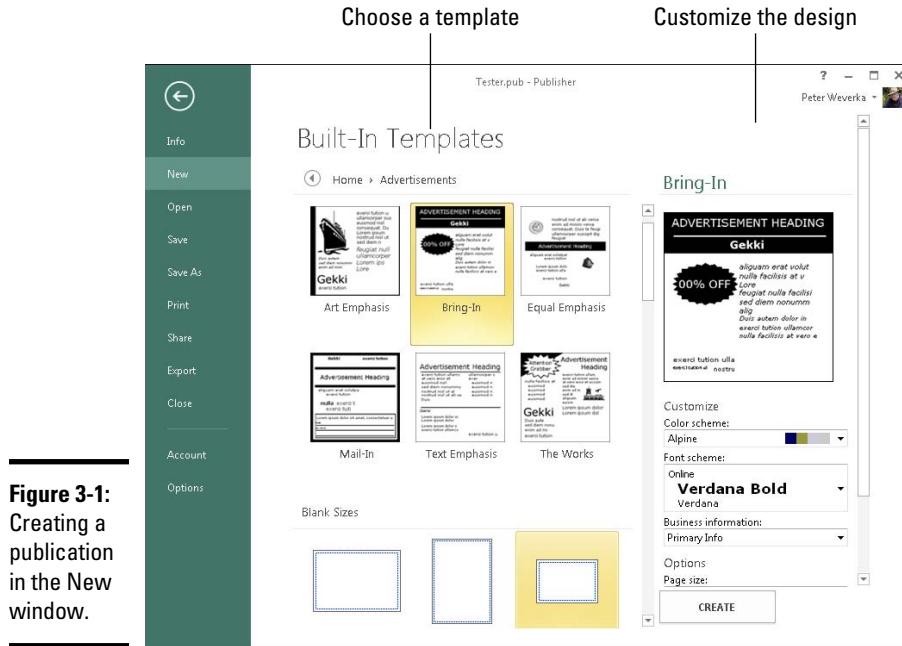
- ✓ Understanding frames
- ✓ Creating a new publication
- ✓ Designing your publication
- ✓ Changing your view of the Publisher window
- ✓ Entering the text and handling text frames
- ✓ Inserting pictures
- ✓ Finalizing and printing your publication

Welcome to Publisher 2013. Not long ago, creating professional publications like the kind you can create with Publisher required sophisticated printing equipment and a background in graphic design. However, even a novice can now create professional-looking publications with Publisher. As long as you rely on a publication design — a template that comes with Publisher — most of the layout work is done for you. All you have to do is enter the text and the other particulars.

## *“A Print Shop in a Can”*

Publisher has been called “a print shop in a can” because the program is great for creating prefabricated brochures, business cards, calendars, newsletters, resumes, posters, and the like. To make these publications without going to a great deal of trouble, however, you have to stick to the template. Each *template* provides you with a readymade brochure, calendar, and so on.

Chances are you can find a suitable template for whatever kind of publication you want to create. Figure 3-1 shows examples of advertising templates. Templates include placeholders for graphics and text. To create a publication, you choose a template, choose a design, enter graphics and text in the publication where the placeholders are, and tweak the publication to your liking.



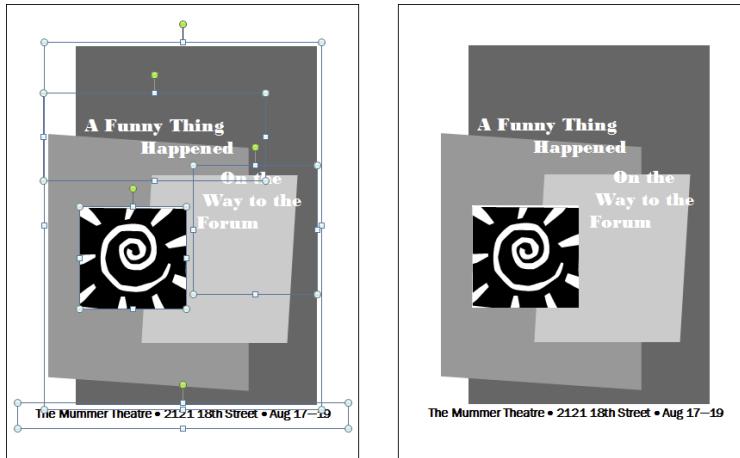
**Figure 3-1:**  
Creating a  
publication  
in the New  
window.

## *Introducing Frames*

The publications that you make with Publisher are composed of frames. A *frame* is a placeholder for text, a graphic, or a table. Complex publications have dozens of frames; simple publications have only a few. Frames keep text and graphics from overlapping. They make sure that everything stays on the page where it should be. As you create a publication, you enter text or graphics in frames.

The publication in Figure 3-2 is made up of several frames that were stitched together to form a poster. On the left side of the figure, I selected the frames, and you can see the frame boundaries; the right side of the figure shows what the poster looks like after it is printed. Frames make laying out publications easier. When you want to move text, a picture, a table, or an image, you simply drag its frame to a new location. After you select a frame, the commands you give apply to the text or graphic in the frame. Frames do not appear in the finished product — they are meant strictly to help with the laying out of text and graphics.

**Figure 3-2:**  
A poster with frames showing (left); the poster as it looks when printed (right).



## Creating a Publication

### FILE

To create a new publication, go to the File tab and choose New (or press Ctrl+N). You see the New window, where you create a publication with any of these techniques:

- ◆ **Search for a template at Office.com:** In the Search for Online Templates text box, enter the name of a publication type and click the Start Searching button (or press Enter). Select a category and click a template to examine it in a preview screen. Click the Create button to create a publication.
- ◆ **Choose a featured template:** On the Featured tab, select a template. A preview screen opens so that you can examine the template. Click Create to create a publication.
- ◆ **Choose a personal template (a template you created):** On the Personal tab, click a template.



To create a publication with a personal template, you must tell Publisher where your personal templates are located. On the File tab, choose Options. Then, in the Save category of the Options dialog box, enter the path to the folder where you keep personal templates in the Default Personal Templates Location text box. In previous editions of Office, templates are kept in this folder:

C:\Users\Username\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Templates

- ◆ **Choose a built-in template:** On the Built-In tab (see Figure 3-1), select the icon representing a category (Brochures, Business Cards, and so on). You see a dozen or more templates. Scroll through the list, select a template, and click Create.



As you search for a template, you can click the Back or Home button to retrace your search in the New window

## Redesigning a Publication



Make your design choices carefully. In theory, you can change publication designs, color schemes, and design options when you are well along in a project, but in practice, changing these designs can have unforeseen consequences. If you change the color of a headline, for example, and then choose a new color scheme, the headline might be swallowed or rendered invisible by a background color in the new scheme. If you enter a bunch of text, change the size of a few frames, and then choose a new template for your publication, you may turn your publication into corned-beef hash and have to start over.

To redesign a publication, go to the Page Design tab. As shown in Figure 3-3, this tab offers opportunities for changing templates, the orientation and size of pages, color schemes, and font schemes. If your publication has more than one page, click page thumbnails in the Page Navigation pane to visit different pages and see what they look like. (If you don't see the Page Navigation pane, go to the View tab and select the Page Navigation check box.)

**Figure 3-3:**  
Go to  
the Page  
Design tab  
to change  
templates,  
color  
schemes,  
font  
schemes,  
color  
schemes,  
and page  
options.

## Choosing a different template



Not happy with the template you chose when you created your publication? To exchange it for a new one, go to the Page Design tab, click the Change Template button, and choose Change Template. You go to the Change Template window, where you can select a different template (refer to Figure 3-1).

## Choosing a color scheme

To choose a different color scheme for your publication, go to the Page Design tab and select a scheme in the Schemes gallery (refer to Figure 3-3). If you're daring, choose Create New Color Scheme at the bottom of the gallery and fashion your own color scheme in the Create New Color Scheme dialog box.

## Setting up your pages

On the Page Design tab, visit the Page Setup group to determine the margin size, orientation, and page size of your publication:



◆ **Margins:** Click the Margins button and choose an option on the drop-down list or click Custom Margins to enter margin measurements in the Layout Guides dialog box.



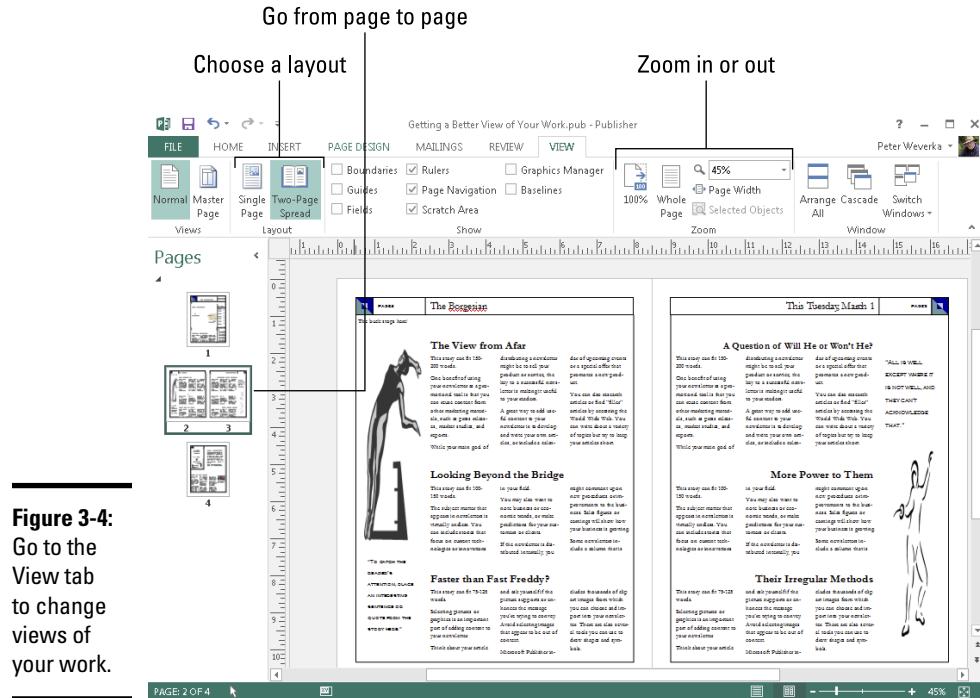
◆ **Orientation:** Click the Orientation button and choose Portrait or Landscape on the drop-down list to stand your publication upright or turn it on its side.



◆ **Size:** Click the Size button and select a page size on the drop-down list. You can choose Create New Page Size on the menu to declare a page size of your own for your publication in the Create New Page Size dialog box. Decide right away which page size to use for your publication. How large or small the page is determines how the headings, graphics, and text fit on the pages.

## Getting a Better View of Your Work

Because seeing the little details as well as the big picture matters so much in a publication, Publisher offers many tools for changing views of your work. Figure 3-4 shows what these tools are. They are described in the following pages.



## Zooming in and out

Apart from the standard Zoom controls found in most Office programs (Book I, Chapter 3 describes the Zoom controls in the lower-right corner of the screen), Publisher offers a handful of other commands for zooming in or out. Go to the View tab and take advantage of these techniques as you refine your publication:

- ◆ **Make the page fit squarely in the window:** Click the Whole Page button (or press Ctrl+Shift+L) to make the entire page fit in the window. The lower-right corner of the window also offers a Whole Page button; you can click it when you're not working in the View tab.
- ◆ **Make the width of the page fit in the window:** Click the Page Width button.
- ◆ **Focus on objects:** Select an object (a text frame or graphic, for example) or a handful of objects and click the Selected Objects button to zoom in on what you selected. Being able to focus this way is very helpful when you're working on a publication that is crowded with words and images.
- ◆ **View your publication at its actual size:** Click the 100% button.



## ***Viewing single pages and two-page spreads***

On the View tab, click the Two-Page Spread button to see facing pages in newsletters, brochures, and other publications with more than one page (refer to Figure 3-4). Choose this command early and often. It permits you to see what readers of your publication will see when they view facing pages. Click the Single Page button to see a single page in the window.

## ***Going from page to page***

Use these techniques to get from page to page in a publication:



- ◆ **Page Navigation pane:** In a publication with more than one page, go from page to page by clicking thumbnail pages in the Page Navigation pane (refer to Figure 3-4). To display this pane, visit the View tab and click the Page Navigation check box.
- ◆ **The Go To Page dialog box:** On the Home tab, open the drop-down list on the Find button and choose Go To Page (or press Ctrl+G) and enter a page number in the Go To Page dialog box.



To help you identify pages, you can name them. When you move the pointer over a page thumbnail in the Page Navigation pane, the name appears in a pop-up box. To name a page, right-click its thumbnail in the Page Navigation pane and choose Rename on the shortcut menu. In the Rename Page dialog box, enter a descriptive name.

## ***Entering Text on the Pages***

The placeholder text that appears in publication designs has to go, of course. One of your first tasks is to replace the placeholder text with your own words. If you're putting together a sign or greeting card, you have only a handful of words to write, and you can write them in Publisher. But if you're working on a story (*story* is Publisher's term for an article that reaches across several text frames), the easiest way to handle the text is to write it in Word and import it.

If you have to replace more than two dozen words, follow these steps to replace the placeholder text in a text frame with text from a Word document:

### **1. In Word, write the text and save the text in a file.**

You can call on all of the Word commands to edit the text. Book II covers Word.



2. In Publisher, click in the placeholder text, go to the Home tab, click the Styles button, and note on the Styles drop-down list which style has been assigned to the placeholder text.

You can tell which style has been assigned to the text because it is selected on the Styles drop-down list. In Step 6, you will assign the style that is currently applied to the text to the replacement text you insert into the text frame.

3. If necessary, press **Ctrl+A** to select the text in the story.
4. On the Insert tab, click the Insert File button.  
A small icon showing a document with a list, representing the Insert tab in Microsoft Publisher.
5. Select the Word file with the replacement text and click the OK button.

Replacement text from the Word file “flows” into the text frame or frames. If the replacement text doesn’t fit in the text frames allotted to the story, you see the Autoflow dialog box. You can click the Yes button to tell Publisher to flow the text into different text frames in the publication, but I recommend clicking No in the Autoflow dialog box. Later in this chapter, “Making text flow from frame to frame” explains how to decide on your own where to put overflow text from a story.

The replacement text maintains the styles assigned to it in the Word document. In the next step, you reassign a style to the text.



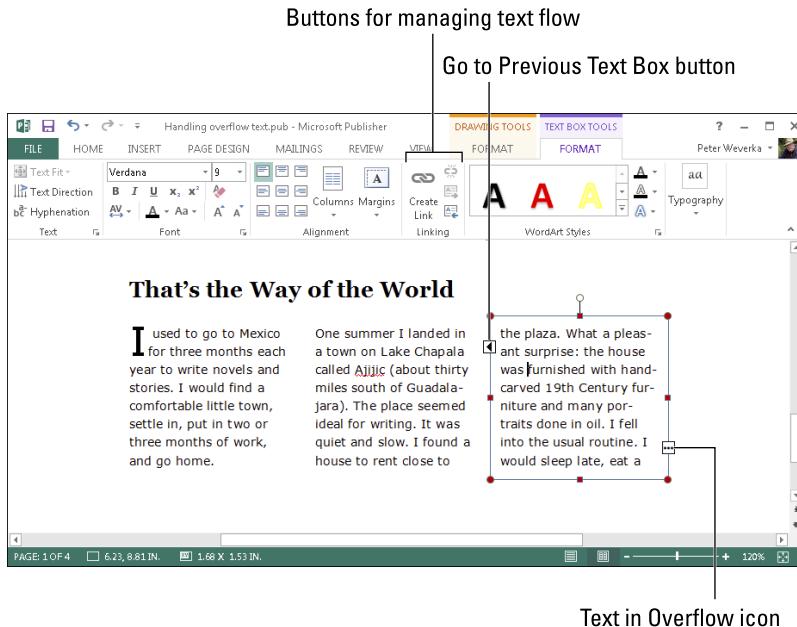
6. Press **Ctrl+A** to select the text in the story, go to the Home tab, click the Styles button, and choose the style that was assigned to the placeholder text.

In Step 2, you noted which style this was.

## Making Text Fit in Text Frames

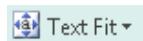
When text doesn’t fit in a text frame, red selection handles appear around the frame, and if the text frame holds a story, the Text In Overflow icon appears in the lower-right corner of the text frame, as shown in Figure 3-5. When you see this icon and the red selection handles, it means that you must make decisions about how to fit stray text into text frames. You can either fit the text into an existing frame, or, if you’re dealing with a story, flow the text to other frames. These pages explain strategies for handling text that doesn’t fit in text frames.

**Figure 3-5:**  
“Flowing”  
text from  
frame to  
frame.



## Fitting overflow text in a single frame

To fit a heading or paragraph into a single text frame, try one of these techniques:



◆ **Shrink the text automatically:** On the (Text Box Tools) Format tab, click the Text Fit button and choose Shrink Text On Overflow on the drop-down list. This command shrinks the point size of text so that all text fits in the frame. Sometimes, however, shrinking the text this way makes the heading or paragraph hard to read.

◆ **Edit the text:** Snip out a word or sentence here and there to make the text fit. Have you ever wondered why magazine articles always fill the page and never end in the middle? That's because skillful editors and typesetters remove and add words here and there to make the story fit the page.

◆ **Make the text frame larger:** Click the frame to display the selection handles; then, drag a handle.



◆ **Make the text frame margins smaller:** Like a page, text frames have internal margins to keep text from getting too close to the frame border. To shrink these margins and make more room for text, go to the (Text Box Tools) Format tab, click the Margins button, and choose Narrow on the drop-down list. You can also choose Custom Margins, and on the Text Box tab of the Format Text Box dialog box, enter smaller measurements for the text box margins.

## ***Making text flow from frame to frame***

As shown in Figure 3-5, the Text In Overflow icon and red selection handles appear when story text overflows a text frame. How do you flow story text from frame to frame and handle a story that is spread across several frames? Better keep reading.

### ***Flowing text to another frame***

If necessary, create a new text box for the overflow text and follow these steps to direct text from one frame to another in your publication:

- 1. Select the text frame with overflowing text.**



You can tell when text is overflowing because the Text in Overflow icon appears in the lower-right corner of the frame (refer to Figure 3-5).

- 2. On the (Text Box) Formatting tab, click the Create Link button.**



The pointer turns into an overflowing pitcher (or is that a beer stein?) after you click the button.

- 3. Move the pointer over the box that you want the text to flow into.**

You may have to click a page navigation button to go to another page.

- 4. Click in the target text box to make the text flow there.**

### ***Handling text frames in a story***

As I mention earlier, text frames that are linked are known as a story in Publisher-speak. Here are techniques for handling text frames that are linked in a story:



- ◆ **Going from text frame to text frame:** On the (Text Box) Formatting tab, click the Next or Previous button to go from frame to frame. You can also select a text frame and click its Go to Next Text Box or Go to Previous Text Box icon (refer to Figure 3-5).
- ◆ **Selecting the text in all the text frames:** Press Ctrl+A; or go to the Home tab, click the Select button, and choose Select All Text in Text Box on the drop-down list.



- ◆ **Breaking the link between frames:** Select the frame that you want to be the last one in the chain, and on the (Text Box Tools) Format tab, click the Break button.



In a crowded publication, it's easy to overlook a text frame with overflowing text. To find these text frames, go to the File tab, and on the Info page, click the Run Design Checker button. Then, in the Design Checker task pane, look for "Story with Text in Overflow Area."

## Making Text Wrap around a Frame or Graphic

Wrap text around a frame, clip-art image, picture, or WordArt image and you get a very elegant layout. Figure 3-6 shows text that has been wrapped around a clip art image. Looks nice, doesn't it? Wrapping text may be the easiest way to impress innocent bystanders with your layout prowess. As Figure 3-6 shows, text wrapped tightly follows the contours of the picture, whereas text wrapped squarely runs flush with the picture's frame.

**Figure 3-6:**  
Text  
wrapped  
tightly  
(left) and  
squarely  
(right).



Here are shorthand instructions for wrapping text:

**1. Select the item that text is to wrap around.**

In Figure 3-6, you would select the clip-art image.

**2. On the Format tab, click the Wrap Text button and choose a wrapping option on the drop-down list.**

For Figure 3-6, I chose Tight for the picture on the left and Square for the picture on the right.

The Wrap Text commands are identical in Word and Publisher. Book II, Chapter 6 (about wrapping objects in Word) explains the wrapping commands in detail.

## Replacing the Placeholder Pictures

As you must have noticed by now, publication designs are littered with generic clip-art images and graphics. Besides writing your own words where the placeholder ones are, replace the generic pictures with pictures of your

own. Well, do it if you please. You are welcome to pass off the generic pictures as your own. I won't tell anybody.

Follow these steps to put a picture of your own where a placeholder picture is now:

**1. Click the placeholder picture to select it.**



You can also select a picture by clicking its name in the Graphics Manager. To use the Graphics Manager, go to the View tab and click the Graphics Manager check box. The Graphics Manager opens on the right side of the screen.



**2. On the (Picture Tools) Format tab, click the Change Picture button and choose Change Picture on the drop-down list.**

The Insert Pictures dialog box appears.

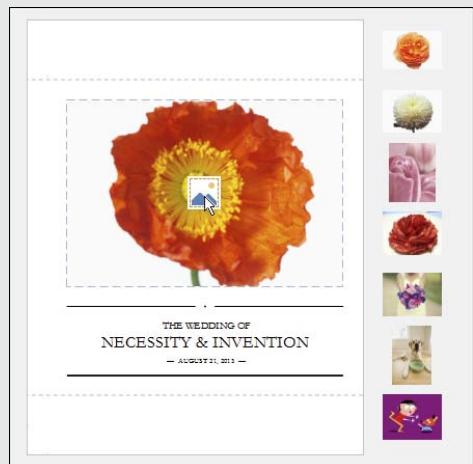
**3. Select a picture and click the Insert button.**

Book VIII, Chapter 3 describes the Insert Pictures dialog box and how to handle graphics in all the Office programs. You'll be delighted to discover that graphics are handled the same way, no matter which program you're toiling in.

### Taking advantage of the scratch area

To make experimenting with pictures a little easier, Publisher offers the *scratch area*. You can keep pictures on hand in the scratch area as you decide which pictures to use in a publication. On the Insert tab, click the Online Pictures button and select pictures from Office.com in the Insert Pictures dialog box. The pictures you select land in the scratch area on the right side of the screen.

You can compare and contrast pictures in the scratch area. To swap a picture in your publication with one in the scratch area, move the pointer over the middle of the picture you want to swap out. When you see the picture icon, drag it into the scratch area over the picture you'd like to see in your publication. In this way, you can quickly swap pictures in and out of publications to find the picture that does the job best.





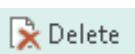
You can postpone choosing a picture to replace a placeholder picture. Right-click the picture in question and choose Change Picture⇒Remove Picture on the drop-down list. Publisher places a picture icon in the frame to remind you to insert a picture later on. You can click this picture icon to open the Insert Pictures dialog box.

## Inserting, Removing, and Moving Pages

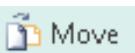
Suppose that you have too many pages or you need to add a page or two. On the Page Navigation pane (select the Page Navigation check box on the View tab), click a thumbnail to select the page where you want to insert, remove, or move pages. Then follow these instructions:



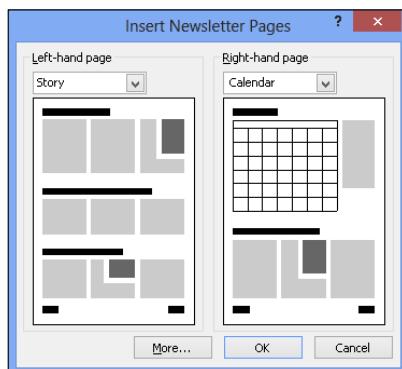
- ◆ **Inserting a new page:** On the Insert tab, click the Page button and choose an option on the drop-down list:
  - *Insert Blank Page:* Inserts an empty page.
  - *Insert Duplicate Page:* Inserts a page identical to the thumbnail page you selected.
  - *Insert Page:* Opens the Insert Page dialog box, shown in Figure 3-7, where you can enter the number of pages you want to insert and click an option button to put the new pages before or after the page you selected. You can also tell Publisher what to put on the new page or pages.



- ◆ **Removing a page:** On the Page Design tab, click the Delete button. You can also right-click a page thumbnail and choose Delete.



- ◆ **Moving a page:** On the Page Design tab, click the Move button. Give instructions for moving the page in the Move Page dialog box and click OK.



**Figure 3-7:**  
Inserting a  
new page.

## Master Pages for Handling Page Backgrounds

In a publication with many pages, the same object sometimes goes on every page. A company logo on the corner of each page looks mighty elegant. Page numbers and copyright information are also found on all the pages of some publications. The good news is that you don't have to place the objects on each page individually. Instead, you can place the objects on the *master page*. Whatever is on the master page appears on all pages in a publication (unless you decide that the master page shouldn't apply to a particular page). Forthwith are instructions for handling master pages.

### Switching to Master Page view

To change the appearance of the master page, place an object on the master page, or see precisely what is on the master page, start by switching to Master Page view:



- ◆ On the View tab, click the Master Page button.
- ◆ On the Page Design tab, click the Master Pages button and choose Edit Master Pages on the drop-down list.



You can tell when you're looking at a master page because you see the Master Page tab on the ribbon and the page thumbnails in the Page Navigation pane show letters instead of numbers.

To leave Master Page view, go to the Master Page tab and click the Close Master Page button.

### Changing the look of a master page

All commands for changing the look of run-of-the-mill pages also apply to master pages. Place objects and frames on the master page as if you were putting them on run-of-the-mill pages. Change the page background as if you were changing the background of a normal page.

To edit a master page, switch to Master Page, select the master page you want to work with in the Page Navigation tab (if you've created more than one master page), and get to work.

### Applying (or unapplying) a master page to publication pages

By default, the master page applies to all pages, but sometimes unapplying a master page is necessary because objects on the master page get in the way.

And if you created more than one master page, you have to tell Publisher which master page to apply to which publication page.

Follow these instructions to unapply or apply master pages to pages in a publication:



- ◆ **Unapplying a master page:** In Normal view, go to the Page Design tab, display the page you want to unattach from the master page, click the Master Pages button, and choose None on the drop-down list.
- ◆ **Applying a different master page:** Use one of these techniques to apply a different master page to pages in your publication:
  - In Normal view, display a page, go to the Page Design tab, click the Master Pages button, and choose a different master page on the drop-down list.
  - In Master Page view, go to the Master Page tab, select a master page in the Navigation pane, and click the Apply To button. On the Apply To drop-down list, choose Apply to All Pages to apply a different master page to all the pages in your publication. Choose Apply Master Page on the drop-down list and enter page-range numbers in the Apply Master Page dialog box to apply the master page to a select group of pages.



## *Running the Design Checker*

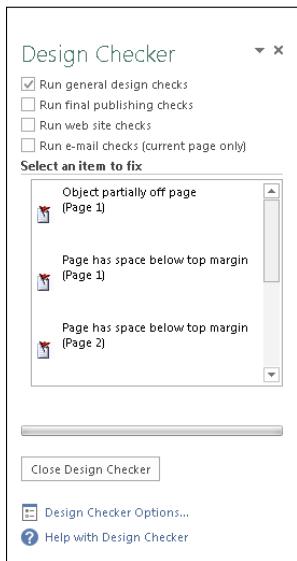
When at last your publication is ready for printing, be sure to run the Design Checker. This helpful tool can alert you to frames that fall on nonprinting parts of the page, stories that “overflow” without finding a text frame to go to, invisible objects, and a host of other problems.

### FILE

On the File tab, choose Info, and click the Run Design Checker button to run the Design Checker. As shown in Figure 3-8, the Design Checker task pane opens and lists items that need your attention. Open an item’s drop-down list and choose Go to This Item to locate it in your publication. Sometimes the drop-down list offers a quick fix as well.



To see which design flaws the Design Checker looks for, click the Design Checker Options hyperlink in the Design Checker task pane. Then, in the Design Checker Options dialog box, select the Checks tab and read the list.



**Figure 3-8:**  
Running  
the Design  
Checker.

## Commercially Printing a Publication

You know the routine for printing a publication on your computer: Go to the File tab, choose Print, negotiate the Print window, and click the Print button. To print a publication with a commercial printer, Publisher offers the Save for a Commercial Printer command. This command creates a PDF file for use by print shops. PDF is now the standard file format for print shops.

Follow these steps to save your publication as a PDF that you can hand off to a printer:

### FILE

- 1. On the File tab, choose Export.**  
The Export window opens.
- 2. Choose Save for a Commercial Printer.**
- 3. On the first drop-down list, choose Commercial Press.**
- 4. On the second drop-down list, choose Both PDF and Publisher .pub Files.**
- 5. Click the Pack and Go Wizard button.**  
The Pack and Go Wizard dialog box opens.
- 6. Choose a location for your publication file or choose to burn it to a CD.**
- 7. Click Next and follow the instructions for creating the PDF and .pub file.**

# Book X

# File Sharing and Collaborating

The screenshot shows a Microsoft Excel Web App window titled "Getting Acquainted.xlsx - Microsoft Excel Web App - Mozilla Firefox". The URL in the address bar is <https://skydrive.live.com/#/edit.aspx?cid=EE40f84D00592FB6&revid=EE40f84D00592FB6268&spp=Excel>. The ribbon tabs are FILE, HOME, INSERT, VIEW, and OPEN IN EXCEL. The HOME tab is selected. The formula bar shows the formula `=B7+C7+D7+E7`. The main content area displays a table titled "Rainfall by County" with a rain gauge icon above it. The table has columns for Winter, Spring, Summer, Fall, and Totals. The data is as follows:

	Winter	Spring	Summer	Fall	Totals
Sonoma	13	8.3	2.3	8.2	31.8
Napa	11.5	7.6	3.1	7.5	29.7
Mendocino	15.8	12.9	2.9	8.3	39.9
San Francisco	10.9	9.7	1.1	3.3	25.0
Contra Costa	10.1	8.4	2.3	4.4	25.2

A note at the bottom of the table says "All data in cubic inches". The status bar at the bottom right indicates "1 PERSON EDITING".



Check out more about file sharing and collaborating online at [www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio](http://www.dummies.com/extras/office2013aio)

# *Contents at a Glance*

<b>Chapter 1: Preparing to Use the Office Web Apps .....</b>	<b>715</b>
Introducing the Office Web Apps .....	715
Storing and Sharing Files on the Internet .....	716
Office Web Apps: The Big Picture .....	717
Creating a Microsoft Account .....	718
Signing In and Out of Your Microsoft Account .....	718
Navigating in a Microsoft Account .....	719
Managing Your Folders .....	719
<b>Chapter 2: Using the Office Web Apps .....</b>	<b>725</b>
Creating an Office File in SkyDrive .....	725
Uploading Office Files to a Folder on SkyDrive.....	726
Saving a File from Office 2013 to SkyDrive .....	727
Opening Office Files Stored on SkyDrive .....	729
Downloading Files from SkyDrive to Your Computer .....	731
Managing Your Files on SkyDrive .....	731
<b>Chapter 3: Sharing and Collaborating .....</b>	<b>733</b>
Sharing Files: The Big Picture .....	733
Sharing Your Files and Folders with Others .....	735
Seeing Files and Folders Others Shared with You.....	737
Investigating and Changing How Files and Folders Are Shared .....	737
Co-editing Shared Files on SkyDrive .....	739
Soliciting Information with a Survey Form.....	739

# ***Chapter 1: Preparing to Use the Office Web Apps***

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ✓ Understanding how the Office Web Apps work
- ✓ Signing up to use the Office Web Apps
- ✓ Using Windows Live SkyDrive to store files online
- ✓ Maintaining folders on SkyDrive

**T**his chapter introduces you to the Office Web Apps, the online versions of Word, Excel, PowerPoint, and OneNote. Respectively, these applications are called Word Web App, Excel Web App, PowerPoint Web App, and OneNote Web App.

Anyone can use these applications. You don't have to pay a fee of any kind or install Office 2013. All you need is an Internet connection and a Microsoft Account. Moreover, users of the Office Web Apps can collaborate online with one another to create Word documents, Excel worksheets, PowerPoint presentations, and OneNote notebooks. As long as both of you are connected to the Internet and have a Microsoft Account, you and your colleague can work together on the same file simultaneously, even if one of you is in Maine and the other is in Montana.

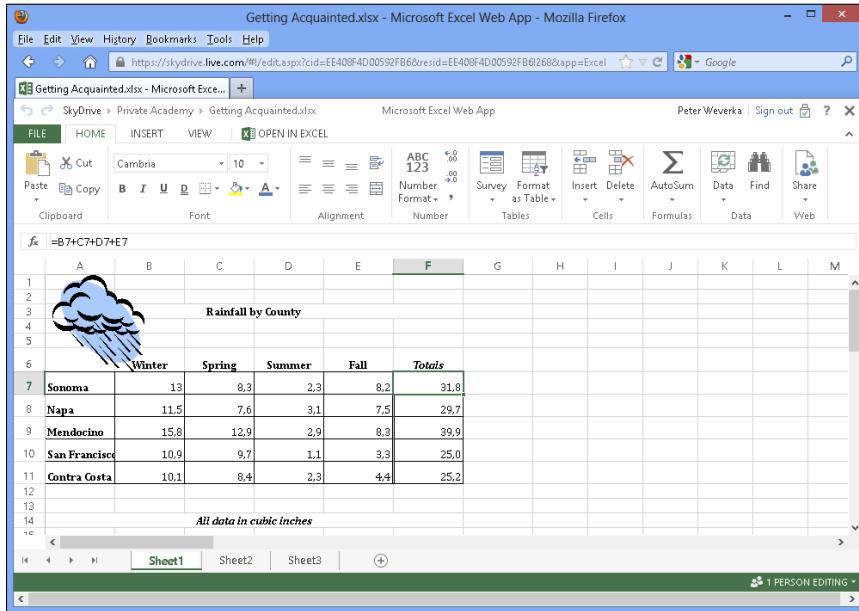
This chapter describes how the Office Web Apps work, how to sign up to use the Office Web Apps, and how to manage folders in SkyDrive, the online service for handling folders and files that you store online.

## ***Introducing the Office Web Apps***

The “Web App” portion of the name “Office Web Apps” stands for *web application*. A web application is a software program that runs from a website on the Internet. Web applications are sometimes called *online applications* because the software to run them isn’t stored on individuals’ computers, but rather on a web server on the Internet.

The Office Web Apps are stripped-down, online versions of Excel, PowerPoint, Word, and OneNote. Figure 1-1 shows the Excel Web App. As a user of Office 2013, you’ll find the Office Web Apps familiar.

## 716 Storing and Sharing Files on the Internet



**Figure 1-1:**  
Web  
applications  
(the Excel  
Web App,  
in this  
case) are  
run inside  
a browser  
window.

Using the Office Web Apps doesn't cost anything; Microsoft provides the Office Web Apps for free. Notice in Figure 1-1 how Excel Web App appears inside a browser window. Wherever you go and whatever you do with an Office Web App, you do it inside a browser window. When you give commands to run an Office Web App, the commands are transmitted by your browser over the Internet to the Office Web App.

To run a web application, you start from your computer and open Internet Explorer, Firefox, or another web browser. Then, using your browser to sign in to your Microsoft Account, you go to a website where you can start the web application. From there, you open a file and get to work. Files you work on are, like the web application itself, stored on the Internet, not on your computer.

## *Storing and Sharing Files on the Internet*

Here's something else that is unique about computing with the Office Web Apps: The files you work on aren't stored on your computer, but rather on web servers on the Internet.

Storing files on the Internet makes sharing files on the Internet possible. The files aren't kept on one person's computer. They're kept on the Internet, on

a web server, where everyone with an Internet connection and permission to edit the files can edit them.

Using an Office Web App, two or more people can work on the same file at the same time. For that matter, a dozen or a hundred people can work on the same file using an Office Web App.

This ability to share files — Microsoft uses the term *coauthor* to describe what happens when two or more people work on the same file — is one of the great advantages of the Office Web Apps. In fact, being able to share files is *the greatest advantage*. By themselves, the Office Web Apps aren't anything to crow about, but being able to share files, and being able to work on a shared file in an Office Web App or an Office 2013 program, is what makes the Office Web Apps special.

Book X  
Chapter 1

Preparing to Use the  
Office Web Apps

## Office Web Apps: The Big Picture

The good news is that you can get up and running with the Office Web Apps in a matter of minutes if you have an Internet connection and a Microsoft Account. Testing the waters doesn't require any special software or high-tech gadgetry on your part.

To use the Office Web Apps, start by setting up a Microsoft Account. Account holders get to use the Office Web Apps, the Hotmail e-mail service, a calendar application, and SkyDrive. Using SkyDrive, you store and share Word, Excel, PowerPoint, and OneNote files.

### SharePoint 2013: The other way to use the Office Web Apps

In this book, I describe how to run the Office Web Apps from a server located on SkyDrive, a Microsoft website, but you can also run Office Web Apps without keeping your files on SkyDrive. Using a software product called SharePoint 2013, you can run the Office Web Apps from a SharePoint website on a local network. For example, you can run the applications from and store your files on a server that is owned and operated by the company you work for.

Keeping files on a network server close to home helps solve the privacy problem. Meddlers and spies who want to steal files have a harder time getting them from a server on a closed network than they do from a SkyDrive folder on the Internet. To maintain a SharePoint 2013 website, however, you need a fair amount of technical expertise. If SharePoint 2013 interests you, see *SharePoint 2013 For Dummies*, by Ken Withee.

Starting in SkyDrive, you can also create Word, Excel, PowerPoint, and OneNote files with Word Web App, Excel Web App, PowerPoint Web App, and OneNote Web App. SkyDrive provides folders for storing and sharing files. You can invite other people to access your SkyDrive folders, open your Office files, and collaborate with you.

## ***Creating a Microsoft Account***

To start using the Office Web Apps, create a Microsoft Account. After you create it, you can begin creating Office files, storing your files in SkyDrive, and sharing your files in SkyDrive (the SkyDrive service is available to everyone who has a Microsoft Account).

To sign up for a Microsoft Account, go to this web page:

<https://signup.live.com>



Especially if you intend to share files, choose a password carefully when you sign up for a Microsoft Account, and change your password from time to time as well. A good password is one that includes numbers and letters; and most important, a good password is one that you *don't* use for other purposes. If you use the same password for your Microsoft Account, your online banking, and your workplace e-mail, for example, anyone who learns your password at one place immediately has access to all three places. What's more, Microsoft Accounts, especially the Hotmail component, are notorious for being cracked by online spammers and con artists.

## ***Signing In and Out of Your Microsoft Account***

Follow these instructions to sign in and out of your Microsoft Account:

- ◆ **Sign in from an Office application:** Click File and choose Account. In the Account window, click the Sign In button. You see the Sign In to Office dialog box. Choose Microsoft Account, enter your user name, enter your password, and click the Sign In button.
- ◆ **Sign in on the Internet:** Go to this web page: <https://login.live.com>. Then enter your user name, enter your password, and click the Sign In button.
- ◆ **Sign out from an Office application:** Click your user name in the upper-right corner of the screen and choose Account Settings on the drop-down list. The Account window opens. Click the Sign Out link.
- ◆ **Sign out on the Internet:** Click your user name in the upper-right corner of the screen. Then choose Sign Out on the drop-down list.

## Navigating in a Microsoft Account

Follow these steps to get place to place in your Microsoft Account:

- 1. Click the Navigation button.**

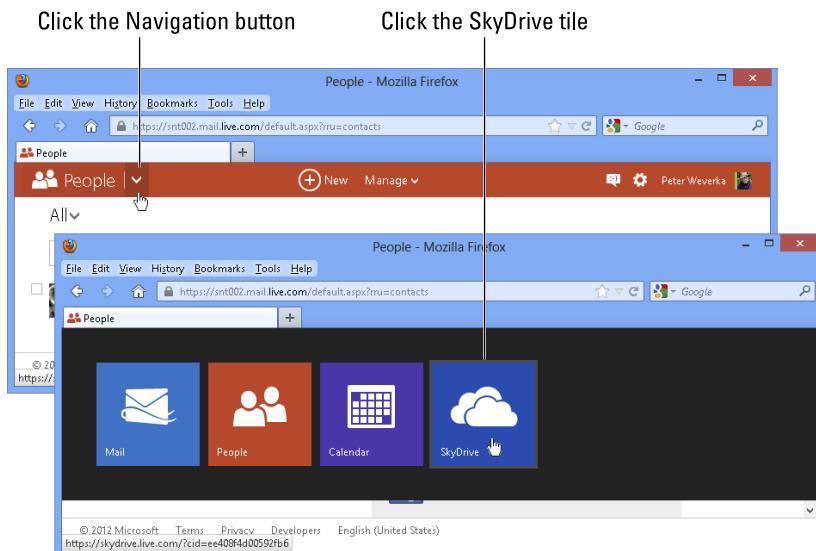
Figure 1-2 shows where this button is located. A drop-down menu appears after you click the button, as shown in Figure 1-2.

If you don't see the Navigation button, click your user name (you'll find it in the upper-right corner of the screen) and click Edit Profile on the drop-down list. You land in the Profile page. This page offers the Navigation button.

- 2. Click SkyDrive or another tile.**

Clicking SkyDrive opens the SkyDrive window.

Depending on how your Microsoft Account is set up, you may see a navigation bar rather than the Navigation button in some windows. Click SkyDrive on the Navigation bar to go to the Sky Drive window.



**Figure 1-2:**  
Going to the  
SkyDrive  
window.

## Managing Your Folders

All folders you create for storing files are kept in SkyDrive. SkyDrive can store up to 7GB of files. The notice in the lower-left of the SkyDrive window tells you how many gigabytes (GB) remain available for storing files.

To begin with, SkyDrive gives you three folders — Documents, Pictures, and Public. Your first task if you want to work with the Office Web Apps or share files with others is to create folders for storing your files. These pages explain how to create folders of your own, get from folder to folder in SkyDrive, and do folder-management tasks such as renaming, deleting, and moving folders.

## ***Creating a folder***

Create folders to store and organize your files on SkyDrive. Follow these steps to create a folder:

1. **If you want to create a subfolder (a folder inside another folder), open the folder that your new folder will go into.**

To open a folder, click its name.

2. **Click the Create button and choose Folder on the drop-down list.**

A new folder appears.

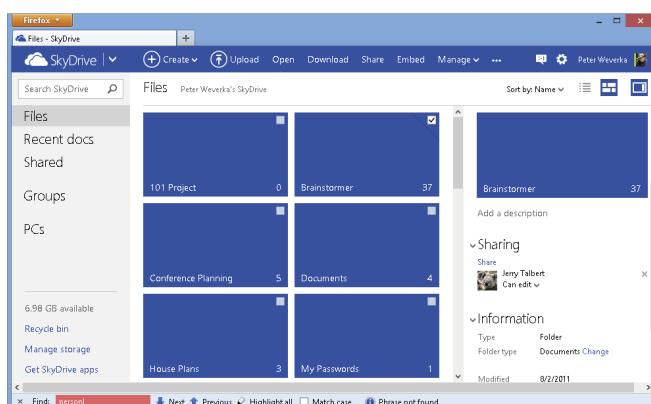
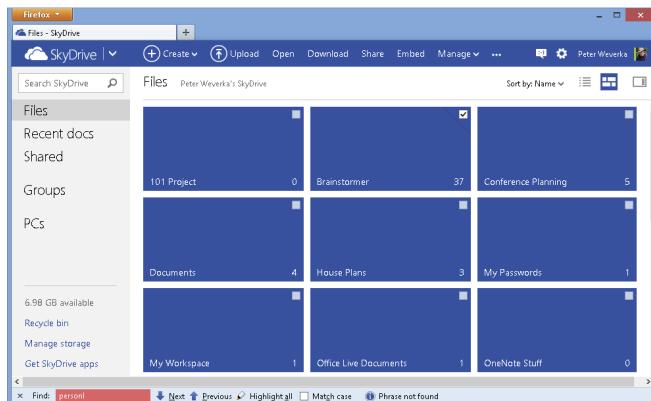
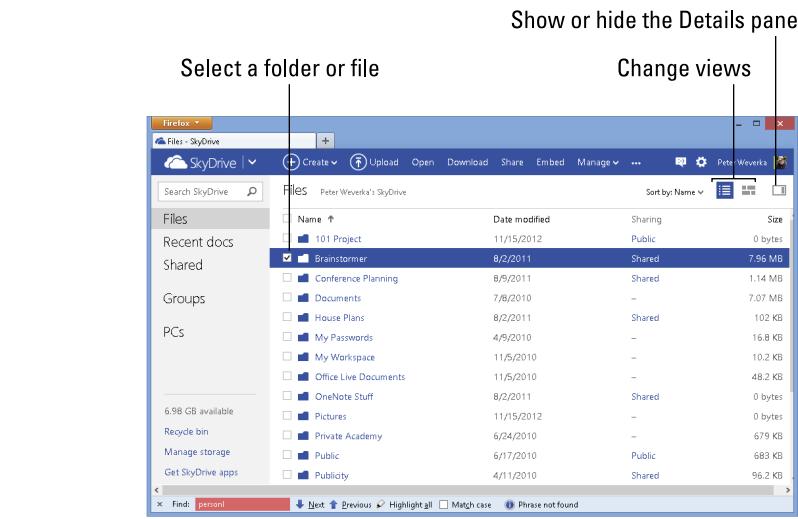
3. **Enter a name for the folder.**

Chapter 2 of this mini-book explains how to upload files from your computer to a folder in SkyDrive.

## ***Viewing and locating folders in the SkyDrive window***

Use the SkyDrive window to store and locate folders, subfolders, and files in your Microsoft Account. The SkyDrive window offers these tools for managing folders:

- ◆ **Searching:** Enter a search term in the Search SkyDrive box to search for a folder or file.
- ◆ **Sorting:** Click the Sort By button and choose an option to rearrange folders and files in the SkyDrive window. Sorting is helpful for finding a folder or file in a long list.
- ◆ **Viewing:** Click the Details View or Thumbnails View button to see your folders and files in Details view or Thumbnails view, as shown in Figure 1-3:
  - Details view presents detailed information about folders and files — when they were last modified, whether they are shared, and file sizes.
  - Thumbnails view presents folders and files in thumbnail form.
- ◆ **Displaying the Details pane:** Select a folder or file and click the Show or Hide Details Pane button to open the Details pane and get detailed information (see Figure 1-3). You can also display the Details pane by right-clicking a folder or file and choosing Properties.



**Figure 1-3:** The SkyDrive window in Details view (top), Thumbnails view (middle), and Thumbnails view with the Details pane showing (bottom).

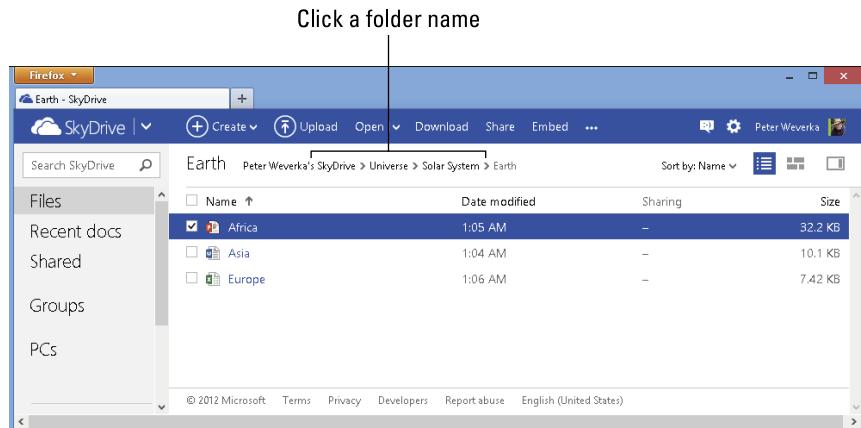
Click the check box on a folder or file to select it (see Figure 1-3). Before you can rename, delete, or move a file, you have to select it.

## Going from folder to folder in SkyDrive

After you accumulate a few folders on SkyDrive, getting to the folder you want to open can be an arduous, interminable journey. To help you on your way, SkyDrive offers different techniques for going to a folder:

- ◆ **The drill-down method:** Starting in the SkyDrive window, click a top-level folder to display its subfolders. If necessary, keep drilling down this way until you reach the folder you want to open.
- ◆ **The SkyDrive Navigation bar method:** The *SkyDrive Navigation bar* — located beside the folder name — lists the path to the folder that is currently open. To backtrack, click the name of a folder on the path, as shown in Figure 1-4.
- ◆ **The browser button method:** Click the Back or Forward button in your browser to open a folder you previously opened.

**Figure 1-4:**  
Click a  
folder name  
on the  
Navigation  
bar to open  
a folder.



To return to the top-level SkyDrive window, either click the SkyDrive button or click Files in the SkyDrive Navigation pane.



By bookmarking a folder in your browser, you can go straight to a folder without having to navigate to it in SkyDrive. After you choose the bookmark (and enter your ID and password if you haven't yet signed in yet), the folder opens.

## ***Deleting, moving, and renaming folders***

To delete, move, or rename a folder, start by selecting it in the SkyDrive window (click its check box). Then use these techniques:

- ◆ **Moving a folder:** Click the Manage button and choose Move To on the drop-down list. A dialog box opens with a list of your folders on SkyDrive. Select a folder in the list and click the Move button. You can also right-click a folder and choose Move To.
- ◆ **Deleting a folder:** Click the Manage button and choose Delete on the drop-down list. You can also right-click and choose Delete.
- ◆ **Renaming a folder:** Click the Manage button and choose Rename on the drop-down list. Then enter a name. You can also right-click and choose Rename.



# *Chapter 2: Using the Office Web Apps*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Creating Office files on SkyDrive
- ✓ Uploading Office files to SkyDrive
- ✓ Opening Office files in Office Web Apps and Office applications
- ✓ Downloading files from SkyDrive
- ✓ Moving, copying, renaming, and deleting files

This brief chapter explains how to use the Office Web Apps to create files, upload files to SkyDrive, and download files from SkyDrive to your computer. You also discover how to open and edit Office files using the Office Web Apps and the Office 2013 applications. Finally, this chapter explains how to manage files on SkyDrive.

## *Creating an Office File in SkyDrive*

I'm happy to report that creating an Office file — a Word, Excel, PowerPoint, or OneNote file — in SkyDrive is quite easy. Follow these steps to create a file with an Office Web App:

**1. Open the folder where you want to store the file.**

Chapter 1 of this mini-book explains how to open folders and subfolders in SkyDrive.



**2. Click the Create button.**

**3. Choose an option on the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 2-1.**

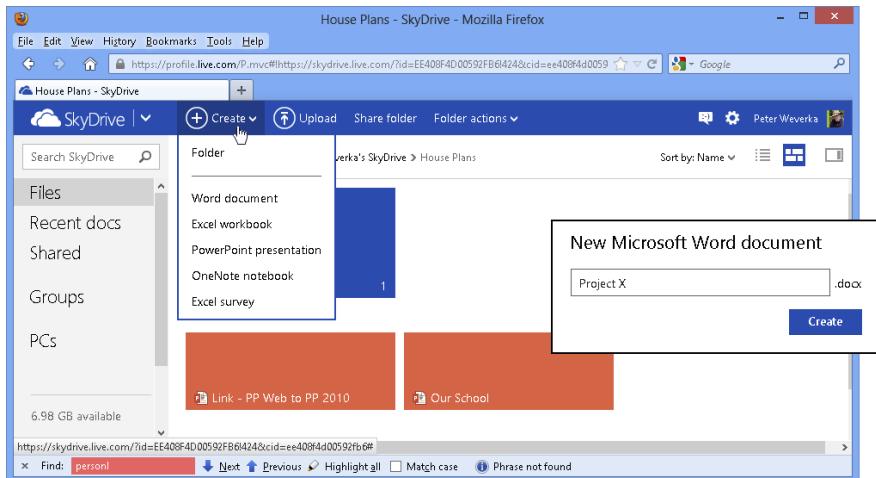
Choose among these options:

- **Word Document:** Create a letter, report, or other word processing document.
- **Excel Workbook:** Create a worksheet for crunching numbers.

- **PowerPoint Presentation:** Create a presentation for showing slides to an audience.
- **OneNote Notebook:** Create a notebook for storing and organizing notes.

The New window opens, as shown in Figure 2-1.

**Figure 2-1:**  
Click Create to create a document, workbook, presentation, or notebook.



4. In the Name text box, enter a name for your document, workbook, presentation, or notebook.
5. Click the Create button.

Your new Office file opens.

## Uploading Office Files to a Folder on SkyDrive

Upload an Office file from your computer to SkyDrive so that you can share the file with others or be able to work on it in an Office Web App. Follow these steps to upload Office files from your computer to a folder you keep on SkyDrive:

1. On SkyDrive, open the folder where you want to store the files.
2. Click the Upload button.  
The File Upload dialog box opens.
3. Select the files.



**4. Click the Open button.**

The file or files are uploaded to the folder you selected in SkyDrive.



Another way to upload files is to drag them from File Explorer (Windows 8) or Windows Explorer (Windows 7 and Vista). Open File Explorer or Windows Explorer, locate the files you want to upload, and select them. Then drag them into the SkyDrive window.

You can also upload an Excel 2013, Word 2013, PowerPoint 2013, or OneNote 2013 file by opening it in an Office 2013 program and saving it to a SkyDrive folder. See “Saving a File from Office 2013 to SkyDrive,” the next topic in this chapter.

Book X  
Chapter 2

Using the Office  
Web Apps

## Saving a File from Office 2013 to SkyDrive

Sharing is caring, and you can save a Word, Excel, PowerPoint, or OneNote 2013 file on your computer to a SkyDrive folder starting in Word, Excel, PowerPoint, or OneNote and thereby share your file with other people. Others who have access to the folder on SkyDrive can open the file in an Office Web App or an Office 2013 program (if Office 2013 is installed on their computers).

Follow these steps to save an Office 2013 file on your computer to a SkyDrive folder:

FILE

**1. In Word, Excel, PowerPoint, or OneNote 2013, open the file on your computer that you want to save to a SkyDrive folder.**

**2. On the File tab, choose Save As.**

The Save As window opens.

**3. Choose SkyDrive.**

As shown in Figure 2-2, the Recent Folders list shows the names of folders on SkyDrive (if you recently opened folders on SkyDrive). What’s more, an unusual icon appears on the Browse button. That icon, a globe, tells you that clicking the Browse button enables you to browse folders on SkyDrive.

**4. Select the SkyDrive folder where you want to save the file.**

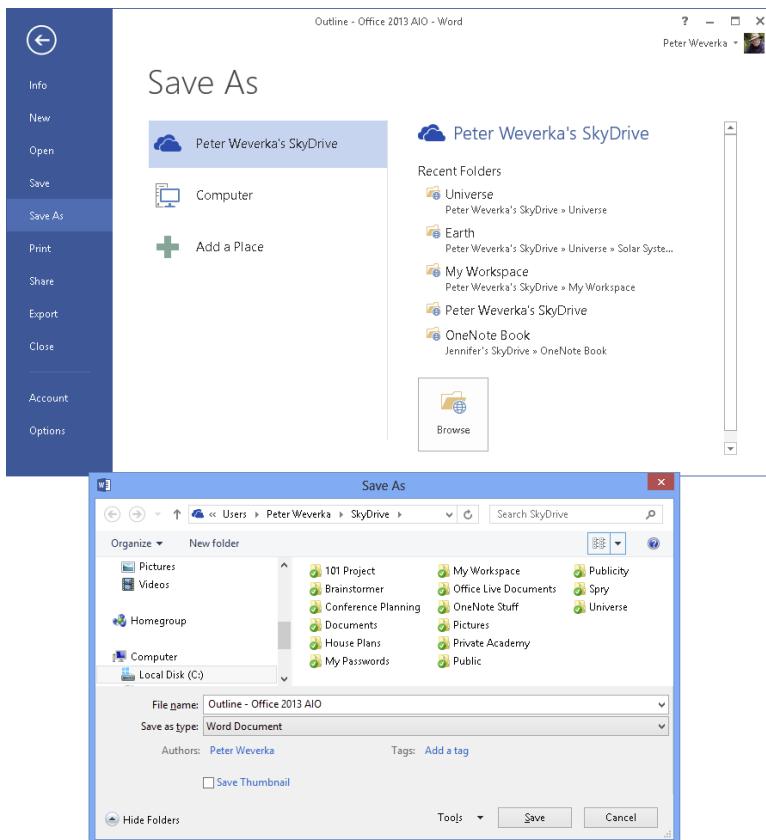
Select the folder from the Recent Folders list or browse for the folder.

- **Recent folder:** Click the name of the folder on the Recent Folders list. The Save As dialog box opens to the folder you selected.
- **Click the Browse button.** The Save As dialog box appears. It lists folders you keep in SkyDrive. Select a folder.

## 728 Saving a File from Office 2013 to SkyDrive

In the Save As dialog box, notice the path to the folder where the file will be saved. The path shows a cloud symbol and the name of the folder you selected in Step 4. You are about to save the file to a SkyDrive folder on the Internet.

### 5. Click the Save button in the Save As dialog box.



**Figure 2-2:**  
Choose  
SkyDrive in  
the Save As  
window to  
save a file  
from your  
computer to  
a SkyDrive  
folder.



Edits you make to the Excel, Word, PowerPoint, or OneNote 2013 file you save to SkyDrive are saved in the file in your SkyDrive folder. The Save button looks a little different than what you're used to in an Office file because clicking the Save button saves your editorial changes to a SkyDrive folder, not to a folder on your computer's hard drive. In fact, when you click the Save button, a message on the status bar says "Uploading to SkyDrive."

When you save an Excel, Word, PowerPoint, or OneNote 2013 file from your computer in a SkyDrive folder, you create a second copy of the file. The

original remains on your computer. Try this experiment: After saving an Office 2013 file to SkyDrive, go to the File tab, click Open, and look at the list of files you recently opened in the Open window. Notice that the name of the file you saved to SkyDrive appears twice: once at a web address on SkyDrive and once at a folder on your computer.

Earlier in this chapter, “Uploading Office Files to a Folder on SkyDrive” explains another way to place an Office 2013 file from your computer on SkyDrive — by uploading it.

## *Opening Office Files Stored on SkyDrive*



Starting in the SkyDrive window, you can open an Office file in a Web App or in an Office application. And if you’re working away in an Office Web App and decide that you prefer to work in an Office 2013 application, you can make the switch. You can open the file in an Office 2013 application. These pages explain how to open the Office files you keep in SkyDrive.

Click Recent Docs in the SkyDrive navigation pane to see a list of files you recently opened. Maybe the file you want to open is located there.

Book X  
Chapter 2

Using the Office  
Web Apps

### *Opening a file in an Office Web App*

To open a file in an Office Web App, select the file in the SkyDrive window and use any of these techniques:

Open | ▾

- ◆ Select the file and click the Open button.
- ◆ Click the name of the file.
- ◆ Right-click the file and choose Open in Web App (Word, Excel, PowerPoint, or OneNote Web App).

When you finish editing a file, click the Close button (the X on the right side of the window) or visit the File tab and choose Exit.



You will not see a Save button in the Excel, PowerPoint, or OneNote Web App because editorial changes you make in those Web Apps are saved automatically the moment you make them. In the Word Web App, however, you have to click the Save button to save your editorial changes.

### *Opening a file in an Office 2013 application*

As anybody who has spent more than five minutes with an Office Web App knows, the Office Web Apps don’t offer nearly as many features and doodads as their Office 2013 counterparts. If you want to create or edit a chart in Word Web App, for example, you’re out of luck because Word Web App

doesn't provide charts. You can, however, open a Word file that you keep on SkyDrive in Word 2013 and edit the file with your Word 2013 software.

These pages explain all the different ways to open a file that you keep on SkyDrive in an Office 2013 application.

## SkyDrive window

To open a file on SkyDrive in an Office 2013 application, start by selecting the file. Then use these techniques to open it:

Open ▾

- ◆ Open the drop-down list on the Open button and choose Open (Open in Word, Open in Excel, Open in PowerPoint, or Open in OneNote).
- ◆ Right-click the file and choose Open (Open in Word, Open in Excel, Open in PowerPoint, or Open in OneNote).

## Office 2013 application

Starting in an Office 2013 application, follow these steps to open an Office 2013 file you keep on SkyDrive:

FILE

### 1. On the File tab, choose Open.

You see the Open window.

### 2. Choose SkyDrive.

### 3. Select the folder where the file you want to open is stored.

Select the folder from the Recent Folders list or browse for the folder.

- **Recent folder:** Click the name of the folder on the Recent Folders list if the folder is listed there. You see the Open dialog with a list of files in the folder you selected.
- **Click the Browse button.** The Open dialog box appears. It lists folders you keep in SkyDrive. Select a folder.

### 4. Select the file you want to open.

### 5. Click the Open button.

The file opens in your Office 2013 application.

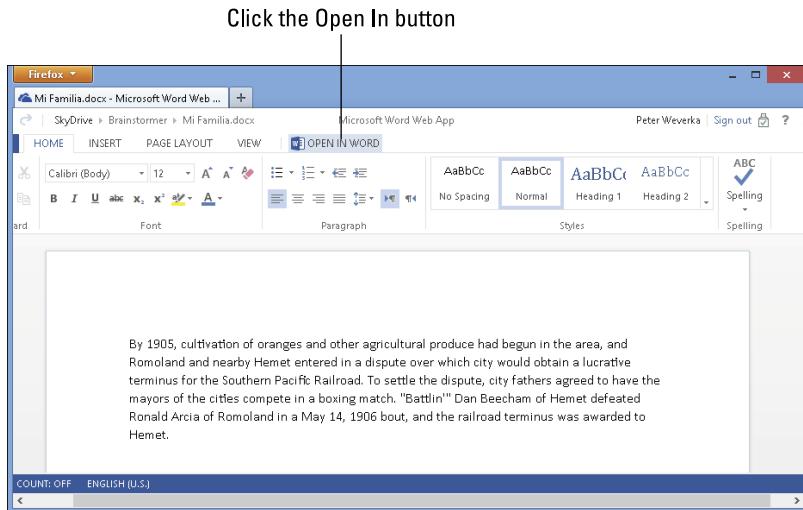
## Office Web App

When you're working in an Office Web App and you want to call upon commands that are found in its Office 2013 counterpart, use one of these techniques to open your file in an Office 2013 application:

- ◆ Click the Open In button (Open in Word, Open in Excel, Open in PowerPoint, or Open in OneNote). This button is located to the right of the Ribbon tabs, as shown in Figure 2-3.

- ♦ On the File tab, choose Info. Then click the Open In button (Open in Word, Open in Excel, Open in PowerPoint, or Open in OneNote) in the Info window.

**Figure 2-3:**  
Starting in an Office Web App, you can open an Office file in an Office 2013 application.



Book X  
Chapter 2

Using the Office  
Web Apps



Editing an Excel worksheet on SkyDrive with an Excel 2013 program has one disadvantage if the worksheet is being shared. Editing the worksheet in Excel 2013 shuts out all others from editing the worksheet at the same time.

## Downloading Files from SkyDrive to Your Computer

Follow these instructions to download files to your computer:

Download

- ♦ **Downloading a file:** Select the file you want to download and click the Download button. You see the standard dialog box for downloading files from the Internet. Choose to open or save the file after you download it and click OK.
- ♦ **Downloading several files or all the files in a folder:** Select several files or, to download all the files in a folder, select the folder. Then click the Download button. The standard dialog box for downloading files appears. Click the Save File option button and click OK to download the files in a zip file.

## Managing Your Files on SkyDrive

SkyDrive is first and foremost a means of organizing and managing files. Select a file on SkyDrive and use these techniques to move, copy, rename, or delete it:

Manage ▾

- ◆ **Moving a file:** Click the Manage button and choose Move To on the drop-down list. You see a window that lists your SkyDrive folders. Select a folder name and click the Move button.
- ◆ **Copying a file:** Click the Manage button and choose Copy To on the drop-down list. Then select a folder name and click the Copy button.
- ◆ **Renaming a file:** Click the Manage button and choose Rename on the drop-down list. Then enter a new name in the text box.
- ◆ **Deleting a file:** Click the Manage button and choose Delete on the drop-down list. (A message window with an Undo button appears for several seconds in case you regret deleting your files. Click the Undo button if you change your mind about deleting.)



To restore a file or folder you deleted accidentally, click Recycle Bin in the SkyDrive Navigation bar. In the Recycle Bin window, select the file or folder you want to resuscitate and click the Restore button.

### Retrieving an earlier version of a file

For your convenience and to rescue you when a co-worker has made hash out of a file, SkyDrive keeps copies of earlier versions of files and gives you the opportunity to revisit an earlier version and restore it as the official version if you so desire. Each time you close a file, a new version is created and kept on hand.

Follow these steps to examine older versions of a file:

#### 1. Go to the File tab and choose Info.

#### 2. Click Previous Versions in the Info window.

A window opens with the latest version of the file and a list older versions.

To examine an older version of a file, click its date and time designation on the left side of the window. The older version appears in the window. To restore an older version and make it once again the official version of the file, click the Restore link.

The screenshot shows a Microsoft Word document titled "How to create a new metadata.docx" in a Firefox browser. The document content is "Elvis sightings in North America - 2009". Below the content, there is a table showing the number of sightings per month for three locations: St. Louis, Memphis, and Nashville. The table is as follows:

	Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	April	May	June	July	Aug.	Sept.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
St. Louis	0	4	2	3	3	3	1	3	0	4	2	4
Memphis	1	0	4	5	4	0	0	4	5	5	0	0
Nashville	2	3	1	5	1	0	2	1	0	2	3	0

# *Chapter 3: Sharing and Collaborating*

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ✓ Understanding how file sharing works
- ✓ Sharing files and folders with your collaborators
- ✓ Changing how you share folders and files
- ✓ Working on files with others
- ✓ Soliciting information with a survey form

**U**sers of the Office Web Apps can collaborate online by sharing Word documents, Excel worksheets, PowerPoint presentations, and OneNote notebooks. This chapter explains how file sharing works. It shows you how to share your folders and files with others, and what happens when others share their folders and files with you. This chapter also demonstrates how to create a survey form to gather information and enter it automatically in an Excel worksheet.

## *Sharing Files: The Big Picture*

On the idea that you should look before you leap, these pages explain the ins and out of sharing files. They explain file access privileges and how SkyDrive generates links for file sharing.

### *File access privileges*

The person who creates a folder or file is the *owner*. The owner decides whether to share a folder or file and what others can do with it:

- ◆ **Can View privileges:** Others can view the file (or all files in the folder if a folder is being shared), but not edit the file(s).
- ◆ **Can View and Edit privileges:** Others can view *and* edit the file (or all files in the folder if a folder is being shared). To edit the file (or files), however, you must have a Microsoft Account.
- ◆ **Public:** Anyone can view the file (or files in the folder if a folder is being shared). The file is searchable by Google and other search engines. Anyone with an Internet connection can find the file and view it.



Only people who have a Microsoft Account can edit Office files with an Office Web App. People without a Microsoft Account can view the files but not edit them.

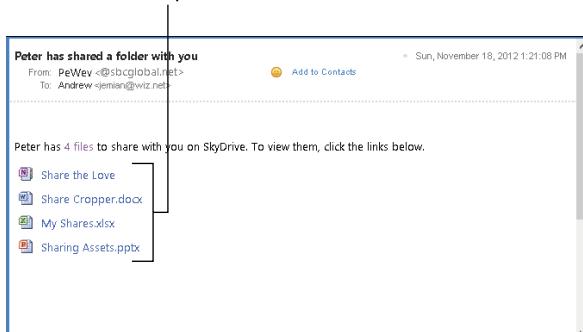
## **Links for sharing files**

SkyDrive generates a link for each file that is shared. This link is the means by which the people who share the file open it. Someone who has the link can click it and, in their web browser, open the file for viewing or editing in an Office Web App.

The owner of a folder or file can share it using these methods:

- ◆ **Send by e-mail:** Send the link by e-mail on a person-by-person basis to each person with whom you will share the file. Figure 3-1 shows an example of sending links by e-mail to share files. The recipient of this e-mail message can click a link to open an Office file in an Office Web App. In this case, the sender shared a folder with four files in it.
- ◆ **Post to a social-networking site:** Post the link on a social-networking site (such as Facebook or LinkedIn) where others can click it.
- ◆ **Get a link:** Generate a link and distribute it on your own or post it on a web page.
- ◆ **Share with embedded HTML code:** Generate HTML code that you can embed in a blog or web page. The code creates a link that others can click to open a shared file. (On the SkyDrive toolbar, click the Embed button. Then click the Generate button in the Embed dialog box, copy the HTML code that SkyDrive generates, and paste it in to your blog or web page.)

Click a link to open a file



**Figure 3-1:**  
Sharing files  
by e-mail.

## Sharing Your Files and Folders with Others

Share files with others so that they can view or edit your work. Sharing is a way to collaborate with others on Office files. Starting in the SkyDrive window, you can share a folder (that is, all the files in the folder) or an individual file.

Follow these steps to share a file or all the files in a folder:

- 1. In SkyDrive, select the file or folder you want to share.**

You can also start by opening the Office file you want to share.

- 2. Click the Share (or Share Folder) button or link.**

Share

You can find the Share button or link here, there, and everywhere:

- On the SkyDrive toolbar
- In the Details pane
- In an open Office file, by clicking the Share tab
- In an open Office file by clicking the File tab, choosing Share, and choosing Share with People in the Share window

As shown in Figure 3-2, you see the dialog box for generating a link to your file or folder. (If you're already sharing the file or folder, you see a list of people who share it with you. Click the Share With More People button.)

- 3. Choose Send Email, Post To, or Get a Link to generate the link to your file or folder.**

Earlier in this chapter, “Links for sharing files” compares the different types of links.

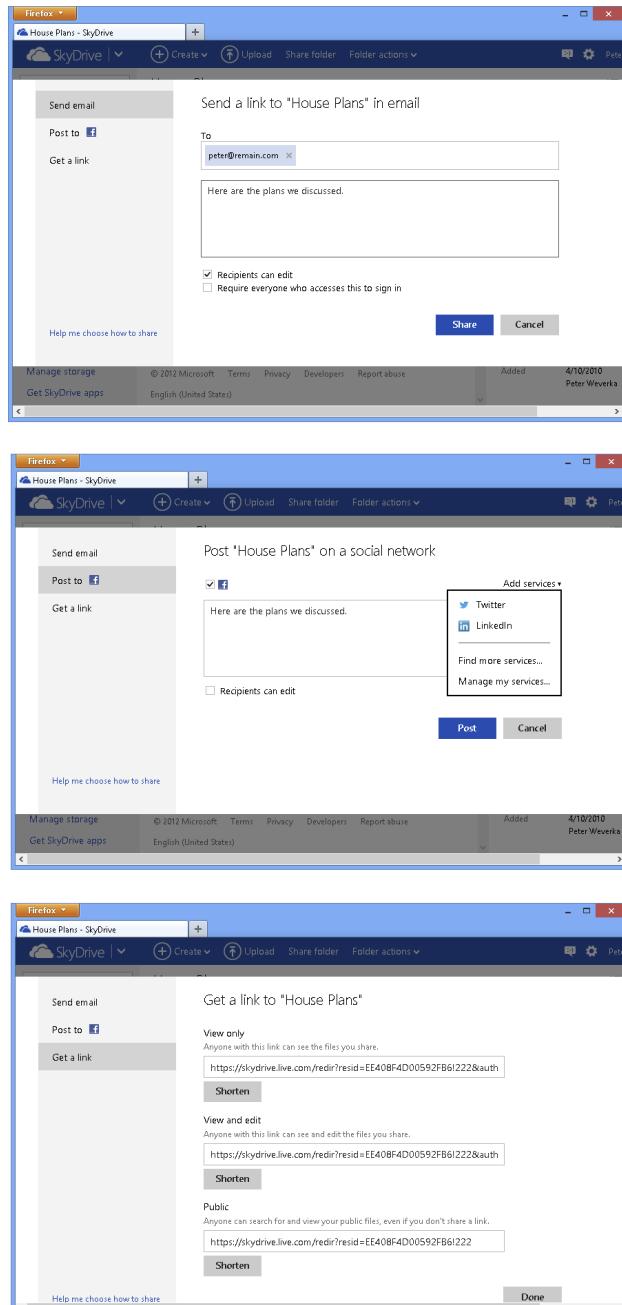
- **Send by e-mail:** Enter the e-mail addresses of the people with whom you will share the file or folder. Enter a message as well if you want (see Figure 3-2).
- **Post to a social-networking site:** Click the logo of the site. If the logo doesn't appear, click the Add Services link to add a site to the list of social-networking sites you can post to (see Figure 3-2).
- **Get a link:** Click one of the three Create buttons (earlier in this chapter, “File access privileges” explains what these choices mean). After you click Create, SkyDrive generates a link (see Figure 3-2). Right-click to copy it.

Be careful about handing out links you make by clicking a Create button. These links can be forwarded hither and yon. Whoever gets hold of them can view and, if they have a Microsoft Account, edit your files.

Book X  
Chapter 3

Sharing and  
Collaborating





**Figure 3-2:**  
File sharing  
by e-mail  
(top), on  
Facebook  
(middle),  
and by  
distributing  
links  
(bottom).

**4. Choose the degree to which you will share the file.**

Earlier in this chapter, “File access privileges” explains the different ways to share a file or folder.

- **Send by e-mail:** Clear all check boxes if you want people who receive the e-mail to view the file only; select Recipient Can Edit if you want recipients to be able to edit the file (to edit, they have to sign in to a Microsoft Account); select Require Everyone Who Accesses This to Sign In if you want only people with Microsoft Accounts to view the file.
- **Post to a social-networking site:** Select Recipients Can Edit to allow people who click the link on the social-networking site to edit as well as view your file (to edit, they have to sign in to a Microsoft Account).
- **Get a link:** See “File access privileges,” earlier in this chapter, to decide which Create button to click.

**5. Click the Share button (Send by Email), the Post button (Post To), or the Done button (Get a Link).**

That task is done — and not a moment too soon. Nothing says you can’t share a file or folder in more than one way. For example, share it by e-mail and post it on a social-networking site.

## *Seeing Files and Folders Others Shared with You*

Go to the Shared window to see the names of folders and files that others shared with you by way of e-mail messages. To go to the Shared window, click Shared in the SkyDrive Navigation pane.

In Details view, the Shared window tells you who owns each file and folder (look in the Location column).

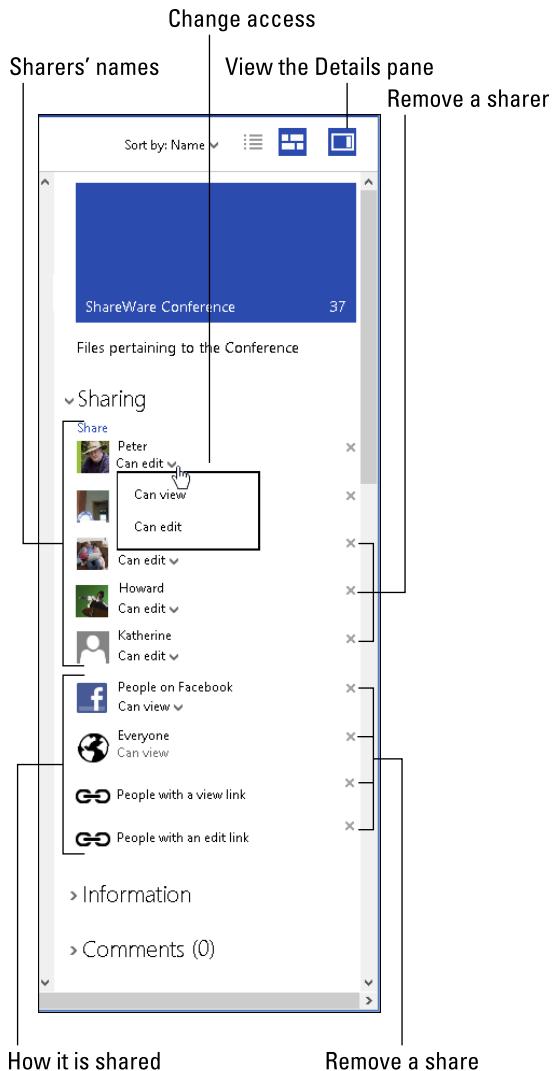
Open files and folders in the Shared Window the same way you open them in the Files or Recent Docs window — by clicking the Open button or right-clicking and choosing Open.

## *Investigating and Changing How Files and Folders Are Shared*

The Details pane tells you everything you need to know about who shares a file or folder. To open the Details pane, select a file or folder and click the Show/Hide the Details Pane button.



The Details pane tells you who owns the file or folder (if no owner is listed, you're the owner), the sharers' names, whether a sharer can view or edit, and how the folder or file is shared, as shown in Figure 3-3.



**Figure 3-3:**  
Go to the  
Details pane  
to see and  
change  
how a file  
or folder is  
shared.

Owners of folders and files can use these techniques in the Details pane to change how folders and files are shared:

- ◆ **Change Access:** Open the drop-down list on a sharer's name and choose Can View or Can Edit.
- ◆ **Remove a sharer:** Click the Remove Permissions button next to a sharer's name.
- ◆ **Remove a share:** Click the Remove Permission button next to a share name.

## *Co-editing Shared Files on SkyDrive*

Here are a few tricks to find out who besides yourself is working on a shared file:

- ◆ **Word Web App and Excel Web App:** In the lower-right corner of the Word and Excel Web App, the status bar tells you how many people are editing a file. You can click this notice to see a pop-up window that lists the names of the other editors.
- ◆ **PowerPoint Web App:** On the status bar, the number next to the Authors icon tells you the number of coauthors. Click the Authors icon to see a pop-up list with coauthors' names.
- ◆ **OneNote Web App:** Go to the View tab and choose Show Authors to see who authored notes. The name of its author appears beside each note. (Click the Show Authors button a second time to make the initial disappear.)



Book X  
Chapter 3

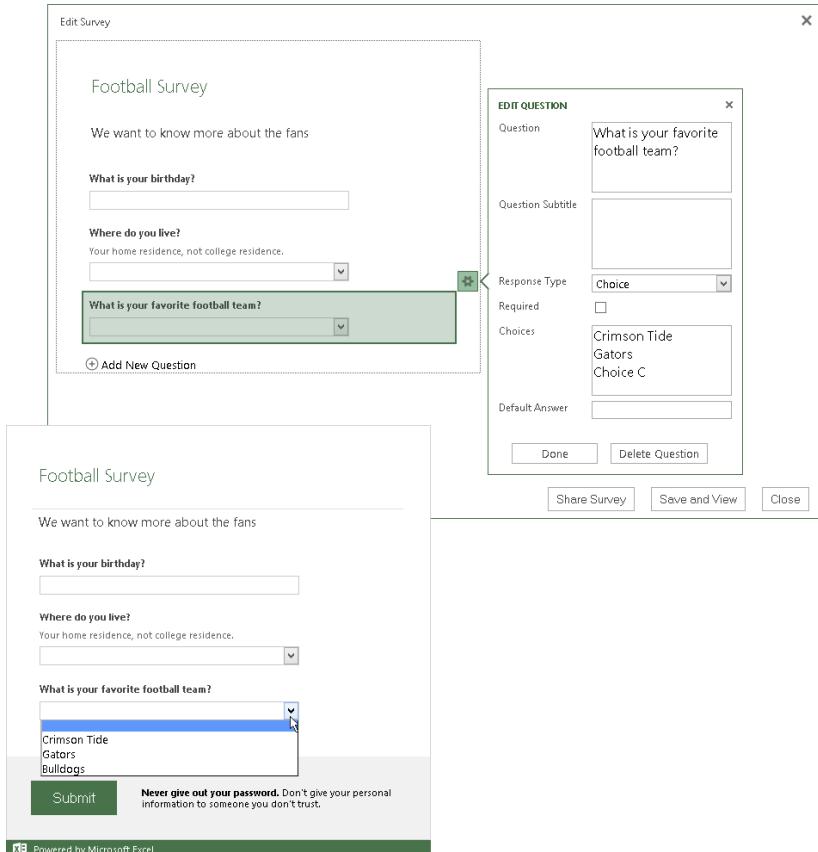
Sharing and  
Collaborating

## *Soliciting Information with a Survey Form*

Use survey forms to collect information. Figure 3-4 shows a survey form and the dialog box that was used to create it. After you create a survey form, you generate a link to the form and send the link to the people you want to solicit for your survey. When they click the link, they see a form similar to the one in Figure 3-4. Responses to the questions on the form are entered automatically in a worksheet that the Excel Web App creates.

Forms spare you the trouble of collecting data and entering it yourself. People who respond to your survey can do so without signing in to a Microsoft Account.

## 740 Soliciting Information with a Survey Form



**Figure 3-4:**  
Creating a  
survey form  
(top) and the  
form itself  
(bottom).

Follow these steps to create a survey form:



1. In SkyDrive, click the Create button and choose Excel Survey on the drop-down list.

The New Microsoft Excel Survey dialog box opens.

2. Enter a name for the workbook where you will collect information from the survey and click the Create button.

The Excel Web App and Edit Survey dialog box open (see Figure 3-4).

3. Use the Edit Survey dialog box to construct your survey.

Enter the following:

- **Title and description:** Enter the title and description on the left side of the dialog box.

- **Add questions:** Click Add New Question. Then, in the Edit Question part of the dialog box, enter the question. Use the Response Type menu to describe the kind of data you want to solicit.
- **Edit questions:** Click a question to edit it in the Edit Question part of the dialog box.

**4. Click the Save and View button.**

You see what the survey form you created will look like to the people who fill it out. If necessary, click the Edit Survey button to return to the Edit Survey dialog box and fine-tune your survey form.

**5. Click the Share Survey button.**

**6. Click the Create button to generate a link to your survey.**

**7. Right-click the link and choose Copy to copy the link to the Windows Clipboard.**

If you want, click the Shorten button to generate a shorter version of the URL to send to others.

**8. Click the Done button.**

You see a new worksheet in the Excel Web App — a worksheet with the questions you entered. As people respond to your survey, the information they enter appears in this spreadsheet.

Before you forget, send the link you copied in Step 7 to the people you want to survey. In your e-mail message, explain that clicking the link opens a survey form for gathering essential and all-important information. Be sure to paste the link into your e-mail message.



# Index

---

## Special Characters and Numerics

---

# (pounds sign),  
Excel, 227  
% (percent) operator, 257  
& (concatenation)  
operator, 257  
\* (multiplication)  
operator, 257  
/ (division) operator, 257  
^ (exponentiation)  
operator, 257  
+ (addition) operator, 257  
< (less than) operator, 257  
<= (less than or equal to)  
operator, 257  
<> (not equal to) operator,  
257  
= (equal to) operator, 257  
> (greater than) operator,  
257  
>= (greater than or equal  
to) operator, 257  
- (subtraction) operator,  
257  
3-D diagrams, 618  
3-D references, formula,  
264

## A

---

Access  
changing screen  
background, 682–683  
database  
creating file, 513–514  
deciding on information  
for, 516–517  
overview, 516

database tables  
choosing fields for, 519  
creating, 521–523  
creating fields, 526–528  
data types for fields,  
528–529  
data-entry list, 537–539  
deleting fields, 531  
designating primary  
key field, 530–531  
establishing  
relationships between,  
542–547  
Field Properties  
settings, 532–537  
filtering, 560–566  
importing table from  
another database,  
523–524  
indexing, 540–541  
mapping relationships  
between, 520  
moving fields, 531  
opening, 525–526  
overview, 508–509  
primary key field for,  
519–520  
renaming fields, 531  
separating information  
into, 517–518  
sorting records,  
559–560  
as source file for mail  
merge, 190–191  
viewing, 525–526  
defined, 10  
dynaset, 508  
entering data  
customizing datasheet,  
553–554  
Datasheet View,  
550–551  
finding and replacing  
data, 557–558  
finding missing records,  
556–557  
in forms, 554–555  
freezing and unfreezing  
fields, 552–553  
overview, 549–550  
fields, 508–509  
filtering, 508  
flat-file database, 508  
foreign fields, 508  
forms, 508–510  
macros, 513  
modules, 508, 513  
Navigation pane, 514–516  
objects, 508–509  
overview, 507–508  
primary key field, 508  
queries  
calculation, 575–577  
choosing which fields  
appear in results,  
570–571  
database, 511–512  
database tables, 568  
defined, 508  
delete, 577  
entering criteria for,  
571–573  
fields, 569–570  
overview, 566–567  
saving and running, 573  
select, 574  
sorting results, 570  
as source file for mail  
merge, 190–191  
summary, 574–575  
top-value, 574  
update, 577  
viewing in Datasheet  
and Design view,  
567–568

- Access** (*continued*)
- Query Design window, 568
  - records, 508–509
  - relational database, 508
  - reports
    - customizing, 581–582
    - defined, 508
    - opening and viewing, 581
    - overview, 512, 579–580
    - sorting, 508
  - Zoom box, 551
- Account Settings dialog box**, Outlook, 449–450, 466
- Accounting Number Format**, Excel, 234
- action button**, PowerPoint, 391–392
- Action Settings dialog box**, PowerPoint, 392
- active cells**, Excel worksheet, 225
- activities**, Outlook
- Calendar
  - altering, 495
  - canceling, 495
  - rescheduling, 495
  - scheduling, 492–494
- Add New Category dialog box**, Outlook, 444
- Add option**, Word spell check, 142
- Add to Styles Gallery option**, Create New Style from Formatting dialog box, 107
- addition (+) operator**, 257
- addressing**, Outlook e-mail messages, 468–469
- Advanced Find button**, Word Navigation pane, 147
- Advanced Find dialog box**, Outlook, 448
- Advanced Properties command**, Info window, 27
- advanced search**, Outlook, 448
- aligning objects**, 662–664
- Aligning page numbers options**, Table of Contents dialog box, 202
- All Caps text effect**, 37
- All Fields window**, Outlook, 458
- All Markup view**, Word, 179–180
- All Slides dialog box**, PowerPoint, 385
- alphabetizing lists**, 197
- animations**, PowerPoint
- customizing, 369
  - overview, 365–366
  - ready-made animation schemes, 368–369
- Animations tab**, PowerPoint, 368–370
- annotating charts**, 599–600
- Any Value data-validation rule**, Excel, 237
- Apply Styles task pane**, 101–102, 104–105
- Appointment Recurrence dialog box**, Outlook, 494
- appointments**, Outlook Calendar, 490–491
- Archive Items in This Folder Using the Default Settings option**, Outlook Properties dialog box, 452
- Archive or Delete Old Items option**, AutoArchive dialog box, 452
- Archive This Folder Using These Settings option**, Outlook Properties dialog box, 452
- archiving items**, Outlook
- archiving rules for folders, 452–453
  - default archiving rules, 452
  - overview, 450–451
- area charts**, 587
- arguments**, function, 271
- arithmetic operators**, in formulas, 257–258
- Arrange All button**, View tab, 50
- Arrange tool**, OneNote, 421–422
- arrows**
- attaching and handling arrowheads on, 645–646
  - changing appearance of, 644–645
  - changing length and position of, 644
  - overview, 642–643
- art**, manipulating, 652–656
- Art drop-down list**, Borders and Shading dialog box, 162
- artistic effects**, pictures, 634–635
- ascending sorting order**, Access database tables, 559
- At Least spacing option**, Paragraph dialog box, 90

attaching files, Outlook, 471–473  
 Attachment data type, Access, 529  
 audio, PowerPoint presentation  
     controlling when and how to play, 372–373  
 inserting audio file on slide, 371–372  
 overview, 370–371  
 playing, 373  
 sound file formats, 371  
 audio notes, OneNote  
     overview, 425–426  
     playing, 426–427  
     recording, 426  
 AutoArchive dialog box, Outlook, 451–452  
 AutoCorrect dialog box, 50–54  
 AutoCorrect feature  
     correcting typos, 50–52  
     using to enter text quickly, 52–54  
 AutoFill feature, Excel  
     creating list, 233  
     entering lists and serial data, 231–232  
 AutoFit Contents command, Word, 121  
 AutoFit feature, PowerPoint, 352–355  
 AutoFit Window, Word, 118, 121  
 automatic hyphenating text, 97  
 automatic lists, Word, 92  
 Automatically Update option, Create New Style from Formatting dialog box, 107

AutoNumber data type, Access, 529–531  
 AutoPlay window, PowerPoint, 396–397  
 AutoRecovery, 22–23  
 auto-replies, Outlook e-mail, 472–473  
 AutoSum button, Excel, 272  
 AVERAGE function, 270

## B

---

background  
     adding color to Word document, 162  
     changing, 682–683  
     PowerPoint slides, 331–341  
     Word tables, 135–136  
 backing up files, Outlook, 449–450  
 Backstage, Office 2013, 15  
 banded columns and rows, 129  
 bar charts, 587  
 Bcc (blind carbon copy), Outlook e-mail messages, 470  
 Before or After text box, Paragraph dialog box, 91  
 bibliography, Word citations  
     changing appearance in text, 217  
     editing, 217  
     inserting, 215–216  
     generating, 217–218  
     overview, 214–215  
 bitmap graphics  
     compression, 626, 639  
     overview, 623–624  
     resolution, 625–626  
 Blank Presentation template, PowerPoint, 313  
 blanking screen, PowerPoint, 387  
 blind carbon copy (Bcc), Outlook e-mail messages, 470  
 Blocked Senders list, Outlook, 486  
 Blog Post tab, Word, 695–696  
 blogging, 693–696  
 boilerplate text, PowerPoint templates, 315  
 Bold font style, 35  
 Bookmark dialog box, Word, 69  
 bookmarks  
     fine-tuning video in PowerPoint presentation, 375  
 Word, 68–69  
 Border style drop-down list, Word tables, 131  
 borders  
     Excel worksheets, 280–285  
     Word document, 161–162  
     Word tables, 116, 129–132  
 Borders and Shading dialog box, Word, 131, 161–162  
 breaking text lines, 78  
 brightness, pictures, 632–633

Browse the Web button, Insert Hyperlink dialog box, 42  
 Browsed Pages button, Insert Hyperlink dialog box, 43  
 Building Blocks Organizer dialog box, Word, 88  
 built-in templates, PowerPoint, 313  
 bulleted lists. *See also* numbered and bulleted lists  
 converting numbered list to, 357  
 simple, 92  
 turning into diagrams, 614  
 Bullets and Numbering dialog box, PowerPoint, 359  
 Byte numeric field size, Access, 533

## C

---

Calculated data type, Access, 529  
 calculation query, Access, 575–577  
 Calendar, Outlook  
 altering activities, 495  
 appointments, 490–491  
 canceling activities, 495  
 Date Navigator, 491–492  
 events, 491  
 meetings, 491  
 overview, 489–490  
 rearranging Calendar window, 492  
 rescheduling activities, 495  
 scheduling activities, 492–494

scheduling events, 494  
 scheduling recurring appointments, 494  
 Can View and Edit privileges, file sharing, 733  
 Can View privileges, file sharing, 733  
 cap, lines, 644–645  
 capitalization. *See* case  
 carbon copy (Cc), Outlook e-mail messages, 470  
 Cascade Delete Related Records option, Edit Relationships dialog box, 546  
 Cascade Update Related Fields option, Edit Relationships dialog box, 546  
 case (capitalization)  
 Excel functions, 272  
 overview, 38–40  
 passwords, 28  
 Cc (carbon copy), Outlook e-mail messages, 470  
 cell addresses, Excel worksheets, 225  
 cell ranges, formula entering, 260–261  
 naming, 261–263  
 cell tracer, 268–269  
 cells  
 Access database, 508  
 Excel formulas, 253–256, 259–260  
 Excel worksheets, 225, 246  
 Word tables  
 defined, 116  
 merging and splitting, 125–126  
 selecting, 119  
 Change All option, Word spell check, 142  
 Change Chart Type dialog box, 591  
 Change/Delete option, Word spell check, 142  
 Character style, Word, 100 charts  
 annotating, 598–599  
 area, 587  
 bar, 587  
 choosing, 587–588  
 column, 588  
 combo, 588  
 creating, 585–587  
 creating from template, 598  
 customizing  
 adjusting size and shape, 593  
 changing chart type, 591–592  
 formatting, 596–597  
 gridlines, 595  
 layout, 593–595  
 style and color scheme, 593  
 decorating with pictures, 598–599  
 generating from tables, 590  
 including in Word document, 163–164  
 line, 588  
 pie, 588  
 placing trendline on, 600–601  
 positioning in workbook, page, or slide, 590–591  
 radar, 588

- raw data  
 displaying, 600  
 providing, 588–590  
 saving as template, 597–598  
 stock, 588  
 surface, 588  
 troubleshooting, 601–602  
 XY (scatter), 588
- Check Address dialog box, Outlook, 456
- citations, bibliography (Word)  
 changing appearance in text, 217  
 editing, 217  
 inserting, 215–216
- Clean Out Items Older Than option
- AutoArchive dialog box, 452
- Outlook Properties dialog box, 452
- clip-art  
 background, PowerPoint slides, 334  
 including in Word document, 163–164  
 overview, 625
- Clipboard task pane  
 moving and copying text, 31  
 overview, 31
- collapsing parts of Word document, 200
- Ribbon, 16
- color  
 adding to background, 162  
 adding to Excel worksheets, 285
- numbered and bulleted lists, PowerPoint, 358–359
- objects, 657–658, 660–661
- SmartArt diagrams, 616–617
- text, changing, 38
- Word tables, 129–132
- Color & Thickness dialog box, OneNote, 419
- Color Categories dialog box, Outlook, 444
- color depth, graphics, 626–627
- Color drop-down list, Borders and Shading dialog box, 162
- color saturation, pictures, 633
- color tone, pictures, 633
- column charts, 588
- columns  
 adding newspaper-style columns to Word document, 173–174
- Excel worksheets  
 adjusting size of, 279–280  
 aligning numbers and text in, 276–278  
 freezing and splitting, 241–243  
 hiding, 243  
 inserting and deleting, 278  
 labeling, 225
- Word tables  
 adjusting size, 120–121  
 aligning text in, 124–125  
 deleting, 123  
 formatting, 129
- inserting, 121–122  
 moving, 123  
 selecting, 120
- Columns dialog box, Word, 173–174
- Columns option, Index dialog box, 208
- Columns width option, Columns dialog box, 174
- Combine Documents dialog box, Word, 185
- combo box data-entry control, 72
- combo charts, 588
- Comma Style number format, Excel, 234
- comments  
 Excel worksheets, 244–246
- Word  
 entering, 178–180  
 managing, 180–181  
 viewing and displaying, 180
- Commercial Printer command, Publisher, 712
- Compare Documents dialog box, Word, 185
- comparison operators, 566
- compatibility mode, 21
- compression, bitmap graphics, 626, 639
- computerized forms  
 creating, 71  
 entering information in, 70–73

- concatenation (&) operator, 257
- conditional formatting, Excel, 235–236
- connectors
  - attaching and handling arrowheads on, 645–646
  - changing appearance of, 644–645
  - connecting shapes using, 646–648
  - overview, 643
- constants, formula, 255
- Contact Group window, Outlook, 460–461
- Contacts Folder, Outlook
  - changing contact information, 458
  - contact groups, 459–461
  - entering new contact, 456–458
  - finding contact in, 461–462
  - overview, 455
  - printing, 462–464
- containers, OneNote, 416
- Content Control
  - Properties dialog box, Word, 72
- context-sensitive tabs, 16–17
- Continuous section break, Word, 76
- contrast, pictures, 632–633
- conversations, Outlook, 477
- Convert button, Footnote and Endnote dialog box, 214
- Convert Notes dialog box, Word, 214
- Convert Text to Table dialog box, Word, 118
- converting
  - numbered list to bulleted list, 357
  - Office 97–2010 files to 2013, 21
- copying
  - data in Excel worksheets, 247
  - Excel worksheets, 249
  - files on SkyDrive, 732
  - formulas from cell to cell, 264–266
- Office file into OneNote, 429
- table of contents to another document, 203–204
- Word styles
  - from one document to another, 111
  - to template, 111–112
- COUNT function, 270
- cover letters, 162–163
- Create New Folder dialog box, Outlook, 485
- Create New Style from Formatting dialog box, Word, 106–107
- Create Rule dialog box, Outlook, 483
- Create Source dialog box Word, 216
- criteria
  - entering for Access queries
  - numeric criteria, 572
  - overview, 571–572
  - text criteria, 572
- cropping pictures
  - crop by filling, 637
  - crop by fitting, 637
  - crop to proportions, 636
  - crop to shape, 636
  - manually, 636
- Cross-Reference dialog box, Word, 210–211
- Cross-Reference option, Mark Index Entry dialog box, 206
- cross-references, adding in Word document, 210–211
- Currency data type, Access, 529
- Current Page option, Mark Index Entry dialog box, 206–207
- Custom AutoFilter dialog box, Excel, 297
- Custom data-validation rule, Excel, 237
- Custom dialog box, Outlook, 482, 502
- Custom Filter dialog box, Access, 563–564
- Custom Views dialog box, Excel, 244
- Customize Tags dialog box, OneNote, 435–436
- customizing
  - Access reports, 581–582
  - charts
    - adjusting size and shape, 593
    - changing chart type, 591–592
    - formatting, 596–597
    - gridlines, 595

layout, 593–595  
 style and color scheme, 593  
 Excel views, 244  
 numbered and bulleted lists, 92–93  
 Outlook reminders, 502  
 PowerPoint animations, 369  
 Quick Access Toolbar, 679–681  
 Ribbon, 673–678  
 SmartArt diagrams, 605  
 status bar, 682  
 table of contents, 202–203  
 Cycle SmartArt diagram, 604

**D**

dash status, lines, 644–645  
 data analysis, Excel  
 Goal Seek command, 298–299  
 lists, 294–298  
 filtering, 296–298  
 overview, 294  
 sorting, 295–296  
 PivotTables, 303–305  
 sparklines, 293–294  
 what-if analyses with data tables, 299–303  
 Data Table dialog box, Excel, 302  
 data types, Access  
 Attachment, 529  
 AutoNumber, 529  
 Calculated, 529  
 Currency, 529

Date/Time, 529  
 Hyperlink, 529  
 Long Text, 529  
 Lookup Wizard, 529  
 Number, 529  
 OLE Object, 529  
 overview, 528  
 Short Text, 529  
 Yes/No, 529  
 Data Validation dialog box, Excel, 238  
 database, Access  
 defined, 508  
 designing  
 deciding on information for, 516–517  
 overview, 516  
 separating information into different database tables, 517–518  
 database tables, Access  
 choosing fields for, 519  
 choosing which fields to query, 569–570  
 choosing which to query, 568  
 creating  
 from scratch, 521  
 from template, 523–524  
 creating fields, 526–528  
 data types for fields, 528–529  
 data-entry list, 537–539  
 defined, 508  
 deleting fields, 531  
 designating primary key field, 530–531

establishing  
 relationships between editing, 547  
 forging relationships, 545–547  
 many-to-many relationship, 543  
 one-to-many relationship, 543  
 one-to-one relationship, 543  
 overview, 542–543  
 Relationships window, 544–545  
 Field Properties settings  
 Append Only property, 537  
 Caption text box, 534  
 Decimal Places drop-down list, 534  
 Default Value text box, 534–535  
 Field Size box, 533  
 Format property, 533  
 indexes, 536  
 Input Mask text box, 534  
 overview, 532–533  
 Required box, 536  
 Show Date Picker, 537  
 Smart Tags, 536  
 Text Align property, 537  
 Text Format property, 537  
 Unicode Expression drop-down list, 536  
 Validation Rule text box, 535  
 Validation Text text box, 536  
 zero-length strings, 536

- database tables, Access  
*(continued)*
- filtering
    - advanced filter/sort, 562
    - comparison operators for, 566
    - by form, 562, 564–566
    - for input, 561, 563–564
    - overview, 560–561
    - by selection, 561–563
  - importing table from another database, 523–524
  - indexing
    - fields, 540
    - multifield, 540–541
  - mapping relationships between, 520
  - moving fields, 531
  - opening and viewing, 525–526
  - primary key field for, 519–520
  - renaming fields, 531
  - sorting records, 559–560
  - unfiltering, 562
- data-entry controls, computerized form
- combo box, 72
  - date picker, 72
  - drop-down list, 72
  - overview, 70
- data-entry list, Access, 537–539
- Datasheet Formatting dialog box, Access, 554
- Datasheet view, Access, 567
- data-validation rules, Excel, 236–238
- Date and Time check box, Header and Footer dialog box, 360
- Date data-validation rule, Excel, 237
- Date Navigator, Outlook Calendar, 491–492
- date picker data-entry control, 72
- date values
- entering into Excel worksheets, 228–231
  - formatting in Excel, 232–234
- Date/Time data type, Access, 529
- Day view, Outlook Calendar, 492
- Decimal data-validation rule, Excel, 237
- Decimal numeric field size, Access, 533
- Decrease Decimal number format, Excel, 234
- Decrease Font Size button, 34
- Define New Bullet dialog box, Word, 93–94
- Define New Number Format dialog box, Word, 93–94
- Definition task pane, Word, 144
- Delay box, PowerPoint Animations tab, 370
- Delete Expired Items (E-Mail Folders Only) option, AutoArchive dialog box, 452
- Delete option, Document Recovery task pane, 22
- delete query, Access, 577
- Delete tool, OneNote, 422
- deleting
- categories, Outlook, 444
  - cell ranges, Excel formula, 263
  - columns and rows, Excel worksheets, 278
  - columns and rows, Word tables, 123
  - comments, Excel worksheets, 245
  - comments, Word document, 181
- data, Excel worksheets, 247
- e-mail account from Outlook, 466
- fields, Access, 531
- files, SkyDrive, 732
- folders, SkyDrive, 723
- footnotes and endnotes, Word, 214
- groups and pages, OneNote, 411
- items, Outlook, 448–449
- notebooks, OneNote, 408
- notes, OneNote, 418, 503
- relationships between Access database tables, 547
- slides, PowerPoint presentation, 325
- tasks, OneNote, 500
- text, 32
- Word styles in template, 114
- dependents, formula, 269
- descending sorting order, Access database tables, 559

- Design Checker, Publisher, 711–712
- Design view, Access, 567
- desktop publishing, Word
- adding background color to pages, 162
  - adding newspaper-style columns to document, 173–174
  - borders, 161–162
  - charts, 163–164
  - clip-art and photos, 163–164
  - cover letters, 162–163
  - diagrams, 163–164
  - drawing canvas, 164–165
  - drop caps, 171
  - landscape documents, 174–175
  - linking online video to document, 176
  - positioning objects, 167–169
  - printing on different size paper, 175
  - shapes and lines, 163–164
  - text boxes, 169–170
  - themes, 159–160
  - watermarking, 171–172
  - wrapping text around objects, 166–167
- desktop shortcut icon, starting Office 2013 from Vista, 11–12  
Windows 7, 11–12  
Windows 8, 14
- diagonal lines, drawing on Word tables, 136–137
- diagrams. *See also* SmartArt diagrams
- including in Word document, 163–164
  - 3-D, 618
  - dialog box launchers (group buttons), Office 2013 tab, 18
  - Dictionary task pane, Word, 144–145
  - discretionary hyphen, 97
  - Dismiss button, Outlook Reminder message box, 501
  - Display for Review menu, Review tab (Word), 183
  - Distance from Text option, Drop Cap dialog box, 171
  - distributing files
    - blogging, 693–696
    - e-mail, 690–691
    - in PDF format, 688–690
    - printing, 687–688
    - saving file as web page, 691–693  - distributing objects, 664–665
  - #DIV/0! error message, 267
  - division (/) operator, 257
  - Do Not Archive Items in This Folder option, Outlook Properties dialog box, 452
  - Document Recovery task pane, 22
- documents, Word
- adjusting space between lines, 90–91
  - adjusting space between paragraphs, 91
  - breaking text lines, 78
  - creating, 59–60
  - entering information in computerized form, 70–73
  - headers and footers
    - creating, 87
    - editing, 87–88
    - fine-tuning, 89
    - overview, 86–87
    - removing, 88  - hyphenating text
    - automatic, 97
    - manually, 97
    - overview, 96–97
    - preventing
      - hyphenation, 98
      - unhyphenating, 98  - indenting, 81–83
  - inserting section break, 76–78
  - inserting whole file into, 69–70
  - margins, 79–81
  - navigating quickly
    - bookmarks, 68–69
    - Go To command, 68
    - keyboard shortcuts, 66–67
    - from page to page or heading to heading, 67–68

- documents, Word  
*(continued)*
- numbered and bulleted lists
  - customizing, 92–93
  - managing multilevel list, 93
  - simple, 92
  - numbering pages
    - changing page number formats, 85–86
    - including page number in header or footer, 85
    - overview, 83–84
    - with page numbers only, 84
  - paragraphs and
    - formatting, 75–76
  - positioning chart in, 591
  - shortcuts for selecting text, 65
  - splitting screen, 64–65
  - starting new page, 78–79
  - styles
    - applying to text and paragraphs, 101–105
    - creating, 105–107
    - modifying, 108–109, 114
    - templates, 109–114
    - templates and, 99–100
    - types of, 100–101
  - tabs, 95–96
  - viewing
    - changing views, 61
    - Draft view, 64
    - Outline view, 63
    - Print Layout view, 63
    - Read mode, 61–62
    - Web Layout view, 63
- Don't Add Space between Paragraphs of the Same Style check box, Paragraph dialog box, 91
- dots per inch (dpi), resolution, 625
- Double numeric field size, Access, 533
- double strikethrough text effect, 37
- downloading, files to computer from SkyDrive, 731
- dpi (dots per inch), resolution, 625
- Draft view, Word
  - entering footnotes and endnotes, 212
  - page breaks, 79
  - section breaks, 77
- Drafts folder, Outlook, 467
- dragging and dropping, text, 30–31
- drawing
  - connectors
    - attaching and handling arrowheads on, 645–646
    - changing appearance of, 644–645
    - connecting shapes using, 646–648
    - overview, 643
  - lines and arrows
    - attaching and handling arrowheads on, 645–646
    - changing appearance of, 644–645
    - changing length and position of, 644
    - overview, 642–643
- OneNote
  - Color & Thickness dialog box, 419
  - editing, 421–422
  - overview, 418
- with pen or highlighter, 419
- shapes, 420
- Tools gallery, 419
- overview, 641
- shapes
  - changing symmetry, 650
  - connecting using connectors, 646–647
  - overview, 642–643, 648–649
  - using as text box, 650
- WordArt
  - creating, 652
  - editing, 652
  - overview, 651
- drawing canvas, 164–165
- drawing guides, PowerPoint, 366
- Drop Cap dialog box, Word, 171
- drop caps, 171
- drop-down list data-entry control, 72
- Duration box, PowerPoint Animations tab, 370
- Duration box, PowerPoint Transitions tab, 367
- dynaset, Access, 508

## E

---

- earmarking Outlook messages, 483
- Edit Hyperlink dialog box, 45
- Edit Photo Album dialog box, Excel, 326, 329
- Edit Relationships dialog box, Access, 545–547, 577

- Edit Source dialog box, Word, 217, 740–741
- Edit window, Outlook, 458
- editing
- Access database table relationships, 547
  - bibliography citations, 217
  - cell ranges, Excel formula, 263
  - comments, Excel worksheet, 245
  - comments, Word document, 180
  - drawings, OneNote, 421–422
  - Excel worksheets, 239–240
  - footnotes and endnotes, Word, 214
  - headers and footers, 87–88
  - index, Word, 209
  - master slides, PowerPoint, 344
  - pdfs, 86
  - photo albums, PowerPoint, 329
  - Safe Senders and Blocked Senders lists, Outlook, 486
  - shared files on SkyDrive, 739
  - speaker notes for PowerPoint presentation, 380
  - tasks, Outlook, 500
  - 3-D diagrams in 2-D, 618
  - WordArt, 652
- Effect Options button, PowerPoint
- Transitions tab, 367
- em dash, 98
- e-mail. *See also* Outlook adding address to Outlook contacts, 457
- distributing files, 690–691
- file sharing by, 735–737
- web-based, 443
- E-Mail Folders Only (Delete Expired Items) option, AutoArchive dialog box, 452
- e-mail hyperlinks, 44–45
- en dash, 98
- Encrypt dialog box, 27
- endnotes, Word choosing numbering scheme and positioning of, 213–214
- deleting, 214
- editing, 214
- entering, 212
- moving, 214
- overview, 211
- entering
- data into Excel worksheets
  - comments, 245
  - date and time values, 228–231
  - lists and serial data, 228–231
  - numeric values, 227
  - overview, 225–226
  - text labels, 227
- foreign characters, 40–41
- speaker notes for PowerPoint presentation, 379
- symbols, 40–41
- text in PowerPoint presentations
- bulleted and numbered lists, 357–359
  - changing font size, 349
  - changing look of text, 349–350
  - choosing fonts, 348
  - headers and footers for slides, 359–360
  - overview, 347–348
  - text boxes, 350–356
- typewritten note, OneNote, 415
- Envelope Options tab, Envelopes and Labels dialog box, 187
- envelopes, printing, 195–196
- Envelopes and Labels dialog box, Word printing address on envelope, 186–187
- printing single address label, 188–189
- equal to (=) operator, 257
- Equalize Character Height text effect (PowerPoint), 37
- Equation Editor, OneNote, 423
- Eraser tool
- OneNote, 421
  - PowerPoint, 387
- Error Alert tab, Data Validation dialog box, 238

- errors, formulas  
correcting one at a time, 266–267  
running error checker, 267–268  
tracing cell references, 268–269
- Even Page section break, Word, 76
- events, Outlook Calendar  
defined, 491  
scheduling, 494
- Exactly spacing option, Paragraph dialog box, 91
- Excel  
Bring and Send commands, 665–666  
changing screen background, 682–683  
conditional formatting, 235–236  
creating charts, 585–586  
customizing views, 244  
data analysis  
Goal Seek command, 298–299  
lists, 294–298  
PivotTables, 303–305  
sparklines, 293–294  
what-if analyses with data tables, 299–303
- data-validation rules, 236–238  
defined, 9
- Flash Fill feature, 229
- formatting numbers, dates, and time values, 232–234
- formulas  
copying from cell to cell, 264–266  
detecting and correcting errors in, 266–269  
entering, 258–263  
operators in, 257–258  
referring to cells in, 253–256  
referring to formula results in, 256  
3D references, 264
- functions  
arguments, 271  
entering into formula, 271–274  
overview, 269–270
- hiding and displaying the rulers and grid, 655–656
- overview, 221, 223–224
- templates, 221
- View tab buttons, 50
- workbooks  
creating, 221–223  
overview, 225
- worksheets  
borders, 280–285  
cell addresses, 225  
colors, 285  
columns, 225  
comments, 244–246  
copying data, 247  
deleting data, 247  
editing, 239–240  
entering data, 225–232  
freezing and splitting columns and rows, 241–243
- hiding, 249  
hiding columns and rows, 243  
laying out, 275–280  
managing in workbook, 247–249  
moving data, 247  
navigating, 240–241  
overview, 223–224  
printing, 285–291  
protecting, 250–251  
rows, 225  
selecting cells, 246
- expanding parts of Word document, 200
- exponentiation (^) operator, 257
- Expression Builder dialog box, Access, 535
- eyedropper, PowerPoint, 659

## F

---

- Featured tab, New window (Word), 59
- Field Properties settings, Access  
Append Only property, 537
- Caption text box, 534
- Decimal Places dropdown list, 534
- Default Value text box, 534–535
- Field Size box, 533
- Format property, 533
- indexes, 536
- Input Mask text box, 534
- overview, 532–533

- Required box, 536  
 Show Date Picker, 537  
 Smart Tags, 536  
 Text Align property, 537  
 Text Format property, 537  
 Unicode Expression drop-down list, 536  
 Validation Rule text box, 535  
 Validation Text text box, 536  
 zero-length strings, 536
- fields, Access**  
 choosing for databases, 519  
 data types for, 528–529  
 deleting, 531  
 indexing, 540  
 moving, 531  
 overview, 508–509  
 renaming, 531  
 file formats, graphic, 627  
**File New Database dialog box, Access**, 513–514  
**file sharing.** *See also* SkyDrive  
 co-editing shared files on SkyDrive, 739  
 file access privileges, 733–734  
 folders, 735–737  
 investigating and changing how files and folders are shared, 737–739  
 links for, 734  
 survey forms, 739–741  
 viewing what others share, 737
- File tab**  
 Office 2013, 14–15  
 Word screen, 58
- Fill Effects dialog box, Word**, 162  
**filtering**  
**Access**  
 defined, 508  
 versus queries, 561  
**Access database tables**  
 advanced filter/sort, 562  
 comparison operators for, 566  
 by form, 562, 564–566  
 for input, 561  
 by selection, 561  
 lists in Excel, 296–298  
**Find All Word Forms**  
 option, Find and Replace dialog box, 148  
**Find and Replace dialog box, Access**  
 finding and replacing data, 557–558  
 finding missing records, 556–557  
**Find and Replace dialog box, Word**, 68, 147  
**Find and Replace text feature, Word**  
 conducting find-and-replace operation, 152–153  
 narrowing search, 146–149  
 overview, 145–146  
 searching for special characters, 150–152  
 using wildcard operators to refine searches, 149–150  
**Find button, Word**  
 Navigation pane, 147
- Find command, Excel**, 241  
**Find What option, Access**  
 Find and Replace dialog box, 556  
**Find Whole Words Only option, Find and Replace dialog box**, 148  
**first-line indent marker**, 82  
**Fit Slide to Current Window button, PowerPoint**, 324  
**Fixed Column Width command, Word tables**, 121  
**flagging, Outlook messages**, 481  
**Flash Fill feature, Excel**, 229  
**flat-file database, Access**, 508  
**flipping objects**, 667–668  
**Folder pane, Outlook**, 442  
**folders, Microsoft Account**  
 creating, 720  
 deleting, 723  
 moving from folder to folder in SkyDrive, 722  
 renaming, 723  
 viewing and locating folders in SkyDrive, 720–722  
**folders, Outlook**, 484–485  
**Font dialog box**  
 applying font style, 36  
 changing font size, 34  
 choosing fonts, 34  
**fonts**  
 adjusting size, 34  
 applying styles, 35–36  
 choosing, 33–34

- fonts (continued)**
- default, OneNote, 416
  - defined, 33
  - installing and removing
    - on computer, 35
  - PowerPoint
    - presentations, 348–350
  - Footer check box, Header and Footer dialog box, 361
  - footers. *See* headers and footers
  - Footnote and Endnote dialog box, Word, 212–214
  - footnotes, Word
    - choosing numbering scheme and positioning of, 213–214
    - deleting, 214
    - editing, 214
    - entering, 212
    - moving, 214
    - overview, 211
  - foreign characters, 40–41
  - foreign field, Access, 508
  - foreign key, Access
    - database table, 520
  - foreign language, proofing in Word, 156–157
  - form letters, printing, 195–196
  - Format area, Footnote and Endnote dialog box, 213
  - Format As Table dialog box, Excel, 283–285
  - Format Cells dialog box, Excel, 228–229, 234
- Format option**
- Create New Style from Formatting dialog box, 107
  - Find and Replace dialog box, 149
  - Format Painter, 32
  - Format Picture task pane
    - Artistic Effects settings, 634–635
    - Brightness and Contrast settings, 632–633
    - Color Saturation settings, 633–634
    - Color Tone settings, 633–634
    - cropping tool, 636–637
    - Picture Styles gallery, 635–636
    - Remove Background command, 637–638
  - Format Shape pane, PowerPoint, 349–350
  - Format tab, Word, 168
  - Format Video pane, PowerPoint, 376
  - Formats drop-down list, Table of Contents dialog box, 202
  - Formats option, Index dialog box, 208
- formatting**
- charts, 596–597
  - conditional formatting, Excel, 235–236
  - numbers, dates, and time values in Excel, 232–234
  - paragraphs, 75–76
  - text in notes, OneNote, 416–417
- Word tables**
- borders and colors, 129–132
  - rows and columns, 129
  - table styles, 127–128
- Formatting options**
- option, Create New Style from Formatting dialog box, 107
- forms**
- Access, 508–510
  - computerized, entering information, 70–73
  - survey, 739–741
- Formula bar, Excel, 231–232**
- Formula dialog box, Word, 132–133**
- formulas, Excel**
- copying from cell to cell, 264–266
  - entering
    - cell range, 260–261
    - clicking cells, 259–260
    - naming cell ranges, 261–263
    - 3D references, 264
  - errors
    - correcting one at a time, 266–267
    - running error checker, 266–267
    - tracing cell references, 268–269
  - operators in, 257–258
  - referring to cells in, 253–256, 264
- forwarding**
- Outlook e-mail messages, 470–471
- Outlook notes, 503**

frames, Publisher, 698–699, 707  
 freezing, Excel columns and rows, 241–243  
 Full Page view, OneNote, 412  
 Full Screen Mode button, Word screen, 58  
 Function Arguments dialog box, Excel, 272–273  
 functions  
   Access summary query, 575  
   Excel  
     arguments, 271  
     entering into formula, 271–274  
     overview, 269–270

**G**

galleries, Office 2013 tab, 18  
 generating  
   bibliography, Word, 217–218  
   charts from tables, 590  
   index, Word, 207–208  
 Go To command, Excel, 241  
 Go To Page dialog box, Publisher, 703  
 Go To tab, Find and Replace dialog box, 68  
 Goal Seek command, Excel, 298–299  
 Google Mail, 443  
 gradient background, PowerPoint slides, 334–337

grammar check, Word, 143–144  
 graphics  
   bitmap  
     compression, 626  
     overview, 623–624  
     resolution, 625–626  
   choosing file formats for, 627  
   clip art, 625  
   color depth, 626–627  
   compression, 637–638  
   inserting picture into Office file, 627–630  
 Set Transparent Color command, 634  
 touching up pictures  
   artistic effects, 634–635  
   brightness and contrast, 632–633  
   cropping, 636–637  
   overview, 631  
   picture styles, 635–636  
   recoloring, 633–634  
   removing background, 637–638  
   softening and sharpening, 631–632  
   using as background for Word tables, 135–136  
 vector, 623–624  
 wrapping text around, 707  
 greater than (>) operator, 257  
 greater than or equal to ( $\geq$ ) operator, 257  
 grid, PowerPoint, 366  
 Grid and Guides dialog box, PowerPoint, 366

gridlines  
   chart, 595  
   printing, 290  
   Word tables, 116  
 group buttons (dialog box launchers), Office 2013 tab, 18  
 grouping objects, 668–669  
 groups, Office 2013 tab, 17–18  
 gutters, 80

**H**

handouts, PowerPoint, 388–389  
 hanging indent marker, 82  
 hard page break, 78–79  
 Header and Footer dialog box, PowerPoint, 360–362  
 header rows, Word tables  
   changing direction of, 133–134  
   defined, 116  
   repeating on subsequent pages, 126  
 headers and footers  
   PowerPoint slides  
     nonstandard footer, 361–362  
     overview, 359–360  
     removing footer from single slide, 362  
     standard footer, 360–361  
 Word  
   creating, 87  
   editing, 87–88  
   fine-tuning, 89  
   overview, 86–87  
   removing, 88

- Headings tab, Word  
    Navigation pane, 68
- Help button, Word  
    screen, 58
- hidden format symbols,  
    Word, 66, 150–152
- hiding  
    Excel worksheet  
        columns and rows,  
        243
- Excel worksheets, 249
- pen and highlighter  
    markings, PowerPoint  
        slides, 386–387
- slides, PowerPoint  
        presentation, 329–330
- video, PowerPoint  
    presentation, 375
- hierarchy SmartArt  
    diagrams  
        adding shapes to,  
        610–611
- defined, 604
- promoting and demoting  
    shapes in, 613
- Highlight All option, Find  
and Replace dialog  
box, 148
- highlighting  
    PowerPoint slides,  
        385–386
- in Word document,  
        177–178
- Home tab  
    applying font style, 36
- OneNote, 417
- Word, 90–91, 177–178
- Hyperlink data type,  
    Access, 529
- Hyperlink to Slide dialog  
box, PowerPoint, 392
- hyperlinks  
    creating to another place  
        in file, 43–44
- e-mail, 44–45
- linking to web page,  
        41–43
- overview, 41
- repairing and  
        removing, 45
- hyphenating text  
    automatic, 97
- discretionary hyphen, 97
- em dash, 98
- en dash, 98
- manually, 97
- preventing, 98
- ragged right margin, 96
- unhyphenating, 98
- Hyphenation dialog box,  
    Word, 97
- 
- I**
- 
- Ignore All option, Word  
    spell check, 142
- Ignore option, Word spell  
check, 142
- Ignore Punctuation  
    Characters option,  
        Find and Replace  
            dialog box, 148
- Ignore White Space  
    Characters option,  
        Find and Replace  
            dialog box, 148
- Import Customization  
    file, 678
- Import Objects dialog box,  
    Access, 524
- Inbox folder, Outlook, 481
- Inbox Window, Outlook,  
    475–478
- Increase Decimal number  
    format, Excel, 234
- Increase Font Size  
    button, 34
- Incremental Find option,  
    Options dialog box,  
        148
- Indent button, Word, 81
- indenting  
    eye-balling it, 81–83
- first-line indent  
    marker, 82
- hanging indent  
    marker, 82
- left-indent marker, 82
- versus margins, 80
- overview, 81
- in Paragraph dialog  
    box, 83
- right-indent marker, 82
- using Indent button, 81
- Index dialog box, Word,  
    207–209
- Indexes dialog box,  
    Access, 540–541
- indexing document in  
    Word  
        editing index, 209
- generating index,  
    207–208
- marking index items,  
    206–207
- overview, 205
- Ink Equation Editor,  
    OneNote, 423
- inline with text, 167–169
- Input Message tab, Data  
    Validation dialog box,  
        238

Insert Address Block dialog box, Word, 193  
 Insert Audio dialog box, PowerPoint, 371–372  
 Insert Function dialog box, Excel, 270  
 Insert Greeting Line dialog box, Word, 194–195  
 Insert Hyperlink dialog box, 42–43  
 Insert Picture dialog box inserting picture into Office file, 628–630 Outlook, 472–473  
 Insert tab, OneNote, 417  
 Insert Table dialog box creating Word tables, 116 PowerPoint, 364–365  
 Insert Video dialog box, PowerPoint, 374  
 inserting audio file on PowerPoint slide, 371–372 citations in bibliography, 215–216 columns and rows Excel worksheets, 278 Word tables, 121–122  
 Excel worksheets into workbook, 248 new page, Publisher, 709 page breaks, Excel worksheets, 287 section breaks, Word, 76–78 video on PowerPoint slides, 374 instant search, Outlook, 446–447 Integer numeric field size, Access, 533

interactive (user-run) presentation, PowerPoint, 391–393  
 Italic font style, 35

**J**

join lines, Query Design window, 568  
 JPEG images, 627  
 junction table, Access, 543  
 junk mail (spam), Outlook, 485–487

**K**

Keep Source Formatting paste option, 30  
 Keep Text Only paste option, 30  
 keyboard shortcuts applying font styles to text, 36  
 applying paragraph styles, 102  
 blanking screen in PowerPoint presentation, 387  
 Calendar window views, 492  
 customizing Word, 684–685  
 entering data in Access, 551  
 moving cursor in Word table, 119  
 navigating Excel worksheets, 240–241  
 navigating Word documents, 66–67

OneNote views, 414  
 selecting OneNote notes, 417  
 Word proofing tools, 139  
 KeyTips, 19  
 kiosk-style presentation, PowerPoint, 388–391

**L**

labels printing, 195–196  
 text, entering into Excel worksheets, 227  
 Labels tab, Envelopes and Labels dialog box, 188  
 landscape documents (Word), 174–175  
 landscape worksheet, Excel, 286  
 Language dialog box, Word, 157  
 Language option, Index dialog box, 208  
 Lasso Select tool, OneNote, 421  
 laying out charts, 593–595  
 SmartArt diagrams adding shapes to, 609–613  
 promoting and demoting shapes in hierarchy diagrams, 613  
 removing shape, 608  
 repositioning, 608–609  
 selecting shape, 608  
 Word positioning text, 168  
 wrapping text around objects, 166–167

left-indent marker, 82  
 less than (<) operator, 257  
 less than or equal to (≤) operator, 257  
**Line between columns**  
 option, Columns dialog box, 173  
**line charts**, 588  
**Line Style drop-down list**, Word tables, 131  
**Line Weight drop-down list**, Word tables, 131  
**lines**  
 attaching and handling arrowheads on, 645–646  
 changing appearance of, 644–645  
 changing length and position of, 644  
 including in Word document, 163–164  
 manipulating, 652–656  
 overview, 642–643  
**Lines to Drop option**, Drop Cap dialog box, 171  
**Linked style**, Word, 101  
**linking**  
 file sharing and, 735–737  
 hyperlinks to web page, 41–43  
 online video to Word document, 176  
 text boxes, Word, 170  
**Word or PowerPoint file to OneNote**, 429–430  
**List data-validation rule**, Excel, 237  
**List SmartArt diagram**, 604

**lists.** *See also numbered and bulleted lists*  
 alphabetizing, 197  
 converting into Word tables, 118  
**Excel**  
 entering into worksheets, 228–231  
 filtering, 296–298  
 overview, 294  
 sorting, 295–296  
**live previewing**, 18  
**Lock Tracking dialog box**, Word, 183  
**locking files**, 27–28  
**Long Integer numeric field size**, Access, 533  
**Long Text data type**, Access, 529  
**Look In option**, Access Find and Replace dialog box, 556  
**Lookup Wizard data type**, Access, 529  
**Lookup Wizard dialog box**, Access, 538–539  
**lossless compression**, bitmap graphics, 626  
**lossy compression**, bitmap graphics, 626  
**lowercase**, 39

## M

---

**macros**, Access, 513  
**Mail Merge Recipients dialog box**, Word, 192–193  
**Mailbox Cleanup command**, Outlook, 453–454  
**mail-merge wizard**, 190  
**Main Entry box**, Mark Index Entry dialog box, 206  
**many-to-many relationship**, Access database tables, 543  
**Map It button**, Outlook Contact window, 460  
**margins**  
 adjusting, Excel worksheets, 288–289  
 ragged right margin, 96–98  
**Word documents**, 79–81  
**Mark Index Entry dialog box**, Word, 206  
**mass mailings**  
 merging document with source file, 191–195  
 overview, 189–190  
 preparing source file, 190–191  
 printing form letters, envelopes, and labels, 195–196  
**master pages**, Publisher, 710–711  
**master slides**, PowerPoint changing layout, 345 editing, 344 overview, 343  
**master styles**, PowerPoint, 343–344  
**Master views**, PowerPoint presentation, 324  
**Match Case option**, Find and Replace dialog box  
 Access, 556  
 Word, 148

- Match Fields dialog box, Word, 193–194
- Match option, Access Find and Replace dialog box, 556
- Match Prefix option, Word Find and Replace dialog box, 148
- Match Suffix option, Word Find and Replace dialog box, 148
- mathematical equations, OneNote, 423
- Matrix SmartArt diagram, 604
- MAX function, 270
- meetings, Outlook Calendar, 491
- Merge Formatting paste option, 30
- merging cells in Word tables, 125–126
- document with source file, 191–195
- OneNote pages and sections, 437–438
- text across cells, Excel, 276
- messages, Outlook e-mail addressing, 468–469 auto-replying, 472–473 blind carbon copies, 470 copies carbon copies, 470 earmarking, 483 flagging, 481 folders, 484–485 forwarding, 470–471 message read notifications, 473–474
- message received notification, 474–475
- message reminders, 481–482
- organizing, 479–481
- receiving, 474–475
- replying to, 470–471
- sending, 466–467
- Microsoft Office Suite. *See* Office 2013
- MIN function, 270
- Mini Translator command, Word, 158
- Minimize button, Word screen, 58
- mini-toolbar applying font style, 36 changing font size, 34 choosing fonts, 33 overview, 18–19
- mirror margins, Word documents, 80
- Modify option, Index dialog box, 208
- Modify Style dialog box, Word, 108, 114
- Modify Tag dialog box, OneNote, 435
- modifying OneNote notes, 435–436 Word styles, 108–109, 114
- modules, Access, 508, 513
- Month view, Outlook Calendar, 492
- More button, Find and Replace dialog box, 147
- Mouse wheel, 49
- Move Old Items To option AutoArchive dialog box, 452
- Outlook Properties dialog box, 453
- Move Old Items to the Default Archive Folder option, Outlook Properties dialog box, 452
- moving data in Excel worksheets, 247
- Excel worksheet to another workbook, 249
- between Excel worksheets, 248
- fields, Access, 531
- files on SkyDrive, 732
- folders in SkyDrive, 723
- footnotes and endnotes in Word, 214
- notes, OneNote, 438
- OneNote note containers, 416
- PowerPoint presentation slides, 325
- MPEG-4 version, PowerPoint presentation, 398–399
- multifield index, Access, 540–541
- multilevel list (nested list), 93
- Multiple spacing option, Paragraph dialog box, 91
- multiple-field primary key, Access, 531
- multiplication (\*) operator, 257

**N**

#N/A error message, 267  
 Name box, Excel, 240  
 #NAME error message, 267  
 Name Manager dialog box, Excel, 263  
 Name option, Create New Style from Formatting dialog box, 107  
 navigating  
     Access, 514–516, 525–526  
     Excel worksheets, 240–241  
     Microsoft Account, 719  
     OneNote, 411–412  
     Open Window, 23–25  
     pages, Publisher, 703  
     Save As window, 23–25  
     Word documents  
         bookmarks, 68–69  
         Go To command, 68  
         keyboard shortcuts, 66–67  
         from page to page or heading to heading, 67–68  
 Navigation buttons, Outlook, 442  
 Navigation pane, Access, 514–516, 525–526  
 Navigation pane, Word, 67–68  
 nested list (multilevel list), 93  
 New Documents Based on This Template option, Create New Style from Formatting dialog box, 107

New Mail Alerts window, Outlook, 483  
 New Microsoft Excel Survey dialog box, 740  
 New Notebook window, OneNote, 407  
 New Tag dialog box, OneNote, 435  
 New window  
     Access, 513  
     Excel, 222–223  
     PowerPoint, 314–315  
     Publisher, 699  
     Word, 59  
 New Window button, View tab, 50  
 newspaper-style columns, adding to Word document, 173–174  
 Next Page section break, Word, 76  
 nonstandard footer, PowerPoint, 361  
 Normal view  
     OneNote, 412  
     PowerPoint, 323  
 not equal to (<>) operator, 257  
 Not operator, Access, 572  
 Notebook pane, OneNote, 405  
 notebooks, OneNote  
     color-coding, 437  
     creating, 407–408  
     defined, 405  
     deleting, 408  
 notes, OneNote  
     color-coding, 437  
     defined, 406  
     merging and moving, 438  
 searching  
     by author, 432–433  
     by word or phrase, 431–432  
 tagging  
     creating and modifying, 435–436  
     organizing, 435  
     overview, 433–434  
 Notes Page view, PowerPoint presentation, 323  
 Notes window, Outlook, 502–503  
#NULL error message, 267  
#NUM error message, 267  
Number data type, Access, 529  
Number of columns option, Columns dialog box, 173  
numbered and bulleted lists  
customizing, 92–93  
managing multilevel list, 93  
PowerPoint presentations  
choosing bullet character, size, and color, 358  
choosing list-numbering style, size, and color, 359  
overview, 357–358  
simple, 92  
numbering pages, Word  
changing page number formats, 85–86  
including page number in header or footer, 85

overview, 83–84  
with page numbers  
only, 84  
numbering scheme,  
Word footnotes and  
endnotes, 213–214  
numeric criteria, for  
Access queries, 572  
Numeric field sizes,  
Access, 537  
numeric values, Excel,  
227, 232–234

**O**


---

objects  
Access, 508–509  
aligning objects, 662–664  
changing color,  
outline color, and  
transparency,  
657–658, 660–661  
changing size and shape,  
656–657  
distributing, 664–665  
grouping, 668–669  
hiding and displaying  
the rulers and grid,  
655–656  
overlapping, 665–667  
overview, 652–654  
rotating and flipping,  
667–668  
selecting, 654–655  
ungrouping, 669  
Odd Page section break,  
Word, 76  
Office 2013 Home &  
Business edition, 10  
Office 2013 Home &  
Student edition, 10

Office 2013 (Microsoft  
Office Suite). *See  
also names of specific  
programs*  
closing files, 26  
compatibility mode, 21  
converting Office  
97–2010 files to  
2013, 21  
distributing files  
blogging, 693–696  
e-mail, 690–691  
in PDF format, 688–690  
printing, 687–688  
saving file as web page,  
691–693  
editions, 10  
file properties, 26–27  
keyboard shortcuts in  
Word, 682–683  
locking files, 27–28  
making Outlook default  
e-mail program, 468  
Open Window, 23–25  
opening files, 25  
overview, 9–10  
Quick Access Toolbar  
adding buttons,  
679–680  
changing order of  
buttons, 680–681  
positioning, 681  
removing buttons, 681  
Ribbon  
adding items, 676  
creating tabs and  
groups, 677–678  
displaying and  
selecting tab, group,  
and command names,  
675

moving tabs and  
groups, 675–676  
overview, 673–675  
removing items, 676  
renaming tabs and  
groups, 677  
resetting  
customizations, 678  
Save As window, 23–25  
saving files  
AutoRecovery, 22–23  
declaring where to  
save, 20–21  
for first time, 20  
overview, 20  
screen backgrounds,  
682–683  
starting in Vista, 11–12  
starting in Windows 7,  
11–12  
starting in Windows 8,  
13–14  
status bar, 682  
user interface, 14–19  
Office 2013 Professional  
edition, 10  
Office 365 edition, 10  
Office files  
attaching to OneNote  
notes, 427–428  
copying into OneNote,  
429  
creating in SkyDrive,  
725–726  
inserting picture into,  
627–630  
uploading to folder on  
SkyDrive, 726–727  
Office Presentation  
Service, 393–394

- Office Web Apps
  - folders
    - creating, 720
    - deleting, moving, and renaming, 723
  - moving from folder to folder, 722
  - viewing and locating folders, 720–722
- Microsoft Account
  - creating, 718
  - navigating, 719
  - signing in and out of, 718
  - overview, 10, 715–716
- SharePoint 2013, 717
- SkyDrive
  - creating files in, 725–726
  - downloading files to computer from, 731
  - managing files on, 731–732
  - opening files stored on, 729–731
  - saving file from Office to, 727–729
  - uploading Office files to folder on, 726–727
  - storing and sharing files on Internet, 716–717
- OLE Object data type, Access, 529
- one-input data table, Excel, 299–301
- OneNote
  - attaching Office file to note, 427–428
  - audio notes
    - overview, 425–426
    - playing, 426–427
    - recording, 426
  - choosing default font, 416
  - copying Office file into, 429
  - defined, 10
  - deleting notes, 418
  - drawing
    - Color & Thickness dialog box, 419
    - editing, 421–422
    - overview, 418
    - with pen or highlighter, 419
    - shapes, 420
  - Tools gallery, 419
  - linking Word or PowerPoint file to, 429–430
  - moving and resizing note containers, 416
  - navigating, 411–412
  - notebooks
    - color-coding, 437
    - creating, 407–408
    - defined, 405
  - notes
    - color-coding, 437
    - copying into another Office program, 430
    - defined, 406
    - formatting text in, 416–417
    - handwritten, converting to text, 422
    - making space for on page, 418
    - merging and moving, 438
    - searching for, 431–433
    - tagging, 433–436
    - typewritten, 415
  - overview, 403–404
- pages
  - color-coding, 437
  - creating, 410
  - defined, 406
  - merging and moving, 438
- Recycle Bin, 436
- renaming and deleting groups and pages, 411
- screen
  - Notebook pane, 405
  - Page pane, 405
  - Page window, 405
- Section (section group)
  - tabs, 405
- screen clipping note, 424–425
- section groups
  - creating, 409
  - defined, 406
- sections
  - color-coding, 437
  - creating, 408–409
  - defined, 406
  - merging and moving, 437–438
- selecting notes, 417
- subpages
  - creating, 410–411
  - defined, 406
- views
  - changing, 413–414
  - docked to the desktop, 412
  - Full Page view, 412
  - Normal view, 412
- writing mathematical equations, 423
- one-to-many relationship, Access database tables, 543

- one-to-one relationship,  
 Access database  
 tables, 543
- online templates,  
 PowerPoint, 314
- Open Existing Post dialog  
 box, Word, 695–696
- opening  
 database tables, Access,  
 525–526  
 files, 25  
 files stored on SkyDrive,  
 729–731  
 Outlook files, 479  
 reports, Access, 581  
 web page in browser, 693
- Open/View option,  
 Document Recovery  
 task pane, 22
- operators  
 addition, 257  
 arithmetic, 257–258  
 comparison, 566  
 concatenation, 257  
 division, 257  
 equal to, 257  
 in Excel formulas,  
 257–258  
 exponentiation, 257  
 greater than, 257  
 greater than or equal to,  
 257  
 less than, 257  
 less than or equal to, 257  
 multiplication, 257  
 not equal to, 257  
 percent, 257  
 subtraction, 257  
 wildcard, 149–150, 557,  
 572
- Options button, Word  
 Navigation pane, 146
- order of precedence,  
 formula, 257
- Organization chart  
 diagram, 611–613
- Organizer dialog box,  
 Word, 111–112
- outline color, objects,  
 657–658, 660–661
- Outline view  
 PowerPoint, 323
- Word  
 overview, 63, 198  
 rearranging document  
 sections in, 199–200  
 viewing outlines in  
 different ways, 199
- Outlook  
 archiving items  
 archiving rules, default,  
 452  
 archiving rules, for  
 folders, 452–453  
 overview, 450–451
- Calendar  
 altering activities, 495  
 appointments, 490–491  
 canceling activities, 495  
 Date Navigator,  
 491–492  
 events, 491  
 meetings, 491  
 overview, 489–490  
 rearranging Calendar  
 window, 492  
 rescheduling activities,  
 495  
 scheduling activities,  
 492–494  
 scheduling events, 494  
 scheduling recurring  
 appointments, 494
- categorizing items  
 arranging items by  
 category in folders, 445
- assigning items to  
 categories, 445
- creating category, 444
- overview, 443
- changing screen  
 background, 682–683
- Contacts Folder  
 changing contact  
 information, 458
- contact groups,  
 459–461
- entering new contact,  
 456–458
- finding contact in,  
 461–462
- overview, 455
- printing, 462–464
- defined, 10
- deleting items, 448–449
- e-mail  
 addressing messages,  
 468–469  
 attaching files, 471–472  
 attaching photos,  
 472–473  
 auto-replies to  
 messages, 472–473  
 blind carbon copies, 470  
 carbon copies, 470  
 earmarking messages,  
 483  
 flagging messages, 481  
 folders, 484–485  
 message read  
 notifications, 473–474  
 message received  
 notifications, 474–475  
 message reminders,  
 481–482

Outlook, e-mail (*continued*)  
 opening files, 479  
 organizing messages, 479–481  
 reading in Inbox Window, 475–478  
 receiving messages, 474–475  
 replying to and forwarding messages, 470–471  
 saving files, 478–479  
 sending messages, 466–467  
 setting up account, 465–466  
 spam, 485–487  
 finding and backing up files, 449–450  
 Mailbox Cleanup command, 453–454  
 making default e-mail program, 468  
 navigating folders, 442–443  
 Notes window, 502–503  
 overview, 441–442  
 People pane, 478  
 Reading pane, 475–476  
 Reminder message box  
   customizing reminders, 502  
   handling reminders, 501  
   overview, 500–501  
   scheduling, 501–502  
 searching  
   advanced search, 448  
   instant search, 446–447  
   overview, 445–446  
   refining search, 447–448

sending e-mails from another Office program, 469  
 Tasks window  
   entering task into, 498–499  
   examining tasks in, 499–500  
   handling and managing, 500  
   overview, 497–498  
 overlapping objects, 665–667  
 owner, file, 733

## P

---

Package for CD dialog box, PowerPoint, 395–396  
 Page Border tab, Borders and Shading dialog box, 162  
 page breaks  
   Excel worksheets  
     adjusting position, 287  
     inserting, 287  
     removing, 287–288  
     viewing, 287  
   Word documents, 78–79  
 Page Layout view, Excel, 286–288  
 Page Navigation pane, Publisher, 703  
 Page Number Format  
   check box, Mark Index Entry dialog box, 207  
 Page Number Format dialog box, Word, 85–86  
 Page pane, OneNote, 405  
 Page Range option, Mark Index Entry dialog box, 207  
 Page Setup dialog box, Excel  
   adjusting worksheet margins, 288–289  
   centering worksheet data, 290  
 including page numbers on worksheets, 289  
 printing gridlines, column letters, and row numbers, 290  
 putting headers and footers on pages, 289–290  
 repeating row and column headings on each page, 290–291  
 Page window, OneNote, 405  
 pages, OneNote  
   color-coding, 437  
   creating, 410  
   defined, 406  
   merging and moving, 437–438  
   renaming and deleting, 411  
 Pages tab, Word  
   Navigation pane, 68  
 Paragraph dialog box, Word  
   adjusting space between lines, 90–91  
   adjusting space between paragraphs, 91  
 indenting in, 83  
 preventing text hyphenation, 98

- Paragraph style, Word, 100  
 passwords case-sensitivity, 28 locking files with, 27–28 removing from file, 28  
 Paste options, text, 30  
 PDFs (portable document files), 86, 688–690  
 People pane, Outlook, 478  
 People view, Outlook, 458  
 percent (%) operator, 257  
 Percent Style number format, Excel, 234  
 Permanently Delete Old Items option  
 AutoArchive dialog box, 452  
 Outlook Properties dialog box, 453  
 Personal tab, New window (Word), 59  
 personal templates, PowerPoint, 314  
 Photo Album dialog box, Excel, 326–329  
 photo albums, PowerPoint changing look of pictures, 328 choosing slide layout, 327 editing, 329 inserting pictures and creating slides, 327  
 photos adding to Outlook contacts, 457 including in Outlook e-mail message, 472 including in Word document, 163–164  
 picture background, PowerPoint slides, 337–340  
 Picture SmartArt diagram, 604  
 picture styles, 635–636  
 Picture watermark option, Printed Watermark dialog box, 172  
 pictures, 598–599. *See also* graphics  
 pie charts, 588  
 PivotTables, 303–305  
 pixels per inch (ppi), resolution, 625  
 Placeholder Name dialog box, Word, 216  
 placeholder pictures, replacing, 709  
 png (portable network graphics) files, 430  
 portable document files (PDFs), 86, 688–690  
 portable network graphics (png) files, 430  
 portrait documents, Word, 174  
 Position option, Drop Cap dialog box, 171  
 positioning charts in Word document, 591 in workbook, page, or slide, 590–591  
 footnotes and endnotes in Word, 213–214  
 objects in Word document, 167–169  
 Quick Access Toolbar, 681  
 text, PowerPoint, 356  
 pounds sign (#), Excel, 227  
 PowerPoint application adding audio to presentation controlling when and how to play, 372–373 inserting audio file on slide, 371–372 overview, 370–371 playing, 373  
 animations customizing, 369 overview, 365–366 ready-made animation schemes, 368–369  
 blanking screen, 387  
 Bring and Send commands, 665–666  
 building effective presentations, 316–318  
 changing case in, 39–40  
 changing screen background, 682–683  
 choosing theme, 334  
 creating charts, 586–587  
 creating new slides, 318–319  
 creating slide background, 334–341  
 defined, 10  
 entering text bulleted and numbered lists, 357–359  
 changing font size, 349  
 changing look of text, 349–350  
 choosing fonts, 348  
 headers and footers for slides, 359–361  
 overview, 347–348  
 text boxes, 350–356

- PowerPoint application  
*(continued)*
- Equalize Character Height text effect, 37
  - eyedropper, 659
  - File tab, 311
  - generating chart from table, 590
  - handouts, 310, 388–389
  - headings, 321–322
  - hiding and displaying the rulers and grid, 655–656
  - hiding and erasing pen and highlighter markings, 386–387
  - kiosk-style presentation, 388–391
  - linking file to OneNote, 429–430
  - master styles, 343–344
  - notes, 310
  - Notes pane, 312, 324
  - online presentations, 393–395
  - overview, 309–310
  - Package for CD command, 395
  - photo albums changing look of pictures, 328 choosing slide layout, 327 editing, 329 inserting pictures and creating slides, 327 overview, 326 presentation video, 398–399 presenting information in table, 364–365 Quick Access toolbar, 311
  - recording voice narration for slides, 377–378 rehearsing and timing presentation, 380–381
  - Ribbon, 312
  - self-running presentation, 391
  - Slide Master view, 342–343
  - Slide window, 312
  - slides adjusting size, 342 background, 341 changing layout for, 322 changing master slide layout, 345 defined, 310 deleting, 325 hiding, 329–330 highlighting on, 385–386 inserting new, 320 moving, 325 playing video on, 374–377 selecting, 325 techniques for moving from slide to slide, 383–385 top-heavy title, 351
  - Slides pane, 312, 324
  - speaker notes, 379–380
  - starting and ending a presentation, 382
  - templates for creating presentations, 313–315
  - themes and background, 331–333
- transitions
- altering and removing, 367–368
  - assigning, 367
  - overview, 365–366
  - turning bulleted list into diagram, 614
  - user-run (interactive) presentation, 391–393
  - View buttons, 312
  - View tab buttons, 50
  - views changing, 322–323
  - Master views, 324
  - Normal view, 323
  - Notes Page view, 323
  - Outline view, 323
  - Reading View, 324, 391
  - Slide Sorter view, 323
  - zooming, 312, 387
- PowerPoint Option dialog box, 315
- PowerPoint Viewer, 395, 397
- ppi (pixels per inch), resolution, 625
- precedents, formula, 269
- Prefabricated text watermark option, Printed Watermark dialog box, 172
- Present Online dialog box, PowerPoint, 394
- presentations, PowerPoint adding audio to controlling when and how to play, 372–373 inserting audio file on slide, 371–372 overview, 370–371 playing, 373

- animations  
 customizing, 369  
 overview, 365–366  
 ready-made animation schemes, 368–369  
 blanking screen, 387  
 building effective, 316–318  
 choosing theme, 334  
 creating slide  
   background, 334–341  
 entering text  
   bulleted and numbered lists, 357–359  
   changing font size, 349  
   changing look of text, 349–350  
   choosing fonts, 348  
   headers and footers for slides, 359–361  
   overview, 347–348  
   text boxes, 350–356  
 handouts, 388–389  
 hiding and erasing  
   pen and highlighter markings, 386–387  
 kiosk-style, 388–391  
 master styles, 343–344  
 MPEG-4 version, 398–399  
 numbered and bulleted lists  
   choosing bullet character, size, and color, 358  
   choosing list-numbering style, size, and color, 359  
   overview, 357–358  
 online, 393–395  
 Package for CD command, 395  
 self-running, 391
- Slide Master view, 342–343  
 slides  
   adjusting size, 342  
   background, 341  
   changing layout for, 322  
   changing master slide layout, 345  
   creating new for, 318–319  
   headers and footers for, 360–362  
   headings, 321–322  
   hiding, 329–330  
   highlighting on, 385–386  
   inserting new, 320  
   playing video on, 374–377  
   techniques for moving from slide to slide, 383–385  
   top-heavy title, 351  
 speaker notes, 379–380  
 text boxes  
   AutoFit feature, 355  
   overview, 350–352  
   positioning text, 356  
 text frames  
   AutoFit feature, 352–355  
   positioning text, 356  
 themes and backgrounds, 331–333  
 transitions  
   altering and removing, 367–368  
   assigning, 367  
   overview, 365–366  
 user-run (interactive), 391–393  
 video, 398–399
- Presenter view, PowerPoint, 384  
 Preset columns option, Columns dialog box, 173  
 Preview area, Ink Equation Editor, 423  
 Preview window, Borders and Shading dialog box, 162  
 primary key field, Access for databases, 519–520  
 defined, 508  
 designating, 530–531  
 Print Layout view, Word  
   entering comment in Word document, 178–181  
   entering footnotes and endnotes in Word, 212  
 managing headers and footers, 86  
 overview, 63  
 Printed Watermark dialog box, Word, 172  
 printing  
   address on envelope, 186–187  
   commercially printing publications, 712  
 Contacts Folder, Outlook, 462–464  
 on different size paper, 175  
 distributing files, 687–688  
 Excel worksheets  
   adjusting margins, 288–289  
   landscape worksheet, 286

printing, Excel worksheets  
*(continued)*  
 making worksheet  
   presentable, 289–290  
 overview, 285  
 part of worksheet, 286  
 repeating row and  
   column headings on  
   each page, 290–291  
 scaling to fit, 288  
 viewing and adjusting  
   page breaks, 286–288  
 form letters, envelopes,  
   and labels, 195–196  
 single address label,  
   188–189  
 speaker notes for  
   PowerPoint  
   presentation, 380  
 Printing Options tab,  
   Envelopes and Labels  
   dialog box, 187  
 Process SmartArt  
   diagram, 604  
 PRODUCT function, 270  
 Prompt Before Archive  
   Runs option,  
   AutoArchive dialog  
   box, 452  
 proofing tools, Word  
   dictionary, 144–145  
   finding and replacing  
    text, 145–153  
   foreign language,  
    156–157  
   grammar check, 143–144  
   overview, 139  
   researching topic,  
    153–155  
   spell check, 140–143  
 Thesaurus, 155–156  
 translating foreign  
   language text, 157–158

properties, file  
   reading, 26  
   recording, 27  
 Properties dialog box,  
   Outlook, 452–453  
 .pst file, Outlook,  
   449–450  
 Public privileges, file  
   sharing, 733  
 Publish as PDF or XPS  
   dialog box, 690  
 Publisher  
   changing screen  
    background, 682–683  
   changing views  
    navigating pages, 703  
    single pages and two-  
      page spreads, 703  
    zooming, 702  
 Commercial Printer  
   command, 712  
 creating publication, 699  
 defined, 10  
 Design Checker,  
   711–712  
 entering text on pages,  
   703–704  
 fitting text in text frames  
   flowing text from frame  
    to frame, 706–707  
   overflow text in single  
    frame, 705  
   overview, 704–705  
 frames, 698–699  
 inserting new page, 709  
 master pages, 710–711  
 moving page, 709  
 overview, 697–698  
 redesigning publication,  
   700–701  
 removing page, 709  
 replacing placeholder  
   pictures, 707–708

scratch area, 708  
 wrapping text, 707  
 Pyramid SmartArt  
   diagram, 604

---

**Q**

---

queries, Access  
   calculation, 575–577  
   choosing which fields  
    appear in results,  
    570–571  
 comparison operators  
   for, 566  
 creating new, 566–567  
 defined, 508  
 entering criteria for  
   date criteria, 573  
   numeric criteria, 572  
   overview, 571–572  
   text criteria, 572  
   versus filtering, 561  
 overview, 511–512  
 saving and running, 573  
 select, 574  
 sorting results, 570  
 summary, 574–575  
 top-value, 574  
 update, 577  
 viewing in Datasheet and  
   Design view, 567–568  
 Quick Access Toolbar  
   adding buttons, 679–680  
   changing order of  
    buttons, 680–681  
   overview, 14–15  
   positioning, 681  
   removing buttons, 681  
 Repeat command, 48  
 Undo command, 47–48  
 Word screen, 57  
 Quick Analysis button,  
   Excel, 272  
 Quick Note window, 428

**R**

radar charts, 588  
 ragged right margin, 96–98  
 raw data, charts, 588–590, 600  
 Read mode, Word overview, 61–62  
 zooming, 64  
 reading  
     comments, Excel worksheet, 245  
     file properties, 26  
     Word document with change marks, 183  
 Reading pane, Outlook, 475–476  
 Reading View, PowerPoint presentation, 324, 391  
 recoloring pictures, 633–634  
 Record Sound dialog box, PowerPoint, 377–378  
 recording file properties, 27  
 Recording toolbar, PowerPoint, 380–381  
 records, Access, 508–509  
 recurring appointments, Outlook Calendar  
     defined, 491  
     scheduling, 494  
 Recycle Bin, OneNote, 436  
 #REF error message, 267  
 referential integrity,  
     Access database tables, 546  
 Regular font style, 35  
 relational database, Access, 508, 517

Relationship SmartArt diagram, 604  
 relationships, between Access database tables  
     forging relationships, 545–547  
     many-to-many relationship, 543  
     one-to-many relationship, 543  
     one-to-one relationship, 543  
     overview, 542–543  
     Relationships window, 544–545  
     Relationships window, Access, 544–545  
 Reminder message box, Outlook  
     customizing reminders, 502  
     handling reminders, 501  
     overview, 500–501  
     scheduling, 501–502  
 removing  
     background from pictures, 637–638  
     fonts on computer, 35  
     headers and footers, 88  
     hyperlinks, 45  
     notebook from Notebook pane, 410  
     page, Publisher, 709  
     page breaks, Excel worksheets, 287–288  
     passwords from file, 28  
     table of contents, 202  
 renaming  
     Excel formula cell ranges, 263  
 Excel worksheets, 248  
 fields, Access, 531  
 files on SkyDrive, 732  
 folders in SkyDrive, 723  
 OneNote groups and pages, 411  
 Word styles in template, 114  
 Repeat command, 48  
 Replication ID numeric field size, Access, 533  
 replying to, Outlook e-mail messages, 470–471  
 Report Wizard, 579, 582  
 reports, Access  
     customizing, 581–582  
     defined, 508  
     opening and viewing, 581  
     overview, 512, 579–580  
 Request a Delivery Receipt check box, Outlook Message window, 473–474  
 Request a Read Receipt check box, Outlook Message window, 473–474  
 Research task pane, Word researching topic, 153–155  
 translating foreign language text, 158  
 Reset Window Position button, View tab, 50  
 resolution, bitmap graphics, 625–626  
 Restore button, Word screen, 58  
 Resume Reading notice, Word document, 61  
 Reveal Formatting task pane, 77

- Review tab, Word  
commenting on  
document, 178–181
- tracking changes to  
documents  
accepting and rejecting  
changes, 186
- comparing documents  
to see changes,  
184–185
- overview, 181–182
- reading and reviewing  
document with  
change marks, 183
- turning tracking on, 182
- Ribbon  
adding items, 676
- collapsing and  
showing, 16
- creating tabs and groups,  
677–678
- displaying and selecting  
tab, group, and  
command names, 675
- moving tabs and groups,  
675–676
- overview, 15, 673–675
- removing items, 676
- renaming tabs and  
groups, 677
- resetting customizations,  
678
- Right Align Page Numbers  
option, Index dialog  
box, 208
- right-indent marker, 82
- Rotate tool, OneNote, 421
- rotating objects, 667–668
- rows  
Excel worksheets  
adjusting size of,  
279–280
- aligning numbers and  
text in, 276–278
- freezing and splitting,  
241–243
- hiding, 243
- inserting and deleting,  
278
- Word tables  
adjusting size, 120–121
- aligning text in, 124–125
- deleting, 123
- formatting, 129
- inserting, 121–122
- moving, 123
- row labels, 116
- selecting, 119
- Run AutoArchive Every  
option, AutoArchive  
dialog box, 452
- S**
- 
- Safe Senders list, Outlook,  
486
- Save As dialog box, 20
- Save As option, Document  
Recovery task  
pane, 22
- Save As window, 23–25
- saving  
Access queries, 568
- AutoRecovery, 22–23
- declaring where to save,  
20–21
- file as PDF, 689–690
- file as web page, 691–693
- file from Office to  
SkyDrive, 727–729
- for first time, 20
- Outlook files, 478–479
- overview, 20
- scaling to fit, on Excel  
worksheets, 288
- scatter (XY) charts, 588
- scratch area, Publisher,  
708
- screen clipping note,  
OneNote, 424–425
- screenshots, 630
- scroll bars, Excel, 240
- scroll wheel, Excel, 240
- Search Contacts text box,  
Outlook, 461
- Search Fields As  
Formatted option,  
Access Find and  
Replace dialog box,  
556
- Search option, Access  
Find and Replace  
dialog box, 556
- Search Results pane,  
OneNote, 431–433
- searching  
for OneNote notes  
by author, 432–433
- by word or phrase,  
431–432
- in Outlook  
advanced search, 448
- instant search, 446–447
- overview, 445–446
- Refine options, 447–448
- for special characters, in  
Word, 150–152
- Section (section group)  
tabs, OneNote, 405
- section breaks, Word,  
76–78
- section groups, OneNote  
creating, 409
- defined, 406
- renaming and deleting,  
411
- sections, OneNote  
color-coding, 437
- creating, 408–409
- defined, 406
- merging and moving,  
437–438

- Select Location in  
 OneNote dialog box,  
 OneNote, 429–430
- Select Members dialog  
 box, Outlook, 460–461
- Select Names dialog box,  
 Outlook, 461
- select query, Access, 574
- selecting  
 cells in Excel  
 worksheets, 246
- Excel worksheets, 248
- notes, OneNote, 417
- objects, 654–655
- PowerPoint presentation  
 slides, 325
- shapes, SmartArt  
 diagram, 608
- text, 29–30
- text in Word, 65
- in Word tables, 119–120
- self-running presentation,  
 PowerPoint, 391
- sentence case, 39
- serial data, Excel  
 worksheets, 228–231
- Set Hyperlink ScreenTip  
 dialog box, 44
- Set Quick Click dialog  
 box, Outlook, 445
- Set Transparent Color  
 command, 634
- Settings tab, Data  
 Validation dialog  
 box, 238
- shapes  
 changing symmetry, 650
- connecting using  
 connectors, 646–647
- including in Word  
 document, 163–164
- manipulating, 652–656
- OneNote, 420
- overview, 642–643,  
 648–649
- SmartArt diagram  
 adding, 609–613  
 changing color, fill, and  
 outline, 618–619  
 changing fonts and font  
 sizes on, 620  
 changing size of,  
 617–618  
 entering bulleted lists  
 on, 615  
 entering text on,  
 614–615  
 exchanging, 618  
 promoting and  
 demoting, 613  
 removing, 608  
 repositioning, 608–609  
 selecting, 608  
 using as text box, 650
- SharePoint 2013, 717
- sharpening pictures,  
 631–632
- Short Text data type,  
 Access, 529
- shortcut menus, 18–19, 34
- Show Archive Folder in  
 Folder List option,  
 AutoArchive dialog  
 box, 452
- Show Document Panel  
 command, Info  
 window, 27
- Show Levels box, Table  
 of Contents dialog  
 box, 202
- Show Page Numbers box,  
 Table of Contents  
 dialog box, 202
- Show Repairs option,  
 Document Recovery  
 task pane, 22
- Show Table dialog box,  
 Access, 544
- simple bulleted lists, 92
- Simple Markup view,  
 Word, 179–180
- simple numbered lists, 92
- Single File Web Page  
 format, 692–693
- Single numeric field size,  
 Access, 533
- single page spreads,  
 Publisher, 703
- SkyDrive  
 co-editing shared files  
 on, 739
- creating Office file in,  
 725–726
- downloading files to  
 computer, 731
- folders  
 creating, 720  
 deleting, 723  
 moving, 723  
 moving from folder to  
 folder in SkyDrive, 722  
 renaming, 723  
 viewing and locating in  
 SkyDrive, 720–722
- links for file sharing, 734
- managing files on,  
 731–732
- opening files stored on,  
 729–731
- retrieving earlier version  
 of file, 732
- saving file from Office to,  
 727–729
- sharing files and folders,  
 735–737
- uploading Office files to  
 folder on, 726–727
- Slide Master view,  
 PowerPoint, 342–343

- Slide Number check box, Header and Footer dialog box, 361
- Slide Sorter view, PowerPoint presentation, 323, 367–368
- slides, PowerPoint presentations
- changing layout for, 322
  - creating new, 318–319
  - deleting, 325
  - headings, 321–322
  - hiding, 329–330
  - inserting, 320
  - inserting audio file on, 371–372
  - inserting video on, 374
  - moving, 325
  - nonstandard footer, 361–362
  - overview, 359–360
  - photo albums, 329
  - positioning chart in, 591
  - recording voice narration for, 377–378
  - removing footer from single slide, 362
  - selecting, 325
  - standard footer, 360–361
  - top-heavy title, 351
  - small cap text effect, 37
- SmartArt diagrams
- building from scratch, 620–621
  - changing direction of, 615–616
  - changing size and position, 607
  - choosing, 604–605
  - colors and styles, 616–617
  - creating, 605–606
  - customizing, 605
  - laying out
  - adding shapes to, 609–613
  - promoting and demoting shapes in hierarchy diagrams, 613
  - removing shape, 608
  - repositioning, 608–609
  - selecting shape, 608
  - overview, 603
  - shapes
  - changing color, fill, and outline, 618–619
  - changing fonts and font sizes on, 620
  - changing size of, 617–618
  - entering bulleted lists on, 615
  - entering text on, 614–615
  - exchanging, 618
  - swapping, 607
  - snaking, newspaper-style columns, 173–174
- Snap Objects to Grid check box, Grid and Guides dialog box, 366
- Snooze button, Outlook Reminder message box, 501
- soft page break, 79
- softening pictures, 631–632
- solid color background, PowerPoint slides, 334–335
- Sort dialog box, Excel, 295–296
- sorting
- Access
  - defined, 508
  - query results, 570
  - records, 559–560
  - Excel lists, 295–296
  - Word tables, 124
- Sound drop-down list, PowerPoint Transitions tab, 367
- Sounds Like option, Find and Replace dialog box, 148
- source file
- merging document with, 191–195
  - preparing, 190–191
- Source Manager dialog box, Word, 216
- Space between columns option, Columns dialog box, 174
- spam (junk mail), Outlook, 485–487
- sparklines, 293–294
- speaker notes, PowerPoint, 379–380
- special characters, Word, 66, 150–152
- Special option, Find and Replace dialog box, 149
- speed techniques. *See also* Word
- correcting typos, 50–52
  - for entering Excel formulas
  - cell ranges, 260–261
  - clicking cells, 259–260
  - naming cell ranges, 261–263
  - entering text quickly, 52–54

- Repeat command, 48  
 Undo command, 47–48  
 viewing file through more than one window, 50  
 Zoom controls, 48–49
- spell-check, Word, 140–143
- Spelling task pane, Word, 141–142
- Split Cells dialog box, Word, 125–126
- splitting
- Excel columns and rows, 241–243
  - Word
    - cells, tables, 125–126
    - screen, 64–65
- spreadsheets, Excel. *See* worksheets, Excel
- Start drop-down list, PowerPoint Animations tab, 370
- Start menu, starting Office 2013 from Vista, 11–12  
 Windows 7, 11–12  
 Windows 8, 13
- Start New Column option, Columns dialog box, 174
- status bar
- customizing, 682
  - Word, 58
- STDEV function, 270
- STDEVP function, 270
- stock charts, 588
- strikethrough text effect, 37
- Style Based On option, Create New Style from Formatting dialog box, 107
- Style drop-down list, Borders and Shading dialog box, 162
- Style for Following Paragraph option, Create New Style from Formatting dialog box, 107
- Style Type option, Create New Style from Formatting dialog box, 107
- styles, Word
- applying to text and paragraphs, 101–102
  - character, 100
  - creating
    - from ground up, 106–107  - overview, 105–107
  - from paragraph, 106
  - linked, 101
  - modifying, 108–109
  - modifying, deleting, and renaming styles in template, 114
  - paragraphs, 100
  - style sets, 103–104
  - templates and
    - copying style from one document to another, 111
    - copying styles to template, 111–112
    - creating, 109–110
    - modifying, 113–114
    - overview, 99–100, 109  - Styles gallery, 101–102, 104
  - Styles pane, 101–102, 104–105
  - Subentry box, Mark Index Entry dialog box, 206
- subpages, OneNote
- creating, 410–411
  - defined, 406
- subscript text effect, 37
- Sub-subentries, Mark Index Entry dialog box, 206
- subtraction (–) operator, 257
- SUM function, 270
- summary query, Access, 574–575
- superscript text effect, 37
- surface charts, 588
- survey forms, 739–741
- Switch Windows button, View tab, 50
- Symbol dialog box, 40–41
- symbols
- entering, 40–41
  - hidden format symbols, Word, 66, 150–152
- Synchronous Scrolling button, View tab, 50

**T**

- 
- Tab Leader option, Index dialog box, 208
- tab leaders, 96
- tab stop, 95–96
- Table Entry Fields check box, Table of Contents Options dialog box, 203–204
- table of contents. *See* TOC
- Table of Contents dialog box, Word, 202–203
- Table of Contents Options dialog box, Word, 203–204
- table styles, Word, 127–128

- tables, PowerPoint, 364–365
- tables, Word
  - adjusting size of columns and rows, 120–121
  - aligning text in columns and rows, 124–125
  - changing direction of header row text, 133–134
  - creating, 116–118
  - deleting columns and rows, 123
  - drawing, 137–138
  - drawing diagonal lines on, 136–137
  - entering text and numbers, 118–119
  - formatting
    - borders and colors, 129–132
    - rows and columns, 129
    - table styles, 127–128
  - inserting columns and rows, 121–122
  - merging and splitting cells, 125–126
  - moving columns and rows, 123
  - repeating header rows on subsequent pages, 126
  - selecting different parts of, 119–120
  - sizing to single page, 127
  - as source file for mail merge, 190
  - terminology, 115–116
  - using math formulas in, 132–133
- using picture as background, 135–136
- wrapping text around, 134–135
- tabs
  - Office 2013
    - buttons, 18
    - galleries, 18
    - group buttons (dialog box launchers), 18
    - groups, 17–18
    - overview, 17
  - Word
    - tab leaders, 96
    - tab stop, 95–96
- tagging notes, OneNote
  - creating and modifying, 435–436
  - organizing, 435
  - overview, 433–434
- Tags Summary task pane, OneNote, 433–435
- Task Recurrence dialog box, Outlook, 499
- Taskbar, Windows 7, 12
- Tasks window, Outlook
  - attaching file to task, 499
  - entering task into, 498–499
  - examining task in, 499–500
  - handling and managing, 500
  - overview, 497–498
- templates
  - Access, 514, 523
  - creating charts from, 598
  - creating computerized forms, 71
  - creating publication in Publisher, 699
- Excel, 221
- PowerPoint
  - Blank Presentation template, 313
  - boilerplate text, 315
  - built-in, 313
  - online, 314
  - personal, 314
- saving charts as, 597–598
- storing, 110
- styles and, 99–100
- switching template attached to document, 113
- Word document, 59–60
- Word styles and
  - copying style from one document to another, 111
  - copying styles to template, 111–112
  - creating, 109–110
  - modifying templates, 113–114
  - overview, 109
- text
  - aligning in rows and columns in Word tables, 124–125
  - applying text effects, 36–37
  - case, 38–40
  - changing color of, 38
  - Clipboard task pane, 31
  - converting handwritten note to, OneNote, 422
  - correcting typos, 50–52
  - deleting, 32

- entering in PowerPoint presentations  
bulleted and numbered lists, 357–359  
changing font size, 349  
changing look of text, 349–350  
choosing fonts, 348  
overview, 347–348  
text boxes, 350–356  
fonts  
adjusting size, 34  
applying styles, 35–36  
choosing, 33–34  
foreign  
marking, 157  
translating, 157–158  
Format Painter, 32  
formatting in notes, OneNote, 416–417  
hyperlinks, 41–45  
hyphenating, 96–98  
moving and copying, 30–31  
Publisher  
entering on pages, 703–704  
fitting in text frames, 704–707  
running into columns, 173  
selecting, 29–30  
shortcuts for selecting in Word, 65  
symbols and foreign characters, 40–41  
underlining, 37  
using AutoCorrect feature to enter, 52–54
- wrapping  
Excel, 227  
Publisher, 707  
Word tables, 134–135  
text attributes. *See* text effects  
text boxes  
manipulating, 652–656  
PowerPoint presentations  
AutoFit feature, 355  
overview, 350–352  
positioning text, 356  
turning into text box shapes, 651  
using shapes as, 650  
Word  
inserting, 170  
linking, 170  
overview, 169–170  
text effects  
All Caps, 37  
applying, 36–37  
defined, 33  
double strikethrough, 37  
Equalize Character Height, 37  
small caps, 37  
strikethrough, 37  
subscript, 37  
superscript, 37  
Text Effects option, Format Shape pane, 350  
Text Fill option, Format Shape pane, 349–350  
text frames  
fitting text in, Publisher  
flowing text from frame to frame, 706–707
- overflow text in single frame, 705  
overview, 704–705  
PowerPoint presentations  
AutoFit feature, 352–355  
positioning text, 356  
Text Length data-validation rule, Excel, 237  
text lines, breaking, 78  
Text Outline option, Format Shape pane, 350  
Text watermark option, Printed Watermark dialog box, 172  
texture background, PowerPoint slides, 340–341  
themes, Word document, 159–160  
Themes gallery, PowerPoint, 334  
Thesaurus task pane, Word, 155–156  
3-D diagrams, 618  
3-D references, formula, 264  
Time data-validation rule, Excel, 237  
time values  
entering into Excel worksheets, 228–231  
formatting in Excel, 232–234  
title bar, Word screen, 58  
titles, PowerPoint slides, 351

TOC (table of contents)  
 changing structure of, 203–204  
 creating, 201–202  
 customizing, 202–203  
 marking text for inclusion in, 204  
 overview, 200–201  
 updating and removing, 202  
 Tools gallery, OneNote, 419  
 top-heavy title, PowerPoint slides, 351  
 top-value query, Access, 574  
 touching up pictures  
   artistic effects, 634–635  
   brightness and contrast, 632–633  
   cropping, 636–637  
   overview, 631  
   picture styles, 635–636  
   recoloring, 633–634  
   removing background, 637–638  
   softening and sharpening, 631–632  
 tracing cell references, 268–269  
 tracking changes to Word documents  
   accepting and rejecting changes, 186  
   comparing documents to see changes, 184–185  
   overview, 181–182  
   reading and reviewing document with change marks, 183  
   turning tracking on, 182

transitions, PowerPoint  
   altering and removing, 367–368  
   assigning, 367  
   overview, 365–366  
 Transitions tab, PowerPoint, 367  
 Translate Document command, Word, 158  
 Translate Selected Text command, Word, 158  
 transparency, objects, 657–658, 660–661  
 trendlines, placing on charts, 600–601  
 Trim Video dialog box, PowerPoint, 375  
 troubleshooting charts, 601–602  
 two-input data table, Excel, 301–302  
 two-page spreads, Publisher, 703  
 Type option, Index dialog box, 208  
 Type tool, OneNote, 421  
 typewritten note, entering, 415  
 typos, correcting, 50–52

updating, table of contents, 202  
 uploading Office files to folder on SkyDrive, 726–727  
 Use Wildcards option, Find and Replace dialog box, 148  
 user interface, Office 2013 Backstage, 15  
 context-sensitive tabs, 16–17  
 File tab, 14–15  
 KeyTips, 19  
 live previewing, 18  
 mini-toolbar, 18–19  
 overview, 14  
 Quick Access toolbar, 14–15  
 Ribbon, 15–16  
 shortcut menus, 18–19  
 tabs  
   buttons, 18  
   galleries, 18  
   group buttons, 18  
   groups, 17–18  
 user-run (interactive) presentation, PowerPoint, 391–393

**U**

Underline font style, 36  
 Undo command, 47–48  
 unfreezing Excel columns and rows, 243  
 ungrouping objects, 669  
 unhyphenating text, 98  
 unsplitting Excel columns and rows, 243  
 update query, Access, 577

**V**

#VALUE error message, 267  
 VAR function, 270  
 VARP function, 270  
 vector graphics  
   clip art, 625  
   overview, 623–624

video  
linking to Word document, 176

PowerPoint slides  
changing appearance of video, 376–377  
fine-tuning, 374–376  
inserting video on slide, 374

View buttons, Word screen, 58

View Side by Side button, View tab, 50

viewing  
database tables, Access, 525–526  
documents, Word, 61–64  
file through more than one window, 50  
folders in SkyDrive, 720–722  
live previewing, 18  
page breaks, Excel, 286–288  
reports, Access, 581

views  
OneNote  
changing, 413–414  
docked to the desktop, 412  
Full Page view, 412  
Normal view, 412  
OneNote, 412–414

PowerPoint  
changing, 322–323  
Master views, 324  
Normal view, 323  
Notes Page view, 323  
Outline view, 323  
Reading View, 324  
Slide Sorter view, 323

Vista, starting Office 2013 in, 11–12

voice narration, recording for PowerPoint presentation, 377–378

volume, PowerPoint presentation, 373

Voting Buttons, Outlook Message window, 473–474

## W

---

watermarks, 171–172

Web Layout view, Word, 63

Web Page format, 692–693

web page, saving file as, 691–693

web-based e-mail, 443

Week view, Outlook Calendar, 492

weight, lines, 644–645

what-if analyses, Excel one-input data table, 299–301  
two-input data table, 301–302

Whole Number data-validation rule, Excel, 237

Width drop-down, Borders and Shading dialog box, 162

wildcard operators  
Access, 557, 572  
using to refine searches, 149–150

Windows 7, starting Office 2013 in, 11–12

Windows 8, starting Office 2013 in, 13–14

Word  
adding cross-references in document, 209–211  
adjusting space between lines, 90–91  
adjusting space between paragraphs, 91  
alphabetizing lists, 197  
bibliography  
changing how citations appear in text, 217  
editing citations, 217  
generating, 217–218  
inserting citations, 215–216  
overview, 214–215

blogging, 693–696

breaking text lines, 78

Bring and Send commands, 665–666

changing case in, 39–40

changing screen background, 682–683

collapsing and expanding parts of document, 200

commenting on document, 178–181

creating charts, 586–587

creating new document, 59–60

customizing report in, 582

defined, 9

desktop publishing  
adding background color to pages, 162  
adding newspaper-style columns to document, 173–174

borders, 161–162

charts, 163–164

- Word, desktop publishing  
*(continued)*
- clip-art and photos, 163–164
  - cover letters, 162–163
  - diagrams, 163–164
  - drawing canvas, 164–165
  - drop cap, 171
  - landscape documents, 174–175
  - positioning objects, 167–169
  - printing on different size paper, 175
  - shapes and lines, 163–164
  - showing online video in document, 176
  - text boxes, 169–170
  - themes, 159–160
  - watermarking, 171–172
  - wrapping objects, 166–167
- editing PDFs, 86
- entering information in computerized form, 70–73
- footnotes and endnotes
- choosing numbering scheme and positioning of, 213–214
  - deleting, 214
  - editing, 214
  - entering, 212
  - moving, 214
  - overview, 211
- generating chart from table, 590
- headers and footers
- creating, 87
  - editing, 87–88
- fine-tuning, 89
- overview, 86–87
- removing, 88
- hidden format symbols, 66, 150–152
- hiding and displaying the rulers and grid, 655–656
- highlighting document, 177–178
- hyphenating text
- automatic, 97
  - manually, 97
  - overview, 96–97
- preventing
- hyphenation, 98
  - unhyphenating, 98
- indenting, 81–83
- indexing document
- editing index, 209
  - generating index, 207–208
  - marking index items, 206–207
  - overview, 205
- inserting section break, 76–78
- inserting whole file into document, 69–70
- keyboard shortcuts, 684–685
- linking file to OneNote, 429–430
- margins, 79–81
- mass mailings, 189–196
- navigating documents quickly, 66–69
- numbered and bulleted lists
- customizing, 92–93
  - managing multilevel list, 93
  - simple, 92
- numbering pages
- changing page number formats, 85–86
  - including page number in header or footer, 85
  - overview, 83–84
  - with page numbers only, 84
- Outline view
- overview, 198
  - rearranging document sections in, 199–200
  - viewing outlines in different ways, 199
- paragraphs and
- formatting, 75–76
- printing address on envelope, 186–187
- printing single address label, 188–189
- proofing tools
- dictionary, 144–145
  - finding and replacing text, 145–153
  - foreign language, 156–157
  - grammar check, 143–144
  - overview, 139
  - researching topic, 153–155
- spell check, 140–143
- Thesaurus, 155–156
- translating foreign language text, 157–158
- shortcuts for selecting text, 65
- splitting screen, 64–65
- starting new page, 78–79
- styles
- applying to text and paragraphs, 101–105
- creating, 105–107

- modifying, 108–109  
modifying, deleting,  
and renaming styles  
in template, 114  
templates, 109–114  
templates and, 99–100  
types of, 100–101  
table of contents  
changing structure of,  
203–204  
creating, 201–202  
customizing, 202–203  
overview, 200–201  
updating and removing,  
202  
tables  
adjusting size of  
columns and rows,  
120–121  
aligning text in columns  
and rows, 124–125  
changing direction  
of header row text,  
133–134  
creating, 116–118  
deleting columns and  
rows, 123  
drawing, 136–138  
entering text and  
numbers, 118–119  
formatting, 127–132  
inserting columns and  
rows, 121–122  
merging and splitting  
cells, 125–126  
moving columns and  
rows, 123  
repeating header rows  
on subsequent pages,  
126  
selecting different parts  
of, 119–120
- sizing to single page, 127  
terminology, 115–116  
using math formulas in,  
132–133  
using picture as  
background, 135–136  
wrapping text, 134–135  
tabs, 95–96  
tracking changes to  
documents, 181–186  
View tab buttons, 50  
viewing documents,  
61–64  
Word screen, 57–58  
Word button, Word  
screen, 57  
WordArt  
creating, 652  
editing, 652  
overview, 651  
Work Week view, Outlook  
Calendar, 490, 492  
workbooks, Excel  
managing worksheets in,  
247–249  
positioning chart in,  
590–591  
worksheets, Excel  
adding colors, 285  
borders  
adding to cells, 284–285  
cell styles, 281–283  
formatting cells with  
table styles, 283  
cell addresses, 225  
columns, 225  
comments, 244–246  
constructing Word  
tables from, 117  
copying data, 247  
deleting data, 247  
editing, 239–240
- entering data  
date and time values,  
228–231  
lists and serial data,  
228–231  
numeric values, 227  
overview, 225–226  
text labels, 227  
freezing and splitting  
columns and rows,  
241–243  
hiding, 243, 249  
laying out columns and  
rows  
adjusting size of,  
279–280  
aligning numbers and  
text in, 276–278  
inserting and deleting,  
278  
overview, 275  
managing in workbook,  
247–249  
merging and centering  
text across cells, 276  
moving data, 247  
navigating, 240–241  
overview, 223–224  
printing  
adjusting margins,  
288–289  
landscape worksheet,  
286  
making worksheet  
presentable, 289–290  
overview, 285  
part of worksheet, 286  
repeating row and  
column headings on  
each page, 290–291  
scaling to fit, 288  
viewing and adjusting  
page breaks, 286–288

worksheets, Excel

(continued)

protecting, 250–251

rows, 225

selecting cells, 246

as source file for mail

merge, 190

wrapping text

around objects, 166–167

Excel, 227

tables (Word), 134–135

wrap points, 168

## X

XY (scatter) charts, 588

## Y

Yes/No data type, Access,  
529

## Z

Zoom controls

Mouse wheel, 49

overview, 48–49

Word screen, 58

Zoom button, 49

Zoom dialog box, 49

Zoom slider, 49

zooming

Access Zoom box, 552

PowerPoint presentation,  
387

in Publisher, 702

in Word Read mode, 64

## Apple & Mac

iPad 2 For Dummies,  
3rd Edition  
978-1-118-17679-5

iPhone 4S For Dummies,  
5th Edition  
978-1-118-03671-6

iPod touch For Dummies,  
3rd Edition  
978-1-118-12960-9

Mac OS X Lion  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-02205-4

## Blogging & Social Media

CityVille For Dummies  
978-1-118-08337-6

Facebook For Dummies,  
4th Edition  
978-1-118-09562-1

Mom Blogging  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-03843-7

Twitter For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-76879-2

WordPress For Dummies,  
4th Edition  
978-1-118-07342-1

## Business

Cash Flow For Dummies  
978-1-118-01850-7

Investing For Dummies,  
6th Edition  
978-0-470-90545-6

## Job Searching with Social

Media For Dummies  
978-0-470-93072-4

QuickBooks 2012  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-09120-3

Resumes For Dummies,  
6th Edition  
978-0-470-87361-8

Starting an Etsy Business  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-93067-0

## Cooking & Entertaining

Cooking Basics  
For Dummies, 4th Edition  
978-0-470-91388-8

Wine For Dummies,  
4th Edition  
978-0-470-04579-4

## Diet & Nutrition

Kettlebells For Dummies  
978-0-470-59929-7

Nutrition For Dummies,  
5th Edition  
978-0-470-93231-5

Restaurant Calorie Counter  
For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-64405-8

## Digital Photography

Digital SLR Cameras &  
Photography For Dummies,  
4th Edition  
978-1-118-14489-3

## Digital SLR Settings

& Shortcuts  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-91763-3

Photoshop Elements 10  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-10742-3

## Gardening

Gardening Basics  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-03749-2

Vegetable Gardening  
For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-49870-5

## Green/Sustainable

Raising Chickens  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-46544-8

Green Cleaning  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-39106-8

## Health

Diabetes For Dummies,  
3rd Edition  
978-0-470-27086-8

Food Allergies  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-09584-3

Living Gluten-Free  
For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-58589-4

## Hobbies

Beekeeping  
For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-43065-1

Chess For Dummies,  
3rd Edition  
978-1-118-01695-4

Drawing For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-61842-4

eBay For Dummies,  
7th Edition  
978-1-118-09806-6

Knitting For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-28747-7

## Language & Foreign Language

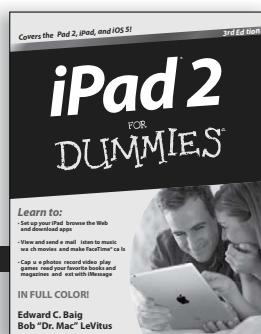
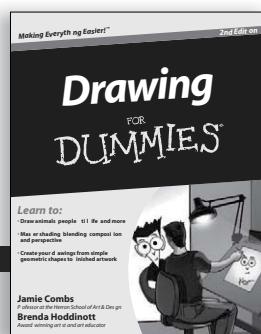
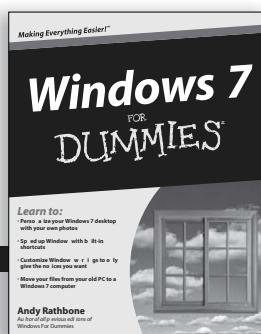
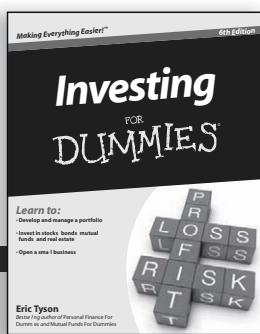
English Grammar  
For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-54664-2

French For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-1-118-00464-7

German For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-90101-4

Spanish Essentials  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-63751-7

Spanish For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-87855-2



Available wherever books are sold. For more information or to order direct: U.S. customers visit [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com) or call 1-877-762-2974.

U.K. customers visit [www.wileyeurope.com](http://www.wileyeurope.com) or call [0] 1243 843291. Canadian customers visit [www.wiley.ca](http://www.wiley.ca) or call 1-800-567-4797.

Connect with us online at [www.facebook.com/fordummies](http://www.facebook.com/fordummies) or @fordummies

## **Math & Science**

Algebra I For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-55964-2

Biology For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-59875-7

Chemistry For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-1-118-0730-3

Geometry For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-08946-0

Pre-Algebra Essentials  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-61838-7

## **Microsoft Office**

Excel 2010 For Dummies  
978-0-470-48953-6

Office 2010 All-in-One  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-49748-7

Office 2011 for Mac  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-87869-9

Word 2010  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-48772-3

## **Music**

Guitar For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-7645-9904-0

## **Clarinet For Dummies**

978-0-470-58477-4

iPod & iTunes  
For Dummies,  
9th Edition  
978-1-118-13060-5

## **Pets**

Cats For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-7645-5275-5

Dogs All-in One  
For Dummies  
978-0470-52978-2

Saltwater Aquariums  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-06805-2

## **Religion & Inspiration**

The Bible For Dummies  
978-0-7645-5296-0

Catholicism For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-1-118-07778-8

Spirituality For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-19142-2

## **Self-Help & Relationships**

Happiness For Dummies  
978-0-470-28171-0

Overcoming Anxiety  
For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-57441-6

## **Seniors**

Crosswords For Seniors  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-49157-7

iPad 2 For Seniors  
For Dummies, 3rd Edition  
978-1-118-17678-8

Laptops & Tablets  
For Seniors For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-1-118-09596-6

## **Smartphones & Tablets**

BlackBerry For Dummies,  
5th Edition  
978-1-118-10035-6

Droid X2 For Dummies  
978-1-118-14864-8

HTC ThunderBolt  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-07601-9

MOTOROLA XOOM  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-08835-7

## **Sports**

Basketball For Dummies,  
3rd Edition  
978-1-118-07374-2

Football For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-1-118-01261-1

Golf For Dummies,  
4th Edition  
978-0-470-88279-5

## **Test Prep**

ACT For Dummies,  
5th Edition  
978-1-118-01259-8

ASVAB For Dummies,  
3rd Edition  
978-0-470-63760-9

The GRE Test For  
Dummies, 7th Edition  
978-0-470-00919-2

Police Officer Exam  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-88724-0

Series 7 Exam  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-09932-2

## **Web Development**

HTML, CSS, & XHTML  
For Dummies, 7th Edition  
978-0-470-91659-9

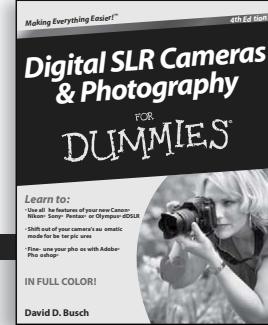
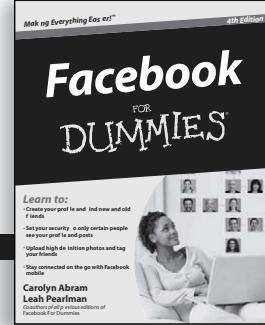
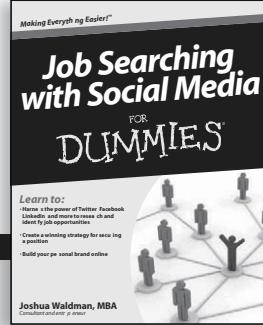
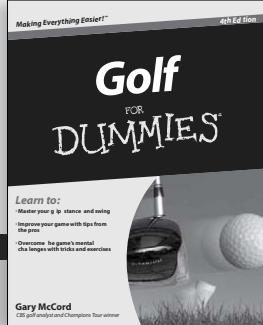
Drupal For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-1-118-08348-2

## **Windows 7**

Windows 7  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-49743-2

Windows 7  
For Dummies,  
Book + DVD Bundle  
978-0-470-52398-8

Windows 7 All-in-One  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-48763-1

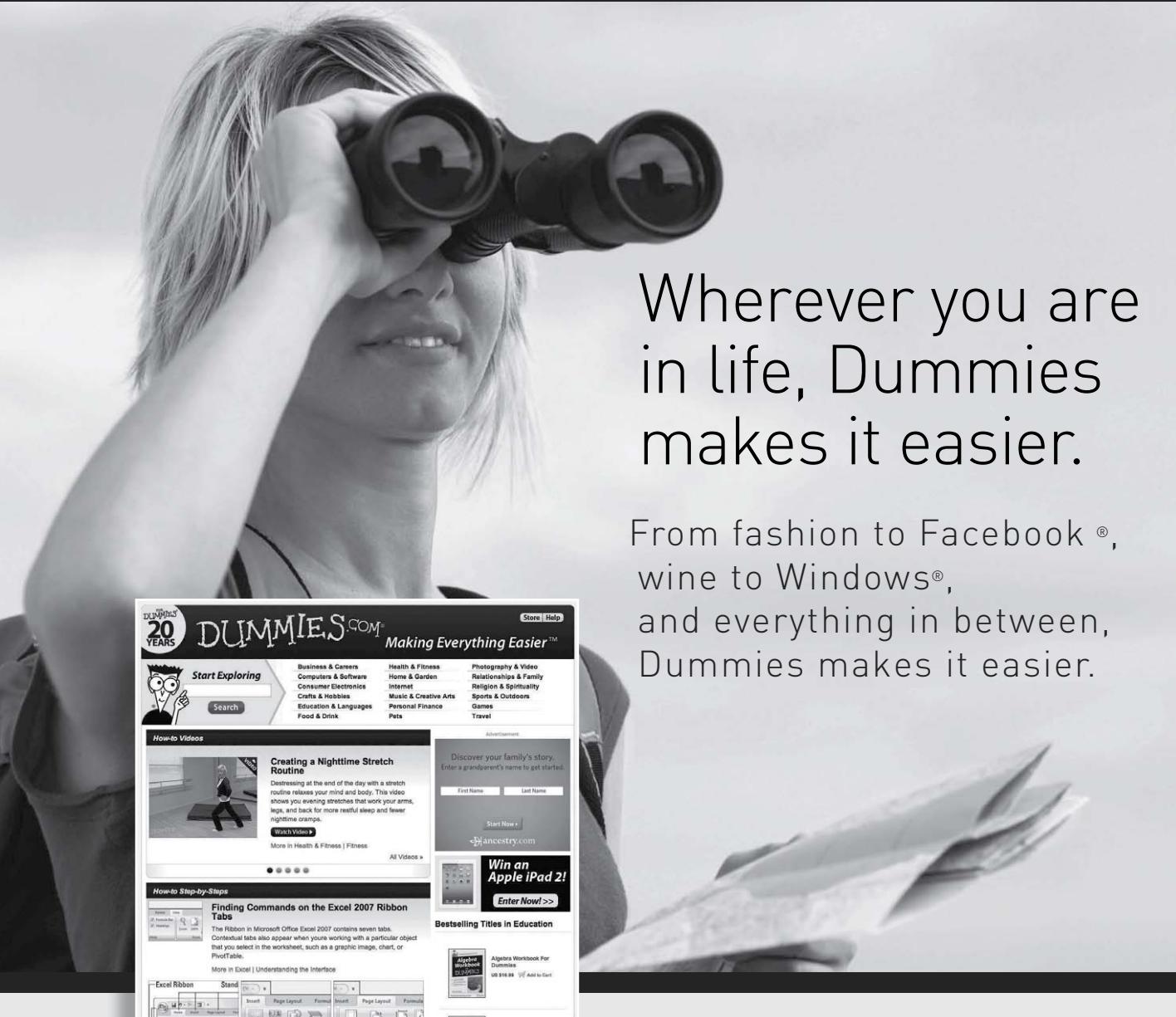


Available wherever books are sold. For more information or to order direct: U.S. customers visit [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com) or call 1-877-762-2974.

U.K. customers visit [www.wileyeurope.com](http://www.wileyeurope.com) or call [0] 1243 843291. Canadian customers visit [www.wiley.ca](http://www.wiley.ca) or call 1-800-567-4797.

Connect with us online at [www.facebook.com/fordummies](http://www.facebook.com/fordummies) or @fordummies

# DUMMIES.COM<sup>®</sup>



Wherever you are  
in life, Dummies  
makes it easier.

From fashion to Facebook®,  
wine to Windows®,  
and everything in between,  
Dummies makes it easier.



The screenshot shows the Dummies.com homepage. At the top, there's a banner for '20 YEARS' and the tagline 'Making Everything Easier™'. Below the banner, there's a 'Start Exploring' button and a search bar. The main navigation menu includes categories like Business & Finance, Computers & Software, Consumer Electronics, Crafts & Hobbies, Education & Languages, Food & Drink, Health & Fitness, Home & Garden, Internet, Music & Creative Arts, Personal Finance, Pets, Photography & Video, Relationships & Family, Religion & Spirituality, Sports & Outdoors, Games, and Travel. A sidebar on the left features 'How-to Videos' (including a thumbnail for 'Creating a Nighttime Stretch Routine') and 'How-to Step-by-Steps' (including a thumbnail for 'Finding Commands on the Excel 2007 Ribbon Tabs'). On the right, there's an 'Advertisement' for Ancestry.com, a contest to 'Win an Apple iPad 2!', and a section for 'Bestselling Titles in Education' featuring books like 'Algebra Workbook For Dummies' and 'Alternative Energy For Dummies'.



Visit us at [Dummies.com](http://Dummies.com) and connect with us online at  
[www.facebook.com/fordummies](http://www.facebook.com/fordummies) or @fordummies



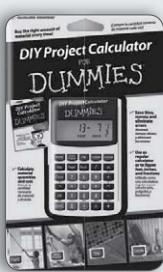
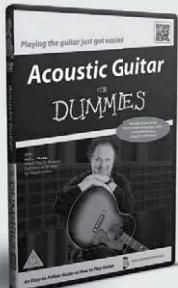
# Dummies products make life easier!

DIY  
Consumer Electronics  
Hardware  
Software  
Bookware

- Hobbies
- Videos
- Music
- Games
- and More!

For more information, go to **Dummies.com®** and search the store by category.

Connect with us online at  
[www.facebook.com/fordummies](http://www.facebook.com/fordummies) or @fordummies



**Tech Support for DUMMIES** Making Everything Easier!  
Call Now: 855-234-TECH (8324)  
Great 24/7 live tech support  
Tech experts standing by—call us today!

**Sign up today!**

First Name \_\_\_\_\_  
Last Name \_\_\_\_\_  
Email Address \_\_\_\_\_  
Confirm Email \_\_\_\_\_  
SIGN UP NOW

Secure Server: We value your privacy. Tech Support for Dummies will not sell or rent your information to third parties.

Definition powered by

Great tech support is only a phone call away! Call us now: 855-234-TECH(8324)

Here's How It Works:

SIGN UP → CALL WITH A PROBLEM → WE FIX IT! → VIEW PLANS

Here's What We Fix:

- PCs, Macs & Devices
- PC Security
- Network
- Entertainment
- Internet & VoIP
- Popular Software
- Operating Systems
- Learn More

Home | Warning Plan | Yearly Plan | Products Supported | About Us | Terms & Conditions | Privacy Policy | FAQs | Stereo



**FOR DUMMIES®**  
Making everything easier!™

# Mobile Apps FOR DUMMIES®

## There's a Dummies App for This and That

With more than 200 million books in print and over 1,600 unique titles, Dummies is a global leader in how-to information. Now you can get the same great Dummies information in an App. With topics such as Wine, Spanish, Digital Photography, Certification, and more, you'll have instant access to the topics you need to know in a format you can trust.

To get information on all our Dummies apps, visit the following:  
[www.Dummies.com/go/mobile](http://www.Dummies.com/go/mobile) from your computer.  
[www.Dummies.com/go/iphone/apps](http://www.Dummies.com/go/iphone/apps) from your phone.

